



# Cumulus Linux 3.5

## User Guide

---



# Table of Contents

<b>Introducing Cumulus Linux .....</b>	<b>15</b>
What's New in Cumulus Linux 3.5 .....	16
Open Source Contributions .....	17
Hardware Compatibility List .....	17
<b>Quick Start Guide .....</b>	<b>17</b>
Contents .....	18
Installation .....	19
Getting Started .....	20
Configuring Breakout Ports with Splitter Cables .....	23
Testing Cable Connectivity .....	23
Configuring Switch Ports .....	24
Configuring a Loopback Interface .....	27
<b>Installation Management .....</b>	<b>28</b>
Managing Cumulus Linux Disk Images .....	29
Contents .....	29
Installing a New Cumulus Linux Image .....	29
Upgrading Cumulus Linux .....	29
x86 vs ARM Switches .....	29
Reprovisioning the System (Restart Installer) .....	30
Uninstalling All Images and Removing the Configuration .....	30
Booting into Rescue Mode .....	31
Inspecting Image File Contents .....	32
Related Information .....	33
Installing a New Cumulus Linux Image .....	34
Understanding these Examples .....	34
Contents .....	34
Installing via a DHCP/Web Server Method with DHCP Options .....	35
Installing via a DHCP/Web Server Method without DHCP Options .....	36
Installing via a Web Server with no DHCP .....	36
Installing via FTP or TFTP without a Web Server .....	37
Installing via a Local File .....	38
Installing via USB .....	38
Installing a New Image when Cumulus Linux Is already Installed .....	47
Upgrading Cumulus Linux .....	48
Contents .....	48
Upgrades: Comparing the Network Device Worldview vs. the Linux Host Worldview .....	49
Upgrading Cumulus Linux Devices: Strategies and Processes .....	50
Upgrading Cumulus Linux: Choosing between a Binary Install vs. Package Upgrade .....	56
Rolling Back a Cumulus Linux Installation .....	58



Third Party Package Considerations .....	59
Installation and Upgrade Workflow in Cumulus Linux 3.0 and Later .....	59
Using Snapshots during Upgrades .....	59
Caveats When Migrating Configuration Files Between Cumulus Linux 2.5z and 3.0 and Later .....	59
Using the Config File Migration Script to Identify and Move Files to Cumulus Linux 3.0 and Later .....	60
Using Automation Tools to Back Up 2.5z Configurations .....	61
Using Snapshots .....	61
Contents .....	61
Installing the Snapshot Package .....	62
Taking and Managing Snapshots .....	62
Rolling Back to Earlier Snapshots .....	65
Configuring Automatic Time-based Snapshots .....	66
Caveats and Errata .....	67
Adding and Updating Packages .....	68
Contents .....	68
Updating the Package Cache .....	68
Listing Available Packages .....	70
Adding a Package .....	71
Listing Installed Packages .....	72
Upgrading to Newer Versions of Installed Packages .....	72
Adding Packages from Another Repository .....	73
Related Information .....	74
Zero Touch Provisioning - ZTP .....	74
Contents .....	75
Zero Touch Provisioning Using a Local File .....	75
Zero Touch Provisioning Using USB (ZTP-USB) .....	76
Zero Touch Provisioning over DHCP .....	76
Writing ZTP Scripts .....	78
Testing and Debugging ZTP Scripts .....	79
Manually Using the ztp Command .....	83
Notes .....	84
<b>System Configuration .....</b>	<b>84</b>
Network Command Line Utility - NCLU .....	85
Contents .....	86
What's New and Different in NCLU in Version 3.5? .....	86
Installing NCLU .....	86
Getting Started .....	86
Configuring User Accounts .....	91
Restarting the netd Service .....	93
Backing up the Configuration to a Single File .....	93
Advanced Configuration .....	94
Setting Date and Time .....	95



Contents .....	95
Setting the Time Zone .....	96
Setting the Date and Time .....	97
Setting Time Using NTP and NCLU .....	98
Specifying the NTP Source Interface .....	99
NTP Default Configuration .....	99
Related Information .....	101
Authentication, Authorization and Accounting .....	101
SSH for Remote Access .....	101
User Accounts .....	103
Using sudo to Delegate Privileges .....	105
LDAP Authentication and Authorization .....	111
TACACS Plus .....	120
RADIUS AAA .....	132
Netfilter - ACLs .....	137
Contents .....	138
Understanding Traffic Rules In Cumulus Linux .....	140
Installing and Managing ACL Rules with NCLU .....	149
Installing and Managing ACL Rules with cl-acltool .....	151
Installing Packet Filtering (ACL) Rules .....	152
Specifying which Policy Files to Install .....	154
Hardware Limitations on Number of Rules .....	155
Supported Rule Types .....	157
Common Examples .....	159
Example Scenario .....	164
Useful Links .....	168
Caveats and Errata .....	168
Default Cumulus Linux ACL Configuration .....	171
Filtering Learned MAC Addresses .....	180
Managing Application Daemons .....	183
Contents .....	183
Using systemd and the systemctl Command .....	183
Identifying Active Listener Ports for IPv4 and IPv6 .....	185
Identifying Daemons Currently Active or Stopped .....	186
Identifying Essential Services .....	190
Configuring switchd .....	191
Contents .....	191
The switchd File System .....	191
Configuring switchd Parameters .....	193
Restarting switchd .....	193
Power over Ethernet - PoE .....	194
Contents .....	194
How It Works .....	194
Configuring PoE .....	195
Troubleshooting PoE and PoE+ .....	200



Configuring a Global Proxy .....	203
Related Information .....	204
HTTP API .....	204
Contents .....	204
<b>Interface Configuration and Management .....</b>	<b>208</b>
Contents .....	209
Basic Commands .....	209
Using NCLU to Set the Admin State of an Interface .....	210
ifupdown2 Interface Classes .....	210
Bringing All auto Interfaces Up or Down .....	211
Configuring a Loopback Interface .....	212
ifupdown Behavior with Child Interfaces .....	212
ifupdown2 Interface Dependencies .....	213
ifup Handling of Upper (Parent) Interfaces .....	216
Configuring IP Addresses .....	217
Specifying IP Address Scope .....	218
Purging Existing IP Addresses on an Interface .....	219
Specifying User Commands .....	220
Sourcing Interface File Snippets .....	221
Using Globs for Port Lists .....	221
Using Templates .....	222
Commenting out Mako Templates .....	223
Adding Descriptions to Interfaces .....	223
Caveats and Errata .....	224
Related Information .....	225
Layer 1 and Switch Port Attributes .....	225
Contents .....	225
Interface Types .....	226
Interface Settings .....	226
Configuring Breakout Ports .....	241
Logical Switch Port Limitations .....	246
Using ethtool to Configure Interfaces .....	247
Verification and Troubleshooting Commands .....	247
Caveats and Errata .....	249
Related Information .....	250
Buffer and Queue Management .....	250
Contents .....	250
Commands .....	251
Example Configuration File .....	251
Configuring Traffic Marking through ACL Rules .....	255
Configuring Priority Flow Control .....	256
Configuring Link Pause .....	259
Configuring Cut-through Mode and Store and Forward Switching .....	260
Configuring Explicit Congestion Notification .....	261



Related Information .....	262
Configuring Hardware-enabled DDOS Protection .....	262
Configuring DHCP Relays .....	264
Contents .....	264
Configuring IPv4 DHCP Relays .....	265
Configuring IPv6 DHCP Relays .....	266
Configuring Multiple DHCP Relays .....	267
Configuring a DHCP Relay with VRR .....	267
Configuring the DHCP Relay Service Manually (Advanced) .....	269
Troubleshooting the DHCP Relays .....	269
Configuring DHCP Servers .....	270
Contents .....	271
Configuring DHCP Server on Cumulus Linux Switches .....	271
Troubleshooting the Log from a DHCP Server .....	273
802.1X Interfaces .....	273
Contents .....	274
Supported Features and Limitations .....	274
Installing the 802.1X Package .....	275
Configuring 802.1X Interfaces .....	275
Verifying Connections from Linux Suplicants .....	278
Configuring Dynamic VLAN Assignments .....	278
Troubleshooting .....	279
Configuring the RADIUS Server .....	282
<b>Layer 1 and 2 .....</b>	<b>283</b>
Spanning Tree and Rapid Spanning Tree .....	284
Contents .....	284
Supported Modes .....	284
Viewing Bridge and STP Status/Logs .....	285
Customizing Spanning Tree Protocol .....	289
Caveats and Errata .....	298
Related Information .....	298
Link Layer Discovery Protocol .....	298
Contents .....	299
Configuring LLDP .....	299
Example lldpcli Commands .....	299
Enabling the SNMP Subagent in LLDP .....	304
Caveats and Errata .....	304
Related Information .....	304
Prescriptive Topology Manager - PTM .....	304
Contents .....	305
Supported Features .....	305
Configuring PTM .....	306
Basic Topology Example .....	306
ptmd Scripts .....	307



Configuration Parameters .....	307
Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD) .....	310
Checking Link State with FRRouting .....	311
Using ptmd Service Commands .....	311
Using ptmctl Commands .....	312
Caveats and Errata .....	315
Related Information .....	315
<b>Bonding - Link Aggregation .....</b>	<b>316</b>
Contents .....	316
Hash Distribution .....	316
Creating a Bond .....	317
Example Configuration: Bonding 4 Slaves .....	320
Caveats and Errata .....	322
Related Information .....	322
<b>Ethernet Bridging - VLANs .....</b>	<b>322</b>
Contents .....	323
Creating a VLAN-aware Bridge .....	323
Creating a Traditional Mode Bridge .....	323
Configuring Bridge MAC Addresses .....	323
Configuring an SVI (Switch VLAN Interface) .....	324
Caveats and Errata .....	327
Related Information .....	327
VLAN-aware Bridge Mode for Large-scale Layer 2 Environments .....	328
Traditional Mode Bridges .....	340
VLAN Tagging .....	344
<b>Multi-Chassis Link Aggregation - MLAG .....</b>	<b>351</b>
Contents .....	352
MLAG Requirements .....	353
LACP and Dual-Connectedness .....	354
Configuring MLAG .....	355
Example MLAG Configuration .....	361
Checking the MLAG Configuration Status .....	369
Configuring MLAG with a Traditional Mode Bridge .....	370
Peer Link Interfaces and the protodown State .....	371
Monitoring Dual-Connected Peers .....	374
Configuring Layer 3 Routed Uplinks .....	375
IGMP Snooping with MLAG .....	376
Monitoring the Status of the clagd Service .....	376
MLAG Best Practices .....	377
STP Interoperability with MLAG .....	380
Troubleshooting MLAG .....	381
Caveats and Errata .....	382
<b>LACP Bypass .....</b>	<b>383</b>
Contents .....	383
Understanding the LACP Bypass All-active Mode .....	383



Configuring LACP Bypass .....	383
Virtual Router Redundancy - VRR .....	386
Contents .....	387
Configuring a VRR-enabled Network .....	387
Example VRR Configuration with MLAG .....	389
ifplugd .....	392
IGMP and MLD Snooping .....	394
Contents .....	395
Configuring IGMP/MLD Querier .....	395
Disable IGMP and MLD Snooping .....	396
Debugging IGMP/MLD Snooping .....	397
Related Information .....	399
<b>Network Virtualization .....</b>	<b>399</b>
Caveats/Errata .....	400
Cut-through Mode and Store & Forward Switching .....	400
MTU Size for Virtual Network Interfaces .....	400
Useful Links .....	400
Static VXLAN Tunnels .....	401
Contents .....	401
Requirements .....	401
Example Configuration .....	402
Configuring Static VXLAN Tunnels .....	402
Verifying the Configuration .....	406
Static MAC Bindings with VXLAN .....	406
Contents .....	407
Requirements .....	407
Example VXLAN Configuration .....	407
Configuring the Static MAC Bindings VXLAN .....	407
Troubleshooting VXLANs in Cumulus Linux .....	409
Lightweight Network Virtualization - LNV Overview .....	410
Contents .....	410
Understanding LNV Concepts .....	411
Requirements .....	413
Sample LNV Configuration .....	414
Configuring the VLAN to VXLAN Mapping .....	420
Verifying the VLAN to VXLAN Mapping .....	422
Enabling and Managing Service Node and Registration Daemons .....	423
Configuring the Registration Node .....	424
Configuring the Service Node .....	426
Verification and Troubleshooting .....	428
Advanced LNV Usage .....	432
Related Information .....	438
LNV VXLAN Active-Active Mode .....	438
LNV Full Example .....	459



Ethernet Virtual Private Network - EVPN .....	466
Contents .....	467
Basic EVPN Configuration .....	469
ARP and ND Suppression .....	474
EVPN and VXLAN Active-Active Mode .....	476
Inter-subnet Routing .....	476
Prefix-based Routing – EVPN Type-5 Routes .....	481
Static (Sticky) MAC Addresses .....	482
EVPN Operational Commands .....	483
Troubleshooting EVPN .....	497
Caveats .....	497
Example Configuration .....	498
VXLAN Routing .....	511
Contents .....	512
VXLAN Routing Data Plane and the Broadcom Tomahawk and Trident II+ Platforms .....	513
Configuring VXLAN Routing .....	514
VXLAN Routing with Active-Active VTEPs .....	528
VXLAN with VRFs .....	528
Viewing VXLAN Routing Information .....	529
Troubleshooting VXLAN Routing .....	530
VXLAN Hyperloop .....	530
Contents .....	530
Requirements .....	531
Hyperloop Use Cases .....	531
VXLAN Hyperloop Troubleshooting Matrix .....	535
Integrating Hardware VTEPs with Midokura MidoNet and OpenStack .....	538
Contents .....	539
Getting Started .....	540
Troubleshooting MidoNet and Cumulus VTEPs .....	548
Integrating Hardware VTEPs with VMware NSX-V .....	556
Contents .....	556
Getting Started .....	557
Bootstrapping the NSX-V Integration .....	557
Configuring the Transport Zone and Segment ID .....	563
Configuring the Logical Layer .....	565
Verifying the VXLAN Configuration .....	568
Integrating Hardware VTEPs with VMware NSX .....	569
Contents .....	569
Getting Started .....	570
Bootstrapping the NSX Integration .....	570
Configuring the Transport Layer .....	576
Configuring the Logical Layer .....	577
Verifying the VXLAN Configuration .....	581
Troubleshooting VXLANs in NSX .....	581
VXLAN Scale .....	582



Hybrid Cloud Connectivity with QinQ and VXLANS .....	583
Contents .....	583
Removing the Early Access QinQ Metapackage .....	584
Configuring Single Tag Translation .....	584
Configuring Double Tag Translation .....	588
Caveats and Errata .....	590
<b>Layer 3 .....</b>	<b>591</b>
Routing .....	592
Contents .....	592
Managing Static Routes .....	592
Configuring a Gateway or Default Route .....	595
Supported Route Table Entries .....	595
Caveats and Errata .....	599
Related Information .....	600
Introduction to Routing Protocols .....	600
Contents .....	600
Defining Routing Protocols .....	600
Configuring Routing Protocols .....	600
Protocol Tuning .....	601
Network Topology .....	601
Contents .....	602
Clos Topologies .....	602
Over-Subscribed and Non-Blocking Configurations .....	602
Containing the Failure Domain .....	603
Load Balancing .....	603
FRRouting Overview .....	603
Contents .....	604
Architecture .....	604
About zebra .....	604
Related Information .....	604
Upgrading from Quagga to FRRouting .....	605
Configuring FRRouting .....	609
Contents .....	609
Configuring FRRouting .....	609
Interface IP Addresses and VRFs .....	612
Using the FRRouting vtysh Modal CLI .....	612
Reloading the FRRouting Configuration .....	617
Related Information .....	617
Comparing NCLU and vtysh Commands .....	618
Open Shortest Path First - OSPF - Protocol .....	620
Contents .....	621
Scalability and Areas .....	621
Configuring OSPFv2 .....	622
Scaling Tips .....	625



Unnumbered Interfaces .....	631
Applying a Route Map for Route Updates .....	632
ECMP .....	632
Topology Changes and OSPF Reconvergence .....	633
Debugging OSPF .....	633
Related Information .....	634
Open Shortest Path First v3 - OSPFv3 - Protocol .....	634
Contents .....	635
Configuring OSPFv3 .....	635
Unnumbered Interfaces .....	635
Debugging OSPF .....	635
Related Information .....	636
Border Gateway Protocol - BGP .....	636
Contents .....	636
Autonomous System Number (ASN) .....	637
eBGP and iBGP .....	638
Route Reflectors .....	638
ECMP with BGP .....	640
Configuring BGP .....	640
Using BGP Unnumbered Interfaces .....	641
BGP add-path .....	647
Fast Convergence Design Considerations .....	650
Using Peer Groups to Simplify Configuration .....	651
Configuring BGP Dynamic Neighbors .....	651
Configuring BGP Peering Relationships across Switches .....	652
Configuring MD5-enabled BGP Neighbors .....	654
Configuring eBGP Multihop .....	657
Configuring BGP TTL Security .....	658
Configuration Tips .....	660
Troubleshooting BGP .....	662
Enabling Read-only Mode .....	668
Applying a Route Map for Route Updates .....	668
Protocol Tuning .....	669
Caveats and Errata .....	671
Bidirectional Forwarding Detection - BFD .....	672
Contents .....	672
Using BFD Multihop Routed Paths .....	672
BFD Parameters .....	672
Configuring BFD .....	673
BFD in BGP .....	673
BFD in OSPF .....	674
OSPF Show Commands .....	675
Scripts .....	676
Echo Function .....	677
Troubleshooting BFD .....	678



Equal Cost Multipath Load Sharing - Hardware ECMP .....	679
Contents .....	679
Understanding Equal Cost Routing .....	679
Understanding ECMP Hashing .....	679
Resilient Hashing .....	683
Redistribute Neighbor .....	687
Contents .....	688
Availability .....	688
Target Use Cases and Best Practices .....	688
How It Works .....	689
Configuration Steps .....	689
Known Limitations .....	693
Troubleshooting .....	693
Virtual Routing and Forwarding - VRF .....	696
Contents .....	698
Configuring VRF .....	698
FRRouting Operation in a VRF .....	702
Example Commands to Show VRF Data .....	705
Using BGP Unnumbered Interfaces with VRF .....	713
Using DHCP with VRF .....	715
Using ping or traceroute .....	719
Caveats and Errata .....	720
Management VRF .....	720
Contents .....	720
Enabling Management VRF .....	721
Running Services within the Management VRF .....	722
OSPF and BGP .....	727
Using SSH within a Management VRF Context .....	727
Viewing the Routing Tables .....	727
Using the mgmt Interface Class .....	728
Management VRF and DNS .....	729
Incompatibility with cl-ns-mgmt .....	730
Protocol Independent Multicast - PIM .....	730
Contents .....	730
PIM Overview .....	731
PIM Sparse Mode (PIM-SM) .....	735
Configuring PIM .....	740
Source Specific Multicast Mode (SSM) .....	745
IP Multicast Boundaries .....	746
Multicast Source Discovery Protocol (MSDP) .....	747
Verifying PIM .....	748
PIM in a VRF .....	752
BFD for PIM Neighbors .....	755
Troubleshooting PIM .....	755
Caveats and Errata .....	759



<b>Monitoring and Troubleshooting</b>	<b>759</b>
Contents	760
Using the Serial Console	760
Configuring the Serial Console on ARM Switches	760
Configuring the Serial Console on x86 Switches	761
Getting General System Information	762
Diagnostics Using cl-support	762
Sending Log Files to a syslog Server	763
Using NCLU	763
Logging Technical Details	763
Local Logging	764
Enabling Remote syslog	765
Writing to syslog with Management VRF Enabled	766
Rate-limiting syslog Messages	766
Harmless syslog Error: Failed to reset devices.list	767
Syslog Troubleshooting Tips	767
Next Steps	770
Single User Mode - Boot Recovery	770
Resource Diagnostics Using cl-resource-query	771
Monitoring System Hardware	773
Contents	773
Monitoring Hardware Using decode-syseeprom	773
Monitoring Hardware Using sensors	774
Monitoring Switch Hardware Using SNMP	776
Monitoring System Units Using smond	776
Keeping the Switch Alive Using the Hardware Watchdog	777
Related Information	778
Network Switch Port LED and Status LED Guidelines	778
Monitoring Virtual Device Counters	781
Contents	781
Sample VXLAN Statistics	781
Sample VLAN Statistics	782
Configuring the Counters in switchd	783
Caveats and Errata	784
Buffer Monitoring	785
Contents	785
Understanding Histograms	785
Configuring Buffer Monitoring	786
Restarting the asic-monitor Service	788
Understanding Triggers	789
Understanding Monitoring Actions	789
Caveats and Errata	789
Understanding the cl-support Output File	789
Troubleshooting Log Files	791



Troubleshooting the etc Directory .....	793
Troubleshooting Network Interfaces .....	807
Contents .....	807
Enabling Logging for Networking .....	807
Using ifquery to Validate and Debug Interface Configurations .....	808
Debugging Mako Template Errors .....	809
ifdown Cannot Find an Interface that Exists .....	810
Removing All References to a Child Interface .....	810
MTU Set on a Logical Interface Fails with Error: "Numerical result out of range" .....	811
Interpreting iproute2 batch Command Failures .....	811
Understanding the "RTNETLINK answers: Invalid argument" Error when Adding a Port to a Bridge .....	811
MLAG Peerlink Interface Drops Many Packets .....	812
Monitoring Interfaces and Transceivers Using ethtool .....	812
Network Troubleshooting .....	816
Contents .....	816
Checking Reachability Using ping .....	817
Printing Route Trace Using traceroute .....	817
Manipulating the System ARP Cache .....	818
Generating Traffic Using mz .....	818
Creating Counter ACL Rules .....	819
Configuring SPAN and ERSPAN .....	820
Monitoring Control Plane Traffic with tcpdump .....	828
Caveats and Errata .....	829
Related Information .....	829
Using NCLU to Troubleshoot Your Network Configuration .....	829
Monitoring System Statistics and Network Traffic with sFlow .....	832
SNMP Monitoring .....	835
Contents .....	835
Introduction to SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol) .....	836
Configuring Ports for SNMP to Listen for Requests .....	836
Quick Start Guide .....	836
Starting the SNMP Daemon .....	839
Configuring SNMP .....	839
snmpwalk a Switch from Another Linux Device .....	852
SNMP Traps .....	854
Supported MIBs .....	864
About Pass Persist Scripts .....	867
Troubleshooting .....	868
Using Nutanix Prism as a Monitoring Tool .....	869
Monitoring Best Practices .....	878
Contents .....	878
Overview .....	879
Hardware .....	880
System Data .....	882



Process Restart .....	884
Layer 1 Protocols and Interfaces .....	884
Layer 2 Protocols .....	891
Layer 3 Protocols .....	893
Logging .....	896
Protocols and Services .....	898
Device Management .....	898
<b>Network Solutions .....</b>	<b>899</b>
Data Center Host to ToR Architecture .....	900
Contents .....	900
Layer 2 - Architecture .....	900
Layer 3 Architecture .....	904
Network Virtualization .....	912
Cumulus Networks Services Demos .....	913
Contents .....	913
Reference Topology .....	914
Docker on Cumulus Linux .....	916
Setting up Docker on Cumulus Linux .....	916
Performance Notes .....	918
OpenStack Neutron ML2 and Cumulus Linux .....	918
Contents .....	919
Configuring the REST API .....	919
Installing and Configuring the Cumulus Networks Modular Layer 2 Mechanism Driver .....	920
Demo .....	920
Anycast Design Guide .....	921
Anycast Architecture .....	921
Anycast with TCP and UDP .....	922
Resilient Hashing .....	923
Applications for Anycast .....	925
Conclusion .....	926
RDMA over Converged Ethernet - RoCE .....	927
Contents .....	927
Enabling RDMA over Converged Ethernet with PFC .....	927
Enabling RDMA over Converged Ethernet with ECN .....	928
Related Information .....	929
<b>Index .....</b>	<b>930</b>

©2018 Cumulus Networks. All rights reserved

CUMULUS, the Cumulus Logo, CUMULUS NETWORKS, and the Rocket Turtle Logo (the “Marks”) are trademarks and service marks of Cumulus Networks, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries. You are not permitted to use the Marks without the prior written consent of Cumulus Networks. The registered trademark Linux® is used pursuant to a sublicense from LMI, the exclusive licensee of Linus Torvalds, owner of the mark on a worldwide basis. All other marks are used under fair use or license from their respective owners.



# Introducing Cumulus Linux

Cumulus Linux is the networking industry's first full-featured Linux operating system. The [Debian Jessie](#)-based, networking-focused distribution runs on hardware produced by a [broad partner ecosystem](#), ensuring unmatched customer choice regarding silicon, optics, cables, and systems.

This user guide provides in-depth documentation covering installing Cumulus Linux, system configuration and management, network solutions, and monitoring and troubleshooting recommendations. In addition, the quick start guide provides an end-to-end setup process to get you started with Cumulus Linux.

This documentation is current as of March 2, 2018 for version 3.5.2. Please visit the [Cumulus Networks Web site](#) for the most up to date documentation.

Read the [release notes](#) for new features and known issues in this release.

## What's New in Cumulus Linux 3.5

Cumulus Linux 3.5 contains a number of new platforms, features and improvements:

- New [platforms](#) include:
  - Accton OMP-800 chassis/Cumulus Express CX-10256-S (100G)
  - Delta 9032-v1 (100G Tomahawk) and AG7648 (10G Trident II)
  - Broadcom Maverick-based 10G switches, including Dell S4128F-ON
  - Edgecore AS5812 AC with 3Y PSU
  - Facebook Wedge-100S now generally available
  - Mellanox Spectrum A1 chipsets in the 2100, 2410 and 2700 models; Mellanox 2740 (100G) and 2740B (40G)
  - Quanta LY7 (10G)
  - 10GBASE-LR BiDi optics
- [Symmetric VXLAN routing](#) (see page 511)
- VLAN-aware bridge support for ovs-vtep, for [VXLAN solutions using controllers](#)
- OSPF is now [VRF-aware](#) (see page 696)
- [Voice VLAN](#)
- [PIM](#) (see page 730) now supports overlapping IP addresses and IP multicast boundaries
- [Bridge layer 2 protocol tunnels](#)
- The SNMP [Cumulus-Counters-MIB](#) (see page 864) file includes a new table `pfcClCountersTable` for link pause and priority flow control counters
- See [what's new and different with NCLU](#) in this release

It also contains these [early access](#) features and platforms:

For further information regarding bug fixes and known issues present in this release, refer to the [product release notes](#).



## Open Source Contributions

Cumulus Networks has forked various software projects, like CFEEngine, Netdev and some Puppet Labs packages in order to implement various Cumulus Linux features. The forked code resides in the Cumulus Networks [GitHub repository](#).

Cumulus Networks developed and released as open source some new applications as well.

The list of open source projects is on the [open source software](#) page.

## Hardware Compatibility List

You can find the most up to date hardware compatibility list (HCL) [here](#). Use the HCL to confirm that your switch model is supported by Cumulus Networks. The HCL is updated regularly, listing products by port configuration, manufacturer, and SKU part number.

# Quick Start Guide

This quick start guide provides an end-to-end setup process for installing and running Cumulus Linux, as well as a collection of example commands for getting started once installation is complete.

## ⓘ Prerequisites

Prior intermediate Linux knowledge is assumed for this guide. You should be familiar with basic text editing, Unix file permissions, and process monitoring. A variety of text editors are pre-installed, including `vi` and `nano`.

You must have access to a Linux or UNIX shell. If you are running Windows, you should use a Linux environment like [Cygwin](#) as your command line tool for interacting with Cumulus Linux.

 If you're a networking engineer but are unfamiliar with Linux concepts, refer to [this reference guide](#) for examples of the Cumulus Linux CLI and configuration options, and their equivalent Cisco Nexus 3000 NX-OS commands and settings for comparison. You can also [watch a series of short videos](#) introducing you to Linux in general and some Cumulus Linux-specific concepts in particular.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Installation (see page 19)
  - Upgrade to the Latest Version (see page 20)
- Getting Started (see page 20)
  - Login Credentials (see page 20)
  - Serial Console Management (see page 20)
  - Wired Ethernet Management (see page 20)
  - Configuring the Hostname and Timezone (see page 21)
  - Verifying the System Time (see page 22)
  - Installing the License (see page 22)
- Configuring Breakout Ports with Splitter Cables (see page 23)
- Testing Cable Connectivity (see page 23)
- Configuring Switch Ports (see page 24)
  - Layer 2 Port Configuration (see page 24)
  - Layer 3 Port Configuration (see page 26)
- Configuring a Loopback Interface (see page 27)



## Installation

To install Cumulus Linux, you use [ONIE](#) (Open Network Install Environment), an extension to the traditional U-Boot software that allows for automatic discovery of a network installer image. This facilitates the ecosystem model of procuring switches, with a user's own choice of operating system loaded, such as Cumulus Linux.



If Cumulus Linux 3.0.0 or later is already installed on your switch, and you need to upgrade the software only, you can skip to [Upgrading Cumulus Linux \(see page 20\)](#) below.

The easiest way to install Cumulus Linux with ONIE is via local HTTP discovery:

1. If your host (like a laptop or server) is IPv6-enabled, make sure it is running a web server.  
If the host is IPv4-enabled, make sure it is running DHCP as well as a web server.
2. [Download](#) the Cumulus Linux installation file to the root directory of the web server. Rename this file `onie-installer`.
3. Connect your host via Ethernet cable to the management Ethernet port of the switch.
4. Power on the switch. The switch downloads the ONIE image installer and boots it. You can watch the progress of the install in your terminal. After the installation finishes, the Cumulus Linux login prompt appears in the terminal window.



These steps describe a flexible unattended installation method. You should not need a console cable. A fresh install via ONIE using a local web server should generally complete in less than 10 minutes.

You have more options for installing Cumulus Linux with ONIE. Read [Installing a New Cumulus Linux Image \(see page 34\)](#) to install Cumulus Linux using ONIE in the following ways:

- DHCP/web server with and without DHCP options
- Web server without DHCP
- FTP or TFTP without a web server
- Local file
- USB

ONIE supports many other discovery mechanisms using USB (copy the installer to the root of the drive), DHCPv6 and DHCPv4, and image copy methods including HTTP, FTP, and TFTP. For more information on these discovery methods, refer to the [ONIE documentation](#).

After installing Cumulus Linux, you are ready to:

- Log in to Cumulus Linux on the switch.
- Install the Cumulus Linux license.
- Configure Cumulus Linux. This quick start guide provides instructions on configuring switch ports and a loopback interface.



## Upgrade to the Latest Version

If you are running a Cumulus Linux version earlier than 3.0.0, you must perform a complete install, as described above ([see page](#)). If you already have Cumulus Linux 3.0.0 or later installed on your switch, read [Upgrading Cumulus Linux](#) ([see page 29](#)) for considerations before start the process.

## Getting Started

When bringing up Cumulus Linux for the first time, the management port makes a DHCPv4 request. To determine the IP address of the switch, you can cross reference the MAC address of the switch with your DHCP server. The MAC address should be located on the side of the switch or on the box in which the unit was shipped.

## Login Credentials

The default installation includes one system account, `root`, with full system privileges, and one user account, `cumulus`, with `sudo` privileges. The `root` account password is set to null by default (which prohibits login), while the `cumulus` account is configured with this default password:

```
CumulusLinux!
```

In this quick start guide, you will use the `cumulus` account to configure Cumulus Linux.



For best security, you should change the default password (using the `passwd` command) before you configure Cumulus Linux on the switch.

All accounts except `root` are permitted remote SSH login; `sudo` may be used to grant a non-root account root-level access. Commands which change the system configuration require this elevated level of access.

For more information about sudo, read [Using sudo to Delegate Privileges](#) ([see page 105](#)).

## Serial Console Management

Users are encouraged to perform management and configuration over the network, [either in band or out of band](#) ([see page 51](#)). Use of the serial console is fully supported; however, many customers prefer the convenience of network-based management.

Typically, switches ship from the manufacturer with a mating DB9 serial cable. Switches with ONIE are always set to a 115200 baud rate.

## Wired Ethernet Management

Switches supported in Cumulus Linux always contain at least one dedicated Ethernet management port, which is named `eth0`. This interface is geared specifically for out-of-band management use. The management interface uses DHCPv4 for addressing by default. You can set a static IP address with the Network Command Line Utility (NCLU).



## ⓘ Example IP Configuration

Set the static IP address with the `interface` address and `interface gateway` NCLU commands:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface eth0 ip address 192.0.2.42  
/24  
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface eth0 ip gateway 192.0.2.1  
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending  
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands produce the following snippet in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```
auto eth0  
iface eth0  
    address 192.0.2.42/24  
    gateway 192.0.2.1
```

## *Configuring the Hostname and Timezone*

To change the hostname, run `net add hostname`, which modifies both the `/etc/hostname` and `/etc/hosts` files with the desired hostname.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add hostname <hostname>  
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending  
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```



The command prompt in the terminal doesn't reflect the new hostname until you either log out of the switch or start a new shell.



When you use this NCLU command to set the hostname, DHCP **does not** override the hostname when you reboot the switch. However, if you disable the hostname setting with NCLU, DHCP **does** override the hostname the next time you reboot the switch.

To update the timezone, use the NTP interactive mode:



1. Run the following command in a terminal:

```
sudo dpkg-reconfigure tzdata
```

2. Follow the on screen menu options to select the geographic area and region.



Programs that are already running (including log files) and users currently logged in, will not see timezone changes made with interactive mode. To have the timezone set for all services and daemons, a reboot is required.

## Verifying the System Time

Before you install the license, verify that the switch's date and time are correct. You must [correct the time \(see page 95\)](#) if it is wrong, as the wrong date may have other impacts on the switch like an inability to synchronize with Puppet or return errors like this one after you restart `switchd`:

*Warning: Unit file of switchd.service changed on disk, 'systemctl daemon-reload' recommended.*

## Installing the License

Cumulus Linux is licensed on a per-instance basis. Each network system is fully operational, enabling any capability to be utilized on the switch with the exception of forwarding on switch panel ports. Only eth0 and console ports are activated on an unlicensed instance of Cumulus Linux. Enabling front panel ports requires a license.

You should have received a license key from Cumulus Networks or an authorized reseller. Here is a sample license key:

```
user@company.com|thequickbrownfoxjumpsoverthelazydog312
```

There are three ways to install the license onto the switch:

- Copy it from a local server. Create a text file with the license and copy it to a server accessible from the switch. On the switch, use the following command to transfer the file directly on the switch, then install the license file:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ scp user@my_server:/home/user/my_license_file.txt .
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-license -i my_license_file.txt
```

- Copy the file to an HTTP server (not HTTPS), then reference the URL when you run `cl-license`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-license -i <URL>
```

- Copy and paste the license key into the `cl-license -i` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-license -i  
<paste license key>  
^d
```



You don't have to reboot the switch to activate the switch ports. Once you install the license, restart the `switchd` service. All front panel ports become active and show up as `swp1`, `swp2`, and so forth.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart switchd.service
```



If a license is not installed on a Cumulus Linux switch, the `switchd` service does not start. Once you install the license, start `switchd` as described above.

## Configuring Breakout Ports with Splitter Cables

If you are using 4x10G DAC or AOC cables, or want to break out 100G or 40G switch ports, configure the breakout ports. For more details, see [Layer 1 and Switch Port Attributes \(see page 241\)](#).

## Testing Cable Connectivity

By default, all data plane ports (every Ethernet port except the management interface, `eth0`) are disabled.

To test cable connectivity, administratively enable a port:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1  
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending  
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

To administratively enable all physical ports, run the following command, where `swp1-52` represents a switch with switch ports numbered from `swp1` to `swp52`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1-52  
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending  
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

To view link status, use `net show interface all`. The following examples show the output of ports in "admin down", "down" and "up" modes:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show interface all
      Name           Speed   MTU     Mode
Summary
-----
-----
UP    lo            N/A    65536  Loopback   IP:
10.0.0.11/32, 127.0.0.1/8, ::1/128
UP    eth0          1G    1500   Mgmt       IP:
192.168.0.11/24(DHCP)
UP    swp1 (hypervisor_port_1) 1G    1500   Access/L2
Untagged: br0
UP    swp2          1G    1500   NotConfigured
ADMDN swp45         0M    1500   NotConfigured
ADMDN swp46         0M    1500   NotConfigured
ADMDN swp47         0M    1500   NotConfigured
ADMDN swp48         0M    1500   NotConfigured
ADMDN swp49         0M    1500   NotConfigured
ADMDN swp50         0M    1500   NotConfigured
UP    swp51          1G    1500   BondMember
Master: bond0(DN)
UP    blue          N/A    65536  NotConfigured
DN    bond0          N/A    1500   Bond        Bond
Members: swp51(UN)
UP    br0            N/A    1500   Bridge/L3  IP:
172.16.1.1/24
Untagged Members: swp1                           802.1
q Tag: Untagged                                     STP:
RootSwitch(32768)
UP    red            N/A    65536  NotConfigured
ADMDN rename13        0M    1500   NotConfigured
ADMDN vagrant        0M    1500   NotConfigured
```

## Configuring Switch Ports

### Layer 2 Port Configuration

Cumulus Linux does not put all ports into a bridge by default. To create a bridge and configure one or more front panel ports as members of the bridge, use the following examples as guides.



## Examples

### ① Example One

In the following configuration example, the front panel port swp1 is placed into a bridge called *bridge*. The NCLU commands are:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge bridge ports swp1
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

The commands above produce the following /etc/network/interfaces snippet:

```
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports swp1
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
```

### ① Example Two

A range of ports can be added in one command. For example, add swp1 through swp10, swp12, and swp14 through swp20 to bridge:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge bridge ports swp1-10,12,14-20
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

This creates the following /etc/network/interfaces snippet:

```
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports swp1 swp2 swp3 swp4 swp5 swp6 swp7 swp8
    swp9 swp10 swp12 swp14 swp15 swp16 swp17 swp18 swp19 swp20
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
```

To view the changes in the kernel, use the brctl command:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ brctl show
bridge name      bridge id          STP enabled    interfaces
bridge          8000.443839000004    yes           swp1
                                         swp2
```



A script is available to generate a configuration that [places all physical ports in a single bridge](#).

## Layer 3 Port Configuration

The NCLU can also be used to configure a front panel port or bridge interface as a layer 3 port.

In the following configuration example, the front panel port swp1 is configured as a layer 3 access port:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 ip address 10.1.1.1/30
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

This creates the following /etc/network/interfaces snippet:

```
auto swp1
iface swp1
    address 10.1.1.1/30
```

To add an IP address to a bridge interface, it must be put into a VLAN interface:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan 100 ip address 10.2.2.1/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

This creates the following /etc/network/interfaces snippet:

```
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-vids 100
    bridge-vlan-aware yes

auto vlan100
iface vlan100
    address 192.168.10.1/24
    vlan-id 100
    vlan-raw-device bridge
```



To view the changes in the kernel use the `ip addr show` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip addr show
...
4. swp1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast
    master bridge state UP group default qlen 1000
        link/ether 44:38:39:00:6e:fe brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
...
14: bridge: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
    state UP group default
        link/ether 44:38:39:00:00:04 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
        inet6 fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:4/64 scope link
            valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
...
```

## Configuring a Loopback Interface

Cumulus Linux has a loopback preconfigured in `/etc/network/interfaces`. When the switch boots up, it has a loopback interface, called `lo`, which is up and assigned an IP address of 127.0.0.1.



The loopback interface `lo` must always be specified in `/etc/network/interfaces` and must always be up.

To see the status of the loopback interface (`lo`), use the `net show interface lo` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show interface lo
      Name      MAC              Speed      MTU      Mode
      --  -----  -----  -----
      UP   lo      00:00:00:00:00:00  N/A       65536    Loopback

  IP Details
  -----
  IP:                      127.0.0.1/8, ::1/128
  IP Neighbor(ARP) Entries: 0
```

Note that the loopback is up and is assigned an IP address of 127.0.0.1.

To add an IP address to a loopback interface, configure the `lo` interface with NCLU:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add loopback lo ip address 10.1.1.1/32
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```



Multiple loopback addresses can be configured by adding additional address lines:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add loopback lo ip address 172.16.2.1/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

This creates the following snippet in /etc/network/interfaces:

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.1.1.1/32
    address 172.16.2.1/24
```



# Installation Management

A Cumulus Linux switch can have only one image of the operating system installed. This section discusses installing new and updating existing Cumulus Linux disk images, and configuring those images with additional applications (via packages) if desired.

Zero touch provisioning is a way to quickly deploy and configure new switches in a large-scale environment.

## Managing Cumulus Linux Disk Images

The Cumulus Linux operating system resides on a switch as a *disk image*. This section discusses how to manage the image, including installation and upgrading.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- [Installing a New Cumulus Linux Image \(see page 29\)](#)
- [Upgrading Cumulus Linux \(see page 29\)](#)
- [x86 vs ARM Switches \(see page 29\)](#)
- [Reprovisioning the System \(Restart Installer\) \(see page 30\)](#)
- [Uninstalling All Images and Removing the Configuration \(see page 30\)](#)
- [Booting into Rescue Mode \(see page 31\)](#)
- [Inspecting Image File Contents \(see page 32\)](#)
- [Related Information \(see page 33\)](#)

### Installing a New Cumulus Linux Image

For details, read the chapter, [Installing a New Cumulus Linux Image \(see page 34\)](#).

### Upgrading Cumulus Linux

There are two ways you can upgrade Cumulus Linux:

- Upgrading only the changed packages, using `apt-get update` and `apt-get upgrade`. **This is the preferred method.**
- Perform a binary (full image) install of the new version, using [ONIE](#). This is used when moving between major versions or if you want to install a clean image.

The entire upgrade process is described in [Upgrading Cumulus Linux \(see page 48\)](#).

### x86 vs ARM Switches

You can easily determine whether your switch is on an x86 or ARM platform by using the `uname -m` command.

For example, on an x86 platform, `uname -m` outputs `x86_64`:



```
cumulus@x86switch$ uname -m  
x86_64
```

While on an ARM platform, `uname -m` outputs `armv7l`:

```
cumulus@ARMswitch$ uname -m  
armv7l
```

You can also visit the HCL ([hardware compatibility list](#)) to look at your hardware to determine the processor type.

## Reprovisioning the System (Restart Installer)

You can reprovision the system, wiping out the contents of the whole switch.

To initiate the provisioning and installation process, use `onie-select -i`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo onie-select -i  
WARNING:  
WARNING: Operating System install requested.  
WARNING: This will wipe out all system data.  
WARNING:  
Are you sure (y/N)? y  
Enabling install at next reboot...done.  
Reboot required to take effect.
```



A reboot is required for the reinstall to begin.



If you change your mind, you can cancel a pending reinstall operation by using `onie-select -c`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo onie-select -c  
 Cancelling pending install at next reboot...done.
```

## Uninstalling All Images and Removing the Configuration

To remove all installed images and configurations, returning the switch to its factory defaults, use `onie-select -k`:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo onie-select -k
WARNING:
WARNING: Operating System uninstall requested.
WARNING: This will wipe out all system data.
WARNING:
Are you sure (y/N)? y
Enabling uninstall at next reboot...done.
Reboot required to take effect.
```



A reboot is required for the uninstall to begin.



If you change your mind you can cancel a pending uninstall operation by using `onie-select -c`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo onie-select -c
Cancelling pending uninstall at next reboot...done.
```

## Booting into Rescue Mode

If your system becomes broken in some way, you may be able to correct things by booting into ONIE rescue mode. In rescue mode, the file systems are unmounted and you can use various Cumulus Linux utilities to try and fix the problem.

To reboot the system into the ONIE rescue mode, use `onie-select -r`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo onie-select -r
WARNING:
WARNING: Rescue boot requested.
WARNING:
Are you sure (y/N)? y
Enabling rescue at next reboot...done.
Reboot required to take effect.
```



A reboot is required to boot into rescue mode.



If you change your mind you can cancel a pending rescue boot operation by using `onie-select -c`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo onie-select -c  
 Cancelling pending rescue at next reboot...done.
```

## Inspecting Image File Contents

The Cumulus Linux installation disk image file is executable. From a running switch, you can display the contents of the Cumulus Linux image file by passing the `info` option to the image file. For example, if the image file is called `onie-installer` and is located in `/var/lib/cumulus/installer`, you can get information about the disk image by running:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo /var/lib/cumulus/installer/onie-installer info  
Verifying image checksum ... OK.  
Preparing image archive ... OK.  
Control File Contents  
=====  
Description: Cumulus Linux  
OS-Release: 2.1.0-0556262-201406101128-NB  
Architecture: amd64  
Date: Tue, 10 Jun 2014 11:44:28 -0700  
Installer-Version: 1.2  
Platforms: im_n29xx_t40n mlx_sx1400_i73612 dell_s6000_s1220  
Homepage: http://www.cumulusnetworks.com/  
  
Data Archive Contents  
=====  
 128 2014-06-10 18:44:26 file.list  
 44 2014-06-10 18:44:27 file.list.sha1  
104276331 2014-06-10 18:44:27 sysroot-internal.tar.gz  
 44 2014-06-10 18:44:27 sysroot-internal.tar.gz.sha1  
 5391348 2014-06-10 18:44:26 vmlinuz-initrd.tar.xz  
 44 2014-06-10 18:44:27 vmlinuz-initrd.tar.xz.sha1  
cumulus@switch:~$
```

You can also extract the contents of the image file by passing the `extract` option to the image file:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo /var/lib/cumulus/installer/onie-installer
extract PATH
Verifying image checksum ... OK.
Preparing image archive ... OK.
file.list
file.list.sha1
sysroot-internal.tar.gz
sysroot-internal.tar.gz.sha1
vmlinuz-initrd.tar.xz
vmlinuz-initrd.tar.xz.sha1
Success: Image files extracted OK.
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ls -l
total 107120
-rw-r--r-- 1 1063 3000      128 Jun 10 18:44 file.list
-rw-r--r-- 1 1063 3000      44 Jun 10 18:44 file.list.sha1
-rw-r--r-- 1 1063 3000 104276331 Jun 10 18:44 sysroot-internal.tar.gz
-rw-r--r-- 1 1063 3000      44 Jun 10 18:44 sysroot-internal.tar.gz.
sha1
-rw-r--r-- 1 1063 3000  5391348 Jun 10 18:44 vmlinuz-initrd.tar.xz
-rw-r--r-- 1 1063 3000      44 Jun 10 18:44 vmlinuz-initrd.tar.xz.
sha1
```

Finally, you can verify the contents of the image file by passing the `verify` option to the image file:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo /var/lib/cumulus/installer/onie-installer
verify
Verifying image checksum ... OK.
Preparing image archive ... OK.
file.list
file.list.sha1
sysroot-internal.tar.gz
sysroot-internal.tar.gz.sha1
vmlinuz-initrd.tar.xz
vmlinuz-initrd.tar.xz.sha1
Success: Image files extracted OK.
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ls -l
total 107120
-rw-r--r-- 1 1063 3000      128 Jun 10 18:44 file.list
-rw-r--r-- 1 1063 3000      44 Jun 10 18:44 file.list.sha1
-rw-r--r-- 1 1063 3000 104276331 Jun 10 18:44 sysroot-internal.tar.gz
-rw-r--r-- 1 1063 3000      44 Jun 10 18:44 sysroot-internal.tar.gz.
sha1
-rw-r--r-- 1 1063 3000  5391348 Jun 10 18:44 vmlinuz-initrd.tar.xz
-rw-r--r-- 1 1063 3000      44 Jun 10 18:44 vmlinuz-initrd.tar.xz.
sha1
```



## Related Information

- Open Network Install Environment (ONIE) Home Page

# Installing a New Cumulus Linux Image

Before you install Cumulus Linux, the switch can be in two different states:

- The switch has no image on it (so the switch is only running [ONIE](#)) or you desire or require a clean installation. In this case, you can install Cumulus Linux in one of the following ways, using:
  - DHCP/a web server with DHCP options (see page 35)
  - DHCP/a web server without DHCP options (see page 36)
  - A web server with no DHCP (see page 36)
  - FTP or TFTP without a web server (see page 37)
  - Local file installation (see page 38)
  - USB (see page 38)
- The switch already has Cumulus Linux installed on it, so you only need to [upgrade it](#) (see page 48).



[ONIE](#) is an open source project, equivalent to PXE on servers, that enables the installation of network operating systems (NOS) on bare metal switches.

## Understanding these Examples

The sections in this chapter are ordered from the most repeatable to the least repeatable methods. For instance, DHCP can scale to hundreds of switch installs with zero manual input, compared to something like USB installs. Installing via USB is fine for a single switch here and there but is not scalable.

- You can name your Cumulus Linux installer binary using any of the [ONIE naming schemes mentioned here](#).
- In the examples below, [PLATFORM] can be any supported Cumulus Linux platform, such as `x86_64`, or `arm`.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Understanding these Examples (see page 34)
- Installing via a DHCP/Web Server Method with DHCP Options (see page 35)
- Installing via a DHCP/Web Server Method without DHCP Options (see page 36)
- Installing via a Web Server with no DHCP (see page 36)
  - Installing from Cumulus Linux (see page 36)
  - Installing from ONIE (see page 36)
- Installing via FTP or TFTP without a Web Server (see page 37)
  - Installing from Cumulus Linux (see page 37)
  - Installing from ONIE (see page 37)

- Installing via a Local File (see page 38)
  - Installing from Cumulus Linux (see page 38)
  - Installing from ONIE (see page 38)
- Installing via USB (see page 38)
  - Preparing for USB Installation (see page 38)
  - Instructions for x86 Platforms (see page 41)
  - Instructions for ARM Platforms (see page 44)
- Installing a New Image when Cumulus Linux Is already Installed (see page 47)
  - Entering ONIE Mode from Cumulus Linux (see page 47)

## Installing via a DHCP/Web Server Method with DHCP Options

Installing Cumulus Linux in this manner is as simple as setting up a DHCP/web server on your laptop and connecting the eth0 management port of the switch to your laptop.

Once you connect the cable, the installation proceeds as follows:

1. The bare metal switch boots up and asks for an address (DHCP request).
2. The DHCP server acknowledges and responds with DHCP option 114 and the location of the installation image.
3. ONIE downloads the Cumulus Linux binary, installs and reboots.
4. Success! You are now running Cumulus Linux.



The most common method is for you to send DHCP option 114 with the entire URL to the web server (this could be the same system). However, there are many other ways to use DHCP even if you don't have full control over DHCP. [See the ONIE user guide](#) for help.

Here's an example DHCP configuration with an [ISC DHCP server](#):

```
subnet 172.0.24.0 netmask 255.255.255.0 {
    range 172.0.24.20 172.0.24.200;
    option default-url = "http://172.0.24.14/onie-installer-[PLATFORM]" ;
}
```

Here's an example DHCP configuration with [dnsmasq](#) (static address assignment):



```
dhcp-host=sw4,192.168.100.14,6c:64:1a:00:03:ba,set:sw4
dhcp-option>tag:sw4,114,"http://roz.rtplab.test/onie-installer-
[PLATFORM]"
```

If you don't have a web server, you can use [this free Apache example](#).

## Installing via a DHCP/Web Server Method without DHCP Options

If you have a laptop on the same network and the switch can pull DHCP from the corporate network, but you cannot modify DHCP options (maybe it's controlled by another team), do the following:

1. Place the Cumulus Linux binary in a directory on the web server.
2. Run the installer manually, since DHCP options can't be modified, either from ONIE or the Cumulus Linux command prompt.
  - From ONIE, run the `onie-nos-install` command:

```
ONIE:/ #onie-nos-install http://10.0.1.251/path/to/cumulus-
install-[PLATFORM].bin
```

- From Cumulus Linux, run the `onie-install` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo onie-install -a -i http://10.0.1.251
/path/to/cumulus-install-[PLATFORM].bin && sudo reboot
```

## Installing via a Web Server with no DHCP

If your laptop is on the same network as the switch eth0 interface but no DHCP server is available, you can still install directly from Cumulus Linux or using ONIE.

### *Installing from Cumulus Linux*

From Cumulus Linux, run the `onie-install` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo onie-install -a -i http://10.0.1.251/path/to
/cumulus-install-[PLATFORM].bin && sudo reboot
```

### *Installing from ONIE*

Do the following steps to run the install using ONIE. Note that ONIE is in *discovery mode*:



1. To disable discovery mode, run:

```
onie# onie-discovery-stop
```

or, on older ONIE versions if that command isn't supported:

```
onie# /etc/init.d/discover.sh stop
```

2. Assign a static address to eth0 via ONIE (using `ip addr add`):

```
ONIE:/ #ip addr add 10.0.1.252/24 dev eth0
```

3. Place the Cumulus Linux installer image in a directory on your web server.

4. Run the installer manually, since there are no DHCP options:

```
ONIE:/ #onie-nos-install http://10.0.1.251/path/to/cumulus-
install-[PLATFORM].bin
```

## Installing via FTP or TFTP without a Web Server

If your laptop is on the same network as the switch eth0 interface but no DHCP server is available, you can still install directly from Cumulus Linux or using ONIE.

### *Installing from Cumulus Linux*

If you are not utilizing DHCP options, run one of the following commands (`tftp` for TFTP or `ftp` for FTP), from the Cumulus Linux command prompt:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo onie-install -a -i ftp://local-ftp-server
/cumulus-install-[PLATFORM].bin && sudo reboot

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo onie-install -a -i tftp://local-tftp-server
/cumulus-install-[PLATFORM].bin && sudo reboot
```

### *Installing from ONIE*

To install without DHCP options using ONIE, do the following:

1. Set up DHCP or static addressing for eth0, as in the examples above.
2. If you are utilizing static addressing, disable ONIE discovery mode.
3. Place the Cumulus Linux installer image into a TFTP or FTP directory.



4. If you are not utilizing DHCP options, run one of the following commands (`tftp` for TFTP or `ftp` for FTP):

```
ONIE# onie-nos-install ftp://local-ftp-server/cumulus-install-[PLATFORM].bin  
ONIE# onie-nos-install tftp://local-tftp-server/cumulus-install-[PLATFORM].bin
```

## Installing via a Local File

You can still install referencing a local file, directly from Cumulus Linux or using ONIE.

### *Installing from Cumulus Linux*

From Cumulus Linux, run the `onie-install` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo onie-install -a -i /path/to/local/file/cumulus-install-[PLATFORM].bin && sudo reboot
```

### *Installing from ONIE*

1. Set up DHCP or static addressing for `eth0`, as in the examples above.
2. If you are utilizing static addressing, disable ONIE discovery mode.
3. Use `scp` to copy the Cumulus Linux binary to the switch.  
**Note:** Windows users can use [WinScp](#).
4. Run the installer manually from ONIE:

```
ONIE:/ #onie-nos-install /path/to/local/file/cumulus-install-[PLATFORM].bin
```

## Installing via USB

Following the steps below produces a clean installation of Cumulus Linux. This wipes out all pre-existing configuration files that may be present on the switch. Instructions are offered for x86 and ARM platforms, and also cover the installation of a license after the software installation.



Make sure to [back up \(see page 48\)](#) any important configuration files that you may need to restore the configuration of your switch after the installation finishes.



## Preparing for USB Installation

1. Download the appropriate Cumulus Linux image for your x86 or ARM platform from the [Cumulus Networks Downloads page](#).
2. Prepare your flash drive by formatting in one of the supported formats: FAT32, vFAT or EXT2.

Optional: Preparing a USB Drive inside Cumulus Linux



It is possible that you could severely damage your system with the following utilities, so please use caution when performing the actions below!



- a. Insert your flash drive into the USB port on the switch running Cumulus Linux and log in to the switch.
- b. Determine and note at which device your flash drive can be found by using output from `cat /proc/partitions` and `sudo fdisk -l [device]`. For example, `sudo fdisk -l /dev/sdb`.



These instructions assume your USB drive is the `/dev/sdb` device, which is typical if the USB stick was inserted after the machine was already booted. However, if the USB stick was plugged in during the boot process, it is possible the device could be `/dev/sda`. Make sure to modify the commands below to use the proper device for your USB drive!

- c. Create a new partition table on the device:

```
sudo parted /dev/sdb mklabel msdos
```



The `parted` utility should already be installed. However, if it is not, install it with:  
`sudo -E apt-get install parted`

- d. Create a new partition on the device:

```
sudo parted /dev/sdb -a optimal mkpart primary 0% 100%
```

- e. Format the partition to your filesystem of choice using ONE of the examples below:

```
sudo mkfs.ext2 /dev/sdb1
sudo mkfs.msdos -F 32 /dev/sdb1
sudo mkfs.vfat /dev/sdb1
```



To use `mkfs.msdos` or `mkfs.vfat`, you need to install the `dosfstools` package from the [Debian software repositories](#) (step 3 here shows you how to add repositories from Debian), as they are not included by default.

- f. To continue installing Cumulus Linux, mount the USB drive in order to move files to it.

```
sudo mkdir /mnt/usb
sudo mount /dev/sdb1 /mnt/usb
```



3. Copy the image and license files over to the flash drive and rename the image file to:

- `onie-installer-x86_64`, if installing on an x86 platform
- `onie-installer-arm`, if installing on an ARM platform



You can also use any of the [ONIE naming schemes mentioned here](#).



When using a Mac or Windows computer to rename the installation file the file extension may still be present. Make sure to remove the file extension otherwise ONIE will not be able to detect the file!

4. Insert the USB stick into the switch, then continue with the appropriate instructions below for your x86 or ARM platform.

### *Instructions for x86 Platforms*

Click to expand x86 instructions...

1. Prepare the switch for installation:

- If the switch is offline, connect to the console and power on the switch.
- If the switch is already online in Cumulus Linux, connect to the console and reboot the switch into the ONIE environment with the `sudo onie-select -i` command, followed by `sudo reboot`. Then skip to step 4 below.
- If the switch is already online in ONIE, use the `reboot` command.



SSH sessions to the switch get dropped after this step. To complete the remaining instructions, connect to the console of the switch. Cumulus Linux switches display their boot process to the console, so you need to monitor the console specifically to complete the next step.

2. Monitor the console and select the ONIE option from the first GRUB screen shown below.

```
GNU GRUB  version 1.99-27+deb7u2

+-----+
| Cumulus Linux 2.5.3a-3b46bef-201509041633-build - slot 1
| Cumulus Linux 2.5.3a-3b46bef-201509041633-build - slot 1 (recovery mode)
| Cumulus Linux 2.5.3a-3b46bef-201509041633-build - slot 2
| Cumulus Linux 2.5.3a-3b46bef-201509041633-build - slot 2 (recovery mode)
| ONIE
+-----+

Use the ^ and v keys to select which entry is highlighted.
Press enter to boot the selected OS, 'e' to edit the commands
before booting or 'c' for a command-line.
```

3. Cumulus Linux on x86 uses GRUB chainloading to present a second GRUB menu specific to the ONIE partition. No action is necessary in this menu to select the default option *ONIE; Install OS*.

```
GNU GRUB  version 2.02~beta2+e4a1fe391

+-----+
| *ONIE: Install OS
| ONIE: Rescue
| ONIE: Uninstall OS
| ONIE: Update ONIE
| ONIE: Embed ONIE
+-----+

Use the ^ and v keys to select which entry is highlighted.
Press enter to boot the selected OS, 'e' to edit the commands
before booting or 'c' for a command-line.
```



4. At this point, the USB drive should be automatically recognized and mounted. The image file should be located and automatic installation of Cumulus Linux should begin. Here is some sample output:

```
ONIE: OS Install Mode ...
Version : quanta_common_rangeley-2014.05.05-6919d98-201410171013
Build Date: 2014-10-17T10:13+0800
Info: Mounting kernel filesystems... done.
Info: Mounting LABEL=ONIE-BOOT on /mnt/onie-boot ...
initializing eth0...
scsi 6:0:0:0: Direct-Access SanDisk Cruzer Facet 1.26 PQ: 0
ANSI: 6
sd 6:0:0:0: [sdb] 31266816 512-byte logical blocks: (16.0 GB/14.
9 GiB)
sd 6:0:0:0: [sdb] Write Protect is off
sd 6:0:0:0: [sdb] Write cache: disabled, read cache: enabled,
doesn't support DPO or FUA
sd 6:0:0:0: [sdb] Attached SCSI disk
<...snip...>
ONIE: Executing installer: file://dev/sdb1/onie-installer-x86_64
Verifying image checksum ... OK.
Preparing image archive ... OK.
Dumping image info...
Control File Contents
=====
Description: Cumulus Linux
OS-Release: 3.0.0-3b46bef-201509041633-build
Architecture: amd64
Date: Fri, 27 May 2016 17:10:30 -0700
Installer-Version: 1.2
Platforms: accton_as5712_54x accton_as6712_32x
mlx_sx1400_i73612 dell_s6000_s1220 dell_s4000_c2338
dell_s3000_c2338 cel_redstone_xp cel_smallstone_xp cel_pebble
quanta_panther quanta_ly8_rangeley quanta_ly6_rangeley
quanta_ly9_rangeley
Homepage: http://www.cumulusnetworks.com/
```

5. After installation completes, the switch automatically reboots into the newly installed instance of Cumulus Linux.
6. Determine and note at which device your flash drive can be found by using output from `cat /proc/partitions` and `sudo fdisk -l [device]`. For example, `sudo fdisk -l /dev/sdb`.



These instructions assume your USB drive is the `/dev/sdb` device, which is typical if the USB stick was inserted after the machine was already booted. However, if the USB stick was plugged in during the boot process, it is possible the device could be `/dev/sda`. Make sure to modify the commands below to use the proper device for your USB drive!



7. Create a mount point to mount the USB drive to:

```
sudo mkdir /mnt/mountpoint
```

8. Mount the USB drive to the newly created mount point:

```
sudo mount /dev/sdb1 /mnt/mountpoint
```

9. Install your license file with the `cl-license` command:

```
sudo cl-license -i /mnt/mountpoint/license.txt
```

10. Check that your license is installed with the `cl-license` command.

11. Reboot the switch to utilize the new license.

```
sudo reboot
```

## Instructions for ARM Platforms

Click to expand ARM instructions...

1. Prepare the switch for installation:

- If the switch is offline, connect to the console and power on the switch.
- If the switch is already online in Cumulus Linux, connect to the console and reboot the switch into the ONIE environment with the `sudo onie-select -i` command, followed by `sudo reboot`. Then skip to step 4 below.
- If the switch is already online in ONIE, use the `reboot` command.



SSH sessions to the switch get dropped after this step. To complete the remaining instructions, connect to the console of the switch. Cumulus Linux switches display their boot process to the console, so you need to monitor the console specifically to complete the next step.



2. Interrupt the normal boot process before the countdown (shown below) completes. Press any key to stop the autobooting.

```
U-Boot 2013.01-00016-gddbf4a9-dirty (Feb 14 2014 - 16:30:46)
Accton: 1.4.0.5
CPU0: P2020, Version: 2.1, (0x80e20021)
Core: E500, Version: 5.1, (0x80211051)
Clock Configuration:
    CPU0:1200 MHz, CPU1:1200 MHz,
    CCB:600 MHz,
    DDR:400 MHz (800 MT/s data rate) (Asynchronous), LBC:37.500 MHz
L1: D-cache 32 kB enabled
    I-cache 32 kB enabled
<...snip...
USB: USB2513 hub OK
Hit any key to stop autoboot: 0
```

3. A command prompt appears, so you can run commands. Execute the following command:

```
run onie_bootcmd
```



4. At this point the USB drive should be automatically recognized and mounted. The image file should be located and automatic installation of Cumulus Linux should begin. Here is some sample output:

```
Loading Open Network Install Environment ...
Platform: arm-as4610_54p-r0
Version : 1.6.1.3
WARNING: adjusting available memory to 30000000
## Booting kernel from Legacy Image at ec040000 ...
    Image Name:    as6701_32x.1.6.1.3
    Image Type:    ARM Linux Multi-File Image (gzip compressed)
    Data Size:    4456555 Bytes = 4.3 MiB
    Load Address: 00000000
    Entry Point:  00000000
    Contents:
        Image 0: 3738543 Bytes = 3.6 MiB
        Image 1: 706440 Bytes = 689.9 KiB
        Image 2: 11555 Bytes = 11.3 KiB
    Verifying Checksum ... OK
## Loading init Ramdisk from multi component Legacy Image at
ec040000 ...
## Flattened Device Tree from multi component Image at EC040000
    Booting using the fdt at 0xec47d388
    Uncompressing Multi-File Image ... OK
    Loading Ramdisk to 2ff53000, end 2ffff788 ... OK
    Loading Device Tree to 03ffa000, end 03ffd22 ... OK
<...snip...
ONIE: Starting ONIE Service Discovery
ONIE: Executing installer: file://dev/sdb1/onie-installer-arm
Verifying image checksum ... OK.
Preparing image archive ... OK.
Dumping image info...
Control File Contents
=====
Description: Cumulus Linux
OS-Release: 3.0.0-3b46bef-201509041633-build
Architecture: arm
Date: Fri, 27 May 2016 17:08:35 -0700
Installer-Version: 1.2
Platforms: accton_as4600_54t, accton_as6701_32x, accton_5652,
accton_as5610_52x, dni_6448, dni_7448, dni_c7448n, cel_kennisis,
cel_redstone, cel_smallstone, cumulus_p2020, quanta_lb9,
quanta_ly2, quanta_ly2r, quanta_ly6_p2020
Homepage: http://www.cumulusnetworks.com/
```

5. After installation completes, the switch automatically reboots into the newly installed instance of Cumulus Linux.



6. Determine and note at which device your flash drive can be found by using output from `cat /proc/partitions` and `sudo fdisk -l [device]`. For example, `sudo fdisk -l /dev/sdb`.



These instructions assume your USB drive is the `/dev/sdb` device, which is typical if the USB stick was inserted after the machine was already booted. However, if the USB stick was plugged in during the boot process, it is possible the device could be `/dev/sda`. Make sure to modify the commands below to use the proper device for your USB drive!

7. Create a mount point to mount the USB drive to:

```
sudo mkdir /mnt/mountpoint
```

8. Mount the USB drive to the newly created mount point:

```
sudo mount /dev/sdb1 /mnt/mountpoint
```

9. Install your license file with the `cl-license` command:

```
sudo cl-license -i /mnt/mountpoint/license.txt
```

10. Check that your license is installed with the `cl-license` command.

11. Reboot the switch to utilize the new license.

```
sudo reboot
```

## Installing a New Image when Cumulus Linux Is already Installed

At times it may be necessary to put the switch into ONIE in order to do an install. This may be required when moving between major releases or re-installing from an early version of 3.y.z. For more information, see [Upgrading Cumulus Linux \(see page 58\)](#).

### Entering ONIE Mode from Cumulus Linux

If Cumulus Linux is already installed on the switch, you can enter ONIE mode in one of two ways, using:

- ONIE Recovery Mode to manually install an image from the ONIE prompt:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo onie-select -r
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo reboot
```



- ONIE Install Mode to attempt to automatically discover the image from a DHCP server:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo onie-select -i  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo reboot
```

## Upgrading Cumulus Linux

Cumulus Networks software melds the Linux host world with the networking devices world. Each world comes with its own paradigm on how to upgrade software. Before we discuss the various ways to upgrade Cumulus Linux switches, let's review the general considerations and strategies used to upgrade network devices and Linux hosts.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Upgrades: Comparing the Network Device Worldview vs. the Linux Host Worldview (see page 49)
  - Manual vs. Automated Configuration (see page 49)
  - Pre-deployment Testing of Production Environments (see page 49)
  - Locations of Configuration Data vs. Executables (see page 49)
  - Upgrade Procedure (see page 50)
  - Rollback Procedure (see page 50)
  - Third Party Packages (see page 50)
- Upgrading Cumulus Linux Devices: Strategies and Processes (see page 50)
  - Automated Configuration Is Preferred over Manual Configuration (see page 50)
  - Out-of-Band Management Is Worth the Investment (see page 51)
  - Pre-Deployment Testing of New Releases Is Advised and Enabled (see page 51)
  - Understanding the Locations of Configuration Data is Required for Successful Upgrades, Migration, and Backup (see page 51)
  - Upgrading Switches in an MLAG Pair (see page 55)
- Upgrading Cumulus Linux: Choosing between a Binary Install vs. Package Upgrade (see page 56)
  - Upgrading Using Package Installs (`apt-get update && apt-get upgrade`) (see page 56)
  - Upgrading via Binary Install (ONIE) (see page 58)
- Rolling Back a Cumulus Linux Installation (see page 58)
- Third Party Package Considerations (see page 59)
- Installation and Upgrade Workflow in Cumulus Linux 3.0 and Later (see page 59)
- Using Snapshots during Upgrades (see page 59)
- Caveats When Migrating Configuration Files Between Cumulus Linux 2.5.z and 3.0 and Later (see page 59)
- Using the Config File Migration Script to Identify and Move Files to Cumulus Linux 3.0 and Later (see page 60)



- Using Automation Tools to Back Up 2.5.z Configurations (see page 61)

## Upgrades: Comparing the Network Device Worldview vs. the Linux Host Worldview

### Manual vs. Automated Configuration

Historically, *network devices* were configured in place, and most network devices required customized configurations, which led predominantly to configuring the hardware manually. A lack of standardization between vendors, device types, and device roles hampered the development of APIs and automation tools. However, in the case of very large data centers, configurations became uniform and repeatable, and therefore scriptable. Some larger enterprises had to develop their own custom scripts to roll out data center network configurations. Virtually no industry-standard provisioning tools existed.

In contrast to data center network devices, *Linux hosts* in the data center number in the thousands and tend to have similar configurations. This increased scale led Linux sysadmins long ago to move to common tools to automate installation and configuration, since manually installing and configuring hosts did not work at the scale of a data center. Nearly all tasks are done via commonly available provisioning and orchestration tools.

### Pre-deployment Testing of Production Environments

Historically, the cost of *network device* testing has been hampered by the cost of a single device. Setting up an appropriately sized lab topology can be very expensive. As a result, it is difficult to do comprehensive topology-based testing of a release before deploying it. Thus, many network admins cannot or will not do comprehensive system testing of a new release before deploying it.

Alternatively, the cost of a *Linux host* is cheap (or nearly free when using virtualization), so rigorous testing of a release before deploying it is not encumbered by budgeting concerns. Most sysadmins extensively test new releases in the complete application environment.

### Locations of Configuration Data vs. Executables

*Network devices* generally separate configuration data from the executable code. On bootup, the executable code looks into a different file system and retrieves the configuration file or files, parses the text and uses that data to configure the software options for each software subsystem. The model is very centralized, with the executables generally being packaged together, and the configuration data following a set of rules that can be read by a centralized parser. Each vendor controls the configuration format for the entire box, since each vendor generally supports only their own software. This made sense since the platform was designed as an application-specific appliance.

Since a *Linux host* is a general purpose platform, with applications running on top of it, the locations of the files are much more distributed. Applications install and read their configuration data from text files usually stored in the /etc directory tree. Executables are generally stored in one of several *bin* directories, but the bin and etc directories are often on the same physical device. Since each *module* (application or executable) was often developed by a different organization and shared with the world, each module was responsible for its own configuration data format. Most applications are community supported, and while there are some generally accepted guiding principles on how their configuration data is formatted, no central authority exists to control or ensure compliance.



## Upgrade Procedure

Both network admins and sysadmins generally plan upgrades only to gain new functionality or to get bug fixes when the workarounds become too onerous. The goal is to reduce the number of upgrades as much as possible.

The *network device* upgrade paradigm is to leave the configuration data in place, and *replace the executable files* either all at once from a single binary image or in large chunks (subsystems). A full release upgrade comes with risk due to unexpected behavior changes in subsystems where the admin did not anticipate or need changes.

The *Linux host* upgrade paradigm is to independently *upgrade a small list of packages* while leaving most of the OS untouched. Changing a small list of packages reduces the risk of unintended consequences. Usually upgrades are a "forward only" paradigm, where the sysadmins generally plan to move to the latest code within the same major release when needed. Every few years, when a new kernel train is released, a major upgrade is planned. A major upgrade involves wiping and replacing the entire OS and migrating configuration data.

## Rollback Procedure

Even the most well planned and tested upgrades can result in unforeseen problems, and sometimes the best solution to new problems is to roll back to the previous state.

Since *network devices* clearly separate data and executables, generally the process is to *overwrite the new release executable* with the previously running executable. If the configuration was changed by the newer release, then you either have to manually back out or repair the changes, or restore from an already backed up configuration.

The *Linux host* scenario can be more complicated. There are three main approaches:

- Back out individual packages: If the problematic package is identified, the sysadmin can downgrade the affected package directly. In rare cases the configuration files may have to be restored from backup, or edited to back out any changes that were automatically made by the upgrade package.
- Flatten and rebuild: If the OS becomes unusable, you can use orchestration tools to reinstall the previous OS release from scratch and then automatically rebuild the configuration.
- Backup and restore: Another common strategy is to restore to a previous state via a backup captured before the upgrade.

## Third Party Packages

Third party packages are rare in the *network device* world. Because the network OS is usually proprietary, third party packages are usually packaged by the network device vendor and upgrades of those packages is handled by the network device upgrade system.

Third party packages in *Linux host* world often use the same package system as the distribution into which it is to be installed (for example, Debian uses `apt-get`). Or the package may be compiled and installed by the sysadmin. Configuration and executable files generally follow the same filesystem hierarchy standards as other applications.

## Upgrading Cumulus Linux Devices: Strategies and Processes

Because Cumulus Linux is both Linux *and* a network device, it has characteristics of both paradigms. The following describes the Cumulus Linux paradigm with respect to upgrade planning and execution.



## Automated Configuration Is Preferred over Manual Configuration

Because Cumulus Linux is Linux, Cumulus Networks recommends that even with small networks or test labs, network admins should make the jump to deploy, provision, configure, and upgrade switches using automation from the very beginning. The small up front investment of time spent learning an orchestration tool, even to provision a small number of Cumulus Linux devices, will pay back dividends for a long time. The biggest gain is realized during the upgrade process, where the network admin can quickly upgrade dozens of devices in a repeatable manner.

Switches, like servers, should be treated like *cattle, not pets*.

## Out-of-Band Management Is Worth the Investment

Because network devices are reachable via the IP addresses on the front panel ports, many network admins of small-to-medium sized networks use *in-band* networks to manage their switches. In this design, management traffic like SSH, SNMP, and console server connections use the same networks that regular network traffic traverses — there is no separation between the *management plane* and the *data plane*. Larger data centers create a separate *out-of-band* network with a completely separate subnet and reachability path to attach to the management ports — that is accessible via eth0 and the serial console.

This is a situation where smaller companies should learn from the big companies. A separate management network isn't free, but it is relatively cheap. With an inexpensive [Cumulus RMP](#) management switch, an inexpensive console server, and a separate cable path, up to 48 devices can be completely controlled via the out-of-band network in the case of a network emergency.

There are many scenarios where in-band networking can fail and leave the network admin waiting for someone to drive to the data center or remote site to connect directly to the console of a misconfigured or failing device. The cost of one outage would usually more than pay for the investment in a separate network. For even more security, attach remote-controllable power distribution units (PDUs) in each rack to the management network, so you can have complete control to remote power cycle every device in that rack.



However, if an out-of-band network is not available for you to upgrade, you can use [the dtach tool](#) instead to upgrade in band.

## Pre-Deployment Testing of New Releases Is Advised and Enabled

White box switches and virtualization (Cumulus VX) bring the cost of networking devices down, so the ability for network admins to test their own procedures, configurations, applications, and network topology in an appropriately-sized lab topology becomes extremely affordable.

## Understanding the Locations of Configuration Data is Required for Successful Upgrades, Migration, and Backup

As with other Linux distributions, the `/etc` directory is the primary location for all configuration data in Cumulus Linux. The following list is a likely set of files that should be backed up and migrated to a new release, but any file that has been changed would need to be examined. Cumulus Networks recommends you consider making the following files and directories part of a backup strategy.



## Network Configuration Files

File Name and Location	Explanation	Cumulus Linux Documentation	Debian Documentation
/etc/network/	Network configuration files, most notably /etc/network/interfaces and /etc/network/interfaces.d/	Layer 1 and Switch Port Attributes (see page 225)	N/A
/etc/resolv.conf	DNS resolution	Not unique to Cumulus Linux: <a href="http://wiki.debian.org/NetworkConfiguration#The_resolv.conf_configuration_file">wiki.debian.org/NetworkConfiguration#The_resolv.conf_configuration_file</a>	<a href="http://www.debian.org/doc/manuals/debian-reference/ch05.en.html">www.debian.org/doc/manuals/debian-reference/ch05.en.html</a>
/etc/frr/	Routing application (responsible for BGP and OSPF)	FRRouting Overview (see page 603)	N/A
/etc/hostname	Configuration file for the hostname of the switch	Quick Start Guide#ConfiguringtheHostnameandTimeZone (see page )	<a href="http://wiki.debian.org/HowTo/ChangeHostname">wiki.debian.org/HowTo/ChangeHostname</a>
/etc/cumulus/acl/*	Netfilter configuration	Netfilter - ACLs (see page 137)	N/A
/etc/cumulus/ports.conf	Breakout cable configuration file	Layer 1 and Switch Port Attributes#ConfiguringBreakoutPorts (see page )	N/A; please read the guide on breakout cables
/etc/cumulus/switchd.conf	Switchd configuration	Configuring switchd (see page 191)	N/A; please read the guide on switchd configuration



## Additional Commonly Used Files

File Name and Location	Explanation	Cumulus Linux Documentation	Debian Documentation
/etc/motd	Message of the day	Not unique to Cumulus Linux	<a href="http://wiki.debian.org/motd#Wheezy">wiki.debian.org/motd#Wheezy</a>
/etc/passwd	User account information	Not unique to Cumulus Linux	<a href="http://www.debian.org/doc/manuals/debian-reference/ch04.en.html">www.debian.org/doc/manuals/debian-reference/ch04.en.html</a>
/etc/shadow	Secure user account information	Not unique to Cumulus Linux	<a href="http://www.debian.org/doc/manuals/debian-reference/ch04.en.html">www.debian.org/doc/manuals/debian-reference/ch04.en.html</a>
/etc/group	Defines user groups on the switch	Not unique to Cumulus Linux	<a href="http://www.debian.org/doc/manuals/debian-reference/ch04.en.html">www.debian.org/doc/manuals/debian-reference/ch04.en.html</a>
/etc/llpd.conf	Link Layer Discover Protocol (LLDP) daemon configuration	Link Layer Discovery Protocol (see page 298)	<a href="http://packages.debian.org/wheezy/llpd">packages.debian.org/wheezy/llpd</a>
/etc/llpd.d/	Configuration directory for llpd	Link Layer Discovery Protocol (see page 298)	<a href="http://packages.debian.org/wheezy/llpd">packages.debian.org/wheezy/llpd</a>
/etc/nsswitch.conf	Name Service Switch (NSS) configuration file	TACACS Plus (see page 120)	N/A
/etc/ssh/	SSH configuration files	SSH for Remote Access (see page 101)	<a href="http://wiki.debian.org/SSH">wiki.debian.org/SSH</a>
	Best practice is to place these changes in /etc/sudoers.d/ instead of /etc/sudoers itself, as changes in the former directory are not lost on		



File Name and Location	Explanation	Cumulus Linux Documentation	Debian Documentation
/etc/sudoers and /etc/sudoers.d	upgrade. Customers upgrading from a release prior to 3.2 (such as 3.1.2) to a 3.2 or later release should be aware the <code>sudoers</code> file changed in Cumulus Linux 3.2.	<a href="#">Using sudo to Delegate Privileges (see page 105)</a>	

- If you are using the root user account, consider including `/root/`.
- If you have custom user accounts, consider including `/home/<username>/`.

### Files That Should Never Be Migrated Between Versions or Boxes

File Name and Location	Explanation
/etc/adjtime	System clock adjustment data. NTP manages this automatically. It is incorrect when the switch hardware is replaced. Do not copy.
/etc/bcm.d/	Per-platform hardware configuration directory, created on first boot. Do not copy.
/etc/mlx/	Per-platform hardware configuration directory, created on first boot. Do not copy.
/etc/blkid.tab	Partition table. It should not be modified manually. Do not copy.
/etc/blkid.tab.old	A previous partition table; it should not be modified manually. Do not copy.
/etc/cumulus/init	Platform hardware-specific files. Do not copy.
/etc/default/clagd	Created and managed by <code>ifupdown2</code> . Do not copy.
/etc/default/grub	Grub <code>init</code> table; it should not be modified manually.
/etc/default/hwclock	Platform hardware-specific file. Created during first boot. Do not copy.
/etc/init	Platform initialization files. Do not copy.
/etc/init.d/	Platform initialization files. Do not copy.



File Name and Location	Explanation
/etc/fstab	Static info on filesystem. Do not copy.
/etc/image-release	System version data. Do not copy.
/etc/os-release	System version data. Do not copy.
/etc/lsb-release	System version data. Do not copy.
/etc/lvm/archive	Filesystem files. Do not copy.
/etc/lvm/backup	Filesystem files. Do not copy.
/etc/modules	Created during first boot. Do not copy.
/etc/modules-load.d/	Created during first boot. Do not copy.
/etc/sensors.d	Platform-specific sensor data. Created during first boot. Do not copy.
/root/.ansible	Ansible tmp files. Do not copy.
/home/cumulus/.ansible	Ansible tmp files. Do not copy.

## Upgrading Switches in an MLAG Pair

If you have a pair of Cumulus Linux switches as part of an [MLAG \(multi-chassis link aggregation\) pair](#) (see [page 351](#)), you should only upgrade each switch when it is in the *secondary role*.



If you are upgrading from Cumulus Linux 2.y.z to Cumulus Linux 3.y.z, during the time when one switch in the pair is on Cumulus Linux 3.y.z and the other switch in the pair is on Cumulus Linux 2.y.z, a complete outage occurs on these switches and their associated network segments.

The upgrade path is as follows:

1. Upgrade Cumulus Linux on the switch already in the secondary role. This is the switch with the higher `cldagd-priority` value.
2. Set the switch in the secondary role into the primary role by setting its `cldagd-priority` to a value lower than the `cldagd-priority` setting on the switch in the primary role.



```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo clagctl priority VALUE
```

3. Upgrade the switch that just took on the secondary role.
4. Put that switch into the primary role again, if you so choose.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo clagctl priority VALUE
```

For more information about setting the priority, see [Understanding Switch Roles \(see page 360\)](#).

## Upgrading Cumulus Linux: Choosing between a Binary Install vs. Package Upgrade

Network admins have two ways to upgrade Cumulus Linux:

- Upgrading only the changed packages, using `apt-get update` and `apt-get upgrade`. **This is the preferred method.**
- Performing a binary (full image) install of the new version, using ONIE. This is used when moving between major versions or if you want to install a clean image.

There are advantages and disadvantages to using these methods, which are outlined below.

### *Upgrading Using Package Installs (`apt-get update && apt-get upgrade`)*

Pros:

- Configuration data stays in place while the packages are upgraded. In the event that the new version changes a configuration file, and you've also changed the configuration file, a prompt appears during the upgrade process asking which version you want to use or whether you want to evaluate the differences.
- Third-party apps stay in place.

Cons:

- This method works only if you are upgrading to a later minor release (like 3.1.x to 3.2.y), or to a later maintenance release from an earlier version of that minor release (for example, 2.5.2 to 2.5.5 or 3.0.0 to 3.0.1).
- Rollback is quite difficult and tedious.
- You can't choose the exact release version that you want to run.
- When you upgrade, you upgrade all packages to the latest available version.
- The upgrade process takes a while to complete, and various switch functions may be intermittently available during the upgrade.
- Some upgrade operations will terminate SSH sessions on the in-band (front panel) ports, leaving the user unable to monitor the upgrade process. As a workaround, use the [dtach tool](#).
- Just like the binary install method, you may have to reboot after the upgrade, lengthening the downtime.
- After you upgrade, user names and group names created by packages may be different on different switches, depending the configuration and package installation history.

### ❗ Network Disruptions When Updating/Upgrading



The `apt-get upgrade` and `apt-get install` commands cause disruptions to network services:

- The `apt-get upgrade` command may result in services being restarted or stopped as part of the upgrade process.
- The `apt-get install` command may disrupt core services by changing core service dependency packages.

In some cases, installing new packages with `apt-get install` may also upgrade additional existing packages due to dependencies. To review potential issues before installing, run `apt-get install --dry-run` to see the additional packages that will be installed and/or upgraded.



If services are stopped, a reboot may be required before those services can be started again.

To upgrade the switch by updating the packages:

1. Back up the configurations off the switch.
2. Fetch the latest update meta-data from the repository.

```
cumulus@switch$ sudo -E apt-get update
```

3. Upgrade all the packages to the latest distribution.

```
cumulus@switch$ sudo -E apt-get upgrade
```

4. Reboot the switch if the upgrade messages indicate that a system restart is required.

```
cumulus@switch$ sudo -E apt-get upgrade  
... upgrade messages here ...
```

```
*** System restart required ***
```

```
cumulus@switch$ sudo reboot
```

5. Verify correct operation with the old configurations on new version.



After you successfully upgrade Cumulus Linux, you may notice some results that you may or may not have expected:

- `apt-get upgrade` always updates the operating system to the most current version, so if you are currently running Cumulus Linux 3.0.1 and run `apt-get upgrade` on that switch, the packages get upgraded to the latest versions contained in the latest 3.y.z release.



- When you run `cat /etc/image-release`, the output still shows the version of Cumulus Linux from the last binary install. So if you installed Cumulus Linux 3.1.0 as a full image install and then upgraded to 3.2.0 using `apt-get upgrade`, the output from `/etc/image-release` still shows: `IMAGE_RELEASE=3.0.0`. To see the current version of all the Cumulus Linux packages running on the switch, use `dpkg --list` or `dpkg -l`.

## Package Upgrade Notes

- If you are using some forms of [network virtualization](#) (see page 399), including [VMware NSX-V](#) (see page 556) or [Midokura MidoNet](#) (see page 538), you may have updated the `/usr/share/openvswitch/scripts/ovs-ctl-vtep` file. This file is not marked as a configuration file, so if the file contents change in a newer version of Cumulus Linux, they will overwrite any changes you made to the file. Cumulus Networks recommends you back up this file before upgrading.

## Upgrading via Binary Install (ONIE)

Pros:

- You choose the exact version that you want to upgrade to.
- This is the only method for upgrading to a new major (X.0) version. For example, when you are upgrading from 2.5.5 to 3.0.

Cons:

- Configuration data must be moved to the new OS via ZTP while the OS is first booted, or soon afterwards via out-of-band management.
- Moving the configuration file can go wrong in various ways:
  - Identifying all the locations of config data is not always an easy task. See section above on [Understanding the Locations of Configuration Data](#) (see page 51).
  - Config file changes in the new version may cause merge conflicts that go undetected.
- If config files aren't restored correctly, the user may be unable to attach to the switch from in-band management. Hence, out-of-band connectivity (eth0 or console) is recommended.
- The installer takes a while to complete.
- Third-party apps must be reinstalled and reconfigured afterwards.

To upgrade the switch by running a binary install:

- Back up the configurations off the switch.
- Install the binary image, following the instructions at [Installing a New Cumulus Linux Image](#) (see page 34).
- Restore the configuration files to the new version — ideally via automation.
- Verify correct operation with the old configurations on the new version.
- Reinstall third party apps and associated configurations.

## Rolling Back a Cumulus Linux Installation

Rolling back to an earlier release after upgrading the packages on the switch follows the same procedure as described for the Linux host OS rollback above. There are three main strategies, and all require detailed planning and execution:



- Back out individual packages: If the problematic package is identified, the network admin can downgrade the affected package directly. In rare cases the configuration files may have to be restored from backup, or edited to back out any changes that were automatically made by the upgrade package.
- Flatten and rebuild: If the OS becomes unusable, you can use orchestration tools to reinstall the previous OS release from scratch and then automatically rebuild the configuration.
- Backup and restore: Another common strategy is to restore to a previous state via a backup captured before the upgrade.

Which method you employ is specific to your deployment strategy, so providing detailed steps for each scenario is outside the scope of this document.

## Third Party Package Considerations

Note that if you install any third party apps on a Cumulus Linux switch, any configuration data will likely be installed into the `/etc` directory, but it is not guaranteed. It is the responsibility of the network admin to understand the behavior and config file information of any third party packages installed on a Cumulus Linux switch.

After you upgrade the OS using a full binary install, you will need to reinstall any third party packages or any Cumulus Linux add-on packages, such as `vxsnd` or `vxrd`.

## Installation and Upgrade Workflow in Cumulus Linux 3.0 and Later

Beginning with version 3.0, Cumulus Linux completely embraces the Linux and Debian upgrade workflow. In this paradigm, a base image is installed using an installer, then any upgrades within that release train (major version, like 3.y.z) are done using `apt-get update && apt-get upgrade`. Any packages that have been changed since the base install get upgraded in place from the repository.

The huge advantage of this approach is that all switch configuration files remain untouched, or in rare cases merged (using the Debian merge function) during the package upgrade.

However, when upgrading a switch from a previous release train — for example, Cumulus Linux 2.5 — a mechanism is required to migrate the configuration files over to the new installation. This is the perfect opportunity to use automation and orchestration tools to backup the configuration files, examine them to verify correctness with the new version, and then to redeploy the configuration files on the new installation.

## Using Snapshots during Upgrades

Snapshots (see page 61) can aid you when upgrading the switch operating system. Cumulus Linux takes two snapshots automatically during the upgrade, one right before you run `apt-get upgrade`, and one right after. This way, if something goes wrong with the upgrade, or you need to revert to the earlier version, you can roll back to the snapshot.

## Caveats When Migrating Configuration Files Between Cumulus Linux 2.5.z and 3.0 and Later

Generally, the configuration files in Cumulus Linux 2.5.z should be able to migrate to version 3.0 or later without any problems, but there are some known issues listed below and there may be additional issues with a customer's particular setup.

Known caveats when migrating files from version 2.x to 3.0 or later:

- Some configuration files should never be migrated between versions or while replacing hardware. The [Files that Should Never be Migrated](#) (see page 54) table above contains a list of files that should never be migrated.



- /etc/passwd and /etc/shadow should not be migrated to the new version directly. The example below and the ansible script included with [Config File Migration Script](#) explicitly excludes these two files from the backup archive. The default password for the *cumulus* user must be changed, and any locally created users should be added to the new installation after the upgrade completes.
- /etc/apt/sources.list must be completely updated with a new 3.0 or later repository and repository structure. Repositories from Cumulus Linux 2.5 must be removed. If there are any custom repositories on the switch, they need to be migrated into the new sources.list file or the sources.d/ directory.

## Using the Config File Migration Script to Identify and Move Files to Cumulus Linux 3.0 and Later

You can use the [Config File Migration Script](#) with the --backup option to create a backup archive of configuration files in version 2.5, copy them off the box, then install them on the new version switch. Note that you need to follow the previous section about caveats when migrating configuration files.



You **cannot** use the Config File Migration Script to upgrade from Cumulus Linux 3.0.0 to a later version. Use `apt-get` instead, as documented in the [release notes](#).

The following example excludes /etc/apt, /etc/passwd and /etc/shadow from the backup archive.

1. Back up the version 2.5.z files.

**Optional:** Use the Ansible playbook included with the [Config File Migration script](#) to automate the backup of all your Cumulus Linux 2.5 switches. See the section below on [Using Automation Tools to Backup Configurations \(see page 61\)](#) for more details.

```
# Make a temp dir
loc=$(mktemp -d)
# Create a backup archive to the temp dir
sudo ./config_file_changes --backup --backup_dir $loc --exclude
/etc/apt,/etc/passwd,/etc/shadow
# Copy the archive and log file to an external server
sudo scp -r $loc/* user@my_external_server:.
```

2. Install Cumulus Linux 3.0 or later onto the switch using ONIE (see page 34).

3. Reinstall the files from the config file archive to the newly installed switch.

```
# On the switch, copy the config file archive back from the
server:
scp user@my_external_server:PATH/SWITCHNAME-config-archive-
DATE_TIME.tar.gz .
# Untar the archive to the root of the box
sudo tar -C / -xvf SWITCHNAME-config-archive-DATE_TIME.tar.gz
```





Be aware that version 2.5.z configurations are not guaranteed to work in Cumulus Linux 3.0 or later. You should test the restoration and proper operation of the Cumulus Linux 2.5.z configuration in Cumulus Linux 3.0 or later on a non-production switch or in a Cumulus VX image, since every deployment is unique.

## Using Automation Tools to Back Up 2.5.z Configurations

Adopting the use of orchestration tools like Ansible, Chef or Puppet for configuration management greatly increases the speed and accuracy of the next major upgrade; they also enable the quick swap of failed switch hardware. Included with the [Config Migration Script](#) is an Ansible playbook that can be used to create a backup archive of Cumulus Linux 2.5.z switch configuration files and to retrieve them to a central server — automating step 1 of the previous section for all deployed Cumulus Linux 2.5.z switches. This is a quick start on the road to setting up automated configuration and control for your deployment. For more details on integrating automation into your Cumulus Linux deployment, see the [Automation Solutions section](#) on [cumulusnetworks.com](http://cumulusnetworks.com).

## Using Snapshots

Cumulus Linux supports the ability to take snapshots of the complete file system as well as the ability to roll back to a previous snapshot. Snapshots are performed automatically right before and after you upgrade Cumulus Linux and right before and after you commit a switch configuration using [NCLU \(see page 85\)](#). In addition, you can take a snapshot at any time. You can roll back the entire file system to a specific snapshot or just retrieve specific files.

The primary snapshot components are:

- `btrfs` — an underlying file system in Cumulus Linux, which supports snapshots.
- `snapper` — a userspace utility to create and manage snapshots on demand as well as taking snapshots automatically before and after running `apt-get upgrade|install|remove|dist-upgrade`. You can use `snapper` to roll back to earlier snapshots, view existing snapshots, or delete one or more snapshots.
- [NCLU \(see page 85\)](#) — takes snapshots automatically before and after committing network configurations. You can use NCLU to roll back to earlier snapshots, view existing snapshots, or delete one or more snapshots.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- [Installing the Snapshot Package \(see page 62\)](#)
- [Taking and Managing Snapshots \(see page 62\)](#)
  - [Viewing Available Snapshots \(see page 62\)](#)
  - [Viewing Differences between Snapshots \(see page 63\)](#)
  - [Deleting Snapshots \(see page 64\)](#)
- [Rolling Back to Earlier Snapshots \(see page 65\)](#)
- [Configuring Automatic Time-based Snapshots \(see page 66\)](#)
- [Caveats and Errata \(see page 67\)](#)
  - [root Partition Mounted Multiple Times \(see page 67\)](#)



## Installing the Snapshot Package

If you're upgrading from a version of Cumulus Linux earlier than version 3.2, you need to install the `cumulus-snapshot` package before you can use snapshots.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get update
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get install cumulus-snapshot
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get upgrade
```

## Taking and Managing Snapshots

As described above, snapshots are taken automatically:

- Before and after you update your switch configuration by running `net commit`, via NCLU.
- Before and after you update Cumulus Linux by running `apt-get upgrade|install|remove|dist-upgrade`, via `snapper`.

You can also take snapshots as needed using the `snapper` utility. Run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo snapper create -d SNAPSHOT_NAME
```

For more information about using `snapper`, run `snapper --help` or `man snapper(8)`.

## Viewing Available Snapshots

You can use both NCLU and `snapper` to view available snapshots on the switch.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show commit history
#  Date                      Description
--- -----
--- -----
 20 Thu 01 Dec 2016 01:43:29 AM UTC  nclu pre  'net commit' (user
cumulus)
 21 Thu 01 Dec 2016 01:43:31 AM UTC  nclu post 'net commit' (user
cumulus)
 22 Thu 01 Dec 2016 01:44:18 AM UTC  nclu pre   '20 rollback' (user
cumulus)
 23 Thu 01 Dec 2016 01:44:18 AM UTC  nclu post '20 rollback' (user
cumulus)
 24 Thu 01 Dec 2016 01:44:22 AM UTC  nclu pre   '22 rollback' (user
cumulus)
 31 Fri 02 Dec 2016 12:18:08 AM UTC  nclu pre   'ACL' (user cumulus)
 32 Fri 02 Dec 2016 12:18:10 AM UTC  nclu post 'ACL' (user cumulus)
```

However, `net show commit history` only displays snapshots taken when you update your switch configuration. It does not list any snapshots taken directly with `snapper`. To see all the snapshots on the switch, run:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo snapper list
Type   | # | Pre # | Date                                | User |
Cleanup | Description                           | Userdata
-----+---+-----+-----+-----+-----+
single | 0 |           |                                     | root
|       | current                         |           |
single | 1 |           | Sat 24 Sep 2016 01:45:36 AM UTC | root
|       | first root filesystem           |           |
pre    | 20 |           | Thu 01 Dec 2016 01:43:29 AM UTC | root |
number | nclu pre  'net commit' (user cumulus) |           |
post   | 21 | 20          | Thu 01 Dec 2016 01:43:31 AM UTC | root |
number | nclu post 'net commit' (user cumulus) |           |
pre    | 22 |           | Thu 01 Dec 2016 01:44:18 AM UTC | root |
number | nclu pre  '20 rollback' (user cumulus) |           |
post   | 23 | 22          | Thu 01 Dec 2016 01:44:18 AM UTC | root |
number | nclu post '20 rollback' (user cumulus) |           |
single | 26 |           | Thu 01 Dec 2016 11:23:06 PM UTC | root
|       | test_snapshot                   |           |
pre    | 29 |           | Thu 01 Dec 2016 11:55:16 PM UTC | root |
number | pre-apt                          | important=yes
post   | 30 | 29          | Thu 01 Dec 2016 11:55:21 PM UTC | root |
number | post-apt                          | important=yes
pre    | 31 |           | Fri 02 Dec 2016 12:18:08 AM UTC | root |
number | nclu pre  'ACL' (user cumulus)  |           |
post   | 32 | 31          | Fri 02 Dec 2016 12:18:10 AM UTC | root |
number | nclu post 'ACL' (user cumulus)  |           |
```

## Viewing Differences between Snapshots

To see a line by line comparison of changes between two snapshots, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo snapper diff 20..21
--- /.snapshots/20/snapshot/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/50_nclu_acl.rules
rules      2016-11-30 23:00:42.675092103 +0000
+++ /.snapshots/21/snapshot/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/50_nclu_acl.rules
rules      2016-12-01 01:43:30.029171289 +0000
@@ -1,7 +0,0 @@
-[iptables]
-# control-plane: acl ipv4 EXAMPLE1 inbound
--A INPUT --in-interface swp+ -j ACCEPT -p tcp -s 10.0.0.11/32 -d
10.0.0.12/32 --dport 110
-
-# swp1: acl ipv4 EXAMPLE1 inbound
--A FORWARD --in-interface swp1 --out-interface swp2 -j ACCEPT -p tcp
-s 10.0.0.11/32 -d 10.0.0.12/32 --dport 110
-
```



```
--- /.snapshots/20/snapshot/var/lib/cumulus/nclu/nclu_acl.conf
2016-11-30 23:00:18.030079000 +0000
+++ /.snapshots/21/snapshot/var/lib/cumulus/nclu/nclu_acl.conf
2016-12-01 00:23:10.096136000 +0000
@@ -1,8 +1,3 @@
-acl ipv4 EXAMPLE1 priority 10 accept tcp 10.0.0.11/32 10.0.0.12/32
pop3 outbound-interface swp2

-control-plane
-    acl ipv4 EXAMPLE1 inbound

-iface swp1
-    acl ipv4 EXAMPLE1 inbound
```

You can view the diff for a single file by specifying the name in the command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo snapper diff 20..21 /var/lib/cumulus/nclu
/nclu_acl.conf
--- /.snapshots/20/snapshot/var/lib/cumulus/nclu/nclu_acl.conf
2016-11-30 23:00:18.030079000 +0000
+++ /.snapshots/21/snapshot/var/lib/cumulus/nclu/nclu_acl.conf
2016-12-01 00:23:10.096136000 +0000
@@ -1,8 +1,3 @@
-acl ipv4 EXAMPLE1 priority 10 accept tcp 10.0.0.11/32 10.0.0.12/32
pop3 outbound-interface swp2

-control-plane
-    acl ipv4 EXAMPLE1 inbound

-iface swp1
-    acl ipv4 EXAMPLE1 inbound
```

For a higher level view, displaying the names of changed/added/deleted files only, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo snapper status 20..21
c..... /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/50_nclu_acl.rules
c..... /var/lib/cumulus/nclu/nclu_acl.conf
```

## Deleting Snapshots

You can remove one or more snapshots using both NCLU and snapper.



Take care when deleting a snapshot, as you cannot restore it once it's been deleted.

To remove a single snapshot or a range of them created with NCLU, run:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit delete SNAPSHOT|SNAPSHOT1-SNAPSHOT2
```

To remove a single snapshot or a range of snapshots using `snapper`, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo snapper delete SNAPSHOT|SNAPSHOT1-SNAPSHOT2
```



Snapshot 0 is the running configuration. You can't roll back to it or delete it. However, you can take a snapshot of it.

Snapshot 1 is the root file system.

The `snapper` utility preserves a number of snapshots, and automatically deletes older snapshots once the limit is reached. It does this in two ways.

By default, `snapper` preserves 10 snapshots that are labeled *important*. A snapshot is labeled important if it was created when you run `apt-get`. To change this number, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo snapper set-config NUMBER_LIMIT_IMPORTANT=<NUM>
```



You should always make `NUMBER_LIMIT_IMPORTANT` an even number since two snapshots are always taken before and after an upgrade. This does not apply to `NUMBER_LIMIT`, described next.

`snapper` also deletes unlabeled snapshots. The default number of snapshots `snapper` preserves is 5. To change this number, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo snapper set-config NUMBER_LIMIT=<NUM>
```

Also, you can prevent snapshots from being taken automatically before and running `apt-get upgrade|install|remove|dist-upgrade`. Edit `/etc/cumulus/apt-snapshot.conf` and set:

```
APT_SNAPSHOT_ENABLE=no
```

## Rolling Back to Earlier Snapshots

If you need to restore Cumulus Linux to an earlier state, you can roll back to an older snapshot.

For a snapshot created with NCLU, you can revert to a specific snapshot listed in the output from `net show commit history`, or you can revert to the previous snapshot by specifying `last` when you run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net rollback SNAPSHOT_NUMBER|last
```



For any snapshot on the switch, you can use `snapper` to roll back to a specific snapshot. When running `snapper rollback`, you must reboot the switch for the rollback to complete:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo snapper rollback SNAPSHOT_NUMBER  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo reboot
```

You can also revert to an earlier version of a specific file instead of rolling back the whole file system:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo snapper undochange 31..32 /etc/cumulus/acl  
/policy.d/50_nclu_acl.rules
```



You can also copy the file directly from the snapshot directory:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cp /.snapshots/32/snapshot/etc/cumulus/acl  
/policy.d/50_nclu_acl.rules /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/
```

## Configuring Automatic Time-based Snapshots

You can configure Cumulus Linux to take hourly snapshots. You need to enable `TIMELINE_CREATE` in the `snapper` configuration:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo snapper set-config TIMELINE_CREATE=yes  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo snapper get-  
config  
Key | Value  
----+----  
ALLOW_GROUPS |  
ALLOW_USERS |  
BACKGROUND_COMPARISON | yes  
EMPTY_PRE_POST_CLEANUP | yes  
EMPTY_PRE_POST_MIN_AGE | 1800  
FSTYPE | btrfs  
NUMBER_CLEANUP | yes  
NUMBER_LIMIT | 5  
NUMBER_LIMIT_IMPORTANT | 10  
NUMBER_MIN_AGE | 1800  
QGROUP |  
SPACE_LIMIT | 0.5  
SUBVOLUME | /  
SYNC_ACL | no  
TIMELINE_CLEANUP | yes  
TIMELINE_CREATE | yes
```



<code>TIMELINE_LIMIT_DAILY</code>	5
<code>TIMELINE_LIMIT_HOURLY</code>	5
<code>TIMELINE_LIMIT_MONTHLY</code>	5
<code>TIMELINE_LIMIT_YEARLY</code>	5
<code>TIMELINE_MIN_AGE</code>	1800

## Caveats and Errata

### *root Partition Mounted Multiple Times*

You may notice that the root partition gets mounted multiple times. This is due to the way the `btrfs` file system handles subvolumes, mounting the root partition once for each subvolume. `btrfs` keeps one subvolume for each snapshot taken, which stores the snapshot data. While all snapshots are subvolumes, not all subvolumes are snapshots.

Cumulus Linux excludes a number of directories when it takes a snapshot of the root file system (and from any rollbacks):

Directory	Reason
/home	Excluded to avoid user data loss on rollbacks.
/var/log, /var/support	Log file and Cumulus support location. Excluded from snapshots to allow post-rollback analysis.
/tmp, /var/tmp	No need to rollback temporary files.
/opt, /var/opt	Third-party software usually are installed in /opt. Exclude /opt to avoid re-installing these applications after rollbacks.
/srv	Contains data for HTTP and FTP servers. Excluded this directory to avoid server data loss on rollbacks.
/usr/local	This directory is used when installing locally built software. Exclude this directory to avoid re-installing these software after rollbacks.
/var/spool	Exclude this directory to avoid loss of mail after a rollback.
/var/lib/libvirt/images	This is the default directory for libvirt VM images. Exclude from the snapshot. Additionally disable Copy-On-Write (COW) for this subvolume as COW and VM image I/O access patterns do not play nice.
/boot/grub/i386-pc, /boot/grub/x86_64-efi, /boot/grub/arm-uboot	The GRUB kernel modules must stay in sync with the GRUB kernel installed in the master boot record or UEFI system partition.



## Adding and Updating Packages

You use the Advanced Packaging Tool (`apt`) to manage additional applications (in the form of packages) and to install the latest updates.

Before running any `apt-get` commands or after changing the `/etc/apt/sources.list` file, you need to run `apt-get update`.

### ⓘ Network Disruptions When Updating/Upgrading

The `apt-get upgrade` and `apt-get install` cause disruptions to network services:

- The `apt-get upgrade` command may result in services being restarted or stopped as part of the upgrade process.
- The `apt-get install` command may disrupt core services by changing core service dependency packages.

In some cases, installing new packages with `apt-get install` may also upgrades additional existing packages due to dependencies. To review potential issues before installing, run `apt-get install --dry-run` to see the additional packages that will be installed and/or upgraded.

- ⓘ If services are stopped, a reboot may be required before those services can be started again.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Updating the Package Cache (see page 68)
- Listing Available Packages (see page 70)
- Adding a Package (see page 71)
- Listing Installed Packages (see page 72)
- Upgrading to Newer Versions of Installed Packages (see page 72)
  - Upgrading a Single Package (see page 72)
  - Upgrading All Packages (see page 72)
- Adding Packages from Another Repository (see page 73)
- Related Information (see page 74)

## Updating the Package Cache

To work properly, APT relies on a local cache of the available packages. You must populate the cache initially, and then periodically update it with `apt-get update`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get update
```



```
Get:1 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3 InRelease [7,624 B]
Get:2 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-security-updates InRelease [7,555 B]
Get:3 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-updates InRelease [7,660 B]
Get:4 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3/cumulus Sources [20 B]
Get:5 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3/upstream Sources [20 B]
Get:6 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3/cumulus amd64 Packages [38.4 kB]
Get:7 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3/upstream amd64 Packages [445 kB]
Get:8 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-security-updates/cumulus Sources [20 B]
Get:9 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-security-updates/upstream Sources [11.8 kB]
Get:10 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-security-updates/cumulus amd64 Packages [20 B]
Get:11 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-security-updates/upstream amd64 Packages [8,941 B]
Get:12 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-updates/cumulus Sources [20 B]
Get:13 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-updates/upstream Sources [776 B]
Get:14 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-updates/cumulus amd64 Packages [38.4 kB]
Get:15 http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-updates/upstream amd64 Packages [444 kB]
Ign http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3/cumulus Translation-en_US
Ign http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3/cumulus Translation-en
Ign http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3/upstream Translation-en_US
Ign http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3/upstream Translation-en
Ign http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-security-updates/cumulus Translation-en_US
Ign http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-security-updates/cumulus Translation-en
Ign http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-security-updates/upstream Translation-en_US
Ign http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-security-updates/upstream Translation-en
Ign http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-updates/cumulus Translation-en_US
Ign http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-updates/cumulus Translation-en
Ign http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-updates/upstream Translation-en_US
```



```
Ign http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com CumulusLinux-3-updates/upstream  
Translation-en  
Fetched 1,011 kB in 1s (797 kB/s)  
Reading package lists... Done
```



Cumulus Networks recommends you use the `-E` option with `sudo` whenever you run any `apt-get` command. This option preserves your environment variables — such as HTTP proxies — before you install new packages or upgrade your distribution.

## Listing Available Packages

Once the cache is populated, use `apt-cache` to search the cache to find the packages you are interested in or to get information about an available package. Here are examples of the `search` and `show` sub-commands:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ apt-cache search tcp  
socat - multipurpose relay for bidirectional data transfer  
fakeroot - tool for simulating superuser privileges  
tcpdump - command-line network traffic analyzer  
openssh-server - secure shell (SSH) server, for secure access from  
remote machines  
openssh-sftp-server - secure shell (SSH) sftp server module, for SFTP  
access from remote machines  
python-dpkt - Python packet creation / parsing module  
libfakeroot - tool for simulating superuser privileges - shared  
libraries  
openssh-client - secure shell (SSH) client, for secure access to  
remote machines  
rsyslog - reliable system and kernel logging daemon  
libwrap0 - Wietse Venema's TCP wrappers library  
netbase - Basic TCP/IP networking system
```

```
cumulus@switch:~$ apt-cache show tcpdump  
Package: tcpdump  
Status: install ok installed  
Priority: optional  
Section: net  
Installed-Size: 1092  
Maintainer: Romain Francoise <rfrancoise@debian.org>  
Architecture: amd64  
Multi-Arch: foreign  
Version: 4.6.2-5+deb8u1  
Depends: libc6 (>= 2.14), libpcap0.8 (>= 1.5.1), libssl1.0.0 (>=  
1.0.0)  
Description: command-line network traffic analyzer
```



This program allows you to dump the traffic on a network. `tcpdump` is able to examine IPv4, ICMPv4, IPv6, ICMPv6, UDP, TCP, SNMP, AFS BGP, RIP, PIM, DVMRP, IGMP, SMB, OSPF, NFS and many other packet types.

It can be used to print out the headers of packets on a network interface, filter packets that match a certain expression. You can use this tool to track down network problems, to detect attacks or to monitor network activities.

Description-md5: f01841bfda357d116d7ff7b7a47e8782

Homepage: <http://www.tcpdump.org/>

cumulus@switch:~\$



The search commands look for the search terms not only in the package name but in other parts of the package information. Consequently, it matches on more packages than you would expect.

## Adding a Package

In order to add a new package, first ensure the package is not already installed in the system:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ dpkg -l | grep {name of package}
```

If the package is installed already, ensure it's the version you need. If it's an older version, then update the package from the Cumulus Linux repository:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get upgrade
```

If the package is not already on the system, add it by running `apt-get install`. This retrieves the package from the Cumulus Linux repository and installs it on your system together with any other packages that this package might depend on.

For example, the following adds the package `tcpreplay` to the system:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get install tcpreplay
Reading package lists... Done
Building dependency tree
Reading state information... Done
The following NEW packages will be installed:
tcpreplay
0 upgraded, 1 newly installed, 0 to remove and 1 not upgraded.
Need to get 436 kB of archives.
After this operation, 1008 kB of additional disk space will be used.
Get:1 https://repo.cumulusnetworks.com/ CumulusLinux-1.5/main
tcpreplay amd64 4.6.2-5+deb8u1 [436 kB]
Fetched 436 kB in 0s (1501 kB/s)
Selecting previously unselected package tcpreplay.
```



```
(Reading database ... 15930 files and directories currently
installed.)
Unpacking tcpreplay (from .../tcpreplay_4.6.2-5+deb8u1_amd64.deb) ...
Processing triggers for man-db ...
Setting up tcpreplay (4.6.2-5+deb8u1) ...
cumulus@switch:~$
```

## Listing Installed Packages

The APT cache contains information about all the packages available on the repository. To see which packages are actually installed on your system, use `dpkg`. The following example lists all the packages on the system that have "tcp" in their package names:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ dpkg -l \*tcp\*
Desired=Unknown/Install/Remove/Purge/Hold
| Status=Not/Inst/Conf-files/Unpacked/half-conf/Half-inst/trig-aWait
/Trig-pend
| / Err?=(none)/Reinst-required (Status,Err: uppercase=bad)
|| / Name                           Version
Architecture      Description
=====
un  tcpd              <none>
<none>          (no description available)
ii  tcpdump           4.6.2-5+deb8u1
amd64            command-line network traffic analyzer
cumulus@switch:~$
```

## Upgrading to Newer Versions of Installed Packages

### *Upgrading a Single Package*

A single package can be upgraded by simply installing that package again with `apt-get install`. You should perform an update first so that the APT cache is populated with the latest information about the packages.

To see if a package needs to be upgraded, use `apt-cache show <pkgname>` to show the latest version number of the package. Use `dpkg -l <pkgname>` to show the version number of the installed package.

### *Upgrading All Packages*

You can update all packages on the system by running `apt-get update`, then `apt-get upgrade`. This upgrades all installed versions with their latest versions but will not install any new packages.



## Adding Packages from Another Repository

As shipped, Cumulus Linux searches the Cumulus Linux repository for available packages. You can add additional repositories to search by adding them to the list of sources that `apt-get` consults. See `man sources.list` for more information.



For several packages, Cumulus Networks has added features or made bug fixes and these packages must not be replaced with versions from other repositories. Cumulus Linux has been configured to ensure that the packages from the Cumulus Linux repository are always preferred over packages from other repositories.

If you want to install packages that are not in the Cumulus Linux repository, the procedure is the same as above with one additional step.



Packages not part of the Cumulus Linux Repository have generally not been tested, and may not be supported by Cumulus Linux support.

Installing packages outside of the Cumulus Linux repository requires the use of `apt-get`, but, depending on the package, `easy-install` and other commands can also be used.

To install a new package, please complete the following steps:

1. First, ensure package is not already installed in the system. Use the `dpkg` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ dpkg -l | grep {name of package}
```

2. If the package is installed already, ensure it's the version you need. If it's an older version, then update the package from the Cumulus Linux repository:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get update
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get install {name of package}
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get upgrade
```

3. If the package is not on the system, then most likely the package source location is also **not** in the `/etc/apt/sources.list` file. If the source for the new package is **not** in `sources.list`, please edit and add the appropriate source to the file. For example, add the following if you wanted a package from the Debian repository that is **not** in the Cumulus Linux repository:

```
deb http://http.us.debian.org/debian jessie main
deb http://security.debian.org/ jessie/updates main
```

Otherwise, the repository may be listed in `/etc/apt/sources.list` but is commented out, as can be the case with the early-access repository:



```
#deb http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com/repo CumulusLinux-3-early-access cumulus
```

To uncomment the repository, remove the # at the start of the line, then save the file:

```
deb http://repo3.cumulusnetworks.com/repo CumulusLinux-3-early-access cumulus
```

4. Run `apt-get update` then install the package and upgrade:

## ⚠ Network Disruptions When Updating/Upgrading

The `apt-get upgrade` and `apt-get install` will cause disruptions to network services:

- The `apt-get upgrade` command may result in services being restarted or stopped as part of the upgrade process.
- The `apt-get install` command may disrupt core services by changing core service dependency packages.

In some cases, installing new packages with `apt-get install` may also upgrades additional existing packages due to dependencies. To review potential issues before installing, run `apt-get install --dry-run` to see the additional packages that will be installed and/or upgraded.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get update
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get install {name of package}
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get upgrade
```

## Related Information

- Debian GNU/Linux FAQ, Ch 8 Package management tools
- man pages for `apt-get`, `dpkg`, `sources.list`, `apt_preferences`

## Zero Touch Provisioning - ZTP

*Zero touch provisioning* (ZTP) enables network devices to be quickly deployed in large-scale environments. On first boot, Cumulus Linux will invoke ZTP, which executes the provisioning automation used to deploy the device for its intended role in the network.

The provisioning framework allows for a one-time, user-provided script to be executed. You can develop this script using a variety of automation tools and scripting languages, providing ample flexibility for you to design the provisioning scheme to meet your needs. You can also use it to add the switch to a configuration management (CM) platform such as [Puppet](#), [Chef](#), [CFEngine](#) or possibly a custom, proprietary tool.

While developing and testing the provisioning logic, you can use the `ztp` command in Cumulus Linux to manually invoke your provisioning script on a device.



ZTP in Cumulus Linux can occur automatically in one of the following ways, in this order:

- Via a local file
- Using a USB drive inserted into the switch (ZTP-USB)
- Via DHCP

Each method is discussed in greater detail below.

## Contents

Click to expand...

- Zero Touch Provisioning Using a Local File (see page 75)
- Zero Touch Provisioning Using USB (ZTP-USB) (see page 76)
- Zero Touch Provisioning over DHCP (see page 76)
  - Triggering ZTP over DHCP (see page 77)
  - Configuring The DHCP Server (see page 77)
  - Detailed Look at HTTP Headers (see page 77)
- Writing ZTP Scripts (see page 78)
  - Example ZTP Script (see page 78)
- Testing and Debugging ZTP Scripts (see page 79)
- Manually Using the ztp Command (see page 83)
- Notes (see page 84)

## Zero Touch Provisioning Using a Local File

ZTP only looks once for a ZTP script on the local file system when the switch boots. ZTP searches for an install script that matches an [ONIE](#)-style waterfall in `/var/lib/cumulus/ztp`, looking for the most specific name first, and ending at the most generic:

- `'cumulus-ztp-' + architecture + '-' + vendor + '_' + model + '-r' + revision`
- `'cumulus-ztp-' + architecture + '-' + vendor + '_' + model`
- `'cumulus-ztp-' + vendor + '_' + model`
- `'cumulus-ztp-' + architecture`
- `'cumulus-ztp'`

For example:

```
cumulus-ztp-amd64-cel_pebble-rUNKNOWN
cumulus-ztp-amd64-cel_pebble
cumulus-ztp-cel_pebble
cumulus-ztp-amd64
cumulus-ztp
```

You can also trigger the ZTP process manually by running the `ztp --run <URL>` command, where the URL is the path to the ZTP script.



## Zero Touch Provisioning Using USB (ZTP-USB)



This feature has been tested only with "thumb" drives, not an actual external large USB hard drive.

If the `ztp` process did not discover a local script, it tries once to locate an inserted but unmounted USB drive. If it discovers one, it begins the ZTP process.

Cumulus Linux supports the use of a FAT32, FAT16, or VFAT-formatted USB drive as an installation source for ZTP scripts. You must plug in the USB stick **before** you power up the switch.

At minimum, the script should:

- Install the Cumulus Linux operating system and license.
- Copy over a basic configuration to the switch.
- Restart the switch or the relevant servers to get `switchd` up and running with that configuration.

Follow these steps to perform zero touch provisioning using USB:

1. Copy the Cumulus Linux license and installation image to the USB stick.
2. The `ztp` process searches the root filesystem of the newly mounted device for filenames matching an [ONIE-style waterfall](#) (see the patterns and examples above), looking for the most specific name first, and ending at the most generic.
3. The script's contents are parsed to ensure it contains the `CUMULUS-AUTOPROVISIONING` flag (see [example scripts \(see page 78\)](#)).



The USB device is mounted to a temporary directory under `/tmp` (for example, `/tmp/tmpigGgjf/`). In order to reference files on the USB, use the environment variable `ZTP_USB_MOUNTPOINT` to refer to the USB root partition.

## Zero Touch Provisioning over DHCP

If the `ztp` process did not discover a local/ONIE script or applicable USB drive, it checks DHCP every 10 seconds for up to 5 minutes for the presence of a ZTP URL specified in `/var/run/ztp.dhcp`. The URL can be any of HTTP, HTTPS, FTP or TFTP.

For ZTP using DHCP, provisioning initially takes place over the management network and is initiated via a DHCP hook. A DHCP option is used to specify a configuration script. This script is then requested from the Web server and executed locally on the switch.

The zero touch provisioning process over DHCP follows these steps:

1. The first time you boot Cumulus Linux, `eth0` is configured for DHCP and makes a DHCP request.
2. The DHCP server offers a lease to the switch.
3. If option 239 is present in the response, the zero touch provisioning process itself will start.
4. The zero touch provisioning process requests the contents of the script from the URL, sending additional [HTTP headers \(see page 77\)](#) containing details about the switch.



5. The script's contents are parsed to ensure it contains the CUMULUS-AUTOPROVISIONING flag (see [example scripts \(see page 78\)](#)).
6. If provisioning is necessary, then the script executes locally on the switch with root privileges.
7. The return code of the script gets examined. If it is 0, then the provisioning state is marked as complete in the autoprovioning configuration file.

## Triggering ZTP over DHCP

If provisioning has not already occurred, it is possible to trigger the zero touch provisioning process over DHCP when eth0 is set to use DHCP and one of the following events occur:

- Booting the switch
- Plugging a cable into or unplugging it from the eth0 port
- Disconnecting then reconnecting the switch's power cord

You can also run the `ztp --run <URL>` command, where the URL is the path to the ZTP script.

## Configuring The DHCP Server

During the DHCP process over eth0, Cumulus Linux will request DHCP option 239. This option is used to specify the custom provisioning script.

For example, the `/etc/dhcp/dhcpd.conf` file for an ISC DHCP server would look like:

```
option cumulus-provision-url code 239 = text;

subnet 192.0.2.0 netmask 255.255.255.0 {
    range 192.0.2.100 192.168.0.200;
    option cumulus-provision-url "http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh";
}
```

Additionally, the hostname of the switch can be specified via the `host-name` option:

```
subnet 192.168.0.0 netmask 255.255.255.0 {
    range 192.168.0.100 192.168.0.200;
    option cumulus-provision-url "http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh";
    host dc1-tor-sw1 { hardware ethernet 44:38:39:00:1a:6b; fixed-
        address 192.168.0.101; option host-name "dc1-tor-sw1"; }
}
```

## Detailed Look at HTTP Headers

The following HTTP headers are sent in the request to the webserver to retrieve the provisioning script:

Header	Value	Example
-----	-----	-----



User-Agent	CumulusLinux-
AutoProvision/0.4	
CUMULUS-ARCH	CPU architecture
CUMULUS-BUILD	x86_64
201309251712-final	3.0.0-5c6829a-
CUMULUS-LICENSE-INSTALLED	Either 0 or 1
CUMULUS-MANUFACTURER	1
CUMULUS-PRODUCTNAME	odm
CUMULUS-SERIAL	switch_model
CUMULUS-VERSION	XYZ123004
CUMULUS-PROV-COUNT	3.0.0
CUMULUS-PROV-MAX	0
	32

## Writing ZTP Scripts



Remember to include the following line in any of the supported scripts which are expected to be run via the autoprovisioning framework.

```
# CUMULUS-AUTOPROVISIONING
```

This line is required somewhere in the script file in order for execution to occur.

The script must contain the `CUMULUS-AUTOPROVISIONING` flag. This can be in a comment or remark and does not need to be echoed or written to `stdout`.

The script can be written in any language currently supported by Cumulus Linux, such as:

- Perl
- Python
- Ruby
- Shell

The script must return an exit code of 0 upon success, as this triggers the autoprovisioning process to be marked as complete in the autoprovisioning configuration file.

### Example ZTP Script

The following script installs Cumulus Linux and its license from USB and applies a configuration:

```
#!/bin/bash
function error() {
    echo -e "\e[0;33mERROR: The Zero Touch Provisioning script failed
while running the command $BASH_COMMAND at line $BASH_lineno.\e[0m"
    >&2
    exit 1
}
```



```
# Log all output from this script
exec >> /var/log/autoprovision 2>&1
date "+%FT%T ztp starting script $0"

trap error ERR

#Add Debian Repositories
echo "deb http://http.us.debian.org/debian jessie main" >> /etc/apt
/sources.list
echo "deb http://security.debian.org/ jessie/updates main" >> /etc/apt
/sources.list

#Update Package Cache
apt-get update -y

#Install netshow diagnostics commands
apt-get install -y netshow htop nmap

#Load interface config from usb
cp ${ZTP_USB_MOUNTPOINT}/interfaces /etc/network/interfaces

#Load port config from usb
#   (if breakout cables are used for certain interfaces)
cp ${ZTP_USB_MOUNTPOINT}/ports.conf /etc/cumulus/ports.conf

#Install a License from usb and restart switchd
/usr/cumulus/bin/cl-license -i ${ZTP_USB_MOUNTPOINT}/license.txt &&
systemctl restart switchd.service

#Reload interfaces to apply loaded config
ifreload -a

#Output state of interfaces
netshow interface

# CUMULUS-AUTOPROVISIONING
exit 0
```

Several ZTP example scripts are available in the [Cumulus GitHub repository](#).

## Testing and Debugging ZTP Scripts

There are a few commands you can use to test and debug your ZTP scripts.

You can use verbose mode to debug your script and see where your script failed. Include the `-v` option when you run `ztp`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ztp -v -r http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh
Attempting to provision via ZTP Manual from http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh
```



```
Broadcast message from root@dell-s6000-01 (ttyS0) (Tue May 10 22:44:  
17 2016):
```

```
ZTP: Attempting to provision via ZTP Manual from http://192.0.2.1  
/demo.sh  
ZTP Manual: URL response code 200  
ZTP Manual: Found Marker CUMULUS-AUTOPROVISIONING  
ZTP Manual: Executing http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh  
error: ZTP Manual: Payload returned code 1  
error: Script returned failure
```

You can also run `ztp -s` to get more information about the current state of ZTP.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ztp -s  
ZTP INFO:  
  
State           enabled  
Version        1.0  
Result          Script Failure  
Date            Tue May 10 22:42:09 2016 UTC  
Method          ZTP DHCP  
URL            http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh
```

If ZTP ran when the switch booted and not manually, you can run the `sudo systemctl -l status ztp.service` then `journalctl -l -u ztp.service` to see if any failures occur:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl -l status ztp.service  
ztp.service - Cumulus Linux ZTP  
   Loaded: loaded (/lib/systemd/system/ztp.service; enabled)  
   Active: failed (Result: exit-code) since Wed 2016-05-11 16:38:45  
   UTC; 1min 47s ago  
     Docs: man:ztp(8)  
   Process: 400 ExecStart=/usr/sbin/ztp -b (code=exited, status=1  
/FAILURE)  
 Main PID: 400 (code=exited, status=1/FAILURE)  
  
May 11 16:37:45 cumulus ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP USB: Device not found  
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP: Looking  
for ZTP Script provided by DHCP  
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: Attempting to  
provision via ZTP DHCP from http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh  
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP: URL  
response code 200  
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP: Found  
Marker CUMULUS-AUTOPROVISIONING  
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP:  
Executing http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh  
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP: Payload  
returned code 1
```



```
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: Script returned
failure
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 systemd[1]: ztp.service: main process
exited, code=exited, status=1/FAILURE
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 systemd[1]: Unit ztp.service entered
failed state.
cumulus@switch:~$ 
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo journalctl -l -u ztp.service --no-pager
-- Logs begin at Wed 2016-05-11 16:37:42 UTC, end at Wed 2016-05-11
16:40:39 UTC. --
May 11 16:37:45 cumulus ztp[400]: ztp [400]: /var/lib/cumulus/ztp:
State Directory does not exist. Creating it...
May 11 16:37:45 cumulus ztp[400]: ztp [400]: /var/run/ztp.lock: Lock
File does not exist. Creating it...
May 11 16:37:45 cumulus ztp[400]: ztp [400]: /var/lib/cumulus/ztp
/ztp_state.log: State File does not exist. Creating it...
May 11 16:37:45 cumulus ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP LOCAL: Looking for
ZTP local Script
May 11 16:37:45 cumulus ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP LOCAL: Waterfall
search for /var/lib/cumulus/ztp/cumulus-ztp-x86_64-dell_s6000_s1220-
rUNKNOWN
May 11 16:37:45 cumulus ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP LOCAL: Waterfall
search for /var/lib/cumulus/ztp/cumulus-ztp-x86_64-dell_s6000_s1220
May 11 16:37:45 cumulus ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP LOCAL: Waterfall
search for /var/lib/cumulus/ztp/cumulus-ztp-x86_64-dell
May 11 16:37:45 cumulus ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP LOCAL: Waterfall
search for /var/lib/cumulus/ztp/cumulus-ztp-x86_64
May 11 16:37:45 cumulus ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP LOCAL: Waterfall
search for /var/lib/cumulus/ztp/cumulus-ztp
May 11 16:37:45 cumulus ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP USB: Looking for
unmounted USB devices
May 11 16:37:45 cumulus ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP USB: Parsing
partitions
May 11 16:37:45 cumulus ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP USB: Device not found
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP: Looking
for ZTP Script provided by DHCP
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: Attempting to
provision via ZTP DHCP from http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP: URL
response code 200
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP: Found
Marker CUMULUS-AUTOPROVISIONING
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP:
Executing http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP: Payload
returned code 1
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 ztp[400]: ztp [400]: Script returned
failure
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 systemd[1]: ztp.service: main process
exited, code=exited, status=1/FAILURE
May 11 16:38:45 dell-s6000-01 systemd[1]: Unit ztp.service entered
failed state.
```



Instead of running `journalctl`, you can see the log history by running:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /var/log/syslog | grep ztp
2016-05-11T16:37:45.132583+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: /var/lib/cumulus
/ztp: State Directory does not exist. Creating it...
2016-05-11T16:37:45.134081+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: /var/run/ztp.
lock: Lock File does not exist. Creating it...
2016-05-11T16:37:45.135360+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: /var/lib/cumulus
/ztp/ztp_state.log: State File does not exist. Creating it...
2016-05-11T16:37:45.185598+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP LOCAL:
Looking for ZTP local Script
2016-05-11T16:37:45.485084+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP LOCAL:
Waterfall search for /var/lib/cumulus/ztp/cumulus-ztp-x86_64-
dell_s6000_s1220-rUNKNOWN
2016-05-11T16:37:45.486394+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP LOCAL:
Waterfall search for /var/lib/cumulus/ztp/cumulus-ztp-x86_64-
dell_s6000_s1220
2016-05-11T16:37:45.488385+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP LOCAL:
Waterfall search for /var/lib/cumulus/ztp/cumulus-ztp-x86_64-dell
2016-05-11T16:37:45.489665+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP LOCAL:
Waterfall search for /var/lib/cumulus/ztp/cumulus-ztp-x86_64
2016-05-11T16:37:45.490854+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP LOCAL:
Waterfall search for /var/lib/cumulus/ztp/cumulus-ztp
2016-05-11T16:37:45.492296+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP USB: Looking
for unmounted USB devices
2016-05-11T16:37:45.493525+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP USB: Parsing
partitions
2016-05-11T16:37:45.636422+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP USB: Device
not found
2016-05-11T16:38:43.372857+00:00 cumulus ztp [1805]: Found ZTP DHCP
Request
2016-05-11T16:38:45.696562+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP: Looking
for ZTP Script provided by DHCP
2016-05-11T16:38:45.698598+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: Attempting to
provision via ZTP DHCP from http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh
2016-05-11T16:38:45.816275+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP: URL
response code 200
2016-05-11T16:38:45.817446+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP: Found
Marker CUMULUS-AUTOPROVISIONING
2016-05-11T16:38:45.818402+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP:
Executing http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh
2016-05-11T16:38:45.834240+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: ZTP DHCP: Payload
returned code 1
2016-05-11T16:38:45.835488+00:00 cumulus ztp [400]: Script returned
failure
2016-05-11T16:38:45.876334+00:00 cumulus systemd[1]: ztp.service:
main process exited, code=exited, status=1/FAILURE
2016-05-11T16:38:45.879410+00:00 cumulus systemd[1]: Unit ztp.service
entered failed state.
```



If you see that the issue is a script failure, you can modify the script and then run `ztp` manually using `ztp -v -r <URL/path to that script>`, as above.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ztp -v -r http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh
Attempting to provision via ZTP Manual from http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh

Broadcast message from root@dell-s6000-01 (ttyS0) (Tue May 10 22:44:
17 2016):

ZTP: Attempting to provision via ZTP Manual from http://192.0.2.1
/demo.sh
ZTP Manual: URL response code 200
ZTP Manual: Found Marker CUMULUS-AUTOPROVISIONING
ZTP Manual: Executing http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh
error: ZTP Manual: Payload returned code 1
error: Script returned failure
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ztp -s
State      enabled
Version    1.0
Result     Script Failure
Date       Tue May 10 22:44:17 2016 UTC
Method     ZTP Manual
URL       http://192.0.2.1/demo.sh
```

## Manually Using the `ztp` Command

To enable zero touch provisioning, use the `-e` option:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ztp -e
```



Enabling `ztp` means that `ztp` will try to occur the next time the switch boots. However, if ZTP already occurred on a previous boot up or if a manual configuration has been found, ZTP will just exit without trying to look for any script.

ZTP checks for these manual configurations during bootup:

- Password changes
- Users and groups changes
- Packages changes
- Interfaces changes
- The presence of an installed license

When the switch is booted for the very first time, ZTP records the state of some important files that are most likely going to be modified after that the switch is configured. If ZTP is still enabled after a reboot, ZTP will compare the recorded state to the current state of these files. If they do not match, ZTP considers that the switch has already been provisioned and exits. These files are only erased after a reset.



To reset `ztp` to its original state, use the `-R` option. This removes the `ztp` directory and `ztp` runs the next time the switch reboots.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ztp -R
```

To disable zero touch provisioning, use the `-d` option:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ztp -d
```

To force provisioning to occur and ignore the status listed in the configuration file use the `-r` option:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ztp -r cumulus-ztp.sh
```

To see the current `ztp` state, use the `-s` option:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ztp -s
ZTP INFO:
State disabled
Version 1.0
Result success
Date Thu May 5 16:49:33 2016 UTC
Method Switch manually configured
URL None
```

## Notes

- During the development of a provisioning script, the switch may need to be rebooted.
- You can use the Cumulus Linux `onie-select -i` command to cause the switch to reprovision itself and install a network operating system again using ONIE.

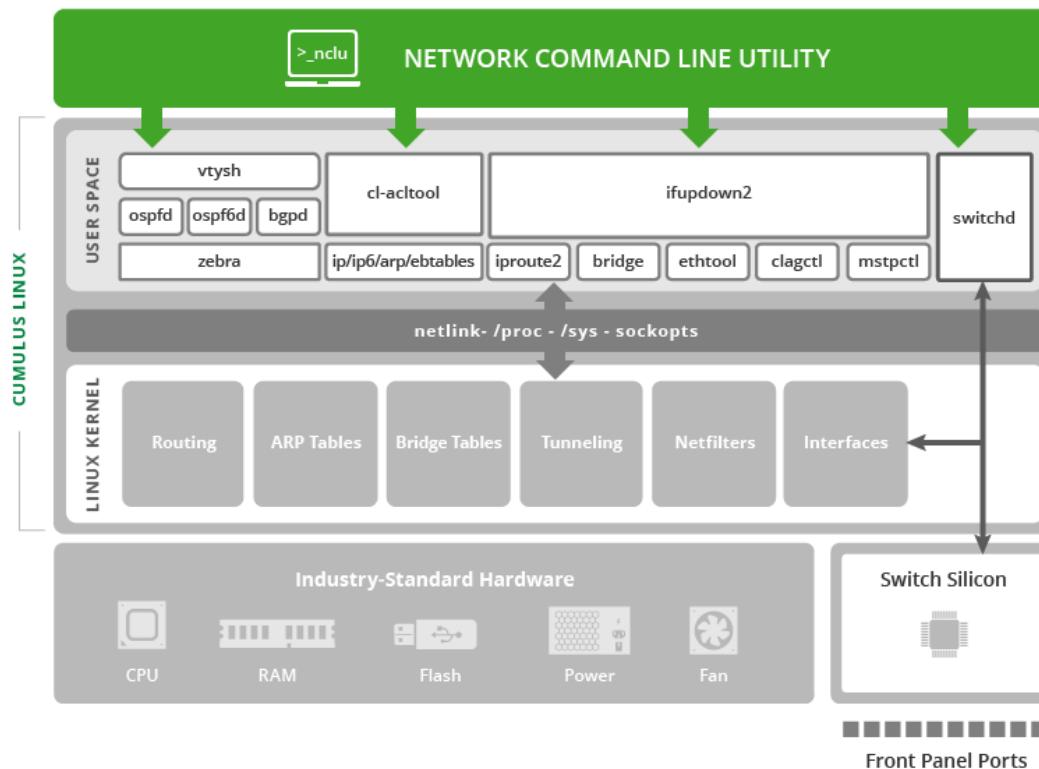
# System Configuration

## Network Command Line Utility - NCLU

The Network Command Line Utility, or NCLU, is a command line interface for Cumulus Networks products that simplifies the networking configuration process for all users.

NCLU resides in the Linux user space, as seen below. It provides consistent access to networking commands directly via bash, thereby making configuration and troubleshooting simple and easy — no need to edit files or enter modes and sub-modes. In addition, NCLU does more than traditional command line interfaces by:

- Embedding help, examples and automatic command checking with suggestions in case you've entered a typo
- Running directly from and integrating with bash, while being interoperable with the regular way of accessing underlying configuration files and automation
- Automatically configuring dependent features so you don't have to



The NCLU wrapper utility is called `net`. `net` is capable of configuring L2 and L3 features of the networking stack, installing ACLs and VXLANs, rolling back and deleting snapshots, as well as providing monitoring and troubleshooting functionality for these features. `/etc/network/interfaces` and `/etc/frr/frr.conf` can both be configured with `net`, in addition to running `show` and `clear` commands related to `ifupdown2` and FRRouting.



## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- What's New and Different in NCLU in Version 3.5? (see page 86)
- Installing NCLU (see page 86)
- Getting Started (see page 86)
  - Tab Completion, Verification and Inline Help (see page 87)
  - Adding ? (Question Mark) Ability to NCLU (see page 89)
  - Built-In Examples (see page 90)
- Configuring User Accounts (see page 91)
  - Editing the netd.conf File (see page 93)
- Restarting the netd Service (see page 93)
- Backing up the Configuration to a Single File (see page 93)
- Advanced Configuration (see page 94)

## What's New and Different in NCLU in Version 3.5?

A number of commands have been added, updated, or removed from NCLU in the new release. Read more about what's changed in this [knowledge base article](#).

## Installing NCLU

If you upgraded Cumulus Linux from a version earlier than 3.2 instead of performing a full binary install, you need to install the `nclu` package on your switch:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get update  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get install nclu  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get upgrade
```



The `nclu` package installs a new bash completion script, and displays the following message when it is manually installed:

```
Setting up nclu (1.0-cl3u3) ...  
To enable the newly installed bash completion for nclu in this  
shell, execute...  
source /etc/bash_completion
```

## Getting Started

NCLU uses the following workflow for staging and committing changes to Cumulus Linux:



1. Use the `net add` and `net del` commands to stage/remove configuration changes.
2. Use the `net pending` command to review staged changes.
3. Use `net commit` and `net abort` to commit/delete staged changes.



`net commit` applies the changes to the relevant configuration files, such as `/etc/network/interfaces`, then runs necessary follow on commands to enable the configuration, such as `ifreload -a`.

Once you have a running configuration, you can review and update it using:

- `net show`: A series of commands for viewing various parts of the network configuration, such as `net show configuration`, `net show commit history` and `net show bgp` to view the complete network configuration, a history of commits using NCLU and BGP status, respectively.
- `net clear`: A way to clear `net show` counters, BGP and OSPF neighbor content, and more.
- `net rollback`: Provides a mechanism to revert back to an earlier configuration.
- `net commit confirm`: Requires the user to press *Enter* in order to commit changes via NCLU. If you run `net commit confirm` but do not press *Enter* within 10 seconds, the commit is automatically reverted and nothing changes.
- `net commit permanent`: Retains the [snapshot \(see page 61\)](#) taken when committing the change. Otherwise, the snapshots created from NCLU commands are cleaned up periodically via a snapper cron job.
- `net commit delete`: Deletes one or more snapshots created when committing changes with NCLU.
- `net del all`: Deletes all configurations and stops the IEEE 802.1X service.



This command does not remove [management VRF \(see page 720\)](#) configurations, as NCLU does not interact with eth0 interfaces and management VRF at all.

## *Tab Completion, Verification and Inline Help*

NCLU provides a number of features to assist users. In addition to tab completion and partial keyword commands identification, verification checks are set in place to ensure correct syntax is used. The examples below show the output for incorrect commands:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp router-id 1.1.1.1/32
ERROR: Command not found

Did you mean one of the following?

    net add bgp router-id <ipv4>
        This command is looking for an IP address, not an IP/prefixlen

cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp router-id 1.1.1.1
cumulus@switch:~$ net add int swp10 mtu <TAB>
```



```
<552-9216> :  
cumulus@switch:~$ net add int swp10 mtu 9300  
ERROR: Command not found  
  
Did you mean one of the following?  
  net add interface <interface> mtu <552-9216>
```

NCLU has a comprehensive help system built in to assist usage. In addition to the net man page, you can use `? and help` to display available commands:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net help  
  
Usage:  
  # net <COMMAND> [<ARGS>] [help]  
  #  
  # net is a command line utility for networking on Cumulus Linux  
  # switches.  
  #  
  # COMMANDS are listed below and have context specific arguments  
  # which can  
  # be explored by typing "<TAB>" or "help" anytime while using net.  
  #  
  # Use 'man net' for a more comprehensive overview.  
  
net abort  
net commit [verbose] [confirm] [description <wildcard>]  
net commit delete (<number>|<number-range>)  
net help [verbose]  
net pending  
net rollback (<number>|last)  
net show commit (history|<number>|<number-range>|last)  
net show rollback (<number>|last)  
net show configuration  
[commands|files|acl|bgp|ospf|ospf6|interface <interface>]  
  
Options:  
  
  # Help commands  
  help      : context sensitive information; see section below  
  example   : detailed examples of common workflows  
  
  # Configuration commands  
  add       : add/modify configuration  
  del       : remove configuration  
  
  # Commit buffer commands
```

```

abort      : abandon changes in the commit buffer
commit     : apply the commit buffer to the system
pending    : show changes staged in the commit buffer
rollback   : revert to a previous configuration state

# Status commands
show       : show command output
clear      : clear counters, BGP neighbors, etc

cumulus@switch:~$ net help bestpath
The following commands contain keyword(s) 'bestpath'

    net (add|del) bgp bestpath as-path multipath-relax [as-set|no-as-
set]
    net (add|del) bgp bestpath compare-routerid
    net (add|del) bgp bestpath med missing-as-worst
    net (add|del) bgp vrf <text> bestpath as-path multipath-relax [as-
set|no-as-set]
    net (add|del) bgp vrf <text> bestpath compare-routerid
    net (add|del) bgp vrf <text> bestpath med missing-as-worst
    net add bgp debug bestpath <ip/prefixlen>
    net del bgp debug bestpath [<ip/prefixlen>]
    net show bgp (<ipv4>|<ipv4/prefixlen>) [bestpath|multipath] [json]
    net show bgp (<ipv6>|<ipv6/prefixlen>) [bestpath|multipath] [json]
    net show bgp vrf <text> (<ipv4>|<ipv4/prefixlen>)
    [bestpath|multipath] [json]

```



Multiple interfaces can be configured at once:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add int swp7-9,12,15-17,22 mtu 9216
```

## *Adding ? (Question Mark) Ability to NCLU*

While tab completion is enabled by default, you can also configure NCLU to use the **?** (question mark character) to look at available commands. To enable this feature for the *cumulus* user, open the following file:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo nano ~/.inputrc
```

Uncomment the very last line in the *.inputrc* file so that the file changes from this:

```
# Uncomment to use ? as an alternative to
# ?: complete
```



to this:

```
# Uncomment to use ? as an alternative to  
?: complete
```

Save the file and reconnect to the switch. The ? (question mark) ability will work on all subsequent sessions on the switch.

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net  
    abort      : abandon changes in the commit buffer  
    add        : add/modify configuration  
    clear      : clear counters, BGP neighbors, etc  
    commit     : apply the commit buffer to the system  
    del        : remove configuration  
    example    : detailed examples of common workflows  
    help       : Show this screen and exit  
    pending    : show changes staged in the commit buffer  
    rollback   : revert to a previous configuration state  
    show       : show command output
```



When the question mark is typed, NCLU will autocomplete and show all available options, but the question mark won't actually appear on the terminal. This is normal, expected behavior.

## Built-In Examples

The NCLU has a number of built in examples to guide users through basic configuration setup:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net example  
    acl          : access-list  
    bgp         : Border Gateway Protocol  
    bond        : Bond, port-channel, etc  
    bridge      : A layer2 bridge  
    clag        : Multi-Chassis Link Aggregation  
    dot1x      : Configure, Enable, Delete or Show IEEE 802.1X  
EAPOL  
    link-settings : Physical link parameters  
    lnv         : Lightweight Network Virtualization  
    management-vrf : Management VRF  
    mlag        : Multi-Chassis Link Aggregation  
    ospf        : Open Shortest Path First (OSPFv2)  
    vlan-interfaces : IP interfaces for VLANs  
  
cumulus@switch:~$ net example bridge
```

**Scenario****=====**

We are configuring switch1 and would like to configure the following

- configure switch1 as an L2 switch for host-11 and host-12
- enable vlans 10-20
- place host-11 in vlan 10
- place host-12 in vlan 20
- create an SVI interface for vlan 10
- create an SVI interface for vlan 20
- assign IP 10.0.0.1/24 to the SVI for vlan 10
- assign IP 20.0.0.1/24 to the SVI for vlan 20
- configure swp3 as a trunk for vlans 10, 11, 12 and 20
  - swp3
  - \*switch1 ----- switch2
    - / \
    - swp1 / \ swp2
      - / \
      - / \
      - host-11 host-12

**switch1 net commands****=====**

- enable vlans 10-20
- switch1# net add vlan 10-20
- place host-11 in vlan 10
- place host-12 in vlan 20
- switch1# net add int swp1 bridge access 10
- switch1# net add int swp2 bridge access 20
- create an SVI interface for vlan 10
- create an SVI interface for vlan 20
- assign IP 10.0.0.1/24 to the SVI for vlan 10
- assign IP 20.0.0.1/24 to the SVI for vlan 20
- switch1# net add vlan 10 ip address 10.0.0.1/24
- switch1# net add vlan 20 ip address 20.0.0.1/24
- configure swp3 as a trunk for vlans 10, 11, 12 and 20
- switch1# net add int swp3 bridge trunk vlans 10-12,20
- # Review and commit changes
- switch1# net pending
- switch1# net commit

**Verification****=====**

```
switch1# net show interface
switch1# net show bridge macs
```

## Configuring User Accounts

You can configure user accounts in Cumulus Linux with read-only or edit permissions for NCLU:



- You create user accounts with **read-only** permissions for NCLU by adding them to the `netshow` group. A user in the `netshow` group can run NCLU `net show` commands, such as `net show interface` or `net show config`, and certain general Linux commands, such as `ls`, `cd` or `man`, but cannot run `net add`, `net del` or `net commit` commands.
- You create user accounts with **edit** permissions for NCLU by adding them to the `netedit` group. A user in the `netedit` group can run NCLU configuration commands, such `net add`, `net del` or `net commit` in addition to NCLU `net show` commands.

The examples below demonstrate how to add a new user account or modify an existing user account called `myuser`.

To add a new user account with NCLU show permissions:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo adduser --ingroup netshow myuser
Adding user `myuser' ...
Adding new user `myuser' (1001) with group `netshow' ...
```

To add NCLU show permissions to a user account that already exists:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo addgroup myuser netshow
Adding user `myuser' to group `netshow' ...
Adding user myuser to group netshow
Done
```

To add a new user account with NCLU edit permissions:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo adduser --ingroup netedit myuser
Adding user `myuser' ...
Adding new user `myuser' (1001) with group `netedit' ...
```

To add NCLU edit permissions to a user account that already exists:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo addgroup myuser netedit
Adding user `myuser' to group `netedit' ...
Adding user myuser to group netedit
Done
```



You can use the `adduser` command for local user accounts only. You can use the `addgroup` command for both local and remote user accounts. For a remote user account, you must use the mapping username, such as `tacacs3` or `radius_user`, not the **TACACS (see page 120)** or **RADIUS (see page 132)** account name.

If the user tries to run commands that are not allowed, the following error displays:



```
myuser@switch:~$ net add hostname host01
ERROR: User username does not have permission to make networking
changes.
```

## Editing the netd.conf File

Instead of using the NCLU commands described above, you can manually configure users and groups to be able to run NCLU commands.

Edit the `/etc/netd.conf` file to add users to the `users_with_edit` and `users_with_show` lines in the file, then save the file.

For example, if you want the user `netoperator` to be able to run both edit and show commands, add the user to the `users_with_edit` and `users_with_show` lines in the `/etc/netd.conf` file:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nano /etc/netd.conf

# Control which users/groups are allowed to run 'add', 'del',
# 'clear', 'net abort', 'net commit' and restart services
# to apply those changes
users_with_edit = root, cumulus, netoperator
groups_with_edit = root, cumulus

# Control which users/groups are allowed to run 'show' commands
users_with_show = root, cumulus
groups_with_show = root, cumulus
```

To configure a new user group to use NCLU, add that group to the `groups_with_edit` and `groups_with_show` lines in the file.

**!** Use caution giving groups edit permissions. For example, you don't want to give edit permissions to the [tacacs group](#) (see page 124).

## Restarting the netd Service

Whenever you modify `netd.conf`, you must restart the `netd` service for the changes to take effect:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart netd.service
```

## Backing up the Configuration to a Single File

You can easily back up your NCLU configuration to a file by outputting the results of `net show configuration` commands to a file, then retrieving the contents of the file using the `source` command. You can then view the configuration at any time or copy it to other switches and use the `source` command to apply that configuration to those switches.



For example, to copy out the configuration of a leaf switch called leaf01, you would run something like the following:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show configuration commands >> leaf01.txt
```

With the commands all stored in a single file, you can now copy this file to another ToR switch in your network called leaf01 and apply the configuration by running:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ source leaf01.txt
```

## Advanced Configuration

NCLU needs no initial configuration; it's ready to go in Cumulus Linux. However, if you need to modify its configuration, you must manually update the `/etc/netd.conf` file. This file can be configured to allow different permission levels for users to edit configurations and run show commands. It also contains a blacklist that hides less frequently used terms from the tabbed autocomplete.

Configuration Variable	Default Setting	Description
show_linux_command	False	When true, displays the Linux command running in the background.
enable_ifupdown2	True	Enables <code>net</code> wrapping of <code>ifupdown2</code> commands.
enable_frr	True	Enables <code>net</code> wrapping of FRRouting commands.
users_with_edit	root, cumulus	Sets the Linux users with root edit privileges.
groups_with_edit	root, cumulus	



Configuration Variable	Default Setting	Description
		Sets the Linux groups with root edit privileges.
users_with_show	root, cumulus	Controls which users are allowed to run <code>show</code> commands.
groups_with_show	root, cumulus	Controls which groups are allowed to run <code>show</code> commands.
ifupdown_blacklist	address-purge, bond-ad-actor-sys-prio, bond-ad-actor-system, bond-mode, bond-num-grat-arp, bond-num-unsol-na, bond-use-carrier, bond-xmit-hash-policy, bridge-bridgeprio, bridge-fd, bridge-hashed, bridge-hashmax, bridge-hello, bridge-maxage, bridge-maxwait, bridge-mclmc, bridge-mclmi, bridge-mcmi, bridge-mcq, bridge-mcqpi, bridge-mcqri, bridge-mcrouter, bridge-mcsqc, bridge-mcsqi, bridge-pathcosts, bridge-port-pvids, bridge-port-vids, bridge-portprios, bridge-stp, bridge-waitport, broadcast, hwaddress, link-type, mstptctl-ageing, mstptctl-fdelay, mstptctl-forcevers, mstptctl-hello, mstptctl-maxage, mstptctl-maxhops, mstptctl-portp2p, mstptctl-portpathcost, mstptctl-portrestrrole, mstptctl-portrestrtcn, mstptctl-treeportcost, mstptctl-treeportprio, mstptctl-txholdcount, netmask, preferred-lifetime, scope, vxlan-ageing, vxlan-learning, up, down, bridge-ageing, bridge-gcint, bridge-mcqfaddr, bridge-mcqv4src	Hides corner case command options from tab complete, to simplify and streamline output.

## ⓘ Net Tab Complete Output

`net` provides an environment variable for setting where the `net` output is directed. To only use `stdout`, set the `NCLU_TAB_STDOUT` environment variable to `true`. The value is not case sensitive.

## Setting Date and Time

Setting the time zone, date and time requires root privileges; use `sudo`.



## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Setting the Time Zone (see page 96)
  - Alternative: Use the Guided Wizard to Find and Apply a Time Zone (see page 96)
- Setting the Date and Time (see page 97)
- Setting Time Using NTP and NCLU (see page 98)
- Specifying the NTP Source Interface (see page 99)
- NTP Default Configuration (see page 99)
- Related Information (see page 101)

## Setting the Time Zone

To see the current time zone, list the contents of /etc/timezone:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/timezone
US/Eastern
```

Edit the file to add your desired time zone. A list of valid time zones can be found at the following [link](#).

Use the following command to apply the new time zone immediately.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo dpkg-reconfigure --frontend noninteractive
tzdata
```

### *Alternative: Use the Guided Wizard to Find and Apply a Time Zone*

To set the time zone, run `dpkg-reconfigure tzdata` as root:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo dpkg-reconfigure tzdata
```

Then navigate the menus to enable the time zone you want. The following example selects the US/Pacific time zone:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo dpkg-reconfigure tzdata
Configuring tzdata
-----
Please select the geographic area in which you live. Subsequent
configuration
questions will narrow this down by presenting a list of cities,
representing
the time zones in which they are located.
```



```
1. Africa      4. Australia  7. Atlantic  10. Pacific 13. Etc  
2. America     5. Arctic     8. Europe    11. SystemV  
3. Antarctica  6. Asia       9. Indian    12. US  
Geographic area: 12
```

Please select the city or region corresponding to your time zone.

```
1. Alaska      4. Central    7. Indiana-Starke 10. Pacific  
2. Aleutian    5. Eastern    8. Michigan        11. Pacific-New  
3. Arizona     6. Hawaii     9. Mountain       12. Samoa
```

Time zone: 10

Current default time zone: 'US/Pacific'

Local time is now: Mon Jun 17 09:27:45 PDT 2013.

Universal Time is now: Mon Jun 17 16:27:45 UTC 2013.

For more info see the Debian [System Administrator's Manual – Time](#).

## Setting the Date and Time

The switch contains a battery backed hardware clock that maintains the time while the switch is powered off and in between reboots. When the switch is running, the Cumulus Linux operating system maintains its own software clock.

During boot up, the time from the hardware clock is copied into the operating system's software clock. The software clock is then used for all timekeeping responsibilities. During system shutdown the software clock is copied back to the battery backed hardware clock.

You can set the date and time on the software clock using the `date` command. First, determine your current time zone:

```
cumulus@switch$ date +%Z
```



If you need to reconfigure the current time zone, refer to the instructions above.

Then, to set the system clock according to the time zone configured:

```
cumulus@switch$ sudo date -s "Tue Jan 12 00:37:13 2016"
```

See `man date(1)` for if you need more information.

You can write the current value of the system (software) clock to the hardware clock using the `hwclock` command:

```
cumulus@switch$ sudo hwclock -w
```



See `man hwclock(8)` if you need more information.

You can find a good overview of the software and hardware clocks in the Debian [System Administrator's Manual – Time](#), specifically the section [Setting and showing hardware clock](#).

## Setting Time Using NTP and NCLU

The `ntpd` daemon running on the switch implements the NTP protocol. It synchronizes the system time with time servers listed in `/etc/ntp.conf`. It is started at boot by default. See `man ntpd(8)` for `ntpd` details, and you can check [this site](#) for an explanation of the output.

By default, `/etc/ntp.conf` contains some default time servers. You can specify the NTP server or servers you want to use with [NCLU \(see page 85\)](#); include the `iburst` option to increase the sync speed.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add time ntp server 4.cumulusnetworks.pool.ntp.org iburst
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands add the NTP server to the list of servers in `/etc/ntp.conf`:

```
# pool.ntp.org maps to about 1000 low-stratum NTP servers. Your
server will
# pick a different set every time it starts up. Please consider
joining the
# pool: <http://www.pool.ntp.org/join.html>
server 0.cumulusnetworks.pool.ntp.org iburst
server 1.cumulusnetworks.pool.ntp.org iburst
server 2.cumulusnetworks.pool.ntp.org iburst
server 3.cumulusnetworks.pool.ntp.org iburst
server 4.cumulusnetworks.pool.ntp.org iburst
```

To set the initial date and time via NTP before starting the `ntpd` daemon, use `ntpd -q`. This is same as `ntpdate`, which is to be retired and no longer available. See `man ntp.conf(5)` for details on configuring `ntpd` using `ntp.conf`.



`ntpd -q` can hang if the time servers are not reachable.

To verify that `ntpd` is running on the system:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ps -ef | grep ntp
ntp      4074      1  0 Jun20 ?          00:00:33 /usr/sbin/ntpd -p /var
/run/ntpd.pid -g -u 101:102
```

To check the NTP peer status:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show time ntp servers
      remote          refid      st t when poll reach   delay
offset  jitter
=====
=====
+minime.fdf.net  58.180.158.150    3 u  140 1024  377   55.659
0.339  1.464
+69.195.159.158 128.138.140.44    2 u  259 1024  377   41.587
1.011  1.677
*chl.la         216.218.192.202    2 u  210 1024  377   4.008
1.277  1.628
+vps3.drown.org 17.253.2.125      2 u  743 1024  377   39.319
-0.316  1.384
```

To remove one or more NTP servers:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net del time ntp server 0.cumulusnetworks.pool.ntp.
org iburst
cumulus@switch:~$ net del time ntp server 1.cumulusnetworks.pool.ntp.
org iburst
cumulus@switch:~$ net del time ntp server 2.cumulusnetworks.pool.ntp.
org iburst
cumulus@switch:~$ net del time ntp server 3.cumulusnetworks.pool.ntp.
org iburst
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

## Specifying the NTP Source Interface

You can change the source interface that NTP uses if you want to use an interface other than eth0, the default.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add time ntp source swp10
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration snippet in the `ntp.conf` file:

```
...
# Specify interfaces
interface listen swp10
...
```



## NTP Default Configuration

The default NTP configuration comprises the following servers, which are listed in the `/etc/ntp.conf` file:

- server 0.cumulusnetworks.pool.ntp.org iburst
- server 1.cumulusnetworks.pool.ntp.org iburst
- server 2.cumulusnetworks.pool.ntp.org iburst
- server 3.cumulusnetworks.pool.ntp.org iburst

If you need to restore the default NTP configuration, its contents are listed below.

Default `ntp.conf` file ...

```
# /etc/ntp.conf, configuration for ntpd; see ntp.conf(5) for help
driftfile /var/lib/ntp/ntp.drift
# Enable this if you want statistics to be logged.
#statsdir /var/log/ntpstats/
statistics loopstats peerstats clockstats
filegen loopstats file loopstats type day enable
filegen peerstats file peerstats type day enable
filegen clockstats file clockstats type day enable
# You do need to talk to an NTP server or two (or three).
#server ntp.your-provider.example
# pool.ntp.org maps to about 1000 low-stratum NTP servers. Your
server will
# pick a different set every time it starts up. Please consider
joining the
# pool: <http://www.pool.ntp.org/join.html>
server 0.cumulusnetworks.pool.ntp.org iburst
server 1.cumulusnetworks.pool.ntp.org iburst
server 2.cumulusnetworks.pool.ntp.org iburst
server 3.cumulusnetworks.pool.ntp.org iburst
# Access control configuration; see /usr/share/doc/ntp-doc/html
/accept.html for
# details. The web page <http://support.ntp.org/bin/view/Support
/AccessRestrictions>
# might also be helpful.
#
# Note that "restrict" applies to both servers and clients, so a
configuration
# that might be intended to block requests from certain clients could
also end
# up blocking replies from your own upstream servers.
# By default, exchange time with everybody, but don't allow
configuration.
restrict -4 default kod notrap nomodify nopeer noquery
restrict -6 default kod notrap nomodify nopeer noquery
# Local users may interrogate the ntp server more closely.
restrict 127.0.0.1
restrict ::1
```

```
# Clients from this (example!) subnet have unlimited access, but only
if
# cryptographically authenticated.
#restrict 192.168.123.0 mask 255.255.255.0 notrust
# If you want to provide time to your local subnet, change the next
line.
# (Again, the address is an example only.)
#broadcast 192.168.123.255
# If you want to listen to time broadcasts on your local subnet, de-
comment the
# next lines. Please do this only if you trust everybody on the
network!
#disable auth
#broadcastclient
# Specify interfaces, don't listen on switch ports
interface listen eth0
```

## Related Information

- [Debian System Administrator's Manual – Time](#)
- [www.ntp.org](#)
- [en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Network\\_Time\\_Protocol](#)
- [wiki.debian.org/NTP](#)

## Authentication, Authorization and Accounting

### SSH for Remote Access

Authentication keys can be generated for securely accessing a Cumulus Linux switch with the ssh-keygen component of the Secure Shell (SSH) protocol. Cumulus Linux uses the OpenSSH package to provide this functionality. The section below covers how to generate a SSH key pair.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- [Generate an SSH Key Pair \(see page 101\)](#)
- [Related Information \(see page 103\)](#)

### Generate an SSH Key Pair

1. Run the ssh-keygen command, and follow the prompts, to generate the key pair:

#### Configure a Passwordless System

To configure a completely passwordless system, do not enter a passphrase when prompted in the following step.

```

cumulus@leaf01:~$ ssh-keygen
Generating public/private rsa key pair.
Enter file in which to save the key (/home/cumulus/.ssh/id_rsa):
Enter passphrase (empty for no passphrase):
Enter same passphrase again:
Your identification has been saved in /home/cumulus/.ssh/id_rsa.
Your public key has been saved in /home/cumulus/.ssh/id_rsa.pub.
The key fingerprint is:
5a:b4:16:a0:f9:14:6b:51:f6:f6:c0:76:1a:35:2b:bb cumulus@leaf04
The key's randomart image is:
+---[RSA 2048]---+
|       +.o   o   |
|       o * o . o |
|       o + o O o |
|       + . = O    |
|       . S o .    |
|       +       .   |
|       .       E   |
+-----+
  
```

- Run the `ssh-copy-id` command, and follow the prompts, to copy the generated public key to the desired location:

```

cumulus@leaf01:~$ ssh-copy-id -i /home/cumulus/.ssh/id_rsa.pub
cumulus@leaf02
The authenticity of host 'leaf02 (192.168.0.11)' can't be
established.
ECDSA key fingerprint is b1:ce:b7:6a:20:f4:06:3a:09:3c:d9:42:de:
99:66:6e.
Are you sure you want to continue connecting (yes/no)? yes
/usr/bin/ssh-copy-id: INFO: attempting to log in with the new key
(s), to filter out any that are already installed
/usr/bin/ssh-copy-id: INFO: 1 key(s) remain to be installed --
if you are prompted now it is to install the new keys
cumulus@leaf01's password:

Number of key(s) added: 1
  
```



`ssh-copy-id` will not work if the username on the remote switch is different to the local switch. To work around this issue, use the `scp` command instead:

```

cumulus@leaf01:~$ scp .ssh/id_rsa.pub cumulus@leaf02:.ssh
/authorized_keys
  
```



```
Enter passphrase for key '/home/cumulus/.ssh/id_rsa':  
id_rsa.pub
```

3. Connect to the remote switch to confirm the authentication keys are in place:

```
cumulus@leaf04:~$ ssh cumulus@leaf02  
  
Welcome to Cumulus VX (TM)  
  
Cumulus VX (TM) is a community supported virtual appliance  
designed for  
experiencing, testing and prototyping Cumulus Networks' latest  
technology.  
For any questions or technical support, visit our community site  
at:  
http://community.cumulusnetworks.com  
  
The registered trademark Linux (R) is used pursuant to a  
sublicense from LMI,  
the exclusive licensee of Linus Torvalds, owner of the mark on a  
world-wide  
basis.  
Last login: Thu Sep 29 16:56:54 2016
```

## Related Information

- Debian Documentation - Password-less logins with OpenSSH
- Wikipedia - Secure Shell (SSH)

## User Accounts

By default, Cumulus Linux has two user accounts: *cumulus* and *root*.

The *cumulus* account:

- Default password is *CumulusLinux!*
- Is a user account in the *sudo* group with sudo privileges
- User can log in to the system via all the usual channels like console and SSH (see page 101)
- Along with the *cumulus* group, has both show and edit rights for *NCLU* (see page 85)

The *root* account:

- Default password is disabled by default
- Has the standard Linux root user access to everything on the switch
- Disabled password prohibits login to the switch by SSH, telnet, FTP, and so forth

For best security, you should change the default password (using the *passwd* command) before you configure Cumulus Linux on the switch.



You can add more user accounts as needed. Like the *cumulus* account, these accounts must use `sudo` to execute privileged commands (see page 105), so be sure to include them in the `sudo` group.

To access the switch without any password requires booting into a single shell/user mode (see page 770).

You can add and configure user accounts in Cumulus Linux with read-only or edit permissions for NCLU. For more information, see Configuring User Accounts (see page 85).

## Enabling Remote Access for the root User

As mentioned above, the root user does not have a password set for it, and it cannot log in to a switch via SSH. This default account behavior is consistent with Debian. In order to connect to a switch using the root account, you can do one of two things for the account:

- Generate an SSH key
- Set a password

## Generating an SSH Key for the root Account

1. First, in a terminal on your host system (not the switch), check to see if a key already exists:

```
root@host:~# ls -al ~/.ssh/
```

The key is named something like `id_dsa.pub`, `id_rsa.pub` or `id_ecdsa.pub`.

2. If a key doesn't exist, generate a new one by first creating the RSA key pair:

```
root@host:~# ssh-keygen -t rsa
```

3. A prompt appears, asking you to *Enter file in which to save the key (/root/.ssh/id\_rsa)*: Press Enter to use the root user's home directory, or else provide a different destination.
4. You are prompted to *Enter passphrase (empty for no passphrase)*: This is optional but it does provide an extra layer of security.
5. The public key is now located in `/root/.ssh/id_rsa.pub`. The private key (identification) is now located in `/root/.ssh/id_rsa`.
6. Copy the public key to the switch. SSH to the switch as the *cumulus* user, then run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mkdir -p /root/.ssh
cumulus@switch:~$ echo <SSH public key string> | sudo tee -a
/root/.ssh/authorized_keys
```

## Setting the root User Password

1. Run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo passwd root
```



2. Change the `/etc/ssh/sshd_config` file's `PermitRootLogin` setting from `without-password` to `yes`

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nano /etc/ssh/sshd_config

...
# Authentication:
LoginGraceTime 120
PermitRootLogin yes
StrictModes yes

...
```

3. Restart the `ssh` service:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl reload ssh.service
```

## Using sudo to Delegate Privileges

By default, Cumulus Linux has two user accounts: `root` and `cumulus`. The `cumulus` account is a normal user and is in the group `sudo`.

You can add more user accounts as needed. Like the `cumulus` account, these accounts must use `sudo` to execute privileged commands.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Using `sudo` (see page 105)
- `sudoers` Examples (see page 106)
- Related Information (see page 111)

### Using sudo

`sudo` allows you to execute a command as superuser or another user as specified by the security policy. See `man sudo(8)` for details.

The default security policy is `sudoers`, which is configured using `/etc/sudoers`. Use `/etc/sudoers.d/` to add to the default `sudoers` policy. See `man sudoers(5)` for details.



Use `visudo` only to edit the `sudoers` file; do not use another editor like `vi` or `emacs`. See `man visudo(8)` for details.

Errors in the `sudoers` file can result in losing the ability to elevate privileges to root. You can fix this issue only by power cycling the switch and booting into single user mode. Before modifying `sudoers`, enable the root user by setting a password for the root user.



By default, users in the `sudo` group can use `sudo` to execute privileged commands. To add users to the `sudo` group, use the `useradd(8)` or `usermod(8)` command. To see which users belong to the `sudo` group, see `/etc/group` (`man group(5)`).

Any command can be run as `sudo`, including `su`. A password is required.

The example below shows how to use `sudo` as a non-privileged user *cumulus* to bring up an interface:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip link show dev swp1
3: swp1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast master br0
state DOWN mode DEFAULT qlen 500
link/ether 44:38:39:00:27:9f brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff

cumulus@switch:~$ ip link set dev swp1 up
RTNETLINK answers: Operation not permitted

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ip link set dev swp1 up
Password:

cumulus@switch:~$ ip link show dev swp1
3: swp1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast
master br0 state UP mode DEFAULT qlen 500
link/ether 44:38:39:00:27:9f brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
```

## *sudoers Examples*

The following examples show how you grant as few privileges as necessary to a user or group of users to allow them to perform the required task. For each example, the system group *noc* is used; groups are prefixed with an %.

When executed by an unprivileged user, the example commands below must be prefixed with `sudo`.

Category	Privilege	Example Command	<code>sudoers</code> Entry
Monitoring	Switch port info	<code>ethtool -m swp1</code>	<code>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /sbin/ethtool</code>
Monitoring	System diagnostics	<code>cl-support</code>	<code>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /usr/cumulus/bin/cl-support</code>
Monitoring			



Category	Privilege	Example Command	sudoers Entry
	Routing diagnostics	cl-resource-query	%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/usr/cumulus/bin/cl-resource-query
Image management	Install images	onie-select http://lab/install.bin	%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/usr/cumulus/bin/onie-select
Package management	Any apt-get command	apt-get update or apt-get install	%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/usr/bin/apt-get
Package management	Just apt-get update	apt-get update	%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/usr/bin/apt-get update
Package management	Install packages	apt-get install vim	%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/usr/bin/apt-get install *
Package management	Upgrading	apt-get upgrade	%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/usr/bin/apt-get upgrade
Netfilter	Install ACL policies	cl-acltool -i	%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/usr/cumulus/bin/cl-acltool

Category	Action	Example Command	Success Entry
Netfilter	List iptables rules	<code>iptables -L</code>	<code>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /sbin/iptables</code>
L1 + 2 features	Any LLDP command	<code>lldpcli show neighbors / configure</code>	<code>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /usr /sbin/lldpcli</code>
L1 + 2 features	Just show neighbors	<code>lldpcli show neighbors</code>	<code>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /usr /sbin/lldpcli show neighbours*</code>
Interfaces	Modify any interface	<code>ip link set dev swp1 {up down}</code>	<code>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /sbin/ip link set *</code>
Interfaces	Up any interface	<code>ifup swp1</code>	<code>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /sbin/ifup</code>
Interfaces	Down any interface	<code>ifdown swp1</code>	<code>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /sbin/ifdown</code>
Interfaces	Up/down only swp2	<code>ifup swp2 / ifdown swp2</code>	



Category	Privilege	Example Command	sudoers Entry
			%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /sbin/ifup swp2,/sbin /ifdown swp2
Interfaces	Any IP address chg	ip addr {add del} 192.0.2.1/30 dev swp1	%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /sbin/ip addr *
Interfaces	Only set IP address	ip addr add 192.0.2.1/30 dev swp1	%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /sbin/ip addr add *
Ethernet bridging	Any bridge command	brctl addbr br0 / brctl delif br0 swp1	%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /sbin/brctl
Ethernet bridging	Add bridges and ints	brctl addbr br0 / brctl addif br0 swp1	%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /sbin/brctl addbr *,/sbin /brctl addif *
Spanning tree	Set STP properties	mstptcl setmaxage br2 20	%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD: /sbin/mstptcl



Category	Privilege	Example Command	sudoers Entry
Troubleshooting	Restart switchd	<pre>systemctl restart switchd. service</pre>	<pre>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/usr /sbin/service switchd *</pre>
Troubleshooting	Restart any service	<pre>systemctl cron switchd.service</pre>	<pre>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/usr /sbin/service</pre>
Troubleshooting	Packet capture	<pre>tcpdump</pre>	<pre>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/usr /sbin/tcpdump</pre>
L3	Add static routes	<pre>ip route add 10.2.0.0/16 via 10.0.0.1</pre>	<pre>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/bin /ip route add *</pre>
L3	Delete static routes	<pre>ip route del 10.2.0.0/16 via 10.0.0.1</pre>	<pre>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/bin /ip route del *</pre>
L3	Any static route chg	<pre>ip route *</pre>	<pre>%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/bin /ip route *</pre>
L3	Any iproute command	<pre>ip *</pre>	



Category	Privilege	Example Command	sudoers Entry
			%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/bin/ /ip
L3	Non-modal OSPF	cl-ospf area 0.0.0.1 range 10.0.0.0/24	%noc ALL=(ALL) NOPASSWD:/usr /bin/cl-ospf

## Related Information

- [sudo](#)
- [Adding Yourself to sudoers](#)

## LDAP Authentication and Authorization

Cumulus Linux uses Pluggable Authentication Modules (PAM) and Name Service Switch (NSS) for user authentication.

NSS specifies the order of information sources used to resolve names for each service. Using this with authentication and authorization, it provides the order and location used for user lookup and group mapping on the system. PAM handles the interaction between the user and the system, providing login handling, session setup, authentication of users and authorization of a user actions.

NSS enables PAM to use LDAP for providing user authentication, group mapping and information for other services on the system.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- [Configuring LDAP Authentication \(see page 112\)](#)
- [Installing libnss-ldapd \(see page 112\)](#)
- [Configuring nslcd.conf \(see page 113\)
  - \[Connection \\(see page 113\\)\]\(#\)
  - \[Search Function \\(see page 113\\)\]\(#\)
  - \[Search Filters \\(see page 114\\)\]\(#\)
  - \[Attribute Mapping \\(see page 114\\)\]\(#\)
  - \[Example Configuration \\(see page 114\\)\]\(#\)](#)
- [Troubleshooting \(see page 114\)](#)



- Using nsLCD Debug Mode (see page 114)
- Common Problems (see page 116)
- Configuring LDAP Authorization (see page 117)
- Active Directory Configuration (see page 117)
- LDAP Verification Tools (see page 118)
  - Identifying a User with the id Command (see page 118)
  - Using getent (see page 118)
  - Using LDAP search (see page 118)
  - LDAP Browsers (see page 119)
- Related Information (see page 120)

## Configuring LDAP Authentication

There are 3 common ways of configuring LDAP authentication on Linux:

- libnss-ldap
- libnss-ldapd
- libnss-sss

This chapter covers using `libnss-ldapd` only. From internal testing, this library worked best with Cumulus Linux and was the easiest to configure, automate and troubleshoot.

### Installing libnss-ldapd

The `libpam-ldapd` package depends on `nsLCD`, so to install `libnss-ldapd`, `libpam-ldapd` and `ldap-utils`, you must run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo apt-get install libnss-ldapd libpam-ldapd ldap-utils nsLCD
```

This brings up an interactive prompt asking questions about the LDAP URI, search base distinguished name (DN) and services that should have LDAP lookups enabled. This creates a very basic LDAP configuration, using anonymous bind, and initiating the search for a user under the base DN specified.



Alternatively, these parameters can be pre-seeded using the `debconf-utils`. To use this method, run `apt-get install debconf-utils` and create the pre-seeded parameters using `debconf-set-selections` with the appropriate answers. Run `debconf-show <pkg>` to check the settings. Here is an [example of how to preseed answers to the installer questions using debconf-set-selections](#).

Once the install is complete, the *name service LDAP caching daemon* (`nsLCD`) will be running. This is the service that handles all of the LDAP protocol interactions, and caches the information returned from the LDAP server. In `/etc/nsswitch.conf`, `ldap` has been appended and is the secondary information source for `passwd`, `group` and `shadow`. The local files (`/etc/passwd`, `/etc/groups` and `/etc/shadow`) are used first, as specified by the `compat` source.



```
passwd: compat ldap
group: compat ldap
shadow: compat ldap
```



You are strongly advised to keep `compat` as the first source in NSS for `passwd`, `group` and `shadow`. This prevents you from getting locked out of the system.

## Configuring `nslcd.conf`

You need to update the main configuration file (`/etc/nslcd.conf`) after installation to accommodate the expected LDAP server settings. The [nslcd.conf man page](#) details all the available configuration options. Some of the more important options are related to security and how the queries are handled.

### Connection

The LDAP client starts a session by connecting to the LDAP server, by default, on TCP and UDP port 389, or on port 636 for LDAPS. Depending on the configuration, this connection may be unauthenticated (anonymous bind); otherwise, the client must provide a bind user and password. The variables used to define the connection to the LDAP server are the URI and bind credentials.

The URI is mandatory, and specifies the LDAP server location using the FQDN or IP address. It also designates whether to use `ldap://` for clear text transport, or `ldaps://` for SSL/TLS encrypted transport. Optionally, an alternate port may also be specified in the URI. Typically, in production environments, it is best to utilize the LDAPS protocol. Otherwise all communications are clear text and not secure.

After the connection to the server is complete, the BIND operation authenticates the session. The BIND credentials are optional, and if not specified, an anonymous bind is assumed. This is typically not allowed in most production environments. Configure authenticated (Simple) BIND by specifying the user (`binddn`) and password (`bindpw`) in the configuration. Another option is to use SASL (Simple Authentication and Security Layer) BIND, which provides authentication services using other mechanisms, like Kerberos. Contact your LDAP server administrator for this information since it depends on the configuration of the LDAP server and what credentials are created for the client device.

```
# The location at which the LDAP server(s) should be reachable.
uri ldaps://ldap.example.com
# The DN to bind with for normal lookups.
binddn cn=CLswitch,ou=infra,dc=example,dc=com
bindpw CuMuLus
```

### Search Function

When an LDAP client requests information about a resource, it must connect and bind to the server. Then it performs one or more resource queries depending on what it is looking up. All search queries sent to the LDAP server are created using the configured search `base`, `filter`, and the desired entry (`uid=myuser`) being searched for. If the LDAP directory is large, this search may take a significant amount of time. It is a good idea to define a more specific search base for the common maps (`passwd` and `group`).



```
# The search base that will be used for all queries.  
base dc=example,dc=com  
# Mapped search bases to speed up common queries.  
base passwd ou=people,dc=example,dc=com  
base group ou=groups,dc=example,dc=com
```

## Search Filters

It is also common to use search filters to specify criteria used when searching for objects within the directory. This is used to limit the search scope when authenticating users. The default filters applied are:

```
filter passwd (objectClass=posixAccount)  
filter group (objectClass=posixGroup)
```

## Attribute Mapping

The *map* configuration allows for overriding the attributes pushed from LDAP. To override an attribute for a given *map*\*<sup>\*</sup>, specify the attribute name and the new value. One example of how this is useful is ensuring the shell is *bash* and the home directory is */home/cumulus*:

```
map      passwd homeDirectory "/home/cumulus"  
map      passwd shell "/bin/bash"
```



\*In LDAP, the **map** refers to one of the supported maps specified in the manpage for `nslcd.conf` (such as `passwd` or `group`).

## Example Configuration

Here is an [example configuration](#) using Cumulus Linux.

## Troubleshooting

### Using *nslcd* Debug Mode

When setting up LDAP authentication for the first time, Cumulus Networks recommends you turn off this service using `sudo systemctl stop nslcd.service` and run it in debug mode. Debug mode works whether you are using LDAP over SSL (port 636) or an unencrypted LDAP connection (port 389).

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl stop nslcd.service  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nslcd -d
```

Once you enable debug mode, run the following command to test LDAP queries:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo getent myuser
```

If LDAP is configured correctly, the following messages appear after you run the `getent` command:

```
nsLCD: DEBUG: accept() failed (ignored): Resource temporarily unavailable
nsLCD: [8e1f29] DEBUG: connection from pid=11766 uid=0 gid=0
nsLCD: [8e1f29] <passwd(all)> DEBUG: myldap_search(base="dc=example, dc=com", filter="(objectClass=posixAccount)")
nsLCD: [8e1f29] <passwd(all)> DEBUG: ldap_result(): uid=myuser, ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
nsLCD: [8e1f29] <passwd(all)> DEBUG: ldap_result(): ... 152 more results
nsLCD: [8e1f29] <passwd(all)> DEBUG: ldap_result(): end of results (162 total)
```

In the output above, `<passwd(all)>` indicates that the entire directory structure was queried.

A specific user can be queried using the command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo getent passwd myuser
```

You can replace `myuser` with any username on the switch. The following debug output indicates that user `myuser` exists:

```
nsLCD: DEBUG: add_uri(ldap://10.50.21.101)
nsLCD: version 0.8.10 starting
nsLCD: DEBUG: unlink() of /var/run/nsLCD/socket failed (ignored): No such file or directory
nsLCD: DEBUG: setgroups(0,NULL) done
nsLCD: DEBUG: setgid(110) done
nsLCD: DEBUG: setuid(107) done
nsLCD: accepting connections
nsLCD: DEBUG: accept() failed (ignored): Resource temporarily unavailable
nsLCD: [8b4567] DEBUG: connection from pid=11369 uid=0 gid=0
nsLCD: [8b4567] <passwd="myuser"> DEBUG: myldap_search(base="dc=cumulusnetworks,dc=com", filter="(&(objectClass=posixAccount)(uid=myuser))")
nsLCD: [8b4567] <passwd="myuser"> DEBUG: ldap_initialize (ldap://<ip_address>)
nsLCD: [8b4567] <passwd="myuser"> DEBUG: ldap_set_rebind_proc()
nsLCD: [8b4567] <passwd="myuser"> DEBUG: ldap_set_option (LDAP_OPT_PROTOCOL_VERSION,3)
nsLCD: [8b4567] <passwd="myuser"> DEBUG: ldap_set_option (LDAP_OPT_DEREF,0)
```

```

nslcd: [8b4567] <passwd="myuser"> DEBUG: ldap_set_option
(LDAP_OPT_TIMELIMIT,0)
nslcd: [8b4567] <passwd="myuser"> DEBUG: ldap_set_option
(LDAP_OPT_TIMEOUT,0)
nslcd: [8b4567] <passwd="myuser"> DEBUG: ldap_set_option
(LDAP_OPT_NETWORK_TIMEOUT,0)
nslcd: [8b4567] <passwd="myuser"> DEBUG: ldap_set_option
(LDAP_OPT_REFERRALS,LDAP_OPT_ON)
nslcd: [8b4567] <passwd="myuser"> DEBUG: ldap_set_option
(LDAP_OPT_RESTART,LDAP_OPT_ON)
nslcd: [8b4567] <passwd="myuser"> DEBUG: ldap_simple_bind_s(NULL,
NULL) (uri="ldap://<ip_address>")
nslcd: [8b4567] <passwd="myuser"> DEBUG: ldap_result(): end of
results (0 total)

```

Notice how the <passwd="myuser"> shows that the specific *myuser* user was queried.

## Common Problems

### SSL/TLS

- The FQDN of the LDAP server URI does not match the FQDN in the CA-signed server certificate exactly.
- `nslcd` cannot read the SSL certificate, and will report a "Permission denied" error in the debug during server connection negotiation. Check the permission on each directory in the path of the root SSL certificate. Ensure that it is readable by the `nslcd` user.

### NSCD

- If the `nscd` cache daemon is also enabled and you make some changes to the user from LDAP, you may want to clear the cache using the commands:

```

nscd --invalidate = passwd
nscd --invalidate = group

```

- The `nscd` package works with `nslcd` to cache name entries returned from the LDAP server. This may cause authentication failures. To work around these issues:

1. Disable `nscd` by running:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nscd -K

```

2. Restart the `nslcd` service:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart nslcd.service

```



3. Try the authentication again.

## LDAP

- The search filter returns wrong results. Check for typos in the search filter. Use `ldapsearch` to test your filter.
- Optionally, configure the basic LDAP connection and search parameters in `/etc/ldap/ldap.conf`

```
# ldapsearch -D 'cn=CLadmin' -w 'CuMuLuS' "(&(ObjectClass/inetOrgUser)(uid=myuser))"
```

- When a local username also exists in the LDAP database, the order of the information sources in `/etc/nsswitch.conf` can be updated to query LDAP before the local user database. This is generally not recommended. For example, the configuration below ensures that LDAP is queried before the local database.

```
# /etc/nsswitch.conf
passwd:      ldap compat
```

## Configuring LDAP Authorization

Linux uses the `sudo` command to allow non-administrator users — like the default *cumulus* user account — to perform privileged operations. To control the users authorized to use sudo, the `/etc/sudoers` file and files located in the `/etc/sudoers.d/` directory have a series of rules defined. Typically, the rules are based on groups, but can also be defined for specific users. Therefore, sudo rules can be added using the group names from LDAP. For example, if a group of users were associated with the group *netadmin*, a rule can be added to give those users sudo privileges. Refer to the sudoers manual (`man sudoers`) for a complete usage description. Here's an illustration of this in `/etc/sudoers`:

```
# The basic structure of a user specification is "who where =
(as_whom) what".
%sudo ALL=(ALL:ALL) ALL
%netadmin ALL=(ALL:ALL) ALL
```

## Active Directory Configuration

Active Directory (AD) is a fully featured LDAP-based NIS server created by Microsoft. It offers unique features that classic OpenLDAP servers lack. Therefore, it can be more complicated to configure on the client and each version of AD is a little different in how it works with Linux-based LDAP clients. Some more advanced configuration examples, from testing LDAP clients on Cumulus Linux with Active Directory (AD/LDAP), are available in our [knowledge base](#).



## LDAP Verification Tools

Typically, password and group information is retrieved from LDAP and cached by the LDAP client daemon. To test the LDAP interaction, these command line tools can be used to trigger an LDAP query from the device. This helps to create the best filters and verify the information sent back from the LDAP server.

### Identifying a User with the id Command

The `id` command performs a username lookup by following the lookup information sources in NSS for the `passwd` service. This simply returns the user ID, group ID and the group list retrieved from the information source. In the following example, the user `cumulus` is locally defined in `/etc/passwd`, and `myuser` is on LDAP. The NSS configuration has the `passwd` map configured with the sources `compat ldap`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ id cumulus
uid=1000(cumulus) gid=1000(cumulus) groups=1000(cumulus),24(cdrom),25
(floppy),27(sudo),29(audio),30(dip),44(video),46(plugdev)
cumulus@switch:~$ id myuser
uid=1230(myuser) gid=3000(Development) groups=3000(Development),500
(Employees),27(sudo)
```

### Using getent

The `getent` command retrieves all records found via NSS for a given map. It can also get a specific entry under that map. Tests can be done with the `passwd`, `group`, `shadow` or any other map configured in `/etc/nsswitch.conf`. The output from this command is formatted according to the map requested. Thus, for the `passwd` service, the structure of the output is the same as the entries in `/etc/passwd`. The same can be said for the `group` map will output the same as `/etc/group`. In this example, looking up a specific user in the `passwd` map, the user `cumulus` is locally defined in `/etc/passwd`, and `myuser` is only in LDAP.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ getent passwd cumulus
cumulus:x:1000:1000::/home/cumulus:/bin/bash
cumulus@switch:~$ getent passwd myuser
myuser:x:1230:3000:My Test User:/home/myuser:/bin/bash
```

In the next example, looking up a specific group in the `group` service, the group `cumulus` is locally defined in `/etc/groups`, and `netadmin` is on LDAP.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ getent group cumulus
cumulus:x:1000:
cumulus@switch:~$ getent group netadmin
netadmin:*:502:larry,moe,curly,shemp
```

Running the command `getent passwd` or `getent group` without a specific request, returns **all** local and LDAP entries for the `passwd` and `group` maps, respectively.



## Using LDAP search

The `ldapsearch` command performs LDAP operations directly on the LDAP server. This does not interact with NSS. This command helps display what the LDAP daemon process is receiving back from the server. The command has many options. The simplest uses anonymous bind to the host and specifies the search DN and what attribute to lookup.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ldapsearch -H ldap://ldap.example.com -b dc=example,dc=com -x uid=myuser
```

Click to expand the command output ...

```
# extended LDIF
#
# LDAPv3
# base <dc=example,dc=com> with scope subtree
# filter: uid=myuser
# requesting: ALL
#
# myuser, people, example.com
dn: uid=myuser,ou=people,dc=example,dc=com
cn: My User
displayName: My User
gecos: myuser
gidNumber: 3000
givenName: My
homeDirectory: /home/myuser
initials: MU
loginShell: /bin/bash
mail: myuser@example.com
objectClass: inetOrgPerson
objectClass: posixAccount
objectClass: shadowAccount
objectClass: top
shadowExpire: -1
shadowFlag: 0
shadowMax: 999999
shadowMin: 8
shadowWarning: 7
sn: User
uid: myuser
uidNumber: 1234
# search result
search: 2
result: 0 Success
# numResponses: 2
# numEntries: 1
```



## LDAP Browsers

There are some GUI LDAP clients that help to work with LDAP servers. These are free tools to help graphically show the structure of the LDAP database.

- Apache Directory Studio
- LDAPManager

## Related Information

- Debian - configuring LDAP authentication
- Debian - configuring PAM to use LDAP
- GitHub - Arthur de Jong nslcd.conf file
- Debian backports

## TACACS Plus

Cumulus Linux implements TACACS+ client AAA (Accounting, Authentication, and Authorization) in a transparent way with minimal configuration. The client implements the TACACS+ protocol as described in [this IETF document](#). There is no need to create accounts or directories on the switch. Accounting records are sent to all configured TACACS+ servers by default. Use of per-command authorization requires additional setup on the switch.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Supported Features (see page 121)
- Installing the TACACS+ Client Packages (see page )
- Configuring the TACACS+ Client (see page )
- TACACS+ Authentication (login) (see page )
- TACACS+ Accounting (see page )
- Configuring NCLU for TACACS+ Users (see page )
- TACACS+ Per-command Authorization (see page )
  - Command Options (see page 125)
- NSS Plugin (see page 126)
- TACACS Configuration Parameters (see page 126)
- Removing the TACACS+ Client Packages (see page )
- Troubleshooting TACACS+ (see page )
  - Debugging Basic Server Connectivity or NSS Issues (see page 128)
  - Debugging Issues with Per-command Authorization (see page 129)
  - Debug Issues with Accounting Records (see page 130)
  - TACACS Component Software Descriptions (see page 130)
- Limitations (see page 131)
  - TACACS+ Client Is only Supported through the Management Interface (see page )
  - Multiple TACACS+ Users (see page )



- Issues with deluser Command (see page 132)

## Supported Features

- Authentication via PAM; includes `login`, `ssh`, `sudo` and `su`
- Runs over the `eth0` management interface
- Ability to run in the [management VRF \(see page 720\)](#)
- TACACS+ privilege 15 users can run any command with `sudo` via the `/etc/sudoers.d/tacplus` file that is installed by the `libtacplus-map1` package
- Up to 7 TACACS+ servers

## Installing the TACACS+ Client Packages

TACACS+ requires the following packages to be installed on Cumulus Linux. They are not part of the base Cumulus Linux image installation. All required packages can be installed easily with these commands:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get update
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get install tacplus-client
```

## Configuring the TACACS+ Client

Post-installation TACACS+ configuration requires (at minimum) editing only one file, `/etc/tacplus_servers`. It is necessary add at least one server, and usually one shared secret (key). The `server` and `secret` parameters can be given in any order, and must not include any whitespace (spaces or tabs), and can be added anywhere in the file. For example, if your TACACS+ server IP address is `192.168.0.30`, and your shared secret is `tacacskey` then you would add these parameters to `/etc/tacplus_servers`:

```
secret=tacacskey
server=192.168.0.30
```

Up to 7 TACACS+ servers are supported. Connections are made in the order in which they are listed in this file. In most cases, no other parameters need to be changed. All parameters used by any of the packages can be added to this file, and will affect all the TACACS+ client software. It is also possible to configure some of the packages through individual configuration files. For example, the timeout value (see description below) is set to 5 seconds by default for NSS lookups in `/etc/tacplus_nss.conf`, while other packages use a value of 10 seconds, set in `/etc/tacplus_servers`.

When TACACS+ servers or secrets are added or removed, `auditd` must be restarted (with `systemctl restart auditd`) or a signal must be sent (with `killall -HUP audisp-tacplus`) before `audisp-tacplus` will reread the configuration to see the changed server list. Usually this is an issue only at first change to the configuration.

At this point, the Cumulus Linux switch should be able to query the TACACS server.

This is the complete list of the TACACS+ client configuration files, and their use. The full list of TACACS+ parameters is below at **TACACS Parameters** below.



Filename	Description
/etc/tacplus_servers	This is the primary file that requires configuration post-installation, and is used by all packages via <code>include=/etc/tacplus_servers</code> parameters in the other configuration files, when installed. Since this is usually the file with the shared secrets, it should not be world readable (should be Linux file mode 600).
/etc/nsswitch.conf	When the <code>libnss_tacplus</code> package is installed, this file is configured to enable tacplus lookups via <code>libnss_tacplus</code> . If this file is replaced by automation or other means, you will need to add tacplus as the first lookup method for the <code>passwd</code> database line.
/etc/tacplus_nss.conf	This file sets the basic parameters for <code>libnss_tacplus</code> . It includes a debug variable for debugging NSS lookups separately from other client packages.
/usr/share/pam-configs/tacplus	Configuration file for <code>pam-auth-update</code> to generate the files in the next row. These configurations are used at login, by <code>su</code> , and by <code>ssh</code> .
/etc/pam.d/common-*	The <code>/etc/pam.d/common-*</code> files are updated for <code>tacplus</code> authentication. The files are updated with <code>pam-auth-update</code> , when <code>libpam-tacplus</code> is installed or removed.
/etc/sudoers.d/tacplus	This file allows TACACS+ privilege level 15 users to run commands with <code>sudo</code> . It also includes an example (commented out) showing how to enable privilege level 15 TACACS users to use <code>sudo</code> without having to enter a password, and an example of how to enable all TACACS users to run specific commands via sudo. It should only be edited with the command: <code>visudo -f /etc/sudoers.d/tacplus</code>
audisp-tacplus.conf	<code>audisp</code> plugin configuration file. In general, no modifications are required.
/etc/audisp/audisp-tac_plus.conf	TACACS+ server configuration file for accounting. In general, no modifications are required. It may be useful to use this configuration file when you only want to debug TACACS+ accounting issues, not all TACACS+ users.
/etc/audit/rules.d/audisp-tacplus.rules	The <code>audited</code> rules for TACACS+ accounting. The <code>augenrules</code> command uses all rules files to generate the file rules file (below)
/etc/audit/audit.rules	Audit rules file generated during <code>audited</code> installation.



The `/etc/pam.d/common-*` files can be edited manually. However, if `pam-auth-update` is run again after the changes are made, the update will fail. Configuration should be done in `/usr/share/pam-configs/tacplus` instead, followed by running `pam-auth-update`.



## TACACS+ Authentication (login)

The initial authentication configuration is done through the PAM modules, and an updated version of the `libpam-tacplus` package. When the package is installed, the PAM configuration is updated in `/etc/pam.d` with the `pam-auth-update` command. If you have made changes to your PAM configuration, you may need to integrate these changes yourself. If you are also using LDAP with the `libpam-ldap` package, you will need to edit the PAM configuration to ensure the LDAP and TACACS ordering that you prefer. The `libpam-tacplus` are configured to skip over rules, and the values in the `success=2` may require adjustments to skip over LDAP rules.

The user's privilege level is determined by the TACACS+ privilege attribute `priv_lvl` for the user that is returned by the TACACS+ server during the user authorization exchange. The client accepts the attribute in either the mandatory or optional forms and also accepts `priv-lvl` as the attribute name. The attribute value must be a numeric string in the range 0 to 15, with 15 the most privileged level.



TACACS+ users at privilege levels other than 15 are not allowed to run `sudo` commands by default, and are limited to commands that can be run with standard Linux user permissions.

## TACACS+ Accounting

TACACS+ accounting is implemented with the `audisp` module, with an additional plugin for `auditd`/`audisp`. The plugin maps the uid in the accounting record to a TACACS login, based on the uid and sessionid. The `audisp` module requires `libnss_tacplus`, and uses the `libtacplus_map.so` library interfaces as part of the modified `lipam_tacplus` package.

Communication with the TACACS+ servers is done via the `libsimple-tacact1` library, through `dlopen()`. A maximum of 240 bytes of command name and arguments are sent in the accounting record, due to the TACACS+ field length limitation of 255 bytes.



All Linux commands result in an accounting record, including commands run as part of the login process or as a sub-processes of other commands. This can sometimes generate a large number of accounting records.

The IP address and encryption key of the server should be configured in the `/etc/tacplus_servers` file. Minimal configuration to `auditd` and `audisp` is necessary to enable the audit records necessary for accounting. These records are installed as part of the package.

`audisp-tacplus` installs the audit rules for command accounting. Modifying the configuration files is not usually necessary. However, when a [management VRF](#) (see page 720) is configured, the accounting configuration does need special modification, because the `auditd` service starts prior to networking. It is necessary add the `vrf` parameter, and to signal the `audisp-tacplus` process to reread the configuration. The example below shows that the management VRF is named `mgmt`. The `vrf` parameter can be placed in either `/etc/tacplus_servers` or in `/etc/audisp/audisp-tac_plus.conf`.

```
vrf=mgmt
```

After editing the configuration file, notify the accounting process to reread it by sending the **HUP** signal:  
`killall -HUP audisp-tacplus`.



All `sudo` commands run by TACACS+ users generate accounting records against the original TACACS+ login name.

For more information, refer to the `audisp.8` and `auditd.8` man pages.

## Configuring NCLU for TACACS+ Users

NCLU (see page 85) has its own configuration file to enable TACACS+ privilege level 0 users to run the `net` command. Edit the `/etc/netd.conf` file, then:

- To give a TACACS+ user access to the show commands, add that user to the `users_with_show` line, then add the `tacacs` group to the `groups_with_show` line.
- To give a TACACS+ user access to the edit commands (for all the NCLU write commands and to restart services with NCLU), add that user to the `users_with_edit` line.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nano /etc/netd.conf

...
# Control which users/groups are allowed to run 'add', 'del',
# 'clear', 'net abort', 'net commit' and restart services
# to apply those changes
users_with_edit = root, cumulus, TACACS_USER
groups_with_edit = netedit

# Control which users/groups are allowed to run 'show' commands
users_with_show = root, cumulus, TACACS_USER
groups_with_show = netshow, tacacs

...
```



TACACS\_USER in the above output is actually the username of the account logged in via TACACS.



Do not add the `tacacs` group to the `groups_with_edit` line, as this is dangerous and can potentially enable any user to log into the switch as the root user.

If the user/command combination is not authorized by the TACACS+ server, a message similar to the following gets displayed:

```
tacuser0@switch:~$ net show version
net not authorized by TACACS+ with given arguments, not executing
```



## TACACS+ Per-command Authorization

Per-command authorization is handled with the `tacplus-auth` command. To make this an enforced authorization, the TACACS+ login must be changed to use a restricted shell, with a very limited executable search path. Otherwise, the user can bypass the authorization. The `tacplus-restrict` utility simplifies the setup of the restricted environment. The example below initializes the environment for the `tacacs0` user account. This is the account used for TACACS+ users at privilege level 0.

```
tacuser0@switch:~$ sudo tacplus-restrict -i -u tacacs0 -a command1  
command2 ... commandN
```

### Command Options

Option	Description
-i	Initializes the environment. It only needs to be issued once per username.
-a	The utility can be invoked with the <code>-a</code> option as many times as desired. For each command in the <code>-a</code> list, a symbolic link is created from <code>tacplus-auth</code> to the relative portion of the command name in the local <code>bin</code> subdirectory. These commands also need to be enabled on the TACACS+ server. See the server documentation for how to do that. It is common to have the server allow some options to a command, but not others.
-f	Re-initializes the environment. If you need to start over, issue the <code>-f</code> option with the <code>-i</code> to force the re-initialization; otherwise, repeated use of <code>-i</code> is ignored. As part of the initialization: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The user's shell is changed to <code>/bin/rbash</code>.</li><li>• Any existing dot files are saved.</li><li>• A limited environment is set up that does not allow general command execution, but instead allows only commands from the user's local <code>bin</code> subdirectory.</li></ul>

As a full example, if you want to allow the user to be able to run the `net` and `ip` commands (potentially, if the TACACS+ server authorizes), use the command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo tacplus-restrict -i -u tacacs0 -a ip net
```

After running this command, examining the `tacacs0` directory should show something similar to the following:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ls -lR ~tacacs0  
total 12  
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root 22 Nov 21 22:07 ip -> /usr/sbin/tacplus-auth  
lrwxrwxrwx 1 root root 22 Nov 21 22:07 net -> /usr/sbin/tacplus-auth
```

Other than shell built-ins, the only two commands the privilege level 0 TACACS users can run are the `ip` and `net` commands.

If you mistakenly add potential commands with the `-a` option, you can remove the commands that you don't want (the example below shows the `net` command):

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo rm ~tacacs0/bin/net
```

Or you can remove all the commands with:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo rm ~tacacs0/bin/*
```

Use the `man` command on the switch for more information on `tacplus-auth` and `tacplus-restrict`.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ man tacplus-auth tacplus-restrict
```

## *NSS Plugin*

When used with `pam_tacplus`, TACACS+ authenticated users are able to log in without a local account on the system via the NSS plugin that comes with the `tacplus_nss` package. The plugin uses the mapped `tacplus` information if the user is not found in the local password file, provides the `getpwnam()` and `getpwuid()` entry points and uses the TACACS+ authentication functions.

The plugin asks the TACACS+ server if the user is known, and then for relevant attributes to determine the user's privilege level. When the `libnss_tacplus` package is installed, `nsswitch.conf` is modified to set `tacplus` as the first lookup method for `passwd`. If the order is changed, lookups will return the local accounts such as `tacacs0`

If the user is not found, a mapped lookup is performed using the `libtacplus_map.so` exported functions. The privilege level is appended to "tacacs", and the lookup searches for the name in the local password file. For example, privilege level 15 will search for the `tacacs15` user. If the user is found, the password structure is filled in with the user's information.

If it is not found, the privilege level is decremented and checked again, until privilege level 0 (user `tacacs0`) is reached. This allows use of only the two local users `tacacs0` and `tacacs15`, if minimal configuration is desired.

## *TACACS Configuration Parameters*

The recognized configuration options are the same as the `libpam_tacplus` command line arguments; not all `pam_tacplus` options are supported, however. These configuration parameters are documented in the `tacplus_servers.5` man page, which is part of the `libpam-tacplus` package.

The table below describes the configuration options available:

Configuration Option	Description
<code>debug</code>	Output debugging information via <code>syslog(3)</code> .



Configuration Option	Description
	<p>Debugging is heavy, including passwords. Do not leave debugging enabled on a production switch once you have completed troubleshooting.</p>
secret=STRING	<p>Secret key used to encrypt/decrypt packets sent to/received from the server. Can be specified more than once, and can be in any order with respect to the server= parameter. When fewer secret= parameters are specified, the last secret given is used for the remaining servers. This parameter should only be put into files such as /etc/tacplus_servers that are not world readable.</p>
server=HOSTNAME server=IP_ADDR	<p>Adds a TACACS+ server to the servers list. Servers will be queried in turn until a match is found, or no servers remain in the list. Can be specified up to 7 times. When the IP_ADDR form is used, it can be optionally followed by a port number, preceded by a ":". The default port is 49.</p> <p><b>⚠️</b> When sending accounting records, the record is sent to all servers in the list if <code>acct_all=1</code>, which is the default.</p>
timeout=SECONDS	TACACS+ server(s) communication timeout. The default value is 5 seconds.
login=STRING	TACACS+ authentication service (pap, chap, or login). The default value is <i>pap</i> .
user_homedir=1	<p>This is not enabled by default. When enabled, a separate home directory for each TACACS+ user is created when the TACACS+ user first logs in. By default, the home directory in the mapping accounts in /etc/passwd (/home/tacacs0 ... /home/tacacs15) is used. If the home directory does not exist, it is created with the <code>mkhomedir_helper</code> program, in the same manner as <code>pam_mkhomedir</code>.</p> <p>This option is not honored for accounts with restricted shells when per-command authorization is enabled.</p>
acct_all=1	Configuration option for <code>audisp_tacplus</code> and <code>pam_tacplus</code> sending accounting records to all supplied servers (1), or the first server to respond (0). The default value is 1.
timeout=SECS	Sets the timeout in seconds for connections to each TACACS+ server. The default is 10 seconds for all lookups except that NSS lookups use a 5 second timeout.
vrf=VRFNAME	If the management network is in a VRF, set this variable to the VRF name. This would usually be "mgmt". When this variable is set, the connection to the TACACS+ accounting servers is made through the named VRF.
service	TACACS+ accounting and authorization service. Examples include shell, pap, raccess, ppp, and slip.



Configuration Option	Description
	The default value is <i>shell</i> .
protocol	TACACS+ protocol field. This option is use dependent. PAM uses the SSH protocol.

## Removing the TACACS+ Client Packages

To remove all of the TACACS+ client packages, use the following commands:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get remove tacplus-client  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get autoremove
```

To remove the TACACS+ client configuration files as well as the packages (recommended), use this command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get autoremove --purge
```

## Troubleshooting TACACS+

### Debugging Basic Server Connectivity or NSS Issues

The `getent` command can be used to determine whether TACACS+ is configured correctly, and the local password is stored in the configuration files. In the example commands below, the `cumulus` user represents the local user, while `cumulusTAC` represents the TACACS user.

To look up the username within all NSS methods:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo getent passwd cumulusTAC  
cumulusTAC:x:1016:1001:TACACS+ mapped user at privilege level 15,,,:  
/home/tacacs15:/bin/bash
```

To look up the user within the local database only:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo getent -s compat passwd cumulus  
cumulus:x:1000:1000:cumulus,,,:/home/cumulus:/bin/bash
```

To look up the user within the TACACS+ database only:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo getent -s tacplus passwd cumulusTAC
```



```
cumulusTAC:x:1016:1001:TACACS+ mapped user at privilege level 15,,,:  
/home/tacacs15:/bin/bash
```

If TACACS does not appear to be working correctly, the following configuration files should be debugged by adding the `debug=1` parameter to one or more of these files:

- `/etc/tacplus_servers`
- `/etc/tacplus_nss.conf`



`debug=1` can also be added to individual `pam_tacplus` lines in `/etc/pam.d/common*`.

All log messages are stored in `/var/log/syslog`.

## Incorrect Shared Key

The TACACS client on the switch and the TACACS server should have the same shared secret key. If this key is incorrect, the following message is printed to `syslog`:

```
2017-09-05T19:57:00.356520+00:00 leaf01 sshd[3176]: nss_tacplus:  
TACACS+ server 192.168.0.254:49 read failed with protocol error  
(incorrect shared secret?) user cumulus
```

## Debugging Issues with Per-command Authorization

To debug TACACS user command authorization, have the TACACS+ user enter the following command at a shell prompt, and then try the command again:

```
tacuser0@switch:~$ export TACACSAUTHDEBUG=1
```

When this debugging is enabled, additional information is shown for the command authorization conversation with the TACACS+ server:

```
tacuser0@switch:~$ net pending  
tacplus-auth: found matching command (/usr/bin/net) request  
authorization  
tacplus-auth: error connecting to 10.0.3.195:49 to request  
authorization for net: Transport endpoint is not connected  
tacplus-auth: cmd not authorized (16)  
tacplus-auth: net not authorized from 192.168.3.189:49  
net not authorized by TACACS+ with given arguments, not executing  
  
tacuser0@switch:~$ net show version  
tacplus-auth: found matching command (/usr/bin/net) request  
authorization  
tacplus-auth: error connecting to 10.0.3.195:49 to request  
authorization for net: Transport endpoint is not connected
```



```
tacplus-auth: 192.168.3.189:49 authorized command net
tacplus-auth: net authorized, executing
DISTRIB_ID="Cumulus Linux"
DISTRIB_RELEASE=3.4.0
DISTRIB_DESCRIPTION="Cumulus Linux 3.4.0"
```

To disable debugging:

```
tacuser0@switch:~$ export -n TACACSAUTHDEBUG
```

## Debug Issues with Accounting Records

If TACACS+ servers have been added or deleted from the configuration files, make sure you notify the audisp plugin with this command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo killall -HUP audisp-tacplus
```

If accounting records still are not being sent, add *debug=1* to the file */etc/audisp/audisp-tacplus.conf*, and then issue the command above to notify the plugin. Then have the TACACS+ user run a command, and examine the end of */var/log/syslog* for messages from the plugin. You can also check the auditing log file */var/log/audit/audit.log* to be sure the auditing records are being written. If they are not, restart the audit daemon with:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart auditd.service
```

## TACACS Component Software Descriptions

These different pieces of software are involved with delivering TACACS. Provided below is a brief description of their functionalities.

Package Name	Description
audisp-tacplus_1.0.0-1-cl3u3	This package uses auditing data from <code>auditd</code> to send accounting records to the TACACS+ server and is started as part of <code>auditd</code> .
libtac2_1.4.0-cl3u2	Basic TACACS+ server utility and communications routines.
libnss-tacplus_1.0.1-cl3u3	Provides an interface between <code>libc</code> username lookups, the mapping functions, and the TACACS+ server.



Package Name	Description
tacplus-auth-1.0.0-cl3u1	This package provides the ability to do per-command TACACS+ authorization, and a setup utility tacplus-restrict to enable that. Per-command authorization is not done by default.
libpam-tacplus_1.4.0-1-cl3u2	A modified version of the standard Debian package.
libtacplus-map1_1.0.0-cl3u2	The mapping functionality between local and TACACS+ users on the server. Sets the immutable <code>sessionid</code> and auditing UID to ensure the original user can be tracked through multiple processes and privilege changes. Sets the auditing <code>loginuid</code> as immutable if supported. Creates and maintains a status database in <code>/run/tacacs_client_map</code> to manage and lookup mappings.
libsimple-tacacct1_1.0.0-cl3u2	Provides an interface for programs to send accounting records to the TACACS+ server. Used by <code>audisp-tacplus</code> .
libtac2-bin_1.4.0-cl3u2	Provides the "tacc" testing program and TACACS+ man page.

## Limitations

### TACACS+ Client Is only Supported through the Management Interface

The TACACS+ client is only supported through the switch's management interface, which could be eth0 or eth1, or even the VRF management interface. The TACACS+ client is not supported through bonds, switch virtual interfaces (SVIs) or switch port interfaces (swp).

### Multiple TACACS+ Users

If two or more TACACS+ users are logged in simultaneously, with the same privilege level, while the accounting records are maintained correctly, a lookup on either name will match both users, while a UID lookup will only return the user that logged in first.

This means that any processes run by either user will be attributed to both, and all files created by either user will be attributed to the first name matched. This is similar to adding two local users to the password file with the same UID and GID, and is an inherent limitation of using the UID for the base user from the password file.



The current algorithm returns the first name matching the UID from the mapping file; this could be the first or second user that logged in.



To work around this issue, the switch's audit log or the TACACS server accounting logs can be used to determine which processes and files were created by each user.

- For commands that do not execute other commands (for example, changes to configurations in an editor, or actions with tools like `c1agct1` and `vtysh`), no additional accounting is done.
- Per-command authorization is not implemented in this release except at the most basic level (commands are permitted or denied based on the standard Linux user permissions for the local TACACS users, and only privilege level 15 users can run `sudo` commands by default).

The Linux `auditd` system does not always generate audit events for processes when terminated with a signal (via the `kill` system call or internal errors such as `SIGSEGV`). As a result, processes that exit on a signal that isn't caught and handled may not generate a STOP accounting record.

### *Issues with deluser Command*

TACACS+ and other non-local users that run the `deluser` command with the `--remove-home` option will see an error about not finding the user in `/etc/passwd`:

```
tacuser0@switch: deluser --remove-home USERNAME
userdel: cannot remove entry 'USERNAME' from /etc/passwd
/usr/sbin/deluser: `/usr/sbin/userdel USERNAME' returned error code
1. Exiting
```

However, the command does remove the home directory. The user can still log in on that account, but will not have a valid home directory. This is a known upstream issue with the `deluser` command for all non-local users.

The `--remove-home` option should only be used when the `user_homedir=1` configuration command is in use.

## RADIUS AAA

Cumulus Networks offers add-on packages that provide the ability for **RADIUS** users to log in to Cumulus Linux switches in a transparent way with minimal configuration. There is no need to create accounts or directories on the switch. Authentication is handled via PAM, and includes `login`, `ssh`, `sudo` and `su`.

### *Installing and Configuring the RADIUS Packages*

The plugin is installed from two RADIUS packages, which are not in the base Cumulus Linux image. There is no RADIUS metapackage.

To install the plugins, run these commands:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo apt-get update
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo apt-get install libnss-mapuser libpam-radius-
auth
```

To remove the plugins, [see below \(see page 136\)](#).



During installation, the PAM configuration is modified automatically via `pam-auth-update` (8), and the NSS configuration file `/etc/nsswitch.conf` is modified to add the `mapuser` and `mapuid` plugins. If you remove or purge the packages, these files are modified to remove the configuration for these plugins.

## Configuring the RADIUS Client

For common use cases, the only configuration file that needs to be modified is `/etc/pam_radius_auth.conf`. You need to add the hostname or IP address of at least one RADIUS server (such as a `freeradius` server on Linux), and the shared secret used to authenticate and encrypt communication with the server. If you specify multiple server configuration lines, they are verified in the order listed. Other than memory, there is no limit to the number of RADIUS servers that may be on a given switch. These fields are described in the `pam_radius_auth` (5) man page and in comments in the `/etc/pam_radius_auth.conf` file.

Consider the following example configuration in the `/etc/pam_radius_auth.conf` file:

```
# server[:port]      shared_secret          timeout (secs)
src_ip
aaa-testing        radius321
192.168.0.254     secretkey
```

The server port number or name is optional. The system looks up the port in the `/etc/services` file. However, you can override the ports in the `/etc/pam_radius_auth.conf` file.

The `timeout` defaults to 3 seconds; you only need to change this setting if the server is slow or latencies are high.

The `src_ip` option only needs to be specified if you want to use a specific interface to reach the server. It can be set to the hostname of the interface, or an IPv4 or IPv6 address. If specified, the `timeout` option must also be specified.

The other field that you may need to set is the `vrf-name` field. This is normally set to `mgmt` if you are using a [management VRF \(see page 720\)](#). If you are specifying the `src_ip` field for a server entry, and that interface is in a VRF, you may also need to set it. At this time, you cannot specify more than one VRF. The example below shows the `vrf` setting in the `/etc/pam_radius_auth.conf` file.

```
# server[:port]      shared_secret          timeout (secs)
src_ip      vrf
192.168.0.254    secretkey
other-server   othersecret            3
192.168.1.10    vrf-blue
```

When first configuring the RADIUS client, it is a good idea to enable debugging. This can be done by uncommenting the `debug` line in the configuration file. Debugging messages are written to `syslog`.

There are a number of PAM configuration keywords that you can set, but these do not normally need to be configured. See the `pam_radius_auth` (8) man page for the variables that can be used. You can add these either by editing:

- The `/etc/pam.d/common-auth` lines for `pam_radius_auth.so` .
- The `/usr/share/pam-configs/radius` file, then running `pam-auth-update --package`.

The latter method is recommended, because it is less likely to introduce errors.



The `libpam-radius-auth` package supplied with the Cumulus Linux RADIUS client is a newer version than the one in [Debian Jessie](#), and has added support for IPv6, the `src_ip` field described above, as well as a number of bug fixes and minor features. Cumulus Linux further added VRF support, man pages describing the PAM and RADIUS configuration, and the setting of the `SUDO_PROMPT` environment variable to the login name as part of the mapping support described below.

## Configuring NCLU for RADIUS Users

NCLU ([see page 85](#)) has its own configuration file to enable RADIUS users to run the `net` command. Edit the `/etc/netd.conf` file, then:

- To give a RADIUS user access to the show commands, add that user to the `users_with_show` line, then add the `radius_users` group to the `groups_with_show` line.
- To give a RADIUS user access to the edit commands (for all the NCLU write commands and to restart services with NCLU), add that user to the `users_with_edit` line.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nano /etc/netd.conf

...
# Control which users/groups are allowed to run 'add', 'del',
# 'clear', 'net abort', 'net commit' and restart services (quagga,
etc)
# to apply those changes
users_with_edit = root, cumulus, rad_user
groups_with_edit = netedit

# Control which users/groups are allowed to run 'show' commands
users_with_show = root, cumulus, rad_user
groups_with_show = netshow, radius_users

...
```



Do not add the `radius_users` group to the `groups_with_edit` line, as this is dangerous and can potentially enable any user to log into the switch as the root user.

If the user/command combination is not authorized by the RADIUS server, a message similar to the following gets displayed:

```
rad_user@switch:~$ net show version
net not authorized by TACACS+ with given arguments, not executing
```



## Enabling Login without Local Accounts

The above description of the PAM interfaces is similar to the normal Debian `libpam-radius-auth` package, which work without the `libnss-mapuser` package, if local or LDAP accounts are available for each desired RADIUS user. Since LDAP is not commonly used with switches, and adding accounts locally is cumbersome, Cumulus Linux added a mapping capability. This is enabled by the `libnss-mapuser` package, which is specific to Cumulus Linux.

Mapping is done via two NSS (Name Service Switch) plugins, one for account name lookup, and one for UID lookup. These are automatically configured in `/etc/nsswitch.conf` at installation, and are removed when the package is removed. See the `nss_mapuser` (8) man page for the full description of this plugin.

Mapping is done on username at login to a fixed account specified in the configuration file, with the fields of the fixed account used as a template for the user that is logging in.

For example, if the name being looked up is `dave` and the fixed account in the configuration file is `radius_user`, and that entry in `/etc/passwd` is:

```
radius_user:x:1017:1002:radius user:/home/radius_user:/bin/bash
```

then the matching line returned by running `getent passwd dave` would be:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ getent passwd dave
dave:x:1017:1002:dave mapped user:/home/dave:/bin/bash
```

and the home directory `/home/dave` would be created during the login process if it does not already exist, and will be populated with the standard skeleton files by the `mkhomedir_helper` command.

The configuration file `/etc/nss_mapuser.conf` is used to configure the plugins. It does not normally need to be changed. The `nss_mapuser` (5) man page fully describes the configuration file. Comments in the file also describe the fields.

A flat file mapping is done based on the session number assigned during login, and it persists across `su` and `sudo`. The mapping is removed at logout.

## Enabling sudo Access for RADIUS Users

To allow RADIUS users to use `sudo`, you need to create a `sudoers` file authorizing them. The simplest case is to give them full `sudo` access, similar to the `cumulus` user account. To do this, edit or create the `/etc/sudoers.d/radius` file, and add the users to the file with an entry like this:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vi /etc/sudoers.d/radius
dave ALL=(ALL:ALL) ALL
```

where `dave` is the login account name of a RADIUS user. If you want all RADIUS users to have this ability, you can enable `sudo` access for all members of the `radius_users` group:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vi /etc/sudoers.d/radius
```



```
%radius_users ALL=(ALL:ALL) ALL
```

## Removing the RADIUS Client Packages

You can remove the RADIUS packages with the following command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo apt-get remove libnss-mapuser libpam-radius-auth
```

When the packages are removed, the plugins are removed from the `/etc/nsswitch.conf` file and from the PAM files, respectively.

To remove all configuration files for these packages, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo apt-get purge libnss-mapuser libpam-radius-auth
```



The RADIUS fixed account is not removed from `/etc/passwd` or `/etc/group`, and the home directories are not removed either. They are left in case there are modifications to the account or files in the home directories.

To remove the home directories of the RADIUS users, first get the list by running:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ls -l /home | grep radius
```

For all users listed other than the `radius_user`, run this command to remove the home directories:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo deluser --remove-home USERNAME
```

where `USERNAME` is the account name (the home directory relative portion). This command gives the following warning:

```
userdel: cannot remove entry 'USERNAME' from /etc/passwd  
/usr/sbin/deluser: `/usr/sbin/userdel USERNAME' returned error code  
1. Exiting.
```

Because the user is not listed in the `/etc/passwd` file. After removing all the RADIUS users, run the command to remove the fixed account (the account may have been changed in `/etc/nss_mapuser.conf`; if so, use that account name instead of `radius_user`).

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo deluser --remove-home radius_user  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo delgroup radius_users
```



## Limitations

### Multiple RADIUS Users

If two or more RADIUS users are logged in simultaneously, a UID lookup only returns the user that logged in first. This means that any processes run by either user get attributed to both, and all files created by either user get attributed to the first name matched. This is similar to adding two local users to the password file with the same UID and GID, and is an inherent limitation of using the UID for the fixed user from the password file.

The current algorithm returns the first name matching the UID from the mapping file; this could be the first or second user that logged in.

### Related Information

- TACACS+ client (see page 120)
- Cumulus Networks RADIUS demo on GitHub
- Cumulus Network TACACS demo on GitHub

## Netfilter - ACLs

Netfilter is the packet filtering framework in Cumulus Linux as well as most other Linux distributions. There are a number of tools available for configuring ACLs in Cumulus Linux, including:

- `iptables`, `ip6tables` and `eptables` are Linux userspace tools to administer filtering rules for IPv4 packets, IPv6 packets and Ethernet frames (layer 2 using MAC addresses) respectively.
- [NCLU \(see page 85\)](#), a Cumulus Linux-specific userspace tool for configuring custom ACLs.
- `c1-acltool`, another Cumulus Linux-specific userspace tool to administer filtering rules and for configuring the default ACLs.

NCLU and `c1-acltool` operate on various configuration files, and use `iptables`, `ip6tables` and `eptables` to install rules into the kernel. In addition to programming rules in the kernel, NCLU and `c1-acltool` program rules in hardware for interfaces involving switch port interfaces, which `iptables`, `ip6tables` and `eptables` cannot do on their own.



In many instances, you can use NCLU to configure ACLs; however, `c1-acltool` must be used in some cases. The examples below show when to use which tool.



If you need help getting started setting up ACLs, run `net example acl` to see a basic configuration:

Click to see the example ...

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net example acl
Scenario
=====
```

```

We would like to use access-lists on 'switch' to
- Restrict inbound traffic on swp1 to traffic from 10.1.1.0/24
destined for 10.1.2.0/24
- Restrict outbound traffic on swp2 to http, https, or ssh
  *switch
    \\
  swp1 / \ swp2
    /   \
    /     \
host-11   host-12
switch net commands
=====
Create an ACL that accepts traffic from 10.1.1.0/24 destined
for 10.1.2.0/24
and drops all other traffic
switch# net add acl ipv4 MYACL accept source-ip 10.1.1.0/24
dest-ip 10.1.2.0/24
switch# net add acl ipv4 MYACL drop source-ip any dest-ip any
Apply MYACL inbound on swp1
switch# net add interface swp1 acl ipv4 MYACL inbound
Create an ACL that accepts http, https, or ssh traffic and
drops all
other traffic.
switch# net add acl ipv4 WEB_OR_SSH accept tcp source-ip any
source-port any dest-ip any dest-port http
switch# net add acl ipv4 WEB_OR_SSH accept tcp source-ip any
source-port http dest-ip any dest-port any
switch# net add acl ipv4 WEB_OR_SSH accept tcp source-ip any
source-port any dest-ip any dest-port https
switch# net add acl ipv4 WEB_OR_SSH accept tcp source-ip any
source-port https dest-ip any dest-port any
switch# net add acl ipv4 WEB_OR_SSH accept tcp source-ip any
source-port any dest-ip any dest-port ssh
switch# net add acl ipv4 WEB_OR_SSH accept tcp source-ip any
source-port ssh dest-ip any dest-port any
switch# net add acl ipv4 WEB_OR_SSH drop source-ip any dest-ip
any
Apply WEB_OR_SSH outbound on swp2
switch# net add interface swp2 acl ipv4 WEB_OR_SSH outbound
commit the staged changes
switch# net commit
Verification
=====
switch# net show configuration acl

```

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Understanding Traffic Rules In Cumulus Linux (see page 140)



- Understanding Chains (see page 140)
- Understanding Tables (see page 141)
- Understanding Rules (see page 141)
- How Rules Are Parsed and Applied (see page 142)
- Rule Placement in Memory (see page 144)
- Nonatomic Update Mode vs. Atomic Update Mode (see page 144)
- Using iptables/ip6tables/ebtables Directly (see page 147)
- Estimating the Number of Rules (see page 148)
- Matching SVI/Bridged Interfaces in Rules (see page 149)
- Installing and Managing ACL Rules with NCLU (see page 149)
- Installing and Managing ACL Rules with cl-acltool (see page 151)
- Installing Packet Filtering (ACL) Rules (see page 152)
- Specifying which Policy Files to Install (see page 154)
- Hardware Limitations on Number of Rules (see page 155)
  - Broadcom Tomahawk Limits (see page 155)
  - Broadcom Trident II+ Limits (see page )
  - Broadcom Trident II Limits (see page 156)
  - Broadcom Helix4 Limits (see page 156)
  - Mellanox Spectrum Limits (see page 157)
- Supported Rule Types (see page 157)
  - iptables/ip6tables Rule Support (see page 158)
  - ebttables Rule Support (see page 158)
  - Other Unsupported Rules (see page 159)
- Common Examples (see page 159)
  - Policing Control Plane and Data Plane Traffic (see page 159)
  - Setting DSCP on Transit Traffic (see page 161)
  - Verifying DSCP Values on Transit Traffic (see page 161)
  - Checking the Packet and Byte Counters for ACL Rules (see page 162)
  - Filtering Specific TCP Flags (see page 164)
- Example Scenario (see page 164)
  - Switch 1 Configuration (see page 165)
  - Switch 2 Configuration (see page 166)
  - Egress Rule (see page 167)
  - Ingress Rule (see page 167)
  - Input Rule (see page 167)
  - Output Rule (see page 167)
  - Combined Rules (see page 167)
  - Layer 2-only Rules/ebtables (see page 168)

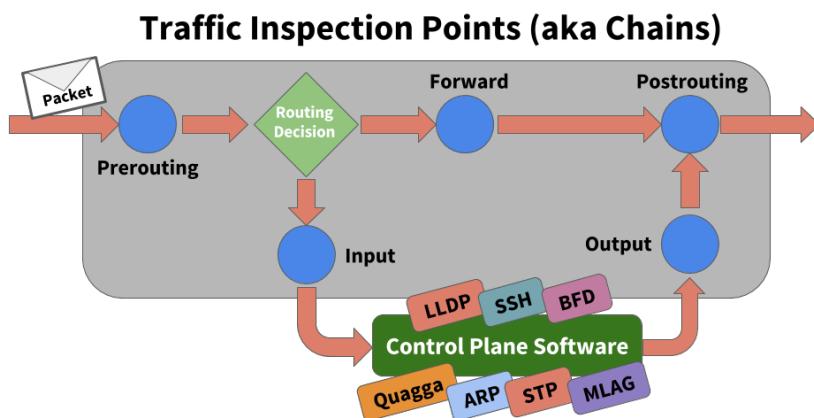
- [Useful Links \(see page 168\)](#)
- [Caveats and Errata \(see page 168\)](#)
  - [Not All Rules Supported \(see page 168\)](#)
  - [ACL Log Policer Limits Traffic \(see page 168\)](#)
  - [Bridge Traffic Limitations \(see page 168\)](#)
  - [Log Actions Cannot Be Forwarded \(see page 168\)](#)
  - [Broadcom Range Checker Limitations \(see page 168\)](#)
  - [Inbound LOG Actions Only for Broadcom Switches \(see page 169\)](#)
  - [Tomahawk Hardware Limitations \(see page 169\)](#)
  - [Trident II+ Hardware Limitations \(see page \)](#)
  - [iptables Interactions with cl-acltool \(see page 169\)](#)
  - [Where to Assign Rules \(see page 170\)](#)
  - [Generic Error Message Displayed after ACL Rule Installation Failure \(see page 170\)](#)
  - [Dell S3048-ON Supports only 24K MAC Addresses \(see page 170\)](#)

## Understanding Traffic Rules In Cumulus Linux

### *Understanding Chains*

Netfilter describes the mechanism for which packets are classified and controlled in the Linux kernel. Cumulus Linux uses the Netfilter framework to control the flow of traffic to, from and across the switch. Netfilter does not require a separate software daemon to run because it is part of the Linux kernel itself. Netfilter asserts policies at layers 2, 3 and 4 of the [OSI model](#) by inspecting packet and frame headers based on a list of rules. Rules are defined using syntax provided by the `iptables`, `ip6tables` and `ebtables` userspace applications.

The rules created by these programs inspect or operate on packets at several points in the life of the packet through the system. These five points are known as *chains* and are shown here:



The chains and their uses are:

- **PREROUTING:** Touches packets before they are routed

- **INPUT:** Touches packets once they are determined to be destined for the local system but before they are received by the control plane software
- **FORWARD:** Touches transit traffic as it moves through the box
- **OUTPUT:** Touches packets that are sourced by the control plane software before they are put on the wire
- **POSTROUTING:** Touches packets immediately before they are put on the wire but after the routing decision has been made

## Understanding Tables

When building rules to affect the flow of traffic, the individual chains can be accessed by *tables*. Linux provides three tables by default:

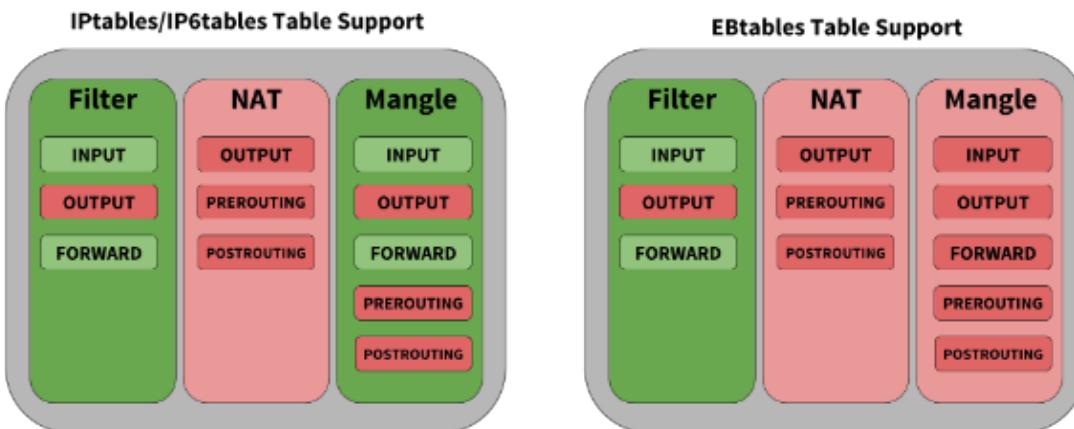
- **Filter:** Classifies traffic or filters traffic
- **NAT:** Applies Network Address Translation rules



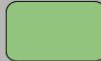
Cumulus Linux does not support NAT.

- **Mangle:** Alters packets as they move through the switch

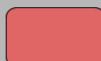
Each table has a set of default chains that can be used to modify or inspect packets at different points of the path through the switch. Chains contain the individual rules to influence traffic. Each table and the default chains they support are shown below. Tables and chains in green are supported by Cumulus Linux, those in red are not supported (that is, they are not hardware accelerated) at this time.



## Legend



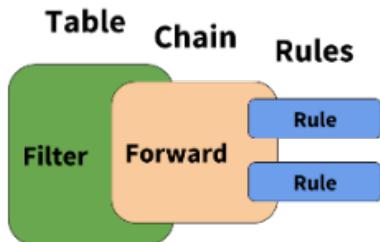
**Hardware Accelerated**



**NOT Hardware Accelerated**

## Understanding Rules

Rules are the items that actually classify traffic to be acted upon. Rules are applied to chains, which are attached to tables, similar to the graphic below.



Rules have several different components; the examples below highlight those different components.

(Sets SSH as high priority traffic)

-t mangle	-A FORWARD	-p tcp --dport 22	-j	DSCP --set-dscp 46
-----------	------------	-------------------	----	--------------------

Table	Chain	Matches	Jump	Targets
	-A INPUT	-i swp1 -p tcp --dport bgp	-j	POLICE --set-mode pkt
				--set-rate 2000 --set-burst 2000 --set-class 7

(Police and Prioritize BGP Traffic)

- **Table:** The first argument is the *table*. Notice the second example does not specify a table, that is because the filter table is implied if a table is not specified.
- **Chain:** The second argument is the *chain*. Each table supports several different chains. See Understanding Tables above.
- **Matches:** The third argument(s) are called the *matches*. You can specify multiple matches in a single rule. However, the more matches you use in a rule, the more memory that rule consumes.
- **Jump:** The *jump* specifies the target of the rule; that is, what action to take if the packet matches the rule. If this option is omitted in a rule, then matching the rule will have no effect on the packet's fate, but the counters on the rule will be incremented.
- **Target(s):** The *target* can be a user-defined chain (other than the one this rule is in), one of the special built-in targets that decides the fate of the packet immediately (like `DROP`), or an extended target. See the [Supported Rule Types and Common Usages \(see page 157\)](#) section below for examples of different targets.

## How Rules Are Parsed and Applied

All the rules from each chain are read from `iptables`, `ip6tables` and `ebtables` and entered in order into either the filter table or the mangle table. The rules are read from the kernel in the following order:

- IPv6 (`ip6tables`)
- IPv4 (`iptables`)



- **ebtables**

When rules are combined and put into one table, the order determines the relative priority of the rules; **iptables** and **ip6tables** have the highest precedence and **ebtables** has the lowest.

The Linux packet forwarding construct is an overlay for how the silicon underneath processes packets; to that end, here are some things to be aware of:

- The order of operations for how rules are processed is not perfectly maintained when you compare how **iptables** and the switch silicon process packets. The switch silicon reorders rules when **switchd** writes to the ASIC, whereas traditional **iptables** executes the list of rules in order.

- All rules are terminating. This means once a rule is matched, the action is carried out, and no more rules are processed. The exception to this is when a SETCLASS rule is placed immediately before another rule; this exists multiple times in the default ACL configuration.

In the example below, the SETCLASS action applied with the **--in-interface** option, creates the internal ASIC classification, and **continues to process** the next rule, which does the rate-limiting for the matched protocol:

```
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p udp --dport  
$BFD_ECHO_PORT -j SETCLASS --class 7  
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN -p udp --dport $BFD_ECHO_PORT -j POLICE --set-  
mode pkt --set-rate 2000 --set-burst 2000
```



If multiple contiguous rules with the same match criteria are applied to **--in-interface**, **only** the first rule gets processed and then terminates processing. This would also be a misconfiguration, because there is no reason to have duplicate rules with different actions.

- When processing traffic, rules affecting the FORWARD chain that specify an ingress interface are performed prior to rules that match on an egress interface. As a workaround, rules that only affect the egress interface can have an ingress interface wildcard (currently, only *swp+* and *bond+* are supported as wildcard names; see below) that matches any interface applied so that you can maintain order of operations with other input interface rules. Take the following rules, for example:

```
-A FORWARD -i $PORTA -j ACCEPT  
-A FORWARD -o $PORTA -j ACCEPT    <-- This rule is performed LAST  
(because of egress interface matching)  
-A FORWARD -i $PORTB -j DROP
```

If you modify the rules like this, they are performed in order:

```
-A FORWARD -i $PORTA -j ACCEPT  
-A FORWARD -i swp+ -o $PORTA -j ACCEPT    <-- These rules are  
performed in order (because of wildcard match on ingress  
interface)  
-A FORWARD -i $PORTB -j DROP
```

- When using rules that do a mangle and a filter lookup for a packet, Cumulus Linux does them in parallel and combines the action.
- If a switch port is assigned to a bond, any egress rules must be assigned to the bond.
- When using the OUTPUT chain, rules must be assigned to the source. For example, if a rule is assigned to the switch port in the direction of traffic but the source is a bridge (VLAN), the traffic won't be affected by the rule and must be applied to the bridge.
- If all transit traffic needs to have a rule applied, use the FORWARD chain, not the OUTPUT chain.
- `ebtablesrules` are put into either the IPv4 or IPv6 memory space depending on whether the rule utilizes IPv4 or IPv6 to make a decision. Layer 2-only rules, which match the MAC address, are put into the IPv4 memory space.



On Broadcom switches, the ingress INPUT chain rules match layer 2/layer 3 multicast packets **before** multicast packet replication has occurred; hence, having a DROP rule affects all copies.

## Rule Placement in Memory

INPUT and ingress (FORWARD -i) rules occupy the same memory space. A rule counts as ingress if the -i option is set. If both input and output options (-i and -o) are set, the rule is considered as ingress and occupies that memory space. For example:

```
-A FORWARD -i swp1 -o swp2 -s 10.0.14.2 -d 10.0.15.8 -p tcp -j ACCEPT
```



If you set an output flag with the INPUT chain you will get an error. For example, running `cl-acltool -i` on the following rule:

```
-A FORWARD,INPUT -i swp1 -o swp2 -s 10.0.14.2 -d 10.0.15.8 -p tcp -j ACCEPT
```

generates the following error:

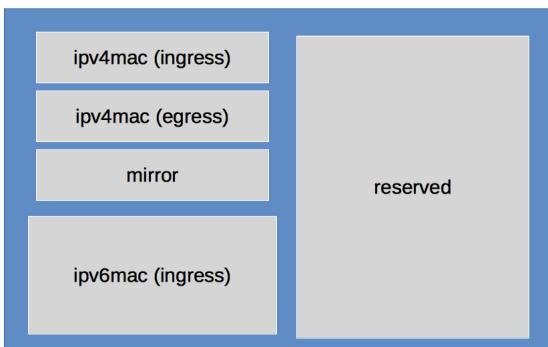
```
error: line 2 : output interface specified with INPUT chain
error processing rule '-A FORWARD,INPUT -i swp1 -o swp2 -s
10.0.14.2 -d 10.0.15.8 -p tcp -j ACCEPT'
```

However, simply removing the -o option and interface would make it a valid rule.

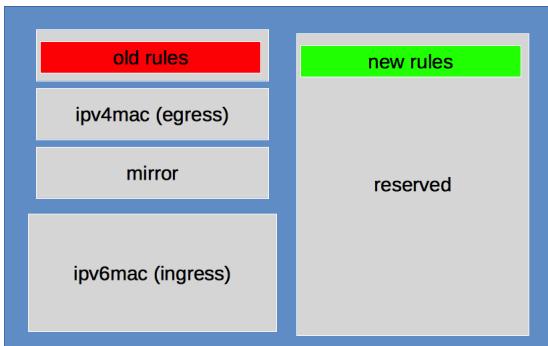
## Nonatomic Update Mode vs. Atomic Update Mode

In Cumulus Linux, *atomic update mode* is enabled by default. However this mode limits the number of ACL rules that may be configured by the user.

Atomic Mode (default)

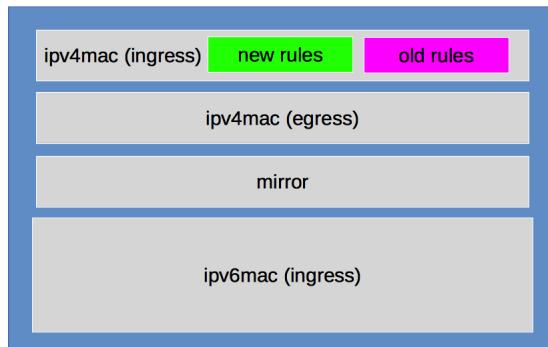


Atomic Mode (default)



To increase the number of ACL rules that may be configured, configure the switch to operate in *nonatomic mode*.

Nonatomic Mode, Incremental Update

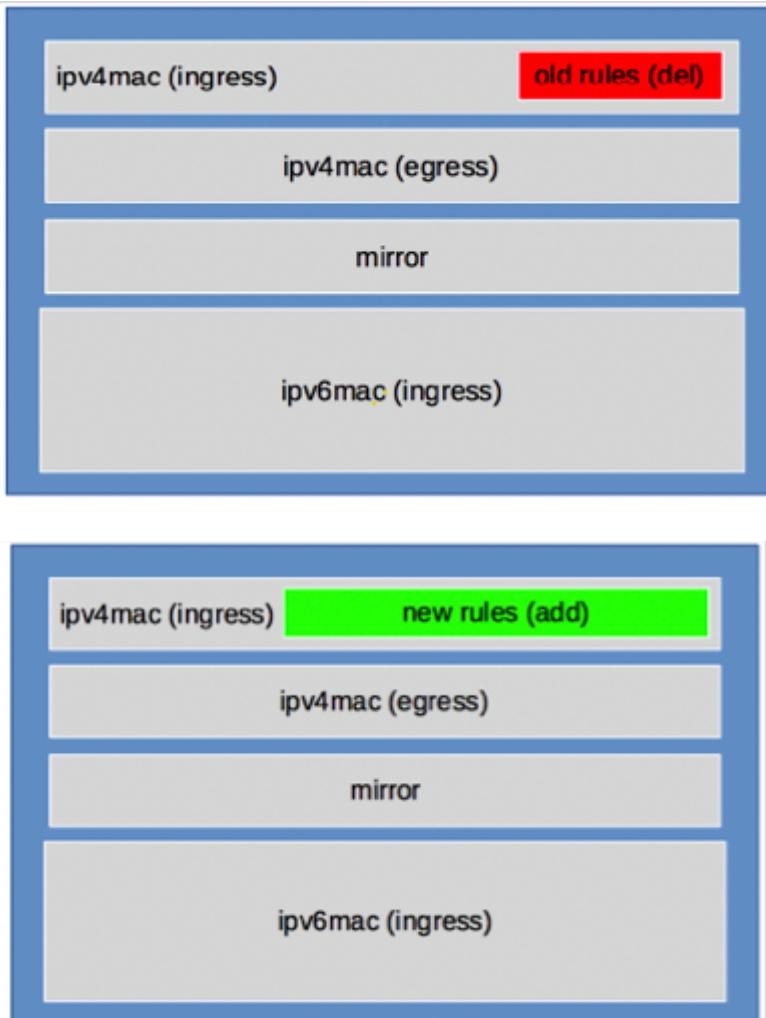


Nonatomic Mode, Regular Update



How the Rules Get Installed

Instead of reserving 50% of your TCAM space for atomic updates, incremental update instead uses the available free space to write the new TCAM rules and swap over to the new rules once this is completed. Cumulus Linux then deletes the old rules and frees up the original TCAM space. If there is insufficient free space to complete this task, the original nonatomic update is performed, which interrupts traffic.



## Enabling Nonatomic Update Mode

You can enable nonatomic updates for `switchd`, which offer better scaling because all TCAM resources are used to actively impact traffic. With atomic updates, half of the hardware resources are on standby and do not actively impact traffic.

*Incremental nonatomic updates* are table based, so they don't interrupt network traffic when new rules are installed. The rules are mapped into the following tables and are updated in this order:

- mirror (ingress only)
- ipv4-mac (can be both ingress and egress)
- ipv6 (ingress only)

The incremental nonatomic update operation follows this order:

1. Updates are performed incrementally, one table at a time without stopping traffic.
2. Cumulus Linux checks if a table's rules have changed since the last time they were installed; if a table does not have any changes, then it is not reinstalled.



3. If there are changes in a table, then the new rules are populated in new groups or slices in hardware, then that table is switched over to the new groups or slices.
4. Finally, old resources for that table are freed. This process is repeated for each of the tables listed above.
5. If there are not sufficient resources to hold both the new rule set and old rule set, then the regular nonatomic mode is attempted. This will interrupt network traffic.
6. If the regular nonatomic update fails, Cumulus Linux reverts back to the previous rules.

To always start `switchd` with nonatomic updates:

1. Edit `/etc/cumulus/switchd.conf`.
2. Add the following line to the file:

```
acl.non_atomic_update_mode = TRUE
```

3. **Restart `switchd`:**

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart switchd.service
```



During regular *non-incremental nonatomic updates*, traffic is stopped first, and enabled after the new configuration is written into the hardware completely.

## Using `iptables/ip6tables/ebtables` Directly

Using `iptables/ip6tables/ebtables` directly is not recommended because any rules installed in these cases only are applied to the Linux kernel and are not hardware accelerated via synchronization to the switch silicon. Also running `cl-acltool -i` (the installation command) resets all rules and deletes anything that is not stored in `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.conf`.

For example, performing:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo iptables -A INPUT -p icmp --icmp-type echo-request -j DROP
```

Appears to work, and the rule appears when you run `cl-acltool -L`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -L ip
-----
Listing rules of type iptables:
-----
TABLE filter :
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT 72 packets, 5236 bytes)
```

```
pkts bytes target prot opt in out source destination
0 0 DROP icmp -- any any anywhere anywhere icmp echo-request
```

However, the rule is not synced to hardware when applied in this fashion and running `cl-acltool -i` or `reboot` removes the rule without replacing it. To ensure all rules that can be in hardware are hardware accelerated, place them in `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.conf` and install them by running `cl-acltool -i`.

## *Estimating the Number of Rules*

To estimate the number of rules that could be created from an ACL entry, first determine if that entry is an ingress or an egress. Then determine if it is IPv4-mac or IPv6 type rule. This determines the slice to which the rule belongs. Then use the following to determine how many entries are used up for each type.

By default, each entry occupies one double wide entry, except if the entry is one of the following:

- An entry with multiple comma-separated input interfaces is split into one rule for each input interface (listed after `--in-interface` below). For example, this entry splits into two rules:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp1s0,swp1s1 -p icmp -j ACCEPT
```

- An entry with multiple comma-separated output interfaces is split into one rule for each output interface (listed after `--out-interface` below). This entry splits into two rules:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp+ --out-interface swp1s0,swp1s1 -p icmp -j ACCEPT
```

- An entry with both input and output comma-separated interfaces is split into one rule for each combination of input and output interface (listed after `--in-interface` and `--out-interface` below). This entry splits into four rules:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp1s0,swp1s1 --out-interface swp1s2, swp1s3 -p icmp -j ACCEPT
```

- An entry with multiple L4 port ranges is split into one rule for each range (listed after `--dports` below). For example, this entry splits into two rules:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp+ -p tcp -m multiport --dports 1050:1051,1055:1056 -j ACCEPT
```



Port ranges are only allowed for ingress rules.



## Matching SVI/Bridged Interfaces in Rules

Cumulus Linux supports matching ACL rules for both ingress and egress interfaces on both [VLAN-aware](#) (see page 328) and [traditional mode](#) (see page 340) bridges, including bridge SVIs ([switch VLAN interfaces](#) (see page 324)) for input and output. However, keep the following in mind:

- If a traditional mode bridge has a mix of different VLANs, or has both access and trunk members, output interface matching is not supported.
- For `iptables` rules, all IP packets in a bridge are matched, not just routed packets.
- You cannot match both input and output interfaces in a rule.
- For routed packets, Cumulus Linux cannot match the output bridge for SPAN/ERSPAN.

Following are example rules for a VLAN-aware bridge:

```
[ebtables]
-A FORWARD -i br0.100 -p IPv4 --ip-protocol icmp -j DROP
-A FORWARD -o br0.100 -p IPv4 --ip-protocol icmp -j ACCEPT

[iptables]
-A FORWARD -i br0.100 -p icmp -j DROP
-A FORWARD --out-interface br0.100 -p icmp -j ACCEPT
-A FORWARD --in-interface br0.100 -j POLICE --set-mode pkt --set-
rate 1 --set-burst 1 --set-class 0
```

And here are example rules for a traditional mode bridge:

```
[ebtables]
-A FORWARD -i br0 -p IPv4 --ip-protocol icmp -j DROP
-A FORWARD -o br0 -p IPv4 --ip-protocol icmp -j ACCEPT

[iptables]
-A FORWARD -i br0 -p icmp -j DROP
-A FORWARD --out-interface br0 -p icmp -j ACCEPT
-A FORWARD --in-interface br0 -j POLICE --set-mode pkt --set-rate
1 --set-burst 1 --set-class 0
```

## Installing and Managing ACL Rules with NCLU

NCLU provides an easy way to create custom ACLs in Cumulus Linux. The rules you create live in the `/var/lib/cumulus/nclu/nclu_acl.conf` file, which gets converted to a rules file, `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/50_nclu_acl.rules`. This way, the rules you create with NCLU are independent of the two default files in `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/00control_plane.rules` and `99control_plane_catch_all.rules`, as the content in these files may get updated after you upgrade Cumulus Linux.

Instead of crafting a rule by hand then installing it using `cl-acltool`, NCLU handles many of the options automatically. For example, consider the following `iptables` rule:



```
-A FORWARD -i swp1 -o swp2 -s 10.0.14.2 -d 10.0.15.8 -p tcp -j ACCEPT
```

You would create this rule, called *EXAMPLE1*, using NCLU like this:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add acl ipv4 EXAMPLE1 accept tcp source-ip  
10.0.14.2/32 source-port any dest-ip 10.0.15.8/32 dest-port any  
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending  
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

All options, such as the `-j` and `-p`, even `FORWARD` in the above rule, are added automatically when you apply the rule to the control plane; NCLU figures it all out for you.

You can also set a priority value, which specifies the order in which the rules get executed, and the order in which they appear in the rules file. Lower numbers are executed first. To add a new rule in the middle, first run `net show config acl`, which displays the priority numbers. Otherwise, new rules get appended to the end of the list of rules in the `nclu_acl.conf` and `50_nclu_acl.rules` files.



If you need to hand edit a rule, don't edit the `50_nclu_acl.rules` file. Instead, edit the `nclu_acl.conf` file.

After you add the rule, you need to apply it to an inbound or outbound interface using `net add int acl`; `swp1` is the inbound interface in our example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add int swp1 acl ipv4 EXAMPLE1 inbound  
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending  
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

After you commit your changes, you can verify the rule you created with NCLU by running `net show configuration acl`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show configuration acl  
acl ipv4 EXAMPLE1 priority 10 accept tcp source-ip 10.0.14.2/32  
source-port any dest-ip 10.0.15.8/32 dest-port any  
  
interface swp1  
  acl ipv4 EXAMPLE1 inbound
```

Or you can see all of the rules installed by running `cat` on the `50_nclu_acl.rules` file:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/50_nclu_acl.rules  
[iptables]  
# swp1: acl ipv4 EXAMPLE1 inbound
```



```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp1 --out-interface swp2 -j ACCEPT -p tcp -  
s 10.0.14.2/32 -d 10.0.15.8/32 --dport 110
```

For INPUT and FORWARD rules, apply the rule to a control plane interface using `net add control-plane`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add control-plane acl ipv4 EXAMPLE1 inbound  
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending  
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

To remove a rule, use `net del acl ipv4|ipv6|mac RULENAME`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net del acl ipv4 EXAMPLE1  
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending  
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

This deletes all rules from the `50_nclu_acl.rules` file with that name. It also deletes the interfaces referenced in the `nclu_acl.conf` file.

## Installing and Managing ACL Rules with cl-acltool

You can manage Cumulus Linux ACLs with `cl-acltool`. Rules are first written to the `iptables` chains, as described above, and then synced to hardware via `switchd`.



Use `iptables/ip6tables/ebtables` and `cl-acltool` to manage rules in the default files, `00control_plane.rules` and `99control_plane_catch_all.rules`; they're not aware of rules created using NCLU.

To examine the current state of chains and list all installed rules, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -L all  
-----  
Listing rules of type iptables:  
-----  
  
TABLE filter :  
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT 90 packets, 14456 bytes)  
pkts bytes target prot opt in out source destination  
0 0 DROP all -- swp+ any 240.0.0.0/5 anywhere  
0 0 DROP all -- swp+ any loopback/8 anywhere  
0 0 DROP all -- swp+ any base-address.mcast.net/8 anywhere  
0 0 DROP all -- swp+ any 255.255.255.255 anywhere ...
```

To list installed rules using native `iptables`, `ip6tables` and `ebtables`, use the `-L` option with the respective commands:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo iptables -L  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ip6tables -L  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ebtables -L
```

To flush all installed rules, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -F all
```

To flush only the IPv4 `iptables` rules, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -F ip
```

If the install fails, ACL rules in the kernel and hardware are rolled back to the previous state. Errors from programming rules in the kernel or ASIC are reported appropriately.

## Installing Packet Filtering (ACL) Rules

`cl-acltool` takes access control list (ACL) rules input in files. Each ACL policy file contains `iptables`, `ip6tables` and `ebtables` categories under the tags `[iptables]`, `[ip6tables]` and `[ebtables]` respectively.

Each rule in an ACL policy must be assigned to one of the rule categories above.

See `man cl-acltool(5)` for ACL rule details. For `iptables` rule syntax, see `man iptables(8)`. For `ip6tables` rule syntax, see `man ip6tables(8)`. For `ebtables` rule syntax, see `man ebtables(8)`.

See `man cl-acltool(5)` and `man cl-acltool(8)` for further details on using `cl-acltool`; however, some examples are listed here, and more are listed [later in this chapter \(see page\)](#).



By default:

- ACL policy files are located in `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/`.
- All `*.rules` files in this directory are included in `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.conf`.
- All files included in this `policy.conf` file are installed when the switch boots up.
- The `policy.conf` file expects rules files to have a `.rules` suffix as part of the file name.

Here is an example ACL policy file:

```
[iptables]  
-A INPUT --in-interface swp1 -p tcp --dport 80 -j ACCEPT  
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp1 -p tcp --dport 80 -j ACCEPT  
  
[ip6tables]  
-A INPUT --in-interface swp1 -p tcp --dport 80 -j ACCEPT  
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp1 -p tcp --dport 80 -j ACCEPT
```



```
[ebtables]
-A INPUT -p IPv4 -j ACCEPT
-A FORWARD -p IPv4 -j ACCEPT
```

You can use wildcards or variables to specify chain and interface lists to ease administration of rules.

## Interface Wildcards

Currently only *swp+* and *bond+* are supported as wildcard names. There may be kernel restrictions in supporting more complex wildcards like *swp1+* etc.

```
INGRESS = swp+
INPUT_PORT_CHAIN = INPUT, FORWARD

[iptables]
-A $INPUT_PORT_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS -p tcp --dport 80 -j
ACCEPT

[ip6tables]
-A $INPUT_PORT_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS -p tcp --dport 80 -j
ACCEPT

[ebtables]
-A INPUT -p IPv4 -j ACCEPT
```

ACL rules for the system can be written into multiple files under the default */etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/* directory. The ordering of rules during installation follows the sort order of the files based on their file names.

Use multiple files to stack rules. The example below shows two rules files separating rules for management and datapath traffic:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ls /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/
00sample_mgmt.rules 01sample_datapath.rules
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/00sample_mgmt.rules

INGRESS_INTF = swp+
INGRESS_CHAIN = INPUT

[iptables]
# protect the switch management
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -s 10.0.14.2 -d
10.0.15.8 -p tcp -j ACCEPT
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -s 10.0.11.2 -d
10.0.12.8 -p tcp -j ACCEPT
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -d 10.0.16.8 -p udp -j
DROP
```



```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/01sample_datapath.rules
INGRESS_INTF = swp+
INGRESS_CHAIN = INPUT, FORWARD

[iptables]
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -s 192.0.2.5 -p icmp -j ACCEPT
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -s 192.0.2.6 -d 192.0.2.4 -j DROP
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -s 192.0.2.2 -d 192.0.2.8 -j DROP
```

Install all ACL policies under a directory:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -i -P ./rules
Reading files under rules
Reading rule file ./rules/01_http_rules.txt ...
Processing rules in file ./rules/01_http_rules.txt ...
Installing acl policy ...
Done.
```

Install all rules and policies included in /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.conf:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -i
```

## Specifying which Policy Files to Install

By default, any .rules file you configure in /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/ get installed by Cumulus Linux. To add other policy files to an ACL, you need to include them in /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.conf. For example, in order for Cumulus Linux to install a rule in a policy file called 01\_new.datapathacl, you would add include /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/01\_new.rules to policy.conf, as in this example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nano /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.conf

#
# This file is a master file for acl policy file inclusion
#
# Note: This is not a file where you list acl rules.
#
# This file can contain:
# - include lines with acl policy files
#   example:
#     include <filepath>
#
```

```
# see manpage cl-acltool(5) and cl-acltool(8) for how to write policy
files
#
include /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/01_new.datapathacl
```

## Hardware Limitations on Number of Rules

The maximum number of rules that can be handled in hardware is a function of the following factors:

- The platform type (switch silicon, like Tomahawk or Spectrum — see the [HCL](#) to determine which platform type applies to a particular switch)
- The mix of IPv4 and/or IPv6 rules; Cumulus Linux doesn't support the maximum number of rules for both IPv4 and IPv6 simultaneously
- The number of default rules provided by Cumulus Linux
- Whether the rules are applied on ingress or egress
- Whether the rules are in atomic or nonatomic mode; nonatomic mode rules are used when nonatomic updates are enabled ([see above \(see page 144\)](#))

If the maximum number of rules for a particular table is exceeded, `cl-acltool -i` generates the following error:

```
error: hw sync failed (sync_acl hardware installation failed) Rolling
back .. failed.
```



On Broadcom platforms, IPv6 egress rules are not supported. In certain cases the `ebtables` egress rules can match switched IPv6 packets based on the `etype` field of the packet.

In the tables below, the default rules count toward the limits listed. The raw limits below assume only one ingress and one egress table are present.

### Broadcom Tomahawk Limits

Direction	Atomic Mode IPv4 Rules	Atomic Mode IPv6 Rules	Nonatomic Mode IPv4 Rules	Nonatomic Mode IPv6 Rules
Ingress raw limit	512	512	1024	1024
Ingress limit with default rules	256 (36 default)	256 (29 default)	768 (36 default)	768 (29 default)
Egress raw limit	256	0	512	0
Egress limit with default rules	256 (29 default)	0	512 (29 default)	0

## Broadcom Trident II+ Limits

<b>Direction</b>	<b>Atomic Mode IPv4 Rules</b>	<b>Atomic Mode IPv6 Rules</b>	<b>Nonatomic Mode IPv4 Rules</b>	<b>Nonatomic Mode IPv6 Rules</b>
Ingress raw limit	4096	4096	8192	8192
Ingress limit with default rules	2048 (36 default)	3072 (29 default)	6144 (36 default)	6144 (29 default)
Egress raw limit	256	0	512	0
Egress limit with default rules	256 (29 default)	0	512 (29 default)	0

## Broadcom Trident II Limits

<b>Direction</b>	<b>Atomic Mode IPv4 Rules</b>	<b>Atomic Mode IPv6 Rules</b>	<b>Nonatomic Mode IPv4 Rules</b>	<b>Nonatomic Mode IPv6 Rules</b>
Ingress raw limit	1024	1024	2048	2048
Ingress limit with default rules	512 (36 default)	768 (29 default)	1536 (36 default)	1536 (29 default)
Egress raw limit	256	0	512	0
Egress limit with default rules	256 (29 default)	0	512 (29 default)	0

## Broadcom Helix4 Limits

<b>Direction</b>	<b>Atomic Mode IPv4 Rules</b>	<b>Atomic Mode IPv6 Rules</b>	<b>Nonatomic Mode IPv4 Rules</b>	<b>Nonatomic Mode IPv6 Rules</b>
Ingress raw limit	1024	512	2048	1024
Ingress limit with default rules	768 (36 default)	384 (29 default)	1792 (36 default)	896 (29 default)
Egress raw limit	256	0	512	0
Egress limit with default rules	256 (29 default)	0	512 (29 default)	0

## Mellanox Spectrum Limits

The Mellanox Spectrum ASIC has one common [TCAM](#) for both ingress and egress, and it may be used for other non-ACL-related resources. However, the number of supported rules varies with the [TCAM profile](#) (see page 596) specified for the switch.

Profile	Atomic Mode IPv4 Rules	Atomic Mode IPv6 Rules	Nonatomic Mode IPv4 Rules	Nonatomic Mode IPv6 Rules
default	1750	750	3500	1500
ipmc-heavy	200	80	400	160
acl-heavy	3000	2000	6000	2500

## Supported Rule Types

The `iptables`/`ip6tables`/`ebtables` construct tries to layer the Linux implementation on top of the underlying hardware but they are not always directly compatible. Here are the supported rules for chains in `iptables`, `ip6tables` and `ebtables`.



To learn more about any of the options shown in the tables below, run `iptables -h [name of option]`. The same help syntax works for options for `ip6tables` and `ebtables`.

Click to see an example of help syntax for an `ebtables` target

```
root@leaf1# ebtables -h tricolorpolice
<...snip...
tricolorpolice option:
--set-color-mode STRING setting the mode in blind or aware
--set-cir INT setting committed information rate in kbits per
second
--set-cbs INT setting committed burst size in kbyte
--set-pir INT setting peak information rate in kbits per
second
--set-ebs INT setting excess burst size in kbyte
--set-conform-action-dscp INT setting dscp value if the
action is accept for conforming packets
--set-exceed-action-dscp INT setting dscp value if the action
is accept for exceeding packets
--set-violate-action STRING setting the action (accept/drop)
for violating packets
--set-violate-action-dscp INT setting dscp value if the
action is accept for violating packets
Supported chains for the filter table:
INPUT FORWARD OUTPUT
```



## *iptables/ip6tables Rule Support*

Rule Element	Supported	Unsupported
<b>Matches</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Src/Dst, IP protocol</li><li>In/out interface</li><li>IPv4: icmp, ttl,</li><li>IPv6: icmp6, frag, hl,</li><li>IP common: tcp (<a href="#">with flags (see page 164)</a>), udp, multiport, TOS, DSCP, addrtype</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Rules with input/output Ethernet interfaces are ignored</li><li>Inverse matches</li></ul>
<b>Standard Targets</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>ACCEPT, DROP</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>RETURN, QUEUE, STOP, Fall Thru, Jump</li></ul>
<b>Extended Targets</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>LOG (IPv4/IPv6); UID is not supported for LOG</li><li>TCP SEQ, TCP options or IP options</li><li>ULOG</li><li>SETQOS</li><li>DSCP</li></ul> <p><i>Unique to Cumulus Linux:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>SPAN</li><li>ERSPAN (IPv4/IPv6)</li><li>POLICE</li><li>TRICOLORPOLICE</li><li>SETCLASS</li></ul>	

## *ebtables Rule Support*

Rule Element	Supported	Unsupported
<b>Matches</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>ether type</li><li>input interface/wildcard</li><li>output interface/wildcard</li><li>src/dst MAC</li><li>IP: src, dest, tos, proto, sport, dport</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Inverse matches</li><li>Proto length</li><li>VLAN</li></ul>



Rule Element	Supported	Unsupported
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• IPv6: tcclass, icmp6: type, icmp6: code range, src /dst addr, sport, dport</li><li>• 802.1p (CoS)</li></ul>	
Standard Targets	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• ACCEPT, DROP</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Return, Continue, Jump, Fall Thru</li></ul>
Extended Targets	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Ulog</li><li>• log</li></ul> <p><i>Unique to Cumulus Linux:</i></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• span</li><li>• erspan</li><li>• police</li><li>• tricolorpolice</li><li>• setclass</li></ul>	

### Other Unsupported Rules

- Rules that have no matches and accept all packets in a chain are currently ignored. This probably has side effects in the sense that the rules below them do get hit, when normally they wouldn't.
- Chain default rules (which are ACCEPT) are also ignored.

### Common Examples

#### Policing Control Plane and Data Plane Traffic

You can configure quality of service for traffic on both the control plane and the data plane. By using QoS policers, you can rate limit traffic so incoming packets get dropped if they exceed specified thresholds.



Counters on POLICE ACL rules in `iptables` do not currently show the packets that are dropped due to those rules.

Use the `POLICE` target with `iptables`. `POLICE` takes these arguments:

- `--set-class value`: Sets the system internal class of service queue configuration to `value`.
- `--set-rate value`: Specifies the maximum rate in kilobytes (KB) or packets.
- `--set-burst value`: Specifies the number of packets or kilobytes (KB) allowed to arrive sequentially.
- `--set-mode string`: Sets the mode in `KB` (kilobytes) or `pkt` (packets) for rate and burst size.

For example, to rate limit the incoming traffic on swp1 to 400 packets/second with a burst of 100 packets/second and set the class of the queue for the policed traffic as 0, set this rule in your appropriate `.rules` file:

```
-A INPUT --in-interface swp1 -j POLICE --set-mode pkt --set-rate 400
--set-burst 100 --set-class 0
```

Here is another example of control plane ACL rules to lock down the switch. You specify them in `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/00control_plane.rules`:

View the contents of the file ...

```
INGRESS_INTF = swp+
INGRESS_CHAIN = INPUT
INNFWD_CHAIN = INPUT,FORWARD
MARTIAN_SOURCES_4 = "240.0.0.0/5,127.0.0.0/8,224.0.0.0/8,
255.255.255.255/32"
MARTIAN_SOURCES_6 = "ff00::/8,::/128,::ffff:0.0.0.0/96,::1/128"
# Custom Policy Section
SSH_SOURCES_4 = "192.168.0.0/24"
NTP_SERVERS_4 = "192.168.0.1/32,192.168.0.4/32"
DNS_SERVERS_4 = "192.168.0.1/32,192.168.0.4/32"
SNMP_SERVERS_4 = "192.168.0.1/32"
[iptables]
-A $INNFWD_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -s $MARTIAN_SOURCES_4 -
j DROP
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p ospf -j POLICE --
set-mode pkt --set-rate 2000 --set-burst 2000 --set-class 7
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p tcp --dport bgp -j
POLICE --set-mode pkt --set-rate 2000 --set-burst 2000 --set-class 7
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p tcp --sport bgp -j
POLICE --set-mode pkt --set-rate 2000 --set-burst 2000 --set-class 7
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p icmp -j POLICE --
set-mode pkt --set-rate 100 --set-burst 40 --set-class 2
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p udp --dport bootps:
bootpc -j POLICE --set-mode pkt --set-rate 100 --set-burst 100 --set-
class 2
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p tcp --dport bootps:
bootpc -j POLICE --set-mode pkt --set-rate 100 --set-burst 100 --set-
class 2
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p igmp -j POLICE --
set-mode pkt --set-rate 300 --set-burst 100 --set-class 6
# Custom policy
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p tcp --dport 22 -s
$SSH_SOURCES_4 -j ACCEPT
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p udp --sport 123 -s
$NTP_SERVERS_4 -j ACCEPT
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p udp --sport 53 -s
$DNS_SERVERS_4 -j ACCEPT
```



```
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p udp --dport 161 -s $SNMP_SERVERS_4 -j ACCEPT
# Allow UDP traceroute when we are the current TTL expired hop
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p udp --dport 1024:65535 -m ttl --ttl-eq 1 -j ACCEPT
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -j DROP
```

## Setting DSCP on Transit Traffic

The examples here use the *mangle* table to modify the packet as it transits the switch. DSCP is expressed in [decimal notation](#) in the examples below.

```
[iptables]

#Set SSH as high priority traffic.
-t mangle -A FORWARD -p tcp --dport 22 -j DSCP --set-dscp 46

#Set everything coming in SWP1 as AF13
-t mangle -A FORWARD --in-interface swp1 -j DSCP --set-dscp 14

#Set Packets destined for 10.0.100.27 as best effort
-t mangle -A FORWARD -d 10.0.100.27/32 -j DSCP --set-dscp 0

#Example using a range of ports for TCP traffic
-t mangle -A FORWARD -p tcp -s 10.0.0.17/32 --sport 10000:20000 -d 10.0.100.27/32 --dport 10000:20000 -j DSCP --set-dscp 34
```

## Verifying DSCP Values on Transit Traffic

The examples here use the DSCP match criteria in combination with other IP, TCP and interface matches to identify traffic and count the number of packets.

```
[iptables]

#Match and count the packets that match SSH traffic with DSCP EF
-A FORWARD -p tcp --dport 22 -m dscp --dscp 46 -j ACCEPT

#Match and count the packets coming in SWP1 as AF13
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp1 -m dscp --dscp 14 -j ACCEPT
#Match and count the packets with a destination 10.0.0.17 marked best effort
-A FORWARD -d 10.0.100.27/32 -m dscp --dscp 0 -j ACCEPT

#Match and count the packets in a port range with DSCP AF41
-A FORWARD -p tcp -s 10.0.0.17/32 --sport 10000:20000 -d 10.0.100.27/32 --dport 10000:20000 -m dscp --dscp 34 -j ACCEPT
```

## Checking the Packet and Byte Counters for ACL Rules

To verify the counters, using the above example rules, first send test traffic matching the patterns through the network. The following example generates traffic with [mz](#), which can be installed on host servers or even on Cumulus Linux switches. Once traffic is sent to validate the counters, they are matched on switch1 use `cl-acltool`.

```
# Send 100 TCP packets on host1 with a DSCP value of EF with a
destination of host2 TCP port 22:

cumulus@host1$ mz eth1 -A 10.0.0.17 -B 10.0.100.27 -c 100 -v -t tcp
"dp=22,dscp=46"
    IP:  ver=4, len=40, tos=184, id=0, frag=0, ttl=255, proto=6, sum=0,
SA=10.0.0.17, DA=10.0.100.27,
        payload=[see next layer]
    TCP:  sp=0, dp=22, S=42, A=42, flags=0, win=10000, len=20, sum=0,
        payload=

# Verify the 100 packets are matched on switch1

cumulus@switch1$ sudo cl-acltool -L ip
-----
Listing rules of type iptables:
-----
TABLE filter :
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT 9314 packets, 753K bytes)
  pkts bytes target     prot opt in      out      source
destination
Chain FORWARD (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
  pkts bytes target     prot opt in      out      source
destination
    100   6400 ACCEPT     tcp  --  any     any     anywhere
anywhere          tcp dpt:ssh DSCP match 0x2e
      0     0 ACCEPT     all  --  swp1    any     anywhere
anywhere          DSCP match 0x0e
      0     0 ACCEPT     all  --  any     any     10.0.0.17
anywhere          DSCP match 0x00
      0     0 ACCEPT     tcp  --  any     any     10.0.0.17
10.0.100.27       tcp spts:webmin:20000 dpts:webmin:2002
```

```
# Send 100 packets with a small payload on host1 with a DSCP value of
AF13 with a destination of host2:

cumulus@host1$ mz eth1 -A 10.0.0.17 -B 10.0.100.27 -c 100 -v -t ip
    IP:  ver=4, len=20, tos=0, id=0, frag=0, ttl=255, proto=0, sum=0,
SA=10.0.0.17, DA=10.0.100.27,
        payload=

# Verify the 100 packets are matched on switch1
```



```
cumulus@switch1$ sudo cl-acltool -L ip
-----
Listing rules of type iptables:
-----
TABLE filter :
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT 9314 packets, 753K bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in     out      source
destination
Chain FORWARD (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in     out      source
destination
  100  6400 ACCEPT      tcp   --  any    any     anywhere
anywhere          tcp  dpt:ssh DSCP match 0x2e
  100  7000 ACCEPT      all   --  swp3   any     anywhere
anywhere          DSCP match 0x0e
  100  6400 ACCEPT      all   --  any    any     10.0.0.17
anywhere          DSCP match 0x00
      0    0 ACCEPT      tcp   --  any    any     10.0.0.17
10.0.100.27        tcp  spts:webmin:20000 dpts:webmin:2002
```

```
# Send 100 packets on host1 with a destination of host2:
```

```
cumulus@host1$ mz eth1 -A 10.0.0.17 -B 10.0.100.27 -c 100 -v -t ip
  IP: ver=4, len=20, tos=56, id=0, frag=0, ttl=255, proto=0, sum=0,
  SA=10.0.0.17, DA=10.0.100.27,
  payload=
```

```
# Verify the 100 packets are matched on switch1
```

```
cumulus@switch1$ sudo cl-acltool -L ip
-----
Listing rules of type iptables:
-----
TABLE filter :
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT 9314 packets, 753K bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in     out      source
destination
Chain FORWARD (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in     out      source
destination
  100  6400 ACCEPT      tcp   --  any    any     anywhere
anywhere          tcp  dpt:ssh DSCP match 0x2e
  100  7000 ACCEPT      all   --  swp3   any     anywhere
anywhere          DSCP match 0x0e
      0    0 ACCEPT      all   --  any    any     10.0.0.17
anywhere          DSCP match 0x00
      0    0 ACCEPT      tcp   --  any    any     10.0.0.17
10.0.100.27        tcp  spts:webmin:20000 dpts:webmin:2002Still
  working
```



## Filtering Specific TCP Flags

The example solution below creates rules on the INPUT and FORWARD chains to drop ingress IPv4 and IPv6 TCP packets when the SYN bit is set and the RST, ACK and FIN bits are reset. The default for the INPUT and FORWARD chains allows all other packets. The ACL is applied to ports swp20 and swp21. After configuring this ACL, new TCP sessions that originate from ingress ports swp20 and swp21 will not be allowed. TCP sessions that originate from any other port are allowed.

```
INGRESS_INTF = swp20,swp21

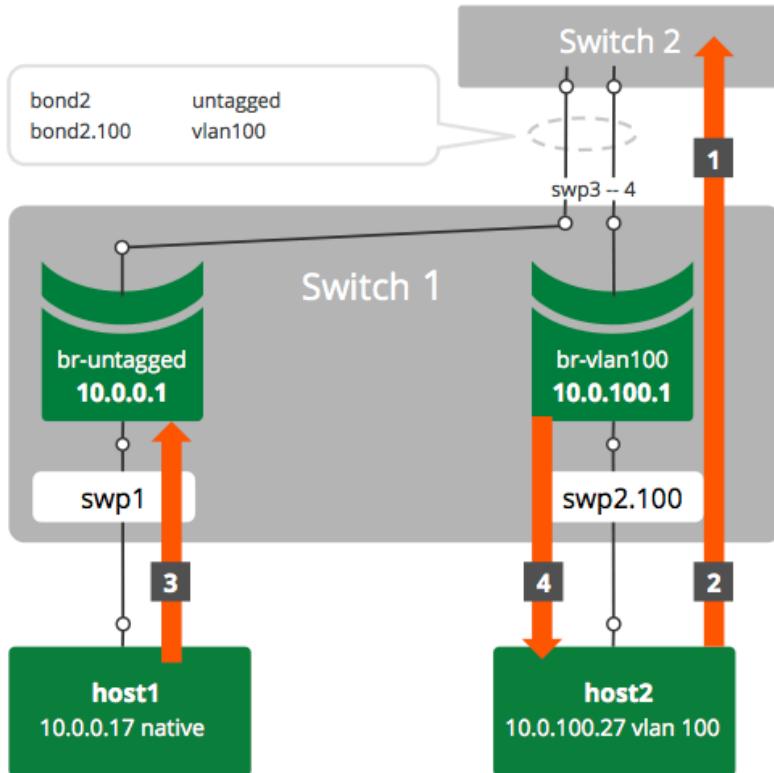
[iptables]
-A INPUT, FORWARD --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p tcp --syn -j DROP
[ip6tables]
-A INPUT, FORWARD --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p tcp --syn -j DROP
```

The `--syn` flag in the above rule matches packets with the SYN bit set and the ACK, RST and FIN bits are cleared. It is equivalent to using `-tcp-flags SYN,RST,ACK,FIN SYN`. For example, the above rule could be re-written as:

```
-A INPUT, FORWARD --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p tcp --tcp-flags SYN,
RST,ACK,FIN SYN -j DROP
```

## Example Scenario

The following example scenario demonstrates where several different rules are applied to show what is possible.



## Hardware Accelerated

- 1 **egress rule**  
(Forward Chain with -o flag)
- 2 **ingress rule**  
(Forward Chain with -i flag)
- 3 **input rule**  
(Input Chain with or w/o -i flag)

## In Software

- 4 **output rule**  
(Output Chain with or w/o -o flag)

Following are the configurations for the two switches used in these examples. The configuration for each switch appears in `/etc/network/interfaces` on that switch.

### Switch 1 Configuration

```
cumulus@switch1:~$ net show configuration files
...
/etc/network/interfaces
=====

auto swp1
iface swp1

auto swp2
iface swp2

auto swp3
iface swp3

auto swp4
iface swp4

auto bond2
```



```
iface bond2
    bond-slaves swp3 swp4

auto br-untagged
iface br-untagged
    address 10.0.0.1/24
    bridge_ports swp1 bond2
    bridge_stp on

auto br-tag100
iface br-tag100
    address 10.0.100.1/24
    bridge_ports swp2.100 bond2.100
    bridge_stp on

...
```

## Switch 2 Configuration

```
cumulus@switch2:~$ net show configuration files

...
/etc/network/interfaces
=====

auto swp3
iface swp3

auto swp4
iface swp4

auto br-untagged
iface br-untagged
    address 10.0.0.2/24
    bridge_ports bond2
    bridge_stp on

auto br-tag100
iface br-tag100
    address 10.0.100.2/24
    bridge_ports bond2.100
    bridge_stp on

auto bond2
iface bond2
    bond-slaves swp3 swp4

...
```



## Egress Rule

The following rule blocks any TCP with destination port 200 traffic going from host1 or host2 through the switch (corresponding to rule 1 in the diagram above).

```
[iptables] -A FORWARD -o bond2 -p tcp --dport 200 -j DROP
```

## Ingress Rule

The following rule blocks any UDP traffic with source port 200 going from host1 through the switch (corresponding to rule 2 in the diagram above).

```
[iptables] -A FORWARD -i swp2 -p udp --sport 200 -j DROP
```

## Input Rule

The following rule blocks any UDP traffic with source port 200 and destination port 50 going from host1 to the switch (corresponding to rule 3 in the diagram above).

```
[iptables] -A INPUT -i swp1 -p udp --sport 200 --dport 50 -j DROP
```

## Output Rule

The following rule blocks any TCP traffic with source port 123 and destination port 123 going from Switch 1 to host2 (corresponding to rule 4 in the diagram above).

```
[iptables] -A OUTPUT -o br-tag100 -p tcp --sport 123 --dport 123 -j DROP
```

## Combined Rules

The following rule blocks any TCP traffic with source port 123 and destination port 123 going from any switch port egress or generated from Switch 1 to host1 or host2 (corresponding to rules 1 and 4 in the diagram above).

```
[iptables] -A OUTPUT, FORWARD -o swp+ -p tcp --sport 123 --dport 123 -j DROP
```

This also becomes 2 ACLs, and is effectively the same as:



```
[iptables]
-A FORWARD -o swp+ -p tcp --sport 123 --dport 123 -j DROP
-A OUTPUT -o swp+ -p tcp --sport 123 --dport 123 -j DROP
```

## Layer 2-only Rules/ebtables

The following rule blocks any traffic with source MAC address 00:00:00:00:00:12 and destination MAC address 08:9e:01:ce:e2:04 going from any switch port egress/ingress.

```
[ebtables] -A FORWARD -s 00:00:00:00:00:12 -d 08:9e:01:ce:e2:04 -j
DROP
```

## Useful Links

- [www.netfilter.org](http://www.netfilter.org)
- Netfilter.org packet filtering how-to

## Caveats and Errata

### *Not All Rules Supported*

As mentioned in the [Supported Rules section \(see page 157\)](#) above, not all `iptables`, `ip6tables` or `ebtables` rules are supported. Refer to that section for specific rule support.

### *ACL Log Policer Limits Traffic*

Traffic copied to the CPU is limited to 1 pkt/s by an ACL Log Policer, to protect the CPU from overloading.

### *Bridge Traffic Limitations*

Bridge traffic that matches LOG ACTION rules are not logged in syslog, as the kernel and hardware identify packets using different information.

### *Log Actions Cannot Be Forwarded*

Logged packets cannot be forwarded. The hardware cannot both forward a packet and send the packet to the control plane (or kernel) for logging. To emphasize this, a log action must also have a drop action.

### *Broadcom Range Checker Limitations*

Broadcom platforms have only 24 range checkers. This is a separate resource from the total number of ACLs allowed. If you are creating a large ACL configuration, use port ranges for large ranges of more than 5 ports.



## *Inbound LOG Actions Only for Broadcom Switches*

On Broadcom-based switches, LOG actions can only be done on inbound interfaces (the ingress direction), not on outbound interfaces (the egress direction).

## *Tomahawk Hardware Limitations*

### *Rate Limiting per Pipeline, Not Global*

On Tomahawk switches, the field processor (FP) polices on a per-pipeline basis instead of globally, as with a Trident II switch. If packets come in to different switch ports that are on different pipelines on the ASIC, they may be rate limited differently.

For example, your switch is set so BFD is rate limited to 2000 packets per second. When the BFD packets are received on port1/pipe1 and port2/pipe2, they would each be rate limited at 2000 pps, thus the switch is rate limiting at 4000 pps overall. Since there are four pipelines on a Tomahawk switch, you could see a 4x increase of your configured rate limits.

### *Atomic Update Mode Enabled by Default*

In Cumulus Linux, atomic update mode is enabled by default. If you have Tomahawk switches and plan to use SPAN and/or mangle rules, you must disable atomic update mode.

To do so, enable non-atomic update mode by setting the value for `acl.non_atomic_update_mode` to true in `/etc/cumulus/switchd.conf`:

```
acl.non_atomic_update_mode = TRUE
```

Then `restart switchd`.

### *Packets Undercounted during ACL Updates*

On Tomahawk switches, when updating egress FP rules, some packets do not get counted. This results in an underreporting of counts during ping-pong/incremental switchover.

## *Trident II+ Hardware Limitations*

On a Trident II+ switch, the TCAM allocation for ACLs is limited to 2048 rules in atomic mode for a default setup, instead of 4096 as advertised for ingress rules.

### *iptables Interactions with cl-acltool*

Since Cumulus Linux is a Linux operating system, the `iptables` commands can be used directly and does work. However, you should consider using `cl-acltool` instead because:

- Without using `cl-acltool`, rules are not installed into hardware.
- Running `cl-acltool -i` (the installation command) resets all rules and deletes anything that is not stored in `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.conf`.

For example, running the following command works:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo iptables -A INPUT -p icmp --icmp-type echo-request -j DROP
```

And the rules appear when you run `cl-acltool -L`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -L ip
-----
Listing rules of type iptables:
-----
TABLE filter :
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT 72 packets, 5236 bytes)
 pkts bytes target  prot opt in     out      source        destination
          0     0  DROP    icmp --  any   any    anywhere    anywhere
          0     0  icmp echo-request
```

However, running `cl-acltool -i` or `reboot` removes them. To ensure all rules that can be in hardware are hardware accelerated, place them in `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.conf` and run `cl-acltool -i`.

## Where to Assign Rules

- If a switch port is assigned to a bond, any egress rules must be assigned to the bond.
- When using the OUTPUT chain, rules must be assigned to the source. For example, if a rule is assigned to the switch port in the direction of traffic but the source is a bridge (VLAN), the traffic won't be affected by the rule and must be applied to the bridge.
- If all transit traffic needs to have a rule applied, use the FORWARD chain, not the OUTPUT chain.

## Generic Error Message Displayed after ACL Rule Installation Failure

After an ACL rule installation failure, a generic error message like the following is displayed:

```
cumulus@switch:$ sudo cl-acltool -i -p 00control_plane.rules
Using user provided rule file 00control_plane.rules
Reading rule file 00control_plane.rules ...
Processing rules in file 00control_plane.rules ...
error: hw sync failed (sync_acl hardware installation failed)
Installing acl policy... Rolling back ..
failed.
```

## Dell S3048-ON Supports only 24K MAC Addresses

The Dell S3048-ON has a limit of 24576 MAC address entries, instead of 32K for other 1G switches.



## Default Cumulus Linux ACL Configuration

The Cumulus Linux default ACL configuration is split into three parts, as outlined in the [netfilter ACL documentation \(see page 137\)](#): IP tables, IPv6 tables, and EB tables. The sections below cover the default configurations for each part, while the default file can be seen by clicking the Default ACL Configuration link:

### Default ACL Configuration

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -L all
-----
Listing rules of type iptables:
-----
TABLE filter :
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT 167 packets, 16481 bytes)
  pkts bytes target     prot opt in     out     source
destination
      0     0 DROP       all   --  swp+    any     240.0.0.0/5
anywhere
      0     0 DROP       all   --  swp+    any     loopback/8
anywhere
      0     0 DROP       all   --  swp+    any     base-address.mcast.net
/8 anywhere
      0     0 DROP       all   --  swp+    any     255.255.255.255
anywhere
      0     0 SETCLASS  udp   --  swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere
      0     0 POLICE    udp   --  any     any     anywhere
anywhere
      0     0 SETCLASS  udp   --  swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere
      0     0 POLICE    udp   --  any     any     anywhere
anywhere
      0     0 SETCLASS  udp   --  swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere
      0     0 POLICE    udp   --  any     any     anywhere
anywhere
      0     0 SETCLASS  ospf  --  swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere
      0     0 POLICE    ospf  --  any     any     anywhere
anywhere
      0     0 SETCLASS  tcp   --  swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere
      0     0 POLICE    tcp   --  any     any     anywhere
anywhere
      0     0 SETCLASS  tcp   --  swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere
      0     0 spt:bgp   SETCLASS class:7
```

```

      0      0 POLICE      tcp  --  any    any    anywhere
anywhere          tcp spt:bgp POLICE mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:2000
      0      0 SETCLASS    tcp  --  swp+   any    anywhere
anywhere          tcp dpt:5342 SETCLASS class:7
      0      0 POLICE      tcp  --  any    any    anywhere
anywhere          tcp dpt:5342 POLICE mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:
2000
      0      0 SETCLASS    tcp  --  swp+   any    anywhere
anywhere          tcp spt:5342 SETCLASS class:7
      0      0 POLICE      tcp  --  any    any    anywhere
anywhere          tcp spt:5342 POLICE mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:
2000
      0      0 SETCLASS    icmp --  swp+   any    anywhere
anywhere          SETCLASS class:2
      1      84 POLICE     icmp --  any    any    anywhere
anywhere          POLICE mode:pkt rate:100 burst:40
      0      0 SETCLASS    udp   --  swp+   any    anywhere
anywhere          udp dpts:bootps:bootpc SETCLASS class:2
      0      0 POLICE     udp   --  any    any    anywhere
anywhere          udp dpt:bootps POLICE mode:pkt rate:100 burst:
100
      0      0 POLICE     udp   --  any    any    anywhere
anywhere          udp dpt:bootpc POLICE mode:pkt rate:100 burst:
100
      0      0 SETCLASS    tcp  --  swp+   any    anywhere
anywhere          tcp dpts:bootps:bootpc SETCLASS class:2
      0      0 POLICE     tcp  --  any    any    anywhere
anywhere          tcp dpt:bootps POLICE mode:pkt rate:100 burst:
100
      0      0 POLICE     tcp  --  any    any    anywhere
anywhere          tcp dpt:bootpc POLICE mode:pkt rate:100 burst:
100
      0      0 SETCLASS    udp   --  swp+   any    anywhere
anywhere          udp dpt:10001 SETCLASS class:3
      0      0 POLICE     udp   --  any    any    anywhere
anywhere          udp dpt:10001 POLICE mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:
2000
      0      0 SETCLASS    igmp --  swp+   any    anywhere
anywhere          SETCLASS class:6
      1      32 POLICE     igmp --  any    any    anywhere
anywhere          POLICE mode:pkt rate:300 burst:100
      0      0 POLICE     all   --  swp+   any    anywhere
anywhere          ADDRTYPE match dst-type LOCAL POLICE mode:pkt
rate:1000 burst:1000 class:0
      0      0 POLICE     all   --  swp+   any    anywhere
anywhere          ADDRTYPE match dst-type IPROUTER POLICE mode:
pkt rate:400 burst:100 class:0
      0      0 SETCLASS    all   --  swp+   any    anywhere
anywhere          SETCLASS class:0
Chain FORWARD (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
  pkts bytes target  prot opt in      out      source
destination

```



```
      0      0  DROP      all    --  swp+    any     240.0.0.0/5
anywhere
      0      0  DROP      all    --  swp+    any     loopback/8
anywhere
      0      0  DROP      all    --  swp+    any     base-address.mcast.net
/8  anywhere
      0      0  DROP      all    --  swp+    any     255.255.255.255
anywhere
Chain OUTPUT (policy ACCEPT 107 packets, 12590 bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in     out      source
destination
TABLE mangle :
Chain PREROUTING (policy ACCEPT 172 packets, 17871 bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in     out      source
destination
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT 172 packets, 17871 bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in     out      source
destination
Chain FORWARD (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in     out      source
destination
Chain OUTPUT (policy ACCEPT 111 packets, 18134 bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in     out      source
destination
Chain POSTROUTING (policy ACCEPT 111 packets, 18134 bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in     out      source
destination
TABLE raw :
Chain PREROUTING (policy ACCEPT 173 packets, 17923 bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in     out      source
destination
Chain OUTPUT (policy ACCEPT 112 packets, 18978 bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in     out      source
destination
-----
Listing rules of type ip6tables:
-----
TABLE filter :
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in     out      source
destination
      0      0  DROP      all    swp+    any     ip6-mcastprefix/8
anywhere
      0      0  DROP      all    swp+    any     ::/128
anywhere
      0      0  DROP      all    swp+    any     ::ffff:0.0.0.0/96
anywhere
      0      0  DROP      all    swp+    any     localhost/128
anywhere
      0      0  POLICE    udp   swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere
      0      0  POLICE    udp   dpt:3785  POLICE mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:
2000 class:7
```

```

      0      0 POLICE      udp      swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere          udp dpt:3784 POLICE mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:
2000 class:7
      0      0 POLICE      udp      swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere          udp dpt:4784 POLICE mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:
2000 class:7
      0      0 POLICE      ospf      swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere          POLICE mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:2000 class:7
      0      0 POLICE      tcp      swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere          tcp dpt:bgp POLICE mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:
2000 class:7
      0      0 POLICE      tcp      swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere          tcp spt:bgp POLICE mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:
2000 class:7
      0      0 POLICE      ipv6-icmp    swp+    any
anywhere          anywhere          ipv6-icmp router-
solicitation POLICE mode:pkt rate:100 burst:100 class:2
      0      0 POLICE      ipv6-icmp    swp+    any
anywhere          anywhere          ipv6-icmp router-
advertisement POLICE mode:pkt rate:500 burst:500 class:2
      0      0 POLICE      ipv6-icmp    swp+    any
anywhere          anywhere          ipv6-icmp neighbour-
solicitation POLICE mode:pkt rate:400 burst:400 class:2
      0      0 POLICE      ipv6-icmp    swp+    any
anywhere          anywhere          ipv6-icmp neighbour-
advertisement POLICE mode:pkt rate:400 burst:400 class:2
      0      0 POLICE      ipv6-icmp    swp+    any
anywhere          anywhere          ipv6-icmptype 130 POLICE
mode:pkt rate:200 burst:100 class:6
      0      0 POLICE      ipv6-icmp    swp+    any
anywhere          anywhere          ipv6-icmptype 131 POLICE
mode:pkt rate:200 burst:100 class:6
      0      0 POLICE      ipv6-icmp    swp+    any
anywhere          anywhere          ipv6-icmptype 132 POLICE
mode:pkt rate:200 burst:100 class:6
      0      0 POLICE      ipv6-icmp    swp+    any
anywhere          anywhere          ipv6-icmptype 143 POLICE
mode:pkt rate:200 burst:100 class:6
      0      0 POLICE      ipv6-icmp    swp+    any
anywhere          anywhere          POLICE mode:pkt rate:64
burst:40 class:2
      0      0 POLICE      udp      swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere          udp dpts:dhcpv6-client:dhcpv6-server POLICE
mode:pkt rate:100 burst:100 class:2
      0      0 POLICE      tcp      swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere          tcp dpts:dhcpv6-client:dhcpv6-server POLICE
mode:pkt rate:100 burst:100 class:2
      0      0 POLICE      all      swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere          ADDRTYPE match dst-type LOCAL POLICE mode:pkt
rate:1000 burst:1000 class:0

```



```
      0      0 POLICE      all      swp+    any      anywhere
anywhere          ADDRTYPE match dst-type IPROUTER POLICE mode:
pkt rate:400 burst:100 class:0
      0      0 SETCLASS     all      swp+    any      anywhere
anywhere          SETCLASS class:0
Chain FORWARD (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in      out      source
destination
      0      0 DROP       all      swp+    any      ip6-mcastprefix/8
anywhere
      0      0 DROP       all      swp+    any      ::/128
anywhere
      0      0 DROP       all      swp+    any      ::ffff:0.0.0.0/96
anywhere
      0      0 DROP       all      swp+    any      localhost/128
anywhere
Chain OUTPUT (policy ACCEPT 5 packets, 408 bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in      out      source
destination
TABLE mangle :
Chain PREROUTING (policy ACCEPT 7 packets, 718 bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in      out      source
destination
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in      out      source
destination
Chain FORWARD (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in      out      source
destination
Chain OUTPUT (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in      out      source
destination
Chain POSTROUTING (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in      out      source
destination
TABLE raw :
Chain PREROUTING (policy ACCEPT 7 packets, 718 bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in      out      source
destination
Chain OUTPUT (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
  pkts bytes target      prot opt in      out      source
destination
-----
Listing rules of type ebtables:
-----
TABLE filter :
Bridge table: filter
Bridge chain: INPUT, entries: 16, policy: ACCEPT
-d BGA -i swp+ -j setclass --class 7 , pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-d BGA -j police --set-mode pkt --set-rate 2000 --set-burst 2000 ,
pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-d 1:80:c2:0:0:2 -i swp+ -j setclass --class 7 , pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
```

```

-d 1:80:c2:0:0:2 -j police --set-mode pkt --set-rate 2000 --set-burst
2000 , pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-d 1:80:c2:0:0:e -i swp+ -j setclass --class 6 , pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-d 1:80:c2:0:0:e -j police --set-mode pkt --set-rate 200 --set-burst
200 , pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-d 1:0:c:cc:cc:cc -i swp+ -j setclass --class 6 , pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-d 1:0:c:cc:cc:cc -j police --set-mode pkt --set-rate 200 --set-burst
200 , pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-p ARP -i swp+ -j setclass --class 2 , pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-p ARP -j police --set-mode pkt --set-rate 400 --set-burst 100 , pcnt
= 0 -- bcnt = 0
-d 1:0:c:cc:cc:cd -i swp+ -j setclass --class 7 , pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-d 1:0:c:cc:cc:cd -j police --set-mode pkt --set-rate 2000 --set-
burst 2000 , pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-p IPv4 -i swp+ -j ACCEPT , pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-p IPv6 -i swp+ -j ACCEPT , pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-i swp+ -j setclass --class 0 , pcnt = 0 -- bcnt = 0
-j police --set-mode pkt --set-rate 100 --set-burst 100 , pcnt = 0 --
bcnt = 0
Bridge chain: FORWARD, entries: 0, policy: ACCEPT
Bridge chain: OUTPUT, entries: 0, policy: ACCEPT

```

## IP Tables

Action/Value	Protocol/IP Address
Drop Destination IP: Any	Source IPv4: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 240.0.0.0/5</li> <li>• loopback/8</li> <li>• 224.0.0.0/4</li> <li>• 255.255.255.255</li> </ul>
Set class: 7 Police: Packet rate 2000 burst 2000 Source IP: Any Destination IP: Any	Protocol: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• UDP/BFD Echo</li> <li>• UDP/BFD Control</li> <li>• UDP BFD Multihop Control</li> <li>• OSPF</li> <li>• TCP/BGP (spt dpt 179)</li> <li>• TCP/MLAG (spt dpt 5342)</li> </ul>
Set Class: 6 Police: Rate 300 burst 100 Source IP: Any	Protocol: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• IGMP</li> </ul>



Action/Value	Protocol/IP Address
Destination IP: Any	
Set class: 2  Police: Rate 100 burst 40  Source IP : Any  Destination IP: Any	Protocol: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• ICMP</li></ul>
Set class: 2  Police: Rate 100 burst 100  Source IP: Any  Destination IP: Any	Protocol: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• UDP/bootpc, bootps</li></ul>
Set class: 3  Police: Rate 2000 burst:2000  Source IP: Any  Destination IP: Any	Protocol: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• UDP/LNV</li></ul>
Set class: 0  Police: Rate 1000 burst 1000  Source IP: Any  Destination IP: Any	ADDRTYPE match dst-type LOCAL <p><span style="color: yellow;">⚠️</span> LOCAL is any local address -&gt; Receiving a packet with a destination matching a local IP address on the switch will go to the CPU.</p>
Set class: 0  Police: Rate 400 burst 100  Source IP: Any  Destination IP: Any	ADDRTYPE match dst-type IPROUTER <p><span style="color: yellow;">⚠️</span> IPROUTER is any unresolved address -&gt; On a L2/L3 boundary receiving a packet from L3 and needs to go to CPU in order to ARP for the destination.</p>
Set class 0	All



Set class is internal to the switch - it does not set any precedence bits.



## IPv6 Tables

Action/Value	Protocol/IP Address
Drop	Source IPv6: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• ff00::/8</li><li>• ::</li><li>• ::ffff:0.0.0.0/96</li><li>• localhost</li></ul>
Set class: 7 Police: Packet rate 2000 burst 2000 Source IPv6: Any Destination IPv6: Any	Protocol: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• UDP/BFD Echo</li><li>• UDP/BFD Control</li><li>• UDP BFD Multihop Control</li><li>• OSPF</li><li>• TCP/BGP (spt dpt 179)</li></ul>
Set class: 6 Police: Packet Rte: 200 burst 100 Source IPv6: Any Destination IPv6: Any	Protocol: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Multicast Listener Query (MLD)</li><li>• Multicast Listener Report (MLD)</li><li>• Multicast Listener Done (MLD)</li><li>• Multicast Listener Report V2</li></ul>
Set class: 2 Police: Packet rate: 100 burst 100 Source IPv6: Any Destination IPv6: Any	Protocol: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• ipv6-icmp router-solicitation</li></ul>
Set class: 2 Police: Packet rate: 500 burst 500 Source IPv6: Any Destination IPv6: Any	Protocol: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• ipv6-icmp router-advertisement POLICE</li></ul>
Set class: 2	Protocol:

Action/Value	Protocol/IP Address
Police: Packet rate: 400 burst 400  Source IPv6: Any Destination IPv6: Any	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ipv6-icmp neighbour-solicitation</li> <li>• ipv6-icmp neighbour-advertisement</li> </ul>
Set class: 2  Police: Packet rate: 64 burst: 40  Source IPv6: Any Destination IPv6: Any	<p>Protocol:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ipv6 icmp</li> </ul>
Set class: 2  Police: Packet rate: 100 burst: 100  Source IPv6: Any Destination IPv6: Any	<p>Protocol:</p> <p>UDP/dhcpv6-client:dhcpv6-server (Spts &amp; dpts)</p>
Police: Packet rate: 1000 burst 1000  Source IPv6: Any Destination IPv6: Any	<p>ADDRTYPE match dst-type LOCAL</p> <div style="border: 2px solid yellow; padding: 10px;"> <p><span style="color: yellow;">⚠️</span> LOCAL is any local address -&gt; Receiving a packet with a destination matching a local IPv6 address on the switch will go to the CPU.</p> </div>
Set class: 0  Police: Packet rate: 400 burst 100	<p>ADDRTYPE match dst-type IPROUTER</p> <div style="border: 2px solid yellow; padding: 10px;"> <p><span style="color: yellow;">⚠️</span> IPROUTER is an unresolved address -&gt; On a l2/l3 boundary receiving a packet from L3 and needs to go to CPU in order to ARP for the destination.</p> </div>
Set class 0	All



Set class is internal to the switch - it does not set any precedence bits.



## EB Tables

Action/Value	Protocol/MAC Address
Set Class: 7 Police: packet rate: 2000 burst rate:2000 Any switchport input interface	BDPU LACP Cisco PVST
Set Class: 6 Police: packet rate: 200 burst rate: 200 Any switchport input interface	LLDP CDP
Set Class: 2 Police: packet rate: 400 burst rate: 100 Any switchport input interface	ARP
Catch All: Allow all traffic Any switchport input interface	IPv4 IPv6
Catch All (applied at end): Set class: 0 Police: packet rate 100 burst rate 100 Any switchport	ALL OTHER



Set class is internal to the switch. It does not set any precedence bits.

## Filtering Learned MAC Addresses

On Broadcom switches, a MAC address is learned on a bridge regardless of whether or not a received packet is dropped by an [ACL \(see page 137\)](#). This is due to how the hardware learns MAC addresses and occurs before the ACL lookup. This can be a security or resource problem as the MAC address table has the potential to get filled with bogus MAC addresses, so a malfunctioning host, network error, loop or malicious attack on a shared L2 platform can create an outage for other hosts if the same MAC address is learned on another port.

To prevent this from happening, Cumulus Linux filters frames before MAC learning occurs. Since the MAC addresses and their port/VLAN associations are known at configuration time, you can create static MAC addresses, then create ingress ACLs to whitelist traffic from these MAC addresses and drop traffic otherwise.





This feature is specific to switches on the Broadcom platform only; on Mellanox Spectrum switches, the input port ACL does not have these issues when learning MAC addresses.

Create a configuration similar to the following, where you associate a port and VLAN with a given MAC address, adding each one to the bridge:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge bridge vids 100,200,300
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge bridge pvid 1
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge bridge ports swp1-3
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge pre-up bridge fdb add 00:00:00:00:00:00:11 dev swp1 master static vlan 100
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge pre-up bridge fdb add 00:00:00:00:00:00:22 dev swp2 master static vlan 200
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge pre-up bridge fdb add 00:00:00:00:00:00:33 dev swp3 master static vlan 300
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration in the /etc/network/interfaces file:

```
auto swp1
iface swp1

auto swp2
iface swp2

auto swp3
iface swp3

auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports swp1 swp2 swp3
    bridge-pvid 1
    bridge-vids 100 200 300
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    pre-up bridge fdb add 00:00:00:00:00:11 dev swp1 master static
    vlan 100
    pre-up bridge fdb add 00:00:00:00:00:22 dev swp2 master static
    vlan 200
    pre-up bridge fdb add 00:00:00:00:00:33 dev swp3 master static
    vlan 300
```

Alternately, if you need to list too many MAC addresses, you can run a script to create the same configuration. For example, create a script called `macs.txt` and put in the `bridge fdb add` commands for each MAC address you need to configure:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/networks/macs.txt
```



```
#!/bin/bash
bridge fdb add 00:00:00:00:00:11 dev swp1 master static vlan 100
bridge fdb add 00:00:00:00:00:22 dev swp2 master static vlan 200
bridge fdb add 00:00:00:00:00:33 dev swp3 master static vlan 300
bridge fdb add 00:00:00:00:00:44 dev swp4 master static vlan 400
bridge fdb add 00:00:00:00:00:55 dev swp5 master static vlan 500
bridge fdb add 00:00:00:00:00:66 dev swp6 master static vlan 600
```

Then create the configuration using [NCLU](#) (see page 85):

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge bridge vids 100,200,300
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge bridge pvid 1
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge bridge ports swp1-3
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge pre-up /etc/networks/macs.txt
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```
auto swp1
iface swp1

auto swp2
iface swp2

auto swp3
iface swp3

auto swp4
iface swp4

auto swp5
iface swp5

auto swp6
iface swp6

auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports swp1 swp2 swp3 swp4 swp5 swp6
    bridge-pvid 1
    bridge-vids 100 200 300
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    pre-up bridge fdb add 00:00:00:00:00:11 dev swp1 master static
    vlan 100
    pre-up bridge fdb add 00:00:00:00:00:22 dev swp2 master static
    vlan 200
```

```
    pre-up bridge fdb add 00:00:00:00:00:33 dev swp3 master static
vlan 300
    pre-up bridge fdb add 00:00:00:00:00:44 dev swp4 master static
vlan 400
    pre-up bridge fdb add 00:00:00:00:00:55 dev swp5 master static
vlan 500
    pre-up bridge fdb add 00:00:00:00:00:66 dev swp6 master static
vlan 600
```

## Interactions with EVPN

If you are using [EVPN \(see page 466\)](#), local static MAC addresses added to the local FDB are exported as static MAC addresses to remote switches. Remote MAC addresses are added as MAC addresses to the remote FDB.

## Managing Application Daemons

You manage application daemons (services) in Cumulus Linux in the following ways:

- Identifying active listener ports
- Identifying daemons currently active or stopped
- Identifying boot time state of a specific daemon
- Disabling or enabling a specific daemon

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Using `systemd` and the `systemctl` Command (see page 183)
  - Understanding the `systemctl` Subcommands (see page 184)
  - Ensuring a Service Starts after Multiple Restarts (see page 184)
  - Keeping `systemd` Services from Hanging after Starting (see page 185)
- Identifying Active Listener Ports for IPv4 and IPv6 (see page 185)
- Identifying Daemons Currently Active or Stopped (see page 186)
- Identifying Essential Services (see page 190)

## Using `systemd` and the `systemctl` Command

In general, you manage services using `systemd` via the `systemctl` command. You use it with any service on the switch to start/stop/restart/reload/enable/disable/reenable or get the status of the service.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start | stop | restart | status |
reload | enable | disable | reenable SERVICENAME.service
```

For example to restart networking, run the command:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart networking.service
```



Unlike the `service` command in Debian Wheezy, the service name is written **after** the `systemctl` subcommand, not before it.

## Understanding the `systemctl` Subcommands

`systemctl` has a number of subcommands that perform a specific operation on a given daemon.

- **status**: Returns the status of the specified daemon.
- **start**: Starts the daemon.
- **stop**: Stops the daemon.
- **restart**: Stops, then starts the daemon, all the while maintaining state. So if there are dependent services or services that mark the restarted service as *Required*, the other services also get restarted. For example, running `systemctl restart frr.service` restarts any of the routing protocol daemons that are enabled and running, such as `bgpd` or `ospfd`.
- **reload**: Reloads a daemon's configuration.
- **enable**: Enables the daemon to start when the system boots, but does not start it unless you use the `systemctl start SERVICENAME.service` command or reboot the switch.
- **disable**: Disables the daemon, but does not stop it unless you use the `systemctl stop SERVICENAME.service` command or reboot the switch. A disabled daemon can still be started or stopped.
- **reenable**: Disables, then enables a daemon. You might need to do this so that any new *Wants* or *WantedBy* lines create the symlinks necessary for ordering. This has no side effects on other daemons.

## Ensuring a Service Starts after Multiple Restarts

By default, `systemd` is configured to try to restart a particular service only a certain number of times within a given interval before the service fails to start at all. The settings for this are stored in the service script. The settings are `StartLimitInterval` (which defaults to 10 seconds) and `StartBurstLimit` (which defaults to 5 attempts), but many services override these defaults, sometimes with much longer times. `switchd.service`, for example, sets `StartLimitInterval=10m` and `StartBurstLimit=3`, which means if you restart `switchd` more than 3 times in 10 minutes, it will not start.

When the restart fails for this reason, a message similar to the following appears:

```
Job for switchd.service failed. See 'systemctl status switchd.service' and 'journalctl -xn' for details.
```

And `systemctl status switchd.service` shows output similar to:

```
Active: failed (Result: start-limit) since Thu 2016-04-07 21:55:14  
UTC; 15s ago
```



To clear this error, run `sudo systemctl reset-failed switchd.service`. If you know you are going to restart frequently (multiple times within the `StartLimitInterval`), you can run the same command before you issue the restart request. This also applies to stop followed by start.

## Keeping systemd Services from Hanging after Starting

If you start, restart or reload any `systemd` service that could be started from another `systemd` service, you must use the `--no-block` option with `systemctl`. Otherwise, that service or even the switch itself may hang after starting or restarting.

## Identifying Active Listener Ports for IPv4 and IPv6

You can identify the active listener ports under both IPv4 and IPv6 using the `netstat` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo netstat -nlp --inet --inet6
Active Internet connections (only servers)
Proto Recv-Q Send-Q Local Address           Foreign Address     State       PID/Program name
tcp        0      0 0.0.0.0:53              0.0.0.0:*          LISTEN      444/dnsmasq
tcp        0      0 0.0.0.0:22              0.0.0.0:*          LISTEN      874/sshd
tcp6       0      0 ::::53                 ::::*               LISTEN      444/dnsmasq
tcp6       0      0 ::::22                 ::::*               LISTEN      874/sshd
udp        0      0 0.0.0.0:28450           0.0.0.0:             *          839/dhclient
udp        0      0 0.0.0.0:53              0.0.0.0:             *          444/dnsmasq
udp        0      0 0.0.0.0:68              0.0.0.0:             *          839/dhclient
udp        0      0 192.168.0.42:123         0.0.0.0:             *          907/ntpd
udp        0      0 127.0.0.1:123            0.0.0.0:             *          907/ntpd
udp        0      0 0.0.0.0:123             0.0.0.0:             *          907/ntpd
udp        0      0 0.0.0.0:4784            0.0.0.0:             *          909/ptmd
udp        0      0 0.0.0.0:3784            0.0.0.0:             *          909/ptmd
udp        0      0 0.0.0.0:3785            0.0.0.0:             *          909/ptmd
udp6       0      0 ::::58352              ::::                *          839/dhclient
udp6       0      0 ::::53                 ::::                *          444/dnsmasq
udp6       0      0 fe80::a200:ff:fe00::123  ::::                *          907/ntpd
```

```
udp6      0      0 ::1:123          :::::907/ntpd
*         0      0 ::::123          :::::907/ntpd
udp6      0      0 ::::4784         :::::909/ptmd
*         0      0 ::::3784         :::::909/ptmd
```

## Identifying Daemons Currently Active or Stopped

To determine which daemons are currently active or stopped, run `cl-service-summary`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cl-service-summary
Service cron           enabled   active
Service ssh            enabled   active
Service syslog          enabled   active
Service neighmgrp       enabled   active
Service clagd           enabled   active
Service lldpd           enabled   active
Service mstpd           enabled   active
Service poed            enabled   inactive
Service portwd          enabled   inactive
Service ptmd            enabled   active
Service pwmd            enabled   active
Service smond           enabled   active
Service switchd          enabled   active
Service vxrd             disabled  inactive
Service vxsnd            disabled  inactive
Service bgpd             disabled  inactive
Service isisd             disabled  inactive
Service ospf6d           disabled  inactive
Service ospfd            disabled  inactive
Service rdnbrd           disabled  inactive
Service ripd             disabled  inactive
Service ripngd           disabled  inactive
Service zebra            disabled  inactive
```

You can also run `systemctl list-unit-files --type service` to list all services on the switch and see which ones are enabled:

[Click here to see output of this command ...](#)

```
cumulus@switch:~$ systemctl list-unit-files --type service
UNIT FILE                                STATE
aclinit.service                            enabled
acltool.service                            enabled
acpid.service                             disabled
arp_refresh.service                         enabled
```



auditd.service	enabled
autovt@.service	disabled
bootlog.service	enabled
bootlogd.service	masked
bootlogs.service	masked
bootmisc.service	masked
checkfs.service	masked
checkroot-bootclean.service	masked
checkroot.service	masked
clagd.service	enabled
clcmd.service	enabled
console-getty.service	disabled
console-shell.service	disabled
container-getty@.service	static
cron.service	enabled
cryptdisks-early.service	masked
cryptdisks.service	masked
cumulus-aclcheck.service	static
cumulus-core.service	static
cumulus-fastfailover.service	enabled
cumulus-firstboot.service	disabled
cumulus-platform.service	enabled
cumulus-support.service	static
dbus-org.freedesktop.hostname1.service	static
dbus-org.freedesktop.locale1.service	static
dbus-org.freedesktop.login1.service	static
dbus-org.freedesktop.machine1.service	static
dbus-org.freedesktop.timedate1.service	static
dbus.service	static
debian-fixup.service	static
debug-shell.service	disabled
decode-syseeprom.service	static
dhcpd.service	disabled
dhcpd6.service	disabled
dhcpd6@.service	disabled
dhcpd@.service	disabled
dhcrelay.service	enabled
dhcrelay6.service	disabled
dhcrelay6@.service	disabled
dhcrelay@.service	disabled
dm-event.service	disabled
dns-watcher.service	disabled
dnsmasq.service	enabled
emergency.service	static
fuse.service	masked
getty-static.service	static
getty@.service	enabled
halt-local.service	static
halt.service	masked
heartbeat-failed@.service	static
hostname.service	masked
hsflowd.service	enabled

hsflowd.service	enabled
hwclock-save.service	enabled
hwclock.service	masked
hwclockfirst.service	masked
ifup@.service	static
initrd-cleanup.service	static
initrd-parse-etc.service	static
initrd-switch-root.service	static
initrd-udevadm-cleanup-db.service	static
killprocs.service	masked
kmod-static-nodes.service	static
kmod.service	static
ledmgrd.service	enabled
lldpd.service	enabled
lm-sensors.service	enabled
lvm2-activation-early.service	enabled
lvm2-activation.service	enabled
lvm2-lvmetad.service	static
lvm2-monitor.service	enabled
lvm2-pvscan@.service	static
lvm2.service	disabled
module-init-tools.service	static
motd.service	masked
mountall-bootclean.service	masked
mountall.service	masked
mountdevsubfs.service	masked
mountkernfs.service	masked
mountnfs-bootclean.service	masked
mountnfs.service	masked
mstpd.service	enabled
netd.service	enabled
netq-agent.service	disabled
networking.service	enabled
ntp.service	enabled
ntp@.service	disabled
openvswitch-vtep.service	disabled
phy-ucode-update.service	enabled
portwd.service	enabled
procps.service	static
ptmd.service	enabled
pwmd.service	enabled
frr.service	enabled
quotaon.service	static
rc-local.service	static
rc.local.service	static
rdnbrd.service	disabled
reboot.service	masked
rescue.service	static
rmnlogin.service	masked
rsyslog.service	enabled
screen-cleanup.service	masked
sendsigs.service	masked



serial-getty@.service	disabled
single.service	masked
smond.service	enabled
snmpd.service	disabled
snmpd@.service	disabled
snmptrapd.service	disabled
snmptrapd@.service	disabled
ssh.service	enabled
ssh@.service	disabled
sshd.service	enabled
stop-bootlogd-single.service	masked
stop-bootlogd.service	masked
stopssh.service	enabled
sudo.service	disabled
switchd-diag.service	static
switchd.service	enabled
syslog.service	enabled
sysmonitor.service	static
systemd-ask-password-console.service	static
systemd-ask-password-wall.service	static
systemd-backlight@.service	static
systemd-binfmt.service	static
systemd-fsck-root.service	static
systemd-fsck@.service	static
systemd-halt.service	static
systemd-hibernate.service	static
systemd-hostnamed.service	static
systemd-hybrid-sleep.service	static
systemd-initctl.service	static
systemd-journal-flush.service	static
systemd-journald.service	static
systemd-kexec.service	static
systemd-located.service	static
systemd-logind.service	static
systemd-machined.service	static
systemd-modules-load.service	static
systemd-networkd-wait-online.service	disabled
systemd-networkd.service	disabled
systemd-nspawn@.service	disabled
systemd-poweroff.service	static
systemd-quotacheck.service	static
systemd-random-seed.service	static
systemd-readahead-collect.service	disabled
systemd-readahead-done.service	static
systemd-readahead-drop.service	disabled
systemd-readahead-replay.service	disabled
systemd-reboot.service	static
systemd-remount-fs.service	static
systemd-resolved.service	disabled
systemd-rfkill@.service	static
systemd-setup-dgram-qlen.service	static
systemd-shutdownd.service	static

```

systemd-suspend.service           static
systemd-sysctl.service           static
systemd-timedated.service        static
systemd-timesyncd.service        disabled
systemd-tmpfiles-clean.service   static
systemd-tmpfiles-setup-dev.service static
systemd-tmpfiles-setup.service   static
systemd-udev-settle.service     static
systemd-udev-trigger.service    static
systemd-udevd.service          static
systemd-update-utmp-runlevel.service static
systemd-update-utmp.service     static
systemd-user-sessions.service   static
udev-finish.service             static
udev.service                     static
umountfs.service                masked
umountnfs.service               masked
umountroot.service              masked
update-ports.service            enabled
urandom.service                 static
user@.service                   static
uuidd.service                   static
vboxadd-service.service         enabled
vboxadd-x11.service             enabled
vboxadd.service                 enabled
vxrd.service                    disabled
vxsnd.service                   disabled
wd_keepalive.service            enabled
x11-common.service              masked
ztp-init.service                enabled
ztp.service                     disabled
191 unit files listed.
lines 147-194/194 (END)

```

## Identifying Essential Services

If you need to know which services are required to run when the switch boots, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl list-dependencies --before basic.target
```

To see which services are needed for networking, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl list-dependencies --after network.target
network.target
```



```
networking.service  
switchd.service  
wd_keepalive.service  
network-pre.target
```

To identify the services needed for a multi-user environment, run:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo systemctl list-dependencies --before multi-user.  
target  
multi-user.target
```

```
bootlog.service  
systemd-readahead-done.service  
systemd-readahead-done.timer  
systemd-update-utmp-runlevel.service  
graphical.target  
systemd-update-utmp-runlevel.service
```

## Configuring switchd

switchd is the daemon at the heart of Cumulus Linux. It communicates between the switch and Cumulus Linux, and all the applications running on Cumulus Linux.

The switchd configuration is stored in `/etc/cumulus/switchd.conf`.



Versions of Cumulus Linux prior to 2.1 stored the `switchd` configuration at `/etc/default/switchd`.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- [The switchd File System \(see page 191\)](#)
- [Configuring switchd Parameters \(see page 193\)](#)
- [Restarting switchd \(see page 193\)](#)

## The switchd File System

switchd also exports a file system, mounted on `/cumulus/switchd`, that presents all the switchd configuration options as a series of files arranged in a tree structure. You can see the contents by parsing the `switchd` tree; run `tree /cumulus/switchd`. The output below is for a switch with one switch port configured:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo tree /cumulus/switchd/
/cumulus/switchd/
|-- config
|   |-- acl
|   |   |-- non_atomic_update_mode
|   |   `-- optimize_hw
|   |-- arp
|   |   `-- next_hops
|   |-- buf_util
|   |   |-- measure_interval
|   |   `-- poll_interval
|   |-- coalesce
|   |   |-- reducer
|   |   `-- timeout
|   |-- disable_internal_restart
|   |-- ignore_non_swps
|   |-- interface
|   |   |-- swp1
|   |   |   `-- storm_control
|   |   |       |-- broadcast
|   |   |       |-- multicast
|   |   |       `-- unknown_unicast
|   |-- logging
|   |-- route
|   |   |-- host_max_percent
|   |   `-- table
|   '-- stats
|       `-- poll_interval
|-- ctrl
|   |-- acl
|   |-- hal
|   |   `-- resync
|   |-- logger
|   |-- netlink
|   |   `-- resync
|   |-- resync
|   '-- sample
|       `-- ulog_channel
|-- run
|   '-- route_info
|       |-- ecmp_nh
|       |   |-- count
|       |   |-- max
|       |   `-- max_per_route
|       '-- host
|           |-- count
|           |-- count_v4
|           |-- count_v6
|           `-- max
|       '-- mac
|           |-- count
|           `-- max
```

```

`-- route
|   -- count_0
|   -- count_1
|   -- count_total
|   -- count_v4
|   -- count_v6
|   -- mask_limit
|   -- max_0
|   -- max_1
|   -- max_total
`-- version

```

## Configuring switchd Parameters

You can use `cl-cfg` to configure many `switchd` parameters at runtime (like ACLs, interfaces, and route table utilization), which minimizes disruption to your running switch. However, some options are read only and cannot be configured at runtime.

For example, to see data related to routes, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-cfg -a switchd | grep route
route.table = 254
route.host_max_percent = 50
cumulus@cumulus:~$
```

To modify the configuration, run `cl-cfg -w`. For example, to set the buffer utilization measurement interval to 1 minute, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-cfg -w switchd buf_util.measure_interval=1
```

To verify that the value changed, use `grep`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cl-cfg -a switchd | grep buf
buf_util.poll_interval = 0
buf_util.measure_interval = 1
```



You can get some of this information by running `cl-resource-query`; though you cannot update the `switchd` configuration with it.

## Restarting switchd

Whenever you modify any `switchd` hardware configuration file (typically changing any `*.conf` file that requires making a change to the switching hardware, like `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf`), you must restart `switchd` for the change to take effect:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart switchd.service
```



You do not have to restart the `switchd` service when you update a network interface configuration (that is, edit `/etc/network/interfaces`).



Restarting `switchd` causes all network ports to reset in addition to resetting the switch hardware configuration.

## Power over Ethernet - PoE

Cumulus Linux supports Power over Ethernet (PoE) and PoE+, so certain Cumulus Linux switches can supply power from Ethernet switch ports to enabled devices over the Ethernet cables that connect them. Power over Ethernet (PoE) is capable of powering devices up to 15W, while PoE+ can power devices up to 30W.

The [currently supported platform](#) is the Edge-Core AS4610-54P, which supports PoE and PoE+ and configuration over Ethernet layer 2 LLDP for power negotiation.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- [How It Works \(see page 194\)](#)
  - [About Link State and PoE State \(see page 195\)](#)
- [Configuring PoE \(see page 195\)](#)
  - [poectl Arguments \(see page 198\)](#)
- [Troubleshooting PoE and PoE+ \(see page 200\)](#)
  - [Verify the Link Is Up \(see page 200\)](#)
  - [View LLDP Information Using llpdcli \(see page 200\)](#)
  - [View LLDP Information Using tcpdump \(see page 201\)](#)
  - [Logging poed Events in syslog \(see page 202\)](#)

### How It Works

PoE functionality is provided by the `cumulus-poe` package. When a powered device is connected to the switch via an Ethernet cable:

- If the available power is greater than the power required by the connected device, power is supplied to the switch port, and the device powers on
- If available power is less than the power required by the connected device and the switch port's priority is less than the port priority set on all powered ports, power is **not** supplied to the port



- If available power is less than the power required by the connected device and the switch port's priority is greater than the priority of a currently powered port, power is removed from lower priority port(s) and power is supplied to the port
- If the total consumed power exceeds the configured power limit of the power source, low priority ports are turned off. In the case of a tie, the port with the lower port number gets priority

Power is available as follows:

PSU 1	PSU 2	PoE Power Budget
920W	X	750W
X	920W	750W
920W	920W	1650W

The AS4610-54P has an LED on the front panel to indicate PoE status:

- Green: The `poed` daemon is running and no errors are detected
- Yellow: One or more errors are detected or the `poed` daemon is not running

## About Link State and PoE State

Link state and PoE state are completely independent of each other. When a link is brought down on a particular port using `ip link <port> down`, power on that port is not turned off; however, LLDP negotiation is not possible.

## Configuring PoE

You use the `poectl` command utility to configure PoE on a [switch that supports](#) the feature. You can:

- Enable or disable PoE for a given switch port
- Set a switch port's PoE priority to one of three values: *low*, *high* or *critical*

The PoE configuration resides in `/etc/cumulus/poe.conf`. The file lists all the switch ports, whether PoE is enabled for those ports and the priority for each port.

Sample `poe.conf` file ...

```
[enable]
swp1 = enable
swp2 = enable
swp3 = enable
swp4 = enable
swp5 = enable
swp6 = enable
swp7 = enable
swp8 = enable
swp9 = enable
swp10 = enable
swp11 = enable
```



```
swp12 = enable
swp13 = enable
swp14 = enable
swp15 = enable
swp16 = enable
swp17 = enable
swp18 = enable
swp19 = enable
swp20 = enable
swp21 = enable
swp22 = enable
swp23 = enable
swp24 = enable
swp25 = enable
swp26 = enable
swp27 = enable
swp28 = enable
swp29 = enable
swp30 = enable
swp31 = enable
swp32 = enable
swp33 = enable
swp34 = enable
swp35 = enable
swp36 = enable
swp37 = enable
swp38 = enable
swp39 = enable
swp40 = enable
swp41 = enable
swp42 = enable
swp43 = enable
swp44 = enable
swp45 = enable
swp46 = enable
swp47 = enable
swp48 = enable
[priority]
swp1 = low
swp2 = low
swp3 = low
swp4 = low
swp5 = low
swp6 = low
swp7 = low
swp8 = low
swp9 = low
swp10 = low
swp11 = low
swp12 = low
swp13 = low
swp14 = low
```

```
swp15 = low
swp16 = low
swp17 = low
swp18 = low
swp19 = low
swp20 = low
swp21 = low
swp22 = low
swp23 = low
swp24 = low
swp25 = low
swp26 = low
swp27 = low
swp28 = low
swp29 = low
swp30 = low
swp31 = low
swp32 = low
swp33 = low
swp34 = low
swp35 = low
swp36 = low
swp37 = low
swp38 = low
swp39 = low
swp40 = low
swp41 = low
swp42 = low
swp43 = low
swp44 = low
swp45 = low
swp46 = low
swp47 = low
swp48 = low
```

By default, PoE and PoE+ are enabled on all Ethernet/1G switch ports, and these ports are set with a low priority. Switch ports can have low, high or critical priority.

There is no additional configuration for PoE+.

To change the priority for one or more switch ports, run `poectl -p swp# [low|high|critical]`. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo poectl -p swp1-swp5,swp7 high
```

To disable PoE for one or more ports, run `poectl -d [port_numbers]`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo poectl -d swp1-swp5,swp7
```

To display PoE information for a set of switch ports, run `poectl -i [port_numbers]`:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo poectl -i swp10-swp13
Port          Status      Allocated   Priority  PD type
PD class     Voltage    Current    Power
-----  -----  -----  -----
-----  -----  -----  -----
swp10  connected      negotiating low       IEEE802.3at
4        53.5 V      25 mA     3.9 W
swp11  searching      n/a        low       IEEE802.3at
none    0.0 V         0 mA      0.0 W
swp12  connected      n/a        low       IEEE802.3at
2        53.5 V      25 mA     1.4 W
swp13  connected      51.0 W    low       IEEE802.3at
4        53.6 V      72 mA     3.8 W
```

The **Status** can be one of the following:

- **searching:** PoE is enabled but no device has been detected.
- **disabled:** The PoE port has been configured as disabled.
- **connected:** A powered device is connected and receiving power.
- **power-denied:** There is insufficient PoE power available to enable the connected device.

The **Allocated** column displays how much PoE power has been allocated to the port, which can be one of the following:

- **n/a:** No device is connected or the connected device does not support LLDP negotiation.
- **negotiating:** An LLDP-capable device is connected and is negotiating for PoE power.
- **XX.X W:** An LLDP-capable device has negotiated for XX.X watts of power (for example, 51.0 watts for swp13 above).

To see all the PoE information for a switch, run `poectl -s`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ poectl -s
System power:
  Total:      730.0 W
  Used:       11.0 W
  Available:  719.0 W
Connected ports:
  swp11, swp24, swp27, swp48
```

The set commands (priority, enable, disable) either succeed silently or display an error message if the command fails.

## *poectl Arguments*

The `poectl` command takes the following arguments:



Argument	Description
-h, --help	Show this help message and exit
-i, --port-info PORT_LIST	Returns detailed information for the specified ports. You can specify a range of ports. For example: <code>-i swp1-swp5,swp10</code> <div style="border: 2px solid yellow; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"><p><span style="color: yellow;">⚠</span> On an Edge-Core AS4610-54P switch, the voltage reported by the <code>poectl -i</code> command and measured through a power meter connected to the device varies by 5V. The current and power readings are correct and no difference is seen for them.</p></div>
-a, --all	Returns PoE status and detailed information for all ports.
-p, --priority PORT_LIST PRIORITY	Sets priority for the specified ports: low, high, critical.
-d, --disable-ports PORT_LIST	Disables PoE operation on the specified ports.
-e, --enable-ports PORT_LIST	Enables PoE operation on the specified ports.
-s, --system	Returns PoE status for the entire switch.
-r, --reset PORT_LIST	Performs a hardware reset on the specified ports. Use this if one or more ports are stuck in an error state. This does not reset any configuration settings for the specified ports.
-v, --version	Displays version information.
-j, --json	Displays output in JSON format.
--save	Saves the current configuration. The saved configuration is automatically loaded on system boot.
--load	Loads and applies the saved configuration.



## Troubleshooting PoE and PoE+

You can troubleshoot PoE and PoE+ using the following utilities and files:

- `poectl -s`, as described above.
- The Cumulus Linux `cl-support` script, which includes PoE-related output from `poed.conf`, `syslog`, `poectl --diag-info` and `lldpctl`.
- `lldpcli show neighbors ports <swp> protocol lldp hidden details`
- `tcpdump -v -v -i <swp> ether proto 0x88cc`
- The contents of the PoE/PoE+ `/etc/lldpd.d/poed.conf` configuration file, as described above.

### Verify the Link Is Up

LLDP requires network connectivity, so verify that the link is up.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show interface swp20
  Name      MAC                Speed      MTU    Mode
--  -----  -----
UP  swp20   44:38:39:00:00:04  1G        1500  Access/L2
```

### View LLDP Information Using `lldpcli`

You can run `lldpcli` to view the LLDP information that has been received on a switch port. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo lldpcli show neighbors ports swp20 protocol
lldp hidden details
-----
-----
LLDP neighbors:
-----
-----
Interface:      swp20, via: LLDP, RID: 2, Time: 0 day, 00:03:34
  Chassis:
    ChassisID:      mac 68:c9:0b:25:54:7c
    SysName:        ihm-ubuntu
    SysDescr:       Ubuntu 14.04.2 LTS Linux 3.14.4+ #1 SMP Thu Jun 26
00:54:44 UTC 2014 armv7l
    MgmtIP:         fe80::6ac9:bff:fe25:547c
    Capability:    Bridge, off
    Capability:    Router, off
    Capability:    Wlan, off
    Capability:    Station, on
  Port:
    PortID:        mac 68:c9:0b:25:54:7c
    PortDescr:     eth0
    PMD autoneg:   supported: yes, enabled: yes
    Adv:           10Base-T, HD: yes, FD: yes
```



```
Adv: 100Base-TX, HD: yes, FD: yes
MAU oper type: 100BaseTXFD - 2 pair category 5 UTP, full duplex
mode
MDI Power: supported: yes, enabled: yes, pair control: no
Device type: PD
Power pairs: spare
Class: class 4
Power type: 2
Power Source: Primary power source
Power Priority: low
PD requested power Value: 51000
PSE allocated power Value: 51000
UnknownTLVs:
TLV: OUI: 00,01,42, SubType: 1, Len: 1 05
TLV: OUI: 00,01,42, SubType: 1, Len: 1 0D
```

## *View LLDP Information Using tcpdump*

You can use `tcpdump` to view the LLDP frames being transmitted and received. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo tcpdump -v -v -i swp20 ether proto 0x88cc
tcpdump: listening on swp20, link-type EN10MB (Ethernet), capture
size 262144 bytes
18:41:47.559022 LLDP, length 211
    Chassis ID TLV (1), length 7
        Subtype MAC address (4): 00:30:ab:f2:d7:a5 (oui Unknown)
        0x0000: 0400 30ab f2d7 a5
    Port ID TLV (2), length 6
        Subtype Interface Name (5): swp20
        0x0000: 0573 7770 3230
    Time to Live TLV (3), length 2: TTL 120s
        0x0000: 0078
    System Name TLV (5), length 13: dni-3048up-09
        0x0000: 646e 692d 3330 3438 7570 2d30 39
    System Description TLV (6), length 68
        Cumulus Linux version 3.0.1~1466303042.2265c10 running on dni
3048up
        0x0000: 4375 6d75 6c75 7320 4c69 6e75 7820 7665
        0x0010: 7273 696f 6e20 332e 302e 317e 3134 3636
        0x0020: 3330 3330 3432 2e32 3236 3563 3130 2072
        0x0030: 756e 6e69 6e67 206f 6e20 646e 6920 3330
        0x0040: 3438 7570
    System Capabilities TLV (7), length 4
        System Capabilities [Bridge, Router] (0x0014)
        Enabled Capabilities [Router] (0x0010)
        0x0000: 0014 0010
    Management Address TLV (8), length 12
```

```

Management Address length 5, AFI IPv4 (1): 10.0.3.190
Interface Index Interface Numbering (2): 2
0x0000: 0501 0a00 03be 0200 0000 0200
Management Address TLV (8), length 24
Management Address length 17, AFI IPv6 (2): fe80::230:abff:fef2:
d7a5
    Interface Index Interface Numbering (2): 2
    0x0000: 1102 fe80 0000 0000 0000 0230 abff fef2
    0x0010: d7a5 0200 0000 0200
    Port Description TLV (4), length 5: swp20
    0x0000: 7377 7032 30
    Organization specific TLV (127), length 9: OUI IEEE 802.3 Private
(0x00120f)
        Link aggregation Subtype (3)
            aggregation status [supported], aggregation port ID 0
            0x0000: 0012 0f03 0100 0000 00
        Organization specific TLV (127), length 9: OUI IEEE 802.3 Private
(0x00120f)
        MAC/PHY configuration/status Subtype (1)
            autonegotiation [supported, enabled] (0x03)
            PMD autoneg capability [10BASE-T fdx, 100BASE-TX fdx,
1000BASE-T fdx] (0x2401)
            MAU type 100BASEFX fdx (0x0012)
            0x0000: 0012 0f01 0324 0100 12
        Organization specific TLV (127), length 12: OUI IEEE 802.3
Private (0x00120f)
        Power via MDI Subtype (2)
            MDI power support [PSE, supported, enabled], power pair
spare, power class class4
            0x0000: 0012 0f02 0702 0513 01fe 01fe
        Organization specific TLV (127), length 5: OUI Unknown (0x000142)
        0x0000: 0001 4201 0d
        Organization specific TLV (127), length 5: OUI Unknown (0x000142)
        0x0000: 0001 4201 01
    End TLV (0), length 0

```

## *Logging poed Events in syslog*

The poed service logs the following events to syslog:

- When a switch provides power to a powered device
- When a device that was receiving power is removed
- When the power available to the switch changes
- Errors



## Configuring a Global Proxy

You configure [global HTTP and HTTPS proxies](#) in the `/etc/profile.d/` directory of Cumulus Linux. To do so, set the `http_proxy` and `https_proxy` variables, which tells the switch the address of the proxy server to use to fetch URLs on the command line. This is useful for programs such as `apt/apt-get`, `curl` and `wget`, which can all use this proxy.

1. In a terminal, create a new file in the `/etc/profile.d/` directory. In the code example below, the file is called `proxy.sh`, and is created using the text editor `nano`.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nano /etc/profile.d/proxy.sh
```

2. Add a line to the file to configure either an HTTP or an HTTPS proxy, or both:

- HTTP proxy:

```
http_proxy=http://myproxy.domain.com:8080  
export http_proxy
```

- HTTPS proxy:

```
https_proxy=https://myproxy.domain.com:8080  
export https_proxy
```

3. Create a file in the `/etc/apt/apt.conf.d` directory and add the following lines to the file for acquiring the HTTP and HTTPS proxies; the example below uses `http_proxy` as the file name:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nano /etc/apt/apt.conf.d/http_proxy  
Acquire::http::Proxy "http://myproxy.domain.com:8080";  
Acquire::https::Proxy "https://myproxy.domain.com:8080";
```

4. Add the proxy addresses to `/etc/wgetrc`; you may have to uncomment the `http_proxy` and `https_proxy` lines:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nano /etc/wgetrc  
...  
  
https_proxy = https://myproxy.domain.com:8080  
http_proxy = http://myproxy.domain.com:8080  
  
...
```

5. Run the `source` command, to execute the file in the current environment:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ source /etc/profile.d/proxy.sh
```

The proxy is now configured. The echo command can be used to confirm a proxy is set up correctly:

- HTTP proxy:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ echo $http_proxy  
http://myproxy.domain.com:8080
```

- HTTPS proxy:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ echo $https_proxy  
https://myproxy.domain.com:8080
```

## Related Information

- Setting up an apt package cache

## HTTP API

Cumulus Linux 3.4+ implements an HTTP application programming interface to [OpenStack ML2 driver](#) (see page 918) and [NCLU](#) (see page 85). Rather than accessing a Cumulus Linux host with SSH, you can interact with a server with a HTTP client, such as cURL, HTTPie or a web browser.



The HTTP API service is enabled by default on chassis hardware only. However, the associated server is configured to only listen to traffic originating from within the chassis.

The service is not enabled by default on non-chassis hardware.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Getting Started (see page 204)
- Configuration (see page 205)
  - Enable External Traffic on a Chassis (see page 206)
  - IP and Port Settings (see page 206)
- Security (see page 206)
  - Authentication (see page 206)
  - Transport Layer Security (see page 207)
- cURL Examples (see page 207)



## Getting Started



If you are upgrading from a version of Cumulus Linux earlier than 3.4.0, the supporting software for the API may not be installed. Install the required software with the following command.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo apt-get install python-cumulus-restapi
```

To enable the HTTP API service, run the following `systemd` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable restserver
```



If you are running Cumulus Linux 3.5.0 **only**, you also need to enable the `restserver-gunicorn` service:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable restserver-gunicorn
```

Use the `systemctl start` and `systemctl stop` commands to start/stop the HTTP API service:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start restserver
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl stop restserver
```



Each service runs as a background daemon once started.

## Configuration

There are two configuration files associated with the HTTP API services:

- `/etc/nginx/sites-available/nginx-restapi.conf`
- `/etc/nginx/sites-available/nginx-restapi-chassis.conf`

The first configuration file is used for non-chassis hardware; the second, for chassis hardware.

Generally, only the configuration file relevant to your hardware needs to be edited, as the associated services determine the appropriate configuration file to use at run time.



## Enable External Traffic on a Chassis

The HTTP API services are configured to listen on port 8080 for chassis hardware by default. However, only HTTP traffic originating from internal link local management IPv6s will be allowed. To configure the services to also accept HTTP requests originating from external sources:

1. Open `/etc/nginx/sites-available/nginx-restapi-chassis.conf` in a text editor.
2. Uncomment the `server` block lines near the end of the file.
3. Change the port on the now uncommented `listen` line if the default value, 8088, is not the preferred port, and save the configuration file.
4. Verify the configuration file is still valid:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nginx -c /etc/nginx/sites-available/nginx-restapi-chassis.conf -t
```

If the configuration file is not valid, return to step 1; review any changes that were made, and correct the errors.

5. Restart the daemons:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart restserver
```

## IP and Port Settings

The IP:port combinations that services listen to can be modified by changing the parameters of the `listen` directive(s). By default, `nginx-restapi.conf` has only one `listen` parameter, whereas `/etc/nginx/sites-available/nginx-restapi-chassis.conf` has two independently configurable `server` blocks, each with a `listen` directive. One server block is for external traffic, and the other for internal traffic.



All URLs must use HTTPS, rather than HTTP.

For more information on the `listen` directive, refer to the [NGINX documentation](#).



Do not set the same listening port for internal and external chassis traffic.

## Security

### Authentication

The default configuration requires all HTTP requests from external sources (not internal switch traffic) to set the HTTP Basic Authentication header.



The user and password should correspond to a user on the host switch.

## Transport Layer Security

All traffic must be secured in transport using TLSv1.2 by default. Cumulus Linux contains a self-signed certificate and private key used server-side in this application so that it works out of the box, but Cumulus Networks recommends you use your own certificates and keys. Certificates must be in the PEM format.

For step by step documentation for generating self-signed certificates and keys, and installing them to the switch, refer to the [Ubuntu Certificates and Security documentation](#).



Do not copy the `cumulus.pem` or `cumulus.key` files. After installation, edit the "ssl\_certificate" and "ssl\_certificate\_key" values in the configuration file for your hardware.

## cURL Examples

This section contains several example cURL commands for sending HTTP requests to a non-chassis host. The following settings are used for these examples:

- Username: `user`
- Password: `pw`
- IP: `192.168.0.32`
- Port: `8080`



Requests for NCLU require setting the Content-Type request header to be set to `application/json`.



cURL's `-k` flag is necessary when the server uses a self-signed certificate. This is the default configuration (see the [Security section \(see page 206\)](#)). To display the response headers, include `-D` flag in the command.

To retrieve a list of all available HTTP endpoints:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ curl -X GET -k -u user:pw https://192.168.0.32:8080
```

To run `net show counters` on the host as a remote procedure call:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ curl -X POST -k -u user:pw -H "Content-Type: application/json" -d '{"cmd": "show counters"}' https://192.168.0.32:8080/nclu/v1/rpc
```

To add a bridge using ML2:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ curl -X PUT -k -u user:pw https://192.168.0.32:8080  
/ml2/v1/bridge/"br1"/200
```



# Interface Configuration and Management

`ifupdown` is the network interface manager for Cumulus Linux. Cumulus Linux 2.1 and later uses an updated version of this tool, `ifupdown2`.

For more information on network interfaces, see [Layer 1 and Switch Port Attributes \(see page 225\)](#).



By default, `ifupdown` is quiet; use the verbose option `-v` when you want to know what is going on when bringing an interface down or up.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Basic Commands (see page 209)
  - Using NCLU to Set the Admin State of an Interface (see page 210)
- ifupdown2 Interface Classes (see page 210)
  - Bringing All auto Interfaces Up or Down (see page 211)
- Configuring a Loopback Interface (see page 212)
- ifupdown Behavior with Child Interfaces (see page 212)
- ifupdown2 Interface Dependencies (see page 213)
  - ifup Handling of Upper (Parent) Interfaces (see page 216)
- Configuring IP Addresses (see page 217)
  - Specifying IP Address Scope (see page 218)
  - Purging Existing IP Addresses on an Interface (see page 219)
- Specifying User Commands (see page 220)
- Sourcing Interface File Snippets (see page 221)
- Using Globs for Port Lists (see page 221)
- Using Templates (see page 222)
  - Commenting out Mako Templates (see page 223)
- Adding Descriptions to Interfaces (see page 223)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 224)
- Related Information (see page 225)

## Basic Commands

To bring up an interface or apply changes to an existing interface, run:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifup <ifname>
```

To bring down a single interface, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifdown <ifname>
```

**i** `ifdown` always deletes logical interfaces after bringing them down. Use the `--admin-state` option if you only want to administratively bring the interface up or down.

To see the link and administrative state, use the `ip link show` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip link show dev swp1
3: swp1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast
state UP mode DEFAULT qlen 500
    link/ether 44:38:39:00:03:c1 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
```

In this example, `swp1` is administratively UP and the physical link is UP (`LOWER_UP` flag). More information on interface administrative state and physical state can be found in [this knowledge base article](#).

## Using NCLU to Set the Admin State of an Interface

You can use [NCLU \(see page 85\)](#) to put an interface into an admin down state. The interface remains down after any future reboots or applying configuration changes with `ifreload -a`. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 link down
```

These commands create the following configuration in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```
auto swp1
iface swp1
    link-down yes
```

## ifupdown2 Interface Classes

`ifupdown2` provides for the grouping of interfaces into separate classes, where a class is simply a user-defined label used to group interfaces that share a common function (like uplink, downlink or compute). You specify classes in `/etc/network/interfaces`.

The most common class users are familiar with is `auto`, which you configure like this:

```
auto swp1
iface swp1
```

You can add other classes using the *allow* prefix. For example, if you have multiple interfaces used for uplinks, you can make up a class called *uplinks*:

```
auto swp1
allow-uplink swp1
iface swp1 inet static
    address 10.1.1.1/31

auto swp2
allow-uplink swp2
iface swp2 inet static
    address 10.1.1.3/31
```

This allows you to perform operations on only these interfaces using the --allow-uplinks option, or still use the -a options since these interfaces are also in the auto class:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifup --allow=uplinks
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifreload -a
```

Another example where this feature is useful is if you're using [Management VRF \(see page 720\)](#), you can use the special interface class called *mgmt*, and put the management interface into that class.



The mgmt interface class is not supported if you are configuring Cumulus Linux using [NCLU \(see page 85\)](#).

```
allow-mgmt eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
    vrf mgmt

allow-mgmt mgmt
iface mgmt
    address 127.0.0.1/8
    vrf-table auto
```

All ifupdown2 commands (*ifup*, *ifdown*, *ifquery*, *ifreload*) can take a class. Include the --allow=<class> option when you run the command. For example, to reload the configuration for the management interface described above, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifreload --allow=mgmt
```



## Bringing All auto Interfaces Up or Down

You can easily bring up or down all interfaces marked with the common `auto` class in `/etc/network/interfaces`. Use the `-a` option. For further details, see individual man pages for `ifup(8)`, `ifdown(8)`, `ifreload(8)`.

To administratively bring up all interfaces marked `auto`, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifup -a
```

To administratively bring down all interfaces marked `auto`, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifdown -a
```

To reload all network interfaces marked `auto`, use the `ifreload` command, which is equivalent to running `ifdown` then `ifup`, the one difference being that `ifreload` skips any configurations that didn't change:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifreload -a
```

## Configuring a Loopback Interface

Cumulus Linux has a loopback preconfigured in `/etc/network/interfaces`. When the switch boots up, it has a loopback interface, called `lo`, which is up and assigned an IP address of 127.0.0.1.



The loopback interface `lo` must always be specified in `/etc/network/interfaces` and must always be up.

## ifupdown Behavior with Child Interfaces

By default, `ifupdown` recognizes and uses any interface present on the system — whether a VLAN, bond or physical interface — that is listed as a dependent of an interface. You are not required to list them in the `interfaces` file unless they need a specific configuration, for [MTU, link speed, and so forth \(see page 225\)](#). And if you need to delete a child interface, you should delete all references to that interface from the `interfaces` file.

For this example, `swp1` and `swp2` below do not need an entry in the `interfaces` file. The following stanzas defined in `/etc/network/interfaces` provide the exact same configuration:

### With Child Interfaces Defined

```
auto swp1  
iface swp1
```

### Without Child Interfaces Defined

```
auto bridge  
iface bridge  
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
```

```

auto swp2
iface swp2

auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-ports swp1
swp2
    bridge-vids 1-100
    bridge-pvid 1
    bridge-stp on

```

```

bridge-ports swp1
swp2
    bridge-vids 1-100
    bridge-pvid 1
    bridge-stp on

```

### Bridge in Traditional Mode - Example

For this example, swp1.100 and swp2.100 below do not need an entry in the `interfaces` file. The following stanzas defined in `/etc/network/interfaces` provide the exact same configuration:

#### With Child Interfaces Defined

```

auto swp1.100
iface swp1.100
auto swp2.100
iface swp2.100
auto br-100
iface br-100
    address 10.0.12.2/24
    address 2001:dad:beef::3/64
    bridge-ports swp1.100 swp2.
100
    bridge-stp on

```

#### Without Child Interfaces Defined

```

auto br-100
iface br-100
    address 10.0.12.2/24
    address 2001:dad:beef::3/64
    bridge-ports swp1.100 swp2.
100
    bridge-stp on

```

For more information on the bridge in traditional mode vs the bridge in VLAN-aware mode, please read [this knowledge base article](#).

## ifupdown2 Interface Dependencies

`ifupdown2` understands interface dependency relationships. When `ifup` and `ifdown` are run with all interfaces, they always run with all interfaces in dependency order. When run with the interface list on the command line, the default behavior is to not run with dependents. But if there are any built-in dependents, they will be brought up or down.

To run with dependents when you specify the interface list, use the `--with-dependents` option. `--with-dependents` walks through all dependents in the dependency tree rooted at the interface you specify. Consider the following example configuration:

```

auto bond1
iface bond1

```



```
address 100.0.0.2/16
bond-slaves swp29 swp30

auto bond2
iface bond2
    address 100.0.0.5/16
    bond-slaves swp31 swp32

auto br2001
iface br2001
    address 12.0.1.3/24
    bridge-ports bond1.2001 bond2.2001
    bridge-stp on
```

Using `ifup --with-dependents br2001` brings up all dependents of `br2001`: `bond1.2001`, `bond2.2001`, `bond1`, `bond2`, `bond1.2001`, `bond2.2001`, `swp29`, `swp30`, `swp31`, `swp32`.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifup --with-dependents br2001
```

Similarly, specifying `ifdown --with-dependents br2001` brings down all dependents of `br2001`: `bond1.2001`, `bond2.2001`, `bond1`, `bond2`, `bond1.2001`, `bond2.2001`, `swp29`, `swp30`, `swp31`, `swp32`.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifdown --with-dependents br2001
```



As mentioned earlier, `ifdown2` always deletes logical interfaces after bringing them down. Use the `--admin-state` option if you only want to administratively bring the interface up or down. In terms of the above example, `ifdown br2001` deletes `br2001`.

To guide you through which interfaces will be brought down and up, use the `--print-dependency` option to get the list of dependents.

Use `ifquery --print-dependency=list -a` to get the dependency list of all interfaces:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifquery --print-dependency=list -a
lo : None
eth0 : None
bond0 : ['swp25', 'swp26']
bond1 : ['swp29', 'swp30']
bond2 : ['swp31', 'swp32']
br0 : ['bond1', 'bond2']
bond1.2000 : ['bond1']
bond2.2000 : ['bond2']
br2000 : ['bond1.2000', 'bond2.2000']
bond1.2001 : ['bond1']
bond2.2001 : ['bond2']
br2001 : ['bond1.2001', 'bond2.2001']
```

```
swp40 : None
swp25 : None
swp26 : None
swp29 : None
swp30 : None
swp31 : None
swp32 : None
```

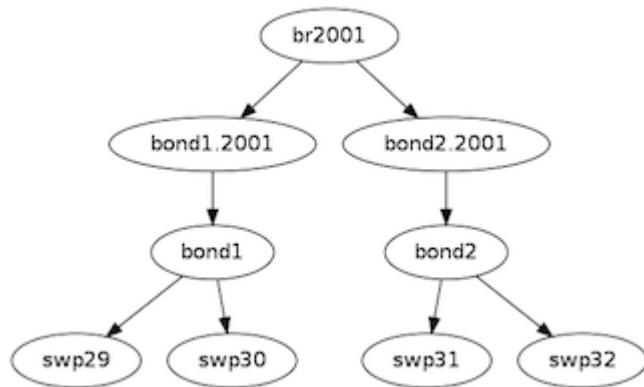
To print the dependency list of a single interface, use:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifquery --print-dependency=list br2001
br2001 : ['bond1.2001', 'bond2.2001']
bond1.2001 : ['bond1']
bond2.2001 : ['bond2']
bond1 : ['swp29', 'swp30']
bond2 : ['swp31', 'swp32']
swp29 : None
swp30 : None
swp31 : None
swp32 : None
```

To print the dependency information of an interface in dot format:

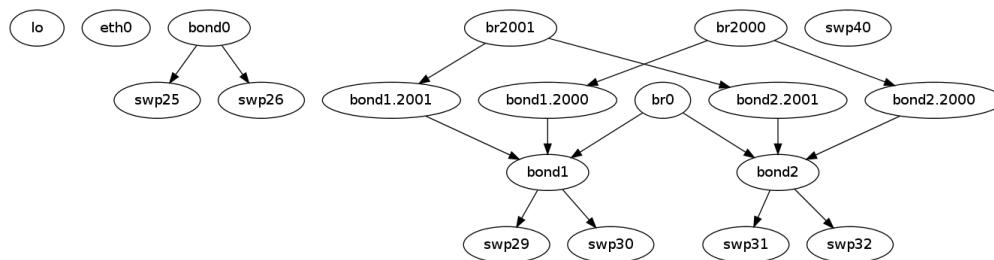
```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifquery --print-dependency=dot br2001
/* Generated by GvGen v.0.9 (http://software.inl.fr/trac/wiki/GvGen)
*/
digraph G {
    compound=true;
    node1 [label="br2001"];
    node2 [label="bond1.2001"];
    node3 [label="bond2.2001"];
    node4 [label="bond1"];
    node5 [label="bond2"];
    node6 [label="swp29"];
    node7 [label="swp30"];
    node8 [label="swp31"];
    node9 [label="swp32"];
    node1->node2;
    node1->node3;
    node2->node4;
    node3->node5;
    node4->node6;
    node4->node7;
    node5->node8;
    node5->node9;
}
```

You can use dot to render the graph on an external system where dot is installed.



To print the dependency information of the entire `interfaces` file:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifquery --print-dependency=dot -a
>interfaces_all.dot
```



## ifup Handling of Upper (Parent) Interfaces

When you run `ifup` on a logical interface (like a bridge, bond or VLAN interface), if the `ifup` resulted in the creation of the logical interface, by default it implicitly tries to execute on the interface's upper (or parent) interfaces as well. This helps in most cases, especially when a bond is brought down and up, as in the example below. This section describes the behavior of bringing up the upper interfaces.

Consider this example configuration:

```

auto br100
iface br100
    bridge-ports bond1.100 bond2.100

auto bond1
iface bond1
    bond-slaves swp1 swp2
```

If you run `ifdown bond1`, `ifdown` deletes bond1 and the VLAN interface on bond1 (bond1.100); it also removes bond1 from the bridge br100. Next, when you run `ifup bond1`, it creates bond1 and the VLAN interface on bond1 (bond1.100); it also executes `ifup br100` to add the bond VLAN interface (bond1.100) to the bridge br100.



As you can see above, implicitly bringing up the upper interface helps, but there can be cases where an upper interface (like br100) is not in the right state, which can result in warnings. The warnings are mostly harmless.

If you want to disable these warnings, you can disable the implicit upper interface handling by setting `skip_upperinterfaces=1` in `/etc/network/ifupdown2/ifupdown2.conf`.

With `skip_upperinterfaces=1`, you will have to explicitly execute `ifup` on the upper interfaces. In this case, you will have to run `ifup br100` after an `ifup bond1` to add bond1 back to bridge br100.



Although specifying a subinterface like `swp1.100` and then running `ifup swp1.100` will also result in the automatic creation of the `swp1` interface in the kernel, Cumulus Networks recommends you specify the parent interface `swp1` as well. A parent interface is one where any physical layer configuration can reside, such as `link-speed 1000` or `link-duplex full`.

It's important to note that if you only create `swp1.100` and not `swp1`, then you cannot run `ifup swp1` since you did not specify it.

## Configuring IP Addresses

IP addresses are configured with the `net add interface` command.

### ⓘ Example IP Address Configuration

The following commands configure three IP addresses for `swp1`: two IPv4 addresses, and one IPv6 address.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 ip address 12.0.0.1/30
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 ip address 12.0.0.2/30
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 ipv6 address 2001:DB8::1/126
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```



You can specify both IPv4 and IPv6 addresses for the same interface.

These commands create the following code snippet:

```
auto swp1
iface swp1
    address 12.0.0.1/30
    address 12.0.0.2/30
    address 2001:DB8::1/126
```



The address method and address family are added by NCLU when needed, specifically when you are creating DHCP or loopback interfaces.

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
```

To show the assigned address on an interface, use `ip addr show`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip addr show dev swp1
3: swp1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,SLAVE,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast
    state UP qlen 500
        link/ether 44:38:39:00:03:c1 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
        inet 192.0.2.1/30 scope global swp1
            inet 192.0.2.2/30 scope global swp1
            inet6 2001:DB8::1/126 scope global tentative
                valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
```

## Specifying IP Address Scope

`ifupdown2` does not honor the configured IP address scope setting in `/etc/network/interfaces`, treating all addresses as global. It does not report an error. Consider this example configuration:

```
auto swp2
iface swp2
    address 35.21.30.5/30
    address 3101:21:20::31/80
    scope link
```

When you run `ifreload -a` on this configuration, `ifupdown2` considers all IP addresses as global.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip addr show swp2
5: swp2: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast
    state UP group default qlen 1000
        link/ether 74:e6:e2:f5:62:82 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
        inet 35.21.30.5/30 scope global swp2
            valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
        inet6 3101:21:20::31/80 scope global
            valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
        inet6 fe80::76e6:e2ff:fef5:6282/64 scope link
            valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
```

To work around this issue, configure the IP address scope:



## ⓘ Example post-up Configuration

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp6 post-up ip address  
add 71.21.21.20/32 dev swp6 scope site  
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending  
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following code snippet in the /etc/network/interfaces file:

```
auto swp6  
iface swp6  
    post-up ip address add 71.21.21.20/32 dev swp6 scope site
```

Now it has the correct scope:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip addr show swp6  
9: swp6: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast  
state UP group default qlen 1000  
link/ether 74:e6:e2:f5:62:86 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff  
inet 71.21.21.20/32 scope site swp6  
    valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever  
inet6 fe80::76e6:e2ff:fef5:6286/64 scope link  
    valid_lft forever preferred_lft forever
```

## Purging Existing IP Addresses on an Interface

By default, ifupdown2 purges existing IP addresses on an interface. If you have other processes that manage IP addresses for an interface, you can disable this feature including the `address-purge` setting in the interface's configuration.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 address-purge no  
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending  
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration snippet in the /etc/network/interfaces file:

```
auto swp1  
iface swp1  
    address-purge no
```



Purging existing addresses on interfaces with multiple `iface` stanzas is not supported. Doing so can result in the configuration of multiple addresses for an interface after you change an interface address and reload the configuration with `ifreload -a`. If this happens, you must shut down and restart the interface with `ifup` and `ifdown`, or manually delete superfluous addresses with `ip address delete specify.ip.address.here/mask dev DEVICE`. See also the [Caveats and Errata \(see page 224\)](#) section below for some cautions about using multiple `iface` stanzas for the same interface.

## Specifying User Commands

You can specify additional user commands in the `interfaces` file. As shown in the example below, the interface stanzas in `/etc/network/interfaces` can have a command that runs at pre-up, up, post-up, pre-down, down, and post-down:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 post-up /sbin/foo bar
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface ip address 12.0.0.1/30
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```
auto swp1
iface swp1
    address 12.0.0.1/30
    post-up /sbin/foo bar
```

Any valid command can be hooked in the sequencing of bringing an interface up or down, although commands should be limited in scope to network-related commands associated with the particular interface.

For example, it wouldn't make sense to install some Debian package on `ifup` of `swp1`, even though that is technically possible. See `man interfaces` for more details.



If your `post-up` command also starts, restarts or reloads any `systemd` service, you must use the `--no-block` option with `systemctl`. Otherwise, that service or even the switch itself may hang after starting or restarting.

For example, to restart the `dhcrelay` service after bringing up VLAN 100, first run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan 100 post-up systemctl --no-
block restart dhcrelay.service
```

This command creates the following configuration in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:



```
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-vids 100
    bridge-vlan-aware yes

auto vlan100
iface vlan100
    post-up systemctl --no-block restart dhcrelay.service
    vlan-id 100
    vlan-raw-device bridge
```

## Sourcing Interface File Snippets

Sourcing interface files helps organize and manage the `interfaces` file. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/network/interfaces
# The loopback network interface
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback

# The primary network interface
auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

source /etc/network/interfaces.d/bond0
```

The contents of the sourced file used above are:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/network/interfaces.d/bond0
auto bond0
iface bond0
    address 14.0.0.9/30
    address 2001:ded:beef:2::1/64
    bond-slaves swp25 swp26
```

## Using Globs for Port Lists

NCLU supports globs to define port lists (that is, a range of ports). The `glob` keyword is implied when you specify bridge ports and bond slaves:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge bridge ports swp1-4,6,10-12
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```



These commands produce the following snippet in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```
...  
auto swp1  
iface swp1  
  
auto swp2  
iface swp2  
  
auto swp3  
iface swp3  
  
auto swp4  
iface swp4  
  
auto swp6  
iface swp6  
  
auto swp10  
iface swp10  
  
auto swp11  
iface swp11  
  
auto swp12  
iface swp12
```

## Using Templates

`ifupdown2` supports [Mako-style templates](#). The Mako template engine is run over the `interfaces` file before parsing.

Use the template to declare cookie-cutter bridges in the `interfaces` file:

```
%for v in [11,12]:  
auto vlan${v}  
iface vlan${v}  
    address 10.20.${v}.3/24  
    bridge-ports glob swp19-20.${v}  
    bridge-stp on  
%endfor
```

And use it to declare addresses in the `interfaces` file:

```
%for i in [1,12]:  
auto swp${i}  
iface swp${i}  
    address 10.20.${i}.3/24
```



Regarding Mako syntax, use square brackets ([1,12]) to specify a list of individual numbers (in this case, 1 and 12). Use `range(1,12)` to specify a range of interfaces.



You can test your template and confirm it evaluates correctly by running `mako-render /etc/network/interfaces`.



For more examples of configuring Mako templates, read this [knowledge base article](#).

## Commenting out Mako Templates

To comment out content in Mako templates, use double hash marks (##). For example:

```
## % for i in range(1, 4):  
## auto swp${i}  
## iface swp${i}  
## % endfor  
##
```

## Adding Descriptions to Interfaces

You can add descriptions to the interfaces configured in `/etc/network/interfaces` by using the `alias` keyword.

### ⓘ Example Alias Configuration

The following commands create an alias for `swp1`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 alias  
hypervisor_port_1  
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending  
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following code snippet:

```
auto swp1
iface swp1
    alias hypervisor_port_1
```

You can query the interface description using NCLU. The alias appears in the **Name** column after the actual interface name:

Name	MAC	Speed	MTU	Mode
UP swp1 (hypervisor_port_1)	44:38:39:00:00:04	1G	1500	Access/L2

Interface descriptions also appear in the [SNMP OID \(see page 776\) IF-MIB::ifAlias](#).



Aliases are limited to 256 characters.

## Caveats and Errata

While `ifupdown2` supports the inclusion of multiple `iface` stanzas for the same interface, Cumulus Networks recommends you use a single `iface` stanza for each interface, if possible.

There are cases where you must specify more than one `iface` stanza for the same interface. For example, the configuration for a single interface can come from many places, like a template or a sourced file.

If you do specify multiple `iface` stanzas for the same interface, make sure the stanzas do not specify the same interface attributes. Otherwise, unexpected behavior can result.

For example, `swp1` is configured in two places:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/network/interfaces
source /etc/interfaces.d/speed_settings

auto swp1
iface swp1
    address 10.0.14.2/24
```

As well as `/etc/interfaces.d/speed_settings`

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/interfaces.d/speed_settings
auto swp1
iface swp1
```



```
link-speed 1000
link-duplex full
```

`ifupdown2` correctly parses a configuration like this because the same attributes are not specified in multiple `iface` stanzas.

And, as stated in the note above, you cannot purge existing addresses on interfaces with multiple `iface` stanzas.

## Related Information

- [Debian - Network Configuration](#)
- [Linux Foundation - Bonds](#)
- [Linux Foundation - Bridges](#)
- [Linux Foundation - VLANs](#)
- [man ifdown\(8\)](#)
- [man ifquery\(8\)](#)
- [man ifreload](#)
- [man ifup\(8\)](#)
- [man ifupdown-addons-interfaces\(5\)](#)
- [man interfaces\(5\)](#)

## Layer 1 and Switch Port Attributes

This chapter discusses the various network interfaces on a switch running Cumulus Linux, how to configure various interface-level settings (if needed) and some troubleshooting commands.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- [Interface Types \(see page 226\)](#)
- [Interface Settings \(see page 226\)](#)
  - Differences between Broadcom-based and Mellanox-based Switches (see page 226)
  - Enabling Auto-negotiation (see page 227)
  - Default Interface Configuration Settings (see page 227)
  - Port Speed and Duplexing (see page 237)
  - MTU (see page 238)
  - Setting a Policy for Global System MTU (see page 240)
  - Creating a Default Policy for Various Interface Settings (see page 240)
- [Configuring Breakout Ports \(see page 241\)](#)
  - Removing a Breakout Port (see page 245)
  - Combining Four 10G Ports into One 40G Port (see page 245)



- Logical Switch Port Limitations (see page 246)
- Using ethtool to Configure Interfaces (see page 247)
- Verification and Troubleshooting Commands (see page 247)
  - Statistics (see page 247)
  - Querying SFP Port Information (see page 248)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 249)
  - Timeout Error on Quanta LY8 and LY9 Switches (see page 249)
  - swp33 and swp34 Disabled on Some Switches (see page 249)
  - ethtool Shows Incorrect Port Speed on 100G Mellanox Switches (see page 249)
- Related Information (see page 250)

## Interface Types

Cumulus Linux exposes network interfaces for several types of physical and logical devices:

- lo, network loopback device
- ethN, switch management port(s), for out of band management only
- swpN, switch front panel ports
- (optional) brN, bridges (IEEE 802.1Q VLANs)
- (optional) bondN, bonds (IEEE 802.3ad link aggregation trunks, or port channels)

## Interface Settings

Each physical network interface has a number of configurable settings:

- Auto-negotiation
- Duplex
- Forward error correction
- Link speed
- MTU, or maximum transmission unit

Almost all of these settings are configured automatically for you, depending upon your switch ASIC, although you must always set MTU manually.



You can only set MTU for logical interfaces. If you try to set auto-negotiation, duplex mode or link speed for a logical interface, an unsupported error gets returned.

## Differences between Broadcom-based and Mellanox-based Switches

On a Broadcom-based switch, all you need to do is enable auto-negotiation. Once enabled, Cumulus Linux automatically configures the link speed, duplex mode and **forward error correction** (FEC, if the cable or optic requires it) for every switch port, based on the port type and cable or optic used on the port, as listed in the table below (see page 227).

Ports are always automatically configured on a Mellanox-based switch, with one exception — you only need to configure is [MTU \(see page 238\)](#). You don't even need to enable auto-negotiation, as the Mellanox firmware configures everything for you.

## *Enabling Auto-negotiation*

To configure auto-negotiation for a Broadcom-based switch, set `link-autoneg` to `on` for all the switch ports. For example, to enable auto-negotiation for `swp1` through `swp52`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1-52 link autoneg on  
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending  
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

Any time you enable auto-negotiation, Cumulus Linux restores the default configuration settings specified in the [table below \(see page \)](#).

By default on a Broadcom-based switch, auto-negotiation is disabled — except on 10000 and 1000BASE-T switch ports, where it's required for links to work at all. And for RJ-45 SFP adapters, you need to manually configure the settings as described in the [default settings table below \(see page \)](#).

If you disable it later or never enable it, then you have to configure the duplex, FEC and link speed settings manually using [NCLU \(see page 85\)](#) — see the relevant sections below. The default speed if you disable auto-negotiation depends on the type of connector used with the port. For example, a QSFP28 optic defaults to 100G, while a QSFP+ optic defaults to 40G and SFP+ defaults to 10G.



You cannot or should not disable auto-negotiation off for any type of copper cable, including:

- 10000BASE-T
- 10000DAC
- 40000DAC
- 100000DAC

However, 10/100/1000BASE-T RJ-45 SFP adapters do not work with auto-negotiation enabled. You must manually configure these ports using the settings below (`link-autoneg=off`, `link-speed=1000|100|10`, `link-duplex=full|half`).

Depending upon the connector used for a port, enabling auto-negotiation also enables forward error correction (FEC), if the cable requires it (see the [table below \(see page \)](#)). FEC always adjusts for the speed of the cable. However, you **cannot** disable FEC separately using [NCLU \(see page 85\)](#).

## *Default Interface Configuration Settings*

On a Broadcom-based switch, the configuration for each type of interface is described in the following table. Except as noted below, the settings for both sides of the link are expected to be the same.



If the other side of the link is running a version of Cumulus Linux earlier than 3.2, depending up on the interface type, auto-negotiation may not work on that switch. Cumulus Networks recommends you use the default settings on this switch in this case.

For Mellanox-based switches, the Spectrum firmware decides on the best settings based on the port type and connector type.

Speed	Auto-negotiation	FEC Setting	Manual Configuration Steps	Notes
10/100BASE-T (RJ-45 SFP adapter)	Off	N/A (does not apply at this speed)	<pre>\$ net add interface swp1 link speed 100 \$ net add interface swp1 link autoneg off</pre> <b>Configuration in /etc/network/interfaces</b> <pre>auto swp1 iface swp1 link- autoneg off link-speed 100</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The module has two sets of electronics — the port side, which communicates to the switch ASIC, and the RJ-45 adapter side.</li> <li>Auto-negotiation is always used on the RJ-45 adapter side of the link by the PHY built into the module. This is independent of the switch setting. Set link-autoneg to off.</li> <li>Auto-negotiation needs to be enabled on the server side in this scenario.</li> </ul>
10/100BASE-T on a 1G fixed copper port	Recommended On	N/A	<pre>\$ net add interface swp1 link speed 100 \$ net add interface swp1 link autoneg on</pre> <b>Configuration in /etc/network/interfaces</b> <pre>auto swp1 iface swp1</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>10M or 100M speeds are possible with autoneg OFF on both sides. Testing on an Edge-Core AS4610-54P revealed the ASIC reporting autoneg as ON.</li> <li>PoE may require autoneg to be ON.</li> </ul>



Speed	Auto-negotiation	FEC Setting	Manual Configuration Steps	Notes
			<pre>link-autoneg on link-speed 100</pre>	
1000BASE-T (RJ-45 SFP adapter)	Off	N/A	<pre>\$ net add interface swp1 link speed 1000 \$ net add interface swp1 link autoneg off</pre> <p><b>Configuration in /etc/network/interfaces</b></p> <pre>auto swp1 iface swp1 link-autoneg off link-speed 1000</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>The module has two sets of electronics — the port side, which communicates to the switch ASIC, and the RJ-45 side.</li><li>Auto-negotiation is always used on the RJ-45 side of the link by the PHY built into the module. This is independent of the switch setting. Set link-autoneg to off.</li><li>Auto-negotiation needs to be enabled on the server side.</li></ul>
1000BASE-T on a 1G fixed copper port	On	N/A	<pre>\$ net add interface swp1 link speed 1000 \$ net add interface swp1 link autoneg on</pre>	

Speed	Auto-negotiation	FEC Setting	Manual Configuration Steps	Notes
			<p><b>Configuration in /etc/network/interfaces</b></p> <pre>auto swp1 iface swp1     link-     autoneg on     link-speed     1000</pre>	
1000BASE-T on a 10G fixed copper port	On	N/A	<pre>\$ net add interface swp1 link speed 1000 \$ net add interface swp1 link autoneg on</pre>	
1000BASE-SX, 1000BASE-LX, 1000BASE-CX (1G Fiber)	Recommended On	N/A	<p><b>Configuration in /etc/network/interfaces</b></p> <pre>auto swp1 iface swp1     link-     autoneg on     link-speed     1000</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Without auto-negotiation, the link stays up when there is a single fiber break.</li> </ul>



Speed	Auto-negotiation	FEC Setting	Manual Configuration Steps	Notes
			<pre>swp1 link autoneg on</pre>  <b>Configuration in /etc/network/interfaces</b>  <pre>auto swp1 iface swp1     link-     autoneg on     link-speed     1000</pre>	
10000BASE-T fixed copper port	On	N/A	<pre>\$ net add interface swp1 link speed 10000 \$ net add interface swp1 link autoneg on</pre>  <b>Configuration in /etc/network/interfaces</b>  <pre>auto swp1 iface swp1     link-     autoneg on     link-speed     10000</pre>	
10000BASE-CR, 10000BASE-LR,	Off	N/A	<pre>\$ net add interface</pre>	



Speed	Auto-negotiation	FEC Setting	Manual Configuration Steps	Notes
10000BASE-SR, 10G AOC			<pre>swp1 link speed 10000 \$ net add interface swp1 link autoneg off</pre>  <b>Configuration in /etc/network/interfaces</b>  <pre>auto swp1 iface swp1     link-     autoneg off     link-speed     10000</pre>	
40000BASE-CR4	Recommended On	Disable it	<pre>\$ net add interface swp1 link speed 40000 \$ net add interface swp1 link autoneg on</pre>  <b>Configuration in /etc/network/interfaces</b>  <pre>auto swp1 iface swp1     link-     autoneg on     link-speed     40000</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>40G standards mandate auto-negotiation should be enabled for DAC connections.</li></ul>



Speed	Auto-negotiation	FEC Setting	Manual Configuration Steps	Notes
40000BASE-SR4, 40000BASE-LR4, 40000AOC	Off	Disable it	<pre>\$ net add interface swp1 link speed 40000 \$ net add interface swp1 link autoneg off</pre> <b>Configuration in /etc/network/interfaces</b>  <pre>auto swp1 iface swp1     link-     autoneg off     link-speed     40000</pre>	
100000BASE-CR4	On	auto-negotiated	<pre>\$ net add interface swp1 link speed 100000 \$ net add interface swp1 link autoneg on</pre> <b>Configuration in /etc/network/interfaces</b>  <pre>auto swp1 iface swp1     link-     autoneg on</pre>	



Speed	Auto-negotiation	FEC Setting	Manual Configuration Steps	Notes
			<pre>link-speed 100000</pre>	
100000BASE-SR4, 100000AOC	Off	RS	<pre>\$ net add interface swp1 link speed 100000 \$ net add interface swp1 link autoneg off \$ net add interface swp1 link fec rs</pre> <b>Configuration in /etc /network /interfaces</b>  <pre>auto swp1 iface swp1     link-     autoneg off     link-speed     100000     link-fec rs</pre>	
100000BASE-LR4	Off	None stated	<pre>\$ net add interface swp1 link speed 100000 \$ net add interface swp1 link autoneg off</pre>	



Speed	Auto-negotiation	FEC Setting	Manual Configuration Steps	Notes
			<pre>\$ net add interface swp1 link fec off</pre>  <b>Configuration in /etc/network/interfaces</b>  <pre>auto swp1 iface swp1     link-     autoneg off     link-speed 100000     link-fec off</pre>	
25000BASE-CR	On	auto-negotiated*	<pre>\$ net add interface swp1 link speed 25000 \$ net add interface swp1 link autoneg on</pre>  <b>Configuration in /etc/network/interfaces</b>  <pre>auto swp1 iface swp1     link-     autoneg on     link-speed 25000</pre>	



Speed	Auto-negotiation	FEC Setting	Manual Configuration Steps	Notes
25000BASE-SR	Off	RS*	<pre>\$ net add interface swp1 link speed 25000 \$ net add interface swp1 link autoneg off \$ net add interface swp1 link fec baser</pre> <b>Configuration in /etc/network/interfaces</b> <pre>auto swp1 iface swp1     link-     autoneg off     link-speed     25000     link-fec     baser</pre>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Tomahawk cannot do RS on a single channel, only BASE-R /FC/FireCode/Type74, which violates the 802.3by specification for 25G.</li></ul>
25000BASE-LR	Off	None stated	<pre>\$ net add interface swp1 link speed 25000 \$ net add interface swp1 link autoneg off \$ net add interface swp1 link fec off</pre>	



Speed	Auto-negotiation	FEC Setting	Manual Configuration Steps	Notes
			<b>Configuration in /etc/network/interfaces</b>  auto swp1 iface swp1 link-autoneg off link-speed 25000 link-fec off	

## Port Speed and Duplexing

Cumulus Linux supports both half- and **full-duplex** configurations. Supported port speeds include 100M, 1G, 10G, 25G, 40G, 50G and 100G. If you need to manually set the speed on a Broadcom-based switch, set it in terms of Mbps, where the setting for 1G is 1000, 40G is 40000 and 100G is 100000, for example.

The duplex mode setting defaults to *full*. You only need to specify `link duplex` if you want half-duplex mode.

### ⓘ Example Port Speed and Duplexing Configuration

The following NCLU commands configure the port speed for the swp1 interface:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 link speed 10000
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

The above commands create the following `/etc/network/interfaces` code snippet:

```
auto swp1
iface swp1
    link-speed 10000
```

## Port Speed Limitations

Ports can be configured to one speed less than their maximum speed.



Switch port Type	Lowest Configurable Speed
1G	100 Mb
10G	1 Gigabit (1000 Mb)
40G	10G*
100G	50G & 40G (with or without breakout port), 25G*, 10G*

\*Requires the port to be converted into a breakout port. [See below \(see page 241\)](#).

## MTU

Interface MTU ([maximum transmission unit](#)) applies to traffic traversing the management port, front panel /switch ports, bridge, VLAN subinterfaces and bonds — in other words, both physical and logical interfaces.

MTU is the only interface setting that must be set manually.

In Cumulus Linux, `ifupdown2` assigns 1500 as the default MTU setting. To change the setting, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 mtu 9000
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```



Some switches may not support the same maximum MTU setting in hardware for both the management interface (`eth0`) and the data plane ports.

## MTU for a Bridge

The MTU setting is the lowest MTU setting of any interface that is a member of that bridge (that is, every interface specified in `bridge-ports` in the bridge configuration in the `interfaces` file), even if another bridge member has a higher MTU value. There is **no** need to specify an MTU on the bridge. Consider this bridge configuration:

```
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports bond1 bond2 bond3 bond4 peer5
    bridge-vids 100-110
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
```

In order for `bridge` to have an MTU of 9000, set the MTU for each of the member interfaces (bond1 to bond 4, and peer5), to 9000 at minimum.

## ⓘ Use MTU 9216 for a bridge

Two common MTUs for jumbo frames are 9216 and 9000 bytes. The corresponding MTUs for the VNIs would be 9166 and 8950.

When configuring MTU for a bond, configure the MTU value directly under the bond interface; the configured value is inherited by member links/slave interfaces. If you need a different MTU on the bond, set it on the bond interface, as this ensures the slave interfaces pick it up. There is no need to specify MTU on the slave interfaces.

VLAN interfaces inherit their MTU settings from their physical devices or their lower interface; for example, swp1.100 inherits its MTU setting from swp1. Hence, specifying an MTU on swp1 ensures that swp1.100 inherits swp1's MTU setting.

If you are working with [VXLANS](#) (see page 399), the MTU for a virtual network interface (VNI) must be 50 bytes smaller than the MTU of the physical interfaces on the switch, as those 50 bytes are required for various headers and other data. You should also consider setting the MTU much higher than the default 1500.

## ⓘ Example MTU Configuration

In general, the policy file specified above handles default MTU settings for all interfaces on the switch. If you need to configure a different MTU setting for a subset of interfaces, use [NCLU](#) (see page 85).

The following commands configure an MTU minimum value of 9000 on swp1:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 mtu 9000
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following code snippet:

```
auto swp1
iface swp1
    mtu 9000
```

**!** You must take care to ensure there are no MTU mismatches in the conversation path. MTU mismatches will result in dropped or truncated packets, degrading or blocking network performance.

To view the MTU setting, use `net show interface <interface>`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show interface swp1
      Name      MAC                Speed      MTU      Mode
      --  -----  -----  -----  -----
UP    swp1    44:38:39:00:00:04   1G        1500  Access/L2
```



## Setting a Policy for Global System MTU

For a global policy to set MTU, create a policy document (called `mtu.json` here) like the following:

```
cat /etc/network/ifupdown2/policy.d/mtu.json
{
    "address": { "defaults": { "mtu": "9216" } }
}
```



If your platform does not support a high MTU on eth0, you can set a lower MTU with the following command:

```
net add interface eth0 mtu 1500
net commit
```



The policies and attributes in any file in `/etc/network/ifupdown2/policy.d/` override the default policies and attributes in `/var/lib/ifupdown2/policy.d/`.

## Creating a Default Policy for Various Interface Settings

Instead of configuring these settings for each individual interface, you can specify a policy for all interfaces on a switch, or tailor custom settings for each interface. Create a file in `/etc/network/ifupdown2/policy.d/`, like in the following example (called `address.json`), and populate the settings accordingly:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/network/ifupdown2/policy.d/address.json
{
    "ethtool": {
        "defaults": {
            "link-duplex": "full"
        },
        "iface_defaults": {
            "swp1": {
                "link-autoneg": "on",
                "link-speed": "1000"
            },
            "swp50": {
                "link-autoneg": "off",
                "link-speed": "10000"
            }
        }
}
```



```
        }
    },
    "address": {
        "defaults": { "mtu": "9000" }
    }
}
```

## Configuring Breakout Ports

Cumulus Linux has the ability to:

- Break out 100G switch ports into the following with breakout cables:
  - 2x50G, 4x25G, 4x10G
- Break out 40G switch ports into four separate 10G ports for use with breakout cables.
- Combine (also called *aggregating* or *ganging*) four 10G switch ports into one 40G port for use with a breakout cable ([not to be confused with a bond \(see page 316\)](#)).

To configure a 4x25G breakout port, first configure the port to break out then set the link speed:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp3 breakout 4x
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp3s0-3 link speed 25000
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```



On [Dell switches with Maverick ASICs](#), you configure breakout ports on the 100G uplink ports by manually editing the `/etc/cumulus/ports.conf` file. You need to specify either `4x10` or `4x25` for the port speed. For example, on a Dell S4148F-ON switch, to break out `swp26` into 4 25G ports, you would modify the line starting with "`26=`" in `ports.conf` as follows:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nano /etc/network/ports.conf

...
# QSFP+ ports
#
# <port label 27-28> = [4x10G|40G]

27=disabled
28=disabled

# QSFP28 ports
#
# <port label 25-26, 29-30> = [4x10G|4x25G|2x50G|40G|50G|100G]

25=100G
26=4x25G
29=100G
```



```
30=100G
```

```
...
```

Then you need to configure the breakout ports in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nano /etc/network/interfaces

...
auto swp26s0
iface swp26s0

auto swp26s1
iface swp3s1

auto swp26s2
iface swp26s2

auto swp26s3
iface swp26s3

...
```

You cannot use NCLU to break out the uplink ports.



On Mellanox switches, you need to disable the next port (see below). In this example, you would also run the following before committing the update:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp4 breakout disabled
```

These commands create 4 interfaces in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file named as follows:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/network/interfaces

...
auto swp3s0
iface swp3s0

auto swp3s1
iface swp3s1

auto swp3s2
```



```
iface swp3s2  
  
auto swp3s3  
iface swp3s3  
  
...
```



When you commit your change configuring the breakout ports, `switchd` restarts to apply the changes. The restart [interrupts network services](#) (see page 193).

The breakout port configuration is stored in the `/etc/cumulus/ports.conf` file.



`/etc/cumulus/ports.conf` varies across different hardware platforms. Check the current list of supported platforms on [the hardware compatibility list](#).

A snippet from the `/etc/cumulus/ports.conf` on a Dell S6000 switch (with a Trident II+ ASIC) where `swp3` is broken out as above looks like this:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/cumulus/ports.conf  
# ports.conf --  
#  
# This file controls port aggregation and subdivision. For  
example, QSFP+  
# ports are typically configurable as either one 40G interface  
or four  
# 10G/1000/100 interfaces. This file sets the number of  
interfaces per port  
# while /etc/network/interfaces and ethtool configure the link  
speed for each  
# interface.  
#  
# You must restart switchd for changes to take effect.  
#  
# The DELL S6000 has:  
#     32 QSFP ports numbered 1-32  
#     These ports are configurable as 40G, split into 4x10G  
ports or  
#     disabled.  
#  
#     The X pipeline covers QSFP ports 1 through 16 and the Y  
pipeline  
#     covers QSFP ports 17 through 32.  
#  
#     The Trident2 chip can only handle 52 logical ports per  
pipeline.  
#  
#     This means 13 is the maximum number of 40G ports you can  
ungang
```

```

#      per pipeline, with the remaining three 40G ports set to
#      "disabled". The 13 40G ports become 52 unganged 10G
ports, which
#      totals 52 logical ports for that pipeline.
#
# QSFP+ ports
#
# <port label 1-32> = [4x10G|40G|disabled]
1=40G
2=40G
3=4x
4=40G
5=40G
6=40G
7=40G
8=40G
9=40G
10=40G
11=40G
12=40G
13=40G
14=40G
15=40G
16=40G
17=40G
18=40G
19=40G
20=40G
21=40G
22=40G
23=40G
24=40G
25=40G
26=40G
27=40G
28=40G
29=40G
30=40G
31=40G
32=40G

```

Notice that you can break out any of the 100G ports into a variety of options: four 10G ports, four 25G ports or two 50G ports. Keep in mind that you cannot have more than 128 total logical ports on a Broadcom switch.



The Mellanox SN2700, SN2700B, SN2410, and SN2410B switches both have a limit of 64 logical ports in total. However, if you want to break out to 4x25G or 4x10G, you must configure the logical ports as follows:

- You can only break out odd-numbered ports into 4 logical ports.
- You must disable the next even-numbered port.

These restrictions do not apply to a 2x50G breakout configuration.

For example, if you have a 100G Mellanox SN2700 switch and break out port 11 into 4 logical ports, you must disable port 12 by running `net add interface swp12 breakout disabled`, which results in this configuration in `/etc/cumulus/ports.conf`:

```
...
11=4x
12=disabled
...
```

There is no limitation on any port if interfaces are configured in 2x50G mode.



Here is an example showing how to configure breakout cables for the [Mellanox Spectrum SN2700](#).

## Removing a Breakout Port

To remove a breakout port, run `net add interface swp# breakout 1x`. Continuing with the previous example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp3 breakout 1x
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

## Combining Four 10G Ports into One 40G Port

You can *gang* (aggregate) four 10G ports into one 40G port for use with a breakout cable, provided you follow these requirements:

- You must gang four 10G ports in sequential order. For example, you cannot gang swp1, swp10, swp20 and swp40 together.
- The ports must be in increments of four, with the starting port being swp1 (or swp5, swp9, or so forth); so you cannot gang swp2, swp3, swp4 and swp5 together.

For example, to gang swp1 through swp4 into a 40G port, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add int swp1-4 breakout /4
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```



These commands create the following configuration snippet in the `/etc/cumulus/ports.conf` file:

```
# SFP+ ports#
# <port label 1-48> = [10G|40G/4]
1=40G/4
2=40G/4
3=40G/4
4=40G/4
5=10G
```

## Logical Switch Port Limitations

100G and 40G switches can support a certain number of logical ports, depending upon the manufacturer; these include:

- Mellanox SN2700 and SN2700B switches
- Switches with Broadcom Tomahawk, Trident II and Trident II+ chipsets (check the [HCL](#))

Before you configure any logical/unganged ports on a switch, check the limitations listed in `/etc/cumulus/ports.conf`; this file is specific to each manufacturer.

For example, the Dell S6000 `ports.conf` file indicates the logical port limitation like this:

```
# ports.conf --
#
# This file controls port aggregation and subdivision.  For example,
QSFP+
# ports are typically configurable as either one 40G interface or four
# 10G/1000/100 interfaces.  This file sets the number of interfaces
per port
# while /etc/network/interfaces and ethtool configure the link speed
for each
# interface.
#
# You must restart switchd for changes to take effect.
#
# The DELL S6000 has:
#     32 QSFP ports numbered 1-32
#     These ports are configurable as 40G, split into 4x10G ports or
#     disabled.
#
#     The X pipeline covers QSFP ports 1 through 16 and the Y pipeline
#     covers QSFP ports 17 through 32.
#
#     The Trident2 chip can only handle 52 logical ports per pipeline.
#
#     This means 13 is the maximum number of 40G ports you can ungang
#     per pipeline, with the remaining three 40G ports set to
#     "disabled".  The 13 40G ports become 52 unganged 10G ports, which
#     totals 52 logical ports for that pipeline.
```



The means the maximum number of ports for this Dell S6000 is 104.

Mellanox SN2700 and SN2700B switches have a limit of 64 logical ports in total. However, the logical ports must be configured in a specific way. See [the note \(see page 241\)](#) above.

## Using ethtool to Configure Interfaces

The Cumulus Linux `ethtool` command is an alternative for configuring interfaces as well as viewing and troubleshooting them.

For example, to manually set link speed, auto-negotiation, duplex mode and FEC on `swp1`, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ethtool -s swp1 speed 25000 autoneg off duplex full
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ethtool --set-fec swp1 encoding off
```

To view the FEC setting on an interface, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ethtool --show-fec swp1
Auto-negotiation: off
FEC encodings : RS
```

## Verification and Troubleshooting Commands

### *Statistics*

High-level interface statistics are available with the `net show interface` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show interface swp1
      Name      MAC                Speed      MTU      Mode
--  -----  -----
UP    swp1    44:38:39:00:00:04    1G       1500  Access/L2

Vlans in disabled State
-----
br0

Counters      TX      RX
-----  ----  -----
errors        0       0
unicast       0       0
broadcast     0       0
multicast     0       0
```



## LLDP

```
-----  
swp1    ===  44:38:39:00:00:03 (server01)
```

Low-level interface statistics are available with `ethtool`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ethtool -S swp1  
NIC statistics:  
    HwIfInOctets: 21870  
    HwIfInUcastPkts: 0  
    HwIfInBcastPkts: 0  
    HwIfInMcastPkts: 243  
    HwIfOutOctets: 1148217  
    HwIfOutUcastPkts: 0  
    HwIfOutMcastPkts: 11353  
    HwIfOutBcastPkts: 0  
    HwIfInDiscards: 0  
    HwIfInL3Drops: 0  
    HwIfInBufferDrops: 0  
    HwIfInAclDrops: 0  
    HwIfInBlackholeDrops: 0  
    HwIfInDot3LengthErrors: 0  
    HwIfInErrors: 0  
    SoftInErrors: 0  
    SoftInDrops: 0  
    SoftInFrameErrors: 0  
    HwIfOutDiscards: 0  
    HwIfOutErrors: 0  
    HwIfOutQDrops: 0  
    HwIfOutNonQDrops: 0  
    SoftOutErrors: 0  
    SoftOutDrops: 0  
    SoftOutTxFifoFull: 0  
    HwIfOutQLen: 0
```

## Querying SFP Port Information

You can verify SFP settings using `ethtool -m`. The following example shows the output for 1G and 10G modules:

```
cumulus@switch:~# sudo ethtool -m | egrep '(swp|RXPoWer :|TXPoWer :|EthernetComplianceCode)'  
  
swp1: SFP detected  
          EthernetComplianceCodes : 1000BASE-LX  
          RXPoWer : -10.4479dBm  
          TXPoWer : 18.0409dBm
```



```
swp3: SFP detected
      10GEthernetComplianceCode : 10G Base-LR
      RXPower : -3.2532dBm
      TXPower : -2.0817dBm
```

## Caveats and Errata

### *Timeout Error on Quanta LY8 and LY9 Switches*

On Quanta T5048-LY8 and T3048-LY9 switches, an "Operation timed out" error occurs while removing and reinserting QSFP module.

The QSFPx2 module cannot be removed while the switch is powered on, as it is not hot-swappable. However, if this occurs, you can get the link to come up; however, this involves [restarting switchd](#) (see [page 193](#)), which disrupts your network.

On the T3048-LY9, run the following commands:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo echo 0 > qsfpd_power_enable/value
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo rmmod quanta_ly9_rangeley_platform
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo modprobe quanta_ly9_rangeley_platform
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart switchd.service
```

On the T5048-LY8, run the following commands:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo echo 0 > qsfpd_power_enable/value
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart switchd.service
```

### *swp33 and swp34 Disabled on Some Switches*

The front SFP+ ports (swp33 and swp34) are disabled in Cumulus Linux on the following switches:

- Dell Z9100-ON
- Penguin Arctica 3200-series switches (the 3200C, 3200XL and 3200XLP)
- Supermicro SSE-C3632S

These ports appear as disabled in the `/etc/cumulus/ports.conf` file.

### *ethtool Shows Incorrect Port Speed on 100G Mellanox Switches*

After setting interface speed to 40G by editing the `ports.conf` file on a Mellanox switch, `ethtool` still shows the speed as 100G.

This is a known issue whereby `ethtool` does not update after restarting `switchd`, so it continues to display the outdated port speed.

To correctly set the port speed, use [NCLU \(see page 85\)](#) or `ethtool` to set the speed instead of hand editing the `ports.conf` file.

For example, to set the speed to 40G using NCLU:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 link speed 40000
```

Or using `ethtool`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ethtool -s swp1 speed 40000
```

## Related Information

- Debian - Network Configuration
- Linux Foundation - VLANs
- Linux Foundation - Bridges
- Linux Foundation - Bonds

## Buffer and Queue Management

Hardware datapath configuration manages packet buffering, queueing and scheduling in hardware. There are two configuration input files:

- `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf`, which describes priority groups and assigns the scheduling algorithm and weights
- `/usr/lib/python2.7/dist-packages/cumulus/__chip_config/[bcm|mlx]/datapath.conf`, which assigns buffer space and egress queues

Each packet is assigned to an ASIC Class of Service (CoS) value based on the packet's priority value stored in the 802.1p (Class of Service) or DSCP (Differentiated Services Code Point) header field. The choice to schedule packets based on COS or DSCP is a configurable option in the `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf` file.

Priority groups include:

- *Control*: Highest priority traffic
- *Service*: Second-highest priority traffic
- *Bulk*: All remaining traffic

The scheduler is configured to use a hybrid scheduling algorithm. It applies strict priority to control traffic queues and a weighted round robin selection from the remaining queues. Unicast packets and multicast packets with the same priority value are assigned to separate queues, which are assigned equal scheduling weights.

Datapath configuration takes effect when you initialize `switchd`. Changes to the `traffic.conf` file require you to [restart the `switchd` \(see page 193\)](#) service.



You can configure Quality of Service (QoS) for switches on the Broadcom Helix4, Tomahawk, Trident II+ and Trident II platforms, and the Mellanox Spectrum platform only.



## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- [Commands \(see page 251\)](#)
- [Example Configuration File \(see page 251\)](#)
- [Configuring Traffic Marking through ACL Rules \(see page 255\)](#)
- [Configuring Priority Flow Control \(see page 256\)](#)
  - [Understanding Port Groups \(see page 258\)](#)
- [Configuring Link Pause \(see page 259\)](#)
- [Configuring Cut-through Mode and Store and Forward Switching \(see page 260\)](#)
- [Configuring Explicit Congestion Notification \(see page 261\)](#)
- [Related Information \(see page 262\)](#)

## Commands

If you modify the configuration in the `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf` file, you must [restart `switchd` \(see page 193\)](#) for the changes to take effect:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart switchd.service
```

## Example Configuration File

The following example `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf` datapath configuration file applies to 10G, 40G, and 100G switches on Broadcom Tomahawk, Trident II+ or Trident II and Mellanox Spectrum [platforms](#) only. However, see the note above for all the supported ASICs and speeds.

Keep in mind the following about the configuration:

- Regarding the default source packet fields and mapping, each selected packet field should have a block of mapped values. Any packet field value that is not specified in the configuration is assigned to a default internal switch priority. The configuration applies to every forwarding port unless a custom remark configuration is defined for that port (see below).
- Regarding the default remark packet fields and mapping, each selected packet field should have a block of mapped values. Any internal switch priority value that is not specified in the configuration is assigned to a default packet field value. The configuration applies to every forwarding port unless a custom remark configuration is defined for that port (see below).
- Per-port source packet fields and mapping apply to the designated set of ports.
- Per-port remark packet fields and mapping apply to the designated set of ports.

Click to view sample `traffic.conf` file ...

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf
#
# /etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf
#
# packet header field used to determine the packet priority
level
```

```

# fields include {802.1p, dscp}
traffic.packet_priority_source_set = [802.1p,
dscp]
# remark packet priority
value
# fields include {802.1p,
none}
# remark packet priority value
# fields include {802.1p, dscp}
traffic.packet_priority_remark_set = [802.1p,dscp]
# packet priority remark values assigned from each internal cos value
# internal cos values {cos_0..cos_7}
# (internal cos 3 has been reserved for CPU-generated traffic)
#
# 802.1p values = {0..7}
traffic.cos_0.priority_remark.8021p = [1]
traffic.cos_1.priority_remark.8021p = [0]
traffic.cos_2.priority_remark.8021p = [3]
traffic.cos_3.priority_remark.8021p = [2]
traffic.cos_4.priority_remark.8021p = [4]
traffic.cos_5.priority_remark.8021p = [5]
traffic.cos_6.priority_remark.8021p = [7]
traffic.cos_7.priority_remark.8021p = [6]
# dscp values = {0..63}
traffic.cos_0.priority_remark.dscp = [1]
traffic.cos_1.priority_remark.dscp = [9]
traffic.cos_2.priority_remark.dscp = [17]
traffic.cos_3.priority_remark.dscp = [25]
traffic.cos_4.priority_remark.dscp = [33]
traffic.cos_5.priority_remark.dscp = [41]
traffic.cos_6.priority_remark.dscp = [49]
traffic.cos_7.priority_remark.dscp = [57]
# Per-port remark packet fields and mapping: applies to the
designated set of ports.
remark.port_group_list = [remark_port_group]
remark.remark_port_group.packet_priority_remark_set = [802.1p,dscp]
remark.remark_port_group.port_set = swp1-swp4,swp6
remark.remark_port_group.cos_0.priority_remark.dscp = [2]
remark.remark_port_group.cos_1.priority_remark.dscp = [10]
remark.remark_port_group.cos_2.priority_remark.dscp = [18]
remark.remark_port_group.cos_3.priority_remark.dscp = [26]
remark.remark_port_group.cos_4.priority_remark.dscp = [34]
remark.remark_port_group.cos_5.priority_remark.dscp = [42]
remark.remark_port_group.cos_6.priority_remark.dscp = [50]
remark.remark_port_group.cos_7.priority_remark.dscp =
[58]
# packet priority values assigned to each internal cos
value
# internal cos values {cos_0..
cos_7}
# (internal cos 3 has been reserved for CPU-generated traffic)
#

```



```
# 802.1p values = {0..7}
traffic.cos_0.priority_source.8021p = [0]
traffic.cos_1.priority_source.8021p = [1]
traffic.cos_2.priority_source.8021p = [2]
traffic.cos_3.priority_source.8021p = []
traffic.cos_4.priority_source.8021p = [3,4]
traffic.cos_5.priority_source.8021p = [5]
traffic.cos_6.priority_source.8021p = [6]
traffic.cos_7.priority_source.8021p = [7]
# dscp values = {0..63}
traffic.cos_0.priority_source.dscp = [0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7]
traffic.cos_1.priority_source.dscp = [8,9,10,11,12,13,14,15]
traffic.cos_2.priority_source.dscp = []
traffic.cos_3.priority_source.dscp = []
traffic.cos_4.priority_source.dscp = []
traffic.cos_5.priority_source.dscp = []
traffic.cos_6.priority_source.dscp = []
traffic.cos_7.priority_source.dscp =
[56,57,58,59,60,61,62,63]
# Per-port source packet fields and mapping: applies to the
designated set of ports.
source.port_group_list = [source_port_group]
source.source_port_group.packet_priority_source_set = [802.1p,dscp]
source.source_port_group.port_set = swp1-swp4,swp6
source.source_port_group.cos_0.priority_source.8021p = [7]
source.source_port_group.cos_1.priority_source.8021p = [6]
source.source_port_group.cos_2.priority_source.8021p = [5]
source.source_port_group.cos_3.priority_source.8021p = [4]
source.source_port_group.cos_4.priority_source.8021p = [3]
source.source_port_group.cos_5.priority_source.8021p = [2]
source.source_port_group.cos_6.priority_source.8021p = [1]
source.source_port_group.cos_7.priority_source.8021p = [0]
# priority groups
traffic.priority_group_list = [control, service, bulk]
# internal cos values assigned to each priority group
# each cos value should be assigned exactly once
# internal cos values {0..7}
priority_group.control.cos_list = [7]
priority_group.service.cos_list = [2]
priority_group.bulk.cos_list = [0,1,3,4,5,6]
# to configure priority flow control on a group of ports:
# -- assign cos value(s) to the cos list
# -- add or replace a port group names in the port group list
# -- for each port group in the list
#     -- populate the port set, e.g.
#         swp1-swp4,swp8,swp50s0-swp50s3
#     -- set a PFC buffer size in bytes for each port in the group
#     -- set the xoff byte limit (buffer limit that triggers PFC frame
transmit to start)
#     -- set the xon byte delta (buffer limit that triggers PFC frame
transmit to stop)
#     -- enable PFC frame transmit and/or PFC frame receive
```

```

# priority flow control
# pfc.port_group_list = [pfc_port_group]
# pfc.pfc_port_group.cos_list = []
# pfc.pfc_port_group.port_set = swp1-swp4,swp6
# pfc.pfc_port_group.port_buffer_bytes = 25000
# pfc.pfc_port_group.xoff_size = 10000
# pfc.pfc_port_group.xon_delta = 2000
# pfc.pfc_port_group.tx_enable = true
# pfc.pfc_port_group.rx_enable = true
# to configure pause on a group of ports:
# -- add or replace port group names in the port group list
# -- for each port group in the list
#   -- populate the port set, e.g.
#     swp1-swp4,swp8,swp50s0-swp50s3
#   -- set a pause buffer size in bytes for each port in the group
#   -- set the xoff byte limit (buffer limit that triggers pause
frames transmit to start)
#   -- set the xon byte delta (buffer limit that triggers pause
frames transmit to stop)
# link pause
# link_pause.port_group_list = [pause_port_group]
# link_pause.pause_port_group.port_set = swp1-swp4,swp6
# link_pause.pause_port_group.port_buffer_bytes = 25000
# link_pause.pause_port_group.xoff_size = 10000
# link_pause.pause_port_group.xon_delta = 2000
# link_pause.pause_port_group.rx_enable = true
# link_pause.pause_port_group.tx_enable = true
# scheduling algorithm: algorithm values = {dwrr}
scheduling.algorithm = dwrr
# traffic group scheduling weight
# weight values = {0..127}
# '0' indicates strict priority
priority_group.control.weight = 0
priority_group.service.weight = 32
priority_group.bulk.weight = 16
# To turn on/off Denial of service (DOS) prevention checks
dos_enable = false
# Cut-through is disabled by default on all chips with the exception
of
# Spectrum. On Spectrum cut-through cannot be disabled.
#cut_through_enable = false
# Enable resilient hashing
#resilient_hash_enable = FALSE
# Resilient hashing flowset entries per ECMP group
# Valid values - 64, 128, 256, 512, 1024
#resilient_hash_entries_ecmp = 128
# Enable symmetric hashing
#symmetric_hash_enable = TRUE
# Set sflow/sample ingress cpu packet rate and burst in packets/sec
# Values: {0..16384}
#sflow.rate = 16384
#sflow.burst = 16384

```

```

#Specify the maximum number of paths per route entry.
# Maximum paths supported is 200.
# Default value 0 takes the number of physical ports as the max path
size.
#ecmp_max_paths = 0
#Specify the hash seed for Equal cost multipath entries
# Default value 0
# Value Rang: {0..4294967295}
#ecmp_hash_seed = 42
# Specify the forwarding table resource allocation profile, applicable
# only on platforms that support universal forwarding resources.
#
# /usr/cumulus/sbin/cl-rsource-query reports the allocated table sizes
# based on the profile setting.
#
# Values: one of {'default', 'l2-heavy', 'v4-lpm-heavy', 'v6-lpm-
heavy'}
# Default value: 'default'
# Note: some devices may support more modes, please consult user
# guide for more details
#
#forwarding_table.profile = default

```



On Mellanox Spectrum switches, packet priority remark must be enabled on the **ingress** port. A packet received on a remark-enabled port is remarked according to the priority mapping configured on the **egress** port. If packet priority remark is configured the same way on every port, the default configuration example above is correct. However, per-port customized configurations require two port groups: one for the ingress ports and one for the egress ports, as below:

```

remark.port_group_list = [ingress_remark_group,
egress_remark_group]
remark.ingress_remark_group.packet_priority_remark_set = [dscp]
remark.remark_port_group.port_set = swp1-swp4,swp6
remark.egress_remark_group.port_set = swp10-swp20
remark.egress_remark_group.cos_0.priority_remark.dscp = [2]
remark.egress_remark_group.cos_1.priority_remark.dscp = [10]
remark.egress_remark_group.cos_2.priority_remark.dscp = [18]
remark.egress_remark_group.cos_3.priority_remark.dscp = [26]
remark.egress_remark_group.cos_4.priority_remark.dscp = [34]
remark.egress_remark_group.cos_5.priority_remark.dscp = [42]
remark.egress_remark_group.cos_6.priority_remark.dscp = [50]
remark.egress_remark_group.cos_7.priority_remark.dscp = [58]

```

## Configuring Traffic Marking through ACL Rules

You can mark traffic for egress packets through `iptables` or `ip6tables` rule classifications. To enable these rules, you do one of the following:

- Mark DSCP values in egress packets.
- Mark 802.1p CoS values in egress packets.

To enable traffic marking, use `c1-acltool`. Add the `-p` option to specify the location of the policy file. By default, if you don't include the `-p` option, `c1-acltool` looks for the policy file in `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/`.

The `iptables`/`ip6tables`-based marking is supported via the following action extension:

```
-j SETQOS --set-dscp 10 --set-cos 5
```

For `ebtables`, the `setqos` keyword must be in lowercase, as in:

```
[ebtables]
-A FORWARD -o swp5 -j setqos --set-cos 5
```

You can specify one of the following targets for `SETQOS/setqos`:

Option	Description
--set-cos INT	Sets the datapath resource/queuing class value. Values are defined in <a href="#">IEEE_P802.1p</a> .
--set-dscp value	Sets the DSCP field in packet header to a value, which can be either a decimal or hex value.
--set-dscp-class class	Sets the DSCP field in the packet header to the value represented by the DiffServ class value. This class can be EF, BE or any of the CSxx or AFxx classes.



You can specify either `--set-dscp` or `--set-dscp-class`, but not both.

Here are two example rules:

```
[iptables]
-t mangle -A FORWARD --in-interface swp+ -p tcp --dport bgp -j SETQOS
--set-dscp 10 --set-cos 5

[ip6tables]
-t mangle -A FORWARD --in-interface swp+ -j SETQOS --set-dscp 10
```

You can put the rule in either the `mangle` table or the default `filter` table; the `mangle` table and filter table are put into separate TCAM slices in the hardware.

To put the rule in the `mangle` table, include `-t mangle`; to put the rule in the `filter` table, omit `-t mangle`.



## Configuring Priority Flow Control

Priority flow control, as defined in the [IEEE 802.1Qbb standard](#), provides a link-level flow control mechanism that can be controlled independently for each Class of Service (CoS) with the intention to ensure no data frames are lost when congestion occurs in a bridged network.



PFC is not supported on switches with the Helix4 ASIC.

PFC is a layer 2 mechanism that prevents congestion by throttling packet transmission. When PFC is enabled for received packets on a set of switch ports, the switch detects congestion in the ingress buffer of the receiving port and signals the upstream switch to stop sending traffic. If the upstream switch has PFC enabled for packet transmission on the designated priorities, it responds to the downstream switch and stops sending those packets for a period of time.

PFC operates between two adjacent neighbor switches; it does not provide end-to-end flow control. However, when an upstream neighbor throttles packet transmission, it could build up packet congestion and propagate PFC frames further upstream: eventually the sending server could receive PFC frames and stop sending traffic for a time.

The PFC mechanism can be enabled for individual switch priorities on specific switch ports for RX and/or TX traffic. The switch port's ingress buffer occupancy is used to measure congestion. If congestion is present, the switch transmits flow control frames to the upstream switch. Packets with priority values that do not have PFC configured are not counted during congestion detection; neither do they get throttled by the upstream switch when it receives flow control frames.

PFC congestion detection is implemented on the switch using xoff and xon threshold values for the specific ingress buffer which is used by the targeted switch priorities. When a packet enters the buffer and the buffer occupancy is above the xoff threshold, the switch transmits an Ethernet PFC frame to the upstream switch to signal packet transmission should stop. When the buffer occupancy drops below the xon threshold, the switch sends another PFC frame upstream to signal that packet transmission can resume. (PFC frames contain a quanta value to indicate a timeout value for the upstream switch: packet transmission can resume after the timer has expired, or when a PFC frame with quanta == 0 is received from the downstream switch.)

After the downstream switch has sent a PFC frame upstream, it continues to receive packets until the upstream switch receives and responds to the PFC frame. The downstream ingress buffer must be large enough to store those additional packets after the xoff threshold has been reached.



Before Cumulus Linux 3.1.1, PFC was designated as a *lossless* priority group. The lossless priority group has been removed from Cumulus Linux.

Priority flow control is fully supported on both [Broadcom](#) and [Mellanox switches](#).

PFC is disabled by default in Cumulus Linux. Enabling priority flow control (PFC) requires configuring the following settings in `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf` on the switch:

- Specifying the name of the port group in `pfc.port_group_list` in brackets; for example, `pfc.port_group_list = [pfc_port_group]`.
- Assigning a CoS value to the port group in `pfc.pfc_port_group.cos_list` setting. Note that `pfc_port_group` is the name of a port group you specified above and is used throughout the following settings.
- Populating the port group with its member ports in `pfc.pfc_port_group.port_set`.

- Setting a PFC buffer size in `pfc.pfc_port_group.port_buffer_bytes`. This is the maximum number of bytes allocated for storing bursts of packets, guaranteed at the ingress port. The default is `25000` bytes.
- Setting the xoff byte limit in `pfc.pfc_port_group.xoff_size`. This is a threshold for the PFC buffer; when this limit is reached, an xoff transition is initiated, signaling the upstream port to stop sending traffic, during which time packets continue to arrive due to the latency of the communication. The default is `10000` bytes.
- Setting the xon delta limit in `pfc.pfc_port_group.xon_delta`. This is the number of bytes to subtract from the xoff limit, which results in a second threshold at which the egress port resumes sending traffic. After the xoff limit is reached and the upstream port stops sending traffic, the buffer begins to drain. When the buffer reaches `8000` bytes (assuming default xoff and xon settings), the egress port signals that it can start receiving traffic again. The default is `2000` bytes.
- Enabling the egress port to signal the upstream port to stop sending traffic (`pfc.pfc_port_group.tx_enable`). The default is `true`.
- Enabling the egress port to receive notifications and act on them (`pfc.pfc_port_group.rx_enable`). The default is `true`.
- The switch priority value(s) are mapped to the specific ingress buffer for each targeted switch port. Cumulus Linux looks at either the 802.1p bits or the IP layer DSCP bits depending on which is configured in the `traffic.conf` file to map packets to internal switch priority values.

The following configuration example shows PFC configured for ports swp1 through swp4 and swp6:

```
# to configure priority flow control on a group of ports:
# -- assign cos value(s) to the cos list
# -- add or replace a port group names in the port group list
# -- for each port group in the list
#   -- populate the port set, e.g.
#     swp1-swp4,swp8,swp50s0-swp50s3
#   -- set a PFC buffer size in bytes for each port in the group
#   -- set the xoff byte limit (buffer limit that triggers PFC frame
transmit to start)
#   -- set the xon byte delta (buffer limit that triggers PFC frame
transmit to stop)
#   -- enable PFC frame transmit and/or PFC frame receive
# priority flow control
pfc.port_group_list = [pfc_port_group]
pfc.pfc_port_group.cos_list = []
pfc.pfc_port_group.port_set = swp1-swp4,swp6
pfc.pfc_port_group.port_buffer_bytes = 25000
pfc.pfc_port_group.xoff_size = 10000
pfc.pfc_port_group.xon_delta = 2000
pfc.pfc_port_group.tx_enable = true
pfc.pfc_port_group.rx_enable = true
```

## *Understanding Port Groups*

A *port group* refers to one or more sequences of contiguous ports. Multiple port groups can be defined by:

- Adding a comma-separated list of port group names to the `port_group_list`.



- Adding the port\_set, rx\_enable, and tx\_enable configuration lines for each port group.

You can specify the set of ports in a port group in comma-separated sequences of contiguous ports; you can see which ports are contiguous in `/var/lib/cumulus/porttab`. The syntax supports:

- A single port (`swp1s0` or `swp5`)
- A sequence of regular swp ports (`swp2-swp5`)
- A sequence within a breakout swp port (`swp6s0-swp6s3`)
- A sequence of regular and breakout ports, provided they are all in a contiguous range. For example:

```
...
swp2
swp3
swp4
swp5
swp6s0
swp6s1
swp6s2
swp6s3
swp7
...
```

Restart `switchd` (see page 193) to allow the PFC configuration changes to take effect:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart switchd.service
```

## Configuring Link Pause

The PAUSE frame is a flow control mechanism that halts the transmission of the transmitter for a specified period of time. A server or other network node within the data center may be receiving traffic faster than it can handle it, thus the PAUSE frame. In Cumulus Linux, individual ports can be configured to execute link pause by:

- Transmitting pause frames when its ingress buffers become congested (TX pause enable) and/or
- Responding to received pause frames (RX pause enable).

Link pause is disabled by default. Enabling link pause requires configuring settings in `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf`, similar to how you configure [priority flow control](#) (see page 250). The settings are explained in that section as well.

Here is an example configuration which turns on both types of link pause for `swp1` through `swp4` and `swp6`:

```
# to configure pause on a group of ports:
# -- add or replace port group names in the port group list
# -- for each port group in the list
#   -- populate the port set, e.g.
#     swp1-swp4,swp8,swp50s0-swp50s3
#   -- set a pause buffer size in bytes for each port in the group
```



```
#      -- set the xoff byte limit (buffer limit that triggers pause
frames transmit to start)
#      -- set the xon byte delta (buffer limit that triggers pause
frames transmit to stop)

# link pause
link_pause.port_group_list = [pause_port_group]
link_pause.pause_port_group.port_set = swp1-swp4,swp6
link_pause.pause_port_group.port_buffer_bytes = 25000
link_pause.pause_port_group.xoff_size = 10000
link_pause.pause_port_group.xon_delta = 2000
link_pause.pause_port_group.rx_enable = true
link_pause.pause_port_group.tx_enable = true
```

Restart `switchd` (see page 193) to allow link pause configuration changes to take effect:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart switchd.service
```

## Configuring Cut-through Mode and Store and Forward Switching

Cut-through mode is disabled in Cumulus Linux by default on switches with Broadcom ASICs. With cut-through mode enabled and link pause is asserted, Cumulus Linux generates a TOVR and TUFL ERROR; certain error counters increment on a given physical port.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ethtool -S swp49 | grep Error
HwIfInDot3LengthErrors: 0
HwIfInErrors: 0
HwIfInDot3FrameErrors: 0
SoftInErrors: 0
SoftInFrameErrors: 0
HwIfOutErrors: 35495749
SoftOutErrors: 0

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ethtool -S swp50 | grep Error
HwIfInDot3LengthErrors: 3038098
HwIfInErrors: 297595762
HwIfInDot3FrameErrors: 293710518
```

To work around this issue, disable link pause or disable cut-through mode in `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf`.

To disable link pause, comment out the `link_pause*` section in `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nano /etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf
#link_pause.port_group_list = [port_group_0]
#link_pause.port_group_0.port_set = swp45-swp54
```

```
#link_pause.port_group_0.rx_enable = true  
#link_pause.port_group_0.tx_enable = true
```

To enable store and forward switching, set `cut_through_enable` to `false` in `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nano /etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf  
cut_through_enable = false
```

## Configuring Explicit Congestion Notification

*Explicit Congestion Notification* (ECN) is defined by [RFC 3168](#). ECN gives a Cumulus Linux switch the ability to mark a packet to signal impending congestion instead of dropping the packet outright, which is how TCP typically behaves when ECN is not enabled.

ECN is a layer 3 end-to-end congestion notification mechanism only. Packets can be marked as *ECN-capable transport* (ECT) by the sending server. If congestion is observed by any switch while the packet is getting forwarded, the ECT-enabled packet can be marked by the switch to indicate the congestion. The end receiver can respond to the ECN-marked packets by signaling the sending server to slow down transmission. The sending server marks a packet *ECT* by setting the least 2 significant bits in an IP header `DiffServ` (ToS) field to `01` or `10`. A packet that has the least 2 significant bits set to `00` indicates a non-ECT-enabled packet.

The ECN mechanism on a switch only marks packets to notify the end receiver. It does not take any other action or change packet handling in any way, nor does it respond to packets that have already been marked ECN by an upstream switch.



**On Trident II switches only**, if ECN is enabled on a specific queue, the ASIC also enables WRED on the same queue. If the packet is ECT marked (the ECN bits are `01` or `10`), the ECN mechanism executes as described above. However, if it is entering an ECN-enabled queue but is not ECT marked (the ECN bits are `00`), then the WRED mechanism uses the same threshold and probability values to decide whether to drop the packet. Packets entering a non-ECN-enabled queue do not get marked or dropped due to ECN or WRED in any case.

ECN is implemented on the switch using minimum and maximum threshold values for the egress queue length. When a packet enters the queue and the average queue length is between the minimum and maximum threshold values, a configurable probability value will determine whether the packet will be marked. If the average queue length is above the maximum threshold value, the packet is always marked.

The downstream switches with ECN enabled perform the same actions as the traffic is received. If the ECN bits are set, they remain set. The only way to overwrite ECN bits is to enable it — that is, set the ECN bits to `11`.

ECN is supported on [Broadcom Tomahawk](#), [Trident II+](#) and [Trident II](#), and [Mellanox Spectrum switches](#) only.

Click to learn how to configure ECN ...

ECN is disabled by default in Cumulus Linux. You can enable ECN for individual switch priorities on specific switch ports. ECN requires configuring the following settings in `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf` on the switch:

- Specifying the name of the port group in `ecn.port_group_list` in brackets; for example, `ecn.port_group_list = [ecn_port_group]`.

- Assigning a CoS value to the port group in `ecn.ecn_port_group.cos_list`. If the CoS value of a packet matches the value of this setting, then ECN is applied. Note that `ecn_port_group` is the name of a port group you specified above.
- Populating the port group with its member ports (`ecn.ecn_port_group.port_set`), where `ecn_port_group` is the name of the port group you specified above. Congestion is measured on the egress port queue for the ports listed here, using the average queue length: if congestion is present, a packet entering the queue may be marked to indicate that congestion was observed. Marking a packet involves setting the least 2 significant bits in the IP header DiffServ (ToS) field to 11.
- The switch priority value(s) are mapped to specific egress queues for the target switch ports.
- The `ecn.ecn_port_group.probability` value indicates the probability of a packet being marked if congestion is experienced.

The following configuration example shows ECN configured for ports swp1 through swp4 and swp6:

```
# Explicit Congestion Notification
# to configure ECN on a group of ports:
# -- add or replace port group names in the port group list
# -- assign cos value(s) to the cos list *ECN will only be applied
to traffic matching this COS*
# -- for each port group in the list
#     -- populate the port set, e.g.
#         swp1-swp4,swp8,swp50s0-swp50s3
ecn.port_group_list = [ecn_port_group]
ecn.ecn_port_group.cos_list = [0]
ecn.ecn_port_group.port_set = swp1-swp4,swp6
ecn.ecn_port_group.min_threshold_bytes = 40000
ecn.ecn_port_group.max_threshold_bytes = 200000
ecn.ecn_port_group.probability = 100
```

Restart `switchd` (see page 193) to allow the ECN configuration changes to take effect:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart switchd.service
```

## Related Information

- [iptables-extensions man page](#)

## Configuring Hardware-enabled DDOS Protection

The DDOS protection mechanism protects data plane, control plane and management plane traffic in the switch. It drops any packets that match one or more of the following criteria while incurring no performance impact:

- Source IP address matches the destination address for IPv4 and IPv6 packets
- Source MAC address matches the destination MAC address
- Unfragmented or first fragment SYN packets with a source port of 0-1023
- TCP packets with control flags =0 and seq number == 0

- TCP packets with FIN, URG and PSH bits set and seq number == 0
- TCP packets with both SYN and FIN bits set
- TCP source PORT matches the destination PORT
- UDP source PORT matches the destination PORT
- First TCP fragment with partial TCP header
- TCP header has fragment offset value of 1
- ICMPv6 ping packets payload larger than programmed value of ICMP max size
- ICMPv4 ping packets payload larger than programmed value of ICMP max size
- Fragmented ICMP packet
- IPv6 fragment lower than programmed minimum IPv6 packet size



This configuration option is only available for Broadcom Trident, Trident II, and Tomahawk chipsets.

Cumulus Networks recommends enabling this feature when deploying a switch with the above mentioned ASICs, as hardware-based DDOS protection is disabled by default. Although Cumulus recommends enabling all of the above criteria, they can be individually enabled if desired.

## Configure Persistent DDOS Protection

1. Open the `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf` file in a text editor.
2. Enable DOS prevention checks by changing the following value to `true`, and save the file:

```
# To turn on/off Denial of Service (DOS) prevention checks
dos_enable = true
```

3. Open the `/usr/lib/python2.7/dist-packages/cumulus/__chip_config/bcm/datapath.conf` file in a text editor.
4. Set the following checks to `true`, and save the file:

```
# Enabling/disabling Denial of service (DOS) prevention checks
# To change the default configuration:
# enable/disable the individual DOS checks.
dos.sip_eq_dip = true
dos.smac_eq_dmac = true
dos.tcp_hdr_partial = true
dos.tcp_syn_frag = true
dos.tcp_ports_eq = true
dos.tcp_flags_syn_fin = true
dos.tcp_flags_fup_seq0 = true
dos.tcp_offset1 = true
dos.tcp_ctrl0_seq0 = true
dos.udp_ports_eq = true
```

```
dos.icmp_frag = true
dos.icmpv4_length = true
dos.icmpv6_length = true
dos.ipv6_min_frag = true
```

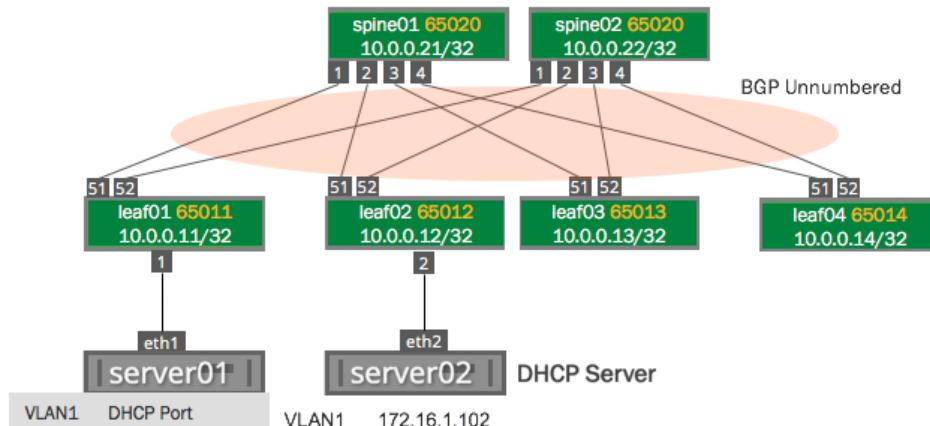
5. Restart `switchd` to enable DOS protection:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart switchd.service
```

## Configuring DHCP Relays

You can configure DHCP relays for IPv4 and IPv6.

To run DHCP for both IPv4 and IPv6, initiate the DHCP relay once for IPv4 and once for IPv6. Following are the configurations on the server hosts, DHCP relay and DHCP server using the following topology:



The `dhcpd` and `dhcrelay` services are disabled by default. After you finish configuring the DHCP relays and servers, you need to start those services.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Configuring IPv4 DHCP Relays (see page 265)
  - Using DHCP Option 82 (see page 266)
- Configuring IPv6 DHCP Relays (see page 266)
- Configuring Multiple DHCP Relays (see page 267)
- Configuring a DHCP Relay with VRR (see page 267)
- Configuring the DHCP Relay Service Manually (Advanced) (see page 269)
- Troubleshooting the DHCP Relays (see page 269)



- Looking at the Log on Switch where DHCP Relay Is Configured (see page 270)

## Configuring IPv4 DHCP Relays

Configure `isc-dhcp-relay` using [NCLU \(see page 85\)](#), specifying the IP addresses to each DHCP server and the interfaces that are used as the uplinks.

In the examples below, the DHCP server IP address is 172.16.1.102, VLAN 1 (the SVI is `vlan1`) and the uplinks are `swp51` and `swp52`.



You configure a DHCP relay on a per-VLAN basis, specifying the SVI, not the parent bridge — in our example, you would specify `vlan1` as the SVI for VLAN 1; do not specify the bridge named `bridge` in this case.

As per [RFC 3046](#), you can specify as many server IP addresses that can fit in 255 octets, specifying each address only once.

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add dhcp relay interface swp51
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add dhcp relay interface swp52
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add dhcp relay interface vlan1
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add dhcp relay server 172.16.1.102
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net pending
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration in the `/etc/default/isc-dhcp-relay` file:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ cat /etc/default/isc-dhcp-relay
SERVERS="172.16.1.102"
INTF_CMD="-i vlan1 -i swp51 -i swp52"
OPTIONS=""
```

After you've finished configuring the DHCP relay, restart then enable the `dhcrelay` service so the configuration persists between reboots:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo systemctl restart dhcrelay.service
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo systemctl enable dhcrelay.service
```

To see the status of the DHCP relay, use the `sudo systemctl status dhcrelay.service` command:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo systemctl status dhcrelay.service
dhcrelay.service - DHCPv4 Relay Agent Daemon
   Loaded: loaded (/lib/systemd/system/dhcrelay.service; enabled)
     Active: active (running) since Fri 2016-12-02 17:09:10 UTC; 2min
            16s ago
       Docs: man:dhcrelay(8)
      Main PID: 1997 (dhcrelay)
```



```
CGroup: /system.slice/dhcrelay.service
        1997 /usr/sbin/dhcrelay --nl -d -q -i vlan1 -i swp51 -i
        swp52 172.16.1.102
```

## Using DHCP Option 82

DHCP relays can be configured to inject the `circuit-id` field with the `-a` option, which you add to the `OPTIONS` line in `/etc/default/isc-dhcp-relay`. By default, the ingress SVI interface that the relayed DHCP discover packet is processed against is injected into this field. You can change this behavior by adding the `--use-pif-circuit-id` option. With this option, the physical switch port (swp) that the discover packet arrives on is placed in the `circuit-id` field.

## Configuring IPv6 DHCP Relays

If you're configuring IPv6, the `/etc/default/isc-dhcp-relay6` variables file has a different format than the `/etc/default/isc-dhcp-relay` file for IPv4 DHCP relays. Make sure to configure the variables appropriately by editing this file.



You cannot use NCLU to configure IPv6 relays.

```
cumulus@leaf01:$ sudo nano /etc/default/isc-dhcp-relay6
SERVERS=" -u 2001:db8:100::2%swp51 -u 2001:db8:100::2%swp52"
INTF_CMD="-l vlan1"
```

After you've finished configuring the DHCP relay, save your changes, restart the `dhcrelay6` service, then enable the `dhcrelay6` service so the configuration persists between reboots:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo systemctl restart dhcrelay6.service
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo systemctl enable dhcrelay6.service
```

To see the status of the IPv6 DHCP relay, use the `systemctl status dhcrelay6.service` command:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo systemctl status dhcrelay6.service
dhcrelay6.service - DHCPv6 Relay Agent Daemon
   Loaded: loaded (/lib/systemd/system/dhcrelay6.service; disabled)
     Active: active (running) since Fri 2016-12-02 21:00:26 UTC; 1s ago
       Docs: man:dhcrelay(8)
 Main PID: 6152 (dhcrelay)
    CGroup: /system.slice/dhcrelay6.service
              6152 /usr/sbin/dhcrelay -6 --nl -d -q -l vlan1 -u 2001:db8:
100::2 swp51 -u 2001:db8:100::2 swp52
```



## Configuring Multiple DHCP Relays

Cumulus Linux supports configuring multiple DHCP relay daemons on a switch, to enable relaying of packets from different bridges to different upstreams.

1. As the sudo user, open /etc/vrf/systemd.conf in a text editor, and remove dhcrelay.
2. Run the following command to reload the systemd files:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl daemon-reload
```

3. Create a config file in /etc/default using the following format for each dhcrelay: isc-dhcp-relay-<dhcp-name>. An example file can be seen below:

```
# Defaults for isc-dhcp-relay initscript# sourced by /etc/init.d  
/isc-dhcp-relay  
# installed at /etc/default/isc-dhcp-relay by the maintainer  
scripts  
#  
# This is a POSIX shell fragment  
#  
# What servers should the DHCP relay forward requests to?  
SERVERS="102.0.0.2"  
# On what interfaces should the DHCP relay (dhcrelay) serve DHCP  
requests?  
# Always include the interface towards the DHCP server.  
# This variable requires a -i for each interface configured  
above.  
# This will be used in the actual dhcrelay command  
# For example, "-i eth0 -i eth1"  
INTF_CMD="-i swp2s2 -i swp2s3"  
# Additional options that are passed to the DHCP relay daemon?  
OPTIONS=""
```

4. Run the following command to start a dhcrelay instance, replacing dhcp-name with the instance name or number:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start dhcrelay@<dhcp-name>
```

## Configuring a DHCP Relay with VRR

If a DHCP relay is configured and you want to enable [virtual router redundancy \(VRR\)](#) (see page 386) on the SVI, then you must include the VRR interface in the INTF\_CMD field in the /etc/default/isc-dhcp-relay file. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan 500 ip address 192.0.2.252/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan 500 ip address-virtual 00:00:5e:00:01:01 192.0.2.254/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net add dhcp relay interface vlan500
cumulus@switch:~$ net add dhcp relay interface vlan500-v0
cumulus@switch:~$ net add dhcp relay server 172.16.1.102
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration in the /etc/network/interfaces file:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/network/interfaces
...
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-vids 500
    bridge-vlan-aware yes

auto vlan500
iface vlan500
    address 192.0.2.252/24
    address-virtual 00:00:5e:00:01:01 192.0.2.254/24
    vlan-id 500
    vlan-raw-device bridge

auto vlan500-v0
iface vlan500-v0
```

They also create the following configuration in the /etc/default/isc-dhcp-relay file:

```
cumulus@leaf02:mgmt-vrf:~$ cat /etc/default/isc-dhcp-relay
# Defaults for isc-dhcp-relay initscript
# sourced by /etc/init.d/isc-dhcp-relay
# installed at /etc/default/isc-dhcp-relay by the maintainer scripts
#
# This is a POSIX shell fragment
#
# What servers should the DHCP relay forward requests to?
SERVERS="172.16.1.102"
```

```
# On what interfaces should the DHCP relay (dhrelay) serve DHCP
requests?
# Always include the interface towards the DHCP server.
# This variable requires a -i for each interface configured above.
# This will be used in the actual dhcrelay command
# For example, "-i eth0 -i eth1"
INTF_CMD="-i vlan500 -i vlan500-v0"

# Additional options that are passed to the DHCP relay daemon?
OPTIONS=""
```

## Configuring the DHCP Relay Service Manually (Advanced)

Configuring the DHCP service manually ...

By default, Cumulus Linux configures the DHCP relay service automatically. However, in older versions of Cumulus Linux, you needed to edit the `dhcrelay.service` file as described below. The IPv4 `dhcrelay.service` *Unit* script calls `/etc/default/isc-dhcp-relay` to find launch variables.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /lib/systemd/system/dhcrelay.service
[Unit]
Description=DHCPv4 Relay Agent Daemon
Documentation=man:dhcrelay(8)
After=network-online.target networking.service syslog.service
[Service]
Type=simple
EnvironmentFile=/etc/default/isc-dhcp-relay
# Here, we are expecting the INTF_CMD to contain
# the -i for each interface specified,
# e.g. "-i eth0 -i swp1"
ExecStart=/usr/sbin/dhcrelay -d -q $INTF_CMD $SERVERS $OPTIONS
[Install]
WantedBy=multi-user.target
```

The `/etc/default/isc-dhcp-relay` variables file needs to reference both interfaces participating in DHCP relay (facing the server and facing the client) and the IP address of the server. If the client-facing interface is a bridge port, specify the switch virtual interface (SVI) name if using a [VLAN-aware bridge](#) (see page 328) (for example, `vlan100`), or the bridge name if using traditional bridging (for example, `br100`).

## Troubleshooting the DHCP Relays

If you are experiencing issues with the DHCP relay, you can run the following commands to determine whether or not the issue is with `systemd`. The following commands manually activate the DHCP relay process, and they do not persist when you reboot the switch:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ /usr/sbin/dhcrelay -4 -i <interface_facing_host>
<ip_address_dhcp_server> -i <interface_facing_dhcp_server>
```



```
cumulus@switch:~$ /usr/sbin/dhcrelay -6 -l <interface_facing_host> -u <ip_address_dhcp_server>%<interface_facing_dhcp_server>
```

For example:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ /usr/sbin/dhcrelay -4 -i vlan1 172.16.1.102 -i swp51  
cumulus@leaf01:~$ /usr/sbin/dhcrelay -6 -l vlan1 -u 2001:db8:100::2%  
swp51
```

See `man dhcrelay` for more information.

## *Looking at the Log on Switch where DHCP Relay Is Configured*

Use the `journalctl` command to look at the behavior on the Cumulus Linux switch that is providing the DHCP relay functionality:

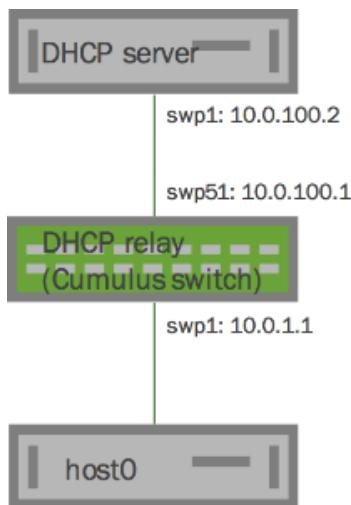
```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo journalctl -l -n 20 | grep dhcrelay  
Dec 05 20:58:55 leaf01 dhcrelay[6152]: sending upstream swp52  
Dec 05 20:58:55 leaf01 dhcrelay[6152]: sending upstream swp51  
Dec 05 20:58:55 leaf01 dhcrelay[6152]: Relaying Reply to fe80::4638:  
39ff:fe00:3 port 546 down.  
Dec 05 20:58:55 leaf01 dhcrelay[6152]: Relaying Reply to fe80::4638:  
39ff:fe00:3 port 546 down.  
Dec 05 21:03:55 leaf01 dhcrelay[6152]: Relaying Renew from fe80::4638:  
39ff:fe00:3 port 546 going up.  
Dec 05 21:03:55 leaf01 dhcrelay[6152]: sending upstream swp52  
Dec 05 21:03:55 leaf01 dhcrelay[6152]: sending upstream swp51  
Dec 05 21:03:55 leaf01 dhcrelay[6152]: Relaying Reply to fe80::4638:  
39ff:fe00:3 port 546 down.  
Dec 05 21:03:55 leaf01 dhcrelay[6152]: Relaying Reply to fe80::4638:  
39ff:fe00:3 port 546 down.
```

You can run the command `journalctl` command with the `--since` flag to specify a time period:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo journalctl -l --since "2 minutes ago" | grep  
dhcrelay  
Dec 05 21:08:55 leaf01 dhcrelay[6152]: Relaying Renew from fe80::4638:  
39ff:fe00:3 port 546 going up.  
Dec 05 21:08:55 leaf01 dhcrelay[6152]: sending upstream swp52  
Dec 05 21:08:55 leaf01 dhcrelay[6152]: sending upstream swp51
```

## Configuring DHCP Servers

To run DHCP for both IPv4 and IPv6, you need to initiate the DHCP server twice: once for IPv4 and once for IPv6. The following configuration uses the following topology for the host, DHCP relay and DHCP server:



For the configurations used in this chapter, the DHCP server is a switch running Cumulus Linux; however, the DHCP server can also be located on a dedicated server in your environment.



The `dhcpd` and `dhcrelay` services are disabled by default. After you finish configuring the DHCP relays and servers, you need to start those services.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Configuring DHCP Server on Cumulus Linux Switches (see page 271)
  - Configuring the IPv4 DHCP Server (see page 271)
  - Configuring the IPv6 DHCP Server (see page 272)
- Troubleshooting the Log from a DHCP Server (see page 273)

## Configuring DHCP Server on Cumulus Linux Switches

You can use the following sample configurations for `dhcp.conf` and `dhcpd6.conf` to start both an IPv4 and an IPv6 DHCP server. The configuration files for the two DHCP server instances need to have two pools:

- Pool 1: Subnet overlaps interfaces
- Pool 2: Subnet that includes the addresses

### Configuring the IPv4 DHCP Server

In a text editor, edit the `dhcpd.conf` file with a configuration similar to the following:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/dhcp/dhcpd.conf
ddns-update-style none;

default-lease-time 600;
max-lease-time 7200;

```



```
subnet 10.0.100.0 netmask 255.255.255.0 {  
}  
subnet 10.0.1.0 netmask 255.255.255.0 {  
    range 10.0.1.50 10.0.1.60;  
}
```

Just as you did with the DHCP relay scripts, edit the DHCP server configuration file so it can launch the DHCP server when the system boots. Here is a sample configuration:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/default/isc-dhcp-server  
DHCPD_CONF="-cf /etc/dhcp/dhcpd.conf"  
  
INTERFACES="swp1"
```

After you've finished configuring the DHCP server, enable the `dhcpd` service immediately:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable dhcpd.service
```

## Configuring the IPv6 DHCP Server

In a text editor, edit the `dhcpd6.conf` file with a configuration similar to the following:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/dhcp/dhcpd6.conf  
ddns-update-style none;  
  
default-lease-time 600;  
max-lease-time 7200;  
  
subnet6 2001:db8:100::/64 {  
}  
subnet6 2001:db8:1::/64 {  
    range6 2001:db8:1::100 2001:db8:1::200;  
}
```

Just as you did with the DHCP relay scripts, edit the DHCP server configuration file so it can launch the DHCP server when the system boots. Here is a sample configuration:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/default/isc-dhcp-server6  
DHCPD_CONF="-cf /etc/dhcp/dhcpd6.conf"  
  
INTERFACES="swp1"
```



You cannot use NCLU to configure IPv6 DHCP servers.



After you've finished configuring the DHCP server, enable the `dhcpd6` service immediately:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable dhcpcd6.service
```

## Troubleshooting the Log from a DHCP Server

The DHCP server knows whether a DHCP request is a relay or a non-relay DHCP request. On isc-dhcp-server, for example, it is possible to tail the log and look at the behavior firsthand:

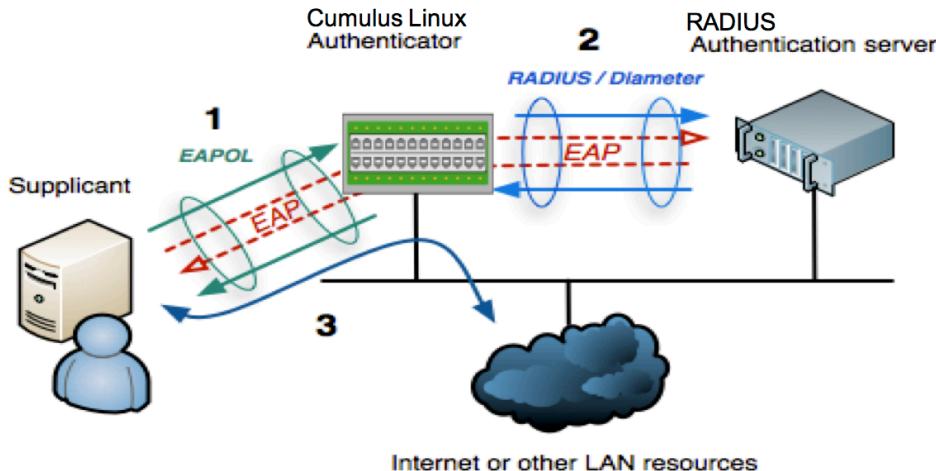
```
cumulus@server02:~$ sudo tail /var/log/syslog | grep dhcpcd
2016-12-05T19:03:35.379633+00:00 server02 dhcpcd: Relay-forward
message from 2001:db8:101::1 port 547, link address 2001:db8:101::1,
peer address fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:3
2016-12-05T19:03:35.380081+00:00 server02 dhcpcd: Advertise NA:
address 2001:db8:1::110 to client with duid 00:01:00:01:1f:d8:75:3a:
44:38:39:00:00:03 iaid = 956301315 valid for 600 seconds
2016-12-05T19:03:35.380470+00:00 server02 dhcpcd: Sending Relay-reply
to 2001:db8:101::1 port 547
```

## 802.1X Interfaces

The [IEEE 802.1X protocol](#) provides a method of authenticating a client (called a *supplicant*) over wired media. It also provides access for individual MAC addresses on a switch (called the *authenticator*) after those MAC addresses have been authenticated by an authentication server — typically a [RADIUS](#) (see page 132) (Remote Authentication Dial In User Service, defined by [RFC 2865](#)) server.

A Cumulus Linux switch acts as an intermediary between the clients connected to the wired ports and the authentication server, which is reachable over the existing network. EAPOL (Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP) over LAN — EtherType value of 0x888E, defined by [RFC 3748](#)) operates on top of the data link layer; it is used by the switch to communicate with supplicants connected to the switch ports.

Cumulus Linux implements 802.1X through the Debian `hostapd` package, which has been modified to provide the PAE (port access entity).



## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Supported Features and Limitations (see page 274)
- Installing the 802.1X Package (see page 275)
- Configuring 802.1X Interfaces (see page 275)
  - Configuring Accounting and Authentication Ports (see page 277)
  - Configuring MAC Authentication Bypass (see page 277)
  - Configuring a Parking VLAN (see page 277)
- Verifying Connections from Linux Suplicants (see page 278)
- Configuring Dynamic VLAN Assignments (see page 278)
- Troubleshooting (see page 279)
  - Advanced Troubleshooting (see page 281)
- Configuring the RADIUS Server (see page 282)

## Supported Features and Limitations

- This feature is supported on 1G Broadcom-based platforms only.
- The protocol is supported on physical interfaces only (bridged/access only and routed interfaces) — such as `swp1` or `swp2s0`; these interfaces cannot be part of a bond. However, 802.1X is **not** supported on `eth0`.
- This feature works only with **VLAN-aware bridges** (see page 328).
- Enabling or disabling 802.1X capability on ports results in `hostapd` reloading. Existing authorized sessions will not be reset.
- MAC authentication bypass (MAB) and parking VLAN require a bridge access port interface.
- Changing any of the following RADIUS parameters restarts `hostapd`, which forces existing, authorized users to re-authenticate:
  - The RADIUS server IP address, shared secret, authentication port or accounting port
  - Parking VLAN ID

- MAB activation delay
- EAP reauthentication period
- Removing all 802.1X interfaces



Changing the interface dot1x, dot1x mab, or dot1x parking-vlan settings do not reset existing authorized user ports.

- Up to three RADIUS servers can be configured, for failover purposes.



Do not use a Cumulus Linux switch as the RADIUS server.

- This has been tested with only a few `wpa_supplicant` (Debian) and Windows7 supplicants.
- RADIUS authentication is supported with FreeRadius and Cisco ACS.
- Supports simple login/password, PEAP/MSCHAPv2 (Win7) and EAP-TLS (Debian).

## Installing the 802.1X Package

If you upgraded Cumulus Linux from a version earlier than 3.3.0 instead of performing a full binary install, you need to install the `hostapd` package on your switch:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get update
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get install hostapd
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get upgrade
```

## Configuring 802.1X Interfaces

NCLU (see page 85) handles all the configuration of 802.1X interfaces, updating `hostapd` and other components so you don't have to manually modify configuration files. All the interfaces share the same RADIUS server settings.

The 802.1X-specific settings are:

- **accounting-port**: RADIUS accounting parameters, which defaults to 1813.
- **authentication-port**: RADIUS authentication port, which defaults to 1812.
- **server-ip**: RADIUS Server IPv4 or IPv6 address, which has no default, but is required.
- **shared-secret**: RADIUS shared secret, which has no default, but is required.

Make sure you configure the RADIUS server before the interfaces. See below (see page 282) for details.

1. Create a simple interface bridge configuration on the switch and add the switch ports that are members of the bridge. You can use glob syntax to add a range of interfaces. The MAB and parking VLAN configurations require interfaces to be bridge access ports.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge bridge ports swp1-4
```



2. Configure the settings for the 802.1X RADIUS server, including its IP address and shared secret:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add dot1x radius server-ip 127.0.0.1  
cumulus@switch:~$ net add dot1x radius shared-secret testing123
```

3. Enable 802.1X on interfaces, then review and commit the new configuration:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1-4 dot1x  
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending  
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration snippet in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/network/interfaces  
  
...  
  
auto swp1  
iface swp1  
    bridge-learning off  
  
auto swp2  
iface swp2  
    bridge-learning off  
  
auto swp3  
iface swp3  
    bridge-learning off  
  
auto swp4  
iface swp4  
    bridge-learning off  
...  
  
auto bridge  
iface bridge  
    bridge-ports swp1 swp2 swp3 swp4  
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
```

Verify the 802.1X configuration, showing the configuration and its status:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show configuration commands | grep dot1x  
dot1x radius server-ip 127.0.0.1  
dot1x radius authentication-port 1812
```



```
dot1x radius accounting-port 1813
dot1x radius shared-secret testing123
interface swp2,swp3,swp1,swp4 dot1x

cumulus@switch:~$ net show dot1x status
IEEE802.1X Enabled Status: enabled
IEEE802.1X Active Status: active
```

## Configuring Accounting and Authentication Ports

You can configure the accounting and authentication ports in Cumulus Linux. The default values are `1813` for the accounting port and `1812` for the authentication port.

You can also change the reauthentication period for Extensible Authentication Protocol (EAP). The period defaults to `0` (no re-authentication is performed by the switch).

To use different ports, do the following:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add dot1x radius authentication-port 2812
cumulus@switch:~$ net add dot1x radius accounting-port 2813
cumulus@switch:~$ net add dot1x eap-reauth-period 86400
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

## Configuring MAC Authentication Bypass

MAC authentication bypass (MAB) enables bridge ports to allow devices to bypass authentication based on their MAC address. This is useful for devices that do not support PAE, such as printers or phones. You can change the MAB activation delay from the default of 30 seconds, but the delay must be between 5 and 30 seconds. The switch port must be part of bridge named `bridge`.



MAB supports one authenticated MAC address per port only.

You must configure MAB on the RADIUS server.

To enable a bridge port for MAB and to change the MAB activation delay, do the following on the RADIUS client (that is, the Cumulus Linux switch):

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add dot1x mab-activation-delay 20
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 dot1x mab
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

## Configuring a Parking VLAN

If a non-authorized supplicant tries to communicate with the switch, you can route traffic from that device to a different VLAN and associate that VLAN with one of the switch ports. The switch port must be part of bridge named `bridge`.



```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add dot1x parking-vlan-id 777
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 dot1x parking-vlan
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

## Verifying Connections from Linux Supplicants

To test that a supplicant (client) can communicate with the Cumulus Linux Authenticator switch, run the following command from the supplicant:

```
root@host1:/home/cumulus# wpa_supplicant -c /etc/wpa_supplicant.conf -D wired -i swp1
Successfully initialized wpa_supplicant
swp1: Associated with 01:80:c2:00:00:03
swp1: CTRL-EVENT-EAP-STARTED EAP authentication started
swp1: CTRL-EVENT-EAP-PROPOSED-METHOD vendor=0 method=4
swp1: CTRL-EVENT-EAP-METHOD EAP vendor 0 method 4 (MD5) selected
swp1: CTRL-EVENT-EAP-SUCCESS EAP authentication completed successfully
swp1: CTRL-EVENT-CONNECTED - Connection to 01:80:c2:00:00:03 compl
```

Or from another supplicant:

```
root@host2:/home/cumulus# wpa_supplicant -c /etc/wpa_supplicant.conf -D wired -i swp1
Successfully initialized wpa_supplicant
swp1: Associated with 01:80:c2:00:00:03
swp1: CTRL-EVENT-EAP-STARTED EAP authentication started
swp1: CTRL-EVENT-EAP-PROPOSED-METHOD vendor=0 method=4
swp1: CTRL-EVENT-EAP-METHOD EAP vendor 0 method 4 (MD5) selected
swp1: CTRL-EVENT-EAP-SUCCESS EAP authentication completed successfully
swp1: CTRL-EVENT-CONNECTED - Connection to 01:80:c2:00:00:03 comp
```

## Configuring Dynamic VLAN Assignments

A common requirement for campus networks is to assign dynamic VLANs to specific users in combination with IEEE 802.1x. After authenticating a supplicant, the user is assigned a VLAN based on the RADIUS configuration.

To enable dynamic VLAN assignment globally, where VLAN attributes sent from the RADIUS server are applied to the bridge:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add dot1x dynamic-vlan
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```



You can specify the `require` option in the command so that VLAN attributes are required. If VLAN attributes do not exist in the access response packet returned from the RADIUS server, the user is not authorized and has no connectivity. If the RADIUS server returns VLAN attributes but the user has an incorrect password, the user is placed in the parking VLAN (if you have configured parking VLAN).

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add dot1x dynamic-vlan require
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

The following example shows a typical RADIUS configuration (shown for Freeradius, not typically configured or run on the Cumulus Linux device) for a user with dynamic VLAN assignment:

```
# # VLAN 100 Client Configuration for Freeradius RADIUS Server.
# # This is not part of the CL configuration.
vland100client Cleartext-Password := "client1password"
    Service-Type = Framed-User,
    Tunnel-Type = VLAN,
    Tunnel-Medium-Type = "IEEE-802",
    Tunnel-Private-Group-ID = 100
```

To disable dynamic VLAN assignment, where VLAN attributes sent from the RADIUS server are ignored and users are authenticated based on existing credentials:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net del dot1x dynamic-vlan
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```



Enabling or disabling dynamic VLAN assignment restarts `hostapd`, which forces existing, authorized users to re-authenticate.

## Troubleshooting

To check connectivity between two supplicants, ping one host from the other:

```
root@host1:/home/cumulus# ping 198.150.0.2
PING 11.0.0.2 (11.0.0.2) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 11.0.0.2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=0.604 ms
64 bytes from 11.0.0.2: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.552 ms
^C
--- 11.0.0.2 ping statistics ---
2 packets transmitted, 2 received, 0% packet loss, time 1000ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.552/0.578/0
```

You can run `net show dot1x` with the following options for more data:

- **json**: Prints the command output in JSON format.
- **macs**: Displays MAC address information.
- **port-details**: Shows counters from the IEEE8021-PAE-MIB for ports.
- **radius-details**: Shows counters from the RADIUS-CLIENT MIB (RFC 2618) for ports.
- **status**: Displays the status of the daemon.

To check to see which MAC addresses have been authorized by RADIUS:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show dot1x macs
Interface      Attribute      Value
-----          -----          -----
swp1           MAC Addresses  00:02:00:00:00:01
swp2           No Data
swp3           No Data
swp4           No Data
```

To check the port detail counters:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show dot1x port-details
Interface      Attribute                                Value
-----          -----          -----
00:00:01        Mac Addresses
                authMultiSessionId
                96703ADC82D77DF2
                connected_time
                182
                dot1xAuthEapolFramesRx
                3
                dot1xAuthEapolFramesTx
                3
                dot1xAuthEapolLogoffFramesRx
                0
                dot1xAuthEapolReqFramesTx
                2
                dot1xAuthEapolReqIdFramesTx
                1
                dot1xAuthEapolRespFramesRx
                2
                dot1xAuthEapolRespIdFramesRx
                1
                dot1xAuthEapolStartFramesRx
                1
                dot1xAuthInvalidEapolFramesRx
                0
                dot1xAuthLastEapolFrameSource
                00:02:00:00:
00:01          dot1xAuthLastEapolFrameVersion
                2
                dot1xAuthPaeState
                5
                dot1xAuthQuietPeriod
                60
                dot1xAuthReAuthEnabled
                FALSE
                dot1xAuthReAuthPeriod
                0
                dot1xAuthServerTimeout
                30
                dot1xAuthSessionAuthenticMethod
                1
                dot1xAuthSessionId
                1B50FE8939FD9F5E
                dot1xAuthSessionTerminateCause
                999
```



dot1xAuthSessionTime	182
dot1xAuthSessionUserName	testing
dot1xPaePortProtocolVersion	2
last_eap_type_as	4 (MD5)
last_eap_type_sta	4
(MD5)	

To check RADIUS counters:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show dot1x radius-details swp1

Interface      Attribute                      Value
-----          -----
swp1           radiusAccClientRequests        1
                  radiusAccClientResponses       1
                  radiusAccClientServerPortNumber 1813
                  radiusAccServerAddress        127.0.0.1
                  radiusAuthClientAccessAccepts 1
                  radiusAuthClientAccessChallenges 1
                  radiusAuthClientAccessRejects   0
                  radiusAuthClientAccessRequests 0
                  radiusAuthClientServerPortNumber 1812
                  radiusAuthServerAddress        127.0.0.1
                  radiusAuthServerIndex         1

...
```

You can also check logging with journalctl:

```
cumulus@switch-01:~$ sudo journalctl -f -u hostapd
Apr 19 22:17:11 switch-01 hostapd[12462]: swp1: interface state
UNINITIALIZED->ENABLED
Apr 19 22:17:11 switch-01 hostapd[12462]: swp1: AP-ENABLED
Apr 19 22:17:11 switch-01 hostapd[12462]: Reading rule file /etc
/cumulus/acl/policy.d/00control_ps ...
Apr 19 22:17:11 switch-01 hostapd[12462]: Processing rules in file
/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/00...
Apr 19 22:17:12 switch-01 hostapd[12462]: Reading rule file /etc
/cumulus/acl/policy.d/100_dot1x...
Apr 19 22:17:12 switch-01 hostapd[12462]: Processing rules in file
/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/..
Apr 19 22:17:12 switch-01 hostapd[12462]: Reading rule file /etc
/cumulus/acl/policy.d/99control
Apr 19 22:17:12 switch-01 hostapd[12462]: Processing rules in file
/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/99
Apr 19 22:17:12 switch-01 hostapd[12462]: Installing acl policy
Apr 19 22:17:12 switch-01 hostapd[12462]: done.
```



## Advanced Troubleshooting

More advanced troubleshooting can be accomplished with the following commands.

You can increase the debug level in `hostapd` by copying over the `hostapd` service file, then adding `-d`, `-dd` or `-ddd` to the `ExecStart` line in the `hostapd.service` file:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cp /lib/systemd/system/hostapd.service /etc/systemd  
/system/hostapd.service  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nano /etc/systemd/system/hostapd.service  
...  
  
ExecStart=/usr/sbin/hostapd -ddd -c /etc/hostapd.conf  
  
...
```

You can watch debugs with `journalctl` as supplicants attempt to connect:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo journalctl -n 1000 -u hostapd      # see the  
last 1000 lines of hostapd debug logging  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo journalctl -f -u hostapd          #  
continuous tail of the hostapd daemon debug logging
```

You can check ACL rules in `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/100_dot1x_swpX.rules` before and after a supplicant attempts to authenticate:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -L eb | grep swpXX  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-netstat | grep swpXX           # look at  
interface counters
```

You can check `tc` rules in `/var/lib/hostapd/acl/tc_swpX.rules` with:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo tc -s filter show dev swpXX parent 1:  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo tc -s filter show dev swpXX parent ffff:
```

## Configuring the RADIUS Server

If you haven't done so already, you need to configure the RADIUS server — preferably not on the Cumulus Linux switch — before configuring any interfaces for 802.1X.

To add a popular and freely available RADIUS server called FreeRADIUS on a Debian workstation, do the following:

```
root@radius:~# apt-get update  
root@radius:~# apt-get install freeradius-utils freeradius-common
```



Once installed and configured, the FreeRADIUS server can serve Cumulus Linux running `hostapd` as a RADIUS client.

For more information, see the [FreeRADIUS documentation](#).



# Layer 1 and 2

## Spanning Tree and Rapid Spanning Tree

Spanning tree protocol (STP) is always recommended in layer 2 topologies, as it prevents bridge loops and broadcast radiation on a bridged network. STP also provides redundant links for automatic failover when an active link fails. STP is disabled by default on bridges in Cumulus Linux.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Supported Modes (see page 284)
  - STP for a VLAN-aware Bridge (see page 285)
  - STP within a Traditional Mode Bridge (see page 285)
- Viewing Bridge and STP Status/Logs (see page 285)
  - Using Linux to Check Spanning Tree Status (Advanced) (see page 288)
- Customizing Spanning Tree Protocol (see page 289)
  - Spanning Tree Priority (see page 289)
  - PortAdminEdge/PortFast Mode (see page 290)
  - PortAutoEdge (see page 291)
  - BPDU Guard (see page 291)
  - Bridge Assurance (see page 294)
  - BPDU Filter (see page 294)
  - Storm Control (see page 295)
  - Configuring Other Spanning Tree Parameters (see page 295)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 298)
- Related Information (see page 298)

### Supported Modes

The STP modes Cumulus Linux supports vary depending upon whether the [traditional or VLAN-aware bridge driver mode](#) (see page 322) is in use.

Bridges configured in [VLAN-aware](#) (see page 328) mode operate **only** in RSTP mode. [NCLU](#) (see page 85), the network command line utility for configuring Cumulus Linux, only supports bridges in VLAN-aware mode.

For a bridge configured in *traditional* mode, PVST and PVRST are supported, with the default set to PVRST. Each traditional bridge has its own separate STP instance.

Since you cannot use NCLU to configure a traditional mode bridge, you must configure it directly in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file.



## STP for a VLAN-aware Bridge

*VLAN-aware* (see page 328) bridges only operate in RSTP mode. STP bridge protocol data units (BPDUs) are transmitted on the native VLAN.

If a bridge running RSTP (802.1w) receives a common STP (802.1D) BPDU, it will automatically fall back to 802.1D operation. RSTP interoperates with MST seamlessly, creating a single instance of spanning tree, which transmits BPDUs on the native VLAN. RSTP treats the MST domain as if it were one giant switch.



As of version 3.2.1, STP is enabled by default in Cumulus Linux. There is no need to specify `bridge-stp on` for the bridge any more.

## STP within a Traditional Mode Bridge

Per VLAN Spanning Tree (PVST) creates a spanning tree instance for a bridge. Rapid PVST (PVRST) supports RSTP enhancements for each spanning tree instance. In order to use PVRST with a traditional bridge, a bridge corresponding to the untagged native VLAN must be created, and all the physical switch ports must be part of the same VLAN.



When connected to a switch that has a native VLAN configuration, the native VLAN **must** be configured to be VLAN 1 only for maximum interoperability.

## Viewing Bridge and STP Status/Logs

To check STP status for a bridge, run `net show bridge spanning-tree`:

Click to reveal the output ...

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show bridge spanning-tree
bridge CIST info
  enabled      yes
  bridge id    1.000.44:38:39:FF:40:90
  designated root 1.000.44:38:39:FF:40:90
  regional root 1.000.44:38:39:FF:40:90
  root port    none
  path cost    0          internal path cost  0
  max age      20         bridge max age     20
  forward delay 15        bridge forward delay 15
  tx hold count 6          max hops          20
  hello time    2          ageing time       300
  force protocol version   rstp
  time since topology change 253343s
  topology change count     4
  topology change           no
  topology change port      peerlink
  last topology change port leaf03-04
bridge:exit01-02 CIST info
```

enabled	no	role	
Disabled			
port id	8.004	state	
discarding			
external port cost	305	admin external cost	0
internal port cost	305	admin internal cost	0
designated root	1.000.44:38:39:00:00:27	dsgn external cost	0
dsgn regional root	1.000.44:38:39:00:00:27	dsgn internal cost	0
designated bridge	1.000.44:38:39:00:00:27	designated port	
8.004			
admin edge port	no	auto edge port	yes
oper edge port	no	topology change ack	no
point-to-point	yes	admin point-to-point	auto
restricted role	no	restricted TCN	no
port hello time	2	disputed	no
bpdu guard port	no	bpdu guard error	no
network port	no	BA inconsistent	no
Num TX BPDU	2	Num TX TCN	0
Num RX BPDU	0	Num RX TCN	0
Num Transition FWD	0	Num Transition BLK	2
bpdufilter port	no		
clag ISL	no	clag ISL Oper UP	no
clag role	primary	clag dual conn mac	00:
00:00:00:00:00:00			
clag remote portID	F.FFF	clag system mac	44:
38:39:FF:40:90			
bridge:leaf01-02 CIST info			
enabled	yes	role	
Designated			
port id	8.003	state	
forwarding			
external port cost	10000	admin external cost	0
internal port cost	10000	admin internal cost	0
designated root	1.000.44:38:39:FF:40:90	dsgn external cost	0
dsgn regional root	1.000.44:38:39:FF:40:90	dsgn internal cost	0
designated bridge	1.000.44:38:39:FF:40:90	designated port	
8.003			
admin edge port	no	auto edge port	yes
oper edge port	no	topology change ack	no
point-to-point	yes	admin point-to-point	auto
restricted role	no	restricted TCN	no
port hello time	2	disputed	no
bpdu guard port	no	bpdu guard error	no
network port	no	BA inconsistent	no
Num TX BPDU	253558	Num TX TCN	2
Num RX BPDU	253373	Num RX TCN	4
Num Transition FWD	126675	Num Transition BLK	
126694			
bpdufilter port	no		
clag ISL	no	clag ISL Oper UP	no
clag role	primary	clag dual conn mac	44:
38:39:FF:40:94			



clag remote portID F.FFFF 38:39:FF:40:90 bridge:leaf03-04 CIST info enabled yes Designated port id 8.001 forwarding external port cost 10000 internal port cost 10000 designated root 1.000.44:38:39:FF:40:90 dsgn regional root 1.000.44:38:39:FF:40:90 designated bridge 1.000.44:38:39:FF:40:90 8.001 admin edge port no oper edge port no point-to-point yes restricted role no port hello time 2 bpdu guard port no network port no Num TX BPDU 130960 Num RX BPDU 4 Num Transition FWD 2 bpdufilter port no clag ISL no clag role primary 38:39:FF:40:93 clag remote portID F.FFFF 38:39:FF:40:90 bridge:peerlink CIST info enabled yes Designated port id F.002 forwarding external port cost 10000 internal port cost 10000 designated root 1.000.44:38:39:FF:40:90 dsgn regional root 1.000.44:38:39:FF:40:90 designated bridge 1.000.44:38:39:FF:40:90 F. 002 admin edge port no oper edge port no point-to-point yes restricted role no port hello time 2 bpdu guard port no network port no Num TX BPDU 126700 Num RX BPDU 6 Num Transition FWD 2 bpdufilter port no clag ISL yes	clag system mac 44: role state admin external cost 0 admin internal cost 0 dsgn external cost 0 dsgn internal cost 0 designated port auto edge port yes topology change ack no admin point-to-point auto restricted TCN no disputed no bpdu guard error no BA inconsistent no Num TX TCN 6 Num RX TCN 1 Num Transition BLK 1 clag ISL Oper UP no clag dual conn mac 44: clag system mac 44: role state admin external cost 0 admin internal cost 0 dsgn external cost 0 dsgn internal cost 0 designated port auto edge port yes topology change ack no admin point-to-point auto restricted TCN no disputed no bpdu guard error no BA inconsistent no Num TX TCN 2 Num RX TCN 3 Num Transition BLK 1 clag ISL Oper UP yes
---	---

```

clag role      primary
00:00:00:00:00
clag remote portID F.FFF
38:39:FF:40:90
clag dual conn mac 00:
clag system mac 44:

```

## *Using Linux to Check Spanning Tree Status (Advanced)*

Using Linux to check STP status ...

`mstptcl` is the utility provided by the `mstpd` service to configure STP. The `mstpd` daemon is an open source project used by Cumulus Linux to implement IEEE802.1D 2004 and IEEE802.1Q 2011.

`mstpd` is started by default when the switch boots. `mstpd` logs and errors are located in `/var/log/syslog`.



`mstpd` is the preferred utility for interacting with STP on Cumulus Linux. `brctl` also provides certain methods for configuring STP; however, they are not as complete as the tools offered in `mstpd` and [output from brctl can be misleading](#) in some cases.

To get the bridge state, use:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl show
bridge name      bridge id      STP enabled      interfaces
bridge          8000.001401010100    yes            swp1
                                         swp4
                                         swp5

```

To get the `mstpd` bridge state, use:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ net show bridge spanning-tree
bridge CIST info
  enabled        yes
  bridge id      F.000.00:14:01:01:01:00
  designated root F.000.00:14:01:01:01:00
  regional root  F.000.00:14:01:01:01:00
  root port      none
  path cost      0           internal path cost  0
  max age        20          bridge max age     20
  forward delay  15          bridge forward delay 15
  tx hold count  6           max hops          20
  hello time     2           ageing time       200
  force protocol version      rstp
  time since topology change 90843s
  topology change count      4
  topology change          no
  topology change port      swp4
  last topology change port swp5

```



To get the `mstpd` bridge port state, use:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mstptcl showport bridge
E swp1 8.001 forw F.000.00:14:01:01:01:00 F.000.00:14:01:01:01:00
8.001 Desg
  swp4 8.002 forw F.000.00:14:01:01:01:00 F.000.00:14:01:01:01:00
8.002 Desg
  E swp5 8.003 forw F.000.00:14:01:01:01:00 F.000.00:14:01:01:01:00
8.003 Desg
cumulus@switch:~$ net show bridge spanning-tree
...
bridge:swp1 CIST info
  enabled      yes          role
Designated
  port id     8.001        state
forwarding
  external port cost 2000      admin external cost  0
  internal port cost 2000      admin internal cost  0
  designated root    F.000.00:14:01:01:01:00  dsgn external cost  0
  dsgn regional root F.000.00:14:01:01:01:00  dsgn internal cost  0
  designated bridge   F.000.00:14:01:01:01:00  designated port
8.001
  admin edge port  no          auto edge port      yes
  oper edge port   yes         topology change ack  no
  point-to-point   yes         admin point-to-point auto
  restricted role  no          restricted TCN       no
  port hello time  2           disputed            no
  bpdu guard port  no          bpdu guard error   no
  network port     no          BA inconsistent    no
  Num TX BPDU     45772       Num TX TCN        4
  Num RX BPDU     0           Num RX TCN        0
  Num Transition FWD 2        Num Transition BLK 2
```

## Customizing Spanning Tree Protocol

There are a number of ways you can customize STP in Cumulus Linux. You should exercise extreme caution with many of the settings below to prevent malfunctions in STP's loop avoidance.

### Spanning Tree Priority

If you have an MSTI (multiple spanning tree instance), you can set the *tree priority* for a bridge. The bridge with the lowest priority is elected the *root bridge*. The priority must be a number between 0 and 65535 and must be a multiple of 4096; the default is 32768.



For `msti`, only 0 is supported currently.

To set the tree priority, run:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge stp treeprio 8192
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

## PortAdminEdge/PortFast Mode

*PortAdminEdge* is equivalent to the PortFast feature offered by other vendors. It enables or disables the *initial edge state* of a port in a bridge.

All ports configured with PortAdminEdge bypass the listening and learning states to move immediately to forwarding.



Using PortAdminEdge mode has the potential to cause loops if it is not accompanied by the [BPDUGuard](#) (see page 291) feature.

While it is common for edge ports to be configured as access ports for a simple end host, this is not mandatory. In the data center, edge ports typically connect to servers, which may pass both tagged and untagged traffic.

## Example VLAN-aware Bridge Configuration

To configure PortAdminEdge mode, use the `bpduguard` and `portadminedge` NCLU configuration commands:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp5 stp bpduguard
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp5 stp portadminedge
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

The NCLU commands above create the following code snippet:

```
auto swp5
iface swp5
    mstpctl-bpduguard yes
    mstpctl-portadminedge yes
```

## Example Traditional Bridge Configuration

For a bridge in [traditional mode](#) (see page 322), configure `PortAdminEdge` under the bridge stanza in `/etc/network/interfaces`:

```
auto br2
iface br2 inet static
```



```
bridge-ports swp1 swp2 swp3 swp4  
mstpcctl-bpduguard swp1=yes swp2=yes swp3=yes swp4=yes  
mstpcctl-portadminedge swp1=yes swp2=yes swp3=yes swp4=yes
```

To load the new configuration, run `ifreload -a`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifreload -a
```

## PortAutoEdge

*PortAutoEdge* is an enhancement to the standard PortAdminEdge (PortFast) mode, which allows for the automatic detection of edge ports. PortAutoEdge enables and disables the *auto transition* to/from the edge state of a port in a bridge.



Edge ports and access ports are not the same thing. Edge ports transition directly to the forwarding state and skip the listening and learning stages. Upstream topology change notifications are not generated when an edge port's link changes state. Access ports only forward untagged traffic; however, there is no such restriction on edge ports, which can forward both tagged and untagged traffic.

When a BPDU is received on a port configured with `portautoedge`, the port ceases to be in the edge port state and transitions into a normal STP port.

When BPDUs are no longer received on the interface, the port becomes an edge port, and transitions through the discarding and learning states before resuming forwarding.

To configure PortAutoEdge for an interface:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 stp portautoedge  
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending  
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

## BPDU Guard

To protect the spanning tree topology from unauthorized switches affecting the forwarding path, you can configure *BPDU guard* (Bridge Protocol Data Unit). One very common example is when someone hooks up a new switch to an access port off of a leaf switch. If this new switch is configured with a low priority, it could become the new root switch and affect the forwarding path for the entire layer 2 topology.

## Example BPDU Guard Configuration

To configure BPDU guard, set the `bpduguard` value for the interface:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp5 stp bpduguard  
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
```

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

This creates the following stanza in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```
auto swp5
iface swp5
    mstpctl-bpduguard yes
```

## *Recovering a Port Disabled by BPDU Guard*

If a BPDU is received on the port, STP will bring down the port and log an error in `/var/log/syslog`. The following is a sample error:

```
mstpd: error, MSTP_IN_rx_bpdu: bridge:bond0 Recvd BPDU on BPDU Guard
Port - Port Down
```

To determine whether BPDU guard is configured, or if a BPDU has been received, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show bridge spanning-tree | grep bpdu
    bpdu guard port      yes          bpdu guard error      yes
```

The only way to recover a port that has been placed in the disabled state is to manually un-shut or bring up the port with `sudo ifup [port]`, as shown in the example below.



Bringing up the disabled port does not fix the problem if the configuration on the connected end-station has not been rectified.

```
cumulus@leaf2$ mstpctl showportdetail bridge bond0
bridge:bond0 CIST info
    enabled          no           role
Disabled
    port id        8.001         state
discarding
    external port cost 305       admin external cost  0
    internal port cost 305       admin internal cost 0
    designated root   8.000.6C:64:1A:00:4F:9C dsgn external cost  0
    dsgn regional root 8.000.6C:64:1A:00:4F:9C dsgn internal cost 0
    designated bridge 8.000.6C:64:1A:00:4F:9C designated port
8.001
    admin edge port    no           auto edge port      yes
    oper edge port     no           topology change ack no
    point-to-point     yes          admin point-to-point auto
```

```

restricted role      no
port hello time    10
bpdu guard port    yes
network port        no
Num TX BPDU         3
Num RX BPDU         488
Num Transition FWD 1
bpdufilter port    no
clag ISL            no
clag role           unknown
0:0:0:0
      clag remote portID F.FFFF
0:0:0:0

```

restricted role      no	restricted TCN      no
port hello time    10	disputed          no
bpdu guard port    yes	bpdu guard error   yes
network port        no	BA inconsistent    no
Num TX BPDU         3	Num TX TCN         2
Num RX BPDU         488	Num RX TCN         2
Num Transition FWD 1	Num Transition BLK 2
bpdufilter port    no	
clag ISL            no	clag ISL Oper UP   no
clag role           unknown	clag dual conn mac 0:0:
0:0:0:0	
clag remote portID F.FFFF	clag system mac   0:0:
0:0:0:0	

cumulus@leaf2\$ sudo ifup bond0

```

cumulus@leaf2$ mstpcctl showportdetail bridge bond0
bridge:bond0 CIST info
  enabled          yes
  port id          8.001
forwarding
  external port cost 305
  internal port cost 305
  designated root   8.000.6C:64:1A:00:4F:9C dsgn external cost 0
  dsgn regional root 8.000.6C:64:1A:00:4F:9C dsgn internal cost 0
  designated bridge 8.000.6C:64:1A:00:4F:9C designated port
8.001
  admin edge port  no
  oper edge port  no
  point-to-point   yes
  restricted role  no
  port hello time 2
  bpdu guard port no
  network port    no
  Num TX BPDU     3
  Num RX BPDU     43
  Num Transition FWD 1
  bpdufilter port no
  clag ISL          no
  clag role         unknown
0:0:0:0
      clag remote portID F.FFFF
0:0:0:0

```

enabled          yes	role             Root
port id          8.001	state            state
forwarding	
external port cost 305	admin external cost 0
internal port cost 305	admin internal cost 0
designated root   8.000.6C:64:1A:00:4F:9C dsgn external cost 0	dsgn external cost 0
dsgn regional root 8.000.6C:64:1A:00:4F:9C dsgn internal cost 0	dsgn internal cost 0
designated bridge 8.000.6C:64:1A:00:4F:9C designated port	designated port
8.001	
admin edge port  no	auto edge port    yes
oper edge port  no	topology change ack no
point-to-point   yes	admin point-to-point auto
restricted role  no	restricted TCN    no
port hello time 2	disputed          no
bpdu guard port no	bpdu guard error  no
network port    no	BA inconsistent    no
Num TX BPDU     3	Num TX TCN        2
Num RX BPDU     43	Num RX TCN        1
Num Transition FWD 1	Num Transition BLK 0
bpdufilter port no	
clag ISL          no	clag ISL Oper UP   no
clag role         unknown	clag dual conn mac 0:0:
0:0:0:0	
clag remote portID F.FFFF	clag system mac   0:0:
0:0:0:0	



## Bridge Assurance

On a point-to-point link where RSTP is running, if you want to detect unidirectional links and put the port in a discarding state (in error), you can enable bridge assurance on the port by enabling a port type network. The port would be in a bridge assurance inconsistent state until a BPDU is received from the peer. You need to configure the port type network on both the ends of the link in order for bridge assurance to operate properly.

The default setting for bridge assurance is off. This means that there is no difference between disabling bridge assurance on an interface and not configuring bridge assurance on an interface.

### Example Bridge Assurance Configuration

To enable bridge assurance on an interface, add the `portnetwork` option to the interface:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 stp portnetwork  
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending  
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

This creates the following interface stanza:

```
auto swp1  
iface swp1  
    mstpctl-portnetwork yes
```

You can monitor logs for bridge assurance messages by doing the following:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo grep -in assurance /var/log/syslog | grep mstp  
1365:Jun 25 18:03:17 mstpd: br1007:swp1.1007 Bridge assurance  
inconsistent
```

## BPDU Filter

You can enable `bpdufilter` on a switch port, which filters BPDUs in both directions. This effectively disables STP on the port as no BPDUs are transiting.



Using BDPU filter inappropriately can cause layer 2 loops. Use this feature deliberately and with extreme caution.

### Example BPDU Filter Configuration

To configure the BPDU filter, add the `portbpdufilter` option to the interface:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp6 stp portbpdufilter  
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending  
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following stanza in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```
auto swp6  
iface swp6  
    mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes
```

## Storm Control

*Storm control* provides protection against excessive inbound BUM (broadcast, unknown unicast, multicast) traffic on layer 2 switch port interfaces, which can cause poor network performance.

You configure storm control for each physical port by editing `/etc/cumulus/switchd.conf`. The configuration persists across reboots and restarting `switchd`. If you change the storm control configuration in this file after rebooting the switch, you must [restart `switchd` \(see page 193\)](#) to activate the new configuration.

To enable broadcast and multicast storm control at 400 packets per second (pps) and 3000 pps, respectively, for `swp1` with `/etc/cumulus/switchd.conf`:

```
# Storm Control setting on a port, in pps, 0 means disable  
interface.swp1.storm_control.broadcast = 400  
interface.swp1.storm_control.multicast = 3000
```

## Configuring Other Spanning Tree Parameters

Spanning tree parameters are defined in the IEEE 802.1D, 802.1Q specifications and in the table below.

For a comparison of STP parameter configuration between `mstpctl` and other vendors, [please read this knowledge base article](#).

The table below describes the configuration parameters available.



You configure these parameters using NCLU on the interfaces, not the bridge itself. Most of these parameters are blacklisted in `netd.conf` in the `ifupdown_blacklist`; blacklisted parameters are indicated with an asterisk (\*). You can [edit the blacklist \(see page 94\)](#) to remove any of them.



Parameter	NCLU Command <code>net add interface &lt;interface&gt; stp</code> ...	Description
mstpctl-maxage	maxage*	Sets the bridge's <i>maximum age</i> to <max_age> seconds. The default is 20. The maximum age must meet the condition 2 * (Bridge Forward Delay - 1 second) >= Bridge Max Age.
mstpctl-ageing	ageing*	Sets the Ethernet (MAC) address <i>ageing time</i> in <time> seconds for the bridge when the running version is STP, but not RSTP/MSTP. The default is 1800 seconds.
mstpctl-fdelay	fdelay*	Sets the bridge's <i>bridge forward delay</i> to <time> seconds. The default is 15. The bridge forward delay must meet the condition 2 * (Bridge Forward Delay - 1 second) >= Bridge Max Age.
mstpctl-maxhops	maxhops*	Sets the bridge's <i>maximum hops</i> to <max_hops>. The default value is 20.
mstpctl-txholdcount	txholdcount*	Sets the bridge's <i>bridge transmit hold count</i> to <tx_hold_count>. The default is 6.
mstpctl-forcevers	forcevers*	Sets the bridge's <i>force STP version</i> to either RSTP/STP. MSTP is not supported currently. The default is <i>RSTP</i> .
mstpctl-treeprio	treeprio*	Sets the bridge's <i>tree priority</i> to <pri> for an MSTI instance. The priority value is a number between 0 and 65535 and must be a multiple of 4096. The bridge with the lowest priority is elected the <i>root bridge</i> . The default is 32768. <div style="border: 2px solid red; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"><span style="color: red;">!</span> For <code>msti</code>, only 0 is supported currently.</div>
mstpctl-treeportprio	treeportprio*	Sets the <i>priority</i> of port <port> to <pri> for the MSTI instance. The priority value is a number between 0 and 240 and must be a multiple of 16. The default is 128. <div style="border: 2px solid red; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"><span style="color: red;">!</span> For <code>msti</code>, only 0 is supported currently.</div>
mstpctl-hello	hello*	Sets the bridge's <i>bridge hello time</i> to <time> seconds. The default is 2.
	portpathcost*	

Parameter	NCLU Command <code>net add interface &lt;interface&gt; stp</code> ...	Description
<code>mstpc1-portpathcost</code>		<p>Sets the <i>port cost</i> of the port <code>&lt;port&gt;</code> in bridge <code>&lt;bridge&gt;</code> to <code>&lt;cost&gt;</code>. The default is <i>0</i>.</p> <p><code>mstp</code>d supports only long mode; that is, 32 bits for the path cost.</p>
<code>mstpc1-portadminedge</code>	<code>portadminedge</code>	<p>Enables/disables the <i>initial edge state</i> of the port <code>&lt;port&gt;</code> in bridge <code>&lt;bridge&gt;</code>. The default is <i>no</i>.</p> <div style="border: 2px solid #fbc02d; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><span style="color: #fbc02d;">⚠️</span> This setting only applies to a bridge in <b>traditional mode</b> (see page 340); it does not apply to <b>VLAN-aware bridges</b> (see page 328).</p> </div>
<code>mstpc1-portautoedge</code>	<code>portautoedge</code>	<p>Enables/disables the <i>auto transition</i> to/from the edge state of the port <code>&lt;port&gt;</code> in bridge <code>&lt;bridge&gt;</code>. The default is <i>yes</i>.</p> <p><code>portautoedge</code> is an enhancement to the standard PortAdminEdge (PortFast) mode, which allows for the automatic detection of edge ports.</p> <div style="border: 2px solid #fbc02d; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><span style="color: #fbc02d;">⚠️</span> Edge ports and access ports are not the same thing. Edge ports transition directly to the forwarding state and skip the listening and learning stages. Upstream topology change notifications are not generated when an edge port's link changes state. Access ports only forward untagged traffic; however, there is no such restriction on edge ports, which can forward both tagged and untagged traffic.</p> </div> <p>When a BPDU is received on a port configured with <code>portautoedge</code>, the port ceases to be in the edge port state and transitions into a normal STP port.</p> <p>When BPDUs are no longer received on the interface, the port becomes an edge port, and transitions through the discarding and learning states before resuming forwarding.</p>
<code>mstpc1-portp2p</code>	<code>portp2p*</code>	Enables/disables the <i>point-to-point detection mode</i> of the port <code>&lt;port&gt;</code> in bridge <code>&lt;bridge&gt;</code> . The default is <i>auto</i> .
<code>mstpc1-portrestrrole</code>	<code>portrestrrole*</code>	Enables/disables the ability of the port <code>&lt;port&gt;</code> in bridge <code>&lt;bridge&gt;</code> to take the <i>root role</i> . The default is <i>no</i> .



Parameter	NCLU Command <code>net add interface &lt;interface&gt; stp</code> ...	Description
mstptctl- portrestrtcn	portrestrtcn*	Enables/disables the ability of the port <code>&lt;port&gt;</code> in bridge <code>&lt;bridge&gt;</code> to propagate <i>received topology change notifications</i> . The default is <i>no</i> .
mstptctl- portnetwork	portnetwork	Enables/disables the <i>bridge assurance capability</i> for a network port <code>&lt;port&gt;</code> in bridge <code>&lt;bridge&gt;</code> . The default is <i>no</i> .
mstptctl- bpduguard	bpduguard	Enables/disables the <i>BPDU guard configuration</i> of the port <code>&lt;port&gt;</code> in bridge <code>&lt;bridge&gt;</code> . The default is <i>no</i> .
mstptctl- portbpdufilter	portbpdufilter	Enables/disables the <i>BPDU filter</i> functionality for a port <code>&lt;port&gt;</code> in bridge <code>&lt;bridge&gt;</code> . The default is <i>no</i> .
mstptctl- treeportcost	treeportcost*	Sets the spanning tree <i>port cost</i> to a value from 0 to 255. The default is 0.

## Caveats and Errata

- MSTP is not supported currently. However, interoperability with MSTP networks can be accomplished using PVRSTP or PVSTP.

## Related Information

The source code for `mstpd/mstptctl` was written by [Vitalii Demianets](#) and is hosted at the URL below.

- [Sourceforge - mstpd project](#)
- [Wikipedia - Spanning Tree Protocol](#)
- [brctl\(8\)](#)
- [bridge-utils-interfaces\(5\)](#)
- [ifupdown-addons-interfaces\(5\)](#)
- [mstptctl\(8\)](#)
- [mstptctl-utils-interfaces\(5\)](#)

## Link Layer Discovery Protocol

The `lldpd` daemon implements the IEEE802.1AB (Link Layer Discovery Protocol, or LLDP) standard. LLDP allows you to know which ports are neighbors of a given port. By default, `lldpd` runs as a daemon and is started at system boot. `lldpd` command line arguments are placed in `/etc/default/lldpd`. `lldpd` configuration options are placed in `/etc/lldpd.conf` or under `/etc/lldpd.d/`.



For more details on the command line arguments and config options, please see `man lldpd(8)`.

`lldpd` supports CDP (Cisco Discovery Protocol, v1 and v2). `lldpd` logs by default into `/var/log/daemon.log` with an `lldpd` prefix.

`lldpcli` is the CLI tool to query the `lldpd` daemon for neighbors, statistics and other running configuration information. See `man lldpcli(8)` for details.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Configuring LLDP (see page 299)
- Example `lldpcli` Commands (see page 299)
- Enabling the SNMP Subagent in LLDP (see page 304)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 304)
- Related Information (see page 304)

## Configuring LLDP

You configure `lldpd` settings in `/etc/lldpd.conf` or `/etc/lldpd.d/`.

Here is an example persistent configuration:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cat /etc/lldpd.conf
configure lldp tx-interval 40
configure lldp tx-hold 3
configure system interface pattern *,!eth0,swp*
```

`lldpd` logs to `/var/log/daemon.log` with the `lldpd` prefix:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo tail -f /var/log/daemon.log | grep lldp
Aug  7 17:26:17 switch lldpd[1712]: unable to get system name
Aug  7 17:26:17 switch lldpd[1712]: unable to get system name
Aug  7 17:26:17 switch lldpcli[1711]: lldpd should resume operations
Aug  7 17:26:32 switch lldpd[1805]: NET-SNMP version 5.4.3 AgentX
subagent connected
```

## Example `lldpcli` Commands

To see all neighbors on all ports/interfaces:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo lldpcli show neighbors
-----
-----
LLDP neighbors:
-----
```

```

Interface:      eth0, via: LLDP, RID: 1, Time: 0 day, 17:38:08
Chassis:
  ChassisID:      mac 08:9e:01:e9:66:5a
  SysName:        PIONEERMS22
  SysDescr:       Cumulus Linux version 2.5.4 running on quanta lb9
  MgmtIP:         192.168.0.22
  Capability:    Bridge, on
  Capability:    Router, on
Port:
  PortID:         ifname swp47
  PortDescr:      swp47
-----
-----
Interface:      swp1, via: LLDP, RID: 10, Time: 0 day, 17:08:27
Chassis:
  ChassisID:      mac 00:01:00:00:09:00
  SysName:        MSP-1
  SysDescr:       Cumulus Linux version 3.0.0 running on QEMU
Standard PC (i440FX + PIIX, 1996)
  MgmtIP:         192.0.2.9
  MgmtIP:         fe80::201:ff:fe00:900
  Capability:    Bridge, off
  Capability:    Router, on
Port:
  PortID:         ifname swp1
  PortDescr:      swp1
-----
-----
Interface:      swp2, via: LLDP, RID: 10, Time: 0 day, 17:08:27
Chassis:
  ChassisID:      mac 00:01:00:00:09:00
  SysName:        MSP-1
  SysDescr:       Cumulus Linux version 3.0.0 running on QEMU
Standard PC (i440FX + PIIX, 1996)
  MgmtIP:         192.0.2.9
  MgmtIP:         fe80::201:ff:fe00:900
  Capability:    Bridge, off
  Capability:    Router, on
Port:
  PortID:         ifname swp2
  PortDescr:      swp2
-----
-----
Interface:      swp3, via: LLDP, RID: 11, Time: 0 day, 17:08:27
Chassis:
  ChassisID:      mac 00:01:00:00:0a:00
  SysName:        MSP-2
  SysDescr:       Cumulus Linux version 3.0.0 running on QEMU
Standard PC (i440FX + PIIX, 1996)
  MgmtIP:         192.0.2.10
  MgmtIP:         fe80::201:ff:fe00:a00
  Capability:    Bridge, off

```



```
Capability: Router, on
Port:
  PortID:      ifname swp1
  PortDescr:   swp1
-----
-----
Interface:    swp4, via: LLDP, RID: 11, Time: 0 day, 17:08:27
Chassis:
  ChassisID:   mac 00:01:00:00:0a:00
  SysName:     MSP-2
  SysDescr:    Cumulus Linux version 3.0.0 running on QEMU
Standard PC (i440FX + PIIX, 1996)
  MgmtIP:      192.0.2.10
  MgmtIP:      fe80::201:ff:fe00:a00
  Capability:  Bridge, off
  Capability:  Router, on
Port:
  PortID:      ifname swp2
  PortDescr:   swp2
-----
-----
Interface:    swp49s1, via: LLDP, RID: 9, Time: 0 day, 16:55:00
Chassis:
  ChassisID:   mac 00:01:00:00:0c:00
  SysName:     TORC-1-2
  SysDescr:    Cumulus Linux version 3.0.0 running on QEMU
Standard PC (i440FX + PIIX, 1996)
  MgmtIP:      192.0.2.12
  MgmtIP:      fe80::201:ff:fe00:c00
  Capability:  Bridge, on
  Capability:  Router, on
Port:
  PortID:      ifname swp6
  PortDescr:   swp6
-----
-----
Interface:    swp49s0, via: LLDP, RID: 9, Time: 0 day, 16:55:00
Chassis:
  ChassisID:   mac 00:01:00:00:0c:00
  SysName:     TORC-1-2
  SysDescr:    Cumulus Linux version 3.0.0 running on QEMU
Standard PC (i440FX + PIIX, 1996)
  MgmtIP:      192.0.2.12
  MgmtIP:      fe80::201:ff:fe00:c00
  Capability:  Bridge, on
  Capability:  Router, on
Port:
  PortID:      ifname swp5
  PortDescr:   swp5
-----
```



To see lldpd statistics for all ports:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ll dpcli show statistics
-----
LLDP statistics:
-----
Interface:    eth0
  Transmitted:  9423
  Received:    17634
  Discarded:   0
  Unrecognized: 0
  Ageout:      10
  Inserted:    20
  Deleted:     10
-----
Interface:    swp1
  Transmitted:  9423
  Received:    6264
  Discarded:   0
  Unrecognized: 0
  Ageout:      0
  Inserted:    2
  Deleted:     0
-----
Interface:    swp2
  Transmitted:  9423
  Received:    6264
  Discarded:   0
  Unrecognized: 0
  Ageout:      0
  Inserted:    2
  Deleted:     0
-----
Interface:    swp3
  Transmitted:  9423
  Received:    6265
  Discarded:   0
  Unrecognized: 0
  Ageout:      0
  Inserted:    2
  Deleted:     0
-----
... and more (output truncated to fit this document)
```

To see lldpd statistics summary for all ports:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ll dpcli show statistics summary
-----
LLDP Global statistics:
```



```
-----  
Summary of stats:  
Transmitted: 648186  
Received: 437557  
Discarded: 0  
Unrecognized: 0  
Ageout: 10  
Inserted: 38  
Deleted: 10
```

To see the lldpd running configuration:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo lldpcli show running-configuration  
-----  
Global configuration:  
-----  
Configuration:  
  Transmit delay: 30  
  Transmit hold: 4  
  Receive mode: no  
  Pattern for management addresses: (none)  
  Interface pattern: (none)  
  Interface pattern blacklist: (none)  
  Interface pattern for chassis ID: (none)  
  Override description with: (none)  
  Override platform with: Linux  
  Override system name with: (none)  
  Advertise version: yes  
  Update interface descriptions: no  
  Promiscuous mode on managed interfaces: no  
  Disable LLDP-MED inventory: yes  
  LLDP-MED fast start mechanism: yes  
  LLDP-MED fast start interval: 1  
  Source MAC for LLDP frames on bond slaves: local  
  Portid TLV Subtype for lldp frames: ifname
```

Runtime Configuration (Advanced)



A runtime configuration does not persist when you reboot the switch — all changes are lost.

To configure active interfaces:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo lldpcli configure system interface pattern "swp  
*"
```

To configure inactive interfaces:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo lldpcli configure system interface pattern *,!  
eth0,swp*
```



The active interface list always overrides the inactive interface list.

To reset any interface list to none:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo lldpcli configure system interface pattern ""
```

## Enabling the SNMP Subagent in LLDP

LLDP does not enable the SNMP subagent by default. You need to edit `/etc/default/lldpd` and enable the `-x` option.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nano /etc/default/lldpd  
  
# Add "-x" to DAEMON_ARGS to start SNMP subagent  
  
# Enable CDP by default  
DAEMON_ARGS="-c"
```

## Caveats and Errata

- Annex E (and hence Annex D) of IEEE802.1AB (lldp) is not supported.

## Related Information

- [GitHub - llpd project](#)
- [Wikipedia - Link Layer Discovery Protocol](#)

## Prescriptive Topology Manager - PTM

In data center topologies, right cabling is a time-consuming endeavor and is error prone. Prescriptive Topology Manager (PTM) is a dynamic cabling verification tool to help detect and eliminate such errors. It takes a Graphviz-DOT specified network cabling plan (something many operators already generate), stored in a `topology.dot` file, and couples it with runtime information derived from LLDP to verify that the cabling matches the specification. The check is performed on every link transition on each node in the network.

You can customize the `topology.dot` file to control `ptmd` at both the global/network level and the node/port level.

PTM runs as a daemon, named `ptmd`.



For more information, see `man ptmd(8)`.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Supported Features (see page 305)
- Configuring PTM (see page 306)
- Basic Topology Example (see page 306)
- `ptmd` Scripts (see page 307)
- Configuration Parameters (see page 307)
  - Host-only Parameters (see page 307)
  - Global Parameters (see page 308)
  - Per-port Parameters (see page 308)
  - Templates (see page 309)
  - Supported BFD and LLDP Parameters (see page 309)
- Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD) (see page 310)
- Checking Link State with FRRouting (see page 311)
- Using `ptmd` Service Commands (see page 311)
- Using `ptmctl` Commands (see page 312)
  - `ptmctl` Examples (see page 312)
  - `ptmctl` Error Outputs (see page 314)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 315)
- Related Information (see page 315)

## Supported Features

- Topology verification using LLDP. `ptmd` creates a client connection to the LLDP daemon, `lldpd`, and retrieves the neighbor relationship between the nodes/ports in the network and compares them against the prescribed topology specified in the `topology.dot` file.
- Only physical interfaces, like `swp1` or `eth0`, are currently supported. Cumulus Linux does not support specifying virtual interfaces like bonds or subinterfaces like `eth0.200` in the topology file.
- Forwarding path failure detection using **Bidirectional Forwarding Detection** (BFD); however, demand mode is not supported. For more information on how BFD operates in Cumulus Linux, read the **Bidirectional Forwarding Detection - BFD** (see page 672) chapter and read `man ptmd(8)`.
- Integration with FRRouting (PTM to FRRouting notification).
- Client management: `ptmd` creates an abstract named socket `/var/run/ptmd.socket` on startup. Other applications can connect to this socket to receive notifications and send commands.
- Event notifications: see Scripts below.
- User configuration via a `topology.dot` file; **see below** (see page 306).



## Configuring PTM

`ptmd` verifies the physical network topology against a DOT-specified network graph file, `/etc/ptm.d/topology.dot`.



This file must be present or else `ptmd` will not start. You can specify an alternate file using the `-c` option.

PTM supports [undirected graphs](#).

At startup, `ptmd` connects to `lldpd`, the LLDP daemon, over a Unix socket and retrieves the neighbor name and port information. It then compares the retrieved port information with the configuration information that it read from the topology file. If there is a match, then it is a PASS, else it is a FAIL.

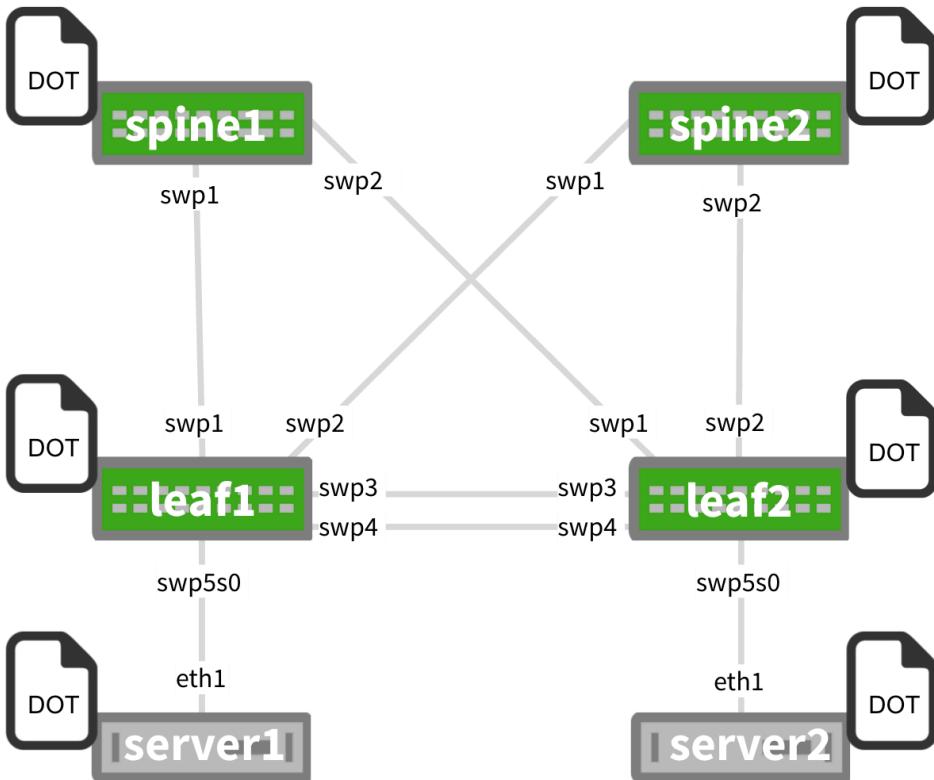


PTM performs its LLDP neighbor check using the PortID ifname TLV information. Previously, it used the PortID port description TLV information.

## Basic Topology Example

This is a basic example DOT file and its corresponding topology diagram. You should use the same `topology.dot` file on all switches, and don't split the file per device; this allows for easy automation by pushing/pulling the same exact file on each device!

```
graph G {
    "spine1": "swp1" -- "leaf1": "swp1";
    "spine1": "swp2" -- "leaf2": "swp1";
    "spine2": "swp1" -- "leaf1": "swp2";
    "spine2": "swp2" -- "leaf2": "swp2";
    "leaf1": "swp3" -- "leaf2": "swp3";
    "leaf1": "swp4" -- "leaf2": "swp4";
    "leaf1": "swp5s0" -- "server1": "eth1";
    "leaf2": "swp5s0" -- "server2": "eth1";
}
```



## ptmd Scripts

ptmd executes scripts at `/etc/ptm.d/if-topo-pass` and `/etc/ptm.d/if-topo-fail` for each interface that goes through a change, running `if-topo-pass` when an LLDP or BFD check passes and running `if-topo-fails` when the check fails. The scripts receive an argument string that is the result of the `ptmctl` command, described in the [ptmd commands section below](#) (see page 311).

You should modify these default scripts as needed.

## Configuration Parameters

You can configure ptmd parameters in the topology file. The parameters are classified as host-only, global, per-port/node and templates.

### Host-only Parameters

Host-only parameters apply to the entire host on which PTM is running. You can include the `hostnametype` host-only parameter, which specifies whether PTM should use only the host name (`hostname`) or the fully-qualified domain name (`fqdn`) while looking for the `self-node` in the graph file. For example, in the graph file below, PTM will ignore the FQDN and only look for `switch04`, since that is the host name of the switch it's running on:



It's a good idea to always wrap the hostname in double quotes, like "www.example.com". Otherwise, `ptmd` can fail if you specify a fully-qualified domain name as the hostname and do not wrap it in double quotes.

Further, to avoid errors when starting the `ptmd` process, make sure that `/etc/hosts` and `/etc/hostname` both reflect the hostname you are using in the `topology.dot` file.

```
graph G {
    hostnametype="hostname"
    BFD="upMinTx=150,requiredMinRx=250"
    "cumulus" :"swp44" -- "switch04.cumulusnetworks.com" :"swp20"
    "cumulus" :"swp46" -- "switch04.cumulusnetworks.com" :"swp22"
}
```

However, in this next example, PTM will compare using the FQDN and look for `switch05.cumulusnetworks.com`, which is the FQDN of the switch it's running on:

```
graph G {
    hostnametype="fqdn"
    "cumulus" :"swp44" -- "switch05.cumulusnetworks.com" :"swp20"
    "cumulus" :"swp46" -- "switch05.cumulusnetworks.com" :"swp22"
}
```

## Global Parameters

*Global parameters* apply to every port listed in the topology file. There are two global parameters: LLDP and BFD. LLDP is enabled by default; if no keyword is present, default values are used for all ports. However, BFD is disabled if no keyword is present, unless there is a per-port override configured. For example:

```
graph G {
    LLDP=""
    BFD="upMinTx=150,requiredMinRx=250,afi=both"
    "cumulus" :"swp44" -- "qct-ly2-04" :"swp20"
    "cumulus" :"swp46" -- "qct-ly2-04" :"swp22"
}
```

## Per-port Parameters

*Per-port parameters* provide finer-grained control at the port level. These parameters override any global or compiled defaults. For example:

```
graph G {
    LLDP=""
    BFD="upMinTx=300,requiredMinRx=100"
```

```

    "cumulus" :"swp44" -- "qct-ly2-04" :"swp20" [BFD="upMinTx=150,
requiredMinRx=250,afi=both"]
    "cumulus" :"swp46" -- "qct-ly2-04" :"swp22"
}

```

## Templates

*Templates* provide flexibility in choosing different parameter combinations and applying them to a given port. A template instructs `ptmd` to reference a named parameter string instead of a default one. There are two parameter strings `ptmd` supports:

- `bfdtmp1`, which specifies a custom parameter tuple for BFD.
- `lldptmp1`, which specifies a custom parameter tuple for LLDP.

For example:

```

graph G {
    LLDP=" "
    BFD="upMinTx=300,requiredMinRx=100"
    BFD1="upMinTx=200,requiredMinRx=200"
    BFD2="upMinTx=100,requiredMinRx=300"
    LLDP1="match_type=ifname"
    LLDP2="match_type=portdescr"
    "cumulus" :"swp44" -- "qct-ly2-04" :"swp20" [BFD="
bfdtmpl=BFD1", LLDP="lldptmpl=LLDP1"]
    "cumulus" :"swp46" -- "qct-ly2-04" :"swp22" [BFD="
bfdtmpl=BFD2", LLDP="lldptmpl=LLDP2"]
    "cumulus" :"swp46" -- "qct-ly2-04" :"swp22"
}

```

In this template, LLDP1 and LLDP2 are templates for LLDP parameters while BFD1 and BFD2 are templates for BFD parameters.

## Supported BFD and LLDP Parameters

`ptmd` supports the following BFD parameters:

- `upMinTx`: the minimum transmit interval, which defaults to `300ms`, specified in milliseconds.
- `requiredMinRx`: the minimum interval between received BFD packets, which defaults to `300ms`, specified in milliseconds.
- `detectMult`: the detect multiplier, which defaults to `3`, and can be any non-zero value.
- `afi`: the address family to be supported for the edge. The address family must be one of the following:
  - `v4`: BFD sessions will be built for only IPv4 connected peer. This is the default value.
  - `v6`: BFD sessions will be built for only IPv6 connected peer.
  - `both`: BFD sessions will be built for both IPv4 and IPv6 connected peers.

The following is an example of a topology with BFD applied at the port level:



```
graph G {
    "cumulus-1": "swp44" -- "cumulus-2": "swp20" [BFD="upMinTx=300,
requiredMinRx=100,afi=v6"]
    "cumulus-1": "swp46" -- "cumulus-2": "swp22" [BFD="
detectMult=4"]
}
```

`ptmd` supports the following LLDP parameters:

- `match_type`, which defaults to the interface name (`ifname`), but can accept a port description (`portdescr`) instead if you want `lldpd` to compare the topology against the port description instead of the interface name. You can set this parameter globally or at the per-port level.
- `match_hostname`, which defaults to the host name (`hostname`), but enables PTM to match the topology using the fully-qualified domain name (`fqdn`) supplied by LLDP.

The following is an example of a topology with LLDP applied at the port level:

```
graph G {
    "cumulus-1": "swp44" -- "cumulus-2": "swp20" [LLDP="
match_hostname=fqdn"]
    "cumulus-1": "swp46" -- "cumulus-2": "swp22" [LLDP="
match_type=portdescr"]
}
```



When you specify `match_hostname=fqdn`, `ptmd` will match the entire FQDN, like *cumulus-2.domain.com* in the example below. If you do not specify anything for `match_hostname`, `ptmd` will match based on `hostname` only, like *cumulus-3* below, and ignore the rest of the URL:

```
graph G {
    "cumulus-1": "swp44" -- "cumulus-2.domain.com": "swp20"
[LLDP="match_hostname=fqdn"]
    "cumulus-1": "swp46" -- "cumulus-3": "swp22" [LLDP="
match_type=portdescr"]
```

## Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD)

BFD provides low overhead and rapid detection of failures in the paths between two network devices. It provides a unified mechanism for link detection over all media and protocol layers. Use BFD to detect failures for IPv4 and IPv6 single or multihop paths between any two network devices, including unidirectional path failure detection. For information about configuring BFD using PTM, see the [BFD chapter](#) (see page 672).



## Checking Link State with FRRouting

The FRRouting routing suite enables additional checks to ensure that routing adjacencies are formed only on links that have connectivity conformant to the specification, as determined by `ptmd`.



You only need to do this to check link state; you don't need to enable PTM to determine BFD status.

The check is enabled by default. Every interface has an implied `ptm-enable` line in the configuration stanza in the interfaces file.

To disable the checks, delete the `ptm-enable` parameter from the interface. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net del interface swp51 ptm-enable
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

If you need to re-enable PTM for that interface, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp51 ptm-enable
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

With PTM enabled on an interface, the `zebra` daemon connects to `ptmd` over a Unix socket. Any time there is a change of status for an interface, `ptmd` sends notifications to `zebra`. `zebra` maintains a `ptm-status` flag per interface and evaluates routing adjacency based on this flag. To check the per-interface `ptm-status`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show interface swp1

Interface swp1 is up, line protocol is up
Link ups:      0    last: (never)
Link downs:    0    last: (never)
PTM status: disabled
vrf: Default-IP-Routing-Table
index 3 metric 0 mtu 1550
flags: <UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST>
HWaddr: c4:54:44:bd:01:41
```

## Using `ptmd` Service Commands

PTM sends client notifications in CSV format.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start|restart|force-reload ptmd.service
```

Starts or restarts the `ptmd` service. The `topology.dot` file must be present in order for the service to start.

cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo systemctl reload ptmd.service: Instructs `ptmd` to read the `topology.dot` file again without restarting, applying the new configuration to the running state.

cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo systemctl stop ptmd.service: Stops the `ptmd` service.

cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo systemctl status ptmd.service: Retrieves the current running state of `ptmd`.

## Using `ptmctl` Commands

`ptmctl` is a client of `ptmd`; it retrieves the operational state of the ports configured on the switch and information about BFD sessions from `ptmd`. `ptmctl` parses the CSV notifications sent by `ptmd`.

See `man ptmctl` for more information.

### *ptmctl Examples*

The examples below contain the following keywords in the output of the `cbl` status column, which are described here:

<b>cbl status Keyword</b>	<b>Definition</b>
pass	The interface is defined in the topology file, LLDP information is received on the interface, and the LLDP information for the interface matches the information in the topology file.
fail	The interface is defined in the topology file, LLDP information is received on the interface, and the LLDP information for the interface does <b>not</b> match the information in the topology file.
N/A	<p>The interface is defined in the topology file, but no LLDP information is received on the interface. The interface may be down or disconnected, or the neighbor is not sending LLDP packets.</p> <p>The "N/A" and "fail" statuses may indicate a wiring problem to investigate.</p> <p>The "N/A" status is not shown when using the <code>-1</code> option with <code>ptmctl</code>. If you specify the <code>-1</code> option, <code>ptmctl</code> displays only those interfaces that are receiving LLDP information.</p>

For basic output, use `ptmctl` without any options:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ptmctl
-----
port  cbl      BFD      BFD
      status    status   peer
                           BFD      BFD
                           local    type
-----
swp1  pass     pass    11.0.0.2      N/A    singlehop
swp2  pass     N/A     N/A          N/A    N/A
swp3  pass     N/A     N/A          N/A    N/A
```



For more detailed output, use the -d option:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ptmctl -d

-----
port  cb1    exp      act      sysname   portID   portDescr  match
last    BFD    BFD
        status nbr      nbr
upd     Type   state
-----
swp45  pass   h1:swp1 h1:swp1  h1       swp1     swp1      IfName 5m:
5s    N/A    N/A
swp46  fail   h2:swp1 h2:swp1  h2       swp1     swp1      IfName 5m:
5s    N/A    N/A

#continuation of the output
-----
BFD      BFD      det_mult tx_timeout rx_timeout echo_tx_timeout
echo_rx_timeout max_hop_cnt
peer    DownDiag
-----
N/A     N/A      N/A      N/A      N/A      N/A      N
/A
N/A     N/A      N/A      N/A      N/A      N/A      N
/A
N/A     N/A      N/A      N/A      N/A      N/A      N
/A
```

To return information on active BFD sessions ptmd is tracking, use the -b option:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ptmctl -b

-----
port  peer      state  local      type      diag
-----
swp1  11.0.0.2  Up    N/A      singlehop  N/A
N/A   12.12.12.1 Up    12.12.12.4 multihop  N/A
```

To return LLDP information, use the -l option. It returns only the active neighbors currently being tracked by ptmd.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ptmctl -l
```



```
port  sysname  portID  port   match  last
      descr    on     upd
-----
swp45 h1       swp1     swp1   IfName 5m:59s
swp46 h2       swp1     swp1   IfName 5m:59s
```

To return detailed information on active BFD sessions `ptmd` is tracking, use the `-b` and `-d` options (results are for an IPv6-connected peer):

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ptmctl -b -d

-----
port  peer          state  local   type        diag  det
tx_timeout rx_timeout

mult
-----
swp1  fe80::202:ff:fe00:1  Up     N/A     singlehop  N/A   3
300      900
swp1  3101:abc:bcad::2  Up     N/A     singlehop  N/A   3
300      900

#continuation of output
-----
echo    echo    max   rx_ctrl  tx_ctrl  rx_echo  tx_echo
tx_timeout rx_timeout hop_cnt
-----
0       0      N/A    187172   185986   0       0
0       0      N/A     501      533      0       0
```

## *ptmctl Error Outputs*

If there are errors in the topology file or there isn't a session, PTM will return appropriate outputs. Typical error strings are:

```
Topology file error [/etc/ptm.d/topology.dot] [cannot find node
cumulus] -
please check /var/log/ptmd.log for more info

Topology file error [/etc/ptm.d/topology.dot] [cannot open file
(errno 2)] -
please check /var/log/ptmd.log for more info

No Hostname/MgmtIP found [Check LLDPD daemon status] -
please check /var/log/ptmd.log for more info
```



```
No BFD sessions . Check connections  
No LLDP ports detected. Check connections  
Unsupported command
```

For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ptmctl  
-----  
---  
cmd      error  
-----  
---  
get-status Topology file error [/etc/ptm.d/topology.dot]  
[cannot open file (errno 2)] - please check /var/log/ptmd.  
log  
for more info
```



If you encounter errors with the `topology.dot` file, you can use `dot` (included in the Graphviz package) to validate the syntax of the topology file.

By simply opening the topology file with Graphviz, you can ensure that it is readable and that the file format is correct.

If you edit `topology.dot` file from a Windows system, be sure to double check the file formatting; there may be extra characters that keep the graph from working correctly.

## Caveats and Errata

- Prior to version 2.1, Cumulus Linux stored the `ptmd` configuration files in `/etc/cumulus/ptm.d`. When you upgrade to version 2.1 or later, all the existing `ptmd` files are copied from their original location to `/etc/ptm.d` with a `dpkg-old` extension, except for `topology.dot`, which gets copied to `/etc/ptm.d`.  
If you customized the `if-topo-pass` and `if-topo-fail` scripts, they are also copied to `dpkg-old`, and you must modify them so they can parse the CSV output correctly.  
Sample `if-topo-pass` and `if-topo-fail` scripts are available in `/etc/ptm.d`. A sample `topology.dot` file is available in `/usr/share/doc/ptmd/examples`.
- When PTMD is incorrectly in a failure state and the Zebra interface is enabled, PIF BGP sessions are not establishing the route, but the subinterface on top of it does establish routes.  
If the subinterface is configured on the physical interface and the physical interface is incorrectly marked as being in a PTM FAIL state, routes on the physical interface are not processed in Quagga, but the subinterface is working.

## Related Information

- Bidirectional Forwarding Detection (BFD)



- [Graphviz](#)
- [LLDP on Wikipedia](#)
- [PTMd GitHub repo](#)

## Bonding - Link Aggregation

Linux bonding provides a method for aggregating multiple network interfaces (*slaves*) into a single logical bonded interface (*bond*). Cumulus Linux supports two bonding modes:

- The IEEE 802.3ad link aggregation mode, which allows one or more links to be aggregated together to form a *link aggregation group* (LAG), such that a media access control (MAC) client can treat the link aggregation group as if it were a single link.
- The balance-xor mode, where the bonding of slave interfaces are static and all slave interfaces are active for load balancing and fault tolerance purposes. This is useful for [MLAG](#) (see page 351) deployments.

The benefits of link aggregation include:

- Linear scaling of bandwidth as links are added to LAG
- Load balancing
- Failover protection

Cumulus Linux uses version 1 of the LAG control protocol (LACP).

To temporarily bring up a bond even when there is no LACP partner, use [LACP Bypass](#) (see page 383).

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- [Hash Distribution](#) (see page 316)
- [Creating a Bond](#) (see page 317)
  - [Configuration Options](#) (see page 317)
  - [Enabling balance-xor Mode](#) (see page 319)
- [Example Configuration: Bonding 4 Slaves](#) (see page 320)
- [Caveats and Errata](#) (see page 322)
- [Related Information](#) (see page 322)

## Hash Distribution

Egress traffic through a bond is distributed to a slave based on a packet hash calculation, providing load balancing over the slaves; many conversation flows are distributed over all available slaves to load balance the total traffic. Traffic for a single conversation flow always hashes to the same slave.

The hash calculation uses packet header data to pick which slave to transmit the packet to:

- For IP traffic, IP header source and destination fields are used in the calculation.
- For IP + TCP/UDP traffic, source and destination ports are included in the hash calculation.



In a failover event, the hash calculation is adjusted to steer traffic over available slaves.



## Creating a Bond

Bonds can be created and configured using the Network Command Line Utility ([NCLU \(see page 85\)](#)). Follow the steps below to create a new bond:

1. SSH into the switch.
2. Add a bond using the `net add bond` command, replacing `[bond-name]` with the name of the bond, and `[slaves]` with the list of slaves:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bond [bond-name] bond slaves [slaves]
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```



The name of the bond must be:

- Compliant with Linux interface naming conventions.
- Unique within the switch.

## Configuration Options

The configuration options, and their default values, are listed in the table below.



Each bond configuration option, except for `bond slaves`, is set to the recommended value by default in Cumulus Linux. They should only be configured if a different setting is needed. For more information on configuration values, refer to the Related Information section below.

NCLU Configuration Option	Description	Default Value
<code>bond mode</code>	The defined bonding mode.  Cumulus Linux supports IEEE 802.3ad link aggregation mode and balance-xor mode. You should use balance-xor mode only if you cannot use LACP for some reason. <a href="#">See below (see page 319)</a> for more information.	802.3ad
<code>bond slaves</code>	The list of slaves in the bond.	N/A
<code>bond miimon</code>	Defines how often the link state of each slave is inspected for failures.	100
<code>bond downdelay</code>	Specifies the time, in milliseconds, to wait before disabling a slave after a link failure has been detected. This option is only valid for the miimon link monitor. The downdelay value should be a multiple of the miimon value; if not, it will be rounded down to the nearest multiple.	0

NCLU Configuration Option	Description	Default Value
bond updelay	Specifies the time, in milliseconds, to wait before enabling a slave after a link recovery has been detected. This option is only valid for the miimon link monitor. The updelay value should be a multiple of the miimon value; if not, it will be rounded down to the nearest multiple.	0
bond use-carrier	Determines the link state.	1
bond xmit-hash-policy	Hash method used to select the slave for a given packet.  ❗ This setting <b>must not</b> be changed.	layer3+4
bond lacp-bypass-allow	Enables <a href="#">LACP bypass</a> (see page 383).	N/A
bond lacp-rate	Sets the rate to ask the link partner to transmit LACP control packets. You can set the LACP rate to slow using <a href="#">NCLU</a> (see page 85):  <pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ net add bond bond01 bond lacp-rate slow</pre>	1
bond min-links	Defines the minimum number of links that must be active before the bond is put into service.  ℹ A value greater than 1 is useful if higher level services need to ensure a minimum aggregate bandwidth level before activating a bond. Keeping <code>bond-min-links</code> set to 1 indicates the bond must have at least one active member. If the number of active members drops below the <code>bond-min-links</code> setting, the bond will appear to upper-level protocols as <code>link-down</code> . When the number of active links returns to greater than or equal to <code>bond-min-links</code> , the bond will become <code>link-up</code> .	1



## Enabling balance-xor Mode

When you enable *balance-xor mode*, the bonding of slave interfaces are static and all slave interfaces are active for load balancing and fault tolerance purposes. Packet transmission on the bond is based on the hash policy specified by `xmit-hash-policy`.

When using balance-xor mode to dual-connect host-facing bonds in an [MLAG \(see page 351\)](#) environment, the `clag_id` parameter **must** be configured on the MLAG bonds and must be the same on both MLAG switches. Otherwise, the bonds are treated by the MLAG switch pair as if they were single-connected.



You should use balance-xor mode **only** if you cannot use LACP for some reason, as LACP can detect mismatched link attributes among bond members and can even detect misconnections.

In order to change the mode of an existing bond, you must first delete the bond, then recreate it with the balance-xor mode. Assuming the bond doesn't exist on the host, you can configure it as follows:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bond bond1 bond slaves swp3,4  
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bond bond1 bond mode balance-xor  
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending  
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```
auto bond1  
iface bond1  
    bond-mode balance-xor  
    bond-slaves swp3 swp4
```

To view the bond, use [NCLU \(see page 85\)](#):

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show interface bond1  
      Name      MAC                Speed     MTU      Mode  
---  -----  -----  
UP   bond1   00:02:00:00:00:12  20G      1500    Bond
```

**Bond Details**  
-----  
**Bond Mode:** Balance-XOR  
**Load Balancing:** Layer3+4  
**Minimum Links:** 1  
**In CLAG:** CLAG Inactive

Port	Speed	TX	RX	Err	Link Failures
---	-----	---	---	---	-----

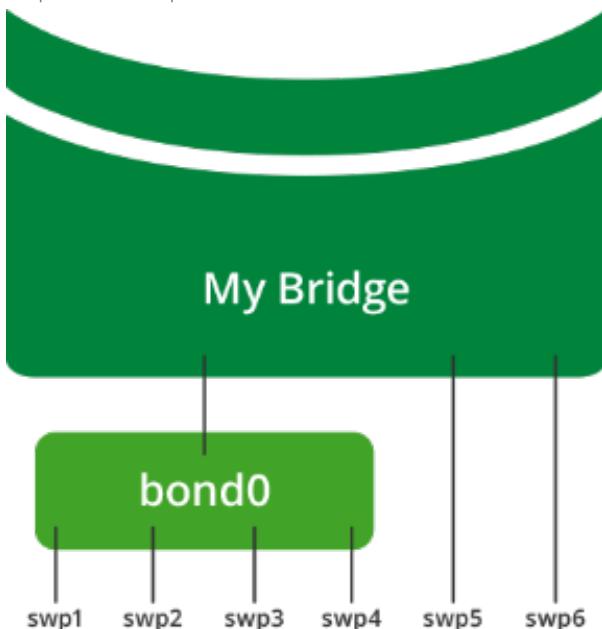
```
UP  swp3(P)  10G      0   0   0   0
UP  swp4(P)  10G      0   0   0   0
```

#### LLDP

```
-----  
swp3(P)  === swp1(p1c1h1)  
swp4(P)  === swp2(p1c1h1)Routing  
-----  
Interface bond1 is up, line protocol is up  
Link ups:      3    last: 2017/04/26 21:00:38.26  
Link downs:    2    last: 2017/04/26 20:59:56.78  
PTM status: disabled  
vrf: Default-IP-Routing-Table  
index 31 metric 0 mtu 1500  
flags: <UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST>  
Type: Ethernet  
HWaddr: 00:02:00:00:00:12  
inet6 fe80::202:ff:fe00:12/64  
Interface Type Other
```

## Example Configuration: Bonding 4 Slaves

In the following example, the front panel port interfaces swp1-swp4 are slaves in bond0, while swp5 and swp6 are not part of bond0.



### ⓘ Example Bond Configuration

The following commands create a bond with four slaves:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bond bond0 address 10.0.0.1/30
```



```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bond bond0 bond slaves swp1-4  
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending  
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create this code snippet in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```
auto bond0  
iface bond0  
    address 10.0.0.1/30  
    bond-slaves swp1 swp2 swp3 swp4
```



If you are intending that the bond become part of a bridge, you don't need to specify an IP address.

When networking is started on switch, bond0 is created as MASTER and interfaces swp1-swp4 come up in SLAVE mode, as seen in the `ip link show` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip link show  
...  
3: swp1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,SLAVE,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast  
    master bond0 state UP mode DEFAULT qlen 500  
    link/ether 44:38:39:00:03:c1 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff  
4: swp2: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,SLAVE,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast  
    master bond0 state UP mode DEFAULT qlen 500  
    link/ether 44:38:39:00:03:c1 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff  
5: swp3: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,SLAVE,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast  
    master bond0 state UP mode DEFAULT qlen 500  
    link/ether 44:38:39:00:03:c1 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff  
6: swp4: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,SLAVE,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast  
    master bond0 state UP mode DEFAULT qlen 500  
    link/ether 44:38:39:00:03:c1 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff  
...  
55: bond0: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,MASTER,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue  
    state UP mode DEFAULT  
    link/ether 44:38:39:00:03:c1 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
```



All slave interfaces within a bond have the same MAC address as the bond. Typically, the first slave added to the bond donates its MAC address as the bond MAC address, while the other slaves' MAC addresses are set to the bond MAC address.

The bond MAC address is used as source MAC address for all traffic leaving the bond, and provides a single destination MAC address to address traffic to the bond.

## Caveats and Errata

- An interface cannot belong to multiple bonds.
- A bond can have subinterfaces, but not the other way around.
- A bond cannot enslave VLAN subinterfaces.
- Slave ports within a bond should all be set to the same speed/duplex, and should match the link partner's slave ports.

## Related Information

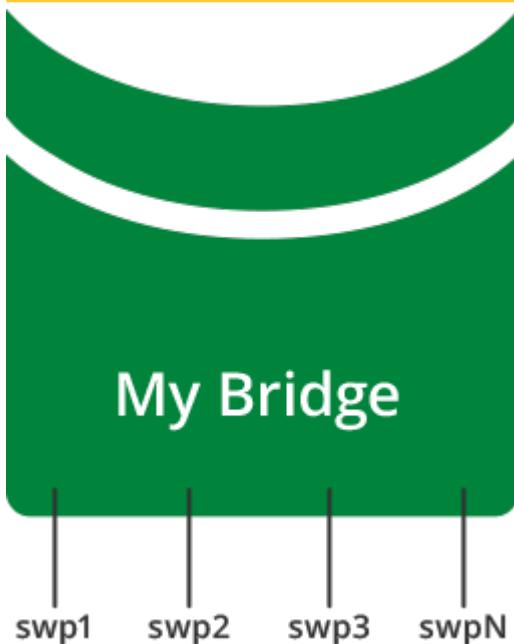
- [Linux Foundation - Bonding](#)
- [802.3ad \(Accessible writeup\)](#)
- [Wikipedia - Link aggregation](#)

## Ethernet Bridging - VLANs

Ethernet bridges provide a means for hosts to communicate through layer 2, by connecting all of the physical and logical interfaces in the system into a single layer 2 domain. The bridge is a logical interface with a MAC address and an [MTU \(see page 238\)](#) (maximum transmission unit). The bridge MTU is the minimum MTU among all its members. By default, the bridge's MAC address is copied from eth0. The bridge can also be assigned an IP address, as discussed [below \(see page 324\)](#).



Bridge members can be individual physical interfaces, bonds or logical interfaces that traverse an 802.1Q VLAN trunk.



Cumulus Networks recommends using [VLAN-aware mode \(see page 328\)](#) bridges, rather than *traditional mode* bridges. The bridge driver in Cumulus Linux is capable of VLAN filtering, which allows for configurations that are similar to incumbent network devices. While Cumulus Linux supports Ethernet bridges in traditional mode, Cumulus Networks recommends using [VLAN-aware \(see page 328\)](#) mode.



For a comparison of traditional and VLAN-aware modes, read [this knowledge base article](#).



Cumulus Linux does not put all ports into a bridge by default.



You can configure both VLAN-aware and traditional mode bridges on the same network in Cumulus Linux; however you cannot have more than one VLAN-aware bridge on a given switch.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Creating a VLAN-aware Bridge (see page 323)
- Creating a Traditional Mode Bridge (see page 323)
- Configuring Bridge MAC Addresses (see page 323)
  - MAC Address Ageing (see page 324)
- Configuring an SVI (Switch VLAN Interface) (see page 324)
  - Keeping the SVI in an UP State (see page 326)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 327)
- Related Information (see page 327)

## Creating a VLAN-aware Bridge

To learn about VLAN-aware bridges and how to configure them, read [VLAN-aware Bridge Mode for Large-scale Layer 2 Environments \(see page 328\)](#).

## Creating a Traditional Mode Bridge

To create a traditional mode bridge, see [Traditional Mode Bridges \(see page 340\)](#).

## Configuring Bridge MAC Addresses

The MAC address for a frame is learned when the frame enters the bridge via an interface. The MAC address is recorded in the bridge table, and the bridge forwards the frame to its intended destination by looking up the destination MAC address. The MAC entry is then maintained for a period of time defined by the `bridge-ageing` configuration option. If the frame is seen with the same source MAC address before the MAC entry age is exceeded, the MAC entry age is refreshed; if the MAC entry age is exceeded, the MAC address is deleted from the bridge table.



The following example output shows a MAC address table for the bridge:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show bridge macs
VLAN      Master     Interface      MAC                                TunnelDest
State      Flags      LastSeen
-----  -----
-----  -----
untagged   bridge     swp1          44:38:39:00:00:00:
03                      00:00:15
untagged   bridge     swp1          44:38:39:00:00:04
permanent          permanent    20 days, 01:14:03
```

## MAC Address Ageing

By default, Cumulus Linux stores MAC addresses in the Ethernet switching table for 1800 seconds (30 minutes). You can change this setting using NCLU.

The `bridge-ageing` option is in the [NCLU blacklist \(see page 94\)](#), as it's not frequently used. To configure this setting, you need to remove the `bridge-ageing` keyword from the `ifupdown_blacklist` in `/etc/netd.conf`. [Restart the netd service \(see page 93\)](#) after you edit the file.

Now you can change the setting using NCLU. For example, to change the setting to 600 seconds, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge bridge ageing 600
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/network/interfaces
...
auto bridge
iface bridge
  bridge-ageing 600
...
```

## Configuring an SVI (Switch VLAN Interface)

Bridges can be included as part of a routing topology after being assigned an IP address. This enables hosts within the bridge to communicate with other hosts outside of the bridge, via a *switch VLAN interface* (SVI), which provides layer 3 routing. The IP address of the bridge is typically from the same subnet as the bridge's member hosts.



When an interface is added to a bridge, it ceases to function as a router interface, and the IP address on the interface, if any, becomes unreachable.

To configure the SVI, use [NCLU \(see page 85\)](#):

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge bridge ports swp1-2
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan 10 ip address 10.100.100.1/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following SVI configuration in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports swp1 swp2
    bridge-vids 10
    bridge-vlan-aware yes

auto vlan10
iface vlan10
    address 10.100.100.1/24
    vlan-id 10
    vlan-raw-device bridge
```



Notice the `vlan-raw-device` keyword, which NCLU includes automatically. NCLU uses this keyword to associate the SVI with the VLAN-aware bridge.

Alternately, you can use the `bridge.VLAN-ID` naming convention for the SVI. The following example configuration can be manually created in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file, which functions identically to the above configuration:

```
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports swp1 swp2
    bridge-vids 10
    bridge-vlan-aware yes

auto bridge.10
iface bridge.10
    address 10.100.100.1/24
```

## *Keeping the SVI in an UP State*

When a switch is initially configured, all southbound bridge ports may be down, which means that, by default, the SVI is also down. However, you may want to force the SVI to always be up, to perform connectivity testing, for example. To do this, you essentially need to disable interface state tracking, leaving the SVI in the UP state always, even if all member ports are down. Other implementations describe this feature as "no autostate".

In Cumulus Linux, you can keep the SVI perpetually UP by creating a dummy interface, and making the dummy interface a member of the bridge. Consider the following configuration, without a dummy interface in the bridge:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/network/interfaces
...
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-ports swp3
    bridge-vids 100
    bridge-pvid 1
...
...
```

With this configuration, when swp3 is down, the SVI is also down:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip link show swp3
5: swp3: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast master
    bridge state DOWN mode DEFAULT group default qlen 1000
        link/ether 2c:60:0c:66:b1:7f brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
cumulus@switch:~$ ip link show bridge
35: bridge: <NO-CARRIER,BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
    state DOWN mode DEFAULT group default
        link/ether 2c:60:0c:66:b1:7f brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
```

Now add the dummy interface to your network configuration:

1. Create a dummy interface, and add it to the bridge configuration. You do this by editing the `/etc/network/interfaces` file and adding the dummy interface stanza before the bridge stanza:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nano /etc/network/interfaces
...
auto dummy
iface dummy
    link-type dummy

auto bridge
```



```
iface bridge  
...
```

2. Continue editing the `interfaces` file. Add the dummy interface to the `bridge-ports` line in the bridge configuration:

```
auto bridge  
iface bridge  
    bridge-vlan-aware yes  
    bridge-ports swp3 dummy  
    bridge-vids 100  
    bridge-pvid 1
```

3. Save and exit the file, then reload the configuration:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifreload -a
```

Now, even when `sdp3` is down, both the dummy interface and the bridge remain up:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip link show swp3  
5: swp3: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast master  
    bridge state DOWN mode DEFAULT group default qlen 1000  
        link/ether 2c:60:0c:66:b1:7f brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff  
cumulus@switch:~$ ip link show dummy  
37: dummy: <BROADCAST,NOARP,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue  
    master bridge state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT group default  
        link/ether 66:dc:92:d4:f3:68 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff  
cumulus@switch:~$ ip link show bridge  
35: bridge: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue  
    state UP mode DEFAULT group default  
        link/ether 2c:60:0c:66:b1:7f brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
```

## Caveats and Errata

- A bridge cannot contain multiple subinterfaces of the **same** port. Attempting this configuration results in an error.
- In environments where both VLAN-aware and traditional bridges are in use, if a traditional bridge has a subinterface of a bond that is a normal interface in a VLAN-aware bridge, the bridge will be flapped when the traditional bridge's bond subinterface is brought down.

## Related Information

- [Linux Foundation - Bridges](#)
- [Linux Foundation - VLANs](#)
- [Linux Journal - Linux as an Ethernet Bridge](#)



- Comparing Traditional Bridge Mode to VLAN-aware Bridge Mode

## VLAN-aware Bridge Mode for Large-scale Layer 2 Environments

The Cumulus Linux bridge driver supports two configuration modes, one that is VLAN-aware, and one that follows a more traditional Linux bridge model.

For [traditional Linux bridges \(see page 340\)](#), the kernel supports VLANs in the form of VLAN subinterfaces. Enabling bridging on multiple VLANs means configuring a bridge for each VLAN and, for each member port on a bridge, creating one or more VLAN subinterfaces out of that port. This mode poses scalability challenges in terms of configuration size as well as boot time and run time state management, when the number of ports times the number of VLANs becomes large.

The VLAN-aware mode in Cumulus Linux implements a configuration model for large-scale L2 environments, with **one single instance** of [Spanning Tree \(see page 284\)](#). Each physical bridge member port is configured with the list of allowed VLANs as well as its port VLAN ID (either PVID or native VLAN — see below). MAC address learning, filtering and forwarding are *VLAN-aware*. This significantly reduces the configuration size, and eliminates the large overhead of managing the port/VLAN instances as subinterfaces, replacing them with lightweight VLAN bitmaps and state updates.



You can configure both VLAN-aware and traditional mode bridges on the same network in Cumulus Linux; however you should not have more than one VLAN-aware bridge on a given switch.

## Contents

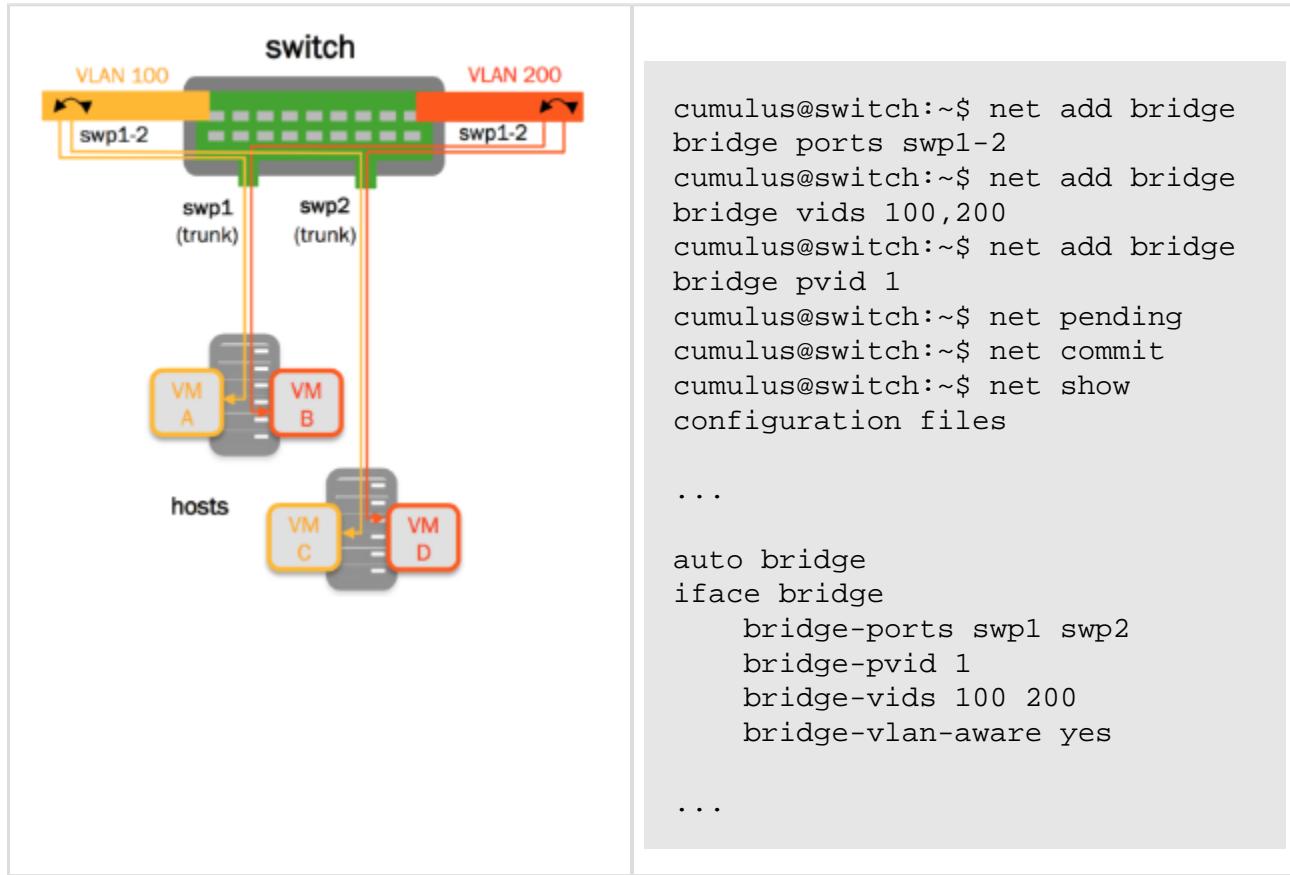
This chapter covers ...

- Configuring a VLAN-aware Bridge (see page 329)
- Example Configurations (see page 330)
  - VLAN Filtering/VLAN Pruning (see page 330)
  - Untagged/Access Ports (see page 331)
  - Dropping Untagged Frames (see page 332)
  - VLAN Layer 3 Addressing — Switch Virtual Interfaces and Other VLAN Attributes (see page 333)
  - Configuring ARP Timers (see page 334)
  - Configuring Multiple Ports in a Range (see page 334)
  - Access Ports and Pruned VLANs (see page 335)
  - Large Bond Set Configuration (see page 336)
  - VXLANs with VLAN-aware Bridges (see page 337)
  - Configuring a Static MAC Address Entry (see page 338)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 339)
  - Spanning Tree Protocol (STP) (see page 339)
  - IGMP Snooping (see page 339)
  - Reserved VLAN Range (see page 339)
  - VLAN Translation (see page 339)

- Converting Bridges between Supported Modes (see page 340)

## Configuring a VLAN-aware Bridge

VLAN-aware bridges can be configured with the Network Command Line Utility ([NCLU \(see page 85\)](#)). The example below shows the NCLU commands required to create a VLAN-aware bridge configured for STP, that contains two switch ports, and includes 3 VLANs — the tagged VLANs 100 and 200 and the untagged (native) VLAN of 1:



The following attributes are useful for configuring VLAN-aware bridges:

- **bridge-vlan-aware**: Is automatically set to yes to indicate that the bridge is in VLAN-aware mode.
- **bridge-pvid**: A PVID is the *Primary VLAN Identifier*. The PVID defaults to 1; specifying the PVID identifies that VLAN as the native VLAN.
- **bridge-vids**: A VID is the *VLAN Identifier*, which declares the VLANs associated with this bridge.
- **bridge-access**: Declares the physical switch port as an *access port*. Access ports ignore all tagged packets; put all untagged packets into the **bridge-pvid**.
- **bridge-allow-untagged**: When set to *no*, it drops any untagged frames for a given switch port.



If you specify **bridge-vids**, **bridge-access** or **bridge-pvid** at the bridge level, these configurations are inherited by all ports in the bridge. However, specifying any of these settings for a specific port overrides the setting in the bridge.

For a definitive list of bridge attributes, run `ifquery --syntax-help` and look for the entries under **bridge**, **bridgevlan** and **mstpctl**.



The `bridge-pvid 1` is implied by default. You do not have to specify `bridge-pvid` for a bridge or a port; in this case, the VLAN is untagged. And while it does not hurt the configuration, it helps other users for readability.

The following configurations are identical to each other and the configuration above:

```
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports
    swp1 swp2
    bridge-vids
    1 100 200
    bridge-vlan-
    aware yes
```

```
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports
    swp1 swp2
    bridge-pvid 1
    bridge-vids
    1 100 200
    bridge-vlan-
    aware yes
```

```
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports
    swp1 swp2
    bridge-vids
    100 200
    bridge-vlan-
    aware yes
```



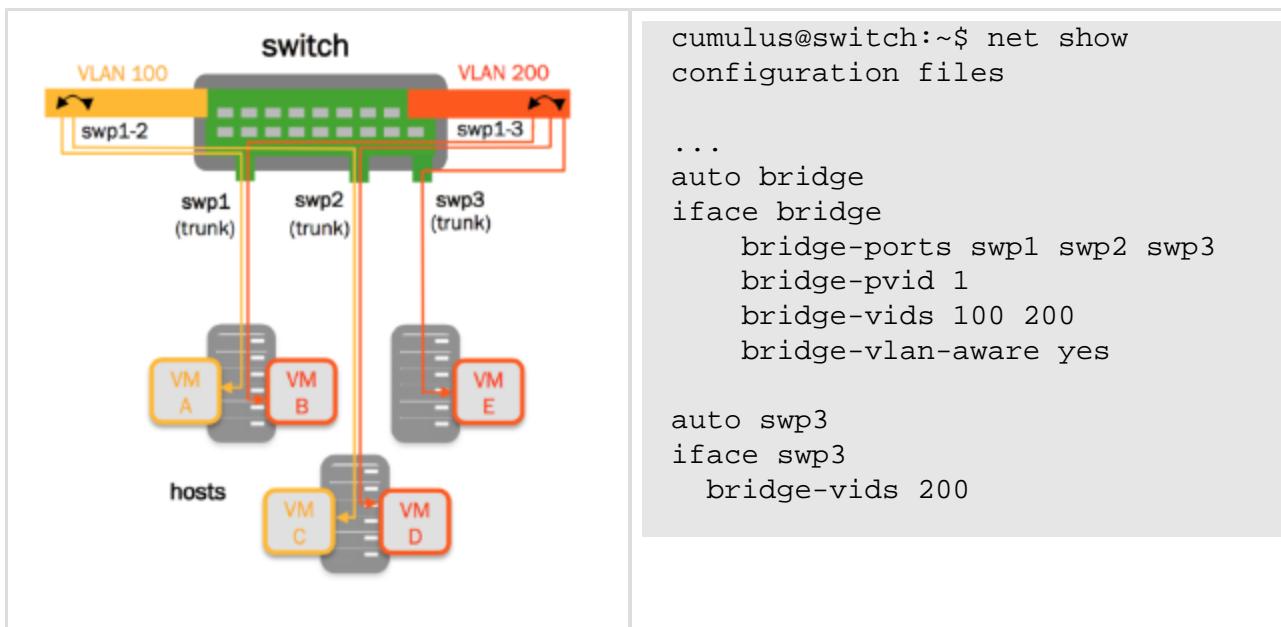
Do not try to bridge the management port, `eth0`, with any switch ports (like `swp0`, `swp1` and so forth). For example, if you created a bridge with `eth0` and `swp1`, it will not work properly and may disrupt access to the management interface.

## *Example Configurations*

### *VLAN Filtering/VLAN Pruning*

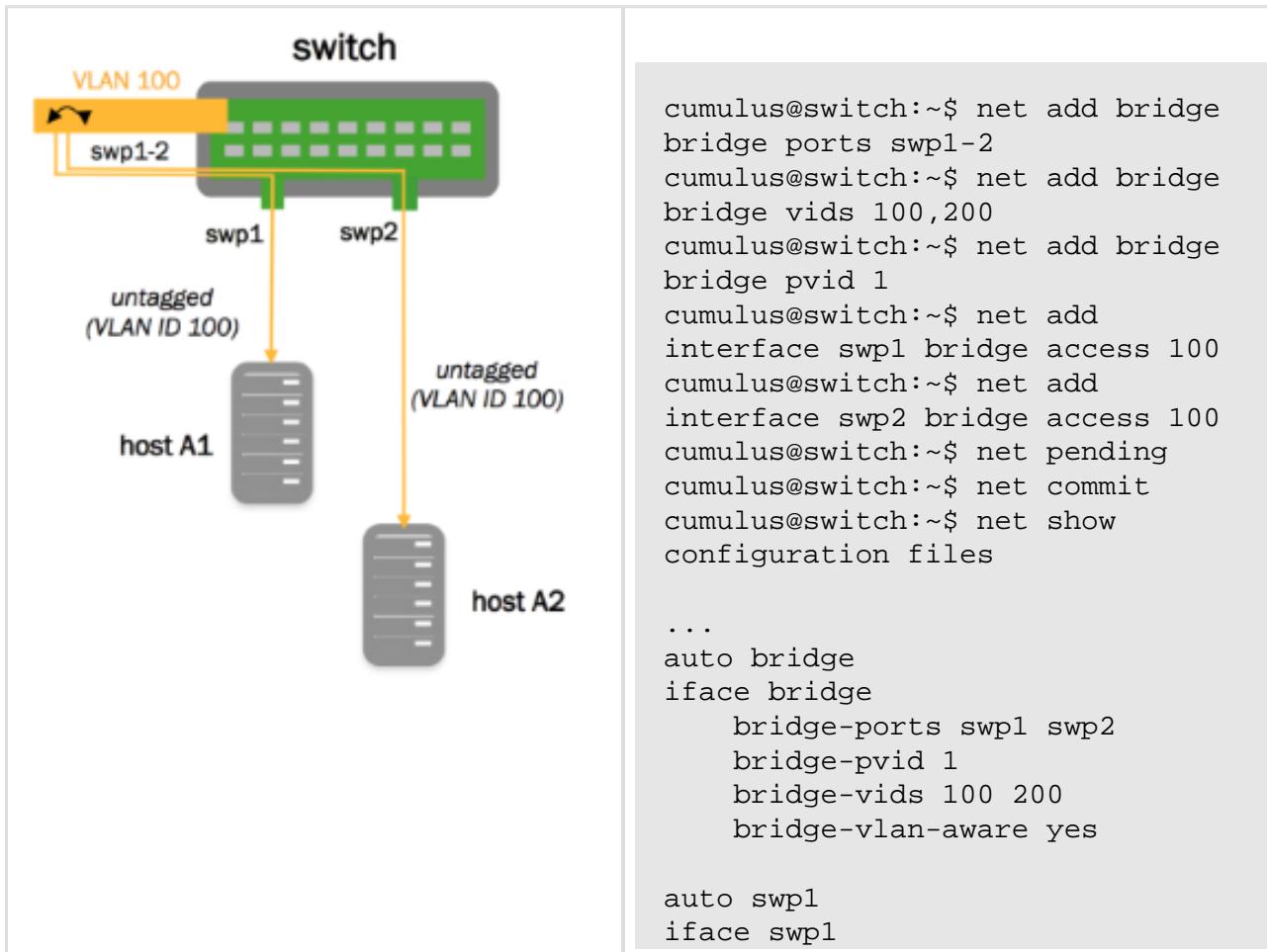
By default, the bridge port inherits the bridge VIDs. A port's configuration can override the bridge VIDs, by using the `bridge-vids` attribute:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge
bridge ports swp1-3
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge
bridge vids 100,200
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge
bridge pvid 1
cumulus@switch:~$ net add
interface swp3 bridge vids 200
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```



## *Untagged/Access Ports*

Access ports ignore all tagged packets. In the configuration below, swp1 and swp2 are configured as access ports, while all untagged traffic goes to VLAN 100, as specified in the example below:





```
bridge-access 100  
  
auto swp2  
iface swp2  
    bridge-access 100  
    ...
```

## Dropping Untagged Frames

With VLAN-aware bridge mode, a switch port can be configured to drop any untagged frames. To do this, add `bridge-allow-untagged no` to the **switch port** (not to the bridge). This leaves the bridge port without a PVID and drops untagged packets.

Consider the following example bridge:

```
auto bridge  
iface bridge  
    bridge-ports swp1 swp2  
    bridge-pvid 1  
    bridge-vids 10 100 200  
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
```

Here is the VLAN membership for that configuration:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show bridge vlan  
  
Interface      VLAN  Flags  
-----  -----  
swp1           1   PVID, Egress Untagged  
                100  
                200  
swp2           1   PVID, Egress Untagged  
                10  
                100  
                200
```

To configure swp2 to drop untagged frames, add `bridge-allow-untagged no`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp2 bridge allow-untagged no
```

This command creates the following configuration snippet in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file. Note the `bridge-allow-untagged` configuration is under swp2:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/network/interfaces
```



```
...  
  
auto swp1  
iface swp1  
  
auto swp2  
iface swp2  
    bridge-allow-untagged no  
  
auto bridge  
iface bridge  
    bridge-ports swp1 swp2  
    bridge-pvid 1  
    bridge-vids 10 100 200  
    bridge-vlan-aware yes  
  
...
```

When you check VLAN membership for that port, it shows that there is **no** untagged VLAN.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show bridge vlan  
  
Interface      VLAN  Flags  
-----  -----  
swp1           1     PVID, Egress Untagged  
                10  
                100  
                200  
swp2           10  
                100  
                200
```

## VLAN Layer 3 Addressing – Switch Virtual Interfaces and Other VLAN Attributes

When configuring the VLAN attributes for the bridge, specify the attributes for each VLAN interface, each of which is named *vlan<vlanid>*. If you are configuring the SVI for the native VLAN, you must declare the native VLAN and specify its IP address. Specifying the IP address in the bridge stanza itself returns an error.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan 100 ip address 192.168.10.1/24  
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan 100 ipv6 address 2001:db8::1/32  
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending  
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration in the /etc/network/interfaces file:

```
auto bridge
```

```

iface bridge
    bridge-ports swp1 swp2
    bridge-pvid 1
    bridge-vids 10 100 200
    bridge-vlan-aware yes

auto vlan100
iface vlan100
    address 192.168.10.1/24
    address 2001:db8::1/32
    vlan-id 100
    vlan-raw-device bridge

```



In the above configuration, if your switch is configured for multicast routing, you do not need to specify `bridge-igmp-querier-src`, as there is no need for a static IGMP querier configuration on the switch. Otherwise, the static IGMP querier configuration helps to probe the hosts to refresh their IGMP reports.

You can specify a range of VLANs as well. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan 1-200
```

## Configuring ARP Timers

Cumulus Linux does not often interact directly with end systems as much as end systems interact with one another. Thus, after a successful [address resolution protocol](#) (ARP) places a neighbor into a reachable state, Cumulus Linux may not interact with the client again for a long enough period of time for the neighbor to move into a stale state. To keep neighbors in the reachable state, Cumulus Linux includes a background process (`/usr/bin/neighmgrd`) that tracks neighbors that move into a stale, delay or probe state, and attempts to refresh their state ahead of any removal from the Linux kernel, and thus before it would be removed from the hardware forwarding.

The ARP refresh timer defaults to 1080 seconds (18 minutes). You can change this setting by following the procedures outlined in this [knowledge base article](#).

## Configuring Multiple Ports in a Range

The `bridge-ports` attribute takes a range of numbers. The "swp1-52" in the example below indicates that swp1 through swp52 are part of the bridge, which is a shortcut that saves you from enumerating each port individually:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge bridge ports swp1-52
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit

```

These commands create the following configuration in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports swp1 swp2 swp3 ... swp51 swp52
    bridge-vids 310 700 707 712 850 910
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
```

## Access Ports and Pruned VLANs

The following example configuration contains an access port and switch port that are *pruned*; they only send and receive traffic tagged to/from a specific set of VLANs declared by the `bridge-vids` attribute. It also contains other switch ports that send and receive traffic from all the defined VLANs.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show configuration files

...
# ports swp3-swp48 are trunk ports which inherit vlans from the
'bridge'
# ie vlans 310,700,707,712,850,910
#
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports swp1 swp2 swp3 ... swp51 swp52
    bridge-vids 310 700 707 712 850 910
    bridge-vlan-aware yes

auto swp1
iface swp1
    bridge-access 310
    mstpctl-bpduguard yes
    mstpctl-portadminedge yes

# The following is a trunk port that is "pruned".
# native vlan is 1, but only .1q tags of 707, 712, 850 are
# sent and received
#
auto swp2
iface swp2
    mstpctl-bpduguard yes
    mstpctl-portadminedge yes
    bridge-vids 707 712 850

# The following port is the trunk uplink and inherits all vlans
# from 'bridge'; bridge assurance is enabled using 'portnetwork'
attribute
auto swp49
iface swp49
    mstpctl-portnetwork yes
    mstpctl-portpathcost 10
```

```
# The following port is the trunk uplink and inherits all vlans
# from 'bridge'; bridge assurance is enabled using 'portnetwork'
attribute
auto swp50
iface swp50
    mstpctl-portnetwork yes
    mstpctl-portpathcost 0

...
```

## *Large Bond Set Configuration*

The configuration below demonstrates a VLAN-aware bridge with a large set of bonds. The bond configurations are generated from a [Mako](#) template.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show configuration files

...
#
# vlan-aware bridge with bonds example
#
# uplink1, peerlink and downlink are bond interfaces.
# 'bridge' is a vlan aware bridge with ports uplink1, peerlink
# and downlink (swp2-20).
#
# native vlan is by default 1
#
# 'bridge-vids' attribute is used to declare vlans.
# 'bridge-pvid' attribute is used to specify native vlans if other
than 1
# 'bridge-access' attribute is used to declare access port
#
auto lo
iface lo

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

# bond interface
auto uplink1
iface uplink1
    bond-slaves swp32
    bridge-vids 2000-2079

# bond interface
auto peerlink
iface peerlink
    bond-slaves swp30 swp31
    bridge-vids 2000-2079 4094
```



```
# bond interface
auto downlink
iface downlink
    bond-slaves swp1
    bridge-vids 2000-2079

#
# Declare vlans for all swp ports
# swp2-20 get vlans from 2004 to 2022.
# The below uses mako templates to generate iface sections
# with vlans for swp ports
#
%for port, vlanid in zip(range(2, 20), range(2004, 2022)) :
    auto swp${port}
    iface swp${port}
        bridge-vids ${vlanid}

%endfor

# svi vlan 2000
auto bridge.2000
iface bridge.2000
    address 11.100.1.252/24

# 12 attributes for vlan 2000
auto bridge.2000
vlan bridge.2000
    bridge-igmp-querier-src 172.16.101.1

#
# vlan-aware bridge
#
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports uplink1 peerlink downlink swp1 swp2 swp49 swp50
    bridge-vlan-aware yes

# svi peerlink vlan
auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094
    address 192.168.10.1/30
    broadcast 192.168.10.3

...
```

## VXLANs with VLAN-aware Bridges

Cumulus Linux supports using VXLANs with VLAN-aware bridge configuration. This provides improved scalability, as multiple VXLANs can be added to a single VLAN-aware bridge. A 1:1 association is used between the VXLAN VNI and the VLAN, using the bridge access VLAN definition on the VXLAN, and the VLAN membership definition on the local bridge member interfaces.

The configuration example below shows the differences between a VXLAN configured for traditional bridge mode and one configured for VLAN-aware mode. The configurations use head end replication (HER), along with the VLAN-aware bridge to map VLANs to VNIs.

 The current tested scale limit for Cumulus Linux 3.2 is 512 VNIs.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show configuration files

...
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.35.0.10/32

auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports uplink regex vni.*
    bridge-pvid 1
    bridge-vids 1-100
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
auto vni-10000
iface vni-10000
    alias CUSTOMER X VLAN 10
    bridge-access 10
    vxlan-id 10000
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.35.0.10
    vxlan-remoteip 10.35.0.34

...
```

## Configuring a Static MAC Address Entry

You can add a static MAC address entry to the layer 2 table for an interface within the VLAN-aware bridge by running a command similar to the following:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo bridge fdb add 12:34:56:12:34:56 dev swp1 vlan
150 master static
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo bridge fdb show
44:38:39:00:00:7c dev swp1 master bridge permanent
12:34:56:12:34:56 dev swp1 vlan 150 master bridge static
44:38:39:00:00:7c dev swp1 self permanent
12:12:12:12:12:12 dev swp1 self permanent
12:34:12:34:12:34 dev swp1 self permanent
12:34:56:12:34:56 dev swp1 self permanent
12:34:12:34:12:34 dev bridge master bridge permanent
44:38:39:00:00:7c dev bridge vlan 500 master bridge permanent
12:12:12:12:12:12 dev bridge master bridge permanent
```



## Caveats and Errata

### Spanning Tree Protocol (STP)

VLAN-aware mode supports a single instance of STP across all VLANs, as STP is enabled on a per-bridge basis. A common practice when using a single STP instance for all VLANs is to define every VLAN on every switch in the spanning tree instance.

`mstpd` remains the user space protocol daemon.

Cumulus Linux supports Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (RSTP).

### IGMP Snooping

IGMP snooping and group membership are supported on a per-VLAN basis, though the IGMP snooping configuration (including enable/disable and mrouter ports) are defined on a per-bridge port basis.

### Reserved VLAN Range

For hardware data plane internal operations, the switching silicon requires VLANs for every physical port, Linux bridge, and layer 3 subinterface. Cumulus Linux reserves a range of 1000 VLANs by default; the reserved range is 3000-3999. The reserved range can be modified if it conflicts with any user-defined VLANs, as long the new range is a contiguous set of VLANs with IDs anywhere between 2 and 4094, and the minimum size of the range is 300 VLANs.

To configure the reserved range:

1. Open `/etc/cumulus/switchd.conf` in a text editor.
2. Uncomment the following line, specify a new range, and save the file:

```
resv_vlan_range
```

3. Restart `switchd` to implement the change:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart switchd.service
```



While restarting `switchd`, all running ports will flap, and forwarding will be interrupted.

### VLAN Translation

A bridge in VLAN-aware mode cannot have VLAN translation enabled for it. Only traditional mode bridges can utilize VLAN translation.



## Converting Bridges between Supported Modes

Traditional mode bridges cannot be automatically converted to/from a VLAN-aware bridge. The original configuration must be deleted, and all member switch ports must be brought down, then a new bridge can be created.

## Traditional Mode Bridges

Cumulus Networks recommends you use a [VLAN-aware bridge \(see page 328\)](#) on your switch. You use traditional mode bridges only if you need to run more than one bridge on the switch or if you need to use PVSTP+.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Creating a Traditional Mode Bridge (see page 340)
- Using Trunks in Traditional Bridge Mode (see page 342)
  - Trunk Example (see page 343)
  - VLAN Tagging Examples (see page 344)
  - Configuring ARP Timers (see page 344)

### Creating a Traditional Mode Bridge

You configure traditional mode bridges in `/etc/network/interfaces` file. To create a traditional mode bridge:

1. Open the `/etc/network/interfaces` file in a text editor.
2. Add a new stanza to create the bridge, and save the file. The example below creates a bridge with STP enabled and the MAC address ageing timer configured to a lower value than the default:

```
auto my_bridge
iface my_bridge
    bridge-ports bond0 swp5 swp6
    bridge-ageing 150
    bridge-stp on
```

Configuration Option	Description	Default Value
bridge-ports	List of logical and physical ports belonging to the logical bridge.	N/A
bridge-ageing	Maximum amount of time before a MAC addresses learned on the bridge expires from the bridge MAC cache.	1800 seconds
bridge-stp		off

Configuration Option	Description	Default Value
	<p>Enables spanning tree protocol on this bridge. The default spanning tree mode is Per VLAN Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol (PVRST).</p> <p>For more information on spanning-tree configurations see the configuration section: <a href="#">Spanning Tree and Rapid Spanning Tree (see page 284)</a>.</p>	



The name of the bridge must be:

- Compliant with Linux interface naming conventions.
- Unique within the switch.



Do not try to bridge the management port, eth0, with any switch ports (like swp0, swp1, and so forth). For example, if you created a bridge with eth0 and swp1, it will **not** work.

3. Reload the network configuration using the `ifreload` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifreload -a
```



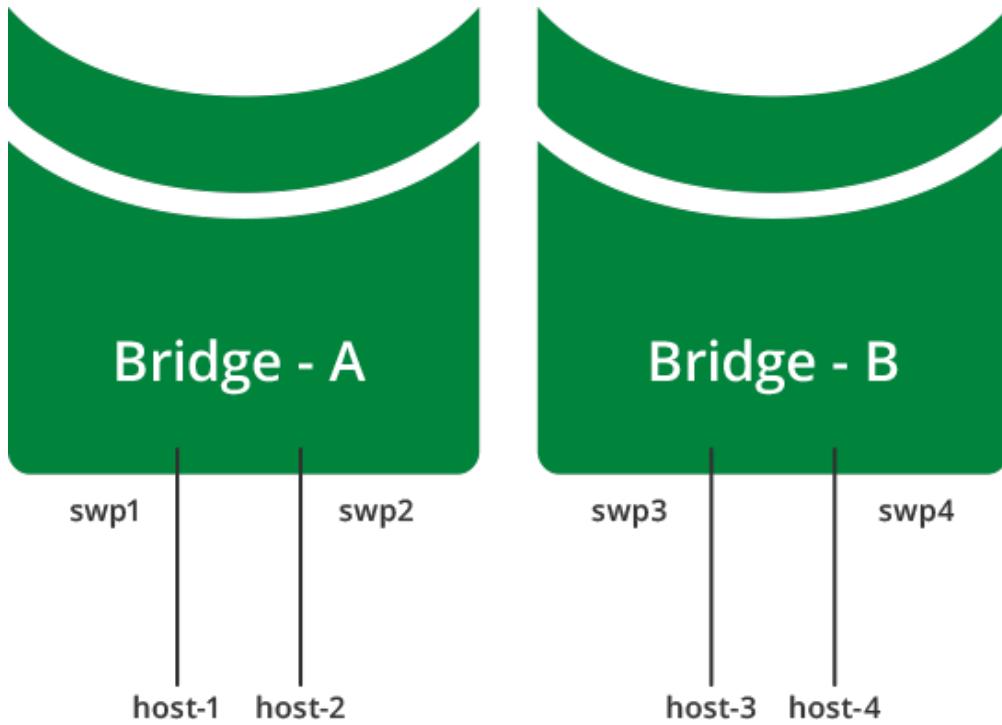
You can configure multiple bridges, in order to logically divide a switch into multiple layer 2 domains. This allows for hosts to communicate with other hosts in the same domain, while separating them from hosts in other domains.



You can create only one VLAN-aware bridge on a switch.

The diagram below shows a multiple bridge configuration, where host-1 and host-2 are connected to bridge-A, while host-3 and host-4 are connected to bridge-B. This means that:

- host-1 and host-2 can communicate with each other.
- host-3 and host-4 can communicate with each other.
- host-1 and host-2 cannot communicate with host-3 and host-4.



This example configuration looks like this in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```

auto bridge-A
iface bridge-A
    bridge-ports swp1 swp2
    bridge-stp on

auto bridge-B
iface bridge-B
    bridge-ports swp3 swp4
    bridge-stp on
  
```

## Using Trunks in Traditional Bridge Mode

The [IEEE standard](#) for trunking is 802.1Q. The 802.1Q specification adds a 4 byte header within the Ethernet frame that identifies the VLAN of which the frame is a member.

802.1Q also identifies an *untagged* frame as belonging to the *native* VLAN (most network devices default their native VLAN to 1). The concept of native, non-native, tagged or untagged has generated confusion due to mixed terminology and vendor-specific implementations. Some clarification is in order:

- A *trunk port* is a switch port configured to send and receive 802.1Q tagged frames.
- A switch sending an untagged (bare Ethernet) frame on a trunk port is sending from the native VLAN defined on the trunk port.
- A switch sending a tagged frame on a trunk port is sending to the VLAN identified by the 802.1Q tag.
- A switch receiving an untagged (bare Ethernet) frame on a trunk port places that frame in the native VLAN defined on the trunk port.

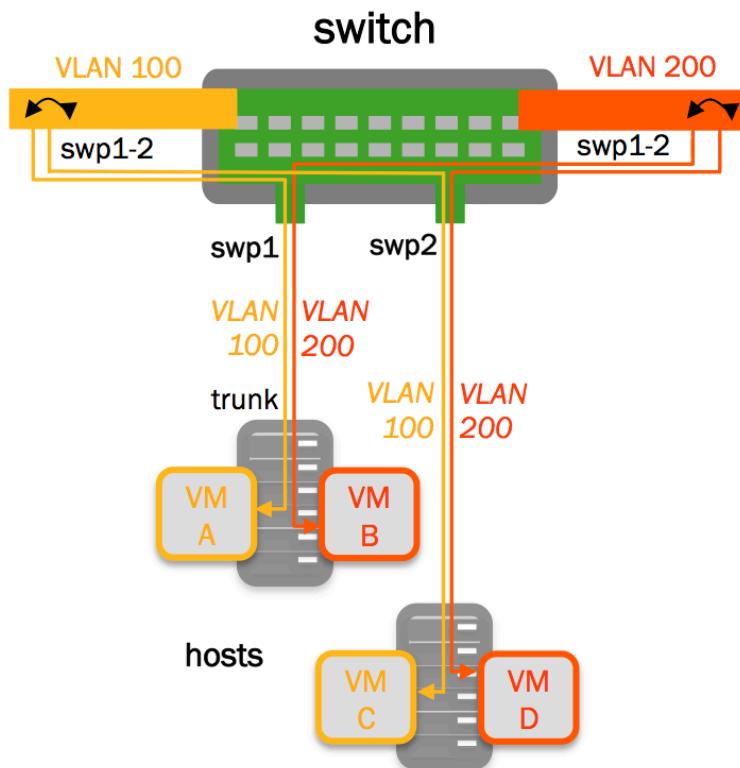
- A switch receiving a tagged frame on a trunk port places that frame in the VLAN identified by the 802.1Q tag.

A bridge in traditional mode has no concept of trunks, just tagged or untagged frames. With a trunk of 200 VLANs, there would need to be 199 bridges, each containing a tagged physical interface, and one bridge containing the native untagged VLAN. See the examples below for more information.



The interaction of tagged and un-tagged frames on the same trunk often leads to undesired and unexpected behavior. A switch that uses VLAN 1 for the native VLAN may send frames to a switch that uses VLAN 2 for the native VLAN, thus merging those two VLANs and their spanning tree state.

## Trunk Example



To create the above example, add the following configuration to the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```
auto br-VLAN100
iface br-VLAN100
    bridge-ports swp1.100 swp2.100
    bridge-stp on

auto br-VLAN200
iface br-VLAN200
    bridge-ports swp1.200 swp2.200
```



```
bridge-stp on
```

## VLAN Tagging Examples

You can find more examples of VLAN tagging in [this chapter \(see page 344\)](#).

## Configuring ARP Timers

Cumulus Linux does not often interact directly with end systems as much as end systems interact with one another. Thus, after a successful [address resolution protocol](#) (ARP) places a neighbor into a reachable state, Cumulus Linux may not interact with the client again for a long enough period of time for the neighbor to move into a stale state. To keep neighbors in the reachable state, Cumulus Linux includes a background process (`/usr/bin/neighmgrd`) that tracks neighbors that move into a stale, delay or probe state, and attempts to refresh their state ahead of any removal from the Linux kernel, and thus before it would be removed from the hardware forwarding.

The ARP refresh timer defaults to 1080 seconds (18 minutes). You can change this setting by following the procedures outlined in this [knowledge base article](#).

## VLAN Tagging

This article shows two examples of VLAN tagging, one basic and one more advanced. They both demonstrate the streamlined interface configuration from `ifupdown2`.

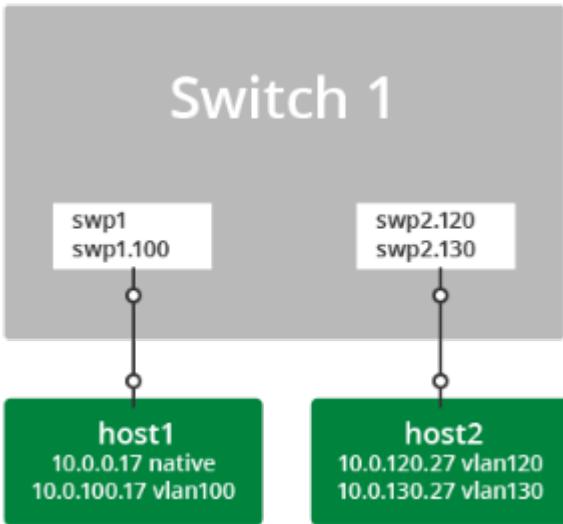
## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- [VLAN Tagging, a Basic Example \(see page 344\)](#)
- [VLAN Tagging, an Advanced Example \(see page 345\)](#)
- [VLAN Translation \(see page 350\)](#)

### VLAN Tagging, a Basic Example

A simple configuration demonstrating VLAN tagging involves two hosts connected to a switch.



- *host1* connects to *swp1* with both untagged frames and with 802.1Q frames tagged for *vlan100*.
- *host2* connects to *swp2* with 802.1Q frames tagged for *vlan120* and *vlan130*.

To configure the above example, edit the `/etc/network/interfaces` file and add a configuration like the following:

```
# Config for host1

auto swp1
iface swp1

auto swp1.100
iface swp1.100

# Config for host2
# swp2 must exist to create the .1Q subinterfaces, but it is not
# assigned an address

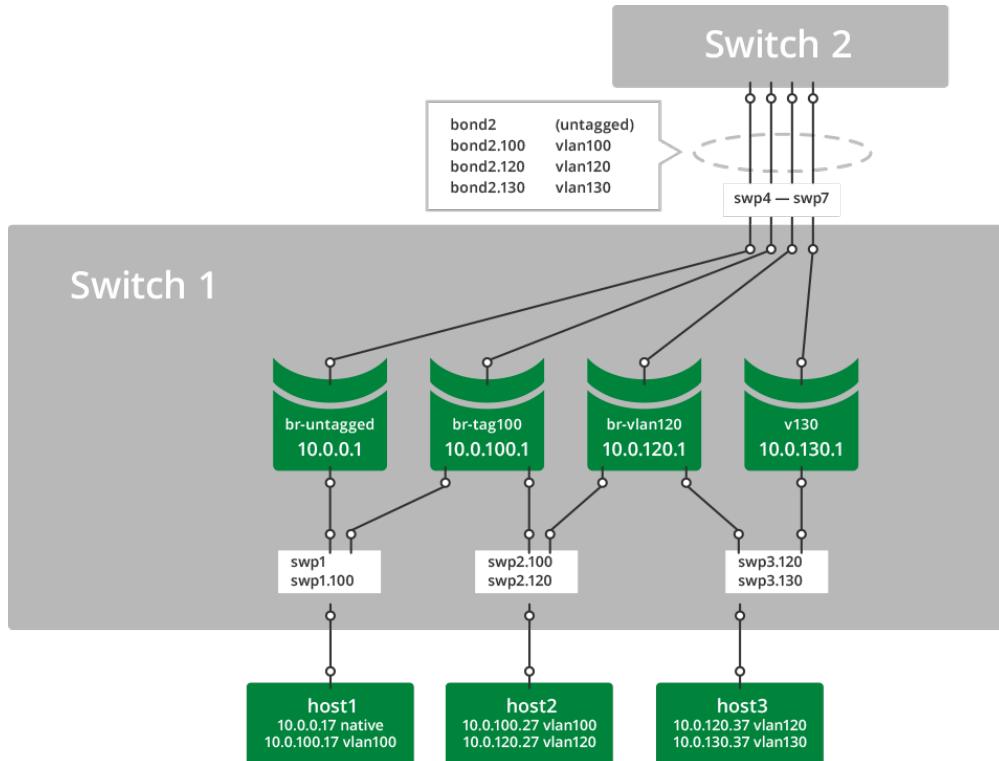
auto swp2
iface swp2

auto swp2.120
iface swp2.120

auto swp2.130
iface swp2.130
```

## VLAN Tagging, an Advanced Example

This example of VLAN tagging is more complex, involving three hosts and two switches, with a number of bridges and a bond connecting them all.



- *host1* connects to bridge *br-untagged* with bare Ethernet frames and to bridge *br-tag100* with 802.1q frames tagged for *vlan100*.
  - *host2* connects to bridge *br-tag100* with 802.1q frames tagged for *vlan100* and to bridge *br-vlan120* with 802.1q frames tagged for *vlan120*.
  - *host3* connects to bridge *br-vlan120* with 802.1q frames tagged for *vlan120* and to bridge *v130* with 802.1q frames tagged for *vlan130*.
  - *bond2* carries tagged and untagged frames in this example.

Although not explicitly designated, the bridge member ports function as 802.1Q access ports and trunk ports. In the example above, comparing Cumulus Linux with a traditional Cisco device:

- *swp1* is equivalent to a trunk port with untagged and *vlan100*.
  - *swp2* is equivalent to a trunk port with *vlan100* and *vlan120*.
  - *swp3* is equivalent to a trunk port with *vlan120* and *vlan130*.
  - *bond2* is equivalent to an EtherChannel in trunk mode with untagged, *vlan100*, *vlan120*, and *vlan130*.
  - Bridges *br-untagged*, *br-tag100*, *br-vlan120*, and *v130* are equivalent to SVIs (switched virtual interfaces).

To create the above configuration, edit the `/etc/network/interfaces` file and add a configuration like the following:

```
# Config for host1 - - - - -  
- - - - -  
  
# swp1 does not need an iface section unless it has a specific  
setting,  
# it will be picked up as a dependent of swp1.100.  
# And swp1 must exist in the system to create the .1q subinterfaces..
```





```
auto br-vlan120
iface br-vlan120
    address 10.0.120.1/24
    bridge-ports swp2.120 swp3.120 bond2.120
    bridge-stp on

auto v130
iface v130
    address 10.0.130.1/24
    bridge-ports swp3.130 bond2.130
    bridge-stp on

# -----
```

To verify:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mstpcctl showbridge br-tag100
br-tag100 CIST info
  enabled      yes
  bridge id    8.000.44:38:39:00:32:8B
  designated root 8.000.44:38:39:00:32:8B
  regional root 8.000.44:38:39:00:32:8B
  root port    none
  path cost    0          internal path cost  0
  max age      20         bridge max age     20
  forward delay 15        bridge forward delay 15
  tx hold count 6          max hops           20
  hello time    2          ageing time       300
  force protocol version   rstp
  time since topology change 333040s
  topology change count     1
  topology change           no
  topology change port      swp2.100
  last topology change port None
```

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mstpcctl showportdetail br-tag100 | grep -B 2
state
br-tag100:bond2.100 CIST info
  enabled      yes             role
Designated
  port id     8.003           state
forwarding
--
br-tag100:swp1.100 CIST info
  enabled      yes             role
Designated
```



```
    port id          8.001           state
forwarding
--
br-tag100:swp2.100 CIST info
    enabled        yes             role
Designated
    port id      8.002           state
forwarding
```

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /proc/net/vlan/config
VLAN Dev name | VLAN ID
Name-Type: VLAN_NAME_TYPE_RAW_PLUS_VID_NO_PAD
bond2.100      | 100  | bond2
bond2.120      | 120  | bond2
bond2.130      | 130  | bond2
swp1.100       | 100  | swp1
swp2.100       | 100  | swp2
swp2.120       | 120  | swp2
swp3.120       | 120  | swp3
swp3.130       | 130  | swp3
```

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /proc/net/bonding/bond2
Ethernet Channel Bonding Driver: v3.7.1 (April 27, 2011)

Bonding Mode: IEEE 802.3ad Dynamic link aggregation
Transmit Hash Policy: layer3+4 (1)
MII Status: up
MII Polling Interval (ms): 100
Up Delay (ms): 0
Down Delay (ms): 0

802.3ad info
LACP rate: fast
Min links: 0
Aggregator selection policy (ad_select): stable
Active Aggregator Info:
    Aggregator ID: 3
    Number of ports: 4
    Actor Key: 33
    Partner Key: 33
    Partner Mac Address: 44:38:39:00:32:cf

Slave Interface: swp4
MII Status: up
Speed: 10000 Mbps
Duplex: full
Link Failure Count: 0
Permanent HW addr: 44:38:39:00:32:8e
```



```
Aggregator ID: 3
Slave queue ID: 0

Slave Interface: swp5
MII Status: up
Speed: 10000 Mbps
Duplex: full
Link Failure Count: 0
Permanent HW addr: 44:38:39:00:32:8f
Aggregator ID: 3
Slave queue ID: 0

Slave Interface: swp6
MII Status: up
Speed: 10000 Mbps
Duplex: full
Link Failure Count: 0
Permanent HW addr: 44:38:39:00:32:90
Aggregator ID: 3
Slave queue ID: 0

Slave Interface: swp7
MII Status: up
Speed: 10000 Mbps
Duplex: full
Link Failure Count: 0
Permanent HW addr: 44:38:39:00:32:91
Aggregator ID: 3
Slave queue ID: 0
```



A single bridge cannot contain multiple subinterfaces of the **same** port as members. Attempting to apply such a configuration will result in an error:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl addbr another_bridge
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl addif another_bridge swp9 swp9.100
bridge cannot contain multiple subinterfaces of the same port:
swp9, swp9.100
```

## VLAN Translation

By default, Cumulus Linux does not allow VLAN subinterfaces associated with different VLAN IDs to be part of the same bridge. Base interfaces are not explicitly associated with any VLAN IDs and are exempt from this restriction.

In some cases, it may be useful to relax this restriction. For example, two servers may be connected to the switch using VLAN trunks, but the VLAN numbering provisioned on the two servers are not consistent. You can choose to just bridge two VLAN subinterfaces of different VLAN IDs from the servers. You do this by enabling the `sysctl net.bridge.bridge-allow-multiple-vlans`. Packets entering a bridge from a member VLAN subinterface will egress another member VLAN subinterface with the VLAN ID translated.



A bridge in [VLAN-aware mode \(see page 328\)](#) cannot have VLAN translation enabled for it; only bridges configured in [traditional mode \(see page 340\)](#) can utilize VLAN translation.

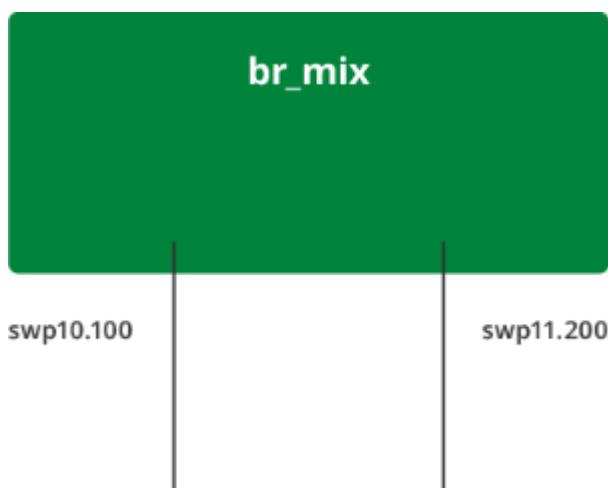
The following example enables the VLAN translation `sysctl`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ echo net.bridge.bridge-allow-multiple-vlans = 1 |  
sudo tee /etc/sysctl.d/multiple_vlans.conf  
net.bridge.bridge-allow-multiple-vlans = 1  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo sysctl -p /etc/sysctl.d/multiple_vlans.conf  
net.bridge.bridge-allow-multiple-vlans = 1
```

If the `sysctl` is enabled and you want to disable it, run the above example, setting the `sysctl net.bridge.bridge-allow-multiple-vlans` to `0`.

Once the `sysctl` is enabled, ports with different VLAN IDs can be added to the same bridge. In the following example, packets entering the bridge `br_mix` from `swp10.100` will be bridged to `swp11.200` with the VLAN ID translated from 100 to 200:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl addif br_mix swp10.100 swp11.200  
  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl show br_mix  
bridge name      bridge id               STP enabled     interfaces  
br_mix           8000.4438390032bd       yes            swp10.100  
                                         swp11.200
```



## Multi-Chassis Link Aggregation - MLAG

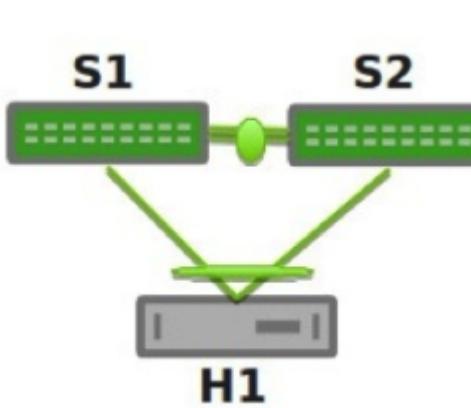
Multi-Chassis Link Aggregation, or MLAG, enables a server or switch with a two-port bond (such as a link aggregation group/LAG, EtherChannel, port group or trunk) to connect those ports to different switches and operate as if they are connected to a single, logical switch. This provides greater redundancy and greater system throughput.

### MLAG or CLAG?

The Cumulus Linux implementation of MLAG is referred to by other vendors as CLAG, MC-LAG or VPC. You will even see references to CLAG in Cumulus Linux, including the management daemon, named `c1agd`, and other options in the code, such as `c1ag-id`, which exist for historical purposes. But rest assured that the Cumulus Linux implementation is truly a multi-chassis link aggregation protocol, so we call it MLAG.

Dual-connected devices can create LACP bonds that contain links to each physical switch. Thus, active-active links from the dual-connected devices are supported even though they are connected to two different physical switches.

A basic setup looks like this:



You can see an example of how to set up this configuration by running:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net example c1ag basic-c1ag
```

The two switches, S1 and S2, known as *peer switches*, cooperate so that they appear as a single device to host H1's bond. H1 distributes traffic between the two links to S1 and S2 in any manner that you configure on the host. Similarly, traffic inbound to H1 can traverse S1 or S2 and arrive at H1.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- MLAG Requirements (see page 353)
- LACP and Dual-Connectedness (see page 354)



- Configuring MLAG (see page 355)
  - Reserved MAC Address Range (see page 358)
  - Configuring the Host or Switch (see page 358)
  - Configuring the Interfaces (see page 358)
  - Understanding Switch Roles and Setting Priority (see page 360)
- Example MLAG Configuration (see page 361)
  - Disabling clagd on an Interface (see page 369)
- Checking the MLAG Configuration Status (see page 369)
  - Using the clagd Command Line Interface (see page 370)
- Configuring MLAG with a Traditional Mode Bridge (see page 370)
- Peer Link Interfaces and the protodown State (see page 371)
  - Specifying a Backup Link (see page 371)
- Monitoring Dual-Connected Peers (see page 374)
- Configuring Layer 3 Routed Uplinks (see page 375)
- IGMP Snooping with MLAG (see page 376)
- Monitoring the Status of the clagd Service (see page 376)
- MLAG Best Practices (see page 377)
  - Understanding MTU in an MLAG Configuration (see page 377)
  - Sizing the Peerlink (see page 379)
- STP Interoperability with MLAG (see page 380)
  - Best Practices for STP with MLAG (see page 381)
- Troubleshooting MLAG (see page 381)
  - Viewing the MLAG Log File (see page 381)
  - Large Packet Drops on the Peerlink Interface (see page 382)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 382)

## MLAG Requirements

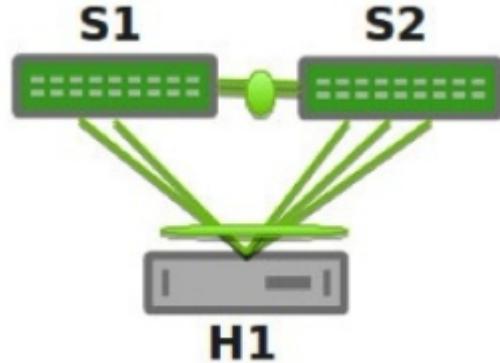
MLAG has these requirements:

- There must be a direct connection between the two peer switches implementing MLAG (S1 and S2). This is typically a bond for increased reliability and bandwidth.
- There must be only two peer switches in one MLAG configuration, but you can have multiple configurations in a network for *switch-to-switch MLAG* (see below).
- The peer switches implementing MLAG must be running Cumulus Linux version 2.5 or later.
- You must specify a unique `clag-id` for every dual-connected bond on each peer switch; the value must be between 1 and 65535 and must be the same on both peer switches in order for the bond to be considered *dual-connected*.
- The dual-connected devices (servers or switches) can use LACP (IEEE 802.3ad/802.1ax) to form the **bond** (see page 316). In this case, the peer switches must also use LACP.

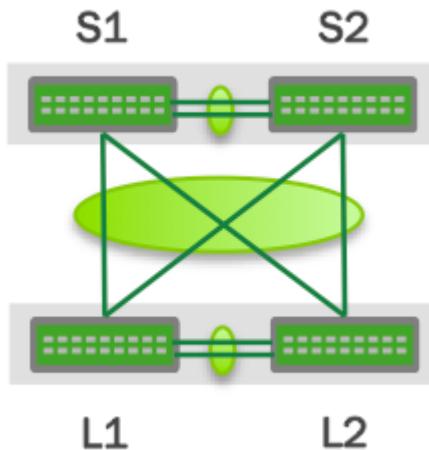


If for some reason you cannot use LACP, you can also use [balance-xor mode \(see page 319\)](#) to dual-connect host-facing bonds in an MLAG environment. If you do, you must still configure the same `c1ag_id` parameter on the MLAG bonds, and it must be the same on both MLAG switches. Otherwise, the bonds are treated by the MLAG switch pair as if they were single-connected.

More elaborate configurations are also possible. The number of links between the host and the switches can be greater than two, and does not have to be symmetrical:



Additionally, since S1 and S2 appear as a single switch to other bonding devices, pairs of MLAG switches can also be connected to each other in a switch-to-switch MLAG setup:



In this case, L1 and L2 are also MLAG peer switches, and thus present a two-port bond from a single logical system to S1 and S2. S1 and S2 do the same as far as L1 and L2 are concerned. For a switch-to-switch MLAG configuration, each switch pair must have a unique system MAC address. In the above example, switches L1 and L2 each have the same system MAC address configured. Switch pair S1 and S2 each have the same system MAC address configured; however, it is a different system MAC address than the one used by the switch pair L1 and L2.

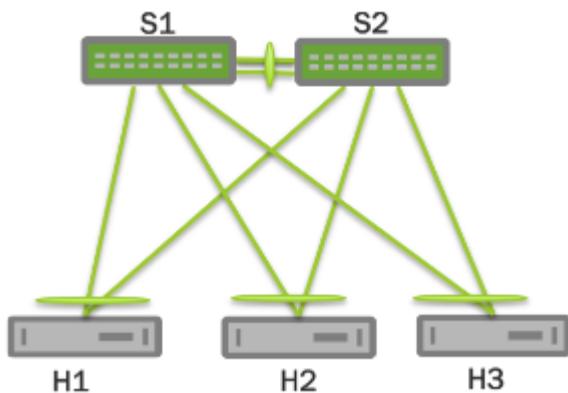
## LACP and Dual-Connectedness

In order for MLAG to operate correctly, the peer switches must know which links are *dual-connected*, or are connected to the same host or switch. To do this, specify a `c1ag_id` for every dual-connected bond on each peer switch; the `c1ag_id` must be the same for the corresponding bonds on both peer switches.

Typically, [Link Aggregation Control Protocol \(LACP\)](#), the IEEE standard protocol for managing bonds, is used for verifying dual-connectedness. LACP runs on the dual-connected device and on each of the peer switches. On the dual-connected device, the only configuration requirement is to create a bond that will be managed by LACP.

However, if for some reason you cannot use LACP in your environment, you can configure the bonds in [balance-xor mode \(see page 319\)](#). When using balance-xor mode to dual-connect host-facing bonds in an MLAG environment, the `c1ag_id` parameter must be configured on the MLAG bonds and must be the same on both MLAG switches. Otherwise, the bonds are treated by the MLAG switch pair as if they were single-connected. In short, dual-connectedness is solely determined by matching `c1ag_id` and any misconnection will **not** be detected.

On each of the peer switches, the links connected to the dual-connected host or switch must be placed in the bond. This is true even if the links are a single port on each peer switch, where each port is placed into a bond, as shown below:



All of the dual-connected bonds on the peer switches have their system ID set to the MLAG system ID. Therefore, from the point of view of the hosts, each of the links in its bond is connected to the same system, and so the host will use both links.

Each peer switch periodically makes a list of the LACP partner MAC addresses for all of their bonds and sends that list to its peer (using the `c1agd` service; see below). The LACP partner MAC address is the MAC address of the system at the other end of a bond, which in the figure above would be hosts H1, H2 and H3. When a switch receives this list from its peer, it compares the list to the LACP partner MAC addresses on its switch. If any matches are found and the `c1ag_id` for those bonds match, then that bond is a dual-connected bond. You can also find the LACP partner MAC address by running `net show bridge macs`, or by looking in the `/sys/class/net/<bondname>/bonding/ad_partner_mac sysfs` file for each bond.

## Configuring MLAG

Configuring MLAG involves:

- On the dual-connected devices, creating a bond that uses LACP.
- On each peer switch, configuring the interfaces, including bonds, VLANs, bridges and peer links.

### ⚠ Keep MLAG Configurations in Sync

MLAG synchronizes the dynamic state between the two peer switches, but it does not synchronize the switch configurations. After modifying the configuration of one peer switch, you must make the same changes to the configuration on the other peer switch. This applies to all configuration changes, including:

- Port configuration: For example, VLAN membership, [MTU \(see page 377\)](#) and bonding parameters.
- Bridge configuration: For example, spanning tree parameters or bridge properties.
- Static address entries: For example, static FDB entries and static IGMP entries.
- QoS configuration: For example, ACL entries.

You can verify the configuration of VLAN membership using the `net show clag verify-vlans` command.

Click to see the output ...

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show clag verify-vlans
Our Bond Interface    VlanId    Peer Bond Interface
-----      -----
server01              1         server01
server01              10        server01
server01              20        server01
server01              30        server01
server01              40        server01
server01              50        server01
uplink                1         uplink
uplink                10        uplink
uplink                20        uplink
uplink                30        uplink
uplink                40        uplink
uplink                50        uplink
uplink                100       uplink
uplink                101       uplink
uplink                102       uplink
uplink                103       uplink
uplink                104       uplink
uplink                105       uplink
uplink                106       uplink
uplink                107       uplink
uplink                108       uplink
uplink                109       uplink
uplink                110       uplink
uplink                111       uplink
uplink                112       uplink
uplink                113       uplink
uplink                114       uplink
uplink                115       uplink
uplink                116       uplink
uplink                117       uplink
uplink                118       uplink
uplink                119       uplink
uplink                120       uplink
uplink                121       uplink
uplink                122       uplink
uplink                123       uplink
uplink                124       uplink
```



uplink	125	uplink
uplink	126	uplink
uplink	127	uplink
uplink	128	uplink
uplink	129	uplink
uplink	130	uplink
uplink	131	uplink
uplink	132	uplink
uplink	133	uplink
uplink	134	uplink
uplink	135	uplink
uplink	136	uplink
uplink	137	uplink
uplink	138	uplink
uplink	139	uplink
uplink	140	uplink
uplink	141	uplink
uplink	142	uplink
uplink	143	uplink
uplink	144	uplink
uplink	145	uplink
uplink	146	uplink
uplink	147	uplink
uplink	148	uplink
uplink	149	uplink
uplink	150	uplink
uplink	151	uplink
uplink	152	uplink
uplink	153	uplink
uplink	154	uplink
uplink	155	uplink
uplink	156	uplink
uplink	157	uplink
uplink	158	uplink
uplink	159	uplink
uplink	160	uplink
uplink	161	uplink
uplink	162	uplink
uplink	163	uplink
uplink	164	uplink
uplink	165	uplink
uplink	166	uplink
uplink	167	uplink
uplink	168	uplink
uplink	169	uplink
uplink	170	uplink
uplink	171	uplink
uplink	172	uplink
uplink	173	uplink
uplink	174	uplink
uplink	175	uplink
uplink	176	uplink

uplink	177	uplink
uplink	178	uplink
uplink	179	uplink
uplink	180	uplink
uplink	181	uplink
uplink	182	uplink
uplink	183	uplink
uplink	184	uplink
uplink	185	uplink
uplink	186	uplink
uplink	187	uplink
uplink	188	uplink
uplink	189	uplink
uplink	190	uplink
uplink	191	uplink
uplink	192	uplink
uplink	193	uplink
uplink	194	uplink
uplink	195	uplink
uplink	196	uplink
uplink	197	uplink
uplink	198	uplink
uplink	199	uplink
uplink	200	uplink

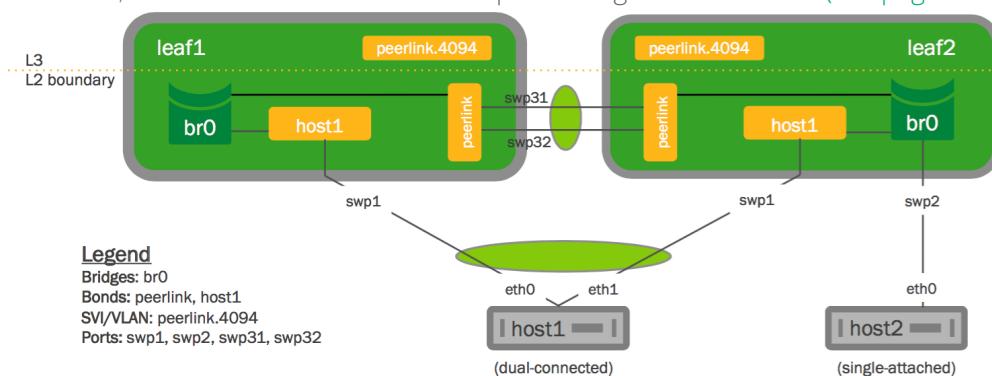
## Reserved MAC Address Range

In order to prevent MAC address conflicts with other interfaces in the same bridged network, Cumulus Networks has [reserved a range of MAC addresses](#) specifically to use with MLAG. This range of MAC addresses is 44:38:39:ff:00:00 to 44:38:39:ff:ff:ff.

Cumulus Networks recommends you use this range of MAC addresses when configuring MLAG.

## Configuring the Host or Switch

On your dual-connected device, create a bond that uses LACP. The method you use varies with the type of device you are configuring. The following image is a basic MLAG configuration, showing all the essential elements; a more detailed two-leaf/two-spine configuration is [below \(see page 361\)](#).





## Configuring the Interfaces

Every interface that connects to the MLAG pair from a dual-connected device should be placed into a [bond](#) ([see page 316](#)), even if the bond contains only a single link on a single physical switch (even though the MLAG pair contains two or more links). Layer 2 data travels over this bond. In the examples throughout this chapter, *peerlink* is the name of the bond.

Single-attached hosts, also known as *orphan ports*, can be just a member of the bridge.

Additionally, the fast mode of LACP should be configured on the bond to allow more timely updates of the LACP state. These bonds are then placed in a bridge, which must include the peer link between the switches.

In order to enable communication between the `c1agd` services on the peer switches, you should do the following:

- Choose an unused VLAN (also known as a *switched virtual interface* or *SVI* here).
- Assign the SVI an unrouteable link-local address to give the peer switches layer 3 connectivity between each other.
- Configure the VLAN as a VLAN subinterface on the peer link bond rather than the VLAN-aware bridge. Cumulus Networks recommends you use 4094 for the peer link VLAN (*peerlink.4094* below) if possible. This ensures that the VLAN is completely independent of the bridge and spanning tree forwarding decisions.
- Include untagged traffic on the peer link, as this avoids issues with STP.
- Avoid using the SVI for BGP peering, as the next-hop, which is the peer switch's SVI, is not learned over the forwarding database (FDB). You can use a subinterface to bypass the need for FDB learning.
- Optionally, you can specify a backup interface, which is any layer 3 backup interface for your peer links in the event that the peer link goes down. [See below \(see page 371\)](#) for more information about the backup link.

For example, if *peerlink* is the inter-chassis bond, and VLAN 4094 is the peer link VLAN, configure *peerlink.4094* as follows:

### ✓ Configuring the peerlink Interface

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add bond peerlink bond slaves swp49-50
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add interface peerlink.4094 ip address
169.254.1.1/30
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add interface peerlink.4094 clag peer-ip
169.254.1.2
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add interface peerlink.4094 clag backup-
ip 192.0.2.50
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add interface peerlink.4094 clag sys-mac
44:38:39:FF:40:94
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net pending
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net commit
```

There is no need to add VLAN 4094 to the bridge VLAN list, as it is unnecessary there.

The above commands produce the following configuration in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```

auto peerlink
iface peerlink
    bond-slaves swp49 swp50

auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094
    address 169.254.1.1/30
    clagd-peer-ip 169.254.1.2
    clagd-backup-ip 192.0.2.50
    clagd-sys-mac 44:38:39:FF:40:94

```

To enable MLAG, *peerlink* must be added to a traditional or VLAN-aware bridge. The commands below add *peerlink* to a VLAN-aware bridge:

```

cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add bridge bridge ports peerlink
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net pending
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net commit

```

This creates the following configuration in */etc/network/interfaces*:

```

auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports peerlink
    bridge-vlan-aware yes

```

**⚠** Keep in mind that if you change the MLAG configuration by editing the *interfaces* file, the changes take effect when you bring the peer link interface up with *ifup*. Do **not** use *systemctl restart clagd.service* to apply the new configuration.

## ⓘ Don't Use 169.254.0.1

Do not use 169.254.0.1 as the MLAG peerlink IP address, as Cumulus Linux uses this address exclusively for [BGP unnumbered \(see page 636\)](#) interfaces.

## *Understanding Switch Roles and Setting Priority*

Each MLAG-enabled switch in the pair has a *role*. When the peering relationship is established between the two switches, one switch is put into the *primary* role, and the other one is put into the *secondary* role. When an MLAG-enabled switch is in the secondary role, it does not send STP BPDUs on dual-connected links; it only sends BPDUs on single-connected links. The switch in the primary role sends STP BPDUs on all single- and dual-connected links.

Sends BPDUs Via	Primary	Secondary
Single-connected links	Yes	Yes
Dual-connected links	Yes	No

By default, the role is determined by comparing the MAC addresses of the two sides of the peering link; the switch with the lower MAC address assumes the primary role. You can override this by setting the `clagd-priority` option for the peer link:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add interface peerlink.4094 clag priority 2048
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net pending
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net commit
```

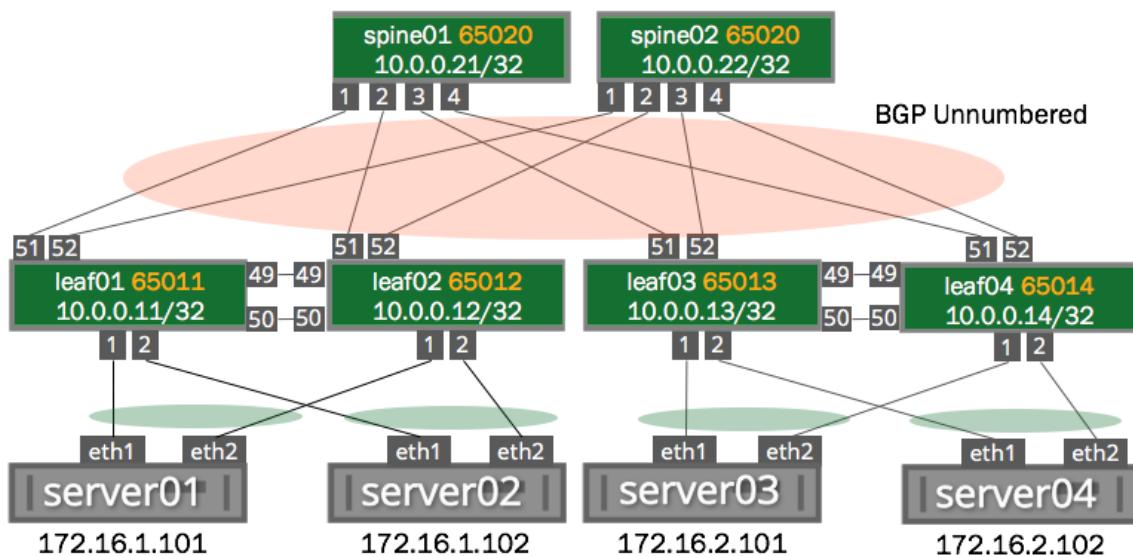
The switch with the lower priority value is given the primary role; the default value is 32768, and the range is 0 to 65535. Read the `clagd(8)` and `clagctl(8)` man pages for more information.

When the `clagd` service is exited during switch reboot or the service is stopped in the primary switch, the peer switch that is in the secondary role becomes the primary.

However, if the primary switch goes down without stopping the `clagd` service for any reason, or if the peer link goes down, the secondary switch will **not** change its role. In case the peer switch is determined to be not alive, the switch in the secondary role will roll back the LACP system ID to be the bond interface MAC address instead of the `clagd-sys-mac` and the switch in primary role uses the `clagd-sys-mac` as the LACP system ID on the bonds.

## Example MLAG Configuration

An example configuration is included below. It configures two bonds for MLAG, each with a single port, a peer link that is a bond with two member ports, and three VLANs on each port.





You configure these interfaces using [NCLU \(see page 85\)](#), so the bridges are in [VLAN-aware mode \(see page 328\)](#). The bridges use these Cumulus Linux-specific keywords:

- `bridge-vids`, which defines the allowed list of tagged 802.1q VLAN IDs for all bridge member interfaces. You can specify non-contiguous ranges with a space-separated list, like `bridge-vids 100-200 300 400-500`.
- `bridge-pvid`, which defines the untagged VLAN ID for each port. This is commonly referred to as the *native VLAN*.

The bridge configurations below indicate that each bond carries tagged frames on VLANs 10, 20, 30, 40, 50 and 100 to 200 (as specified by `bridge-vids`), but untagged frames on VLAN 1 (as specified by `bridge-pvid`). Also, take note on how you configure the VLAN subinterfaces used for `c1agd` communication (`peerlink.4094` in the sample configuration below). Finally, the host configurations for server01 through server04 are not shown here. The configurations for each corresponding node are almost identical, except for the IP addresses used for managing the `c1agd` service.

## VLAN Precautions

At minimum, this VLAN subinterface should not be in your layer 2 domain, and you should give it a very high VLAN ID (up to 4094). Read more about the [range of VLAN IDs you can use \(see page 328\)](#).

The commands to create the configurations for both spines should look like the following. Note that the `c1ag-id` and `c1agd-sys-mac` must be the same for the corresponding bonds on spine01 and spine02:

### spine01

```
cumulus@spine01:~$ net show  
configuration commands  
net add interface swp1-4  
net add loopback lo ip address  
10.0.0.21/32  
net add interface eth0 ip  
address dhcp
```

These commands create the following configuration in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```
cumulus@spine01:~$ cat /etc  
/network/interfaces  
auto lo  
iface lo inet loopback  
    address 10.0.0.21/32  
  
auto eth0  
iface eth0 inet dhcp  
  
# downlinks
```

### spine02

```
cumulus@spine02:~$ net show  
configuration commands  
net add interface swp1-4  
net add loopback lo ip address  
10.0.0.22/32  
net add interface eth0 ip  
address dhcp
```

These commands create the following configuration in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```
cumulus@spine02:~$ cat /etc  
/network/interfaces  
auto lo  
iface lo inet loopback  
    address 10.0.0.22/32  
  
auto eth0  
iface eth0 inet dhcp  
  
# downlinks
```



```
auto swp1
iface swp1

auto swp2
iface swp2

auto swp3
iface swp3

auto swp4
iface swp4
```

```
auto swp1
iface swp1

auto swp2
iface swp2

auto swp3
iface swp3

auto swp4
iface swp4
```

Here is an example configuration for the switches leaf01 through leaf04. Note that the `clag-id` and `clagd-sys-mac` must be the same for the corresponding bonds on leaf01 and leaf02 as well as leaf03 and leaf04:

#### leaf01

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show
configuration commands
net add loopback lo ip address
10.0.0.11/32
net add bgp autonomous-system
65011
net add bgp router-id 10.0.0.11
net add bgp ipv4 unicast
network 10.0.0.11/32
net add routing prefix-list
ipv4 dc-leaf-in seq 10 permit
0.0.0.0/0
net add routing prefix-list
ipv4 dc-leaf-in seq 20 permit
10.0.0.0/24 le 32
net add routing prefix-list
ipv4 dc-leaf-in seq 30 permit
172.16.2.0/24
net add routing prefix-list
ipv4 dc-leaf-out seq 10 permit
172.16.1.0/24
net add bgp neighbor fabric
peer-group
net add bgp neighbor fabric
remote-as external
net add bgp ipv4 unicast
neighbor fabric prefix-list dc-
leaf-in in
```

#### leaf02

```
cumulus@leaf02:~$ net show conf
commands
net add loopback lo ip address
10.0.0.12/32
net add bgp autonomous-system
65012
net add bgp router-id 10.0.0.12
net add bgp ipv4 unicast
network 10.0.0.12/32
net add routing prefix-list
ipv4 dc-leaf-in seq 10 permit
0.0.0.0/0
net add routing prefix-list
ipv4 dc-leaf-in seq 20 permit
10.0.0.0/24 le 32
net add routing prefix-list
ipv4 dc-leaf-in seq 30 permit
172.16.2.0/24
net add routing prefix-list
ipv4 dc-leaf-out seq 10 permit
172.16.1.0/24
net add bgp neighbor fabric
peer-group
net add bgp neighbor fabric
remote-as external
net add bgp ipv4 unicast
neighbor fabric prefix-list dc-
leaf-in in
```

```

net add bgp ipv4 unicast
neighbor fabric prefix-list dc-
leaf-out out
net add bgp neighbor swp51-52
interface peer-group fabric
net add vlan 100 ip address
172.16.1.1/24
net add bgp ipv4 unicast
network 172.16.1.1/24
net add clag peer sys-mac 44:38:39:FF:00:01 interface swp49-50 primary backup-ip
192.168.1.12
net add clag port bond server1
interface swp1 clag-id 1
net add clag port bond server2
interface swp2 clag-id 2
net add bond server1-2 bridge
access 100
net add bond server1-2 stp
portadminedge
net add bond server1-2 stp
bpdukguard
  
```

These commands create the following configuration in the /etc/network/interfaces file:

```

cumulus@leaf01:~$ cat /etc
/network/interfaces
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.0.0.11/32

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto swp1
iface swp1

auto swp2
iface swp2

# peerlink
auto swp49
iface swp49
    post-up ip link set $IFACE
    promisc on      # Only required
    on VX
  
```

```

net add bgp ipv4 unicast
neighbor fabric prefix-list dc-
leaf-out out
net add bgp neighbor swp51-52
interface peer-group fabric
net add vlan 100 ip address
172.16.1.2/24
net add bgp ipv4 unicast
network 172.16.1.2/24
net add clag peer sys-mac 44:38:39:FF:00:01 interface swp49-50 secondary backup-ip 192.168.1.11
net add clag port bond server1
interface swp1 clag-id 1
net add clag port bond server2
interface swp2 clag-id 2
net add bond server1-2 bridge
access 100
net add bond server1-2 stp
portadminedge
net add bond server1-2 stp
bpdukguard
  
```

These commands create the following configuration in the /etc/network/interfaces file:

```

cumulus@leaf02:~$ cat /etc
/network/interfaces
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.0.0.12/32

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto swp1
iface swp1

auto swp2
iface swp2

# peerlink
auto swp49
iface swp49
    post-up ip link set $IFACE
    promisc on      # Only required
    on VX

auto swp50
  
```



```
auto swp50
iface swp50
    post-up ip link set $IFACE
    promisc on      # Only required
    on VX

    # uplinks
    auto swp51
    iface swp51

    auto swp52
    iface swp52

    # bridge to hosts
    auto bridge
    iface bridge
        bridge-ports peerlink
    server1 server2
        bridge-vids 100
        bridge-vlan-aware yes

    auto peerlink
    iface peerlink
        bond-slaves swp49 swp50

    auto peerlink.4094
    iface peerlink.4094
        address 169.254.1.1/30
        clagd-backup-ip
    192.168.1.12
        clagd-peer-ip 169.254.1.2
        clagd-priority 1000
        clagd-sys-mac 44:38:39:FF:
    00:01

    auto server1
    iface server1
        bond-slaves swp1
        bridge-access 100
        clag-id 1
        mstpcl-bpduguard yes
        mstpcl-portadmineedge yes

    auto server2
    iface server2
        bond-slaves swp2
        bridge-access 100
        clag-id 2
        mstpcl-bpduguard yes
        mstpcl-portadmineedge yes
```

```
iface swp50
    post-up ip link set $IFACE
    promisc on      # Only required
    on VX

    # uplinks
    auto swp51
    iface swp51

    auto swp52
    iface swp52

    # bridge to hosts
    auto bridge
    iface bridge
        bridge-ports peerlink
    server1 server2
        bridge-vids 100
        bridge-vlan-aware yes

    auto peerlink
    iface peerlink
        bond-slaves swp49 swp50

    auto peerlink.4094
    iface peerlink.4094
        address 169.254.1.2/30
        clagd-backup-ip 192.168.1.11
        clagd-peer-ip 169.254.1.1
        clagd-sys-mac 44:38:39:FF:
    00:01

    auto server1
    iface server1
        bond-slaves swp1
        bridge-access 100
        clag-id 1
        mstpcl-bpduguard yes
        mstpcl-portadmineedge yes

    auto server2
    iface server2
        bond-slaves swp2
        bridge-access 100
        clag-id 2
        mstpcl-bpduguard yes
        mstpcl-portadmineedge yes

    auto vlan100
    iface vlan100
        address 172.16.1.2/24
```

```
auto wlan100
iface wlan100
    address 172.16.1.1/24
    wlan-id 100
    wlan-raw-device bridge
```

```
vlan-id 100
vlan-raw-device bridge
```

**leaf03**

```
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net show
conf commands
net add loopback lo ip address
10.0.0.13/32
net add bgp autonomous-system
65013
net add bgp router-id 10.0.0.13
net add bgp ipv4 unicast
network 10.0.0.13/32
net add routing prefix-list
ipv4 dc-leaf-in seq 10 permit
0.0.0.0/0
net add routing prefix-list
ipv4 dc-leaf-in seq 20 permit
10.0.0.0/24 le 32
net add routing prefix-list
ipv4 dc-leaf-in seq 30 permit
172.16.2.0/24
net add routing prefix-list
ipv4 dc-leaf-out seq 10 permit
172.16.1.0/24
net add bgp neighbor fabric
peer-group
net add bgp neighbor fabric
remote-as external
net add bgp ipv4 unicast
neighbor fabric prefix-list dc-
leaf-in in
net add bgp ipv4 unicast
neighbor fabric prefix-list dc-
leaf-out out
net add bgp neighbor swp51-52
interface peer-group fabric
net add vlan 100 ip address
172.16.1.3/24
net add bgp ipv4 unicast
network 172.16.1.3/24
```

**leaf04**

```
cumulus@leaf04:~$ net show
configuration commands
net add loopback lo ip address
10.0.0.14/32
net add bgp autonomous-system
65014
net add bgp router-id 10.0.0.14
net add bgp ipv4 unicast
network 10.0.0.14/32
net add routing prefix-list
ipv4 dc-leaf-in seq 10 permit
0.0.0.0/0
net add routing prefix-list
ipv4 dc-leaf-in seq 20 permit
10.0.0.0/24 le 32
net add routing prefix-list
ipv4 dc-leaf-in seq 30 permit
172.16.2.0/24
net add routing prefix-list
ipv4 dc-leaf-out seq 10 permit
172.16.1.0/24
net add bgp neighbor fabric
peer-group
net add bgp neighbor fabric
remote-as external
net add bgp ipv4 unicast
neighbor fabric prefix-list dc-
leaf-in in
net add bgp ipv4 unicast
neighbor fabric prefix-list dc-
leaf-out out
net add bgp neighbor swp51-52
interface peer-group fabric
net add vlan 100 ip address
172.16.1.4/24
net add bgp ipv4 unicast
network 172.16.1.4/24
net add clag peer sys-mac 44:38:
39:FF:00:02 interface swp49-50
secondary backup-ip 192.168.1.13
```



```
net add clag peer sys-mac 44:  
38:39:FF:00:02 interface swp49-  
50 primary backup-ip  
192.168.1.14  
net add clag port bond server3  
interface swp1 clag-id 3  
net add clag port bond server4  
interface swp2 clag-id 4  
net add bond server3-4 bridge  
access 100  
net add bond server3-4 stp  
portadminedge  
net add bond server3-4 stp  
bpdukguard
```

These commands create the following configuration in the /etc/network/interfaces file:

```
cumulus@leaf03:~$ cat /etc  
/network/interfaces  
auto lo  
iface lo inet loopback  
    address 10.0.0.13/32  
  
auto eth0  
iface eth0 inet dhcp  
  
auto swp1  
iface swp1  
  
auto swp2  
iface swp2  
  
# peerlink  
auto swp49  
iface swp49  
    post-up ip link set $IFACE  
    promisc on      # Only required  
    on VX  
  
auto swp50  
iface swp50
```

```
net add clag port bond server3  
interface swp1 clag-id 3  
net add clag port bond server4  
interface swp2 clag-id 4  
net add bond server3-4 bridge  
access 100  
net add bond server3-4 stp  
portadminedge  
net add bond server3-4 stp  
bpdukguard
```

These commands create the following configuration in the /etc/network/interfaces file:

```
cumulus@leaf04:~$ cat /etc  
/network/interfaces  
auto lo  
iface lo inet loopback  
    address 10.0.0.14/32  
  
auto eth0  
iface eth0 inet dhcp  
  
auto swp1  
iface swp1  
  
auto swp2  
iface swp2  
  
# peerlink  
auto swp49  
iface swp49  
    post-up ip link set $IFACE  
    promisc on      # Only required  
    on VX  
  
auto swp50  
iface swp50  
    post-up ip link set $IFACE  
    promisc on      # Only required  
    on VX  
  
# uplinks  
auto swp51
```

```

    post-up ip link set $IFACE
promisc on      # Only required
on VX

# uplinks
auto swp51
iface swp51

auto swp52
iface swp52

# bridge to hosts
auto bridge
iface bridge
  bridge-ports peerlink
server3 server4
  bridge-vids 100
  bridge-vlan-aware yes

auto peerlink
iface peerlink
  bond-slaves swp49 swp50

auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094
  address 169.254.1.1/30
  clagd-backup-ip
192.168.1.14
  clagd-peer-ip 169.254.1.2
  clagd-priority 1000
  clagd-sys-mac 44:38:39:FF:
00:02

auto server3
iface server3
  bond-slaves swp1
  bridge-access 100
  clag-id 3
  mstptctl-bpduguard yes
  mstptctl-portadminedge yes

auto server4
iface server4
  bond-slaves swp2

```

```

iface swp51

auto swp52
iface swp52

# bridge to hosts
auto bridge
iface bridge
  bridge-ports peerlink
server3 server4
  bridge-vids 100
  bridge-vlan-aware yes

auto peerlink
iface peerlink
  bond-slaves swp49 swp50

auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094
  address 169.254.1.2/30
  clagd-backup-ip 192.168.1.13
  clagd-peer-ip 169.254.1.1
  clagd-sys-mac 44:38:39:FF:
00:02

auto server3
iface server3
  bond-slaves swp1
  bridge-access 100
  clag-id 3
  mstptctl-bpduguard yes
  mstptctl-portadminedge yes

auto server4
iface server4
  bond-slaves swp2
  bridge-access 100
  clag-id 4
  mstptctl-bpduguard yes
  mstptctl-portadminedge yes

auto vlan100
iface vlan100
  address 172.16.1.4/24
  vlan-id 100

```

```
bridge-access 100
clag-id 4
mstpctl-bpduguard yes
mstpctl-portadmineedge yes

auto vlan100
iface vlan100
    address 172.16.1.3/24
    vlan-id 100
    vlan-raw-device bridge
```

```
vlan-raw-device bridge
```

## *Disabling clagd on an Interface*

In the configurations above, the `clagd-peer-ip` and `clagd-sys-mac` parameters are mandatory, while the rest are optional. When mandatory `clagd` commands are present under a peer link subinterface, by default `clagd-enable` is set to yes and doesn't need to be specified; to disable `clagd` on the subinterface, set `clagd-enable` to no:

```
cumulus@spine01:~$ net add interface peerlink.4094 clag enable no
cumulus@spine01:~$ net pending
cumulus@spine01:~$ net commit
```

Use `clagd-priority` to set the role of the MLAG peer switch to primary or secondary. Each peer switch in an MLAG pair must have the same `clagd-sys-mac` setting. Each `clagd-sys-mac` setting should be unique to each MLAG pair in the network. For more details, refer to `man clagd`.

## **Checking the MLAG Configuration Status**

You can easily check the status of your MLAG configuration using `net show clag`:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show clag
The peer is alive
  Peer Priority, ID, and Role: 4096 44:38:39:FF:00:01 primary
  Our Priority, ID, and Role: 8192 44:38:39:FF:00:02 secondary
  Peer Interface and IP: peerlink.4094 169.254.1.1
  Backup IP: 192.168.1.12 (inactive)
  System MAC: 44:38:39:FF:00:01
```

CLAG Interfaces			
Our Interface	Peer Interface	CLAG Id	
Conflicts	Proto-Down Reason		
server1	server1	1	
-	-		

server2	server2	2
-	-	

## Using the `clagctl` Command Line Interface

A command line utility called `clagctl` is available for interacting with a running `clagd` service to get status or alter operational behavior. For detailed explanation of the utility, please refer to the `clagctl(8)` man page.

See the `clagctl` Output ...

The following is a sample output of the MLAG operational status displayed by `clagctl`:

```
The peer is alive
  Peer Priority, ID, and Role: 4096 44:38:39:FF:00:01 primary
  Our Priority, ID, and Role: 8192 44:38:39:FF:00:02 secondary
    Peer Interface and IP: peerlink.4094 169.254.1.1
    Backup IP: 192.168.1.12 (inactive)
    System MAC: 44:38:39:FF:00:01

CLAG Interfaces
Our Interface      Peer Interface      CLAG Id
Conflicts          Proto-Down Reason
-----            -----
-----            -----
      server1      server1           1
-
      server2      server2           2
-
```

## Configuring MLAG with a Traditional Mode Bridge

It's possible to configure MLAG with a bridge in [traditional mode](#) (see page 340) instead of [VLAN-aware mode](#) (see page 328).

### ⚠ Traditional Mode Limitation

You cannot configure a traditional mode bridge using [NCLU](#) (see page 85); you must configure it manually in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file.

In order to configure MLAG with a traditional mode bridge, the peer link and all dual-connected links must be configured as [untagged/native](#) (see page 340) ports on a bridge (note the absence of any VLANs in the `bridge-ports` line and the lack of the `bridge-vlan-aware` parameter below):

### ✔ MLAG with a Traditional Mode Bridge

```
auto br0
iface br0
```



```
bridge-ports peerlink spine1-2 host1 host2
```

For a deeper comparison of traditional versus VLAN-aware bridge modes, read this [knowledge base article](#).

## Peer Link Interfaces and the protodown State

In addition to the standard UP and DOWN administrative states, an interface that is a member of an MLAG bond can also be in a `protodown` state. When MLAG detects a problem that could result in connectivity issues such as traffic black-holing or a network meltdown if the link carrier was left in an UP state, it can put that interface into `protodown` state. Such connectivity issues include:

- When the peer link goes down but the peer switch is up (that is, the backup link is active).
- When the bond is configured with an MLAG ID, but the `clagd` service is not running (whether it was deliberately stopped or simply died).
- When an MLAG-enabled node is booted or rebooted, the MLAG bonds are placed in a `protodown` state until the node establishes a connection to its peer switch, or five minutes have elapsed.

When an interface goes into a `protodown` state, it results in a local OPER DOWN (carrier down) on the interface. As of Cumulus Linux 2.5.5, the `protodown` state can be manipulated with the `ip link set` command. Given its use in preventing network meltdowns, manually manipulating `protodown` is not recommended outside the scope of interaction with the Cumulus Networks support team.

The following `ip link show` command output shows an interface in `protodown` state. Notice that the link carrier is down (NO-CARRIER):

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show bridge link swp1
3: swp1 state DOWN: <NO-CARRIER,BROADCAST,MULTICAST,MASTER,UP> mtu
9216 master pfifo_fast master host-bond1 state DOWN mode DEFAULT qlen
500 protodown on
    link/ether 44:38:39:00:69:84 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
```

## Specifying a Backup Link

You can specify a backup link for your peer links in the event that the peer link goes down. When this happens, the `clagd` service uses the backup link to check the health of the peer switch. To configure this, add `clagd-backup-ip <ADDRESS>` to the peer link configuration:

### ⌚ Specifying a Backup Link

```
cumulus@spine01:~$ net add interface peerlink.4094 clag backup-
ip 192.0.2.50
cumulus@spine01:~$ net pending
cumulus@spine01:~$ net commit
```



The backup IP address must be different than the peer link IP address (`clagd-peer-ip`). It must be reachable by a route that doesn't use the peer link and it must be in the same network namespace as the peer link IP address.

Cumulus Networks recommends you use the switch's management IP address for this purpose.

You can also specify the backup UDP port. The port defaults to 5342, but you can configure it as an argument in `clagd-args` using `--backupPort <PORT>`.

```
cumulus@spine01:~$ net add interface peerlink.4094 clag args --  
backupPort 5400  
cumulus@spine01:~$ net pending  
cumulus@spine01:~$ net commit
```

You can see the backup IP address if you run `net show clag`:

```
cumulus@spine01:~$ net show clag  
The peer is alive  
    Our Priority, ID, and Role: 32768 44:38:39:00:00:41  
primary  
    Peer Priority, ID, and Role: 32768 44:38:39:00:00:42  
secondary  
        Peer Interface and IP: peerlink.4094 169.254.255.2  
        Backup IP: 192.168.0.22 (active)  
        System MAC: 44:38:39:FF:40:90  
  
CLAG Interfaces  
Our Interface      Peer Interface      CLAG Id  
Conflicts          Proto-Down Reason  
-----  
-----  
leaf03-04          leaf03-04          1034  
-                  -  
exit01-02          -                  2930  
-                  -  
leaf01-02          leaf01-02          1012  
-
```

## *Specifying a Backup Link to a VRF*

You can configure the backup link to a [VRF \(see page 696\)](#) or [management VRF \(see page 720\)](#). Include the name of the VRF or management VRF when you specify `clagd-backup-ip <ADDRESS> vrf <VRF name>`. Here is a sample configuration:

### Specifying a Backup Link to a VRF



```
cumulus@spine01:~$ net add interface peerlink.4094 clag backup-ip 192.168.0.22 vrf mgmt
cumulus@spine01:~$ net pending
cumulus@spine01:~$ net commit
```



You cannot use the VRF on a peer link subinterface.

Verify the backup link by running `net show clag backup-ip`:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show clag backup-ip
Backup info:
IP: 192.168.0.12; State: active; Role: primary
Peer priority and id: 32768 44:38:39:00:00:12; Peer role: secondary
```

## ⌚ Comparing VRF and Management VRF Configurations

The configuration for both a VRF and management VRF is exactly the same. A sample configuration where the backup interface is in a VRF could be as follows:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show configuration
...
auto swp52s0
iface swp52s0
    address 192.0.2.1/24
    vrf green

auto green
iface green
    vrf-table auto

auto peer5.4000
iface peer5.4000
    address 192.0.2.15/24
    clagd-peer-ip 192.0.2.16
    clagd-backup-ip 192.0.2.2 vrf green
    clagd-sys-mac 44:38:39:01:01:01
...
```

Which you can verify with `net show clag status verbose`:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show clag status verbose
The peer is alive
    Peer Priority, ID, and Role: 32768 00:02:00:00:00:13
primary
    Our Priority, ID, and Role: 32768 c4:54:44:f6:44:5a
secondary
    Peer Interface and IP: peer5.4000 192.0.2.16
                            Backup IP: 192.0.2.2 vrf green (active)
                            System MAC: 44:38:39:01:01:01

CLAG Interfaces
Our Interface      Peer Interface      CLAG Id
Conflicts          Proto-Down Reason
-----            -----
-----            -----
        bond4      bond4              4
-
        bond1      bond1              1
-
        bond2      bond2              2
-
        bond3      bond3              3
-
...

```

## Monitoring Dual-Connected Peers

Upon receipt of a valid message from its peer, the switch knows that `clagd` is alive and executing on that peer. This causes `clagd` to change the system ID of each bond that was assigned a `clag-id` from the default value (the MAC address of the bond) to the system ID assigned to both peer switches. This makes the hosts connected to each switch act as if they are connected to the same system so that they will use all ports within their bond. Additionally, `clagd` determines which bonds are dual-connected and modifies the forwarding and learning behavior to accommodate these dual-connected bonds.

If the peer does not receive any messages for three update intervals, then that peer switch is assumed to no longer be acting as an MLAG peer. In this case, the switch reverts all configuration changes so that it operates as a standard non-MLAG switch. This includes removing all statically assigned MAC addresses, clearing the egress forwarding mask, and allowing addresses to move from any port to the peer port. Once a message is again received from the peer, MLAG operation starts again as described earlier. You can configure a custom timeout setting by adding `--peerTimeout <VALUE>` to `clagd-args`, like this:

```
cumulus@spine01:~$ net add interface peerlink.4094 clag args --
peerTimeout 900
cumulus@spine01:~$ net pending
cumulus@spine01:~$ net commit
```

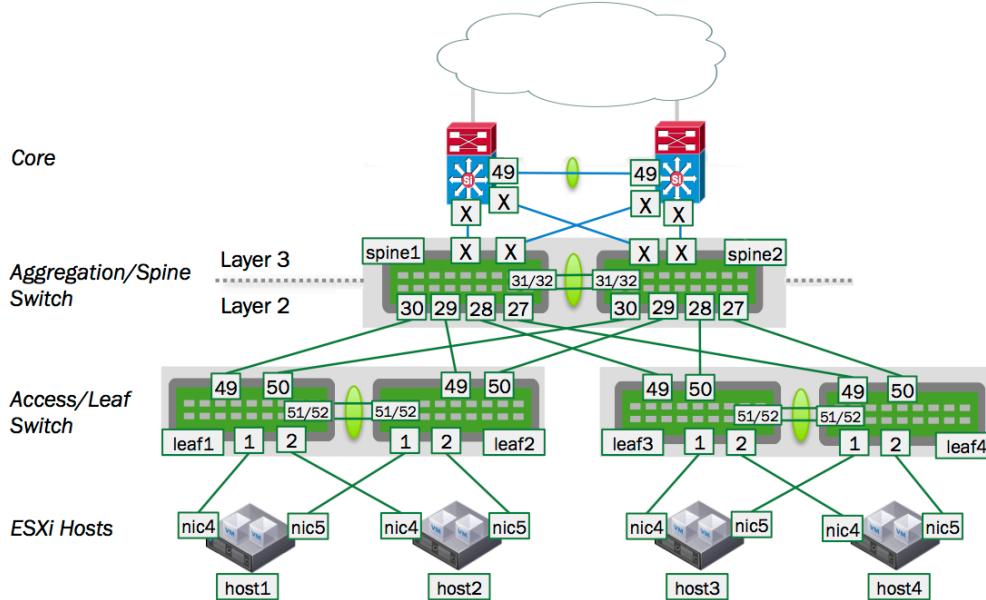
Once bonds are identified as dual-connected, `c1agd` sends more information to the peer switch for those bonds. The MAC addresses (and VLANs) that have been dynamically learned on those ports are sent along with the LACP partner MAC address for each bond. When a switch receives MAC address information from its peer, it adds MAC address entries on the corresponding ports. As the switch learns and ages out MAC addresses, it informs the peer switch of these changes to its MAC address table so that the peer can keep its table synchronized. Periodically, at 45% of the bridge ageing time, a switch will send its entire MAC address table to the peer, so that peer switch can verify that its MAC address table is properly synchronized.

The switch sends an update frequency value in the messages to its peer, which tells `c1agd` how often the peer will send these messages. You can configure a different frequency by adding `--lacpPoll <SECONDS>` to `c1agd-args`:

```
cumulus@spine01:~$ net add interface peerlink.4094 clag args --
lacpPoll 900
cumulus@spine01:~$ net pending
cumulus@spine01:~$ net commit
```

## Configuring Layer 3 Routed Uplinks

In this scenario, the spine switches connect at layer 3, as shown in the image below. Alternatively, the spine switches can be singly connected to each core switch at layer 3 (not shown below).



In this design, the spine switches route traffic between the server hosts in the layer 2 domains and the core. The servers (host1 - host4) each have a layer 2 connection up to the spine layer where the default gateway for the host subnets resides. However, since the spine switches act as gateway devices communicate at layer 3, you need to configure a protocol such as [VRR \(see page 386\)](#) (Virtual Router Redundancy) between the spine switch pair to support active/active forwarding.



Then, to connect the spine switches to the core switches, you need to determine whether the routing is static or dynamic. If it's dynamic, you must choose which protocol — [OSPF \(see page 620\)](#) or [BGP \(see page 636\)](#) — to use. When enabling a routing protocol in an MLAG environment it is also necessary to manage the uplinks, because by default MLAG is not aware of layer 3 uplink interfaces. In the event of a peer link failure MLAG does not remove static routes or bring down a BGP or OSPF adjacency unless a separate link state daemon such as `ifplugd` is used.



Routing protocols over an MLAG bond should be configured to treat the peerlink as a less desirable next hop for all destinations. SVI MAC addresses are not learned over the peerlink so forwarding data plane traffic laterally to the peer switch results in flooding and high CPU utilization.

## IGMP Snooping with MLAG

IGMP snooping ([see page 394](#)) processes IGMP reports received on a bridge port in a bridge to identify hosts that are configured to receive multicast traffic destined to that group. An IGMP query message received on a port is used to identify the port that is connected to a router and configured to receive multicast traffic.

IGMP snooping is enabled by default on the bridge. IGMP snooping multicast database entries and router port entries are synced to the peer MLAG switch. If there is no multicast router in the VLAN, the IGMP querier can be configured on the switch to generate IGMP query messages. For more information, read the [IGMP and MLD Snooping \(see page 394\)](#) chapter.

## Monitoring the Status of the `clagd` Service

Due to the critical nature of the `clagd` service, `systemd` continuously monitors the status of `clagd`. `systemd` monitors the `clagd` service through the use of notify messages every 30 seconds. If the `clagd` service dies or becomes unresponsive for any reason and `systemd` receives no messages after 60 seconds, `systemd` restarts `clagd`. `systemd` logs these failures in `/var/log/syslog`, and, on the first failure, generates a `cl-support` file as well.

This monitoring is automatically configured and enabled as long as `clagd` is enabled (that is, `clagd-peer-ip` and `clagd-sys-mac` are configured for an interface) and the `clagd` service is running. When `clagd` is explicitly stopped, for example with the `systemctl stop clagd.service` command, monitoring of `clagd` is also stopped.

### Checking `clagd` Status

You can check the status of `clagd` monitoring by using the `cl-service-summary` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-service-summary summary
The systemctl daemon 5.4 uptime: 15m
...
Service clagd      enabled      active
...
...
```



Or the `systemctl status clagd.service`

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl status clagd.service
  clagd.service - Cumulus Linux Multi-Chassis LACP Bonding
Daemon
   Loaded: loaded (/lib/systemd/system/clagd.service; enabled)
   Active: active (running) since Mon 2016-10-03 20:31:50 UTC;
4 days ago
     Docs: man:clagd(8)
    Main PID: 1235 (clagd)
      CGroup: /system.slice/clagd.service
              1235 /usr/bin/python /usr/sbin/clagd --daemon
169.254.255.2 peerlink.4094 44:38:39:FF:40:90 --prior...
                  1307 /sbin/bridge monitor fdb

Feb 01 23:19:30 leaf01 clagd[1717]: Cleanup is executing.
Feb 01 23:19:31 leaf01 clagd[1717]: Cleanup is finished
Feb 01 23:19:31 leaf01 clagd[1717]: Beginning execution of
clagd version 1.3.0
Feb 01 23:19:31 leaf01 clagd[1717]: Invoked with: /usr/sbin
/clagd --daemon 169.254.255.2 peerlink.4094 44:38:39:FF:40:94
--pri...168.0.12
Feb 01 23:19:31 leaf01 clagd[1717]: Role is now secondary
Feb 01 23:19:31 leaf01 clagd[1717]: Initial config loaded
Feb 01 23:19:31 leaf01 systemd[1]: Started Cumulus Linux Multi-
Chassis LACP Bonding Daemon.
Feb 01 23:24:31 leaf01 clagd[1717]: HealthCheck: reload
timeout.
Feb 01 23:24:31 leaf01 clagd[1717]: Role is now primary;
Reload timeout
Hint: Some lines were ellipsized, use -l to show in full.
```

## MLAG Best Practices

For MLAG to function properly, the dual-connected hosts' interfaces should be configured identically on the pair of peering switches. See the note above in the [Configuring MLAG \(see page 355\)](#) section.

### *Understanding MTU in an MLAG Configuration*

Note that the [MTU \(see page 225\)](#) in MLAG traffic is determined by the bridge MTU. Bridge MTU is determined by the lowest MTU setting of an interface that is a member of the bridge. If an MTU other than the default of 1500 bytes is desired, you must configure the MTU on each physical interface and bond interface that are members of the MLAG bridges in the entire bridged domain.

For example, if an MTU of 9216 is desired through the MLAG domain in the example shown above, on all four leaf switches, [configure mtu 9216 \(see page 225\)](#) for each of the following bond interfaces, since they are members of bridge `bridge: peerlink, uplink, server01`.

## ➊ Configuring MTU

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add bond peerlink mtu 9216
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add bond uplink mtu 9216
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add bond server01 mtu 9216
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net pending
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net commit
```

The above commands produce the following configuration in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports peerlink uplink server01

auto peerlink
iface peerlink
    mtu 9216

auto server01
iface server01
    mtu 9216

auto uplink
iface uplink
    mtu 9216
```

Likewise, to ensure the MTU 9216 path is respected through the spine switches above, also change the MTU setting for bridge `bridge` by configuring `mtu 9216` for each of the following members of bridge `bridge` on both spine01 and spine02: leaf01-02, leaf03-04, exit01-02, peerlink.

```
cumulus@spine01:~$ net add bond leaf01-02 mtu 9216
cumulus@spine01:~$ net add bond leaf03-04 mtu 9216
cumulus@spine01:~$ net add bond exit01-02 mtu 9216
cumulus@spine01:~$ net add bond peerlink mtu 9216
cumulus@spine01:~$ net pending
cumulus@spine01:~$ net commit
```

The above commands produce the following configuration in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports leaf01-02 leaf03-04 exit01-02 peerlink
```

```

auto exit01-02
iface exit01-02
    mtu 9216

auto leaf01-02
iface leaf01-02
    mtu 9216

auto leaf03-04
iface leaf03-04
    mtu 9216

auto peerlink
iface peerlink
    mtu 9216

```

## Sizing the Peerlink

What's the best size for a peerlink? Before we answer that, let's talk a little bit about the peerlink itself.

The peerlink tends to carry very little traffic when compared to the bandwidth consumed by dataplane traffic. In a typical MLAG configuration, most every connection between the two switches in the MLAG pair is dual-connected, so the only traffic going across the peerlink is traffic from the `c1agd` process and some LLDP or LACP traffic; the traffic received on the peerlink is not forwarded out of the dual-connected bonds.

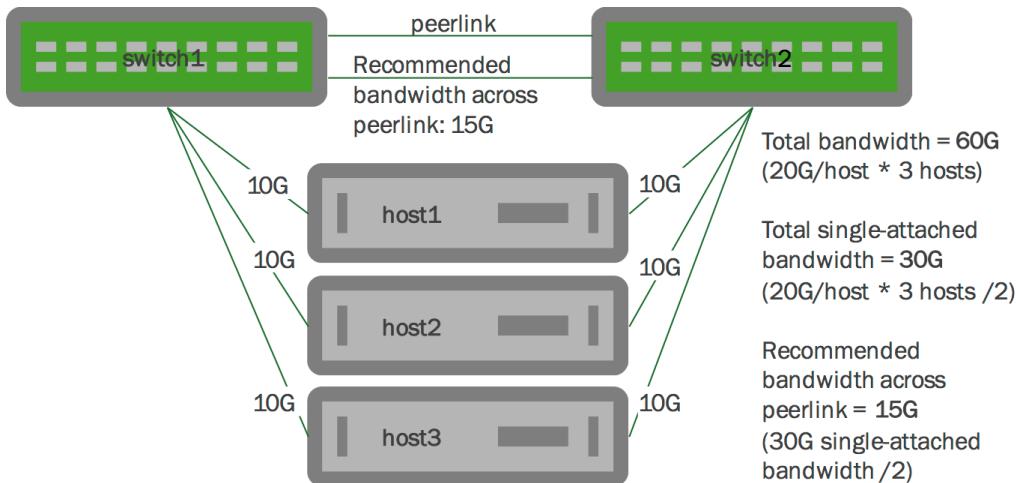
However, there are some instances where a host is connected to only one switch in the MLAG pair; these include:

- You have a hardware limitation on the host where there is only one PCIE slot, and thus, one NIC on the system, so the host is only single-connected across that interface.
- The host doesn't support 802.3ad and you can't create a bond on it.
- You are accounting for a link failure, where the host may become single connected until the failure is rectified.

So, in terms of sizing the peerlink, in general, you need to determine how much bandwidth is traveling across the single-connected interfaces, and allocate half of that bandwidth to the peerlink. We recommend half of the single-connected bandwidth because, on average, one half of the traffic destined to the single-connected host will arrive on the switch directly connected to the single-connected host and the other half will arrive on the switch that is not directly connected to the single-connected host. When this happens, only the traffic that arrives on the switch that is not directly connected to the single-connected host needs to traverse the peerlink, which is how you calculate 50% of the traffic.

In addition, you may want to add extra links to the peerlink bond to handle link failures in the peerlink bond itself.

In illustration below, each host has 2 10G links, with each 10G link going to each switch in the MLAG pair. Each host has 20G of dual-connected bandwidth, so all three hosts have a total of 60G of dual-connected bandwidth. We recommend you allocate at least 15G of bandwidth to each peerlink bond, which represents half of the single-connected bandwidth.



Scaling this example out to a full rack, when planning for link failures, you need only allocate enough bandwidth to meet your site's strategy for handling failure scenarios. Imagine a full rack with 40 servers and two switches in it. You may plan for, say, 4 to 6 servers to lose connectivity to a single switch and become single connected before you respond to the event. So expanding upon our previous example, if you have 40 hosts each with 20G of bandwidth dual-connected to the MLAG pair, you might allocate 20G to 30G of bandwidth to the peerlink — which accounts for half of the single-connected bandwidth for 4 to 6 hosts.

## STP Interoperability with MLAG

Cumulus Networks recommends that you always enable STP in your layer 2 network.

Further, with MLAG, Cumulus Networks recommends you enable BPDU guard on the host-facing bond interfaces. (For more information about BPDU guard, see [BPDU Guard and Bridge Assurance \(see page 291\)](#).)

### ⓘ Debugging STP with MLAG

Running `net show <interface> spanning-tree` displays MLAG information that can be useful when debugging:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show bridge spanning-tree
bridge:peerlink CIST info
  enabled          yes
  role             Designated
  port id         8.002
  state           forwarding
  .....
  bpdufilter port no
  clag ISL        yes
  UP      yes
  clag role       primary
mac   00:00:00:00:00:00
  clag remote portID F.FFF
mac   44:38:39:FF:40:90
  clag ISL Oper
  clag dual conn
  clag system
```



## Best Practices for STP with MLAG

- The STP global configuration must be the same on both the switches.
- The STP configuration for dual-connected ports should be the same on both peer switches.
- The STP priority must be the same on both peer switches. You set the priority with this command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge stp treeprio PRIORITY_VALUE  
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

- Use [NCLU \(see page 85\)](#) (net) commands for all spanning tree configurations, including bridge priority, path cost and so forth. Do not use brctl commands for spanning tree, except for brctl stp on/off, as changes are not reflected to mstpd and can create conflicts.

## Troubleshooting MLAG

### Viewing the MLAG Log File

By default, when clagd is running, it logs its status to the /var/log/clagd.log file and syslog. Example log file output is below:

```
cumulus@spine01:~$ sudo tail /var/log/clagd.log  
2016-10-03T20:31:50.471400+00:00 spine01 clagd[1235]: Initial config  
loaded  
2016-10-03T20:31:52.479769+00:00 spine01 clagd[1235]: The peer switch  
is active.  
2016-10-03T20:31:52.496490+00:00 spine01 clagd[1235]: Initial data  
sync to peer done.  
2016-10-03T20:31:52.540186+00:00 spine01 clagd[1235]: Role is now  
primary; elected  
2016-10-03T20:31:54.250572+00:00 spine01 clagd[1235]: HealthCheck:  
role via backup is primary  
2016-10-03T20:31:54.252642+00:00 spine01 clagd[1235]: HealthCheck:  
backup active  
2016-10-03T20:31:54.537967+00:00 spine01 clagd[1235]: Initial data  
sync from peer done.  
2016-10-03T20:31:54.538435+00:00 spine01 clagd[1235]: Initial  
handshake done.  
2016-10-03T20:31:58.527464+00:00 spine01 clagd[1235]: leaf03-04 is  
now dual connected.  
2016-10-03T22:47:35.255317+00:00 spine01 clagd[1235]: leaf01-02 is  
now dual connected.
```

## *Large Packet Drops on the Peerlink Interface*

If you notice a large volume of packet drops across one of the peerlink interfaces, this could be expected behavior. These drops serve to prevent looping of BUM (broadcast, unknown unicast, multicast) packets. When a packet is received across the peerlink, if the destination lookup results in an egress interface that is a dual-connected bond, the switch does not forward the packet to prevent loops. This results in a drop being recorded on the peerlink.

You can detect this issue by running `net show counters` or `ethtool -S <interface>`.

Using [NCLU](#) (see page 85), the number of dropped packets is displayed in the RX\_DRP column when you run `net show counters`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show counters

Kernel Interface table
Iface           MTU     Met      RX_OK      RX_ERR      RX_DRP
Iface
RX_OVR    TX_OK    TX_ERR    TX_DRP    TX_OVR   Flg
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----
-----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----
peerlink      1500      0  19226721      0  2952460
0      55115330      0      364      0  BMmRU
peerlink.4094  1500      0      0      0      0
0      5379243      0      0      0  BMRU
swp51        1500      0  6587220      0  2129676
0      38957769      0      202      0  BMsRU
swp52        1500      0  12639501      0  822784
0      16157561      0      162      0  BMsRU
```

When you run `ethtool -S` on a peerlink interface, the drops are indicated by the HwIfInDiscards counter:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ethtool -S swp51
NIC statistics:
HwIfInOctets: 669507330
HwIfInUcastPkts: 658871
HwIfInBcastPkts: 2231559
HwIfInMcastPkts: 3696790
HwIfOutOctets: 2752224343
HwIfOutUcastPkts: 1001632
HwIfOutMcastPkts: 3743199
HwIfOutBcastPkts: 34212938
HwIfInDiscards: 2129675
```

## **Caveats and Errata**

- If both the backup and peer connectivity are lost within a 30-second window, the switch in the secondary role misinterprets the event sequence, believing the peer switch is down, so it takes over as the primary.



- MLAG is disabled on chassis, including the Facebook Backpack and EdgeCore OMP-800.

## LACP Bypass

On Cumulus Linux, *LACP Bypass* is a feature that allows a [bond \(see page 316\)](#) configured in 802.3ad mode to become active and forward traffic even when there is no LACP partner. A typical use case for this feature is to enable a host, without the capability to run LACP, to PXE boot while connected to a switch on a bond configured in 802.3ad mode. Once the pre-boot process finishes and the host is capable of running LACP, the normal 802.3ad link aggregation operation takes over.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Understanding the LACP Bypass All-active Mode (see page 383)
  - LACP Bypass and MLAG Deployments (see page 383)
- Configuring LACP Bypass (see page 383)
  - Traditional Bridge Mode Configuration (see page 385)

### Understanding the LACP Bypass All-active Mode

When a bond has multiple slave interfaces, each bond slave interface operates as an active link while the bond is in bypass mode. This is known as *all-active mode*. This is useful during PXE boot of a server with multiple NICs, when the user cannot determine beforehand which port needs to be active.

Keep in the mind the following caveats with all-active mode:

- All-active mode is not supported on bonds that are not specified as bridge ports on the switch.
- Spanning tree protocol (STP) does not run on the individual bond slave interfaces when the LACP bond is in all-active mode. Therefore, only use all-active mode on host-facing LACP bonds. Cumulus Networks highly recommends you configure [STP BPDU guard \(see page 291\)](#) along with all-active mode.



The following features are not supported:

- priority mode
- bond-lacp-bypass-period
- bond-lacp-bypass-priority
- bond-lacp-bypass-all-active

### LACP Bypass and MLAG Deployments

In an [MLAG deployment \(see page 351\)](#) where bond slaves of a host are connected to two switches and the bond is in all-active mode, all the slaves of bond are active on both the primary and secondary MLAG nodes.

### Configuring LACP Bypass

To enable LACP bypass on the host-facing bond, set `bond-lacp-bypass-allow` to yes.

## Example VLAN-aware Bridge Mode Configuration

The following commands create a VLAN-aware bridge with LACP bypass enabled:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bond bond1 bond slaves swp51s2,swp51s3
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bond bond1 clag id 1
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bond bond1 bond lacp-bypass-allow
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bond bond1 stp bpduguard
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge bridge ports bond1,bond2,bond3,
bond4,peer5
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge bridge vids 100-105
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following stanzas in /etc/network/interfaces:

```
auto bond1
iface bond1
    bond-lacp-bypass-allow yes
    bond-slaves swp51s2 swp51s3
    clag-id 1
    mstpcctl-bpduguard yes

...
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports bond1 bond2 bond3 bond4 peer5
    bridge-vids 100-105
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
```

You can check the status of the configuration by running `net show interface <bond>` on the bond and its slave interfaces:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show interface bond1

      Name      MAC              Speed     MTU     Mode
      --  -----
UP  bond1  44:38:39:00:00:5b  1G        1500  Bond/Trunk

Bond Details
-----
Bond Mode:          LACP
Load Balancing:    Layer3+4
```



```
Minimum Links:      1
In CLAG:           CLAG Active
LACP Sys Priority:
LACP Rate:         Fast Timeout
LACP Bypass:       LACP Bypass Not Supported
```

Port	Speed	TX	RX	Err	Link Failures
UP swp51s2(P)	1G	0	0	0	0
UP swp51s3(P)	1G	0	0	0	0

```
All VLANs on L2 Port
```

```
-----
```

```
100-105
```

```
Untagged
```

```
-----
```

```
1
```

```
Vlans in disabled State
```

```
-----
```

```
100-105
```

```
LLDP
```

```
-----
```

```
swp51s2(P) ===> swp1(spine01)
```

```
swp51s3(P) ===> swp1(spine02)
```

Use the `cat` command to verify that LACP bypass is enabled on a bond and its slave interfaces:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /sys/class/net/bond1/bonding/lacp_bypass
on 1
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /sys/class/net/bond1/bonding/slaves
swp51 swp52
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /sys/class/net/swp52/bonding_slave/ad_rx_bypass
1
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /sys/class/net/swp51/bonding_slave/ad_rx_bypass
1
```

## Traditional Bridge Mode Configuration

The following configuration shows LACP bypass enabled for multiple active interfaces (all-active mode) with a bridge in [traditional bridge mode](#) (see page 340):

```

auto bond1
iface bond1
    bond-slaves swp3 swp4
    bond-lacp-bypass-allow 1

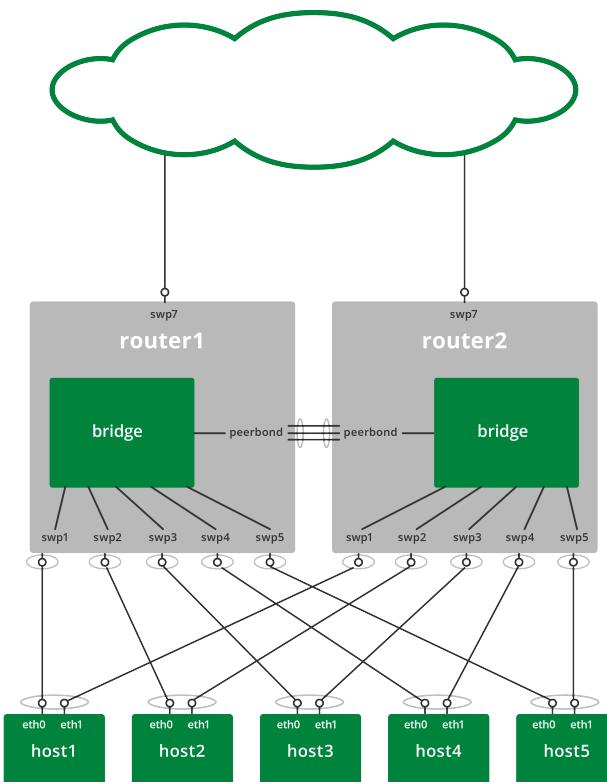
auto br0
iface br0
    bridge-ports bond1 bond2 bond3 bond4 peer5
    mstpcctl-bpduguard bond1=yes
  
```

## Virtual Router Redundancy - VRR

Virtual Router Redundancy (VRR) enables hosts to communicate with any redundant router without reconfiguration, running dynamic router protocols, or running router redundancy protocols. This means that redundant routers will respond to Address Resolution Protocol (ARP) requests from hosts. Routers are configured to respond in an identical manner, but if one fails, the other redundant routers will continue to respond, leaving the hosts with the impression that nothing has changed.

Cumulus Linux only supports VRR on switched virtual interfaces (SVIs). VRR is not supported on physical interfaces or virtual subinterfaces.

The diagram below illustrates a basic VRR-enabled network configuration. The network includes several hosts, and two routers running Cumulus Linux configured with [Multi-chassis Link Aggregation \(see page 351\)](#) (MLAG):





A production implementation will have many more server hosts and network connections than are shown here. However, this basic configuration provides a complete description of the important aspects of the VRR setup.

As the bridges in each of the redundant routers are connected, they will each receive and reply to ARP requests for the virtual router IP address.



## Multiple ARP Replies

Each ARP request made by a host will receive replies from each router; these replies will be identical, and so the host receiving the replies will either ignore replies after the first, or accept them and overwrite the previous identical reply, rather than being confused over which response is correct.



## Reserved MAC Address Range

A range of MAC addresses is reserved for use with VRR, in order to prevent MAC address conflicts with other interfaces in the same bridged network. The reserved range is `00:00:5E:00:01:00` to `00:00:5E:00:01:ff`.



Cumulus Networks recommends using MAC addresses from the reserved range when configuring VRR.



The reserved MAC address range for VRR is the same as for the Virtual Router Redundancy Protocol (VRRP), as they serve similar purposes.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Configuring a VRR-enabled Network (see page 387)
  - Configuring the Routers (see page 387)
  - Configuring the Hosts (see page 389)
- Example VRR Configuration with MLAG (see page 389)

## Configuring a VRR-enabled Network

### *Configuring the Routers*

The routers implement the layer 2 network interconnecting the hosts and the redundant routers. To configure the routers, add a bridge with the following interfaces to each router:

- One bond interface or switch port interface to each host.



For networks using MLAG, use bond interfaces. Otherwise, use switch port interfaces.

- One or more interfaces to each peer router.



Multiple inter-peer links are typically bonded interfaces, in order to accommodate higher bandwidth between the routers, and to offer link redundancy.



The VLAN interface must have unique IP addresses for both the physical (the `address` option below) and virtual (the `address-virtual` option below) interfaces, as the unique address is used when the switch initiates an ARP request.

## Example VRR Configuration

The example NCLU commands below create a VLAN-aware bridge interface for a VRR-enabled network:

### NCLU Commands

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan 500 ip address 192.0.2.252/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan 500 ip address-virtual 00:00:5e:00:01:01 192.0.2.254/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan 500 ipv6 address 2001:db8::1/32
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan 500 ipv6 address-virtual 00:00:5e:00:01:01 2001:db8::f/32
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

The NCLU commands above produce the following /etc/network/interfaces snippet:

### /etc/network/interfaces Snippet

```
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-vids 500
    bridge-vlan-aware yes

auto vlan500
iface vlan500
    address 192.0.2.252/24
    address 2001:db8::1/32
```



```
address-virtual 00:00:5e:00:01:01 2001:db8::f/32 192.0.2.254/2
4
vlan-id 500
vlan-raw-device bridge
```

## Configuring the Hosts

Each host should have two network interfaces. The routers configure the interfaces as bonds running LACP; the hosts should also configure its two interfaces using teaming, port aggregation, port group, or EtherChannel running LACP. Configure the hosts, either statically or via DHCP, with a gateway address that is the IP address of the virtual router; this default gateway address never changes.

Configure the links between the hosts and the routers in *active-active* mode for First Hop Redundancy Protocol.

## Example VRR Configuration with MLAG

To create an MLAG (see page 351) configuration that incorporates VRR, use a configuration like the following:

### leaf01 Configuration

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add
interface eth0 ip address
192.168.0.21
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bond
server01 bond slaves swp1-2
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bond
server01 clag id 1
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bond
server01 mtu 9216
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bond
server01 alias LACP
etherchannel to uplink on
server01
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bond
peerlink bond slaves swp49-50
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add
interface peerlink.4094
peerlink.4094
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add
interface peerlink.4094 ip
address 169.254.255.1/30
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add
interface peerlink.4094 clag
peer-ip 169.254.255.2
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add
interface peerlink.4094 clag
backup-ip 192.168.0.22
```

### leaf02 Configuration

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add
interface eth0 ip address
192.168.0.22
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bond
server01 bond slaves swp1-2
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bond
server01 clag id 1
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bond
server01 mtu 9216
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bond
server01 alias LACP
etherchannel to uplink on
server01
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bond
peerlink bond slaves swp49-50
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add
interface peerlink.4094
peerlink.4094
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add
interface peerlink.4094 ip
address 169.254.255.2/30
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add
interface peerlink.4094 clag
peer-ip 169.254.255.1
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add
interface peerlink.4094 clag
backup-ip 192.168.0.21
```

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add
interface peerlink.4094 clag
sys-mac 44:38:39:FF:40:90
cumulus@switch:~$ net add
bridge bridge ports server01,
peerlink
cumulus@switch:~$ net add
bridge stp treeprio 4096
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan
100 ip address 10.0.1.2/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan
100 ip address-virtual 44:38:
39:FF:00:01 10.0.1.1/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan
200 ip address 10.0.2.2/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan
200 ip address-virtual 44:38:
39:FF:00:02 10.0.2.1/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan
300 ip address 10.0.3.2/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan
300 ip address-virtual 44:38:
39:FF:00:03 10.0.3.1/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan
400 ip address 10.0.4.2/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan
400 ip address-virtual 44:38:
39:FF:00:04 10.0.4.1/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration in /etc/network/interfaces:

```
auto eth0
iface eth0
    address 192.168.0.21

auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports server01
    peerlink
    bridge-vids 100 200 300 400
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    mstptctl-treeprio 4096

auto server01
iface server01
    alias LACP etherchannel to
    uplink on server01
```

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add
interface peerlink.4094 clag
sys-mac 44:38:39:FF:40:90
cumulus@switch:~$ net add
bridge bridge ports server01,
peerlink
cumulus@switch:~$ net add
bridge stp treeprio 4096
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan
100 ip address 10.0.1.3/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan
100 ip address-virtual 44:38:
39:FF:00:01 10.0.1.1/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan
200 ip address 10.0.2.3/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan
200 ip address-virtual 44:38:
39:FF:00:02 10.0.2.1/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan
300 ip address 10.0.3.3/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan
300 ip address-virtual 44:38:
39:FF:00:03 10.0.3.1/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan
400 ip address 10.0.4.3/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan
400 ip address-virtual 44:38:
39:FF:00:04 10.0.4.1/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration in /etc/network/interfaces:

```
auto eth0
iface eth0
    address 192.168.0.22

auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports server01
    peerlink
    bridge-vids 100 200 300 400
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    mstptctl-treeprio 4096

auto server01
iface server01
    alias LACP etherchannel to
    uplink on server01
```

```

bond-slaves swp1 swp2
clag-id 1
mtu 9216

auto peerlink
iface peerlink
    bond-slaves swp49 swp50

auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094
    address 169.254.255.1/30
    clagd-backup-ip
192.168.0.22
    clagd-peer-ip 169.254.255.2
    clagd-sys-mac 44:38:39:FF:
40:90

auto vlan100
iface vlan100
    address 10.0.1.2/24
    address-virtual 44:38:39:
FF:00:01 10.0.1.1/24
    vlan-id 100
    vlan-raw-device bridge

auto vlan200
iface vlan200
    address 10.0.2.2/24
    address-virtual 44:38:39:
FF:00:02 10.0.2.1/24
    vlan-id 200
    vlan-raw-device bridge

auto vlan300
iface vlan300
    address 10.0.3.2/24
    address-virtual 44:38:39:
FF:00:03 10.0.3.1/24
    vlan-id 300
    vlan-raw-device bridge

auto vlan400
iface vlan400
    address 10.0.4.2/24
    address-virtual 44:38:39:
FF:00:04 10.0.4.1/24
    vlan-id 400
    vlan-raw-device bridge

```

**server01 Configuration**

```

bond-slaves swp1 swp2
clag-id 1
mtu 9216

auto peerlink
iface peerlink
    bond-slaves swp49 swp50

auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094
    address 169.254.255.1/30
    clagd-backup-ip
192.168.0.22
    clagd-peer-ip 169.254.255.2
    clagd-sys-mac 44:38:39:FF:
40:90

auto vlan100
iface vlan100
    address 10.0.1.3/24
    address-virtual 44:38:39:
FF:00:01 10.0.1.1/24
    vlan-id 100
    vlan-raw-device bridge

auto vlan200
iface vlan200
    address 10.0.2.3/24
    address-virtual 44:38:39:
FF:00:02 10.0.2.1/24
    vlan-id 200
    vlan-raw-device bridge

auto vlan300
iface vlan300
    address 10.0.3.3/24
    address-virtual 44:38:39:
FF:00:03 10.0.3.1/24
    vlan-id 300
    vlan-raw-device bridge

auto vlan400
iface vlan400
    address 10.0.4.3/24
    address-virtual 44:38:39:
FF:00:04 10.0.4.1/24
    vlan-id 400
    vlan-raw-device bridge

```

**server02 Configuration**

Create a configuration like the following on an Ubuntu host:

```

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto eth1
iface eth1 inet manual
    bond-master uplink

auto eth2
iface eth2 inet manual
    bond-master uplink

auto uplink
iface uplink inet static
    bond-slaves eth1 eth2
    bond-mode 802.3ad
    bond-miimon 100
    bond-lacp-rate 1
    bond-min-links 1
    bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
    address 172.16.1.101
    netmask 255.255.255.0
    post-up ip route add
    172.16.0.0/16 via 172.16.1.1
    post-up ip route add
    10.0.0.0/8 via 172.16.1.1

auto uplink:200
iface uplink:200 inet static
    address 10.0.2.101

auto uplink:300
iface uplink:300 inet static
    address 10.0.3.101

auto uplink:400
iface uplink:400 inet static
    address 10.0.4.101

# modprobe bonding

```

Create a configuration like the following on an Ubuntu host:

```

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto eth1
iface eth1 inet manual
    bond-master uplink

auto eth2
iface eth2 inet manual
    bond-master uplink

auto uplink
iface uplink inet static
    bond-slaves eth1 eth2
    bond-mode 802.3ad
    bond-miimon 100
    bond-lacp-rate 1
    bond-min-links 1
    bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
    address 172.16.1.101
    netmask 255.255.255.0
    post-up ip route add
    172.16.0.0/16 via 172.16.1.1
    post-up ip route add
    10.0.0.0/8 via 172.16.1.1

auto uplink:200
iface uplink:200 inet static
    address 10.0.2.101

auto uplink:300
iface uplink:300 inet static
    address 10.0.3.101

auto uplink:400
iface uplink:400 inet static
    address 10.0.4.101

# modprobe bonding

```

## ifplugged

ifplugged is an Ethernet link-state monitoring daemon, that can execute user-specified scripts to configure an Ethernet device when a cable is plugged in, or automatically unconfigure it when a cable is removed.



Follow the steps below to install and configure the `ifplugd` daemon.

## *Install ifplugd*

1. Update the switch before installing the daemon:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get update
```

2. Install the `ifplugd` package:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get install ifplugd
```

## *Configure ifplugd*

Once `ifplugd` is installed, two configuration files must be edited to set up `ifplugd`:

- `/etc/default/ifplugd`
- `/etc/ifplugd/action.d/ifupdown`

### **Example ifplugd Configuration**

The example `ifplugd` configuration below show that `ifplugd` has been configured to bring down all uplinks when the peerbond goes down in an MLAG environment.



`ifplugd` is configured on both both the primary and secondary [MLAG](#) (see page 351) switches in this example.

1. Open `/etc/default/ifplugd` in a text editor.
2. Configure the file as appropriate, and add the peerbond name, before saving:

```
INTERFACES="peerbond"
HOTPLUG_INTERFACES=""
ARGS="-q -f -u0 -d1 -w -I"
SUSPEND_ACTION="stop"
```

3. Open `/etc/ifplugd/action.d/ifupdown` in a text editor.
4. Configure the script, and save the file.

```
#!/bin/sh
set -e
case "$2" in
    up)
```

```

clagrole=$(clagctl | grep "Our Priority" | awk '{print $8}')
if [ "$clagrole" = "secondary" ]
then
    #List all the interfaces below to bring up when
clag peerbond comes up.
    for interface in swp1 bond1 bond3 bond4
    do
        echo "bringing up : $interface"
        ip link set $interface up
    done
fi
;;
down)
clagrole=$(clagctl | grep "Our Priority" | awk '{print $8}')
if [ "$clagrole" = "secondary" ]
then
    #List all the interfaces below to bring down
when clag peerbond goes down.
    for interface in swp1 bond1 bond3 bond4
    do
        echo "bringing down : $interface"
        ip link set $interface down
    done
fi
;;
esac

```

5. Restart `ifplugd` to implement the changes:

```
cumulus@switch:$ sudo systemctl restart ifplugd.service
```

## Caveats and Errata

The default shell for `ifplugd` is `dash` (`/bin/sh`), rather than `bash`, as it provides a faster and more nimble shell. However, it contains less features than `bash` (such as being unable to handle multiple uplinks).

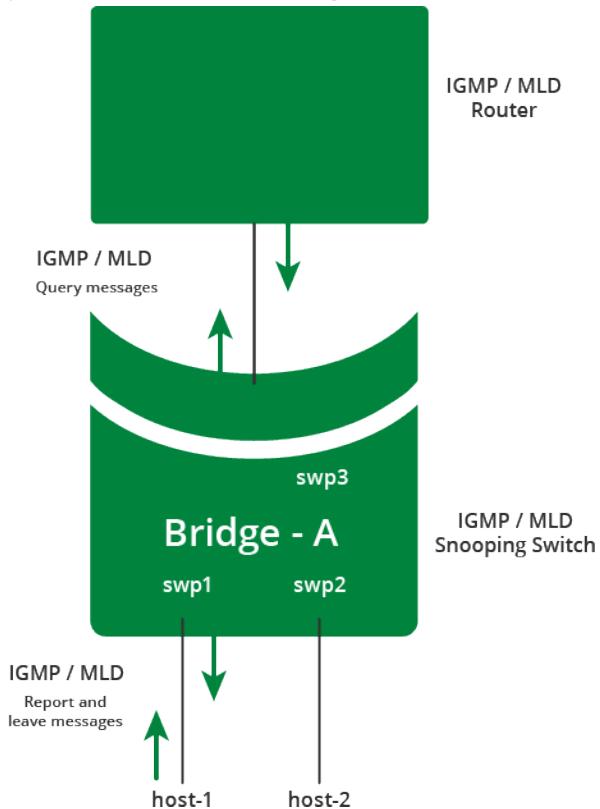
## IGMP and MLD Snooping

IGMP (Internet Group Management Protocol) and MLD (Multicast Listener Discovery) snooping are implemented in the bridge driver in the Cumulus Linux kernel and are enabled by default. IGMP snooping processes IGMP v1/v2/v3 reports received on a bridge port in a bridge to identify the hosts which would like to receive multicast traffic destined to that group.

When an IGMPv2 leave message is received, a group specific query is sent to identify if there are any other hosts interested in that group, before the group is deleted.

An IGMP query message received on a port is used to identify the port that is connected to a router and is interested in receiving multicast traffic.

MLD snooping processes MLD v1/v2 reports, queries and v1 done messages for IPv6 groups. If IGMP or MLD snooping is disabled, multicast traffic gets flooded to all the bridge ports in the bridge. Similarly, in the absence of receivers in a VLAN, multicast traffic would be flooded to all ports in the VLAN. The multicast group IP address is mapped to a multicast MAC address and a forwarding entry is created with a list of ports interested in receiving multicast traffic destined to that group.



## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Configuring IGMP/MLD Querier (see page 395)
- Disable IGMP and MLD Snooping (see page 396)
- Debugging IGMP/MLD Snooping (see page 397)
- Related Information (see page 399)

## Configuring IGMP/MLD Querier

If no multicast router is sending queries to configure IGMP/MLD querier on the switch, you can add a configuration similar to the following in `/etc/network/interfaces`. To enable IGMP and MLD snooping for a bridge, set `bridge-mcquerier` to 1 in the bridge stanza. By default, the source IP address of IGMP queries is 0.0.0.0. To set the source IP address of the queries to be the bridge IP address, configure `bridge-mcqifaddr 1`.

For an explanation of the relevant parameters, see the `ifupdown-addons-interfaces` man page.

For a [VLAN-aware bridge \(see page 328\)](#), use a configuration like the following:

```
auto bridge.100
vlan bridge.100
    bridge-igmp-querier-src 123.1.1.1

auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports swp1 swp2 swp3
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-vids 100 200
    bridge-pvid 1
    bridge-mcquerier 1
```

For a VLAN-aware bridge, like `bridge` in the above example, to enable querier functionality for VLAN 100 in the bridge, set `bridge-mcquerier` to 1 in the bridge stanza and set `bridge-igmp-querier-src` to 123.1.1.1 in the bridge.100 stanza.

You can specify a range of VLANs as well. For example:

```
auto bridge.[1-200]
vlan bridge.[1-200]
    bridge-igmp-querier-src 123.1.1.1
```

For a bridge in [traditional mode \(see page 322\)](#), use a configuration like the following:

```
auto br0
iface br0
    address 192.0.2.10/24
    bridge-ports swp1 swp2 swp3
    bridge-vlan-aware no
    bridge-mcquerier 1
    bridge-mcqifaddr 1
```

## Disable IGMP and MLD Snooping

To disable IGMP and MLD snooping, set the `bridge-mcsnoop` value to 0.

### Example Disable IGMP MLD Snooping Configuration

The example NCLU commands below create a VLAN-aware bridge interface for a VRR-enabled network:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge bridge mcsnoop no
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
```



```
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

The commands above add the `bridge-mcsnoop` line to the following example bridge in `/etc/network/interfaces`:

```
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-mcquerier 1
    bridge-mcsnoop 0
    bridge-ports swp1 swp2 swp3
    bridge-pvid 1
    bridge-vids 100 200
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
```

## Debugging IGMP/MLD Snooping

To get the IGMP/MLD snooping bridge state, run `brctl showstp <bridge>`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl showstp bridge
bridge
bridge id          8000.7072cf8c272c
designated root    8000.7072cf8c272c
root port          0
cost               0
max age           20.00
age                20.00
hello time        2.00
time               2.00
forward delay     15.00
delay              15.00
ageing time       300.00
hello timer       0.00
timer              0.00
topology change timer 0.00
timer              263.70
hash elasticity   4096
max                4096
mc last member count 2
count              2
mc router          1
snooping           1
mc last member timer 1.00
timer              260.00
mc querier timer  255.00
interval           125.00
mc response interval 10.00
interval           31.25
path
```

```

mc querier          0           mc query
ifaddr             0
flags

swp1 (1)
  port id        8001         state
forwarding
  designated root 8000.7072cf8c272c path
cost              2
  designated bridge 8000.7072cf8c272c message age
timer            0.00
  designated port 8001         forward delay
timer            0.00
  designated cost 0             hold
timer            0.00
  mc router       1             mc fast
leave             0
  flags

swp2 (2)
  port id        8002         state
forwarding
  designated root 8000.7072cf8c272c path
cost              2
  designated bridge 8000.7072cf8c272c message age
timer            0.00
  designated port 8002         forward delay
timer            0.00
  designated cost 0             hold
timer            0.00
  mc router       1             mc fast
leave             0
  flags

swp3 (3)
  port id        8003         state
forwarding
  designated root 8000.7072cf8c272c path
cost              2
  designated bridge 8000.7072cf8c272c message age
timer            0.00
  designated port 8003         forward delay
timer            8.98
  designated cost 0             hold
timer            0.00
  mc router       1             mc fast
leave             0
  flags

```

To get the groups and bridge port state, use the `bridge mdb show` command. To display router ports and group information use the `bridge -d -s mdb show` command:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo bridge -d -s mdb show
dev bridge port swp2 grp 234.10.10.10 temp 241.67
dev bridge port swp1 grp 238.39.20.86 permanent 0.00
dev bridge port swp1 grp 234.1.1.1 temp 235.43
dev bridge port swp2 grp ff1a::9 permanent 0.00
router ports on bridge: swp3
```

## Related Information

- [www.linuxfoundation.org/collaborate/workgroups/networking/bridge#Snooping](http://www.linuxfoundation.org/collaborate/workgroups/networking/bridge#Snooping)
- [tools.ietf.org/html/rfc4541](http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc4541)
- [en.wikipedia.org/wiki/IGMP\\_snooping](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/IGMP_snooping)
- [tools.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2236.txt](http://tools.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2236.txt)
- [tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3376](http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3376)
- [tools.ietf.org/search/rfc2710](http://tools.ietf.org/search/rfc2710)
- [tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3810](http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc3810)



# Network Virtualization

Cumulus Linux supports these forms of [network virtualization](#):

**VXLAN** (Virtual Extensible LAN) is a standard overlay protocol that abstracts logical virtual networks from the physical network underneath. You can deploy simple and scalable layer 3 Clos architectures while extending layer 2 segments over that layer 3 network.

VXLAN uses a VLAN-like encapsulation technique to encapsulate MAC-based layer 2 Ethernet frames within layer 3 UDP packets. Each virtual network is a VXLAN logical L2 segment. VXLAN scales to 16 million segments – a 24-bit VXLAN network identifier (VNI ID) in the VXLAN header – for multi-tenancy.

Hosts on a given virtual network are joined together through an overlay protocol that initiates and terminates tunnels at the edge of the multi-tenant network, typically the hypervisor vSwitch or top of rack. These edge points are the VXLAN tunnel end points (VTEP).

Cumulus Linux can initiate and terminate VTEPs in hardware and supports wire-rate VXLAN. VXLAN provides an efficient hashing scheme across IP fabric during the encapsulation process; the source UDP port is unique, with the hash based on L2-L4 information from the original frame. The UDP destination port is the standard port 4789.

Cumulus Linux includes the native Linux VXLAN kernel support and integrates with controller-based overlay solutions like [VMware NSX](#) (see page 569) and [Midokura MidoNet](#) (see page 538).

VXLAN is supported only on switches in the [Cumulus Linux HCL](#) using the Broadcom Tomahawk, Trident II+ and Trident II chipsets as well as the Mellanox Spectrum chipset.



VXLAN encapsulation over layer 3 subinterfaces (for example, swp3.111) is not supported. Therefore, VXLAN uplinks should be only configured as layer 3 interfaces without any subinterfaces (for example, swp3).

Furthermore the VXLAN tunnel endpoints cannot share a common subnet; there must be at least one layer 3 hop between the VXLAN source and destination.

## Caveats/Errata

### Cut-through Mode and Store & Forward Switching

Cut-through mode ([see page 260](#)) is **not** supported for VXLANs in Cumulus Linux on switches using Broadcom Tomahawk, Trident II+ and Trident II ASICs. Store and forward switching **is** supported on these ASICs however.

Cut-through mode **is** supported for VXLANs in Cumulus Linux on switches using Mellanox Spectrum ASICs. However, store and forward switching is **not** supported on Spectrum.

### MTU Size for Virtual Network Interfaces

The maximum transmission unit (MTU) size for a virtual network interface should be 50 bytes smaller than the MTU for the physical interfaces on the switch. For more information on setting MTU, read [Layer 1 and Switch Port Attributes](#) (see page 239).



## Useful Links

- [VXLAN - RFC 7348](#)
- [ovsdb-server](#)

## Static VXLAN Tunnels

In VXLAN-based networks, there are a range of complexities and challenges in determining the destination *virtual tunnel endpoints* (VTEPs) for any given VXLAN. At scale, various solutions, including [Lightweight Network Virtualization \(see page 410\)](#) (LNv), controller-based options like [Midokura MidoNet \(see page 538\)](#) or [VMware NSX \(see page 569\)](#) and even new standards like [EVPN \(see page 466\)](#) are attempts to address these complexities, however do retain their own complexities.

Enter *static VXLAN tunnels*, which simply serve to connect two VTEPs in a given environment. Static VXLAN tunnels are the simplest deployment mechanism for small scale environments, and they should be interoperable with other vendors that adhere to VXLAN standards. It's an easy configuration, since you are simply mapping which VTEPs are in a particular VNI, so you can avoid the tedious process of defining connections to every VLAN on every other VTEP on every other rack.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- [Requirements \(see page 401\)](#)
- [Example Configuration \(see page 402\)](#)
- [Configuring Static VXLAN Tunnels \(see page 402\)](#)
- [Verifying the Configuration \(see page 406\)](#)

## Requirements

While they should be interoperable with other vendors, Cumulus Networks supports static VXLAN tunnels only on switches in the [Cumulus Linux HCL](#) using the Broadcom Tomahawk, Trident II+ and Trident II chipsets as well as the Mellanox Spectrum chipset.

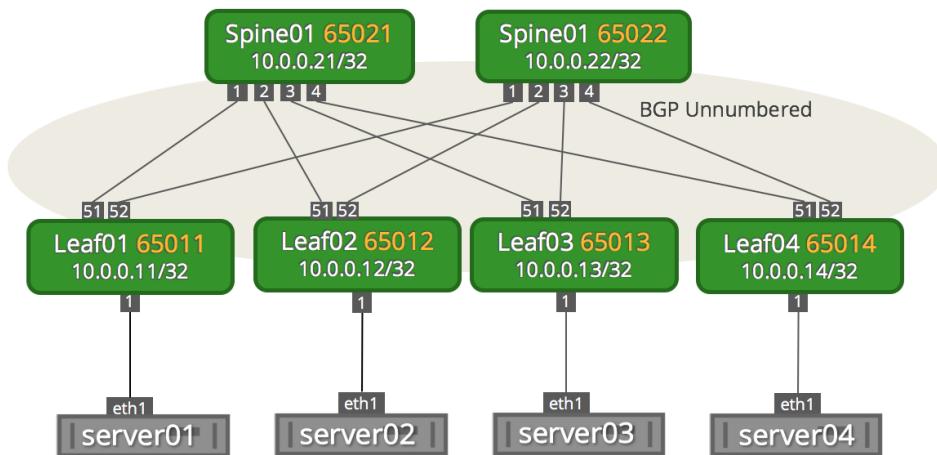
For a basic VXLAN configuration, you should ensure that:

- The VXLAN has a network identifier (VNI); do not use 0 or 16777215 as the VNI ID, as they are reserved values under Cumulus Linux.
- The VXLAN link and local interfaces are added to bridge to create the association between port, VLAN and VXLAN instance.
- Each bridge on the switch has only one VXLAN interface. Cumulus Linux does not support more than one VXLAN link in a bridge.
- The VXLAN registration daemon (`vxrd`) is not running. Static VXLAN tunnels do not interoperate with LNV or EVPN. If `vxrd` is running, stop it with:

```
cumulus@switch:~ sudo systemctl stop vxrd.service
```

## Example Configuration

The following topology is used in this chapter. Each IP address corresponds to the switch's loopback address:



## Configuring Static VXLAN Tunnels

To configure static VXLAN tunnels, for each leaf you need to do the following:

- Specify an IP address for the loopback
- Create a VXLAN interface, using the loopback address for the local tunnel IP address
- Create the tunnels by configuring the remote IP address to each other leaf switch's loopback address

To configure leaf01, run the following commands:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add loopback lo ip address 10.0.0.11/32
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vxlan vni-10 vxlan id 10
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vxlan vni-10 vxlan local-tunnelip 10.0.0.11
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vxlan vni-10 vxlan remoteip 10.0.0.12
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vxlan vni-10 vxlan remoteip 10.0.0.13
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vxlan vni-10 vxlan remoteip 10.0.0.14
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vxlan vni-10 bridge access 10
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net pending
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration in the /etc/network/interfaces file:

```
# The loopback network interface
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.0.0.11/32
```

```
# The primary network interface
auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto swp1
iface swp1

auto swp2
iface swp2

auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports vni-10
    bridge-vids 10
    bridge-vlan-aware yes

auto vni-10
iface vni-10
    bridge-access 10
    mstpcctl-bpduguard yes
    mstpcctl-portbpdufilter yes
    vxlan-id 10
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.0.0.11
    vxlan-remoteip 10.0.0.12
    vxlan-remoteip 10.0.0.13
    vxlan-remoteip 10.0.0.14
```

Repeat these steps for leaf02, leaf03 and leaf04:

Node	NCLU Commands	/etc/network/interfaces Configuration
leaf02	<pre>cumulus@leaf02:~\$ net add loopback lo ip address 10.0.0.12/32 cumulus@leaf02:~\$ net add vxlan vni-10 vxlan id 10 cumulus@leaf02:~\$ net add vxlan vni-10 vxlan local-tunnelip 10.0.0.12 cumulus@leaf02:~\$ net add vxlan vni-10 vxlan remoteip 10.0.0.11 cumulus@leaf02:~\$ net add vxlan vni-10 vxlan remoteip 10.0.0.13 cumulus@leaf02:~\$ net add vxlan vni-10 vxlan remoteip 10.0.0.14 cumulus@leaf02:~\$ net add vxlan vni-10 bridge access 10 cumulus@leaf02:~\$ net pending cumulus@leaf02:~\$ net commit</pre>	<pre># The loopback network interface auto lo iface lo inet loopback address 10.0.0.12/32  # The primary network interface auto eth0 iface eth0 inet dhcp  auto swp1 iface swp1</pre>

Node	NCLU Commands	/etc/network/interfaces Configuration
		<pre> auto swp2 iface swp2  auto bridge iface bridge     bridge-ports     vni-10     bridge-vids 10     bridge-vlan-     aware yes  auto vni-10 iface vni-10     bridge-access     10     mstpctl-     bpduguard yes     mstpctl-     portbpdufilter yes     vxlan-id 10     vxlan-local-     tunnelip 10.0.0.12     vxlan-     remoteip 10.0.0.11     vxlan-     remoteip 10.0.0.13     vxlan-     remoteip 10.0.0.14 </pre>
leaf03	<pre> cumulus@leaf03:~\$ net add loopback lo ip address 10.0.0.13/32 cumulus@leaf03:~\$ net add vxlan vni-10 vxlan id 10 cumulus@leaf03:~\$ net add vxlan vni-10 vxlan local-tunnelip 10.0.0.13 cumulus@leaf03:~\$ net add vxlan vni-10 vxlan remoteip 10.0.0.11 cumulus@leaf03:~\$ net add vxlan vni-10 vxlan remoteip 10.0.0.12 cumulus@leaf03:~\$ net add vxlan vni-10 vxlan remoteip 10.0.0.14 cumulus@leaf03:~\$ net add vxlan vni-10 bridge access 10 cumulus@leaf03:~\$ net pending cumulus@leaf03:~\$ net commit </pre>	<pre> # The loopback network interface auto lo iface lo inet loopback     address     10.0.0.13/32  # The primary network interface auto eth0 iface eth0 inet dhcp  auto swp1 iface swp1 </pre>



Node	NCLU Commands	/etc/network/interfaces Configuration
		<pre>auto swp2 iface swp2  auto bridge iface bridge     bridge-ports     vni-10     bridge-vids 10     bridge-vlan-     aware yes  auto vni-10 iface vni-10     bridge-access     10     mstptcl-     bpduguard yes     mstptcl-     portbpdufilter yes     vxlan-id 10     vxlan-local-     tunnelip 10.0.0.13     vxlan-     remoteip 10.0.0.11     vxlan-     remoteip 10.0.0.12     vxlan-     remoteip 10.0.0.14</pre>
leaf04	<pre>cumulus@leaf04:~\$ net add loopback lo ip address 10.0.0.14/32 cumulus@leaf04:~\$ net add vxlan vni-10 vxlan id 10 cumulus@leaf04:~\$ net add vxlan vni-10 vxlan local-tunnelip 10.0.0.14 cumulus@leaf04:~\$ net add vxlan vni-10 vxlan remoteip 10.0.0.11 cumulus@leaf04:~\$ net add vxlan vni-10 vxlan remoteip 10.0.0.12 cumulus@leaf04:~\$ net add vxlan vni-10 vxlan remoteip 10.0.0.13 cumulus@leaf04:~\$ net add vxlan vni-10 bridge access 10 cumulus@leaf04:~\$ net pending</pre>	<pre># The loopback network interface auto lo iface lo inet loopback     address     10.0.0.14/32  # The primary network interface auto eth0 iface eth0 inet     dhcp  auto swp1</pre>

Node	NCLU Commands	/etc/network/interfaces Configuration
	<pre>cumulus@leaf04:~\$ net commit</pre>	<pre>iface swp1  auto swp2 iface swp2  auto bridge iface bridge     bridge-ports vni-10     bridge-vids 10     bridge-vlan-     aware yes  auto vni-10 iface vni-10     bridge-access 10     mstpctl-     bpduguard yes     mstpctl-     portbpdufilter yes     vxlan-id 10     vxlan-local-     tunnelip 10.0.0.14     vxlan-     remoteip 10.0.0.11     vxlan-     remoteip 10.0.0.12     vxlan-     remoteip 10.0.0.13</pre>

## Verifying the Configuration

Once you configure all the leaf switches, check for replication entries:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo bridge fdb show | grep 00:00:00:00:00:00
00:00:00:00:00:00 dev vni-10 dst 10.0.0.14 self permanent
00:00:00:00:00:00 dev vni-10 dst 10.0.0.12 self permanent
00:00:00:00:00:00 dev vni-10 dst 10.0.0.13 self permanent
```

## Static MAC Bindings with VXLAN

Cumulus Linux includes native Linux VXLAN kernel support.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Requirements (see page 407)
- Example VXLAN Configuration (see page 407)
- Configuring the Static MAC Bindings VXLAN (see page 407)
- Troubleshooting VXLANs in Cumulus Linux (see page 409)

## Requirements

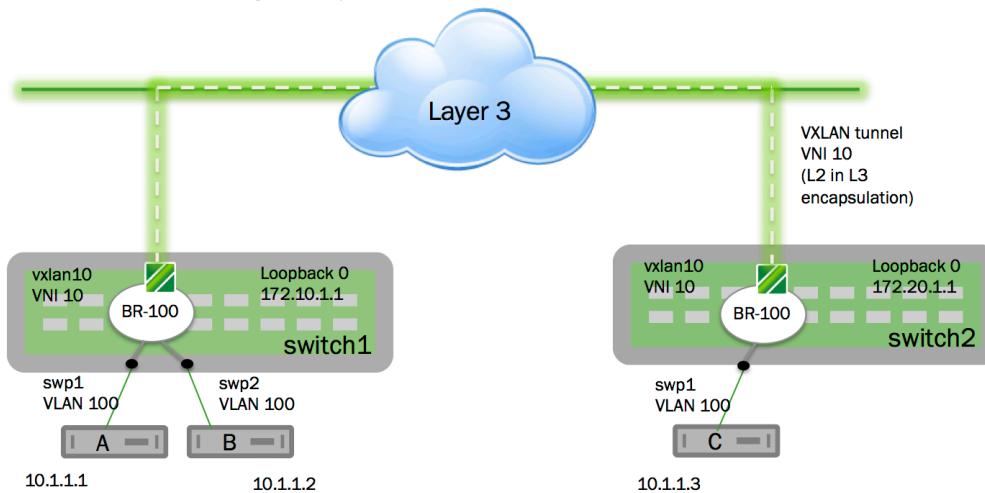
A VXLAN configuration requires a switch with a Broadcom Tomahawk, Trident II+ or Trident II chipset running Cumulus Linux 2.0 or later, or a Mellanox Spectrum chipset running Cumulus Linux 3.2.0 or later.

For a basic VXLAN configuration, you should ensure that:

- The VXLAN has a network identifier (VNI); do not use 0 or 16777215 as the VNI ID, as they are reserved values under Cumulus Linux.
- The VXLAN link and local interfaces are added to bridge to create the association between port, VLAN and VXLAN instance.

## Example VXLAN Configuration

Consider the following example:



Preconfiguring remote MAC addresses does not scale. A better solution is to use the Cumulus Networks [Lightweight Network Virtualization](#) feature, or a controller-based option like [Midokura MidoNet](#) and [OpenStack](#) or [VMware NSX](#).

## Configuring the Static MAC Bindings VXLAN

To configure the example illustrated above, first create the following configuration on switch1:

```
cumulus@switch1:~$ net add loopback lo ip address 172.10.1.1
```

```
cumulus@switch1:~$ net add loopback lo vxrd-src-ip 172.10.1.1
cumulus@switch1:~$ net add bridge bridge ports swp1-2
cumulus@switch1:~$ net add bridge post-up bridge fdb add 0:00:10:00:
00:0C dev vtep1000 dst 172.20.1.1 vni 1000
cumulus@switch1:~$ net add vxlan vtep1000 vxlan id 1000
cumulus@switch1:~$ net add vxlan vtep1000 vxlan local-tunnelip
172.10.1.1
cumulus@switch1:~$ net add vxlan vtep1000 bridge access 10
cumulus@switch1:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch1:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration in the /etc/network/interfaces file:

```
auto vtep1000
iface vtep1000
    vxlan-id 1000
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 172.10.1.1

auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports swp1 swp2 vtep1000
    bridge-vids 10
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    post-up bridge fdb add 0:00:10:00:00:0C dev vtep1000 dst 172.20.1.
1 vni 1000
```

Then create the following configuration on switch2:

```
cumulus@switch2:~$ net add loopback lo ip address 172.20.1.1
cumulus@switch2:~$ net add loopback lo vxrd-src-ip 172.20.1.1
cumulus@switch1:~$ net add bridge bridge ports swp1-2
cumulus@switch2:~$ net add bridge post-up bridge fdb add 00:00:10:00:
00:0A dev vtep1000 dst 172.10.1.1 vni 1000
cumulus@switch2:~$ net add bridge post-up bridge fdb add 00:00:10:00:
00:0B dev vtep1000 dst 172.10.1.1 vni 1000
cumulus@switch2:~$ net add vxlan vtep1000 vxlan id 1000
cumulus@switch2:~$ net add vxlan vtep1000 vxlan local-tunnelip
172.10.1.1
cumulus@switch2:~$ net add vxlan vtep1000 bridge access 10
cumulus@switch2:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch2:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration in the /etc/network/interfaces file:

```
auto vtep1000
iface vtep1000
    vxlan-id 1000
```



```
vxlan-local-tunnelip 172.20.1.1

auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports swp1 swp2 vtep1000
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    post-up bridge fdb add 00:00:10:00:00:0A dev vtep1000 dst 172.10.1
.1 vni 1000
    post-up bridge fdb add 00:00:10:00:00:0B dev vtep1000 dst 172.10.1
.1 vni 1000
```

## Troubleshooting VXLANS in Cumulus Linux

Use the following commands to troubleshoot issues on the switch:

- `brctl show`: Verifies the VXLAN configuration in a bridge:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ brctl show
bridge name      bridge id          STP enabled     interfaces
bridge          8000.2a179a8cc471    yes           swp1
                           swp2
                           vni-10
                           vni-2000
```

- `bridge fdb show`: Displays the list of MAC addresses in an FDB:

```
cumulus@switch1:~$ bridge fdb show
44:38:39:00:00:18 dev swp1 master bridge permanent
44:38:39:00:00:1c dev swp2 master bridge permanent
2a:17:9a:8c:c4:71 dev vni-2000 master bridge permanent
9a:e8:ef:a1:9d:6f dev vni-10 master bridge permanent
00:00:10:00:00:0c dev vni-10 dst 172.20.1.1 self permanent
```

- `ip -d link show`: Displays information about the VXLAN link:

```
cumulus@switch1:~$ ip -d link show vni-10
15: vni-10: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
    master bridge state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT group default
        link/ether 9a:e8:ef:a1:9d:6f brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
        promiscuity 1
        vxlan id 10 remote 10.2.1.3 local 10.2.1.1 srcport 0 0
        dstport 4789 ageing 1800
            bridge_slave state forwarding priority 8 cost 100 hairpin
            off guard off root_block off fastleave off learning on flood on
            port_id 0x8004 port_no 0x4 designated_port 32772 designated_cost
            0 designated_bridge 8000.2a:17:9a:8c:c4:71 designated_root 8000.2
            a:17:9a:8c:c4:71 hold_timer    0.00 message_age_timer    0.00
```



```
forward_delay_timer      0.00 topology_change_ack 0 config_pending
0 proxy_arp off proxy_arp_wifi off mcast_router 1
mcast_fast_leave off mcast_flood on addrgenmode eui64
```

## Lightweight Network Virtualization - LNV Overview

Lightweight Network Virtualization (LNV) is a technique for deploying [VXLANs](#) (see page 399) without a central controller on bare metal switches. This solution requires no external controller or software suite; it runs the VXLAN service and registration daemons on Cumulus Linux itself. The data path between bridge entities is established on top of a layer 3 fabric by means of a simple service node coupled with traditional MAC address learning.

To see an example of a full solution before reading the following background information, [please read this chapter](#) (see page 459).



LNV is a lightweight controller option. Please [contact Cumulus Networks](#) with your scale requirements so we can make sure this is the right fit for you. There are also other controller options that can work on Cumulus Linux.



When you are using LNV, you cannot use [EVPN](#) (see page 466) at the same time.

## Contents

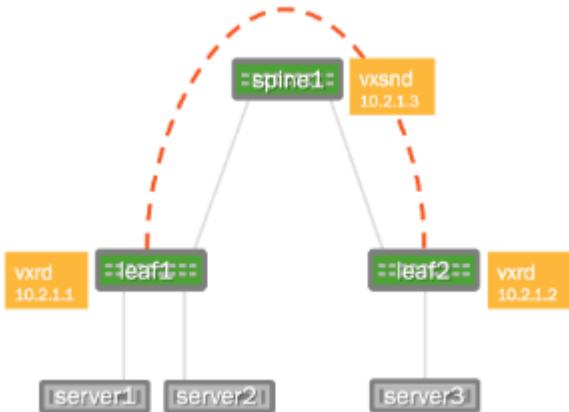
This chapter covers ...

- Understanding LNV Concepts (see page 411)
  - Acquiring the Forwarding Database at the Service Node (see page 412)
  - MAC Learning and Flooding (see page 412)
  - Handling BUM Traffic (see page 412)
- Requirements (see page 413)
  - Hardware Requirements (see page 413)
  - Configuration Requirements (see page 413)
  - Installing the LNV Packages (see page 414)
- Sample LNV Configuration (see page 414)
  - Network Connectivity (see page 414)
  - Layer 3 IP Addressing (see page 415)
  - Layer 3 Fabric (see page 417)
  - Host Configuration (see page 419)
- Configuring the VLAN to VXLAN Mapping (see page 420)
- Verifying the VLAN to VXLAN Mapping (see page 422)
- Enabling and Managing Service Node and Registration Daemons (see page 423)
  - Enabling the Service Node Daemon (see page 423)

- Enabling the Registration Daemon (see page 423)
- Checking the Daemon Status (see page 423)
- Configuring the Registration Node (see page 424)
- Configuring the Service Node (see page 426)
- Verification and Troubleshooting (see page 428)
  - Verifying the Registration Node Daemon (see page 428)
  - Verifying the Service Node Daemon (see page 429)
  - Verifying Traffic Flow and Checking Counters (see page 429)
  - Pinging to Test Connectivity (see page 430)
  - Troubleshooting with MAC Addresses (see page 431)
  - Checking the Service Node Configuration (see page 432)
- Advanced LNV Usage (see page 432)
  - Scaling LNV by Load Balancing with Anycast (see page 432)
  - Restarting Network Removes vxsn Anycast IP Address from Loopback Interface (see page 437)
- Related Information (see page 438)

## Understanding LNV Concepts

To best describe this feature, consider the following example deployment:



The two switches running Cumulus Linux, called leaf1 and leaf2, each have a bridge configured. These two bridges contain the physical switch port interfaces connecting to the servers as well as the logical VXLAN interface associated with the bridge. By creating a logical VXLAN interface on both leaf switches, the switches become *VTEPs* (virtual tunnel end points). The IP address associated with this VTEP is most commonly configured as its loopback address — in the image above, the loopback address is 10.2.1.1 for leaf1 and 10.2.1.2 for leaf2.



## Acquiring the Forwarding Database at the Service Node

In order to connect these two VXLANs together and forward BUM (Broadcast, Unknown-unicast, Multicast) packets to members of a VXLAN, the service node needs to acquire the addresses of all the VTEPs for every VXLAN it serves. The service node daemon does this through a registration daemon running on each leaf switch that contains a VTEP participating in LNV. The registration process informs the service node of all the VXLANs to which the switch belongs.

## MAC Learning and Flooding

With LNV, as with traditional bridging of physical LANs or VLANs, a bridge automatically learns the location of hosts as a side effect of receiving packets on a port.

For example, when server1 sends an L2 packet to server3, leaf2 learns that server1's MAC address is located on that particular VXLAN, and the VXLAN interface learns that the IP address of the VTEP for server1 is 10.2.1.1. So when server3 sends a packet to server1, the bridge on leaf2 forwards the packet out of the port to the VXLAN interface and the VXLAN interface sends it, encapsulated in a UDP packet, to the address 10.2.1.1.

But what if server3 sends a packet to some address that has yet to send it a packet (server2, for example)? In this case, the VXLAN interface sends the packet to the service node, which sends a copy to every other VTEP that belongs to the same VXLAN. This is called *service node replication* and is one of two techniques for handling BUM (Broadcast Unknown-unicast and Multicast) traffic.

## Handling BUM Traffic

Cumulus Linux has two ways of handling BUM (Broadcast Unknown-unicast and Multicast) traffic:

- Head end replication
- Service node replication

Head end replication is enabled by default in Cumulus Linux.



You cannot have both service node and head end replication configured simultaneously, as this causes the BUM traffic to be duplicated — both the source VTEP and the service node sending their own copy of each packet to every remote VTEP.

## Head End Replication

The Broadcom Tomahawk, Trident II+ and Trident II chipsets and Mellanox Spectrum chipsets are capable of head end replication (HER) — the ability to generate all the BUM traffic in hardware. The most scalable solution available with LNV is to have each VTEP (top of rack switch) generate all of its own BUM traffic rather than relying on an external service node. HER is enabled by default in Cumulus Linux.

Cumulus Linux verified support for up to 128 VTEPs with head end replication.

To disable head end replication, edit `/etc/vxrd.conf` and set `head_rep` to `False`.



## Service Node Replication

Cumulus Linux also supports service node replication for VXLAN BUM packets. This is useful with LNV if you have more than 128 VTEPs. However, it is not recommended because it forces the spine switches running the `vxsnd` (service node daemon) to replicate the packets in software instead of in hardware, unlike head end replication. If you're not using a controller but have more than 128 VTEPs, contact [Cumulus Networks](#).

To enable service node replication:

1. Disable head end replication; set `head_rep` to *False* in `/etc/vxrd.conf`.
2. Configure a service node IP address for every VXLAN interface using the `vxlan-svcnodeip` parameter:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan VXLAN vxlan svcnodeip IP_ADDRESS
```



You only specify this parameter when head end replication is disabled. For the loopback, the parameter is still named `vxrd-svcnode-ip`.

3. Edit `/etc/vxsnd.conf`, and configure the following:

- Set the same service node IP address that you did in the previous step:

```
svcnod_ip = <>
```

- To forward VXLAN data traffic, set the following variable to *True*:

```
enable_vxlan_listen = true
```

## Requirements

### Hardware Requirements

- Switches with a Broadcom Tomahawk, Trident II+ or Trident II, or Mellanox Spectrum chipset running Cumulus Linux 2.5.4 or later. Please refer to the Cumulus Networks [hardware compatibility list](#) for a list of supported switch models.

### Configuration Requirements

- The VXLAN has an associated **VXLAN Network Identifier** (VNI), also interchangeably called a VXLAN ID.
- The VNI should not be 0 or 16777215, as these two numbers are reserved values under Cumulus Linux.
- The VXLAN link and physical interfaces are added to the bridge to create the association between the port, VLAN and VXLAN instance.

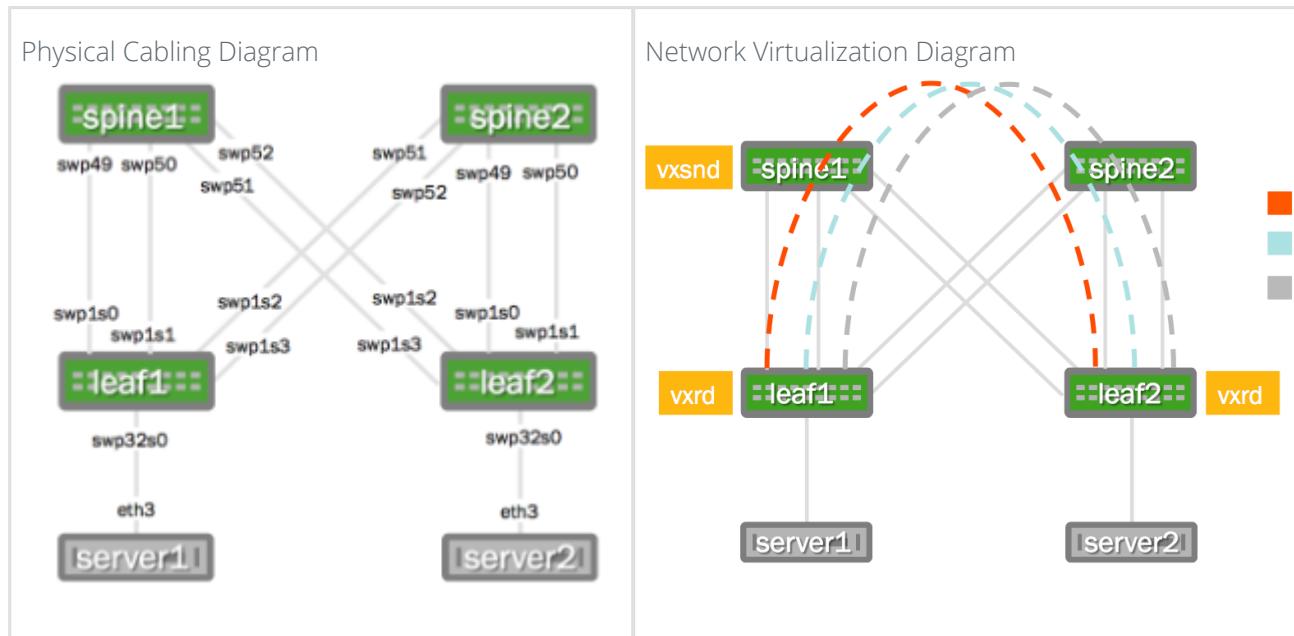
- Each bridge on the switch has only one VXLAN interface. Cumulus Linux does not support more than one VXLAN link in a bridge; however, a switch can have multiple bridges.
- An SVI (Switch VLAN Interface) or L3 address on the bridge is not supported. For example, you can't ping from the leaf1 SVI to the leaf2 SVI via the VXLAN tunnel; you would need to use server1 and server2 to verify.

## *Installing the LNV Packages*

`vxf1d` is installed by default on all new installations of Cumulus Linux 3.x. If you are upgrading from an earlier version, run `sudo -E apt-get install python-vxf1d` to install the LNV package.

## **Sample LNV Configuration**

The following images illustrate the configuration that is referenced throughout this chapter.



Want to try out configuring LNV and don't have a Cumulus Linux switch? Check out [Cumulus VX](#).

## *Network Connectivity*

There must be full network connectivity before you can configure LNV. The layer 3 IP addressing information as well as the OSPF configuration (`/etc/frr/frr.conf`) below is provided to make the LNV example easier to understand.



OSPF is not a requirement for LNV, LNV just requires L3 connectivity. With Cumulus Linux this can be achieved with static routes, OSPF or BGP.



## Layer 3 IP Addressing

Here is the configuration for the IP addressing information used in this example.

**spine1:**

```
cumulus@spine1:~$ net
add interface swp49 ip address
10.1.1.2/30
cumulus@spine1:~$ net
add interface swp50 ip address
10.1.1.6/30
cumulus@spine1:~$ net
add interface swp51 ip address
10.1.1.50/30
cumulus@spine1:~$ net
add interface swp52 ip address
10.1.1.54/30
cumulus@spine1:~$ net
add loopback lo ip address
10.2.1.3/32
cumulus@spine1:~$ net pending
cumulus@spine1:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration:

```
cumulus@spine1:~$ cat /etc
/network/interfaces
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.2.1.3/32

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto swp49
iface swp49
    address 10.1.1.2/30

auto swp50
iface swp50
    address 10.1.1.6/30

auto swp51
iface swp51
    address 10.1.1.50/30
```

**spine2:**

```
cumulus@spine2:~$ net add
interface swp49 ip address
10.1.1.18/30
cumulus@spine2:~$ net add
interface swp50 ip address
10.1.1.22/30
cumulus@spine2:~$ net add
interface swp51 ip address
10.1.1.34/30
cumulus@spine2:~$ net add
interface swp52 ip address
10.1.1.38/30
cumulus@spine2:~$ net add
loopback lo ip address 10.2.1.4
/32
cumulus@spine2:~$ net pending
cumulus@spine2:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration:

```
cumulus@spine2:~$ cat /etc
/network/interfaces
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.2.1.4/32

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto swp49
iface swp49
    address 10.1.1.18/30

auto swp50
iface swp50
    address 10.1.1.22/30

auto swp51
iface swp51
    address 10.1.1.34/30
```

```
auto swp52
iface swp52
    address 10.1.1.54/30
```

```
auto swp52
iface swp52
    address 10.1.1.38/30
```

**leaf1:**

```
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add
interface swp1 breakout 4x
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add
interface swp1s0 ip address
10.1.1.1/30
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add
interface swp1s1 ip address
10.1.1.5/30
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add
interface swp1s2 ip address
10.1.1.33/30
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add
interface swp1s3 ip address
10.1.1.37/30
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add
loopback lo ip address 10.2.1.1
/32
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net pending
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration:

```
cumulus@leaf1:~$ cat /etc
/network/interfaces
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.2.1.1/32

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto swp1s0
iface swp1s0
    address 10.1.1.1/30

auto swp1s1
iface swp1s1
    address 10.1.1.5/30

auto swp1s2
```

**leaf2:**

```
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add
interface swp1 breakout 4x
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add
interface swp1s0 ip address
10.1.1.17/30
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add
interface swp1s1 ip address
10.1.1.21/30
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add
interface swp1s2 ip address
10.1.1.49/30
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add
interface swp1s3 ip address
10.1.1.53/30
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add
loopback lo ip address 10.2.1.2
/32
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net pending
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration:

```
cumulus@leaf2:~$ cat /etc
/network/interfaces
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.2.1.2/32

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto swp1s0
iface swp1s0
    address 10.1.1.17/30

auto swp1s1
iface swp1s1
    address 10.1.1.21/30

auto swp1s2
```



```
iface swp1s2
    address 10.1.1.33/30

auto swp1s3
iface swp1s3
    address 10.1.1.37/30
```

```
iface swp1s2
    address 10.1.1.49/30

auto swp1s3
iface swp1s3
    address 10.1.1.53/30
```

## Layer 3 Fabric

The service nodes and registration nodes must all be routable between each other. The L3 fabric on Cumulus Linux can either be [BGP](#) (see page 636) or [OSPF](#) (see page 620). In this example, OSPF is used to demonstrate full reachability. Click to expand the FRRouting configurations below.

Click to expand the OSPF configuration ...

FRRouting configuration using OSPF:

**spine1:**

```
cumulus@spine1:~$ net add ospf
network 10.2.1.3/32 area
0.0.0.0
cumulus@spine1:~$ net add
interface swp49 ospf network
point-to-point
cumulus@spine1:~$ net add
interface swp50 ospf network
point-to-point
cumulus@spine1:~$ net add
interface swp51 ospf network
point-to-point
cumulus@spine1:~$ net add
interface swp52 ospf network
point-to-point
cumulus@spine1:~$ net add
interface swp49 ospf area
0.0.0.0
cumulus@spine1:~$ net add
interface swp50 ospf area
0.0.0.0
cumulus@spine1:~$ net add
interface swp51 ospf area
0.0.0.0
cumulus@spine1:~$ net add
interface swp52 ospf area
0.0.0.0
cumulus@spine1:~$ net add ospf
router-id 10.2.1.3
cumulus@spine1:~$ net pending
```

**spine2:**

```
cumulus@spine2:~$ net add ospf
network 10.2.1.4/32 area
0.0.0.0
cumulus@spine2:~$ net add
interface swp49 ospf network
point-to-point
cumulus@spine2:~$ net add
interface swp50 ospf network
point-to-point
cumulus@spine2:~$ net add
interface swp51 ospf network
point-to-point
cumulus@spine2:~$ net add
interface swp52 ospf network
point-to-point
cumulus@spine2:~$ net add
interface swp49 ospf area
0.0.0.0
cumulus@spine2:~$ net add
interface swp50 ospf area
0.0.0.0
cumulus@spine2:~$ net add
interface swp51 ospf area
0.0.0.0
cumulus@spine2:~$ net add
interface swp52 ospf area
0.0.0.0
cumulus@spine2:~$ net add ospf
router-id 10.2.1.4
cumulus@spine2:~$ net pending
```

```
cumulus@spine1:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration:

```
interface swp49
  ip ospf network point-to-point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp50
  ip ospf network point-to-point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp51
  ip ospf network point-to-point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp52
  ip ospf network point-to-point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
router ospf
  ospf router-id 10.2.1.3
  network 10.2.1.3/32 area
  0.0.0.0
```

```
cumulus@spine2:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration:

```
interface swp49
  ip ospf network point-to-point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp50
  ip ospf network point-to-point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp51
  ip ospf network point-to-point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp52
  ip ospf network point-to-point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
router ospf
  ospf router-id 10.2.1.4
  network 10.2.1.4/32 area
  0.0.0.0
```

### **leaf1:**

```
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add ospf
network 10.2.1.1/32 area
0.0.0.0
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add
interface swpls0 ospf network
point-to-point
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add
interface swpls1 ospf network
point-to-point
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add
interface swpls2 ospf network
point-to-point
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add
interface swpls3 ospf network
point-to-point
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add
interface swpls0 ospf area
0.0.0.0
```

### **leaf2:**

```
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add ospf
network 10.2.1.2/32 area
0.0.0.0
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add
interface swpls0 ospf network
point-to-point
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add
interface swpls1 ospf network
point-to-point
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add
interface swpls2 ospf network
point-to-point
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add
interface swpls3 ospf network
point-to-point
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add
interface swpls0 ospf area
0.0.0.0
```

```

cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add
interface swp1s1 ospf area
0.0.0.0
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add
interface swp1s2 ospf area
0.0.0.0
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add
interface swp1s3 ospf area
0.0.0.0
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add ospf
router-id 10.2.1.1
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net pending
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net commit
    
```

These commands create the following configuration:

```

interface swp1s0
    ip ospf network point-to-point
    ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp1s1
    ip ospf network point-to-point
    ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp1s2
    ip ospf network point-to-point
    ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp1s3
    ip ospf network point-to-point
    ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
router ospf
    ospf router-id 10.2.1.1
    network 10.2.1.1/32 area
    0.0.0.0
    
```

```

cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add
interface swp1s1 ospf area
0.0.0.0
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add
interface swp1s2 ospf area
0.0.0.0
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add
interface swp1s3 ospf area
0.0.0.0
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add ospf
router-id 10.2.1.2
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net pending
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net commit
    
```

These commands create the following configuration:

```

interface swp1s0
    ip ospf network point-to-point
    ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp1s1
    ip ospf network point-to-point
    ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp1s2
    ip ospf network point-to-point
    ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp1s3
    ip ospf network point-to-point
    ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
router ospf
    ospf router-id 10.2.1.2
    network 10.2.1.2/32 area
    0.0.0.0
    
```

## Host Configuration

In this example, the servers are running Ubuntu 14.04. There needs to be a trunk mapped from server1 and server2 to the respective switch. In Ubuntu this is done with subinterfaces. You can expand the configurations below.

Click to expand the host configurations ...

**server1:**

**server2:**

```
auto eth3.10
iface eth3.10 inet
static
    address 10.10.10.1/24
auto eth3.20
iface eth3.20 inet
static
    address 10.10.20.1/24
auto eth3.30
iface eth3.30 inet
static
    address 10.10.30.1/24
```

```
auto eth3.10
iface eth3.10 inet
static
    address 10.10.10.2/24
auto eth3.20
iface eth3.20 inet
static
    address 10.10.20.2/24
auto eth3.30
iface eth3.30 inet
static
    address 10.10.30.2/24
```

On Ubuntu it is more reliable to use `ifup` and `if down` to bring the interfaces up and down individually, rather than restarting networking entirely (that is, there is no equivalent to `if reload` like there is in Cumulus Linux):

```
cumulus@server1:~$ sudo ifup eth3.10
Set name-type for VLAN subsystem. Should be visible in /proc/net/vlan
/config
Added VLAN with VID == 10 to IF -:eth3:-
cumulus@server1:~$ sudo ifup eth3.20
Set name-type for VLAN subsystem. Should be visible in /proc/net/vlan
/config
Added VLAN with VID == 20 to IF -:eth3:-
cumulus@server1:~$ sudo ifup eth3.30
Set name-type for VLAN subsystem. Should be visible in /proc/net/vlan
/config
Added VLAN with VID == 30 to IF -:eth3:-
```

## Configuring the VLAN to VXLAN Mapping

Configure the VLANs and associated VXLANs. In this example, there are 3 VLANs and 3 VXLAN IDs (VNIs). VLANs 10, 20 and 30 are used and associated with VNIs 10, 2000 and 30 respectively. The loopback address, used as the `vxlan-local-tunnelip`, is the only difference between leaf1 and leaf2 for this demonstration.

**leaf1:**

```
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add
loopback lo ip address 10.2.1.1
/32
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add
loopback lo vxrd-src-ip
10.2.1.1
```

**leaf2:**

```
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add
loopback lo ip address 10.2.1.2
/32
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add
loopback lo vxrd-src-ip
10.2.1.2
```



```
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add
loopback lo vxrd-svcnode-ip
10.2.1.3
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add vxlan
vni-10 vxlan id 10
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add vxlan
vni-10 vxlan local-tunnelip
10.2.1.1
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add vxlan
vni-10 bridge access 10
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add vxlan
vni-2000 vxlan id 2000
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add vxlan
vni-2000 vxlan local-tunnelip
10.2.1.1
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add vxlan
vni-2000 bridge access 20
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add vxlan
vni-30 vxlan id 30
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add vxlan
vni-30 vxlan local-tunnelip
10.2.1.1
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add vxlan
vni-30 bridge access 30
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add
bridge bridge ports swp32s0.10
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net pending
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration in the /etc/network/interfaces file:

```
auto lo
iface lo
    address 10.2.1.1/32
    vxrd-src-ip 10.2.1.1

auto swp32s0.10
iface swp32s0.10

auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports vni-10 vni-2000
    vni-30
    bridge-vids 10 20 30
    bridge-vlan-aware yes

auto vni-10
iface vni-10
```

```
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add
loopback lo vxrd-svcnode-ip
10.2.1.3
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add vxlan
vni-10 vxlan id 10
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add vxlan
vni-10 vxlan local-tunnelip
10.2.1.2
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add vxlan
vni-10 bridge access 10
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add vxlan
vni-2000 vxlan id 2000
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add vxlan
vni-2000 vxlan local-tunnelip
10.2.1.2
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add vxlan
vni-2000 bridge access 20
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add vxlan
vni-30 vxlan id 30
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add vxlan
vni-30 vxlan local-tunnelip
10.2.1.2
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net add vxlan
vni-30 bridge access 30
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add
bridge bridge ports swp32s0.10
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net pending
cumulus@leaf2:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration in the /etc/network/interfaces file:

```
auto lo
iface lo
    address 10.2.1.2/32
    vxrd-src-ip 10.2.1.2

auto swp32s0.10
iface swp32s0.10

auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports vni-10 vni-2000
    vni-30
    bridge-vids 10 20 30
    bridge-vlan-aware yes

auto vni-10
iface vni-10
```

```

bridge-access 10
mstpctl-bpduguard yes
mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes
vxlan-id 10
vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.2.1.1

auto vni-2000
iface vni-2000
    bridge-access 20
    mstpctl-bpduguard yes
    mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes
    vxlan-id 2000
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.2.1.1

auto vni-30
iface vni-30
    bridge-access 30
    mstpctl-bpduguard yes
    mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes
    vxlan-id 30
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.2.1.1

```

```

bridge-access 10
mstpctl-bpduguard yes
mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes
vxlan-id 10
vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.2.1.2

auto vni-2000
iface vni-2000
    bridge-access 20
    mstpctl-bpduguard yes
    mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes
    vxlan-id 2000
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.2.1.2

auto vni-30
iface vni-30
    bridge-access 30
    mstpctl-bpduguard yes
    mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes
    vxlan-id 30
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.2.1.2

```



Why is vni-2000 not vni-20? For example, why not tie VLAN 20 to VNI 20, or why was 2000 used? VXLANs and VLANs do not need to be the same number. This was done on purpose to highlight this fact. However if you are using fewer than 4096 VLANs, there is no reason not to make it easy and correlate VLANs to VXLANs. It is completely up to you.

## Verifying the VLAN to VXLAN Mapping

Use the `brctl show` command to see the physical and logical interfaces associated with that bridge:

```

cumulus@leaf1:~$ brctl show
bridge name      bridge id      STP enabled      interfaces
bridge          8000.443839008404    yes            swp32s0.10
                                         vni-10
                                         vni-2000
                                         vni-30

```

As with any logical interfaces on Linux, the name does not matter (other than a 15-character limit). To verify the associated VNI for the logical name, use the `ip -d link show` command:

```

cumulus@leaf1:~$ ip -d link show vni-10
43: vni-10: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
      master br-10 state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT
      link/ether 02:ec:ec:bd:7f:c6 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff

```



```
vxlan id 10 srcport 32768 61000 dstport 4789 ageing 1800  
bridge_slave
```

The `vxlan id 10` indicates the VXLAN ID/VNI is indeed 10 as the logical name suggests.

## Enabling and Managing Service Node and Registration Daemons

Every VTEP must run the registration daemon (`vxrd`). Typically, every leaf switch acts as a VTEP. A minimum of 1 switch (a switch not already acting as a VTEP) must run the service node daemon (`vxsnd`). The instructions for enabling these daemons follows.

### Enabling the Service Node Daemon

The service node daemon (`vxsnd`) is included in the Cumulus Linux repository as `vxflid-vxsnd`. The service node daemon can run on any switch running Cumulus Linux as long as that switch is not also a VXLAN VTEP. In this example, enable the service node only on the spine1 switch, then restart the service.

```
cumulus@spine1:~$ sudo systemctl enable vxsnd.service  
cumulus@spine1:~$ sudo systemctl restart vxsnd.service
```



Do not run `vxsnd` on a switch that is already acting as a VTEP.

### Enabling the Registration Daemon

The registration daemon (`vxrd`) is included in the Cumulus Linux package as `vxflid-vxrd`. The registration daemon must run on each VTEP participating in LNV, so you must enable it on every TOR (leaf) switch acting as a VTEP, then restart the `vxrd` daemon. For example, on leaf1:

```
cumulus@leaf1:~$ sudo systemctl enable vxrd.service  
cumulus@leaf1:~$ sudo systemctl restart vxrd.service
```

Then enable and restart the `vxrd` daemon on leaf2:

```
cumulus@leaf2:~$ sudo systemctl enable vxrd.service  
cumulus@leaf2:~$ sudo systemctl restart vxrd.service
```

### Checking the Daemon Status

To determine if the daemon is running, use the `systemctl status <daemon name>.service` command.

For the service node daemon:



```
cumulus@spine1:~$ sudo systemctl status vxsnd.service
vxsnd.service - Lightweight Network Virt Discovery Svc and Replicator
   Loaded: loaded (/lib/systemd/system/vxsnd.service; enabled)
   Active: active (running) since Wed 2016-05-11 11:42:55 UTC; 10min
ago
     Main PID: 774 (vxsnd)
        CGroup: /system.slice/vxsnd.service
                  774 /usr/bin/python /usr/bin/vxsnd

May 11 11:42:55 cumulus vxsnd[774]: INFO: Starting (pid 774) ...
```

For the registration daemon:

```
cumulus@leaf1:~$ sudo systemctl status vxrd.service
vxrd.service - Lightweight Network Virtualization Peer Discovery
Daemon
   Loaded: loaded (/lib/systemd/system/vxrd.service; enabled)
   Active: active (running) since Wed 2016-05-11 11:42:55 UTC; 10min
ago
     Main PID: 929 (vxrd)
        CGroup: /system.slice/vxrd.service
                  929 /usr/bin/python /usr/bin/vxrd

May 11 11:42:55 cumulus vxrd[929]: INFO: Starting (pid 929) ...
```

## Configuring the Registration Node

The registration node was configured earlier in `/etc/network/interfaces` in the [VXLAN mapping \(see page 420\)](#) section above; no additional configuration is typically needed. However, if you need to modify the registration node configuration, edit `/etc/vxrd.conf`.

Configuring the registration node in `/etc/vxrd.conf` ...

```
cumulus@leaf1:~$ sudo nano /etc/vxrd.conf
```

Then edit the `svcnod_ip` variable:

```
svcnod_ip = 10.2.1.3
```

Then perform the same on leaf2:

```
cumulus@leaf2:~$ sudo nano /etc/vxrd.conf
```

And again edit the `svcnod_ip` variable:

```
svcnod_ip = 10.2.1.3
```

Enable, then restart the registration node daemon for the change to take effect:

```
cumulus@leaf1:~$ sudo systemctl enable vxrd.service
cumulus@leaf1:~$ sudo systemctl restart vxrd.service
```

Restart the daemon on leaf2:

```
cumulus@leaf2:~$ sudo systemctl enable vxrd.service
cumulus@leaf2:~$ sudo systemctl restart vxrd.service
```

The complete list of options you can configure is listed below:

Registration node options ...

Name	Description	Default
loglevel	The log level, which can be DEBUG, INFO, WARNING, ERROR, CRITICAL.	INFO
logdest	The destination for log messages. It can be a file name, <code>stdout</code> or <code>syslog</code> .	syslog
logfilesize	Log file size in bytes. Used when <code>logdest</code> is a file name.	512000
logbackupcount	Maximum number of log files stored on the disk. Used when <code>logdest</code> is a file name.	14
pidfile	The PIF file location for the <code>vxrd</code> daemon.	/var/run/vxrd.pid
udsfile	The file name for the Unix domain socket used for management.	/var/run/vxrd.sock
vxld_port	The UDP port used for VXLAN control messages.	10001
svcnod_ip	The address to which registration daemons send control messages for registration and/or BUM packets for replication. This can also be configured under <code>/etc/network/interfaces</code> with the <code>vxrd-svcnode-ip</code> keyword.	
holdtime	Hold time (in seconds) for soft state, which is how long the service node waits before ageing out an IP address for a VNI. The <code>vxrd</code> includes this in the register messages it sends to a <code>vxsnd</code> .	90 seconds



Name	Description	Default
src_ip	Local IP address to bind to for receiving control traffic from the service node daemon.	
refresh_rate	Number of times to refresh within the hold time. The higher this number, the more lost UDP refresh messages can be tolerated.	3 seconds
config_check_rate	The number of seconds to poll the system for current VXLAN membership.	5 seconds
head_rep	Enables self replication. Instead of using the service node to replicate BUM packets, it will be done in hardware on the VTEP switch.	true



Use *1, yes, true* or *on* for True for each relevant option. Use *0, no, false* or *off* for False.

## Configuring the Service Node

To configure the service node daemon, edit the `/etc/vxsnd.conf` configuration file.



For the example configuration, default values are used, except for the `svcnod_ip` field.

```
cumulus@spine1:~$ sudo nano /etc/vxsnd.conf
```

The address field is set to the loopback address of the switch running the `vxsnd` daemon.

```
svcnod_ip = 10.2.1.3
```

Enable, then restart the service node daemon for the change to take effect:

```
cumulus@spine1:~$ sudo systemctl enable vxsnd.service
cumulus@spine1:~$ sudo systemctl restart vxsnd.service
```

The complete list of options you can configure is listed below:

Name	Description	Default
loglevel	The log level, which can be DEBUG, INFO, WARNING, ERROR, CRITICAL.	INFO
logdest	Destination for log messages. It can be a file name, <code>stdout</code> or <code>syslog</code> .	syslog



Name	Description	Default
logfilesize	The log file size in bytes. Used when <code>logdest</code> is a file name.	512000
logbackupcount	Maximum number of log files stored on disk. Used when <code>logdest</code> is a file name.	14
pidfile	The PID file location for the <code>vxrd</code> daemon.	/var/run/vxrd.pid
udsfile	The file name for the Unix domain socket used for management.	/var/run/vxrd.sock
vxld_port	The UDP port used for VXLAN control messages.	10001
svcnode_ip	This is the address to which registration daemons send control messages for registration and/or BUM packets for replication.	0.0.0.0
holdtime	Holddate (in seconds) for soft state. It is used when sending a register message to peers in response to learning a <vnid, addr> from a VXLAN data packet.	90
src_ip	Local IP address to bind to for receiving inter-vxsnd control traffic.	0.0.0.0
svcnode_peers	Space-separated list of IP addresses with which the <code>vxsnd</code> shares its state.	
enable_vxlan_listen	When set to true, the service node listens for VXLAN data traffic.	true
install_svcnode_ip	When set to true, the <code>snd_peer_address</code> gets installed on the loopback interface. It gets withdrawn when the <code>vxsnd</code> is not in service. If set to true, you must define the <code>snd_peer_address</code> configuration variable.	false
age_check	Number of seconds to wait before checking the database to age out stale entries.	90 seconds



Use `1, yes, true` or `on` for True for each relevant option. Use `0, no, false` or `off` for False.

## Verification and Troubleshooting

### Verifying the Registration Node Daemon

Use the `vxrdctl vxlans` command to see the configured VNIs, the local address being used to source the VXLAN tunnel and the service node being used.

```
cumulus@leaf1:~$ vxrdctl vxlans
VNI      Local Addr      Svc
Node
=====
10       10.2.1.1
10.2.1.3
30       10.2.1.1
10.2.1.3
2000     10.2.1.1
10.2.1.3
```

```
cumulus@leaf2:~$ vxrdctl vxlans
VNI      Local Addr      Svc
Node
=====
10       10.2.1.2
10.2.1.3
30       10.2.1.2
10.2.1.3
2000     10.2.1.2
10.2.1.3
```

Use the `vxrdctl peers` command to see configured VNIs and all VTEPs (leaf switches) within the network that have them configured.

```
cumulus@leaf1:~$ 
vxrdctl peers
VNI      Peer Addrs
===
10       10.2.1.1,
10.2.1.2
30       10.2.1.1,
10.2.1.2
2000     10.2.1.1,
10.2.1.2
```

```
cumulus@leaf2:~$ 
vxrdctl peers
VNI      Peer Addrs
===
10       10.2.1.1,
10.2.1.2
30       10.2.1.1,
10.2.1.2
2000     10.2.1.1,
10.2.1.2
```



When head end replication mode is disabled, the command won't work.

Use the `vxrdctl peers` command to see the other VTEPs (leaf switches) and what VNIs are associated with them. This does not show anything unless you enabled head end replication mode by setting the `head_rep` option to `True`. Otherwise, replication is done by the service node.

```
cumulus@leaf2:~$ vxrdctl peers
Head-end replication is turned off on this device.
This command will not provide any output
```



## Verifying the Service Node Daemon

Use the `vxsndctl fdb` command to verify which VNIs belong to which VTEP (leaf switches).

```
cumulus@spine1:~$ vxsndctl fdb
VNI      Address      Ageout
---      ======      =====
 10      10.2.1.1      82
 10      10.2.1.2      77
 30      10.2.1.1      82
 30      10.2.1.2      77
2000     10.2.1.1      82
2000     10.2.1.2      77
```

## Verifying Traffic Flow and Checking Counters

VXLAN transit traffic information is stored in a flat file located at `/cumulus/switchd/run/stats/vxlan/all`.

```
cumulus@leaf1:~$ cat /cumulus/switchd/run/stats/vxlan/all
VNI                           : 10
Network In Octets             : 1090
Network In Packets            : 8
Network Out Octets            : 1798
Network Out Packets           : 13
Total In Octets               : 2818
Total In Packets              : 27
Total Out Octets              : 3144
Total Out Packets             : 39
VN Interface                  : vni: 10, swp32s0.10
Total In Octets               : 1728
Total In Packets              : 19
Total Out Octets              : 552
Total Out Packets             : 18
VNI                           : 30
Network In Octets             : 828
Network In Packets            : 6
Network Out Octets            : 1224
Network Out Packets           : 9
Total In Octets               : 2374
Total In Packets              : 23
Total Out Octets              : 2300
Total Out Packets             : 32
VN Interface                  : vni: 30, swp32s0.30
Total In Octets               : 1546
```

```

Total In Packets : 17
Total Out Octets : 552
Total Out Packets : 17
VNI : 2000
Network In Octets : 676
Network In Packets : 5
Network Out Octets : 1072
Network Out Packets : 8
Total In Octets : 2030
Total In Packets : 20
Total Out Octets : 2042
Total Out Packets : 30
VN Interface : vni: 2000, swp32s0.20
Total In Octets : 1354
Total In Packets : 15
Total Out Octets : 446

```

## Pinging to Test Connectivity

To test the connectivity across the VXLAN tunnel with an ICMP echo request (ping), make sure to ping from the server rather than the switch itself.



As mentioned above, SVIs (switch VLAN interfaces) are not supported when using VXLAN. That is, there cannot be an IP address on the bridge that also contains a VXLAN.

Following is the IP address information used in this example configuration.

VNI	server1	server2
10	10.10.10.1	10.10.10.2
2000	10.10.20.1	10.10.20.2
30	10.10.30.1	10.10.30.2

To test connectivity between VNI 10 connected servers by pinging from server1:

```

cumulus@server1:~$ ping 10.10.10.2
PING 10.10.10.2 (10.10.10.2) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 10.10.10.2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=3.90 ms
64 bytes from 10.10.10.2: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.202 ms
64 bytes from 10.10.10.2: icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=0.195 ms
^C
--- 10.10.10.2 ping statistics ---
3 packets transmitted, 3 received, 0% packet loss, time 2002ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.195/1.432/3.900/1.745 ms
cumulus@server1:~$
```



The other VNIs were also tested and can be viewed in the expanded output below.

Test connectivity between VNI-2000 connected servers by pinging from server1:

```
cumulus@server1:~$ ping 10.10.20.2
PING 10.10.20.2 (10.10.20.2) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 10.10.20.2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=1.81 ms
64 bytes from 10.10.20.2: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.194 ms
64 bytes from 10.10.20.2: icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=0.206 ms
^C
--- 10.10.20.2 ping statistics ---
3 packets transmitted, 3 received, 0% packet loss, time 2000ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.194/0.739/1.819/0.763 ms
```

Test connectivity between VNI-30 connected servers by pinging from server1:

```
cumulus@server1:~$ ping 10.10.30.2
PING 10.10.30.2 (10.10.30.2) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 10.10.30.2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=1.85 ms
64 bytes from 10.10.30.2: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.239 ms
64 bytes from 10.10.30.2: icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=0.185 ms
64 bytes from 10.10.30.2: icmp_seq=4 ttl=64 time=0.212 ms
^C
--- 10.10.30.2 ping statistics ---
4 packets transmitted, 4 received, 0% packet loss, time 3000ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.185/0.622/1.853/0.711 ms
```

## Troubleshooting with MAC Addresses

Since there is no SVI, there is no way to ping from the server to the directly attached leaf (top of rack) switch without cabling the switch to itself. The easiest way to see if the server can reach the leaf switch is to check the MAC address table of the leaf switch.

First, get the MAC address of the server:

```
cumulus@server1:~$ ip addr show eth3.10 | grep ether
    link/ether 90:e2:ba:55:f0:85 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
```

Next, check the MAC address table of the leaf switch:

```
cumulus@leaf1:~$ brctl showmacs br-10
port name mac addr      vlan  is local?   ageing timer
vni-10  46:c6:57:fc:1f:54  0     yes          0.00
swp32s0.10 90:e2:ba:55:f0:85  0     no           75.87
vni-10  90:e2:ba:7e:a9:c1  0     no           75.87
swp32s0.10 ec:f4:bb:fc:67:a1  0     yes          0.00
```



90:e2:ba:55:f0:85 appears in the MAC address table, which indicates that connectivity is occurring between leaf1 and server1.

## *Checking the Service Node Configuration*

Use `ip -d link show` to verify the service node, VNI and administrative state of a particular logical VNI interface:

```
cumulus@leaf1:~$ ip -d link show vni-10
35: vni-10: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
    master br-10 state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT
        link/ether 46:c6:57:fc:1f:54 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
        vxlan id 10 remote 10.2.1.3 local 10.2.1.1 srcport 32768 61000
        dstport 4789 ageing 1800 svcnode 10.2.1.3
            bridge_slave
```

## **Advanced LNV Usage**

### *Scaling LNV by Load Balancing with Anycast*

The above configuration assumes a single service node. A single service node can quickly be overwhelmed by BUM traffic. To load balance BUM traffic across multiple service nodes, use [Anycast](#). Anycast enables BUM traffic to reach the topologically nearest service node rather than overwhelming a single service node.

### *Enabling the Service Node Daemon on Additional Spine Switches*

In this example, spine1 already has the service node daemon enabled. Enable it on the spine2 switch, then restart the `vxsnd` daemon:

```
cumulus@spine2:~$ sudo systemctl enable vxsnd.service
cumulus@spine2:~$ sudo systemctl restart vxsnd.service
```



## Configuring the Anycast Address on All Participating Service Nodes

### spine1:

Add the 10.10.10.10/32 address to the loopback address:

```
cumulus@spine1:~$ net add  
loopback lo ip address  
10.10.10.10/32  
cumulus@spine1:~$ net pending  
cumulus@spine1:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration in the /etc/network/interfaces file:

```
auto lo  
iface lo inet loopback  
    address 10.2.1.3/32  
    address 10.10.10.10/32
```

Verify the IP address is configured:

```
cumulus@spine1:~$ ip addr show  
lo  
1: lo: <LOOPBACK,UP,LOWER_UP>  
mtu 16436 qdisc noqueue state  
UNKNOWN  
    link/loopback 00:00:00:00:  
00:00 brd 00:00:00:00:00:00  
        inet 127.0.0.1/8 scope  
host lo  
    inet 10.2.1.3/32 scope  
global lo  
    inet 10.10.10.10/32 scope  
global lo  
    inet6 ::1/128 scope host  
        valid_lft forever  
preferred_lft forever
```

### spine2:

Add the 10.10.10.10/32 address to the loopback address:

```
cumulus@spine2:~$ net add  
loopback lo ip address  
10.10.10.10/32  
cumulus@spine2:~$ net pending  
cumulus@spine2:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration in the /etc/network/interfaces file:

```
auto lo  
iface lo inet loopback  
    address 10.2.1.4/32  
    address 10.10.10.10/32
```

Verify the IP address is configured:

```
cumulus@spine2:~$ ip addr show  
lo  
1: lo: <LOOPBACK,UP,LOWER_UP>  
mtu 16436 qdisc noqueue state  
UNKNOWN  
    link/loopback 00:00:00:00:  
00:00 brd 00:00:00:00:00:00  
        inet 127.0.0.1/8 scope  
host lo  
    inet 10.2.1.4/32 scope  
global lo  
    inet 10.10.10.10/32 scope  
global lo  
    inet6 ::1/128 scope host  
        valid_lft forever  
preferred_lft forever
```



## Configuring the Service Node vxsnd.conf File

### spine1:

Use a text editor to edit the network configuration:

```
cumulus@spine1:~$ sudo nano  
/etc/vxsnd.conf
```

Change the following values:

```
svcnod_ip = 10.10.10.10  
svcnod_peers = 10.2.1.4  
src_ip = 10.2.1.3
```

This sets the address on which the service node listens to VXLAN messages to the configured Anycast address and sets it to sync with spine2.

Enable, then restart the `vxsnd` daemon:

```
cumulus@spine1:~$ sudo  
systemctl enable vxsnd.service  
cumulus@spine1:~$ sudo  
systemctl restart vxsnd.service
```

### spine2:

Use a text editor to edit the network configuration:

```
cumulus@spine2:~$ sudo nano  
/etc/vxsnd.conf
```

Change the following values:

```
svcnod_ip = 10.10.10.10  
svcnod_peers = 10.2.1.3  
src_ip = 10.2.1.4
```

This sets the address on which the service node listens to VXLAN messages to the configured Anycast address and sets it to sync with spine1.

Enable, then restart the `vxsnd` daemon:

```
cumulus@spine1:~$ sudo  
systemctl enable vxsnd.service  
cumulus@spine1:~$ sudo  
systemctl restart vxsnd.service
```



## Reconfiguring the VTEPs (Leafs) to Use the Anycast Address

### leaf1:

Change the vxrd-svcnode-ip field to the anycast address:

```
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add  
loopback lo vxrd-svcnode-ip  
10.10.10.10  
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net pending  
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration in the /etc/network/interfaces file:

```
auto lo  
iface lo inet loopback  
    address 10.2.1.1  
    vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10
```

Verify the new service node is configured:

```
cumulus@leaf1:~$ ip -d link  
show vni-10  
35: vni-10: <BROADCAST,  
MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu  
1500 qdisc noqueue master br-  
10 state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT  
    link/ether 46:c6:57:fc:1f:  
54 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff  
        vxlan id 10 remote  
10.10.10.10 local 10.2.1.1  
srcport 32768 61000 dstport  
4789 ageing 1800 svcnode  
10.10.10.10  
        bridge_slave
```

```
cumulus@leaf1:~$ ip -d link  
show vni-2000  
39: vni-2000: <BROADCAST,  
MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu  
1500 qdisc noqueue master br-  
20 state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT
```

### leaf2:

Change the vxrd-svcnode-ip field to the anycast address:

```
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net add  
loopback lo vxrd-svcnode-ip  
10.10.10.10  
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net pending  
cumulus@leaf1:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration in the /etc/network/interfaces file:

```
auto lo  
iface lo inet loopback  
    address 10.2.1.2  
    vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10
```

Verify the new service node is configured:

```
cumulus@leaf2:~$ ip -d link  
show vni-10  
35: vni-10: <BROADCAST,  
MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu  
1500 qdisc noqueue master br-  
10 state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT  
    link/ether 4e:03:a7:47:a7:  
9d brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff  
        vxlan id 10 remote  
10.10.10.10 local 10.2.1.2  
srcport 32768 61000 dstport  
4789 ageing 1800 svcnode  
10.10.10.10  
        bridge_slave
```

```
cumulus@leaf2:~$ ip -d link  
show vni-2000  
39: vni-2000: <BROADCAST,  
MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu  
1500 qdisc noqueue master br-  
20 state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT
```

```

link/ether 4a:fd:88:c3:fa:
df brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    vxlan id 2000 remote
10.10.10.10 local 10.2.1.1
srcport 32768 61000 dstport
4789 ageing 1800 svcnode
10.10.10.10
    bridge_slave

cumulus@leaf1:~$ ip -d link
show vni-30
37: vni-30: <BROADCAST,
MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu
1500 qdisc noqueue master br-
30 state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT
    link/ether 3e:b3:dc:f3:bd:
2b brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    vxlan id 30 remote
10.10.10.10 local 10.2.1.1
srcport 32768 61000 dstport
4789 ageing 1800 svcnode
10.10.10.10
    bridge_slave

```

**⚠** The `svcnode 10.10.10.10` means the interface has the correct service node configured.

Use the `vxrdctl vxlans` command to check the service node:

```

cumulus@leaf1:~$ vxrdctl vxlans
VNI      Local Addr      Svc
Node
=====
=====
10       10.2.1.1
10.2.1.3
30       10.2.1.1
10.2.1.3
2000     10.2.1.1
10.2.1.3

```

```

link/ether 72:3a:bd:06:00:
b7 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    vxlan id 2000 remote
10.10.10.10 local 10.2.1.2
srcport 32768 61000 dstport
4789 ageing 1800 svcnode
10.10.10.10
    bridge_slave

cumulus@leaf2:~$ ip -d link
show vni-30
37: vni-30: <BROADCAST,
MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu
1500 qdisc noqueue master br-
30 state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT
    link/ether 22:65:3f:63:08:
bd brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    vxlan id 30 remote
10.10.10.10 local 10.2.1.2
srcport 32768 61000 dstport
4789 ageing 1800 svcnode
10.10.10.10
    bridge_slave

```

**⚠** The `svcnode 10.10.10.10` means the interface has the correct service node configured.

Use the `vxrdctl vxlans` command to check the service node:

```

cumulus@leaf2:~$ vxrdctl vxlans
VNI      Local Addr      Svc
Node
=====
=====
10       10.2.1.2
10.2.1.3
30       10.2.1.2
10.2.1.3
2000     10.2.1.2
10.2.1.3

```

## Testing Connectivity

Repeat the ping tests from the previous section. Here is the table again for reference:

VNI	server1	server2
10	10.10.10.1	10.10.10.2
2000	10.10.20.1	10.10.20.2
30	10.10.30.1	10.10.30.2

```

cumulus@server1:~$ ping 10.10.10.2
PING 10.10.10.2 (10.10.10.2) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 10.10.10.2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=5.32 ms
64 bytes from 10.10.10.2: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.206 ms
^C
--- 10.10.10.2 ping statistics ---
2 packets transmitted, 2 received, 0% packet loss, time 1001ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.206/2.767/5.329/2.562 ms

PING 10.10.20.2 (10.10.20.2) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 10.10.20.2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=1.64 ms
64 bytes from 10.10.20.2: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.187 ms
^C
--- 10.10.20.2 ping statistics ---
2 packets transmitted, 2 received, 0% packet loss, time 1001ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.187/0.914/1.642/0.728 ms

cumulus@server1:~$ ping 10.10.30.2
PING 10.10.30.2 (10.10.30.2) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 10.10.30.2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=1.63 ms
64 bytes from 10.10.30.2: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.191 ms
^C
--- 10.10.30.2 ping statistics ---
2 packets transmitted, 2 received, 0% packet loss, time 1001ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.191/0.913/1.635/0.722 ms

```

## Restarting Network Removes vxsnd Anycast IP Address from Loopback Interface

If you have not configured a loopback anycast IP address in `/etc/network/interfaces`, but you have enabled the `vxsnd` (service node daemon) log to automatically add anycast IP addresses, when you restart networking (with `systemctl restart networking`), the anycast IP address gets removed from the loopback interface.



To prevent this issue from occurring, you should specify an anycast IP address for the loopback interface in both `/etc/network/interfaces` and `vxsnd.conf`. This way, in case `vxsnd` fails, you can withdraw the IP address.

## Related Information

- [tools.ietf.org/html/rfc7348](http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc7348)
- [en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anycast](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anycast)
- Network virtualization chapter, Cumulus Linux user guide (see page 399)

## LNV VXLAN Active-Active Mode

*LNV active-active mode* allows a pair of [MLAG \(see page 351\)](#) switches to act as a single VTEP, providing active-active VXLAN termination for bare metal as well as virtualized workloads.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Terminology and Definitions (see page 439)
- Configuring LNV Active-Active Mode (see page 439)
  - active-active VTEP Anycast IP Behavior (see page 440)
  - Failure Scenario Behaviors (see page 440)
  - Checking VXLAN Interface Configuration Consistency (see page 441)
  - Configuring the Anycast IP Address (see page 441)
- Example VXLAN Active-Active Configuration (see page 443)
  - FRRouting Configuration (see page 443)
  - Layer 3 IP Addressing (see page 443)
  - FRRouting OSPF Configuration (see page 449)
  - Host Configuration (see page 452)
  - Enable the Registration Daemon (see page 453)
  - Configuring a VTEP (see page 454)
  - Enable the Service Node Daemon (see page 454)
  - Configuring the Service Node (see page 454)
- Considerations for Virtual Topologies Using Cumulus VX (see page 456)
  - Node ID (see page 456)
  - Bonds with Vagrant (see page 457)
- Troubleshooting with LNV Active-Active (see page 457)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 459)
- Related Information (see page 459)

## *Terminology and Definitions*

Term	Definition
vxrd	VXLAN registration daemon. Runs on the switch that is mapping VLANs to VXLANs. The vxrd daemon needs to be configured to register to a service node. This turns the switch into a VTEP.
VTEP	Virtual tunnel endpoint. This is an encapsulation and decapsulation point for VXLANs.
active-active VTEP	A pair of switches acting as a single VTEP.
ToR	Top of rack switch. Also referred to as a leaf or access switch.
Spine	The aggregation switch for multiple leafs. Specifically used when a data center is using a <a href="#">Clos network architecture</a> . Read more about spine-leaf architecture in this <a href="#">white paper</a> .
vxsnd	VXLAN service node daemon, that can be run to register multiple VTEPs.
exit leaf	A switch dedicated to peering the Clos network to an outside network. Also referred to as border leafs, service leafs or edge leafs.
anycast	When an IP address is advertised from multiple locations. Allows multiple devices to share the same IP and effectively load balance traffic across them. With LNV, anycast is used in 2 places: <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. To share a VTEP IP address between a pair of MLAG switches.</li> <li>2. To load balance traffic for service nodes (e.g. service nodes share an IP address).</li> </ol>
ASIC	Application-specific integrated circuit. Also referred to as hardware, or hardware accelerated. Encapsulation and decapsulation are required for the best performance VXLAN-supported ASIC.
RIOT	Broadcom feature for Routing in and out of tunnels. Allows a VXLAN bridge to have a switch VLAN interface associated with it, and traffic to exit a VXLAN into the layer 3 fabric. Also called VXLAN Routing.
VXLAN Routing	Industry standard term for ability to route in and out of a VXLAN. Equivalent to Broadcom RIOT feature.

## *Configuring LNV Active-Active Mode*

LNV requires the following underlying technologies to work correctly.

Technology	More Information
MLAG	Refer to the <a href="#">MLAG chapter (see page)</a> for more detailed configuration information. Configurations for the demonstration are provided below.
OSPF or BGP	Refer to the <a href="#">OSPF chapter (see page 620)</a> or the <a href="#">BGP Chapter</a> for more detailed configuration information. Configurations for the demonstration are provided below.
LNV	Refer to the <a href="#">LNV chapter (see page 438)</a> for more detailed configuration information. Configurations for the demonstration are provided below.
STP	BPDU filter and BPDU guard ( <a href="#">see page</a> ) should be enabled in the VXLAN interfaces if STP ( <a href="#">see page 438</a> ) is enabled in the bridge that is connected to the VXLAN. Configurations for the demonstration are provided below.

## active-active VTEP Anycast IP Behavior

Each individual switch within an MLAG pair should be provisioned with a virtual IP address in the form of an anycast IP address for VXLAN data-path termination. The VXLAN termination address is an anycast IP address that you configure as a `c1agd` parameter (`c1agd-vxlan-anycast-ip`) under the loopback interface. `c1agd` dynamically adds and removes this address as the loopback interface address as follows:

1	When the switches boot up, <code>ifupdown2</code> places all VXLAN interfaces in a <a href="#">PROTO_DOWN state (see page)</a> . The configured anycast addresses are not configured yet.
2	MLAG peering takes place, and a successful VXLAN interface consistency check between the switches occurs.
3	<code>c1agd</code> (the daemon responsible for MLAG) adds the anycast address to the loopback interface. It then changes the local IP address of the VXLAN interface from a unique address to the anycast virtual IP address and puts the interface in an UP state.

## Failure Scenario Behaviors

Scenario	Behavior
The peer link goes down.	The primary MLAG switch continues to keep all VXLAN interfaces up with the anycast IP address while the secondary switch brings down all VXLAN interfaces and places them in a <a href="#">PROTO_DOWN state</a> . The secondary MLAG switch removes the anycast IP address from the loopback interface and changes the local IP address of the VXLAN interface to the configured unique IP address.
One of the switches goes down.	The other operational switch continues to use the anycast IP address.



Scenario	Behavior
c1agd is stopped.	All VXLAN interfaces are put in a PROTO_DOWN state. The anycast IP address is removed from the loopback interface and the local IP addresses of the VXLAN interfaces are changed from the anycast IP address to unique non-virtual IP addresses.
MLAG peering could not be established between the switches.	c1agd brings up all the VXLAN interfaces after the reload timer expires with the configured anycast IP address. This allows the VXLAN interface to be up and running on both switches even though peering is not established.
When the peer link goes down but the peer switch is up (i.e. the backup link is active).	All VXLAN interfaces are put into a PROTO_DOWN state on the secondary switch.
A configuration mismatch between the MLAG switches	The VXLAN interface is placed into a PROTO_DOWN state on the secondary switch.

## Checking VXLAN Interface Configuration Consistency

The LNV active-active configuration for a given VXLAN interface has to be consistent between the MLAG switches for correct traffic behavior. MLAG ensures that the configuration consistency is met before bringing up the VXLAN interfaces.

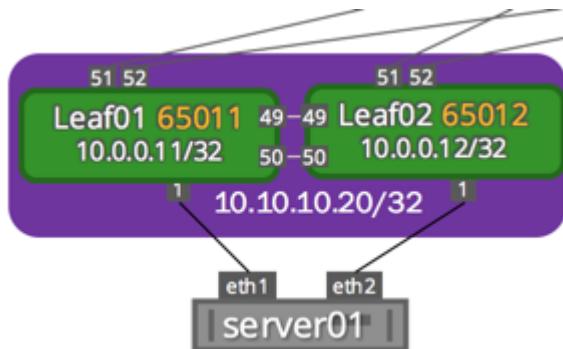
The consistency checks include:

- The anycast virtual IP address for VXLAN termination must be the same on each pair of switches.
- A VXLAN interface with the same VXLAN ID must be configured and administratively up on both switches.

You can use the `c1agctl` command to check if any VXLAN switches are in a PROTO\_DOWN state.

## Configuring the Anycast IP Address

With MLAG peering, both switches use an anycast IP address for VXLAN encapsulation and decapsulation. This allows remote VTEPs to learn the host MAC addresses attached to the MLAG switches against one logical VTEP, even though the switches independently encapsulate and decapsulate layer 2 traffic originating from the host. The anycast address under the loopback interface can be configured as shown below.



**leaf01:** /etc/network/interfaces snippet

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
  address 10.0.0.11/32
  vxrd-src-ip 10.0.0.11
  vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10
  clagd-vxlan-anycast-ip 10.10.10.20
```

**leaf02:** /etc/network/interfaces snippet

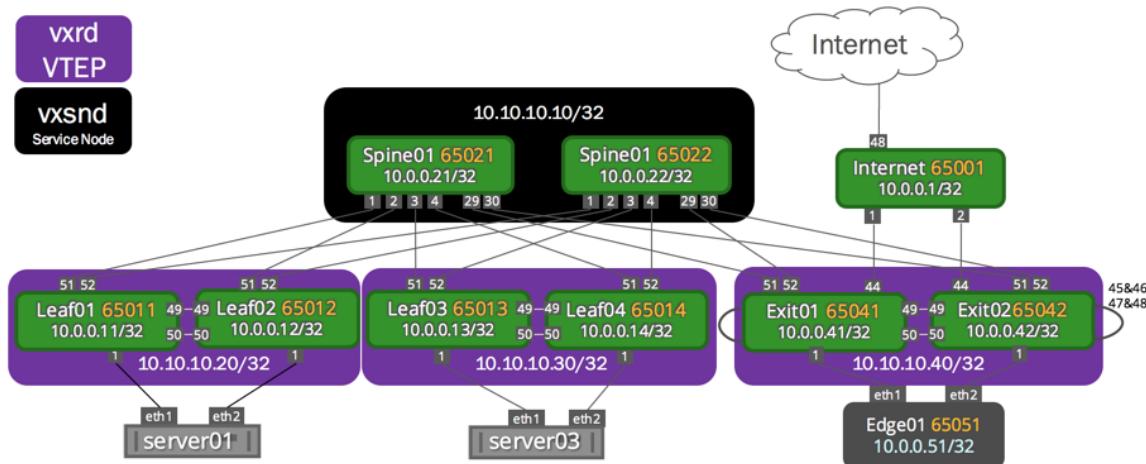
```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
  address 10.0.0.12/32
  vxrd-src-ip 10.0.0.12
  vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10
  clagd-vxlan-anycast-ip 10.10.10.20
```

### Explanation of Variables

Variable	Explanation
vxrd-src-ip	The unique IP address for the <code>vxrd</code> to bind to.
vxrd-svcnode-ip	The service node anycast IP address in the topology. In this demonstration, this is an anycast IP address being shared by both spine switches.

Variable	Description
clagd-vxlan-anycast-ip	The anycast address for the MLAG pair to share and bind to when MLAG is up and running.

### Example VXLAN Active-Active Configuration



Note the configuration of the local IP address in the VXLAN interfaces below. They are configured with individual IP addresses, which `clagd` changes to anycast upon MLAG peering.

### FRRouting Configuration

The layer 3 fabric can be configured using [BGP](#) (see page 438) or [OSPF](#) (see page 438). The following example uses BGP Unnumbered. The MLAG switch configuration for the topology above is shown below.

### Layer 3 IP Addressing

The IP address configuration for this example:

spine01: /etc/network/interfaces	spine02: /etc/network/interfaces
<pre>auto lo iface lo inet loopback     address 10.0.0.21/32     address 10.10.10.10/32  auto eth0</pre>	<pre>auto lo iface lo inet loopback     address 10.0.0.22/32     address 10.10.10.10/32  auto eth0</pre>

```

iface eth0 inet dhcp

# downlinks
auto swp1
iface swp1

auto swp2
iface swp2

auto swp3
iface swp3

auto swp4
iface swp4

auto swp29
iface swp29

auto swp30
iface swp30

```

```

iface eth0 inet dhcp

# downlinks
auto swp1
iface swp1

auto swp2
iface swp2

auto swp3
iface swp3

auto swp4
iface swp4

auto swp29
iface swp29

auto swp30
iface swp30

```

**leaf01:** /etc/network/interfaces

```

auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.0.0.11/32
    vxrd-src-ip 10.0.0.11
    vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10
    clagd-vxlan-anycast-ip
    10.10.10.20

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

# peerlinks
auto swp49
iface swp49

auto swp50
iface swp50

auto peerlink
iface peerlink
    bond-slaves swp49 swp50
    bond-mode 802.3ad
    bond-miimon 100
    bond-use-carrier 1
    bond-lacp-rate 1

```

**leaf02:** /etc/network/interfaces

```

auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.0.0.12/32
    vxrd-src-ip 10.0.0.12
    vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10
    clagd-vxlan-anycast-ip
    10.10.10.20

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

# peerlinks
auto swp49
iface swp49

auto swp50
iface swp50

auto peerlink
iface peerlink
    bond-slaves swp49 swp50
    bond-mode 802.3ad
    bond-miimon 100
    bond-use-carrier 1
    bond-lacp-rate 1

```



```
bond-min-links 1
bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4

auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094
    address 169.254.1.1/30
    clagd-peer-ip 169.254.1.2
    clagd-backup-ip 10.0.0.12
    clagd-sys-mac 44:38:39:FF:40:
94

# Downlinks
auto swp1
iface swp1

auto bond0
iface bond0
    bond-slaves swp1
    clag-id 1
    bond-miimon 100
    bond-min-links 1
    bond-mode 802.3ad
    bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
    bond-lacp-rate 1

# bridges / vlan that contain
# peerlink and downlinks for L2
# connectivity

auto native
iface native
    bridge-ports peerlink bond0
vxlan1
    bridge-stp on
    mstptctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan1=yes
    mstptctl-bpduguard vxlan1=yes

auto vlan10
iface vlan10
    bridge-ports peerlink.10
bond0.10 vxlan10
    bridge-stp on
    mstptctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan10=yes
    mstptctl-bpduguard
vxlan10=yes
```

```
bond-min-links 1
bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4

auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094
    address 169.254.1.2/30
    clagd-peer-ip 169.254.1.1
    clagd-backup-ip 10.0.0.11
    clagd-sys-mac 44:38:39:FF:40:
94

# Downlinks
auto swp1
iface swp1

auto bond0
iface bond0
    bond-slaves swp1
    clag-id 1
    bond-miimon 100
    bond-min-links 1
    bond-mode 802.3ad
    bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
    bond-lacp-rate 1

# bridges / vlan that contain
# peerlink and downlinks for L2
# connectivity

auto native
iface native
    bridge-ports peerlink bond0
vxlan1
    bridge-stp on
    mstptctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan1=yes
    mstptctl-bpduguard vxlan1=yes

auto vlan10
iface vlan10
    bridge-ports peerlink.10
bond0.10 vxlan10
    bridge-stp on
    mstptctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan10=yes
    mstptctl-bpduguard
vxlan10=yes
```

```

auto vlan20
iface vlan20
    bridge-ports peerlink.20
bond0.20 vxlan20
    bridge-stp on
    mstpcctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan20=yes
    mstpcctl-bpduguard vxlan20=yes

#vxlan config
auto vxlan1
iface vxlan1
    vxlan-id 1
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.11

auto vxlan10
iface vxlan10
    vxlan-id 10
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.11

auto vxlan20
iface vxlan20
    vxlan-id 20
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.11

# uplinks
auto swp51
iface swp51

auto swp52
iface swp52

```

```

auto vlan20
iface vlan20
    bridge-ports peerlink.20
bond0.20 vxlan20
    bridge-stp on
    mstpcctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan20=yes
    mstpcctl-bpduguard vxlan20=yes

#vxlan config
auto vxlan1
iface vxlan1
    vxlan-id 1
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.12

auto vxlan10
iface vxlan10
    vxlan-id 10
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.12

auto vxlan20
iface vxlan20
    vxlan-id 20
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.12

# uplinks
auto swp51
iface swp51

auto swp52
iface swp52

```

**leaf3:** /etc/network/interfaces

```

auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.0.0.13/32
    vxrd-src-ip 10.0.0.13
    vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10
    clagd-vxlan-anycast-ip
10.10.10.30

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

```

**leaf4:** /etc/network/interfaces

```

auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.0.0.14/32
    vxrd-src-ip 10.0.0.14
    vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10
    clagd-vxlan-anycast-ip
10.10.10.30

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

```



```
# peerlinks
auto swp49
iface swp49

auto swp50
iface swp50p

auto peerlink
iface peerlink
    bond-slaves swp49 swp50
    bond-mode 802.3ad
    bond-miimon 100
    bond-use-carrier 1
    bond-lacp-rate 1
    bond-min-links 1
    bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4

auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094
    address 169.254.1.1/30
    clagd-peer-ip 169.254.1.2
    clagd-backup-ip 10.0.0.14
    clagd-sys-mac 44:38:39:FF:40:
95

# Downlinks
auto swp1
iface swp1

auto bond0
iface bond0
    bond-slaves swp1
    clag-id 1
    bond-miimon 100
    bond-min-links 1
    bond-mode 802.3ad
    bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
    bond-lacp-rate 1

# bridges / vlan that contain
# peerlink and downlinks for L2
# connectivity

auto native
iface native
    bridge-ports peerlink bond0
vxlan1
    bridge-stp on
```

```
# peerlinks
auto swp49
iface swp49

auto swp50
iface swp50

auto peerlink
iface peerlink
    bond-slaves swp49 swp50
    bond-mode 802.3ad
    bond-miimon 100
    bond-use-carrier 1
    bond-lacp-rate 1
    bond-min-links 1
    bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4

auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094
    address 169.254.1.2/30
    clagd-peer-ip 169.254.1.1
    clagd-backup-ip 10.0.0.13
    clagd-sys-mac 44:38:39:FF:40:
95

# Downlinks
auto swp1
iface swp1

auto bond0
iface bond0
    bond-slaves swp1
    clag-id 1
    bond-miimon 100
    bond-min-links 1
    bond-mode 802.3ad
    bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
    bond-lacp-rate 1

# bridges / vlan that contain
# peerlink and downlinks for L2
# connectivity

auto native
iface native
    bridge-ports peerlink bond0
vxlan1
    bridge-stp on
```

```

mstpctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan1=yes
  mstpctl-bpduguard
vxlan1=yes

auto vlan10
iface vlan10
  bridge-ports peerlink.10
bond0.10 vxlan10
  bridge-stp on
  mstpctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan10=yes
  mstpctl-bpduguard
vxlan10=yes

auto vlan20
iface vlan20
  bridge-ports peerlink.20
bond0.20 vxlan20
  bridge-stp on
  mstpctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan20=yes
  mstpctl-bpduguard vxlan20=yes

#vxlan config
auto vxlan1
iface vxlan1
  vxlan-id 1
  vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.13

auto vxlan10
iface vxlan10
  vxlan-id 10
  vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.13

auto vxlan20
iface vxlan20
  vxlan-id 20
  vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.13

# uplinks
auto swp51
iface swp51

auto swp52
iface swp52
  
```

```

mstpctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan1=yes
  mstpctl-bpduguard
vxlan1=yes

auto vlan10
iface vlan10
  bridge-ports peerlink.10
bond0.10 vxlan10
  bridge-stp on
  mstpctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan10=yes
  mstpctl-bpduguard
vxlan10=yes

auto vlan20
iface vlan20
  bridge-ports peerlink.20
bond0.20 vxlan20
  bridge-stp on
  mstpctl-portbpdufilter
vxlan20=yes
  mstpctl-bpduguard vxlan20=yes

#vxlan config
auto vxlan1
iface vxlan1
  vxlan-id 1
  vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.14

auto vxlan10
iface vxlan10
  vxlan-id 10
  vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.14

auto vxlan20
iface vxlan20
  vxlan-id 20
  vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.14

# uplinks
auto swp51
iface swp51

auto swp52
iface swp52
  
```



## FRRouting OSPF Configuration

The service nodes and registration nodes must all be routable between each other. The L3 fabric on Cumulus Linux can either be [BGP \(see page 438\)](#) or [OSPF \(see page 438\)](#). In this example, OSPF is used to demonstrate full reachability.

The FRRouting configuration using OSPF:

**spine01:** /etc/frr/frr.conf

```
!
interface swp1
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp2
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp3
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp4
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp29
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp30
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
router bgp 65020
bgp router-id 10.0.0.21
network 10.0.0.21/32
network 10.10.10.10/32
bgp bestpath as-path
multipath-relax
bgp bestpath compare-routerid
bgp default show-hostname
neighbor FABRIC peer-group
neighbor FABRIC remote-as
external
neighbor FABRIC description
Internal Fabric Network
neighbor FABRIC
advertisement-interval 0
neighbor FABRIC timers 1 3
```

**spine02:** /etc/frr/frr.conf

```
!
interface swp1
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp2
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp3
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp4
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp29
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp30
no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
router bgp 65020
bgp router-id 10.0.0.22
network 10.0.0.22/32
network 10.10.10.10/32
bgp bestpath as-path
multipath-relax
bgp bestpath compare-routerid
bgp default show-hostname
neighbor FABRIC peer-group
neighbor FABRIC remote-as
external
neighbor FABRIC description
Internal Fabric Network
neighbor FABRIC
advertisement-interval 0
neighbor FABRIC timers 1 3
```

```

neighbor FABRIC timers
connect 3
  neighbor FABRIC capability
  extended-nexthop
  neighbor FABRIC prefix-list
  dc-spine in
  neighbor FABRIC prefix-list
  dc-spine out
  neighbor swp1 interface
  neighbor swp1 peer-group
FABRIC
  neighbor swp2 interface
  neighbor swp2 peer-group
FABRIC
  neighbor swp3 interface
  neighbor swp3 peer-group
FABRIC
  neighbor swp4 interface
  neighbor swp4 peer-group
FABRIC
  neighbor swp29 interface
  neighbor swp29 peer-group
FABRIC
  neighbor swp30 interface
  neighbor swp30 peer-group
FABRIC
!
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 10
permit 0.0.0.0/0
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 15
permit 10.0.0.0/24 le 32
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 20
permit 10.10.10.0/24 le 32
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 30
permit 172.16.1.0/24
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 40
permit 172.16.2.0/24
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 50
permit 172.16.3.0/24
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 60
permit 172.16.4.0/24
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq
500 deny any
!
```

```

neighbor FABRIC timers
connect 3
  neighbor FABRIC capability
  extended-nexthop
  neighbor FABRIC prefix-list
  dc-spine in
  neighbor FABRIC prefix-list
  dc-spine out
  neighbor swp1 interface
  neighbor swp1 peer-group
FABRIC
  neighbor swp2 interface
  neighbor swp2 peer-group
FABRIC
  neighbor swp3 interface
  neighbor swp3 peer-group
FABRIC
  neighbor swp4 interface
  neighbor swp4 peer-group
FABRIC
  neighbor swp29 interface
  neighbor swp29 peer-group
FABRIC
  neighbor swp30 interface
  neighbor swp30 peer-group
FABRIC
!
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 10
permit 0.0.0.0/0
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 15
permit 10.0.0.0/24 le 32
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 20
permit 10.10.10.0/24 le 32
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 30
permit 172.16.1.0/24
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 40
permit 172.16.2.0/24
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 50
permit 172.16.3.0/24
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 60
permit 172.16.4.0/24
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq
500 deny any
!
```

**leaf01:** /etc/frr/frr.conf

!

**leaf02:** /etc/frr/frr.conf

!



```
interface swp51
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp52
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
router bgp 65011
  bgp router-id 10.0.0.11
  network 10.0.0.11/32
  network 172.16.1.0/24
  network 10.10.10.20/32
  bgp bestpath as-path
  multipath-relax
    bgp bestpath compare-routerid
    bgp default show-hostname
    neighbor FABRIC peer-group
    neighbor FABRIC remote-as
  external
    neighbor FABRIC description
Internal Fabric Network
  neighbor FABRIC
  advertisement-interval 0
    neighbor FABRIC timers 1 3
    neighbor FABRIC timers
  connect 3
    neighbor FABRIC capability
  extended-nexthop
    neighbor FABRIC filter-list
dc-leaf-out out
  neighbor swp51 interface
  neighbor swp51 peer-group
FABRIC
  neighbor swp52 interface
  neighbor swp52 peer-group
FABRIC
!
ip as-path access-list dc-leaf-
out permit ^$
```

```
interface swp51
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
interface swp52
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
router bgp 65012
  bgp router-id 10.0.0.12
  network 10.0.0.12/32
  network 172.16.1.0/24
  network 10.10.10.20/32
  bgp bestpath as-path
  multipath-relax
    bgp bestpath compare-routerid
    bgp default show-hostname
    neighbor FABRIC peer-group
    neighbor FABRIC remote-as
  external
    neighbor FABRIC description
Internal Fabric Network
  neighbor FABRIC
  advertisement-interval 0
    neighbor FABRIC timers 1 3
    neighbor FABRIC timers
  connect 3
    neighbor FABRIC capability
  extended-nexthop
    neighbor FABRIC filter-list
dc-leaf-out out
  neighbor swp51 interface
  neighbor swp51 peer-group
FABRIC
  neighbor swp52 interface
  neighbor swp52 peer-group
FABRIC
!
ip as-path access-list dc-leaf-
out permit ^$
```

**leaf03:** /etc/frr/frr.conf

```
!
interface swp51
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
```

**leaf04:** /etc/frr/frr.conf

```
!
interface swp51
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
```

```
!
interface swp52
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
router bgp 65013
  bgp router-id 10.0.0.13
  network 10.0.0.13/32
  network 172.16.3.0/24
  network 10.10.10.30/32
  bgp bestpath as-path
multipath-relax
  bgp bestpath compare-routerid
  bgp default show-hostname
  neighbor FABRIC peer-group
  neighbor FABRIC remote-as
external
  neighbor FABRIC description
Internal Fabric Network
  neighbor FABRIC
advertisement-interval 0
  neighbor FABRIC timers 1 3
  neighbor FABRIC timers
connect 3
  neighbor FABRIC capability
extended-nexthop
  neighbor FABRIC filter-list
dc-leaf-out out
  neighbor swp51 interface
  neighbor swp51 peer-group
FABRIC
  neighbor swp52 interface
  neighbor swp52 peer-group
FABRIC
!
ip as-path access-list dc-leaf-
out permit ^$
```

```
!
interface swp52
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 3
!
router bgp 65014
  bgp router-id 10.0.0.14
  network 10.0.0.14/32
  network 172.16.3.0/24
  network 10.10.10.30/32
  bgp bestpath as-path
multipath-relax
  bgp bestpath compare-routerid
  bgp default show-hostname
  neighbor FABRIC peer-group
  neighbor FABRIC remote-as
external
  neighbor FABRIC description
Internal Fabric Network
  neighbor FABRIC
advertisement-interval 0
  neighbor FABRIC timers 1 3
  neighbor FABRIC timers
connect 3
  neighbor FABRIC capability
extended-nexthop
  neighbor FABRIC filter-list
dc-leaf-out out
  neighbor swp51 interface
  neighbor swp51 peer-group
FABRIC
  neighbor swp52 interface
  neighbor swp52 peer-group
FABRIC
!
ip as-path access-list dc-leaf-
out permit ^$
```

## Host Configuration

In this example, the servers are running Ubuntu 14.04. A layer2 bond must be mapped from server01 and server03 to the respective switch. In Ubuntu this is done with subinterfaces.

server01

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
```

server03

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
```



```
auto lo
iface lo inet static
    address 10.0.0.31/32

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto eth1
iface eth1 inet manual
    bond-master bond0

auto eth2
iface eth2 inet manual
    bond-master bond0

auto bond0
iface bond0 inet static
    bond-slaves none
    bond-miimon 100
    bond-min-links 1
    bond-mode 802.3ad
    bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
    bond-lacp-rate 1
    address 172.16.1.101/24

auto bond0.10
iface bond0.10 inet static
    address 172.16.10.101/24

auto bond0.20
iface bond0.20 inet static
    address 172.16.20.101/24
```

```
auto lo
iface lo inet static
    address 10.0.0.33/32

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto eth1
iface eth1 inet manual
    bond-master bond0

auto eth2
iface eth2 inet manual
    bond-master bond0

auto bond0
iface bond0 inet static
    bond-slaves none
    bond-miimon 100
    bond-min-links 1
    bond-mode 802.3ad
    bond-xmit-hash-policy
layer3+4
    bond-lacp-rate 1
    address 172.16.1.103/24

auto bond0.10
iface bond0.10 inet static
    address 172.16.10.103/24

auto bond0.20
iface bond0.20 inet static
    address 172.16.20.103/24
```

## Enable the Registration Daemon

The registration daemon (`vxrd`) must be enabled on each ToR switch acting as a VTEP, that is participating in LNV. The daemon is installed by default.

1. Open the `/etc/default/vxrd` configuration file in a text editor.
2. Enable the daemon, then save the file.

```
START=yes
```

3. Restart the `vxrd` daemon.



```
cumulus@leaf:~$ sudo systemctl restart vxrd.service
```

## Configuring a VTEP

The registration node was configured earlier in `/etc/network/interfaces`; no additional configuration is typically needed. Alternatively, the configuration can be done in `/etc/vxrd.conf`, which has additional configuration knobs available.

## Enable the Service Node Daemon

1. Open the `/etc/default/vxsnd` configuration file in a text editor.
2. Enable the daemon, then save the file:

```
START=yes
```

3. Restart the daemon.

```
cumulus@spine:~$ sudo systemctl restart vxsnd.service
```

## Configuring the Service Node

To configure the service node daemon, edit the `/etc/vxsnd.conf` configuration file:

**spine01:** /etc/vxsnd.conf

```
svcnodes_ip = 10.10.10.10  
src_ip = 10.0.0.21  
svcnodes_peers = 10.0.0.21  
10.0.0.22
```

Full configuration of vxsnd.conf

```
[common]  
# Log level is one of DEBUG,  
INFO, WARNING, ERROR, CRITICAL  
#loglevel = INFO  
# Destination for log  
message. Can be a file name,  
'stdout', or 'syslog'  
#logdest = syslog
```

**spine02:** /etc/vxsnd.conf

```
svcnodes_ip = 10.10.10.10  
src_ip = 10.0.0.22  
svcnodes_peers = 10.0.0.21  
10.0.0.22
```

Full configuration of vxsnd.conf

```
[common]  
# Log level is one of DEBUG,  
INFO, WARNING, ERROR, CRITICAL  
#loglevel = INFO  
# Destination for log  
message. Can be a file name,  
'stdout', or 'syslog'  
#logdest = syslog
```



```
# log file size in bytes. Used
when logdest is a file
#logfilesize = 512000
# maximum number of log files
stored on disk. Used when
logdest is a file
#logbackupcount = 14
# The file to write the pid.
If using monit, this must
match the one
# in the vxsnd.rc
#pidfile = /var/run/vxsnd.pid
# The file name for the unix
domain socket used for mgmt.
#udsfile = /var/run/vxsnd.sock
# UDP port for vxflld control
messages
#vxflld_port = 10001
# This is the address to which
registration daemons send
control messages for
# registration and/or BUM
packets for replication
svcnode_ip = 10.10.10.10
# Holdtime (in seconds) for
soft state. It is used when
sending a
# register msg to peers in
response to learning a <vni,
addr> from a
# VXLAN data pkt
#holdtime = 90
# Local IP address to bind to
for receiving inter-vxsnd
control traffic
src_ip = 10.0.0.21
[vxsnd]
# Space separated list of IP
addresses of vxsnd to share
state with
svcnode_peers = 10.0.0.21
10.0.0.22
# When set to true, the
service node will listen for
vxlan data traffic
# Note: Use 1, yes, true, or
on, for True and 0, no, false,
or off,
# for False
#enable_vxlan_listen = true
```

```
# log file size in bytes. Used
when logdest is a file
#logfilesize = 512000
# maximum number of log files
stored on disk. Used when
logdest is a file
#logbackupcount = 14
# The file to write the pid.
If using monit, this must
match the one
# in the vxsnd.rc
#pidfile = /var/run/vxsnd.pid
# The file name for the unix
domain socket used for mgmt.
#udsfile = /var/run/vxsnd.sock
# UDP port for vxflld control
messages
#vxflld_port = 10001
# This is the address to which
registration daemons send
control messages for
# registration and/or BUM
packets for replication
svcnode_ip = 10.10.10.10
# Holdtime (in seconds) for
soft state. It is used when
sending a
# register msg to peers in
response to learning a <vni,
addr> from a
# VXLAN data pkt
#holdtime = 90
# Local IP address to bind to
for receiving inter-vxsnd
control traffic
src_ip = 10.0.0.22
[vxsnd]
# Space separated list of IP
addresses of vxsnd to share
state with
svcnode_peers = 10.0.0.21
10.0.0.22
# When set to true, the
service node will listen for
vxlan data traffic
# Note: Use 1, yes, true, or
on, for True and 0, no, false,
or off,
# for False
#enable_vxlan_listen = true
```

```
# When set to true, the
svcnode_ip will be installed
on the loopback
# interface, and it will be
withdrawn when the vxsnd is no
longer in
# service. If set to true,
the svcnode_ip configuration
# variable must be defined.
# Note: Use 1, yes, true, or
on, for True and 0, no, false,
or off,
# for False
#install_svcnode_ip = false
# Seconds to wait before
checking the database to age
out stale entries
#age_check = 90
```

```
# When set to true, the
svcnode_ip will be installed
on the loopback
# interface, and it will be
withdrawn when the vxsnd is no
longer in
# service. If set to true,
the svcnode_ip configuration
# variable must be defined.
# Note: Use 1, yes, true, or
on, for True and 0, no, false,
or off,
# for False
#install_svcnode_ip = false
# Seconds to wait before
checking the database to age
out stale entries
#age_check = 90
```

## *Considerations for Virtual Topologies Using Cumulus VX*

### *Node ID*

vxrd requires a unique `node_id` for each individual switch. This `node_id` is based off of the first interface's MAC address; when using certain virtual topologies like Vagrant, both leaf switches within an MLAG pair can generate the same exact unique `node_id`. One of the `node_ids` must then be configured manually (or make sure the first interface always has a unique MAC address), as they are not unique.

To verify the `node_id` that gets configured by your switch, use the `vxrdctl get config` command:

```
cumulus@leaf01$ vxrdctl get config
{
    "concurrency": 1000,
    "config_check_rate": 60,
    "debug": false,
    "eventlet_backdoor_port": 9000,
    "head_rep": true,
    "holdtime": 90,
    "logbackupcount": 14,
    "logdest": "syslog",
    "logfilesize": 512000,
    "loglevel": "INFO",
    "max_packet_size": 1500,
    "node_id": 13,
    "pidfile": "/var/run/vxrd.pid",
    "refresh_rate": 3,
    "src_ip": "10.2.1.50",
    "svcnode_ip": "10.10.10.10",
```



```
"udsfile": "/var/run/vxrd.sock",
"vxfld_port": 10001
}
```

To set the `node_id` manually:

1. Open `/etc/vxrd.conf` in a text editor.
2. Set the `node_id` value within the `common` section, then save the file:

```
[common]
node_id = 13
```



Ensure that each leaf has a separate `node_id` so that LNV can function correctly.

## Bonds with Vagrant

Bonds (or LACP Etherchannels) fail to work in a Vagrant setup unless the link is set to promiscuous mode. This is a limitation on virtual topologies only, and is not needed on real hardware.

```
auto swp49
iface swp49
    #for vagrant so bonds work correctly
    post-up ip link set $IFACE promisc on

auto swp50
iface swp50
    #for vagrant so bonds work correctly
    post-up ip link set $IFACE promisc on
```

For more information on using Cumulus VX and Vagrant, refer to the [Cumulus VX documentation](#).

## Troubleshooting with LNV Active-Active

In addition to the [troubleshooting for single-attached LNV](#), there is now the MLAG daemon (`clagd`) to consider. The `clagctl` command gives the output of MLAG behavior and any inconsistencies that may arise between a MLAG pair.

```
cumulus@leaf01$ clagctl
The peer is alive
    Our Priority, ID, and Role: 32768 44:38:39:00:00:35 primary
    Peer Priority, ID, and Role: 32768 44:38:39:00:00:36 secondary
        Peer Interface and IP: peerlink.4094 169.254.1.2
        VxLAN Anycast IP: 10.10.10.30
        Backup IP: 10.0.0.14 (inactive)
```

System MAC: 44:38:39:ff:40:95			
CLAG Interfaces			
Our Interface	Peer Interface	CLAG Id	
Conflicts	Proto-Down Reason		
-----	-----	-----	-----
bond0	bond0	1	
-	-	-	
vxlan20	vxlan20	-	
-	-	-	
vxlan1	vxlan1	-	
-	-	-	
vxlan10	vxlan10	-	
-	-	-	

The additions to normal MLAG behavior are the following:

Output	Explanation
VXLAN Anycast IP: 10.10.10.30	The anycast IP address being shared by the MLAG pair for VTEP termination is in use and is 10.10.10.30.
Conflicts: -	There are no conflicts for this MLAG Interface.
Proto-Down Reason: -	The VXLAN is up and running (there is no Proto-Down).

In the next example the `vxlan-id` on VXLAN10 was switched to the wrong `vxlan-id`. When the `clagctl` command is run, you will see that VXLAN10 went down because this switch was the secondary switch and the peer switch took control of VXLAN. The reason code is `vxlan-single` indicating that there is a `vxlan-id` mis-match on VXLAN10

```
cumulus@leaf02$ clagctl
The peer is alive
    Peer Priority, ID, and Role: 32768 44:38:39:00:00:11 primary
    Our Priority, ID, and Role: 32768 44:38:39:00:00:12 secondary
        Peer Interface and IP: peerlink.4094 169.254.1.1
            VXLAN Anycast IP: 10.10.10.20
                Backup IP: 10.0.0.11 (inactive)
                    System MAC: 44:38:39:ff:40:94
CLAG Interfaces
```



Our Interface Conflicts	Peer Interface Proto-Down Reason	CLAG Id
-	bond0	1
-	vxlan20	-
-	vxlan1	-
-	vxlan10	-
-		vxlan-single

## Caveats and Errata

- The VLAN used for the peer link layer 3 subinterface should not be reused for any other interface in the system. A high VLAN ID value is recommended. For more information on VLAN ID ranges, refer to [the section above \(see page \)](#).
- Active-active mode only works with LNV in this release. Integration with controller-based VXLANS such as VMware NSX and Midokura MidoNet will be supported in the future.

## Related Information

- Network virtualization chapter, Cumulus Linux user guide ([see page 399](#))

## LNV Full Example

Lightweight Network Virtualization (LNV) is a technique for deploying [VXLANS \(see page 399\)](#) without a central controller on bare metal switches. This a full example complete with diagram. Please reference the [Lightweight Network Virtualization chapter \(see page 410\)](#) for more detailed information. This full example uses the **recommended way** of deploying LNV, which is to use Anycast to load balance the service nodes.



LNV is a lightweight controller option. Please [contact Cumulus Networks](#) with your scale requirements and we can make sure this is the right fit for you. There are also other controller options that can work on Cumulus Linux.

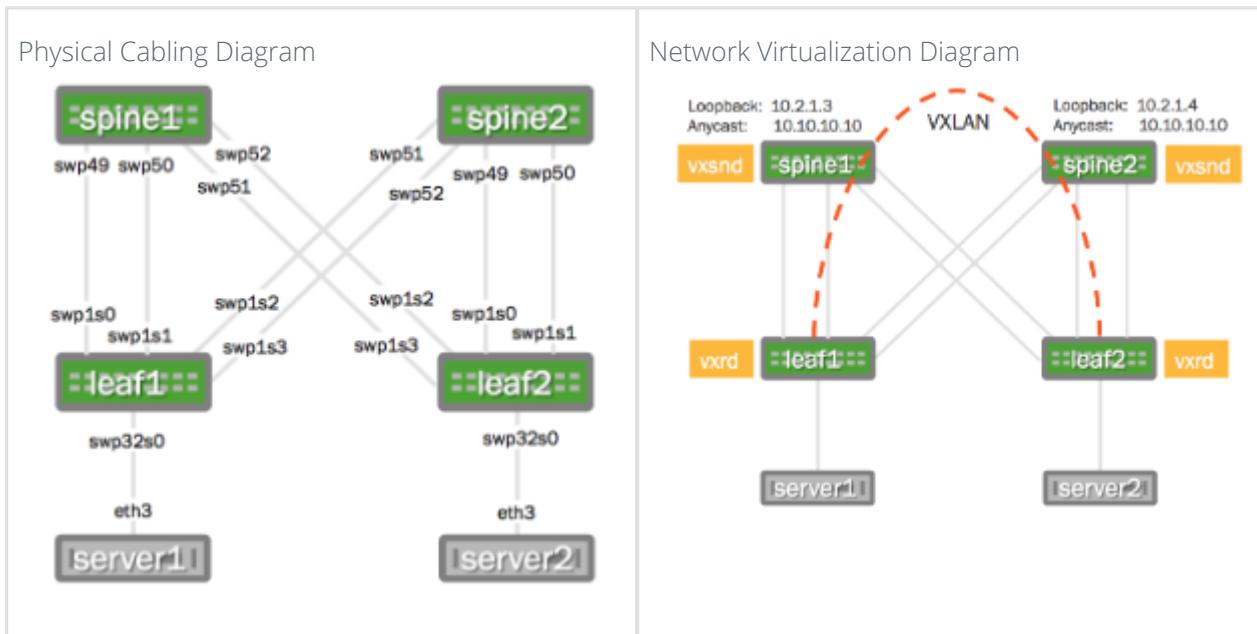
## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Example LNV Configuration ([see page 459](#))
  - Layer 3 IP Addressing ([see page 460](#))
  - FRRouting Configuration ([see page 462](#))
  - Host Configuration ([see page 464](#))
  - Service Node Configuration ([see page 465](#))
- Related Information ([see page 466](#))

## Example LNV Configuration

The following images illustrate the configuration:



 Want to try out configuring LNV and don't have a Cumulus Linux switch? Check out [Cumulus VX](#).



Feeling Overwhelmed? Come join a [Cumulus Boot Camp](#) and get instructor-led training!

## Layer 3 IP Addressing

Here is the configuration for the IP addressing information used in this example:

**spine1:** /etc/network/interfaces

```

auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.2.1.3/32
    address 10.10.10.10/32

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto swp49
iface swp49
    address 10.1.1.2/30

```

**spine2:** /etc/network/interfaces

```

auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.2.1.4/32
    address 10.10.10.10/32

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto swp49
iface swp49
    address 10.1.1.18/30

```



```
auto swp50
iface swp50
    address 10.1.1.6/30

auto swp51
iface swp51
    address 10.1.1.50/30

auto swp52
iface swp52
    address 10.1.1.54/30
```

```
auto swp50
iface swp50
    address 10.1.1.22/30

auto swp51
iface swp51
    address 10.1.1.34/30

auto swp52
iface swp52
    address 10.1.1.38/30
```

**leaf1:** /etc/network/interfaces

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.2.1.1/32
    vxrd-src-ip 10.2.1.1
    vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto swp1s0
iface swp1s0
    address 10.1.1.1/30

auto swp1s1
iface swp1s1
    address 10.1.1.5/30

auto swp1s2
iface swp1s2
    address 10.1.1.33/30

auto swp1s3
iface swp1s3
    address 10.1.1.37/30

auto vni-10
iface vni-10
    vxlan-id 10
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.2.1.1
    mstpctl-bpduguard yes
    mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes

auto vni-2000
iface vni-2000
```

**leaf2:** /etc/network/interfaces

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.2.1.2/32
    vxrd-src-ip 10.2.1.2
    vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto swp1s0
iface swp1s0 inet static
    address 10.1.1.17/30

auto swp1s1
iface swp1s1 inet static
    address 10.1.1.21/30

auto swp1s2
iface swp1s2 inet static
    address 10.1.1.49/30

auto swp1s3
iface swp1s3 inet static
    address 10.1.1.53/30

auto vni-10
iface vni-10
    vxlan-id 10
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.2.1.2
    mstpctl-bpduguard yes
    mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes

auto vni-2000
iface vni-2000
```

```

vxlan-id 2000
vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.2.1.1
mstpctl-bpduguard yes
mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes

auto vni-30
iface vni-30
  vxlan-id 30
  vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.2.1.1
  mstpctl-bpduguard yes
  mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes

auto br-10
iface br-10
  bridge-ports swp32s0.10 vni-10

auto br-20
iface br-20
  bridge-ports swp32s0.20 vni-2000

auto br-30
iface br-30
  bridge-ports swp32s0.30 vni-30

```

```

vxlan-id 2000
vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.2.1.2
mstpctl-bpduguard yes
mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes

auto vni-30
iface vni-30
  vxlan-id 30
  vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.2.1.2
  mstpctl-bpduguard yes
  mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes

auto br-10
iface br-10
  bridge-ports swp32s0.10 vni-10

auto br-20
iface br-20
  bridge-ports swp32s0.20 vni-2000

auto br-30
iface br-30
  bridge-ports swp32s0.30 vni-30

```

## FRRouting Configuration

The service nodes and registration nodes must all be routable between each other. The L3 fabric on Cumulus Linux can either be [BGP](#) (see page 636) or [OSPF](#) (see page 620). In this example, OSPF is used to demonstrate full reachability.

Here is the FRRouting configuration using OSPF:

**spine1:** /etc/frr/frr.conf

```

interface lo
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
interface swp49
  ip ospf network point-to-point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp50
  ip ospf network point-to-point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
```

**spine2:** /etc/frr/frr.conf

```

interface lo
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
interface swp49
  ip ospf network point-to-point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp50
  ip ospf network point-to-point
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
```



```
interface swp51
    ip ospf network point-to-
    point
    ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp52
    ip ospf network point-to-
    point
    ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
!
!
!
!
router-id 10.2.1.3
router ospf
    ospf router-id 10.2.1.3
```

```
interface swp51
    ip ospf network point-to-
    point
    ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp52
    ip ospf network point-to-
    point
    ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
!
!
!
!
router-id 10.2.1.4
router ospf
    ospf router-id 10.2.1.4
```

leaf1: /etc/frr/frr.conf

```
interface lo
    ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
interface swp1s0
    ip ospf network point-to-
    point
    ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp1s1
    ip ospf network point-to-
    point
    ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp1s2
    ip ospf network point-to-
    point
    ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp1s3
    ip ospf network point-to-
    point
    ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
!
!
!
!
router-id 10.2.1.1
router ospf
```

leaf2: /etc/frr/frr.conf

```
interface lo
    ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
interface swp1s0
    ip ospf network point-to-
    point
    ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp1s1
    ip ospf network point-to-
    point
    ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp1s2
    ip ospf network point-to-
    point
    ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
interface swp1s3
    ip ospf network point-to-
    point
    ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
!
!
!
!
!
router-id 10.2.1.2
router ospf
```



```
ospf router-id 10.2.1.1
```

```
ospf router-id 10.2.1.2
```

## Host Configuration

In this example, the servers are running Ubuntu 14.04. A trunk must be mapped from server1 and server2 to the respective switch. In Ubuntu this is done with subinterfaces.

**server1**

```
auto eth3.10
iface eth3.10 inet
static
    address 10.10.10.1/24

auto eth3.20
iface eth3.20 inet
static
    address 10.10.20.1/24

auto eth3.30
iface eth3.30 inet
static
    address 10.10.30.1/24
```

**server2**

```
auto eth3.10
iface eth3.10 inet
static
    address 10.10.10.2/24

auto eth3.20
iface eth3.20 inet
static
    address 10.10.20.2/24

auto eth3.30
iface eth3.30 inet
static
    address 10.10.30.2/24
```



## Service Node Configuration

spine1:/etc/vxsnd.conf

```
[common]
# Log level is one of DEBUG,
INFO, WARNING, ERROR, CRITICAL
#loglevel = INFO
# Destination for log
message. Can be a file name, '
stdout', or 'syslog'
#logdest = syslog
# log file size in bytes. Used
when logdest is a file
#logfilesize = 512000
# maximum number of log files
stored on disk. Used when
logdest is a file
#logbackupcount = 14
# The file to write the pid.
If using monit, this must
match the one
# in the vxsnd.rc
#pidfile = /var/run/vxsnd.pid
# The file name for the unix
domain socket used for mgmt.
#udsfile = /var/run/vxsnd.sock
# UDP port for vxfld control
messages
#vxfld_port = 10001
# This is the address to which
registration daemons send
control messages for
# registration and/or BUM
packets for replication
svcnode_ip = 10.10.10.10
# Holdtime (in seconds) for
soft state. It is used when
sending a
# register msg to peers in
response to learning a <vni,
addr> from a
# VXLAN data pkt
#holdtime = 90
# Local IP address to bind to f
or receiving inter-vxsnd
control traffic
src_ip = 10.2.1.3
```

spine2:/etc/vxsnd.conf

```
[common]
# Log level is one of DEBUG,
INFO, WARNING, ERROR, CRITICAL
#loglevel = INFO
# Destination for log
message. Can be a file name, '
stdout', or 'syslog'
#logdest = syslog
# log file size in bytes. Used
when logdest is a file
#logfilesize = 512000
# maximum number of log files
stored on disk. Used when
logdest is a file
#logbackupcount = 14
# The file to write the pid.
If using monit, this must
match the one
# in the vxsnd.rc
#pidfile = /var/run/vxsnd.pid
# The file name for the unix
domain socket used for mgmt.
#udsfile = /var/run/vxsnd.sock
# UDP port for vxfld control
messages
#vxfld_port = 10001
# This is the address to which
registration daemons send
control messages for
# registration and/or BUM
packets for replication
svcnode_ip = 10.10.10.10
# Holdtime (in seconds) for
soft state. It is used when
sending a
# register msg to peers in
response to learning a <vni,
addr> from a
# VXLAN data pkt
#holdtime = 90
# Local IP address to bind to f
or receiving inter-vxsnd
control traffic
src_ip = 10.2.1.4
```

```
[vxsnd]
# Space separated list of IP
addresses of vxsnd to share
state with
svcnode_peers = 10.2.1.4
# When set to true, the
service node will listen for
vxlan data traffic
# Note: Use 1, yes, true, or
on, for True and 0, no, false,
or off,
# for False
#enable_vxlan_listen = true
# When set to true, the
svcnode_ip will be installed
on the loopback
# interface, and it will be
withdrawn when the vxsnd is no
longer in
# service. If set to true,
the svcnode_ip configuration
# variable must be defined.
# Note: Use 1, yes, true, or
on, for True and 0, no, false,
or off,
# for False
#install_svcnode_ip = false
# Seconds to wait before
checking the database to age
out stale entries
#age_check = 90
```

```
[vxsnd]
# Space separated list of IP
addresses of vxsnd to share
state with
svcnode_peers = 10.2.1.3
# When set to true, the
service node will listen for
vxlan data traffic
# Note: Use 1, yes, true, or
on, for True and 0, no, false,
or off,
# for False
#enable_vxlan_listen = true
# When set to true, the
svcnode_ip will be installed
on the loopback
# interface, and it will be
withdrawn when the vxsnd is no
longer in
# service. If set to true,
the svcnode_ip configuration
# variable must be defined.
# Note: Use 1, yes, true, or
on, for True and 0, no, false,
or off,
# for False
#install_svcnode_ip = false
# Seconds to wait before
checking the database to age
out stale entries
#age_check = 90
```

## Related Information

- [tools.ietf.org/html/rfc7348](http://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc7348)
- [en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anycast](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anycast)
- Detailed LNV Configuration Guide (see page 410)
- Cumulus Networks Training
- Network virtualization chapter, Cumulus Linux user guide (see page 399)

## Ethernet Virtual Private Network - EVPN

VXLAN is the de facto technology for implementing network virtualization in the data center, enabling layer 2 segments to be extended over an IP core (the underlay). The initial definition of VXLAN ([RFC 7348](#)) did not include any control plane and relied on a flood-and-learn approach for MAC address learning. An alternate deployment model was to use a controller or a technology such as [Lightweight Network Virtualization \(LNV\)](#) (see page 410) in Cumulus Linux.



When you are using EVPN, you cannot use LNV at the same time.

Ethernet Virtual Private Network (EVPN) is a standards-based control plane for [VXLAN](#) (see page 399) defined in [RFC 7432](#) and [draft-ietf-bess-evpn-overlay](#) that allows for building and deploying VXLANs at scale. It relies on multi-protocol BGP (MP-BGP) for exchanging information and is based on BGP-MPLS IP VPNs ([RFC 4364](#)). Hence, it has provisions to enable not only bridging between end systems in the same layer 2 segment but also routing between different segments (subnets). There is also inherent support for multi-tenancy. EVPN is often referred to as the means of implementing *controller-less VXLAN*.

Cumulus Linux fully supports EVPN as the control plane for VXLAN, including for both intra-subnet bridging and inter-subnet routing. Key features include:

- VNI membership exchange between VTEPs using EVPN type-3 (Inclusive multicast Ethernet tag) routes.
- Exchange of host MAC and IP addresses using EVPN type-2 (MAC/IP advertisement) routes.
- Support for host/VM mobility (MAC and IP moves) through exchange of the MAC Mobility Extended community.
- Support for dual-attached hosts via [VXLAN active-active mode](#) (see page 438). MAC synchronization between the peer switches is done using [MLAG](#) (see page 351).
- Support for ARP/ND suppression, which provides VTEPs with the ability to suppress ARP flooding over VXLAN tunnels.
- Support for exchange of static (sticky) MAC addresses through EVPN.
- Support for distributed symmetric routing between different subnets.
- Support for distributed asymmetric routing between different subnets.
- Support for centralized routing.
- Support for prefix-based routing using EVPN type-5 routes (EVPN IP prefix route)
- Support for layer 3 multi-tenancy.

EVPN address-family is supported with both eBGP and iBGP peering. If the underlay routing is provisioned using eBGP, the same eBGP session can also be used to carry EVPN routes. For example, in a typical 2-tier Clos network topology where the leaf switches are the VTEPs, if eBGP sessions are in use between the leaf and spine switches for the underlay routing, the same sessions can be used to exchange EVPN routes; the spine switches merely act as "route forwarders" and do not install any forwarding state as they are not VTEPs. When EVPN routes are exchanged over iBGP peering, OSPF can be used as the IGP or the next hops can also be resolved using iBGP.

You can provision and manage EVPN using [NCLU](#) (see page 85).



For Cumulus Linux 3.4 and later releases, the routing control plane (including EVPN) is installed as part of the [FRRouting](#) (FRR) package. For more information about FRR, refer to the [FRR Overview](#) (see page 603).

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Basic EVPN Configuration (see page 469)
  - Enabling EVPN between BGP Neighbors (see page 469)



- Advertising All VNIs (see page 470)
- Auto-derivation of RDs and RTs (see page 470)
- User-defined RDs and RTs (see page 471)
- Enabling EVPN in an iBGP Environment with an OSPF Underlay (see page 472)
- Disabling Data Plane MAC Learning over VXLAN Tunnels (see page 473)
- Handling BUM Traffic (see page 474)
- ARP and ND Suppression (see page 474)
  - Using UFT Profiles Other than the Default (see page 476)
- EVPN and VXLAN Active-Active Mode (see page 476)
- Inter-subnet Routing (see page 476)
  - Centralized Routing (see page 477)
  - Asymmetric Routing (see page 478)
  - Symmetric Routing (see page 478)
- Prefix-based Routing — EVPN Type-5 Routes (see page 481)
  - Configuring the Switch to Install EVPN Type-5 Routes (see page 482)
  - Announcing EVPN Type-5 Routes (see page 482)
- Static (Sticky) MAC Addresses (see page 482)
- EVPN Operational Commands (see page 483)
  - General Linux Commands Related to EVPN (see page 483)
  - General BGP Operational Commands Relevant to EVPN (see page 485)
  - Displaying EVPN address-family Peers (see page 487)
  - Displaying VNIs in EVPN (see page 488)
  - Examining Local and Remote MAC Addresses for a VNI in EVPN (see page 489)
  - Examining Local and Remote Neighbors for a VNI in EVPN (see page 490)
  - Examining Remote Router MACs in EVPN (see page 490)
  - Examining Gateway Next Hops in EVPN (see page 490)
  - Displaying the VRF Routing Table in FRR (see page 491)
  - Displaying the Global BGP EVPN Routing Table (see page 492)
  - Displaying a Specific EVPN Route (see page 493)
  - Displaying the per-VNI EVPN Routing Table (see page 494)
  - Displaying the per-VRF BGP Routing Table (see page 495)
  - Examining MAC Moves (see page 496)
  - Examining Sticky MAC Addresses (see page 497)
- Troubleshooting EVPN (see page 497)
- Caveats (see page 497)
- Example Configuration (see page 498)
  - Example Configuration for EVPN for Bridging (see page 498)
  - Example Active-active Configuration (see page 504)



## Basic EVPN Configuration

The following three steps represent the fundamental configuration to use EVPN as the control plane for VXLAN. These steps are in addition to configuring VXLAN interfaces, attaching them to a bridge and mapping VLANs to VNI.

1. Enable EVPN route exchange (that is, address-family L2VPN/EVPN) between BGP peers
2. Enable EVPN on the system to advertise VNIs and host reachability information (MAC addresses learned on associated VLANs) to BGP peers
3. Disable MAC learning on VXLAN interfaces as EVPN is responsible for installing remote MACs

There are additional steps (configuration) to enable ARP/ND suppression, provision inter-subnet routing, and so forth. These steps depend on the deployment scenario. Various other BGP parameters can also be configured, if desired.

### *Enabling EVPN between BGP Neighbors*

You enable EVPN between [BGP \(see page 636\)](#) neighbors by adding the address family `evpn` to the existing neighbor address-family activation command.

For a non-VTEP device that is merely participating in EVPN route exchange, such as a spine switch (the network deployment uses hop-by-hop eBGP or the switch is acting as an iBGP route reflector), activating the interface for the EVPN address family is the fundamental configuration needed in [FRRouting \(see page 603\)](#). Additional configuration options for specific scenarios are described later on in this chapter.

The other BGP neighbor address-family-specific configurations supported for EVPN are `allowas-in` and `route-reflector-client`.

To configure an EVPN route exchange with a BGP peer, you must activate the peer or peer-group within the EVPN address-family:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp autonomous-system 65000
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor swp1 remote-as external
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp 12vpn evpn neighbor swp1 activate
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```



Adjust the `remote-as` above to be appropriate for your environment.



The command syntax `bgp evpn` is also permitted for backwards compatibility with prior versions of Cumulus Linux, but the syntax `bgp 12vpn evpn` is recommended in order to standardize the BGP address-family configuration to the AFI/SAFI format.

These commands create the following configuration snippet in `/etc/frr/frr.conf`:

```
router bgp 65000
neighbor swp1 interface remote-as external
```

```
address-family l2vpn evpn
  neighbor swp1 activate
```

The above configuration does not result in BGP knowing about the local VNIs defined on the system and advertising them to peers. This requires additional configuration, [as described below \(see page 470\)](#).

## *Advertising All VNIs*

A single configuration variable enables the BGP control plane for all VNIs configured on the switch. Set the variable `advertise-all-vni` to provision all locally configured VNIs to be advertised by the BGP control plane. FRR is not aware of any local VNIs and MACs and hosts (neighbors) associated with those VNIs until `advertise-all-vni` is configured.

To build upon the previous example, run the following commands to advertise all VNIs:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp autonomous-system 65000
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor swp1 remote-as external
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp l2vpn evpn neighbor swp1 activate
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp l2vpn evpn advertise-all-vni
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```



Adjust the `remote-as` above to be appropriate for your environment.

These commands create the following configuration snippet in `/etc/frr/frr.conf`:

```
router bgp 65000
  neighbor swp1 interface remote-as external
  address-family l2vpn evpn
    neighbor swp1 activate
    advertise-all-vni
```



This configuration is only needed on leaf switches that are VTEPs. EVPN routes received from a BGP peer are accepted, even without this explicit EVPN configuration. These routes are maintained in the global EVPN routing table. However, they only become effective (that is, imported into the per-VNI routing table and appropriate entries installed in the kernel) when the VNI corresponding to the received route is locally known.

## *Auto-derivation of RDs and RTs*

When a local VNI is learned by FRR and there is no explicit configuration for that VNI in FRR, the route distinguisher (RD) and import and export route targets (RTs) for this VNI are automatically derived — the RD uses "RouterId:VNI-Index" and the import and export RTs use "AS:VNI". The RD and RTs are used in the EVPN route exchange. The RD disambiguates EVPN routes in different VNIs (as they may have the same MAC and/or IP address) while the RTs describe the VPN membership for the route. The "VNI-Index" used



for the RD is a unique, internally generated number for a VNI. It solely has local significance; on remote switches, its only role is for route disambiguation. This number is used instead of the VNI value itself because this number has to be less than or equal to 65535. In the RT, the AS part is always encoded as a 2-byte value to allow room for a large VNI. If the router has a 4-byte AS, only the lower 2 bytes are used. This ensures a unique RT for different VNIs while having the same RT for the same VNI across routers in the same AS.

For eBGP EVPN peering, the peers are in a different AS so using an automatic RT of "AS:VNI" does not work for route import. Therefore, the import RT is treated as "\*:VNI" to determine which received routes are applicable to a particular VNI. This only applies when the import RT is auto-derived and not configured.

## User-defined RDs and RTs

EVPN also supports manual configuration of RDs and RTs, if you don't want them derived automatically. To manually define RDs and RTs, use the `vni` option within NCLU to configure the switch:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp 12vpn evpn vni 10200 rd 172.16.10.1:20
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp 12vpn evpn vni 10200 route-target
import 65100:20
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp 12vpn evpn advertise-all-vni
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration snippet in `/etc/frr/frr.conf`:

```
address-family 12vpn evpn
  advertise-all-vni
  vni 10200
  rd 172.16.10.1:20
  route-target import 65100:20
```



These commands are per VNI and must be specified under `address-family 12vpn evpn` in BGP.



If you delete the RD or RT later, it reverts back to its corresponding default value.

You can configure multiple RT values for import or export for a VNI. In addition, you can configure both the import and export route targets with a single command by using `route-target both`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp evpn vni 10400 route-target import 100:
400
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp evpn vni 10400 route-target import 100:
500
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp evpn vni 10500 route-target both 65000:
500
```

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

The above commands create the following configuration snippet in the /etc/frr/frr.conf file:

```
address-family l2vpn evpn
  vni 10400
    route-target import 100:400
    route-target import 100:500
  vni 10500
    route-target import 65000:500
    route-target export 65000:500
```

## *Enabling EVPN in an iBGP Environment with an OSPF Underlay*

EVPN can be deployed with an [OSPF \(see page 620\)](#) or static route underlay if needed. This is a more complex configuration than using eBGP. In this case, iBGP advertises EVPN routes directly between VTEPs, and the spines are unaware of EVPN or BGP.

The leaf switches peer with each other in a full mesh within the EVPN address family without using route reflectors. The leafs generally peer to their loopback addresses, which are advertised in OSPF. The receiving VTEP imports routes into a specific VNI with a matching route target community.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp autonomous-system 65020
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp evpn neighbor 10.1.1.2 remote-as
internal
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp evpn neighbor 10.1.1.3 remote-as
internal
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp evpn neighbor 10.1.1.4 remote-as
internal
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp evpn neighbor 10.1.1.2 activate
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp evpn neighbor 10.1.1.3 activate
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp evpn neighbor 10.1.1.4 activate
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp evpn advertise-all-vni
cumulus@switch:~$ net add ospf router-id 10.1.1.1
cumulus@switch:~$ net add loopback lo ospf area 0.0.0.0
cumulus@switch:~$ net add ospf passive-interface lo
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp50 ospf area 0.0.0.0
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp51 ospf area 0.0.0.0
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp50 ospf network point-to-point
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp51 ospf network point-to-point
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration snippet in /etc/frr/frr.conf:

```
interface lo
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
```



```
!
interface swp50
 ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
 ip ospf network point-to-point

interface swp51
 ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
 ip ospf network point-to-point
!

router bgp 65020
 neighbor 10.1.1.2 remote-as internal
 neighbor 10.1.1.3 remote-as internal
 neighbor 10.1.1.4 remote-as internal
!
address-family l2vpn evpn
 neighbor 10.1.1.2 activate
 neighbor 10.1.1.3 activate
 neighbor 10.1.1.4 activate
 advertise-all-vni
exit-address-family
!
Router ospf
 Ospf router-id 10.1.1.1
 Passive-interface lo
```

## *Disabling Data Plane MAC Learning over VXLAN Tunnels*

When EVPN is provisioned, data plane MAC learning should be disabled for VXLAN interfaces because the purpose of EVPN is to exchange MACs between VTEPs in the control plane. In the /etc/network/interfaces file, configure the bridge-learning value to off:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni200 vxlan id 10200
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni200 vxlan local-tunnelip 10.0.0.1
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni200 bridge access 200
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni200 bridge learning off
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following code snippet in the /etc/network/interfaces file:

```
auto vni200
iface vni200
    bridge-access 200
    bridge-learning off
    vxlan-id 10200
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.0.0.1
```

-  For a bridge in [traditional mode \(see page 340\)](#), you must edit the bridge configuration in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file in a text editor:

```
auto bridge1
iface bridge1
    bridge-ports swp3.100 swp4.100 vni100
    bridge-learning vni100=off
```

## Handling BUM Traffic

With EVPN, the only method of handling BUM traffic is [Head End Replication \(HER\) \(see page 412\)](#). HER is enabled by default, as it is when [Lightweight Network Virtualization \(LNV\) \(see page 410\)](#) is used.

## ARP and ND Suppression

ARP suppression in an EVPN context refers to the ability of a VTEP to suppress ARP flooding over VXLAN tunnels as much as possible. Instead, a local proxy handles ARP requests received from locally attached hosts for remote hosts. ARP suppression is the implementation for IPv4; ND suppression is the implementation for IPv6.



On switches with the Mellanox Spectrum chipset, ND suppression only functions with the [Spectrum A1 chip](#).

ARP and ND suppression are not enabled by default. You configure ARP/ND suppression on a VXLAN interface. You also need to create an SVI for the neighbor entry.

To configure ARP or ND suppression, use [NCLU \(see page 85\)](#). Here's an example configuration using 2 VXLANs, 10100 and 10200, and 2 VLANs, 100 and 200:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge bridge ports vni100,vni200
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge bridge vids 100,200
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni100 vxlan id 10100
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni200 vxlan id 10200
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni100 bridge learning off
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni200 bridge learning off
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni100 bridge access 100
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni100 bridge arp-nd-suppress on
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni200 bridge arp-nd-suppress on
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni200 bridge access 200
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni100 vxlan local-tunnelip 110.0.0.1
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni200 vxlan local-tunnelip 110.0.0.1
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan 100 ip forward off
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan 100 ipv6 forward off
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan 200 ip forward off
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan 200 ipv6 forward off
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
```



```
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration in the /etc/network/interfaces file:

```
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports vni100 vni200
    bridge-stp on
    bridge-vids 100 200
    bridge-vlan-aware yes

auto vlan100
iface vlan100
    ip6-forward off
    ip-forward off
    vlan-id 100
    vlan-raw-device bridge

auto vlan200
iface vlan200
    ip6-forward off
    ip-forward off
    vlan-id 200
    vlan-raw-device bridge

auto vtep100
iface vtep100
    bridge-access 100
    bridge-arp-nd-suppress on
    bridge-learning off
    vxlan-id 10100
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 110.0.0.1

auto vtep200
iface vtep200
    bridge-learning off
    bridge-access 200
    bridge-arp-nd-suppress on
    vxlan-id 10200
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 110.0.0.1
```



For a bridge in [traditional mode \(see page 340\)](#), you must edit the bridge configuration in the /etc/network/interfaces file in a text editor:

```
auto bridge1
iface bridge1
    bridge-ports swp3.100 swp4.100 vni100
```

```
bridge-learning vni100=off
bridge-arp-nd-suppress vni100=on
ip6-forward off
ip-forward off
```

## *Using UFT Profiles Other than the Default*

When deploying EVPN and VXLAN using a hardware profile other than the default UFT profile, you need to ensure that the Linux kernel ARP sysctl settings `gc_thresh2` and `gc_thresh3` are both set to a value larger than the number of the neighbor (ARP/ND) entries anticipated in the deployment.

To configure these settings, edit `/etc/sysctl.d/neigh.conf` in a text editor. If your network has more hosts than the values used in the example below, change the sysctl entries accordingly.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nano /etc/sysctl.d/neigh.conf
...
net.ipv4.neigh.default.gc_thresh3=14336
net.ipv6.neigh.default.gc_thresh3=16384
net.ipv4.neigh.default.gc_thresh2=7168
net.ipv6.neigh.default.gc_thresh2=8192
...
```

After you save your settings, reboot the switch to apply the new configuration.

## **EVPN and VXLAN Active-Active Mode**

No additional EVPN-specific configuration is needed for [VXLAN active-active mode \(see page 438\)](#). Both switches in the [MLAG \(see page 351\)](#) pair establish EVPN peering with other EVPN speakers (for example, with spine switches, if using hop-by-hop eBGP) and inform about their locally known VNIs and MACs. When MLAG is active, both switches announce this information with the shared anycast IP address.

The active-active configuration should include the following:

- The `clagd-vxlan-anycast-ip` parameter must be under the [loopback stanza \(see page \)](#) on both peers
- The anycast address should be advertised to the routed fabric from both peers
- The [VNIs \(see page 443\)](#) must be configured identically on both peers
- The [peerlink \(see page 443\)](#) must belong to the bridge

MLAG syncs information between the two switches in the MLAG pair; EVPN does not synchronize.

## **Inter-subnet Routing**

There are multiple models in EVPN for routing between different subnets (VLANs). These models arise due to the following two main considerations:

- Does every VTEP act as an L3 gateway and do routing, or only specific VTEPs do routing?
- Is routing done only at the ingress of the VXLAN tunnel or is it done at both the ingress and the egress of the VXLAN tunnel?

These models are:

- **Centralized routing:** Specific VTEPs act as designated L3 gateways and do routing between subnets; other VTEPs just do bridging.
- **Distributed asymmetric routing:** Every VTEP participates in routing, but all routing is done at the ingress VTEP; the egress VTEP only does bridging.
- **Distributed symmetric routing:** Every VTEP participates in routing and routing is done at both the ingress VTEP and the egress VTEP.

Distributed routing — asymmetric or symmetric — is commonly deployed with the VTEPs configured with an *anycast IP/MAC address* for each subnet. That is, each VTEP that has a particular subnet is configured with the same IP/MAC for that subnet. Such a model facilitates easy host/VM mobility as there is no need to change the host/VM configuration when it moves from one VTEP to another.

EVPN in Cumulus Linux supports all of the routing models listed above. The models are described further in the following sections.

All routing happens in the context of a tenant VRF ([virtual routing and forwarding \(see page 696\)](#)). A VRF instance is provisioned for each tenant, and the subnets of the tenant are associated with that VRF (the corresponding SVI is attached to the VRF). Inter-subnet routing for each tenant occurs within the context of that tenant's VRF, and is separate from the routing for other tenants.



When configuring [VXLAN routing \(see page 511\)](#), Cumulus Networks recommends enabling ARP suppression on all VXLAN interfaces. Otherwise, when a locally attached host ARPs for the gateway, it will receive multiple responses, one from each anycast gateway.

## Centralized Routing

In centralized routing, a specific VTEP is configured to act as the default gateway for all the hosts in a particular subnet throughout the EVPN fabric. It is common to provision a pair of VTEPs in active-active mode as the default gateway, using an anycast IP/MAC address for each subnet. All subnets need to be configured on such gateway VTEP(s). When a host in one subnet wants to communicate with a host in another subnet, it addresses the packets to the gateway VTEP. The ingress VTEP (to which the source host is attached) bridges the packets to the gateway VTEP over the corresponding VXLAN tunnel. The gateway VTEP performs the routing to the destination host and post-routing, the packet gets bridged to the egress VTEP (to which the destination host is attached). The egress VTEP then bridges the packet on to the destination host.

## Advertising the Default Gateway

In order to enable centralized routing, the gateway VTEPs must be configured to advertise their IP/MAC address. This is done using the `advertise-default-gw` command.

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add bgp autonomous-system 65000
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add bgp l2vpn evpn advertise-default-gw
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net pending
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration snippet in `/etc/frr/frr.conf`:

```
router bgp 65000
```

```
address-family l2vpn evpn
  advertise-default-gw
exit-address-family
```



- Centralized routing can be deployed at the VNI level. Thus, you can configure the `advertise-default-gw` command per VNI so that centralized routing is used for some VNIs while distributed routing (described below) is used for other VNIs. This type of configuration is not recommended unless the deployment requires it.
- When centralized routing is in use, even if the source host and destination host are attached to the same VTEP, the packets travel to the gateway VTEP to get routed and then come back.

## *Asymmetric Routing*

In distributed asymmetric routing, each VTEP acts as a layer 3 gateway, performing routing for its attached hosts. The routing is called asymmetric because only the ingress VTEP performs routing, the egress VTEP only performs the bridging. Asymmetric routing is easy to deploy as it can be achieved with only host routing and does not involve any interconnecting VNIs. However, each VTEP must be provisioned with all VLANs/VNIs — the subnets between which communication can take place; this is required even if there are no locally-attached hosts for a particular VLAN.



- The only additional configuration required to implement asymmetric routing beyond the standard configuration for a layer 2 VTEP described earlier is to ensure that each VTEP has all VLANs (and corresponding VNIs) provisioned on it and the SVI for each such VLAN is configured with an anycast IP/MAC address.

## *Symmetric Routing*

In distributed symmetric routing, each VTEP acts as a layer 3 gateway, performing routing for its attached hosts. This is the same as in asymmetric routing. The difference is that in symmetric routing, both the ingress VTEP and egress VTEP route the packets. Thus, it can be compared to the traditional routing behavior of routing to a next hop router. In the VXLAN encapsulated packet, the inner destination MAC address is set to the router MAC address of the egress VTEP as an indication that the egress VTEP is the next hop and also needs to perform routing. All routing happens in the context of a tenant (VRF). For a packet received by the ingress VTEP from a locally attached host, the SVI interface corresponding to the VLAN determines the VRF. For a packet received by the egress VTEP over VXLAN tunnel, the VNI in the packet has to specify the VRF. For symmetric routing, this is a VNI corresponding to the tenant and is different from either the source VNI or the destination VNI. This VNI is referred to as the L3-VNI or interconnecting VNI; it has to be provisioned by the operator and is exchanged through the EVPN control plane. In order to make the distinction clear, the regular VNI, which is used to map a VLAN, is referred to as the L2-VNI.



### L3-VNI

- There is a one-to-one mapping between an L3-VNI and a tenant (VRF).
- The VRF to L3-VNI mapping has to be consistent across all VTEPs. The L3-VNI has to be provisioned by the operator.



- L3-VNI and L2-VNI cannot share the same number space.

In addition to the L3-VNI, the other parameter relevant to symmetric routing is the router MAC address. This should be a MAC address of the VTEP so that it knows to route the packet after VXLAN decapsulation. This parameter is automatically derived from the MAC address of the SVI corresponding to the L3-VNI. It is also exchanged through the EVPN control plane.

For EVPN symmetric routing, the additional configuration required is as follows:

1. Configure a per-tenant VXLAN interface that specifies the L3-VNI for the tenant. This VXLAN interface is part of the bridge and router MAC addresses of remote VTEPs is installed over this interface.
2. Configure an SVI (layer 3 interface) corresponding to the per-tenant VXLAN interface. This is attached to the tenant's VRF. Remote host routes for symmetric routing are installed over this SVI.
3. Specify the mapping of VRF to L3-VNI. This configuration is for the BGP control plane.

### *VXLAN Interface Corresponding to the L3-VNI*

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vxlan vni104001 vxlan id 104001
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vxlan vni104001 bridge access 4001
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vxlan vni104001 vxlan local-tunnelip
10.0.0.11
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vxlan vni104001 bridge learning off
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vxlan vni104001 bridge arp-nd-suppress on
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add bridge bridge ports vni104001
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net pending
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net commit
```

The above commands create the following snippet in the /etc/network/interfaces file:

```
auto vni104001
iface vni104001
    bridge-access 4001
    bridge-arp-nd-suppress on
    bridge-learning off
    vxlan-id 104001
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.0.0.11

auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports vni104001
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
```

### *SVI for the L3-VNI*

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vlan 4001 vrf blue
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net pending
```



```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following snippet in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```
auto vlan4001
iface vlan4001
    vlan-id 4001
    vlan-raw-device bridge
    vrf blue
```



When two VTEPs are operating in VXLAN active-active mode and performing symmetric routing, their router MAC needs to be configured corresponding to each L3-VNI in order to ensure both VTEPs use the same MAC address. Do this by specifying the `hwaddress` (MAC address) for the SVI corresponding to the L3-VNI, with the same address used on both switches in the MLAG pair. It is recommended that you use the MLAG system MAC address for this purpose. The corresponding snippet of configuration in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file looks like this:

```
auto vlan4001
iface vlan4001
    hwaddress 44:39:39:FF:40:94
    vlan-id 4001
    vlan-raw-device bridge
    vrf blue
```

## VRF to L3-VNI Mapping

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vrf blue vni 104001
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net pending
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration snippet in `/etc/frr/frr.conf`:

```
vrf blue
  vni 104001
!
```

## Advertising the Locally-attached Subnets

Symmetric routing presents a problem in the presence of silent hosts. If the ingress VTEP does not have the destination subnet and the host route is not advertised for the destination host, the ingress VTEP cannot route the packet to its destination. This problem can be overcome by having VTEPs announce the subnet prefixes corresponding to their connected subnets in addition to announcing host routes. These routes must be announced as EVPN prefix (type-5) routes.

To advertise locally attached subnets, you must:

1. Enable advertisement of EVPN prefix (type-5) routes. Refer to the [next section \(see page 481\)](#) for the steps to do this.
2. Ensure that the routes corresponding to the connected subnets are known in the BGP VRF routing table by injecting them using the `network` command or redistributing them using the `redistribute connected` command.



This configuration is recommended only if the deployment is known to have silent hosts. It is also recommended that this should be enabled on only one VTEP per subnet, or two for redundancy.



An earlier version of this chapter referred to the `advertise-subnet` command. This command has been deprecated and should not be used.

## Prefix-based Routing – EVPN Type-5 Routes

EVPN in Cumulus Linux supports prefix-based routing using EVPN type-5 (prefix) routes. Type-5 routes (or prefix routes) are primarily used to route to destinations outside of the data center fabric.

EVPN prefix routes carry the L3-VNI and router MAC address and follow the symmetric routing model for routing to the destination prefix.



When connecting to a WAN edge router to reach destinations outside the data center, it is highly recommended that specific border/exit leaf switches be deployed to originate the type-5 routes.



On switches with the Mellanox Spectrum chipset, centralized routing, symmetric routing and prefix-based routing only functions with the Spectrum A1 chip.



If you are using a Broadcom Trident II+ switch as a border/exit leaf, [review release note 766](#) for a necessary workaround; the workaround only applies to Trident II+ switches, not Tomahawk or Spectrum.



## Configuring the Switch to Install EVPN Type-5 Routes

In order for a switch to be able to install EVPN type-5 routes into the routing table, it must be configured with the L3-VNI related information. This configuration is the same as what you use for symmetric routing. That is, you need to:

1. Configure a per-tenant VXLAN interface that specifies the L3-VNI for the tenant. This VXLAN interface is part of the bridge; router MAC addresses of remote VTEPs are installed over this interface.
2. Configure an SVI (layer 3 interface) corresponding to the per-tenant VXLAN interface. This is attached to the tenant's VRF. The remote prefix routes are installed over this SVI.
3. Specify the mapping of the VRF to L3-VNI. This configuration is for the BGP control plane.

## Announcing EVPN Type-5 Routes

The following configuration is needed in the tenant VRF in order to announce IP prefixes in BGP's RIB as EVPN type-5 routes.

```
cumulus@bl1:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1 l2vpn evpn advertise ipv4 unicast
cumulus@bl1:~$ net pending
cumulus@bl1:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following snippet in the `/etc/frr/frr.conf` file:

```
router bgp 65005 vrf vrf1
  address-family l2vpn evpn
    advertise ipv4 unicast
  exit-address-family
end
```

## Static (Sticky) MAC Addresses

MAC addresses that are intended to be pinned to a particular VTEP can be provisioned on the VTEP as a static bridge FDB entry. EVPN picks up these MAC addresses and advertises them to peers as remote static MACs. You configure static bridge FDB entries for sticky MACs under the bridge configuration using NCLU:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge post-up bridge fdb add 00:11:22:33:
44:55 dev swp1 vlan 101 master static
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```
auto bridge
```



```
iface bridge
    bridge-ports swp1 vni10101
    bridge-vids 101
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    post-up bridge fdb add 00:11:22:33:44:55 dev swp1 vlan 101 master
static
```



For a bridge in [traditional mode](#) (see page 340), you must edit the bridge configuration in the /etc/network/interfaces file in a text editor:

```
auto br101
iface br101
    bridge-ports swp1.101 vni10101
    bridge-learning vni10101=off
    post-up bridge fdb add 00:11:22:33:44:55 dev swp1.101
master static
```

## EVPN Operational Commands

### *General Linux Commands Related to EVPN*

You can use various iproute2 commands to examine links, VLAN mappings and the bridge MAC forwarding database known to the Linux kernel. You can also use such commands to examine the neighbor cache and the routing table (for the underlay or for a specific tenant VRF). Some of the key commands are:

- ip [-d] link show
- bridge link show
- bridge vlan show
- bridge [-s] fdb show
- ip neighbor show
- ip route show [table <vrf-name>]

A sample output of ip -d link show type vxlan is shown below for one VXLAN interface. Some relevant parameters are the VNI value, the state, the local IP address for the VXLAN tunnel, the UDP port number (4789) and the bridge that the interface is part of (bridge in the example below). The output also shows that MAC learning is disabled (*off*) on the VXLAN interface.

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ ip -d link show type vxlan
9: vni100: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
    master bridge state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT group default
        link/ether 72:bc:b4:a3:eb:1e brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff promiscuity 1
        vxlan id 10100 local 110.0.0.1 srcport 0 0 dstport 4789
        nolearning ageing 300
```

```

bridge_slave state forwarding priority 8 cost 100 hairpin off
guard off root_block off fastleave off learning off flood on port_id
0x8001 port_no 0x1 designated_port 32769 designated_cost 0
designated_bridge 8000.0:1:0:0:11:0 designated_root 8000.0:1:0:0:11:0
hold_timer 0.00 message_age_timer 0.00 forward_delay_timer
0.00 topology_change_ack 0 config_pending 0 proxy_arp off
proxy_arp_wifi off mcast_router 1 mcast_fast_leave off mcast_flood on
neigh_suppress on group_fwd_mask 0x0 group_fwd_mask_str 0x0
group_fwd_maskhi 0x0 group_fwd_maskhi_str 0x0 addrgenmode eui64
...
cumulus@leaf01:~$
```

A sample output of `bridge fdb show` is depicted below. Some information of interest from this output are:

- `swp3` and `swp4` are access ports with VLAN ID 100. This is mapped to VXLAN interface `vni100`.
- `00:02:00:00:00:01` is a local host MAC learned on `swp3`.
- The remote VTEPs which participate in VLAN ID 100 are `110.0.0.3`, `110.0.0.4` and `110.0.0.2`. This is evident from the FDB entries with a MAC address of `00:00:00:00:00:00`. These entries are used for BUM traffic replication.
- `00:02:00:00:00:06` is a remote host MAC reachable over the VXLAN tunnel to `110.0.0.2`.

```

cumulus@leaf01:~$ bridge fdb show
00:02:00:00:00:13 dev swp3 master bridge permanent
00:02:00:00:00:01 dev swp3 vlan 100 master bridge
00:02:00:00:00:02 dev swp4 vlan 100 master bridge
72:bc:b4:a3:eb:1e dev vni100 master bridge permanent
00:02:00:00:00:06 dev vni100 vlan 100 offload master bridge
00:00:00:00:00:00 dev vni100 dst 110.0.0.3 self permanent
00:00:00:00:00:00 dev vni100 dst 110.0.0.4 self permanent
00:00:00:00:00:00 dev vni100 dst 110.0.0.2 self permanent
00:02:00:00:00:06 dev vni100 dst 110.0.0.2 self offload
...
```

A sample output of `ip neigh show` is depicted below. Some interesting information from this output includes:

- `50.1.1.11` is a locally-attached host on VLAN 100. It is shown twice because of the configuration of the anycast IP/MAC on the switch.
- `50.1.1.42` is a remote host on VLAN 100 and `60.1.1.23` is a remote host on VLAN 200. The MAC address of these hosts can be examined using the `bridge fdb show` command described earlier to determine the VTEPs behind which these hosts are located.

```

cumulus@leaf01:~$ ip neigh show
50.1.1.11 dev vlan100-v0 lladdr 00:02:00:00:00:01 STALE
50.1.1.42 dev vlan100 lladdr 00:02:00:00:00:0e offload REACHABLE
60.1.1.23 dev vlan200 lladdr 00:02:00:00:00:07 offload REACHABLE
50.1.1.11 dev vlan100 lladdr 00:02:00:00:00:01 REACHABLE
...
```



## General BGP Operational Commands Relevant to EVPN

The following commands are not unique to EVPN but help troubleshoot connectivity and route propagation. If BGP is used for the underlay routing, you can view a summary of the layer 3 fabric connectivity by running the `net show bgp summary` command:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show bgp summary
show bgp ipv4 unicast summary
=====
BGP router identifier 110.0.0.1, local AS number 65001 vrf-id 0
BGP table version 9
RIB entries 11, using 1496 bytes of memory
Peers 2, using 42 KiB of memory
Peer groups 1, using 72 bytes of memory

Neighbor          V        AS  MsgRcvd  MsgSent    TblVer  InQ  OutQ  Up
/Down State/PfxRcd
s1(swp49s0)      4        65100     43       49          0       0       0 02:04:
00                4
s2(swp49s1)      4        65100     43       49          0       0       0 02:03:
59                4
Total number of neighbors 2

show bgp ipv6 unicast summary
=====
No IPv6 neighbor is configured

show bgp evpn summary
=====
BGP router identifier 110.0.0.1, local AS number 65001 vrf-id 0
BGP table version 0
RIB entries 15, using 2040 bytes of memory
Peers 2, using 42 KiB of memory
Peer groups 1, using 72 bytes of memory

Neighbor          V        AS  MsgRcvd  MsgSent    TblVer  InQ  OutQ  Up
/Down State/PfxRcd
s1(swp49s0)      4        65100     43       49          0       0       0 02:04:
00                30
s2(swp49s1)      4        65100     43       49          0       0       0 02:03:
59                30
Total number of neighbors 2
```

You can examine the underlay routing, which determines how remote VTEPs are reached, by running the `net show route` command. Here is some sample output from a leaf switch:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show route
show ip route
```

```
=====
Codes: K - kernel route, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP,
       O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP, P - PIM, E - EIGRP, N - NHRP,
       T - Table, v - VNC, V - VNC-Direct, A - Babel,
       > - selected route, * - FIB route
K>* 0.0.0.0/0 [0/0] via 192.168.0.2, eth0, 1d03h41m
B>* 20.0.0.1/32 [20/0] via fe80::202:ff:fe00:29, swp1, 1d03h40m
B>* 20.0.0.2/32 [20/0] via fe80::202:ff:fe00:2d, swp2, 1d03h40m
C>* 110.0.0.1/32 is directly connected, lo, 1d03h41m
B>* 110.0.0.2/32 [20/0] via fe80::202:ff:fe00:29, swp1, 1d03h40m
*           via fe80::202:ff:fe00:2d, swp2, 1d03h40m
B>* 110.0.0.3/32 [20/0] via fe80::202:ff:fe00:29, swp1, 1d03h40m
*           via fe80::202:ff:fe00:2d, swp2, 1d03h40m
B>* 110.0.0.4/32 [20/0] via fe80::202:ff:fe00:29, swp1, 1d03h40m
*           via fe80::202:ff:fe00:2d, swp2, 1d03h40m
C>* 192.168.0.0/24 is directly connected, eth0, 1d03h41m

show ipv6 route
=====
Codes: K - kernel route, C - connected, S - static, R - RIPng,
       O - OSPFv3, I - IS-IS, B - BGP, N - NHRP, T - Table,
       v - VNC, V - VNC-Direct, A - Babel,
       > - selected route, * - FIB route
C * fe80::/64 is directly connected, swp2, 1d03h41m
C * fe80::/64 is directly connected, swp1, 1d03h41m
C>* fe80::/64 is directly connected, eth0, 1d03h41m
cumulus@leaf01:~$
```

You can view the MAC forwarding database on the switch by running the `net show bridge macs` command:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show bridge macs
VLAN      Master     Interface      MAC                                TunnelDest
State      Flags      LastSeen
-----  -----
-----  -----
100       br0        br0          00:00:5e:00:01:01
permanent
100       br0        br0          00:01:00:00:11:00
permanent
100       br0        swp3         00:02:00:00:00:
01                    00:00:26
100       br0        swp4         00:02:00:00:00:
02                    00:00:16
100       br0        vni100      00:02:00:00:00:
0a                    offload      1 day, 03:38:20
100       br0        vni100      00:02:00:00:00:
0d                    offload      1 day, 03:38:20
100       br0        vni100      00:02:00:00:00:
0e                    offload      1 day, 03:38:20
```



```
100      br0      vni100      00:02:00:00:00:  
05          offload      1 day, 03:38:19  
100      br0      vni100      00:02:00:00:00:  
06          offload      1 day, 03:38:19  
100      br0      vni100      00:02:00:00:00:  
09          offload      1 day, 03:38:20  
200      br0      br0      00:00:5e:00:01:01  
permanent      1 day, 03:38:42  
200      br0      br0      00:01:00:00:11:00  
permanent      1 day, 03:38:43  
200      br0      swp5      00:02:00:00:00:  
03          00:00:26  
200      br0      swp6      00:02:00:00:00:  
04          00:00:26  
200      br0      vni200      00:02:00:00:00:  
0b          offload      1 day, 03:38:20  
200      br0      vni200      00:02:00:00:00:  
0c          offload      1 day, 03:38:20  
200      br0      vni200      00:02:00:00:00:  
0f          offload      1 day, 03:38:20  
200      br0      vni200      00:02:00:00:00:  
07          offload      1 day, 03:38:19  
200      br0      vni200      00:02:00:00:00:  
08          offload      1 day, 03:38:19  
200      br0      vni200      00:02:00:00:00:  
10          offload      1 day, 03:38:20  
4001      br0      br0      00:01:00:00:11:00  
permanent      1 day, 03:38:42  
4001      br0      vni4001      00:01:00:00:12:  
00          offload      1 day, 03:38:19  
4001      br0      vni4001      00:01:00:00:13:  
00          offload      1 day, 03:38:20  
4001      br0      vni4001      00:01:00:00:14:  
00          offload      1 day, 03:38:20  
untagged      br0      00:00:5e:00:01:01  
permanent self      never  
untagged      vlan100      00:00:5e:00:01:01  
permanent self      never  
untagged      vlan200      00:00:5e:00:01:01  
permanent self      never  
...
```

## Displaying EVPN address-family Peers

The BGP peers participating in the L2VPN/EVPN address-family and their states can be shown using the `net show bgp l2vpn evpn summary` command. The following sample output from a leaf switch shows eBGP peering with 2 spine switches for exchanging EVPN routes; both peering sessions are in the *established* state.

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show bgp l2vpn evpn summary
```

```
BGP router identifier 110.0.0.1, local AS number 65001 vrf-id 0
BGP table version 0
RIB entries 15, using 2280 bytes of memory
Peers 2, using 39 KiB of memory
Peer groups 1, using 64 bytes of memory
Neighbor          V        AS MsgRcvd MsgSent   TblVer  InQ OutQ Up
/Down State/PfxRcd
s1(swpl)         4       65100    103     107      0      0      0
1d02h08m          30
s2(swp2)         4       65100    103     107      0      0      0
1d02h08m          30
Total number of neighbors 2
cumulus@leaf01:~$
```

## Displaying VNIs in EVPN

You can display the configured VNIs on a network device participating in BGP EVPN by running the `show bgp evpn vni` command. This command is only relevant on a VTEP. If symmetric routing is configured, this command displays the special L3-VNIs that are configured per tenant VRF.

The following example from a leaf switch shows 2 L2-VNIs — 10100 and 10200 — as well as a L3-VNI — 104001. For L2-VNIs, the number of associated MAC and neighbor entries are shown. The VXLAN interface and VRF corresponding to each VNI are also shown.

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show evpn vni
VNI          Type VxLAN IF                  # MACs  # ARPs  # Remote
VTEPs  Tenant VRF
10200    L2   vni200                      8      12      3
vrf1
10100    L2   vni100                      8      12      3
vrf1
104001   L3   vni4001                     3      3      n/a
vrf1
cumulus@leaf01:~$
```

You can examine the EVPN information for a specific VNI in detail. The following output shows the details for the L2-VNI 10100 as well as for the L3-VNI 104001. For the L2-VNI, the remote VTEPs which have that VNI are shown. For the L3-VNI, the router MAC and associated L2-VNIs are shown. The state of the L3-VNI depends on the state of its associated VRF as well as the states of its underlying VXLAN interface and SVI.

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show evpn vni 10100
VNI: 10100
Type: L2
Tenant VRF: vrf1
VxLAN interface: vni100
VxLAN ifIndex: 9
Local VTEP IP: 110.0.0.1
Remote VTEPs for this VNI:
  110.0.0.2
```



```
110.0.0.4
110.0.0.3
Number of MACs (local and remote) known for this VNI: 8
Number of ARPs (IPv4 and IPv6, local and remote) known for this VNI:
12
Advertise-gw-macip: No
cumulus@leaf01:~$ 
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show evpn vni 104001
VNI: 104001
  Type: L3
  Tenant VRF: vrf1
  Local Vtep Ip: 110.0.0.1
  Vxlan-Intf: vni4001
  SVI-If: vlan4001
  State: Up
  Router MAC: 00:01:00:00:11:00
  L2 VNIs: 10100 10200
cumulus@leaf01:~$
```

## Examining Local and Remote MAC Addresses for a VNI in EVPN

You can examine all local and remote MAC addresses for a VNI by running `net show evpn mac vni <vni>`. This command is only relevant for an L2-VNI:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show evpn mac vni 10100
Number of MACs (local and remote) known for this VNI: 8
MAC          Type   Intf/Remote VTEP      VLAN
00:02:00:00:00:0e remote 110.0.0.4
00:02:00:00:00:06 remote 110.0.0.2
00:02:00:00:00:05 remote 110.0.0.2
00:02:00:00:00:02 local   swp4           100
00:00:5e:00:01:01 local   vlan100-v0     100
00:02:00:00:00:09 remote 110.0.0.3
00:01:00:00:11:00 local   vlan100         100
00:02:00:00:00:01 local   swp3           100
00:02:00:00:00:0a remote 110.0.0.3
00:02:00:00:00:0d remote 110.0.0.4
cumulus@leaf01:~$
```

You can examine MAC addresses for all VNIs using `net show evpn mac vni all`.

You can examine the details for a specific MAC addresses or query all remote MAC addresses behind a specific VTEP:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show evpn mac vni 10100 mac 00:02:00:00:00:02
MAC: 00:02:00:00:00:02
  Intf: swp4(6) VLAN: 100
  Neighbors:
    50.1.1.12 Active
```

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show evpn mac vni 10100 mac 00:02:00:00:00:05
MAC: 00:02:00:00:00:05
  Remote VTEP: 110.0.0.2
  Neighbors:
    50.1.1.21
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show evpn mac vni 10100 vtep 110.0.0.3
VNI 10100
MAC          Type   Intf/Remote VTEP      VLAN
00:02:00:00:00:09 remote 110.0.0.3
00:02:00:00:00:0a remote 110.0.0.3
cumulus@leaf01:~$
```

## *Examining Local and Remote Neighbors for a VNI in EVPN*

You can examine all local and remote neighbors (ARP entries) for a VNI by running `net show evpn arp-cache vni <vnid>`. This command is only relevant for an L2-VNI and the output shows both IPv4 and IPv6 neighbor entries:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show evpn arp-cache vni 10100
Number of ARPs (local and remote) known for this VNI: 12
IP                  Type   MAC           Remote VTEP
50.1.1.11            local  00:02:00:00:00:01
50.1.1.12            local  00:02:00:00:00:02
50.1.1.22            remote 00:02:00:00:00:06 110.0.0.2
fe80::201:ff:fe00:1100 local  00:01:00:00:11:00
50.1.1.1              local  00:01:00:00:11:00
50.1.1.31             remote 00:02:00:00:00:09 110.0.0.3
fe80::200:5eff:fe00:101 local  00:00:5e:00:01:01
...
...
```

You can examine neighbor entries for all VNIs using `net show evpn arp-cache vni all`.

## *Examining Remote Router MACs in EVPN*

When symmetric routing is deployed, you can examine the router MACs corresponding to all remote VTEPs by running `net show evpn rmac vni <vnid>`. This command is only relevant for an L3-VNI:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show evpn rmac vni 104001
Number of Remote RMACs known for this VNI: 3
MAC          Remote VTEP
00:01:00:00:14:00 110.0.0.4
00:01:00:00:12:00 110.0.0.2
00:01:00:00:13:00 110.0.0.3
cumulus@leaf01:~$
```

You can examine router MACs for all L3-VNIs using `net show evpn rmac vni all`.



## Examining Gateway Next Hops in EVPN

When symmetric routing is deployed, you can examine the gateway next hops by running `net show evpn next-hops vni <vnid>`. This command is only relevant for an L3-VNI. In general, the gateway next hop IP addresses should correspond to the remote VTEP IP addresses. Remote host and prefix routes are installed via these next hops:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show evpn next-hops vni 104001
Number of NH Neighbors known for this VNI: 3
  IP          RMAC
 110.0.0.3    00:01:00:00:13:00
 110.0.0.4    00:01:00:00:14:00
 110.0.0.2    00:01:00:00:12:00
cumulus@leaf01:~$
```

You can examine gateway next hops for all L3-VNIs using `net show evpn next-hops vni all`.

You can query a specific next hop; the output displays the remote host and prefix routes via this next hop:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show evpn next-hops vni 104001 ip 110.0.0.4
Ip: 110.0.0.4
  RMAC: 00:01:00:00:14:00
  Refcount: 4
  Prefixes:
    50.1.1.41/32
    50.1.1.42/32
    60.1.1.43/32
    60.1.1.44/32
cumulus@leaf01:~$
```

## Displaying the VRF Routing Table in FRR

You can examine the VRF routing table by running `net show route vrf <vrf-name>`. This command is not specific to EVPN. In the context of EVPN, this command is relevant when symmetric routing is deployed and can be used to verify that remote host and prefix routes are installed in the VRF routing table and point to the appropriate gateway next hop:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show route vrf vrf1
show ip route vrf vrf1
=====
Codes: K - kernel route, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP,
       O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP, P - PIM, E - EIGRP, N - NHRP,
       T - Table, v - VNC, V - VNC-Direct, A - Babel,
       > - selected route, * - FIB route

VRF vrf1:
K * 0.0.0.0/0 [255/8192] unreachable (ICMP unreachable), 1d02h42m
C * 50.1.1.0/24 is directly connected, vlan100-v0, 1d02h42m
```

```

C>* 50.1.1.0/24 is directly connected, vlan100, 1d02h42m
B>* 50.1.1.21/32 [20/0] via 110.0.0.2, vlan4001 onlink, 1d02h41m
B>* 50.1.1.22/32 [20/0] via 110.0.0.2, vlan4001 onlink, 1d02h41m
B>* 50.1.1.31/32 [20/0] via 110.0.0.3, vlan4001 onlink, 1d02h41m
B>* 50.1.1.32/32 [20/0] via 110.0.0.3, vlan4001 onlink, 1d02h41m
B>* 50.1.1.41/32 [20/0] via 110.0.0.4, vlan4001 onlink, 1d02h41m
...

```

As you can see in the output above, the next hops for these routes are specified by EVPN to be *onlink*, or reachable over the specified SVI. This is necessary because this interface is not required to have an IP address, and even if it is configured with an IP address, the next hop would not be on the same subnet as it is usually the remote VTEP's IP address, and hence, part of the underlay IP network.

## *Displaying the Global BGP EVPN Routing Table*

Run the `net show bgp 12vpn evpn route` command to display all EVPN routes, both local and remote. The routes displayed here are based on RD as they are across VNIs and VRFs:

```

cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show bgp 12vpn evpn route
BGP table version is 0, local router ID is 110.0.0.1
Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, > best, i -
internal
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete
EVPN type-2 prefix: [2]:[ESI]:[EthTag]:[MAClen]:[MAC]
EVPN type-3 prefix: [3]:[EthTag]:[IPlen]:[OrigIP]
      Network          Next Hop           Metric LocPrf Weight Path
Route Distinguisher: 110.0.0.1:1
*> [2]:[0]:[48]:[00:02:00:00:00:01]
              110.0.0.1                  32768  i
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[00:02:00:00:00:01]:[32]:[50.1.1.11]
              110.0.0.1                  32768  i
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[00:02:00:00:00:01]:[128]:[2001:50:1:1::11]
              110.0.0.1                  32768  i
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[00:02:00:00:00:02]
              110.0.0.1                  32768  i
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[00:02:00:00:00:02]:[32]:[50.1.1.12]
              110.0.0.1                  32768  i
*> [3]:[0]:[32]:[110.0.0.1]
              110.0.0.1                  32768  i
Route Distinguisher: 110.0.0.1:2
*> [2]:[0]:[48]:[00:02:00:00:00:01]
              110.0.0.1                  32768  i
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[00:02:00:00:00:01]:[32]:[60.1.1.11]
              110.0.0.1                  32768  i
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[00:02:00:00:00:02]
              110.0.0.1                  32768  i
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[00:02:00:00:00:02]:[32]:[60.1.1.12]
              110.0.0.1                  32768  i
*> [3]:[0]:[32]:[110.0.0.1]
              110.0.0.1                  32768  i

```



...

The routing table can be filtered based on EVPN route type. The available options are as shown below:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show bgp 12vpn evpn route type
  macip      : MAC-IP (Type-2) route
  multicast   : Multicast
  prefix     : An IPv4 or IPv6 prefix
cumulus@leaf01:~$
```

### *Displaying a Specific EVPN Route*

To drill down on a specific route for more information, run the `net show bgp 12vpn evpn route rd <rd-value>` command. This displays all EVPN routes with that RD and with the path attribute details for each path. Additional filtering is possible based on route type or by specifying the MAC and/or IP address. The following example shows a specific MAC/IP route. The output shows that this remote host is behind VTEP 110.0.0.4 and is reachable via two paths — one through either spine switch. This example is from a symmetric routing deployment, so the route shows both the L2-VNI (10200) and the L3-VNI (104001) as well as the EVPN route target attributes corresponding to each and the associated router MAC address.

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show bgp 12vpn evpn route rd 110.0.0.4:3 mac 00:02:00:00:00:10 ip 60.1.1.44
BGP routing table entry for 110.0.0.4:3:[2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[00:02:00:00:00:10]:[32]:[60.1.1.44]
Paths: (2 available, best #2)
  Advertised to non peer-group peers:
    s1(swp1) s2(swp2)
    Route [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[00:02:00:00:00:10]:[32]:[60.1.1.44] VNI
10200/104001
65100 65004
  110.0.0.4 from s2(swp2) (20.0.0.2)
    Origin IGP, localpref 100, valid, external
    Extended Community: RT:65004:10200 RT:65004:104001 ET:8 Rmac:00:01:00:00:00:14:00
      AddPath ID: RX 0, TX 97
      Last update: Sun Dec 17 20:57:24 2017
    Route [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[00:02:00:00:00:10]:[32]:[60.1.1.44] VNI
10200/104001
65100 65004
  110.0.0.4 from s1(swp1) (20.0.0.1)
    Origin IGP, localpref 100, valid, external, bestpath-from-AS
65100, best
    Extended Community: RT:65004:10200 RT:65004:104001 ET:8 Rmac:00:01:00:00:00:14:00
      AddPath ID: RX 0, TX 71
      Last update: Sun Dec 17 20:57:23 2017
Displayed 2 paths for requested prefix
```

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$
```



- Only global VNIs are supported. So even though VNI values are exchanged in the type-2 and type-5 routes, the received values are not used when installing the routes into the forwarding plane; the local configuration is used. You must ensure that the VLAN to VNI mappings and the L3-VNI assignment for a tenant VRF are uniform throughout the network.
- If the remote host is dual attached, the next hop for the EVPN route is the anycast IP address of the remote [MLAG \(see page 351\)](#) pair, when MLAG is active.

The following example shows a prefix (type-5) route. Such a route has only the L3-VNI and the route target corresponding to this VNI. This route is learned via two paths, one through each spine switch.

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show bgp 12vpn evpn route rd 144.1.1.2:3 type
prefix
EVPN type-2 prefix: [2]:[ESI]:[EthTag]:[MAClen]:[MAC]
EVPN type-3 prefix: [3]:[EthTag]:[IPlen]:[OrigIP]
EVPN type-5 prefix: [5]:[EthTag]:[IPlen]:[IP]
BGP routing table entry for 144.1.1.2:3:[5]:[0]:[30]:[144.1.1.0]
Paths: (2 available, best #2)
    Advertised to non peer-group peers:
        s1(swp1) s2(swp2)
        Route [5]:[0]:[30]:[144.1.1.0] VNI 104001
        65100 65050
            110.0.0.5 from s2(swp2) (20.0.0.2)
                Origin incomplete, localpref 100, valid, external
                Extended Community: RT:65050:104001 ET:8 Rmac:00:01:00:00:01:00
                AddPath ID: RX 0, TX 112
                Last update: Tue Dec 19 00:12:18 2017
        Route [5]:[0]:[30]:[144.1.1.0] VNI 104001
        65100 65050
            110.0.0.5 from s1(swp1) (20.0.0.1)
                Origin incomplete, localpref 100, valid, external, bestpath-
from-AS 65100, best
                Extended Community: RT:65050:104001 ET:8 Rmac:00:01:00:00:01:00
                AddPath ID: RX 0, TX 71
                Last update: Tue Dec 19 00:12:17 2017

Displayed 1 prefixes (2 paths) with this RD (of requested type)
cumulus@leaf01:~$
```

## *Displaying the per-VNI EVPN Routing Table*

Received EVPN routes are maintained in the global EVPN routing table (described above), even if there are no appropriate local VNIs to **import** them into. For example, a spine switch maintains the global EVPN routing table even though there are no VNIs present on it. When local VNIs are present, received EVPN routes are imported into the per-VNI routing tables based on the route target attributes. The per-VNI routing table can be examined using the `net show bgp 12vpn evpn route vni <vni>` command:



```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show bgp l2vpn evpn route vni 10110
BGP table version is 8, local router ID is 110.0.0.1
Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, > best, i -
internal
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete
EVPN type-2 prefix: [2]:[ESI]:[EthTag]:[MAClen]:[MAC]:[IPlen]:[IP]
EVPN type-3 prefix: [3]:[EthTag]:[IPlen]:[OrigIP]
      Network          Next Hop          Metric LocPrf Weight Path
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[00:02:00:00:00:07]
              110.0.0.1                  32768  i
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[00:02:00:00:00:07]:[32]:[50.1.1.11]
              110.0.0.1                  32768  i
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[00:02:00:00:00:07]:[128]:[fe80::202:ff:fe00:7]
              110.0.0.1                  32768  i
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[00:02:00:00:00:08]
              110.0.0.1                  32768  i
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[00:02:00:00:00:08]:[32]:[50.1.1.12]
              110.0.0.1                  32768  i
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[00:02:00:00:00:08]:[128]:[fe80::202:ff:fe00:8]
              110.0.0.1                  32768  i
*> [3]:[0]:[32]:[110.0.0.1]
              110.0.0.1                  32768  i
Displayed 7 prefixes (7 paths)
cumulus@leaf01:~$
```

To display the VNI routing table for all VNIs, run `net show bgp evpn route vni all`.

### Displaying the per-VRF BGP Routing Table

When symmetric routing is deployed, received type-2 and type-5 routes are imported into the VRF routing table (against the corresponding address-family: IPv4 unicast or IPv6 unicast) based on a match on the route target attributes. You can examine BGP's VRF routing table using `net show bgp vrf <vrf-name> ipv4 unicast` (or `net show bgp vrf <vrf-name> ipv6 unicast`):

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show bgp vrf vrf1 ipv4 unicast
BGP table version is 8, local router ID is 50.1.1.250
Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, > best, =
multipath,
              i internal, r RIB-failure, S Stale, R Removed
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete
      Network          Next Hop          Metric LocPrf Weight Path
* 50.1.2.21/32      110.0.0.2                  0 65100
65002 i
*>                   110.0.0.2                  0 65100
65002 i
* 50.1.2.22/32      110.0.0.2                  0 65100
65002 i
```



```
*>          110.0.0.2          0 65100
65002 i
* 50.1.3.31/32    110.0.0.3          0 65100
65003 i
*>          110.0.0.3          0 65100
65003 i
* 50.1.3.32/32    110.0.0.3          0 65100
65003 i
*>          110.0.0.3          0 65100
65003 i
* 50.1.4.41/32    110.0.0.4          0 65100
65004 i
*>          110.0.0.4          0 65100
65004 i
* 50.1.4.42/32    110.0.0.4          0 65100
65004 i
*>          110.0.0.4          0 65100
65004 i
* 144.1.1.0/30    110.0.0.5          0 65100
65050 ?
*>          110.0.0.5          0 65100
65050 ?
* 144.2.1.0/30    110.0.0.6          0 65100
65050 ?
*>          110.0.0.6          0 65100
65050 ?
Displayed 8 routes and 16 total paths
cumulus@leaf01:~$
```

## Examining MAC Moves

The first time a MAC moves from behind one VTEP to behind another, BGP associates a MAC Mobility (MM) extended community attribute of sequence number 1, with the type-2 route for that MAC. From there, each time this MAC moves to a new VTEP, the MM sequence number increments by 1. You can examine the MM sequence number associated with a MAC's type-2 route using `net show bgp evpn route vni <vni> mac <mac>`. The sample output below shows the type-2 route for a MAC that has moved three times:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show bgp evpn route vni 10109 mac 00:02:22:22:
22:02
BGP routing table entry for [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[00:02:22:22:22:02]
Paths: (1 available, best #1)
Not advertised to any peer
Route [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[00:02:22:22:22:02] VNI 10109
Local
6.0.0.184 from 0.0.0.0 (6.0.0.184)
Origin IGP, localpref 100, weight 32768, valid, sourced, local,
bestpath-from-AS Local, best
Extended Community: RT:650184:10109 ET:8 MM:3
AddPath ID: RX 0, TX 10350121
Last update: Tue Feb 14 18:40:37 2017
```



Displayed 1 paths for requested prefix

## Examining Sticky MAC Addresses

You can identify static or "sticky" MACs in EVPN by the presence of "MM:0, sticky MAC" in the Extended Community line of the output from `net show bgp evpn route vni <vnid> mac <mac>`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show bgp evpn route vni 10101 mac 00:02:00:00:00:00:01
BGP routing table entry for [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[00:02:00:00:00:01]
Paths: (1 available, best #1)
  Not advertised to any peer
  Route [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[00:02:00:00:00:01] VNI 10101
    Local
      6.0.0.18 from 0.0.0.0 (6.0.0.18)
        Origin IGP, localpref 100, weight 32768, valid, sourced, local,
        bestpath-from-AS Local, best
          Extended Community: ET:8 RT:60176:10101 MM:0, sticky MAC
          AddPath ID: RX 0, TX 46
          Last update: Tue Apr 11 21:44:02 2017
```

Displayed 1 paths for requested prefix

## Troubleshooting EVPN

The primary way to troubleshoot EVPN is by enabling FRR debug logs. The relevant debug options are:

- `debug zebra vxlan` — which traces VNI addition and deletion (local and remote) as well as MAC and neighbor addition and deletion (local and remote).
- `debug zebra kernel` — which traces actual netlink messages exchanged with the kernel, which includes everything, not just EVPN.
- `debug bgp updates` — which traces BGP update exchanges, including all updates. Output is extended to show EVPN specific information.
- `debug bgp zebra` — which traces interactions between BGP and zebra for EVPN (and other) routes.

## Caveats

The following caveats apply to EVPN in this version of Cumulus Linux:

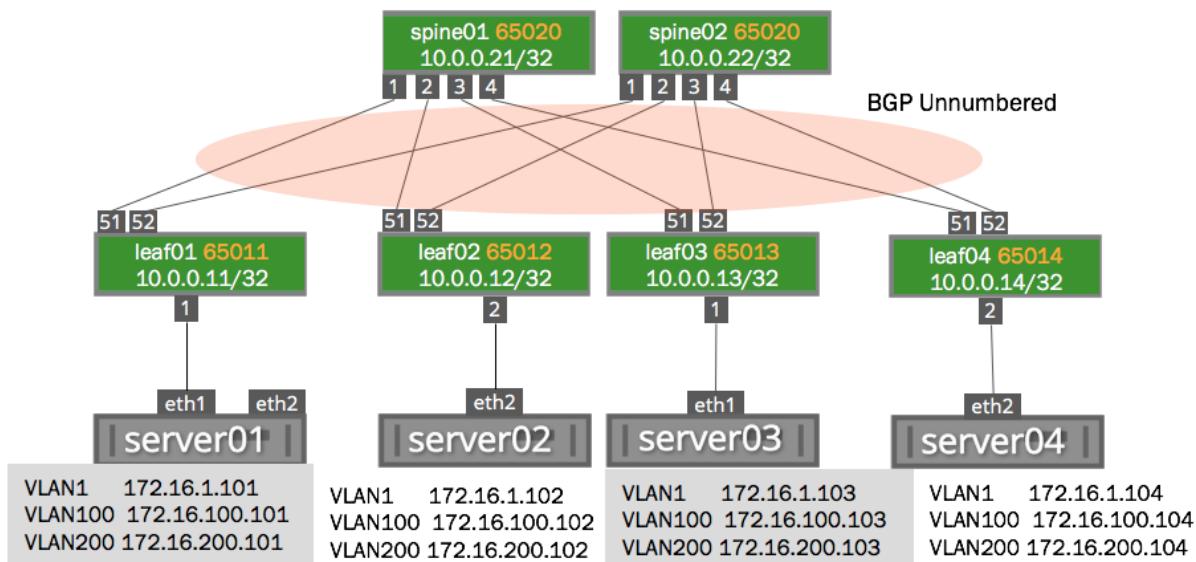
- When EVPN is enabled on a switch (VTEP), all locally defined VNIs on that switch and other information (such as MAC addresses) pertaining to them will be advertised to EVPN peers. There is no provision to only announce certain VNIs.
- In a [VXLAN active-active \(see page 438\)](#) configuration, ARPs may sometimes not be suppressed even if ARP suppression is enabled. This is because the neighbor entries are not synced between the two switches operating in active-active mode by a control plane. This has no impact on forwarding.

- Symmetric routing and prefix-based routing are only supported for IPv4 hosts and IPv4 prefixes; IPv6 routing is currently supported with asymmetric routing only.
- Currently, only switches with the Mellanox Spectrum chipset or the Broadcom Tomahawk chipset can be deployed as a border/exit leaf. If you want to use a Broadcom Trident II+ switch as a border/exit leaf, please [read release note 766](#) for a necessary workaround; the workaround only applies to Trident II+ switches, not Tomahawk or Spectrum.
- The overlay (tenants) need to be configured in a specific VRF(s) and separated from the underlay, which resides in the default VRF. An L3-VNI mapping for the default VRF is not supported.

## Example Configuration

### *Example Configuration for EVPN for Bridging*

The following configurations are used throughout this chapter. You can find the flat-file configurations for the network devices in the Cumulus Networks [GitHub repository](#). Only a subset is shown here for brevity (not shown are configurations for leaf03, leaf04, server03, server04). Here is the topology diagram:



*leaf01 and leaf02 Configurations*

leaf01 /etc/network/interfaces

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.0.0.11/32
auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
# uplinks
auto swp51
iface swp51
auto swp52
iface swp52
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports swp1
vxlan10001 vxlan10100
vxlan10200
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-vids 1 100 200
    bridge-pvid 1
auto vxlan10001
iface vxlan10001
    vxlan-id 10001
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.11
    bridge-access 1
    bridge-learning off
auto vxlan10100
iface vxlan10100
    vxlan-id 10100
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.11
    bridge-access 100
    bridge-learning off
auto vxlan10200
iface vxlan10200
    vxlan-id 10200
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.11
    bridge-access 200
    bridge-learning off
```

leaf02 /etc/network/interfaces

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.0.0.12/32
auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
# uplinks
auto swp51
iface swp51
auto swp52
iface swp52
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports swp2
vxlan10001 vxlan10100
vxlan10200
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-vids 1 100 200
    bridge-pvid 1
auto vxlan10001
iface vxlan10001
    vxlan-id 10001
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.12
    bridge-access 1
    bridge-learning off
auto vxlan10100
iface vxlan10100
    vxlan-id 10100
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.12
    bridge-access 100
    bridge-learning off
auto vxlan10200
iface vxlan10200
    vxlan-id 10200
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.12
    bridge-access 200
    bridge-learning off
```

leaf01 /etc/frr/frr.conf

leaf02 /etc/frr/frr.conf

```

!
interface swp51
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
interface swp52
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
router bgp 65011
  bgp router-id 10.0.0.11
  bgp bestpath as-path
multipath-relax
  neighbor fabric peer-group
  neighbor fabric remote-as
external
  neighbor fabric description
Internal Fabric Network
  neighbor fabric capability
extended-nexthop
  neighbor swp51 interface peer-
group fabric
  neighbor swp52 interface peer-
group fabric
!
address-family ipv4 unicast
  network 10.0.0.11/32
  neighbor fabric prefix-list
dc-leaf-in in
  neighbor fabric prefix-list
dc-leaf-out out
  exit-address-family
!
!
address-family ipv6 unicast
  neighbor fabric activate
exit-address-family
!
address-family l2vpn evpn
  neighbor fabric activate
  advertise-all-vni
exit-address-family
exit
!
ip prefix-list dc-leaf-in seq
10 permit 0.0.0.0/0
ip prefix-list dc-leaf-in seq
20 permit 10.0.0.0/24 le 32
ip prefix-list dc-leaf-in seq
500 deny any

```

```

!
interface swp51
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
interface swp52
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
router bgp 65012
  bgp router-id 10.0.0.12
  bgp bestpath as-path
multipath-relax
  neighbor fabric peer-group
  neighbor fabric remote-as
external
  neighbor fabric description
Internal Fabric Network
  neighbor fabric capability
extended-nexthop
  neighbor swp51 interface peer-
group fabric
  neighbor swp52 interface peer-
group fabric
!
address-family ipv4 unicast
  network 10.0.0.12/32
  neighbor fabric prefix-list
dc-leaf-in in
  neighbor fabric prefix-list
dc-leaf-out out
  exit-address-family
!
!
address-family ipv6 unicast
  neighbor fabric activate
exit-address-family
!
address-family l2vpn evpn
  neighbor fabric activate
  advertise-all-vni
exit-address-family
exit
!
ip prefix-list dc-leaf-in seq
10 permit 0.0.0.0/0
ip prefix-list dc-leaf-in seq
20 permit 10.0.0.0/24 le 32
ip prefix-list dc-leaf-in seq
500 deny any

```

```
ip prefix-list dc-leaf-out seq  
20 permit 10.0.0.0/24 le 32  
ip prefix-list dc-leaf-out seq  
500 deny any  
!  
line vty  
!  
end
```

```
ip prefix-list dc-leaf-out seq  
20 permit 10.0.0.0/24 le 32  
ip prefix-list dc-leaf-out seq  
500 deny any  
!  
line vty  
!  
end
```



## spine01 and spine02 Configurations

spine01 /etc/network/interfaces

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.0.0.21/32
auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
# downlinks
auto swp1
iface swp1
auto swp2
iface swp2
auto swp3
iface swp3
auto swp4
iface swp4
```

spine02 /etc/network/interfaces

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.0.0.22/32
auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
# downlinks
auto swp1
iface swp1
auto swp2
iface swp2
auto swp3
iface swp3
auto swp4
iface swp4
```

spine01 /etc/frr/frr.conf

```
!
interface swp1
    ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
    no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
interface swp2
    ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
    no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
interface swp3
    ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
    no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
interface swp4
    ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
    no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
router bgp 65020
    bgp router-id 10.0.0.21
    bgp bestpath as-path
    multipath-relax
        neighbor fabric peer-group
        neighbor fabric remote-as
        external
```

spine02 /etc/frr/frr.conf

```
!
interface swp1
    ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
    no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
interface swp2
    ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
    no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
interface swp3
    ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
    no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
interface swp4
    ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
    no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
router bgp 65020
    bgp router-id 10.0.0.22
    bgp bestpath as-path
    multipath-relax
        neighbor fabric peer-group
        neighbor fabric remote-as
        external
```

```

neighbor fabric description
Internal Fabric Network
neighbor fabric capability
extended-nexthop
neighbor swp1 interface peer-
group fabric
neighbor swp2 interface peer-
group fabric
neighbor swp3 interface peer-
group fabric
neighbor swp4 interface peer-
group fabric
!
address-family ipv4 unicast
    network 10.0.0.21/32
    neighbor fabric prefix-list
    dc-spine in
    neighbor fabric prefix-list
    dc-spine out
    exit-address-family
!
!
address-family ipv6 unicast
    neighbor fabric activate
exit-address-family
!
address-family l2vpn evpn
    neighbor fabric activate
exit-address-family
exit
!
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 10
permit 0.0.0.0/0
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 20
permit 10.0.0.0/24 le 32
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq
500 deny any
!
line vty
!
end

```

```

neighbor fabric description
Internal Fabric Network
neighbor fabric capability
extended-nexthop
neighbor swp1 interface peer-
group fabric
neighbor swp2 interface peer-
group fabric
neighbor swp3 interface peer-
group fabric
neighbor swp4 interface peer-
group fabric
!
address-family ipv4 unicast
    network 10.0.0.22/32
    neighbor fabric prefix-list
    dc-spine in
    neighbor fabric prefix-list
    dc-spine out
    exit-address-family
!
!
address-family ipv6 unicast
    neighbor fabric activate
exit-address-family
!
address-family l2vpn evpn
    neighbor fabric activate
exit-address-family
exit
!
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 10
permit 0.0.0.0/0
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 20
permit 10.0.0.0/24 le 32
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq
500 deny any
!
line vty
!
end

```

## *server01 and server02 Configurations*

### **server01 /etc/network /interfaces**

```
#configuration is for Cumulus
VX
#in real life this is a server
OS

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto eth1
iface eth1
    address 172.16.1.101/24

auto eth1.100
iface eth1.100
    address 172.16.100.101/24

auto eth1.200
iface eth1.200
    address 172.16.200.101/24
```

### **server02 /etc/network /interfaces**

```
#configuration is for Cumulus
VX
#in real life this is a server
OS

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

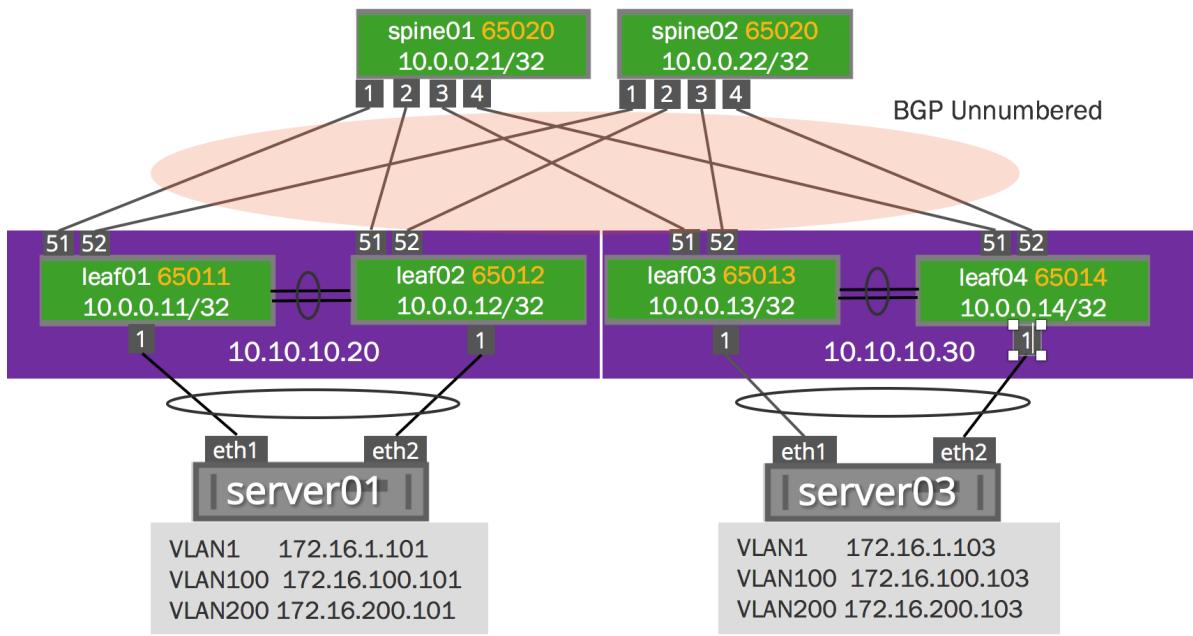
auto eth2
iface eth2
    address 172.16.1.102/24

auto eth2.100
iface eth2.100
    address 172.16.100.102/24

auto eth2.200
iface eth2.200
    address 172.16.200.102/24
```

## *Example Active-active Configuration*

The following configurations demonstrate a dual-attached ([MLAG \(see page 351\)](#)) EVPN scenario. You can find the flat-file configurations for the network devices in the Cumulus Networks [GitHub repository](#). Only a subset is shown here for brevity (not shown are configurations for leaf03, leaf04, server02, server04). Here is the topology diagram:





## *leaf01 and leaf02 Configurations*

leaf01 /etc/network/interfaces

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ cat /etc  
/network/interfaces  
auto lo  
iface lo inet loopback  
    alias loopback  
    address 10.0.0.11/32  
    clagd-vxlan-anycast-ip  
10.10.10.20  
auto eth0  
iface eth0 inet dhcp  
# uplinks  
auto swp51  
iface swp51  
auto swp52  
iface swp52  
#host connections  
auto swp1  
iface swp1  
auto server01  
iface server01  
    alias server01 MLAG bond  
    bond-slaves swp1  
    clag-id 1  
auto peerlink  
iface peerlink  
    alias MLAG peerlink bond  
    bond-slaves swp49 swp50  
auto peerlink.4094  
iface peerlink.4094  
    address 169.254.1.1/30  
    clagd-peer-ip 169.254.1.2  
    clagd-backup-ip  
192.168.200.12  
    clagd-sys-mac 44:38:39:FF:40:  
94  
auto bridge  
iface bridge  
    bridge-ports server01  
peerlink vxlan10001 vxlan10100  
vxlan10200  
    bridge-vlan-aware yes  
    bridge-vids 1 100 200  
    bridge-pvid 1  
auto vxlan10001
```

leaf02 /etc/network/interfaces

```
cumulus@leaf02:~$ cat /etc  
/network/interfaces  
auto lo  
iface lo inet loopback  
    alias loopback  
    address 10.0.0.12/32  
    clagd-vxlan-anycast-ip  
10.10.10.20  
auto eth0  
iface eth0 inet dhcp  
# uplinks  
auto swp51  
iface swp51  
auto swp52  
iface swp52  
#host connections  
auto swp1  
iface swp1  
auto server01  
iface server01  
    alias server01 MLAG bond  
    bond-slaves swp1  
    clag-id 1  
auto peerlink  
iface peerlink  
    alias MLAG peerlink bond  
    bond-slaves swp49 swp50  
auto peerlink.4094  
iface peerlink.4094  
    address 169.254.1.2/30  
    clagd-peer-ip 169.254.1.1  
    clagd-backup-ip  
192.168.200.11  
    clagd-sys-mac 44:38:39:FF:40:  
94  
auto bridge  
iface bridge  
    bridge-ports server01  
peerlink vxlan10001 vxlan10100  
vxlan10200  
    bridge-vlan-aware yes  
    bridge-vids 1 100 200  
    bridge-pvid 1  
auto vxlan10001
```



```
iface vxlan10001
    vxlan-id 10001
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.11
    bridge-access 1
    bridge-learning off
auto vxlan10100
iface vxlan10100
    vxlan-id 10100
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.11
    bridge-access 100
    bridge-learning off
auto vxlan10200
iface vxlan10200
    vxlan-id 10200
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.11
    bridge-access 200
    bridge-learning off
```

```
iface vxlan10001
    vxlan-id 10001
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.12
    bridge-access 1
    bridge-learning off
auto vxlan10100
iface vxlan10100
    vxlan-id 10100
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.12
    bridge-access 100
    bridge-learning off
auto vxlan10200
iface vxlan10200
    vxlan-id 10200
    vxlan-local-tunnelip
10.0.0.12
    bridge-access 200
    bridge-learning off
```

leaf01 /etc/frr/frr.conf

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ cat /etc/frr
/frr.conf
!
username cumulus nopassword
!
log syslog
!
interface swp51
    ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
    no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
interface swp52
    ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
    no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
router bgp 65011
    bgp router-id 10.0.0.11
    bgp bestpath as-path
    multipath-relax
    neighbor FABRIC peer-group
    neighbor FABRIC remote-as
    external
    neighbor FABRIC description
Internal FABRIC Network
```

leaf02 /etc/frr/frr.conf

```
cumulus@leaf02:~$ cat /etc/frr
/frr.conf
!
username cumulus nopassword
!
log syslog
!
interface swp51
    ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
    no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
interface swp52
    ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
    no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
router bgp 65012
    bgp router-id 10.0.0.12
    bgp bestpath as-path
    multipath-relax
    neighbor FABRIC peer-group
    neighbor FABRIC remote-as
    external
    neighbor FABRIC description
Internal FABRIC Network
```

```

neighbor FABRIC capability
extended-nexthop
  neighbor swp51 interface peer-
  group FABRIC
  neighbor swp52 interface peer-
  group FABRIC
!
  address-family ipv4 unicast
    network 10.0.0.11/32
    network 10.10.10.20/32
  exit-address-family
!
!
  address-family ipv6 unicast
    neighbor FABRIC activate
  exit-address-family
!
  address-family l2vpn evpn
    neighbor FABRIC activate
    advertise-all-vni
  exit-address-family
exit
!
line vty
!
end

```

```

neighbor FABRIC capability
extended-nexthop
  neighbor swp51 interface peer-
  group FABRIC
  neighbor swp52 interface peer-
  group FABRIC
!
  address-family ipv4 unicast
    network 10.0.0.12/32
    network 10.10.10.20/32
  exit-address-family
!
!
  address-family ipv6 unicast
    neighbor FABRIC activate
  exit-address-family
!
  address-family l2vpn evpn
    neighbor FABRIC activate
    advertise-all-vni
  exit-address-family
exit
!
line vty
!
end

```



## spine01 and spine02 Configurations

### spine01 /etc/network/interfaces

```
cumulus@spine01:~$ cat /etc  
/network/interfaces  
auto lo  
iface lo inet loopback  
    address 10.0.0.21/32  
  
auto eth0  
iface eth0 inet dhcp  
  
# downlinks  
auto swp1  
iface swp1  
  
auto swp2  
iface swp2  
  
auto swp3  
iface swp3  
  
auto swp4  
iface swp4
```

### spine02 /etc/network/interfaces

```
cumulus@spine01:~$ cat /etc  
/network/interfaces  
auto lo  
iface lo inet loopback  
    address 10.0.0.22/32  
  
auto eth0  
iface eth0 inet dhcp  
  
# downlinks  
auto swp1  
iface swp1  
  
auto swp2  
iface swp2  
  
auto swp3  
iface swp3  
  
auto swp4  
iface swp4
```

### spine01 /etc/frr/frr.conf

```
cumulus@spine01:~$ cat /etc/frr  
/frr.conf  
!  
username cumulus nopassword  
!  
log syslog  
!  
interface swp1  
    ipv6 nd ra-interval 10  
    no ipv6 nd suppress-ra  
!  
interface swp2  
    ipv6 nd ra-interval 10  
    no ipv6 nd suppress-ra  
!  
interface swp3  
    ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
```

### spine02 /etc/frr/frr.conf

```
cumulus@spine02:~$ cat /etc/frr  
/frr.conf  
!  
username cumulus nopassword  
!  
log syslog  
!  
interface swp1  
    ipv6 nd ra-interval 10  
    no ipv6 nd suppress-ra  
!  
interface swp2  
    ipv6 nd ra-interval 10  
    no ipv6 nd suppress-ra  
!  
interface swp3  
    ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
```

```

no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
interface swp4
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
router bgp 65020
  bgp router-id 10.0.0.21
  bgp bestpath as-path
multipath-relax
  neighbor fabric peer-group
  neighbor fabric remote-as
external
  neighbor fabric description
Internal Fabric Network
  neighbor fabric capability
extended-nexthop
  neighbor swp1 interface peer-
group fabric
  neighbor swp2 interface peer-
group fabric
  neighbor swp3 interface peer-
group fabric
  neighbor swp4 interface peer-
group fabric
!
address-family ipv4 unicast
  network 10.0.0.21/32
exit-address-family
!
!
address-family ipv6 unicast
  neighbor fabric activate
exit-address-family
!
address-family l2vpn evpn
  neighbor fabric activate
exit-address-family
exit
!
line vty
!
end

```

```

no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
interface swp4
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
  no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
router bgp 65020
  bgp router-id 10.0.0.22
  bgp bestpath as-path
multipath-relax
  neighbor fabric peer-group
  neighbor fabric remote-as
external
  neighbor fabric description
Internal Fabric Network
  neighbor fabric capability
extended-nexthop
  neighbor swp1 interface peer-
group fabric
  neighbor swp2 interface peer-
group fabric
  neighbor swp3 interface peer-
group fabric
  neighbor swp4 interface peer-
group fabric
!
address-family ipv4 unicast
  network 10.0.0.22/32
exit-address-family
!
!
address-family ipv6 unicast
  neighbor fabric activate
exit-address-family
!
address-family l2vpn evpn
  neighbor fabric activate
exit-address-family
exit
!
line vty
!
end

```



## server01 and server03 Configurations

### server01 /etc/network/interfaces

```
cumulus@server01:~$ cat /etc/network/interfaces

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto bond0
iface bond0
    bond-slaves eth1 eth2
    address 172.16.1.101/24

auto bond0.100
iface bond0.100
    address 172.16.100.101/24

auto bond0.200
iface bond0.200
    address 172.16.200.101/24
```

### server03 /etc/network/interfaces

```
cumulus@server03:~$ cat /etc/network/interfaces

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto bond0
iface bond0
    bond-slaves eth1 eth2
    address 172.16.1.103/24

auto bond0.100
iface bond0.100
    address 172.16.100.103/24

auto bond0.200
iface bond0.200
    address 172.16.200.103/24
```

## VXLAN Routing

VXLAN routing, sometimes referred to as inter-VXLAN routing, provides IP routing between VXLAN VNIs in overlay networks. The routing of traffic is based on the inner header or the overlay tenant IP address.

VXLAN routing is supported on the following platforms:

- Broadcom Tomahawk using an internal loopback on one or more switch ports
- Broadcom Maverick and Trident II+



If you want to use VXLAN routing on a Trident II switch, you must use a [hyperloop](#) (see [page 530](#)).

- Mellanox Spectrum



Switches with the Mellanox Spectrum A0 ASIC can only operate in [asymmetric mode](#) (see [page 478](#)).

Features of VXLAN routing include:



- EVPN (see page 466) is the control plane
- VRF (see page 696) support for overlay networks
- Distributed asymmetric routing (see page 478)
- Symmetric routing (see page 478)



On Broadcom Tomahawk platforms, symmetric routing is supported by keeping the port in internal loopback mode. [Symmetric EVPN routing \(see page 478\)](#) is supported on Trident II+ ASICs without hyperloop cables for external routing only.



On Mellanox platforms, symmetric VXLAN routing is supported only on switches with certain Spectrum ASICs. To configure symmetric VXLAN routing on a Mellanox switch, please contact the [Cumulus Networks support team](#).

- Anycast routing and gateways
- Host routing between and within data centers

Using EVPN as the control plane offers an integrated routing and bridging solution as well as multi-tenancy support, where different customers can share an IP address in the same network fabric.

Cumulus Networks also includes [early access](#) support for VXLAN routing using an external loopback, which only works with [LNV \(see page 410\)](#).

VXLAN routing currently does not support overlay ECMP.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- VXLAN Routing Data Plane and the Broadcom Tomahawk and Trident II+ Platforms (see page )
  - Trident II+ (see page )
  - Tomahawk (see page 513)
- Configuring VXLAN Routing (see page 514)
  - Configuring the Underlays (see page 514)
  - Configuring the Server-facing Downlinks (see page 516)
  - Configuring BGP EVPN (see page 517)
  - Configuring the VXLANS (see page 519)
  - Resulting Configurations (see page 523)
    - leaf01 (see page 523)
    - leaf03 (see page 525)
    - spine01 (see page 527)
- VXLAN Routing with Active-Active VTEPs (see page 528)
- VXLAN with VRFs (see page 528)
- Viewing VXLAN Routing Information (see page 529)
- Troubleshooting VXLAN Routing (see page 530)



## VXLAN Routing Data Plane and the Broadcom Tomahawk and Trident II+ Platforms

On switches with Broadcom ASICs, VXLAN routing is supported only on the Tomahawk and Trident II+ platforms. Below are some differences in how VXLAN routing works on these switches.

### Trident II+

For Trident II+ switches, you can specify a VXLAN routing (RIOT — routing in and out of tunnels) profile in the `vxlan_routing_overlay.profile` field in the `/usr/lib/python2.7/dist-packages/cumulus/__chip_config/bcm/datapath.conf` file if you don't want to use the default. This profile determines the maximum number of overlay next hops (adjacency entries). The profile is one of the following:

- *default*: 15% of the underlay next hops are set apart for overlay, up to a maximum of 8k next hops
- *mode-1*: 25% of the underlay next hops are set apart for overlay
- *mode-2*: 50% of the underlay next hops are set apart for overlay
- *mode-3*: 80% of the underlay next hops are set apart for overlay
- *disable*: disables VXLAN routing

The Trident II+ ASIC supports a maximum of 48k underlay next hops.

The maximum number of VXLAN SVI interfaces that can be allocated is 2k (2048) regardless of which profile you specify.

If you want to disable VXLAN routing on a Trident II+ switch, set the `vxlan_routing_overlay.profile` field to *disable*.

### Tomahawk

The Tomahawk ASIC does not support RIOT natively, so you must configure the switch ports for VXLAN routing to use the internal loopback. The internal loopback facilitates the recirculation of packets through the ingress pipeline to achieve VXLAN routing. One or more loopback switch ports can be bundled into a loopback trunk based on the amount of bandwidth needed.



VXLAN routing using the internal loopback is supported only with [VLAN-aware bridges \(see page 328\)](#); you cannot use a bridge in [traditional mode \(see page 340\)](#).

To configure one or more switch ports for loopback mode, edit the `/etc/cumulus/ports.conf` file, changing the port speed to *loopback*. In the example below, swp8 and swp9 are configured for loopback mode:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nano /etc/cumulus/ports.conf

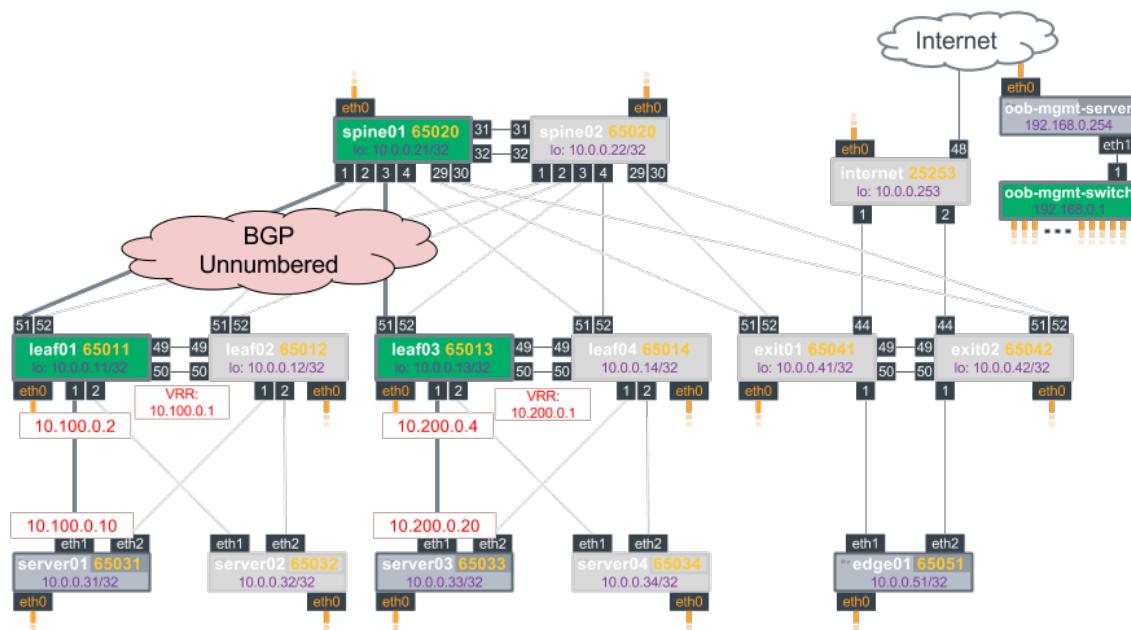
...
7=4x10G
8=loopback
9=loopback
10=100G
```

...

After you save your changes to the `ports.conf` file, you must restart `switchd` (see page 193) for the changes to take effect.

## Configuring VXLAN Routing

The following configuration using a single VTEP and does not include a VRF (see page 696). It uses elements from the following topology:



- When configuring VXLAN routing, Cumulus Networks recommends that you enable [ARP suppression](#) (see page 474) on all VXLAN interfaces. Otherwise, when a locally-attached host ARPs for the gateway, it will receive multiple responses, one from each anycast gateway.

## Configuring the Underlays

- Configure the loopback address on the following network devices.

leaf01:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add loopback lo ip address 10.0.0.11/32
```



leaf03:

```
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net add loopback lo ip address 10.0.0.13/32
```

spine01:

```
cumulus@spine01:~$ net add loopback lo ip address 10.0.0.21/32
```

2. Advertise the loopback addresses into the underlay.

leaf01:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add bgp autonomous-system 65011
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add bgp neighbor swp51 remote-as external
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add bgp network 10.0.0.11/32
```

leaf03:

```
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net add bgp autonomous-system 65013
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net add bgp neighbor swp51 remote-as external
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net add bgp network 10.0.0.13/32
```

spine01:

```
cumulus@spine01:~$ net add bgp autonomous-system 65020
cumulus@spine01:~$ net add bgp neighbor swp1 remote-as external
cumulus@spine01:~$ net add bgp neighbor swp3 remote-as external
```

3. Review and commit your changes:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net pending
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net commit
```

```
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net pending
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net commit
```

```
cumulus@spine01:~$ net pending
cumulus@spine01:~$ net commit
```

4. Verify the loopback addresses are advertised and learned by all VTEPs (look for the line that starts with B>\*).

leaf01:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show route

show ip route
=====
Codes: K - kernel route, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP,
       O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP, P - PIM, E - EIGRP, N -
       NHRP,
              T - Table, v - VNC, V - VNC-Direct, A - Babel,
              > - selected route, * - FIB route
C>* 10.0.0.11/32 is directly connected, lo
B>* 10.0.0.13/32 [20/0] via fe80::eef4:bbff:fefc:bf36, swp51, 00:
10:57
C * 10.100.0.0/24 is directly connected, vlan100-v0
C>* 10.100.0.0/24 is directly connected, vlan100
C * 10.200.0.0/24 is directly connected, vlan200-v0
C>* 10.200.0.0/24 is directly connected, vlan200
```

leaf03:

```
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net show route

show ip route
=====
Codes: K - kernel route, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP,
       O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP, P - PIM, E - EIGRP, N -
       NHRP,
              T - Table, v - VNC, V - VNC-Direct, A - Babel,
              > - selected route, * - FIB route
B>* 10.0.0.11/32 [20/0] via fe80::eef4:bbff:fefc:bf3e, swp51, 00:
00:12
C>* 10.0.0.13/32 is directly connected, lo
C * 10.100.0.0/24 is directly connected, vlan100-v0
C>* 10.100.0.0/24 is directly connected, vlan100
C * 10.200.0.0/24 is directly connected, vlan200-v0
C>* 10.200.0.0/24 is directly connected, vlan200
```

## *Configuring the Server-facing Downlinks*

Create routed VLANs for the servers. All virtual IP addresses (that is, [VRR \(see page 386\)](#)) are the same since this example configuration uses anycast gateways. See the diagram above for connectivity.

leaf01:



```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vlan 100 ip address-virtual 00:00:00:00:00:  
1a 10.100.0.1/24  
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vlan 100 ip address 10.100.0.2/24  
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vlan 200 ip address-virtual 00:00:00:00:00:  
1b 10.200.0.1/24  
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vlan 200 ip address 10.200.0.2/24  
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add bridge bridge ports swp1  
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add interface swp1 bridge access 100  
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net pending  
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net commit
```

leaf03:

```
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net add vlan 100 ip address-virtual 00:00:00:00:00:  
1a 10.100.0.1/24  
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net add vlan 100 ip address 10.100.0.4/24  
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net add vlan 200 ip address-virtual 00:00:00:00:00:  
1b 10.200.0.1/24  
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net add vlan 200 ip address 10.200.0.4/24  
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net add bridge bridge ports swp1  
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net add interface swp1 bridge access 200  
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net pending  
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net commit
```



The real IP addresses assigned to each SVI must be unique per VTEP. The virtual address can be reused as the anycast gateway.

## Configuring BGP EVPN

1. Configure the VTEPs to advertise layer 2 MAC address information via EVPN.

leaf01:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add bgp 12vpn evpn neighbor swp51 activate  
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add bgp 12vpn evpn advertise-all-vni  
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net pending  
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net commit
```

leaf03:

```
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net add bgp 12vpn evpn neighbor swp51 activate  
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net add bgp 12vpn evpn advertise-all-vni  
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net pending  
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net commit
```



spine01:

```
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net add bgp 12vpn evpn neighbor swp1 activate
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net add bgp 12vpn evpn neighbor swp3 activate
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net pending
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net commit
```

2. Verify EVPN is peering.

leaf01:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show bgp 12vpn evpn route

BGP table version is 0, local router ID is 10.200.0.2
Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, >
best, i - internal
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete
EVPN type-2 prefix: [2]:[ESI]:[EthTag]:[MAClen]:[MAC]:[IPlen]:[IP]
EVPN type-3 prefix: [3]:[EthTag]:[IPlen]:[OrigIP]

      Network          Next Hop          Metric LocPrf Weight Path
Route Distinguisher: 10.0.0.13:1
*> [3]:[0]:[32]:[10.0.0.13]
                  10.0.0.13          0
65020 65013 i
Route Distinguisher: 10.0.0.13:2
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[90:e2:ba:7e:96:d8]
                  10.0.0.13          0
65020 65013 i
*> [3]:[0]:[32]:[10.0.0.13]
                  10.0.0.13          0
65020 65013 i
Route Distinguisher: 10.200.0.2:1
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[90:e2:ba:7e:98:94]
                  10.0.0.11        32768 i
*> [3]:[0]:[32]:[10.0.0.11]
                  10.0.0.11        32768 i
Route Distinguisher: 10.200.0.2:2
*> [3]:[0]:[32]:[10.0.0.11]
                  10.0.0.11        32768 i

Displayed 6 prefixes (6 paths)
```

leaf03:

```
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net show bgp 12vpn evpn route

BGP table version is 0, local router ID is 10.0.0.13
```

```

Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, >
best, i - internal
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete
EVPN type-2 prefix: [2]:[ESI]:[EthTag]:[MAClen]:[MAC]:[IPlen]:
[IP]
EVPN type-3 prefix: [3]:[EthTag]:[IPlen]:[OrigIP]

      Network          Next Hop          Metric LocPrf Weight Path
Route Distinguisher: 10.0.0.13:1
*> [3]:[0]:[32]:[10.0.0.13]
                           10.0.0.13                      32768 i
Route Distinguisher: 10.0.0.13:2
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[90:e2:ba:7e:96:d8]
                           10.0.0.13                      32768 i
*> [3]:[0]:[32]:[10.0.0.13]
                           10.0.0.13                      32768 i
Route Distinguisher: 10.200.0.2:1
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[90:e2:ba:7e:98:94]
                           10.0.0.11                      0
65020 65011 i
*> [3]:[0]:[32]:[10.0.0.11]
                           10.0.0.11                      0
65020 65011 i
Route Distinguisher: 10.200.0.2:2
*> [3]:[0]:[32]:[10.0.0.11]
                           10.0.0.11                      0
65020 65011 i

Displayed 6 prefixes (6 paths)

```

## Configuring the VXLANS

1. Configure the VNIs on each VTEP.

leaf01:

```

cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vxlan VNI100 vxlan id 10100
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vxlan VNI100 bridge access 100
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vxlan VNI100 vxlan local-tunnelip
10.0.0.11
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vxlan VNI200 vxlan id 10200
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vxlan VNI200 bridge access 200
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vxlan VNI200 vxlan local-tunnelip
10.0.0.11
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add bridge bridge ports VNI100,VNI200

```

leaf03:

```
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net add vxlan VNI100 vxlan id 10100
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net add vxlan VNI100 bridge access 100
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net add vxlan VNI100 vxlan local-tunnelip
10.0.0.13
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net add vxlan VNI200 vxlan id 10200
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net add vxlan VNI200 bridge access 200
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net add vxlan VNI200 vxlan local-tunnelip
10.0.0.13
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net add bridge bridge ports VNI100,VNI200
```

2. Disable bridge learning and enable ARP suppression for VXLAN routing, then review and commit your changes.

leaf01:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vxlan VNI100 bridge learning off
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vxlan VNI100 bridge arp-nd-suppress on
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vxlan VNI200 bridge learning off
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vxlan VNI200 bridge arp-nd-suppress on
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net pending
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net commit
```

leaf03:

```
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net add vxlan VNI100 bridge learning off
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net add vxlan VNI100 bridge arp-nd-suppress on
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net add vxlan VNI200 bridge learning off
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net add vxlan VNI200 bridge arp-nd-suppress on
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net pending
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net commit
```

3. Verify the VXLAN entries are being learned in EVPN.

leaf01:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show bgp l2vpn evpn route

BGP table version is 0, local router ID is 10.200.0.2
Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, >
best, i - internal
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete
EVPN type-2 prefix: [2]:[ESI]:[EthTag]:[MAClen]:[MAC]:[IPlen]:
[IP]
EVPN type-3 prefix: [3]:[EthTag]:[IPlen]:[OrigIP]

      Network          Next Hop          Metric LocPrf Weight Path
Route Distinguisher: 10.0.0.13:1
*-> [3]:[0]:[32]:[10.0.0.13]
```



```
          10.0.0.13          0
65020 65013 i
Route Distinguisher: 10.0.0.13:2
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[90:e2:ba:7e:96:d8]
          10.0.0.13          0
65020 65013 i
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[90:e2:ba:7e:96:d8]:[32]:[10.200.0.20]
          10.0.0.13          0
65020 65013 i
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[90:e2:ba:7e:96:d8]:[128]:[fe80::92e2:baff:
fe7e:96d8]
          10.0.0.13          0
65020 65013 i
*> [3]:[0]:[32]:[10.0.0.13]
          10.0.0.13          0
65020 65013 i
Route Distinguisher: 10.200.0.2:1
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[90:e2:ba:7e:98:94]
          10.0.0.11          32768 i
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[90:e2:ba:7e:98:94]:[32]:[10.100.0.10]
          10.0.0.11          32768 i
*> [3]:[0]:[32]:[10.0.0.11]
          10.0.0.11          32768 i
Route Distinguisher: 10.200.0.2:2
*> [3]:[0]:[32]:[10.0.0.11]
          10.0.0.11          32768 i

Displayed 9 prefixes (9 paths)
```

leaf03:

```
cumulus@leaf03:~$ net show bgp l2vpn evpn route

BGP table version is 0, local router ID is 10.0.0.13
Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, >
best, i - internal
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete
EVPN type-2 prefix: [2]:[ESI]:[EthTag]:[MAClen]:[MAC]:[IPlen]:
[IP]
EVPN type-3 prefix: [3]:[EthTag]:[IPlen]:[OrigIP]

      Network          Next Hop          Metric LocPrf Weight Path
Route Distinguisher: 10.0.0.13:1
*> [3]:[0]:[32]:[10.0.0.13]
          10.0.0.13          32768 i
Route Distinguisher: 10.0.0.13:2
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[90:e2:ba:7e:96:d8]
          10.0.0.13          32768 i
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[90:e2:ba:7e:96:d8]:[32]:[10.200.0.20]
          10.0.0.13          32768 i
```

```
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[90:e2:ba:7e:96:d8]:[128]:[fe80::92e2:baff:  
fe7e:96d8]  
          10.0.0.13                      32768 i  
*> [3]:[0]:[32]:[10.0.0.13]  
          10.0.0.13                      32768 i  
Route Distinguisher: 10.200.0.2:1  
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[90:e2:ba:7e:98:94]  
          10.0.0.11                      0  
65020 65011 i  
*> [2]:[0]:[0]:[48]:[90:e2:ba:7e:98:94]:[32]:[10.100.0.10]  
          10.0.0.11                      0  
65020 65011 i  
*> [3]:[0]:[32]:[10.0.0.11]  
          10.0.0.11                      0  
65020 65011 i  
Route Distinguisher: 10.200.0.2:2  
*> [3]:[0]:[32]:[10.0.0.11]  
          10.0.0.11                      0  
65020 65011 i  
  
Displayed 9 prefixes (9 paths)
```

4. Verify the VXLAN entries are programmed into the bridge table.

leaf01:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ bridge fdb show  
90:e2:ba:7e:98:94 dev swp1 vlan 100 master bridge  
34:17:eb:f6:36:c5 dev swp1 master bridge permanent  
4e:40:85:36:30:de dev VNI100 master bridge permanent  
4e:40:85:36:30:de dev VNI100 vlan 100 master bridge permanent  
00:00:00:00:00:00 dev VNI100 dst 10.0.0.13 self permanent  
b6:3d:a5:f2:2b:16 dev VNI200 master bridge permanent  
90:e2:ba:7e:96:d8 dev VNI200 vlan 200 offload master bridge  
00:00:00:00:00:00 dev VNI200 dst 10.0.0.13 self permanent  
90:e2:ba:7e:96:d8 dev VNI200 dst 10.0.0.13 self offload  
00:00:00:00:00:1b dev bridge self permanent  
00:00:00:00:00:1a dev bridge self permanent  
4e:40:85:36:30:de dev bridge self permanent  
00:00:00:00:00:1b dev bridge vlan 200 master bridge permanent  
34:17:eb:f6:36:c5 dev bridge vlan 200 master bridge permanent  
34:17:eb:f6:36:c5 dev bridge vlan 100 master bridge permanent  
00:00:00:00:00:1a dev bridge vlan 100 master bridge permanent  
00:00:00:00:00:1b dev vlan200 self permanent  
00:00:00:00:00:1a dev vlan100 self permanent
```

leaf03:

```
cumulus@leaf03:~$ bridge fdb show  
90:e2:ba:7e:96:d8 dev swp1 vlan 200 master bridge
```



```
2c:60:0c:72:eb:70 dev swp1 master bridge permanent
9e:f1:f5:bd:16:cc dev VNI100 master bridge permanent
90:e2:ba:7e:98:94 dev VNI100 vlan 100 offload master bridge
9e:f1:f5:bd:16:cc dev VNI100 vlan 100 master bridge permanent
00:00:00:00:00:00 dev VNI100 dst 10.0.0.11 self permanent
90:e2:ba:7e:98:94 dev VNI100 dst 10.0.0.11 self offload
e6:1a:7b:f4:4f:7b dev VNI200 master bridge permanent
00:00:00:00:00:00 dev VNI200 dst 10.0.0.11 self permanent
00:00:00:00:00:1b dev bridge self permanent
00:00:00:00:00:1a dev bridge self permanent
9e:f1:f5:bd:16:cc dev bridge self permanent
2c:60:0c:72:eb:70 dev bridge vlan 200 master bridge permanent
00:00:00:00:00:1b dev bridge vlan 200 master bridge permanent
2c:60:0c:72:eb:70 dev bridge vlan 100 master bridge permanent
00:00:00:00:00:1a dev bridge vlan 100 master bridge permanent
00:00:00:00:00:1b dev vlan200 self permanent
00:00:00:00:00:1a dev vlan100 self permanent
```

## Resulting Configurations

Following are the resulting interfaces and routing configurations for the three nodes you configured above: leaf01, leaf03 and spine01.

### leaf01

leaf01 /etc/network/interfaces

```
cumulus@leaf01:mgmt-vrf:~$ cat /etc/network/interfaces
# This file describes the network interfaces available on your system
# and how to activate them. For more information, see interfaces(5).
source /etc/network/interfaces.d/*.intf
# The loopback network interface
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.0.0.11/32
# The primary network interface
auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
    vrf mgmt
iface eth1 inet dhcp
auto swp1
iface swp1
    bridge-access 100
    mtu 9216
auto swp51
iface swp51
    mtu 9216
auto VNI100
iface VNI100
    bridge-access 100
```



```
bridge-arp-nd-suppress on
bridge-learning off
mstpctl-bpduguard yes
mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes
mtu 9152
vxlan-id 10100
vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.0.0.11
auto VNI200
iface VNI200
    bridge-access 200
    bridge-arp-nd-suppress on
    bridge-learning off
    mstpctl-bpduguard yes
    mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes
    mtu 9152
    vxlan-id 10200
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.0.0.11
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports VNI100 VNI200 swp1
    bridge-vids 100 200
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
auto mgmt
iface mgmt
    address 127.0.0.1/8
    vrf-table auto
auto vlan100
iface vlan100
    address 10.100.0.2/24
    address-virtual 00:00:00:00:00:1a 10.100.0.1/24
    vlan-id 100
    vlan-raw-device bridge
auto vlan200
iface vlan200
    address 10.200.0.2/24
    address-virtual 00:00:00:00:00:1b 10.200.0.1/24
    vlan-id 200
    vlan-raw-device bridge
```

leaf01 /etc/frr/frr.conf

```
cumulus@leaf01:mgmt-vrf:~$ sudo cat /etc/frr/frr.conf
frr version 3.1+cl3u1
frr defaults datacenter
username cumulus nopassword
!
service integrated-vtysh-config
!
log syslog informational
!
```

```

interface swp51
    ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
    no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
router bgp 65011
    bgp router-id 10.0.0.11
    neighbor swp51 interface remote-as external
!
address-family ipv4 unicast
    network 10.0.0.11/32
exit-address-family
!
address-family l2vpn evpn
    neighbor swp51 activate
    advertise-all-vni
exit-address-family
!
line vty
!
```

## *leaf03*

leaf03 /etc/network/interfaces

```

cumulus@leaf03:mgmt-vrf:~$ cat /etc/network/interfaces
# This file describes the network interfaces available on your system
# and how to activate them. For more information, see interfaces(5).
source /etc/network/interfaces.d/*.*.intf
# The loopback network interface
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.0.0.13/32
# The primary network interface
auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
    vrf mgmt
auto swp1
iface swp1
    bridge-access 200
    mtu 9216
auto swp51
iface swp51
    mtu 9216
auto VNI100
iface VNI100
    bridge-access 100
    bridge-arp-nd-suppress on
    bridge-learning off
    mstpctl-bpduguard yes
    mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes
```



```
mtu 9152
vxlan-id 10100
vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.0.0.13
auto VNI200
iface VNI200
    bridge-access 200
    bridge-arp-nd-suppress on
    bridge-learning off
    mstpcctl-bpduguard yes
    mstpcctl-portbpdufilter yes
    mtu 9152
    vxlan-id 10200
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.0.0.13
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports VNI100 VNI200 swp1
    bridge-vids 100 200
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
auto mgmt
iface mgmt
    address 127.0.0.1/8
    vrf-table auto
auto vlan100
iface vlan100
    address 10.100.0.4/24
    address-virtual 00:00:00:00:00:1a 10.100.0.1/24
    vlan-id 100
    vlan-raw-device bridge
auto vlan200
iface vlan200
    address 10.200.0.4/24
    address-virtual 00:00:00:00:00:1b 10.200.0.1/24
    vlan-id 200
    vlan-raw-device bridge
```

leaf03 /etc/frr/frr.conf

```
cumulus@leaf03:mgmt-vrf:~$ sudo cat /etc/frr/frr.conf
frr version 3.1+cl3ul
frr defaults datacenter
username cumulus nopassword
!
service integrated-vtysh-config
!
log syslog informational
!
interface swp51
    ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
    no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
```



```
router bgp 65013
bgp router-id 10.0.0.13
neighbor swp51 interface remote-as external
!
address-family ipv4 unicast
  network 10.0.0.13/32
exit-address-family
!
address-family l2vpn evpn
  neighbor swp51 activate
  advertise-all-vni
exit-address-family
!
line vty
!
```

## spine01

spine01 /etc/network/interfaces

```
cumulus@spine01:mgmt-vrf:~$ cat /etc/network/interfaces
# This file describes the network interfaces available on your system
# and how to activate them. For more information, see interfaces(5).
source /etc/network/interfaces.d/*.intf
# The loopback network interface
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
  address 10.0.0.21/32
# The primary network interface
auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
  vrf mgmt
auto swp1
iface swp1
  mtu 9216
auto swp2
iface swp2
auto swp3
iface swp3
  mtu 9216
auto swp51
iface swp51
auto swp52
iface swp52
auto mgmt
iface mgmt
  address 127.0.0.1/8
  vrf-table auto
```



spine01 /etc/frr/frr.conf

```
cumulus@spine01:mgmt-vrf:~$ sudo cat /etc/frr/frr.conf
frr version 3.1+c13u1
frr defaults datacenter
username cumulus nopassword
!
service integrated-vtysh-config
!
log syslog informational
!
interface swp1
    ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
    no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
interface swp3
    ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
    no ipv6 nd suppress-ra
!
router bgp 65020
    neighbor swp1 interface remote-as external
    neighbor swp3 interface remote-as external
    !
    address-family l2vpn evpn
        neighbor swp1 activate
        neighbor swp3 activate
    exit-address-family
!
line vty
!
```

## VXLAN Routing with Active-Active VTEPs

VXLAN routing with active-active VTEPs is configured the same way as VXLAN with active-active mode VTEPs. Follow the instructions located in the [VXLAN and EVPN Active-Active chapter](#) (see page 476).

## VXLAN with VRFs

VXLAN can be configured with VRF support. In order to do so, just apply the server downlink SVI configuration on the top of rack switches inside a VRF. The BGP EVPN address family and `advertise-all-vni` command are smart enough to apply the correct RD and RT information to each VRF.

Below is an example for leaf01 where VLAN 100 and VLAN 150 are part of VRF *RED* and can VXLAN route between each other. VLAN 200 is part of VRF *BLUE* and cannot communicate with any hosts in VRF *RED*:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vrf RED
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vlan 100 vrf RED
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vlan 100 ip address-virtual 00:00:00:00:00:00:
1a 10.100.0.1/24
```



```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vlan 100 ip address 10.100.0.2/24
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vlan 150 vrf RED
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vlan 150 ip address-virtual 00:00:00:00:00:00:
1c 10.150.0.1/24
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vlan 150 ip address 10.150.0.2/24
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vrf BLUE
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vlan 200 vrf BLUE
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vlan 200 ip address-virtual 00:00:00:00:00:00:
1b 10.200.0.1/24
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add vlan 200 ip address 10.200.0.2/24
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net pending
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net commit
```

## Viewing VXLAN Routing Information

You can use the following commands to display VXLAN routing-related information:

- ip link show dev <DEVICE>
- ip route
- ip neighbor
- bridge fdb show

To get basic information about a VXLAN, use `ip link show`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip link show VNI-11000
68: VNI-11000: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 9152 state UP
mode DEFAULT group default
link/ether 0a:09:cd:9d:f0:c7 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
```

To view the routing table, use `ip route`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip route
45.0.0.0/26 dev vlan1000 proto kernel scope link src 45.0.0.16
45.0.0.64/26 dev vlan1001 proto kernel scope link src 45.0.0.80
```

To view the neighbor table, run `ip neighbor`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip neighbor
45.0.0.70 dev vlan1001 lladdr 00:02:00:00:00:0c STALE
45.0.0.72 dev vlan1001 lladdr 00:02:00:00:00:10 REACHABLE
45.0.0.5 dev vlan1000 lladdr 00:02:00:00:00:0a REACHABLE
```

To view the forwarding database, use `bridge fdb show`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ bridge fdb show
```



```
ca:0b:56:be:a7:74 dev VNI-11000 master bridge permanent
ba:08:bc:60:b2:15 dev VNI-11001 master bridge permanent
00:00:5e:00:01:01 dev bridge vlan 1001 master bridge permanent
00:00:5e:00:01:01 dev bridge vlan 1000 master bridge permanent
```

## Troubleshooting VXLAN Routing

You can investigate control plane VXLAN routing issues with the following commands:

- net show bgp l2vpn evpn route
- net show bgp l2vpn evpn route vni <vnid>
- net show bgp l2vpn evpn vni
- net show l2vpn evpn mac vni <vnid>
- net show l2vpn evpn arp-cache vni <vnid>

## VXLAN Hyperloop

This chapter covers configuring VXLAN gateways using a loopback cable (which we call a *hyperloop*) on non-RIOT (VXLAN routing) capable ASICs running Cumulus Linux.

The Broadcom Trident II and Tomahawk ASICs have a limitation where a layer 2 bridge that contains a VXLAN interface can not also have an IP address assigned to it. This is an expected limitation with this ASIC, because of the ordering of the decapsulation. A packet that is decapsulated will already have passed the portion of the ASIC capable of reading the IP address lookup (for example, VXLAN lookup happens before IP address lookup). Please contact your [sales team](#) if there is any confusion. Refer to the [Cumulus Networks Hardware Compatibility List](#) to determine which ASIC is running on the switch.

**This limitation does not exist in some ASICs.** For example, the Trident II+ has the RIOT (Routing In/Out of Tunnels) feature; see [VXLAN Routing \(see page 511\)](#) for more information.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Requirements (see page 531)
- Hyperloop Use Cases (see page 531)
  - Exiting a VXLAN with a Hyperloop (see page 532)
  - (see page 532)
  - Packet Flow Diagram (see page 534)
  - Trident II and Tomahawk switchd Flag (see page 534)
- VXLAN Hyperloop Troubleshooting Matrix (see page 535)
  - Are HER (Head End Replication) entries being programmed into the bridge fdb table? (see page 535)
  - If you are using an MLAG VTEP (dual attached), is it set up correctly? (see page 536)
  - Can you ping from host to host on the same VXLAN? (see page 537)
  - Is the SVI on a physical interface or on a traditional bridge? (see page 538)
  - Is the port plugged in where it is supposed to be plugged in? (see page 538)



- Is the VRR MAC address unique per subnet? (see page 538)

## Requirements

- VXLAN hyperloop only works on an ASIC capable of encapsulating and decapsulating VXLAN traffic, which includes:
  - Broadcom Tomahawk
  - Broadcom Trident II
  - Broadcom Trident II+
  - Mellanox Spectrum
- VXLAN hyperloop is supported on Cumulus Linux 3.2.1 and later. Make sure to [upgrade to the latest version \(see page 48\)](#) of Cumulus Linux.
- If you are using [EVPN \(see page 466\)](#), you must be running FRRouting version eau8. Use a `dpkg -l` to check the FRRouting version:

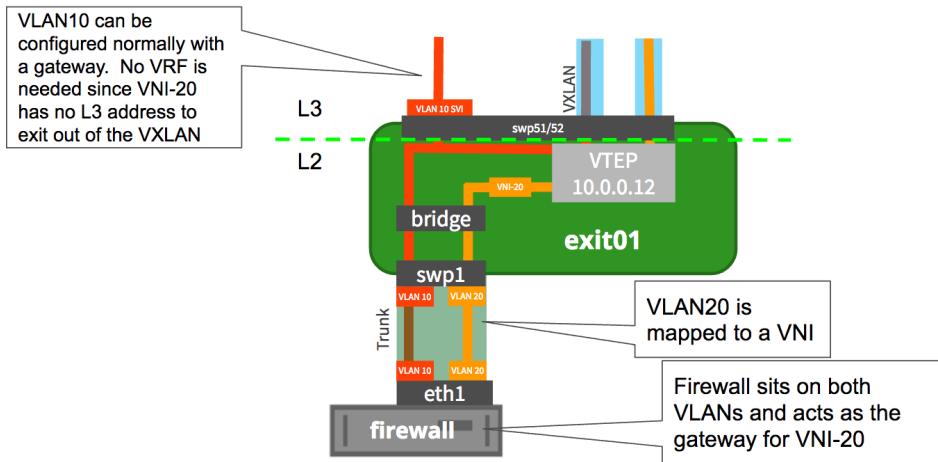
```
cumulus@leaf01:mgmt-vrf:~$ dpkg -l frr
Desired=Unknown/Install/Remove/Purge/Hold
| Status=Not/Inst/Conf-files/Unpacked/half-conf/Half-inst/trig-
aWait/Trig-pend
| / Err?=(none)/Reinst-required (Status,Err: uppercase=bad)
|| / Name          Version      Architecture
Description
=====
ii  frr           1.0.0+cl3eau8    amd64
BGP/OSPF/RIP routing daemon
```

If you are not running the right version of FRRouting for EVPN, [follow these directions \(see page 466\)](#) to upgrade.

## Hyperloop Use Cases

Without native VXLAN routing support, external gateways, firewalls or routers are attached to a VTEP do the routing, as in the diagram below.

It is very common in network virtualization environments for firewalls to sit on internal VXLAN-tied VLANs as well as external VLANs that are routed out to the internet. Consider the following illustration. No special configuration is needed on the switch because the firewall acts as the gateway between the internal VLAN (VLAN20/VNI-20) and the routable external VLAN 10. VLAN 10 could have an SVI (switch virtual interface) configured to route out of the VLAN. This also has the benefit in cases where a VXLAN represents a tenant (or a purposely separated application) — you want to keep the firewall between VXLANs so that traffic can be filtered and sanitized to the network operator's specification.



With integrated VXLAN routing and bridging using a hyperloop:

- You can avoid having to use external gateways/routers. A hyperloop gives you the ability to do integrated VXLAN routing on a non-RIOT (VXLAN routing) ASIC.
- If applications are hosted on the switch and need layer 3 connectivity, then a hyperloop can be used to provide reachability for this application as well.

You should **not** use a hyperloop under these circumstances:

- If the external firewall is used for routing and security (as shown above), then there is no need for an external loopback as the firewall takes care of routing across subnets.
- If bandwidth for the traffic to be routed is so large that you cannot provision such high bandwidth using a hyperloop, then you should have dedicated gateways connected to exit leafs instead.
- If north-south routing involves edge router functionality, then that functionality cannot be provided by leaf switches; rather, it requires dedicated edge gateways to achieve the same result, like NAT.

## *Exiting a VXLAN with a Hyperloop*

This limitation means a physical cable must be attached from one port on leaf1 to another port on leaf1. One port is a layer 3 port while the other is a member of the bridge. The native VLAN (VLAN ID 1) must be tagged for all traffic going to the hyperloop ports.

For example, following the configuration above, in order for a layer 3 address to be used as the gateway for vni-10, you could configure the following on exit01:

```
cumulus@exit01:~$ sudo nano /etc/network/interfaces

auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 10.0.0.11/32

## some output removed for brevity (such as peerlink and host-facing
## bonds) ##

auto bridge
```



```
iface bridge
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-ports inside server01 server02 vni-10 vni-20 peerlink
    bridge-vids 100 200
    bridge-pvid 1           # sets native VLAN to 1, an unused VLAN
    mstpctl-treepriority 8192

auto outside
iface outside
    bond-slaves swp45 swp47
    alias hyperloop outside
    mstpctl-bpduguard yes
    mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes

auto inside
iface inside
    bond-slaves swp46 swp48
    alias hyperloop inside
    mstpctl-bpduguard yes
    mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes

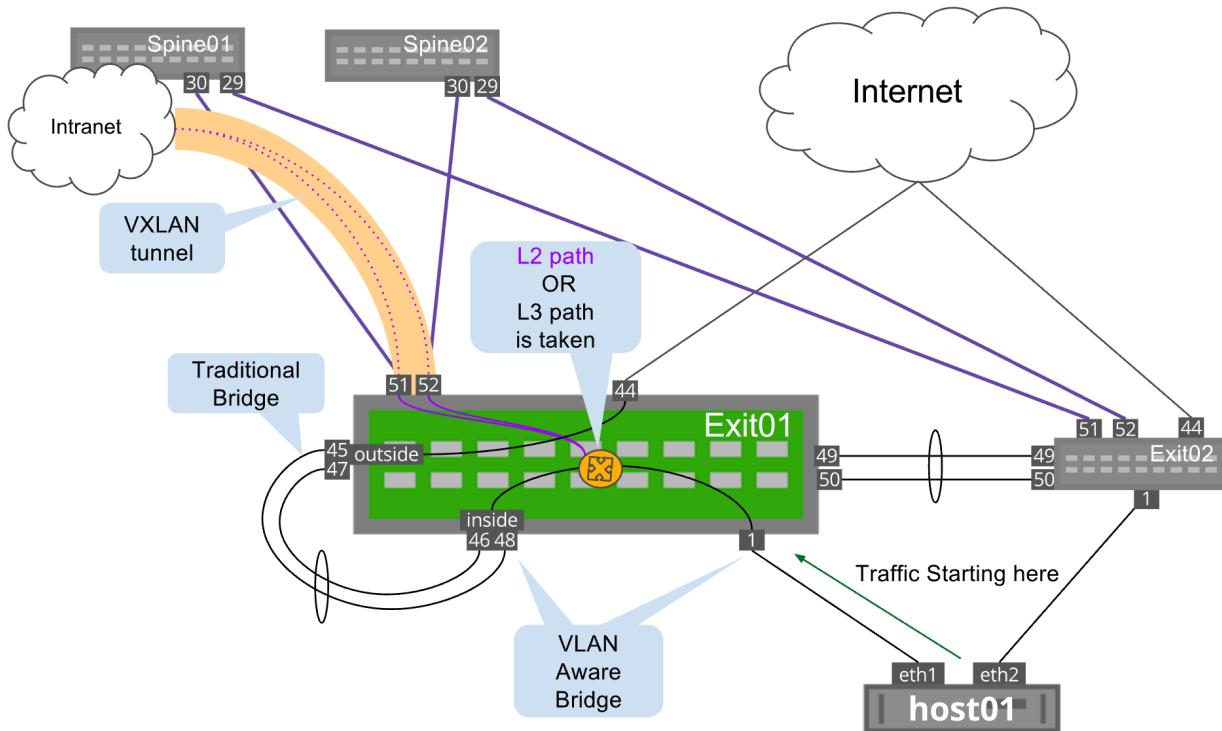
auto VLAN100GW
iface VLAN100GW
    bridge_ports outside.100
    address 172.16.100.2/24
    alias VXLAN GW 100 Linux Bridge
    address-virtual 44:38:39:FF:01:90 172.16.100.1/24

auto VLAN200GW
iface VLAN200GW
    bridge_ports outside.200
    address 172.16.200.2/24
    alias VXLAN GW 200 Linux Bridge
    address-virtual 44:38:39:FF:02:90 172.16.200.1/24

auto vni-10
iface vni-10
    vxlan-id 10
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.0.0.11
    bridge-access 100

auto vni-20
iface vni-20
    vxlan-id 20
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.0.0.11
    bridge-access 200
```

## Packet Flow Diagram



## Trident II and Tomahawk switchd Flag

In order for the Broadcom Trident II and Tomahawk ASICs to be able to have a hyperloop work correctly, you must configure the following `switchd` flag. This change is not needed on any other hardware ASIC.

```
cumulus@exit01:mgmt-vrf:/root$ sudo nano /etc/cumulus/switchd.conf
halbcm.per_vlan_router_mac_lookup = TRUE
```

Restart `switchd` for the change to take place:

```
cumulus@exit01:mgmt-vrf:/root$ sudo systemctl restart switchd.service
```



Restarting `switchd` is a disruptive change and affects data plane network traffic.



Setting `halbcm.per_vlan_router_mac_lookup = TRUE` limits the Trident II switch to a configurable 512 local IP addresses (SVIs and so forth), so you should use this only as a last resort. This is only a limitation on this specific ASIC type.



## VXLAN Hyperloop Troubleshooting Matrix

Before you follow these troubleshooting steps, make sure your switch meets the [requirements specified above](#) (see page 531).

### *Are HER (Head End Replication) entries being programmed into the bridge fdb table?*

Check for 00:00:00:00:00:00 entries for each VXLAN using `bridge fdb show`:

```
cumulus@leaf03:mgmt-vrf:~$ bridge fdb show | grep 00:00:00:00:00:00
00:00:00:00:00:00 dev vni-40 dst 10.10.10.30 self permanent
00:00:00:00:00:00 dev vni-40 dst 10.10.10.40 self permanent
00:00:00:00:00:00 dev vni-1 dst 10.10.10.30 self permanent
00:00:00:00:00:00 dev vni-1 dst 10.10.10.40 self permanent
00:00:00:00:00:00 dev vni-30 dst 10.10.10.30 self permanent
00:00:00:00:00:00 dev vni-30 dst 10.10.10.40 self permanent
00:00:00:00:00:00 dev vni-20 dst 10.10.10.30 self permanent
00:00:00:00:00:00 dev vni-20 dst 10.10.10.40 self permanent
00:00:00:00:00:00 dev vni-50 dst 10.10.10.30 self permanent
00:00:00:00:00:00 dev vni-50 dst 10.10.10.40 self permanent
00:00:00:00:00:00 dev vni-10 dst 10.10.10.30 self permanent
00:00:00:00:00:00 dev vni-10 dst 10.10.10.40 self permanent
```

or use [NCLU](#) (see page 618):

```
cumulus@leaf03:mgmt-vrf:~$ net show bridge macs
VLAN      Master      Interface      MAC          TunnelDest
State     Flags       LastSeen
-----  -----  -----
-----  -----
1         bridge     server03      90:e2:ba:7e:96:
d9
          untagged   vni-1        00:00:00:00:00:00  10.10.10.30
          permanent  self        4 days, 22:25:42
          untagged   vni-1        00:00:00:00:00:00  10.10.10.40
          permanent  self        4 days, 22:25:42
          untagged   vni-10      00:00:00:00:00:00  10.10.10.30
          permanent  self        4 days, 22:25:42
          untagged   vni-10      00:00:00:00:00:00  10.10.10.40
          permanent  self        4 days, 22:25:42
          untagged   vni-20      00:00:00:00:00:00  10.10.10.30
          permanent  self        4 days, 22:25:42
          untagged   vni-20      00:00:00:00:00:00  10.10.10.40
          permanent  self        4 days, 22:25:42
          untagged   vni-30      00:00:00:00:00:00  10.10.10.30
          permanent  self        4 days, 22:25:42
```

untagged	vni-30	00:00:00:00:00:00	10.10.10.40
permanent self	4 days, 22:25:42		
untagged	vni-40	00:00:00:00:00:00	10.10.10.30
permanent self	4 days, 22:25:42		
untagged	vni-40	00:00:00:00:00:00	10.10.10.40
permanent self	4 days, 22:25:42		
untagged	vni-50	00:00:00:00:00:00	10.10.10.30
permanent self	4 days, 22:25:42		
untagged	vni-50	00:00:00:00:00:00	10.10.10.40
permanent self	4 days, 22:25:42		
untagged bridge	peerlink	2c:60:0c:72:eb:a0	
permanent		5 days, 00:53:13	
untagged bridge	server03	2c:60:0c:72:eb:70	
permanent		5 days, 00:53:13	
untagged bridge	vni-1	86:c9:5c:cc:88:54	
permanent		4 days, 22:28:23	
untagged bridge	vni-10	32:d5:3a:99:36:f7	
permanent		4 days, 22:28:23	
untagged bridge	vni-20	9a:91:5a:7e:0f:e8	
permanent		4 days, 22:28:23	
untagged bridge	vni-30	6a:33:ff:fd:ca:34	
permanent		4 days, 22:28:23	
untagged bridge	vni-40	e2:1f:a4:7c:75:2b	
permanent		4 days, 22:28:23	
untagged bridge	vni-50	d6:df:b4:85:4d:55	
permanent		4 days, 22:28:23	

If you are not getting HER entries, there are some steps you can try:

- Make sure you are using [LNV \(see page 410\)](#) **OR** EVPN. You cannot use both at the same time.
- Make sure you are not trying to use any VNI/VXLAN values over 65535. For example, VXLAN 70000 is not supported in Cumulus Linux.
- Make sure you are not using the reserved VLAN range; by default it is 3000-3999. This range is stored in the `resv_vlan_range` variable in the `/etc/cumulus/switchd.conf` file.

### *If you are using an MLAG VTEP (dual attached), is it set up correctly?*

Check the outputs. Often, when VXLAN is considered to be non-working, it's actually due to an incorrect setup on the server OS, whether it's Ubuntu, Microsoft Windows or RHEL.

The terminal output shows the following configuration and status:

```

cumulus@leaf03:mgmt-vrf:~$ clagctl
The peer is alive
Our Priority, ID, and Role: 32768 2c:60:0:c:72:eb:a0 primary
Peer Priority, ID, and Role: 32768 cc:37:ab:2c:95:cb secondary
Peer Interface and IP: peerlink.4094 169.254.255.2
VxLAN Anycast IP: 10.10.10.20
Backup IP: leaf04 vrf mgmt (active)
System MAC: 44:39:39:ff:41:94
  
```

**CLAG Interfaces**

Our Interface	Peer Interface	CLAG Id	Conflicts	Proto-Down Reason
vni-40	vni-40	-	-	-
vni-1	vni-1	-	-	-
vni-30	vni-30	-	-	-
vni-20	vni-20	-	-	-
vni-50	vni-50	-	-	-
server03	server03	1	-	-
vni-10	vni-10	-	-	-

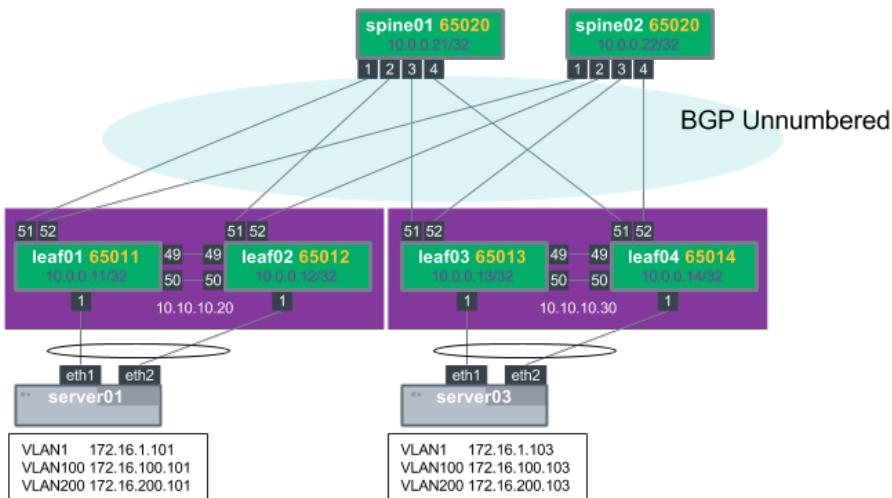
cumulus@leaf03:mgmt-vrf:~\$

Annotations from the slide:

- VXLAN Anycast IP should match on both MLAG Peers
- The output should read "The peer is alive"
- Backup IP should be active and System MAC should match between peers
- There should be nothing in the Proto-Down State
- Our Interface and Peer Interface should match or the bond is down on the server side
- Every physical server should have a unique CLAG Id
- There should be no Conflicts

### Can you ping from host to host on the same VXLAN?

For example, in the following network diagram, can server01 ping to server03 on any of the VLANs (VLAN1, VLAN100, VLAN200)?



If you can't even ping from server to server this is not a VXLAN gateway problem, but a problem with the network itself. This must be fixed prior to making a VXLAN gateway, with or without a hyperloop.





Only proceed past this point if you can get server to server connectivity on the same VXLAN.

### *Is the SVI on a physical interface or on a traditional bridge?*



The SVI (switch virtual interface) IP address for a hyperloop MUST be on a traditional bridge. Please follow the configuration guidelines above.

### *Is the port plugged in where it is supposed to be plugged in?*

Use `lldpctl` or `net show lldp` to see what ports are hooked up:

Local Port	Speed	Mode		Remote Port	
Remote Host		Summary			
eth0	1G	Mgmt	====	swp42	oob-
mgmt-switch	IP: 10.50.100.53/24 (DHCP)				
swp1	10G	BondMember	====	90:e2:ba:7e:96:d8	
server03		Master: server03(UP)			
swp49	40G	BondMember	====	swp49	
leaf04		Master: peerlink(UP)			
swp50	40G	BondMember	====	swp50	
leaf04		Master: peerlink(UP)			
swp51	40G	NotConfigured	====	swp3	spine01
swp52	40G	NotConfigured	====	swp3	spine02
swp53	40G	NotConfigured	====	swp54	leaf03
swp54	40G	NotConfigured	====	swp53	leaf03

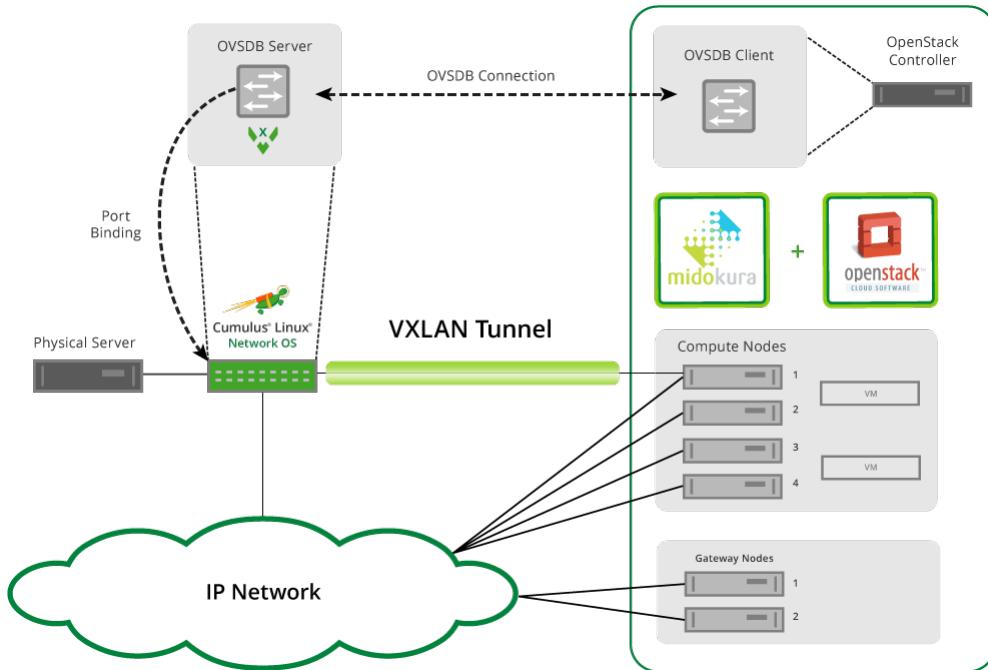
Notice above that swp53 and swp54 are a loopback cable (hyperloop) where it is connected to itself.

### *Is the VRR MAC address unique per subnet?*

Make sure that VRR is configured correctly (see page 386) and that each MAC address is unique per VLAN.

## Integrating Hardware VTEPs with Midokura MidoNet and OpenStack

Cumulus Linux seamlessly integrates with the MidoNet OpenStack infrastructure, where the switches provide the VTEP gateway for terminating VXLAN tunnels from within MidoNet. MidoNet connects to the OVSDB server running on the Cumulus Linux switch, and exchanges information about the VTEPs and MAC addresses associated with the OpenStack Neutron networks. This provides seamless Ethernet connectivity between virtual and physical server infrastructures.



## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Getting Started (see page 540)
  - Caveats and Errata (see page 540)
  - Preparing for the MidoNet Integration (see page 540)
    - Enabling the openvswitch-vtep Package (see page 540)
  - Bootstrapping the OVSDB Server and VTEP (see page 541)
    - Automating with the Bootstrap Script (see page 541)
    - Manually Bootstrapping (see page 541)
  - Configuring MidoNet VTEP and Port Bindings (see page 542)
    - Using the MidoNet Manager GUI (see page 542)
    - Using the MidoNet CLI (see page 546)
- Troubleshooting MidoNet and Cumulus VTEPs (see page 548)
  - Troubleshooting the Control Plane (see page 548)
    - Verifying VTEP and OVSDB Services (see page 548)
    - Verifying OVSDB-server Connections (see page 549)
    - Verifying the VXLAN Bridge and VTEP Interfaces (see page 549)
  - Datapath Troubleshooting (see page 550)
    - Verifying IP Reachability (see page 550)
    - MidoNet VXLAN Encapsulation (see page 550)
  - Inspecting the OVSDB (see page 551)
    - Using VTEP-CTL (see page 551)



- [Getting Open Vswitch Database \(OVSDDB\) Data \(see page 552\)](#)

## Getting Started

Before you create VXLANs with MidoNet, make sure you have the following components:

- A switch (L2 gateway) with a Tomahawk, Trident II+ or Trident II chipset running Cumulus Linux
- OVSDB server (`ovsdb-server`), included in Cumulus Linux
- VTEPd (`ovs-vtep`), included in Cumulus Linux and supports [VLAN-aware bridges \(see page 328\)](#)

Integrating a VXLAN with MidoNet involves:

- Preparing for the MidoNet integration
- Bootstrapping the OVS and VTEP
- Configuring the MidoNet VTEP binding
- Verifying the VXLAN configuration

## Caveats and Errata

- There is no support for [VXLAN routing \(see page 511\)](#) in the Trident II chipset; use a loopback interface ([hyperloop \(see page 530\)](#)) instead.
- For more information about MidoNet, see the MidoNet Operations Guide, version 1.8 or later.

## Preparing for the MidoNet Integration

Before you start configuring the MidoNet tunnel zones, VTEP binding and connecting virtual ports to the VXLAN, you need to complete the bootstrap process on each switch to which you plan to build VXLAN tunnels. This creates the VTEP gateway and initializes the OVS database server. You only need to do the bootstrapping once, before you begin the MidoNet integration.

## Enabling the `openvswitch-vtep` Package

Before you start bootstrapping the integration, you need to enable the `openvswitch-vtep` package, since it is disabled by default in Cumulus Linux.

1. Edit the `/etc/default/openvswitch-vtep` file, changing the `START` option from `no` to `yes`. This simple `sed` command does this, and creates a backup as well:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo sed -i.bak s/START=no/START=yes/g /etc/default/openvswitch-vtep
```

2. Start the daemon:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start openvswitch-vtep.service
```



## Bootstrapping the OVSDB Server and VTEP

### Automating with the Bootstrap Script

The `vtep-bootstrap` script is available so you can do the bootstrapping automatically. For information, read `man vtep-bootstrap`. This script requires three parameters, in this order:

- Switch name: The name of the switch that is the VTEP gateway.
- Tunnel IP address: The datapath IP address of the VTEP.
- Management IP address: The IP address of the switch's management interface.

For example, click here ...

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtep-bootstrap sw11 10.111.1.1 10.50.20.21 --  
no_encryption  
Executed:  
  define physical switch  
  ().  
Executed:  
  define local tunnel IP address on the switch  
  ().  
Executed:  
  define management IP address on the switch  
  ().  
Executed:  
  restart a service  
  (Killing ovs-vtep (28170).  
  Killing ovsdb-server (28146).  
  Starting ovsdb-server.  
  Starting ovs-vtep.).
```



Since MidoNet does not have a controller, you need to use a dummy IP address (for example, 1.1.1.1) for the controller parameter in the bootstrap script. After the script completes, delete the VTEP manager, since it is not needed and will otherwise fill the logs with inconsequential error messages:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtep-ctl del-manager
```

### Manually Bootstrapping

If you don't use the bootstrap script, then you must initialize the OVS database instance manually, and create the VTEP.

Perform the following commands in order (see the automated bootstrapping example above for values):



1. Define the switch in OVSDB:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtep-ctl add-ps <switch_name>
```

2. Define the VTEP tunnel IP address:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtep-ctl set Physical_switch
<switch_name> tunnel_ips=<tunnel_ip>
```

3. Define the management interface IP address:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtep-ctl set Physical_switch
<switch_name> management_ips=<management_ip>
```

4. Restart the OVSDB server and vtepd:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart openvswitch-vtep.service
```

At this point, the switch is ready to connect to MidoNet. The rest of the configuration is performed in the MidoNet Manager GUI, or using the MidoNet API.

## *Configuring MidoNet VTEP and Port Bindings*

This part of the configuration sets up MidoNet and OpenStack to connect the virtualization environment to the Cumulus Linux switch. The `midonet-agent` is the networking component that manages the VXLAN, while the Open Virtual Switch (OVS) client on the OpenStack controller node communicates MAC address information between the `midonet-agent` and the Cumulus Linux OVS database (OVSDB) server.

## *Using the MidoNet Manager GUI*

### *Creating a Tunnel Zone*

1. Click **Tunnel Zones** in the menu on the left side.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Give the tunnel zone a **Name** and select "**VTEP**" for the **Type**.
4. Click **Save**.



The screenshot shows the midonet web interface version v1.8.2. On the left sidebar, 'Tunnel Zones' is selected (marked with a red circle 1). In the main content area, a modal window titled 'Add Tunnel zone' is open. It contains fields for 'Name' (set to 'sw12') and 'Type' (set to 'VTEP'). A red arrow 2 points to the 'Add' button at the bottom right of the modal. A red arrow 3 points to the 'Type' field. A red arrow 4 points to the 'Save' button at the bottom of the modal. Below the modal, a table lists existing tunnel zones: '14cae0e1' (Name: 'gre', Type: 'gre') and 'ba07877a' (Name: 'sw12', Type: 'vtep'). A red arrow 5 points to the 'sw12' entry in the table.

## Adding Hosts to a Tunnel Zone

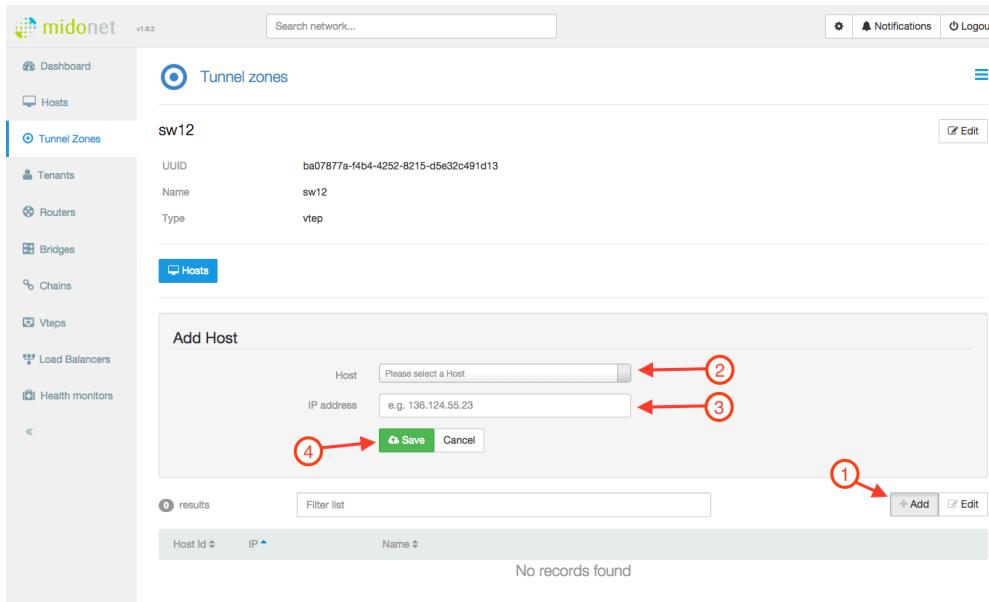
Once the tunnel zone is created, click the name of the tunnel zone to view the hosts table.

The screenshot shows the midonet web interface. The 'Tunnel Zones' section is active (marked with a red circle 2). The table below shows two entries: '14cae0e1' (Name: 'gre', Type: 'gre') and 'ba07877a' (Name: 'sw12', Type: 'vtep'). A red arrow 3 points to the 'sw12' entry in the table.

The tunnel zone is a construct used to define the VXLAN source address used for the tunnel. This host's address is used for the source of the VXLAN encapsulation, and traffic will transit into the routing domain from this point. Thus, the host must have layer 3 reachability to the Cumulus Linux switch tunnel IP.

Next, add a host entry to the tunnel zone:

1. Click **Add**.
2. Select a host from the **Host** list.
3. Provide the tunnel source **IP Address** to use on the selected host.
4. Click **Save**.



The host list now displays the new entry:



Host Id	IP	Name
4d03509b	10.50.21.182	os-compute1

## Creating the VTEP

1. Click the **Vteps** menu on the left side.
2. Click **Add**.
3. Fill out the fields using the same information you used earlier on the switch for the bootstrap procedure:
  - **Management IP** is typically the eth0 address of the switch. This tells the OVS-client to connect to the OVSDB-server on the Cumulus Linux switch.
  - **Management Port Number** is the PTCP port you configured in the `ovs-ctl-vtep` script earlier (the example uses 6632).
  - **Tunnel Zone** is the name of the zone you created in the previous procedure.
4. Click **Save**.



The screenshot shows the 'Add VTEP' form in the MidoNet web interface. The form fields are: Management IP (e.g. 119.15.112.177), Management Port Number (e.g. 6262), and Tunnel zone (Please select a Tunnel zone). A red arrow labeled 1 points to the 'Vteps' link in the sidebar. A red arrow labeled 2 points to the '+ Add' button. A red arrow labeled 3 points to the 'Tunnel zone' dropdown. A red arrow labeled 4 points to the 'Save' button.

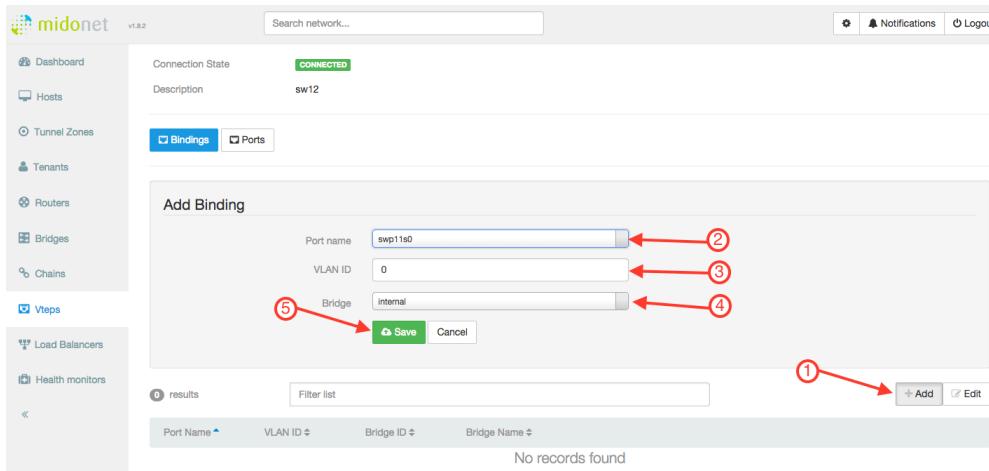
The new VTEP appears in the list below. MidoNet then initiates a connection between the OpenStack Controller and the Cumulus Linux switch. If the OVS client is successfully connected to the OVSDB server, the VTEP entry should display the switch name and VXLAN tunnel IP address, which you specified during the bootstrapping process.

The screenshot shows the list of VTEPs in the MidoNet web interface. There are two entries: sw11 (Management IP 10.50.20.21, Management Port 6632, VXLAN Tunnel IP 10.111.1.1) and sw12 (Management IP 10.50.20.22, Management Port 6632, VXLAN Tunnel IP 10.111.1.2). Both entries have a green 'CONNECTED' status indicator. Red circles highlight the 'CONNECTED' status for both entries, and a red arrow points to the '10.111.1.2' entry.

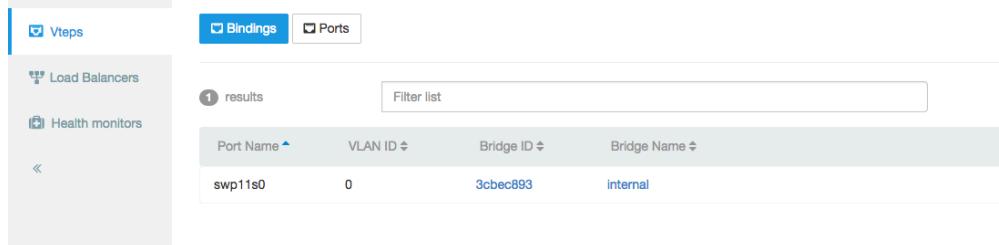
## Binding Ports to the VTEP

Now that connectivity is established to the switch, you need to add a physical port binding to the VTEP on the Cumulus Linux switch:

1. Click **Add**.
2. In the **Port Name** list, select the port on the Cumulus Linux switch that you are using to connect to the VXLAN segment.
3. Specify the **VLAN ID** (enter 0 for untagged).
4. In the **Bridge** list, select the MidoNet bridge that the instances (VMs) are using in OpenStack.
5. Click **Save**.



You should see the port binding displayed in the binding table under the VTEP.



Once the port is bound, this automatically configures a VXLAN bridge interface, and includes the VTEP interface and the port bound to the bridge. Now the OpenStack instances (VMs) should be able to ping the hosts connected to the bound port on the Cumulus switch. The Troubleshooting section below demonstrates the verification of the VXLAN data and control planes.

## *Using the MidoNet CLI*

To get started with the MidoNet CLI, you can access the CLI prompt on the OpenStack Controller:

```
root@os-controller:~# midonet-cli
midonet>
```

Now from the MidoNet CLI, the commands explained in this section perform the same operations depicted in the previous section with the MidoNet Manager GUI.

1. Create a tunnel zone with a name and type vtep:

```
midonet> tunnel-zone create name sw12 type vtep
tzone1
```

2. The tunnel zone is a construct used to define the VXLAN source address used for the tunnel. This host's address is used for the source of the VXLAN encapsulation, and traffic will transit into the routing domain from this point. Thus, the host must have layer 3 reachability to the Cumulus Linux switch tunnel IP.

- First, get the list of available hosts connected to the Neutron network and the MidoNet bridge.
- Next, get a listing of all the interfaces.
- Finally, add a host entry to the tunnel zone ID returned in the previous step, and specify which interface address to use.

```

midonet> list host
host host0 name os-compute1 alive true
host host1 name os-network alive true
midonet> host host0 list interface
iface midonet host_id host0 status 0 addresses [] mac 02:4b:38:92:dd:ce mtu 1500 type Virtual endpoint DATAPATH
iface lo host_id host0 status 3 addresses [u'127.0.0.1', u'169.254.169.254', u'0:0:0:0:0:0:0:1'] mac 00:00:00:00:00:00
mtu 65536 type Virtual endpoint LOCALHOST
iface virbr0 host_id host0 status 1 addresses [u'192.168.122.1'] mac 22:6e:63:90:1f:69 mtu 1500 type Virtual endpoint UNKNOWN
iface tap7cf84c-26 host_id host0 status 3 addresses [u'fe80:0:0:0:e822:94ff:fee2:d41b'] mac ea:22:94:e2:d4:1b mtu 6500
0 type Virtual endpoint DATAPATH
iface eth1 host_id host0 status 3 addresses [u'10.111.0.182', u'fe80:0:0:0:5054:ff:fe85:acd6'] mac 52:54:00:85:ac:d6
mtu 1500 type Physical endpoint PHYSICAL
iface tapfd4abcea-df host_id host0 status 3 addresses [u'fe80:0:0:0:14b3:45ff:fe94:5b07'] mac 16:b3:45:94:5b:07 mtu 6500
0 type Virtual endpoint DATAPATH
iface eth0 host_id host0 status 3 addresses [u'10.50.21.182', u'fe80:0:0:0:5054:ff:feef:c5dc'] mac 52:54:00:ef:c5:dc
mtu 1500 type Physical endpoint PHYSICAL
midonet> tunnel-zone tzone0 add member host host0 address 10.111.0.182
zone tzone0 host host0 address 10.111.0.182

```

Repeat this procedure for each OpenStack host connected to the Neutron network and the MidoNet bridge.

3. Create a VTEP and assign it to the tunnel zone ID returned in the previous step. The management IP address (the destination address for the VXLAN/remote VTEP) and the port must be the same ones you configured in the `vtep-bootstrap` script or the manual bootstrapping:

```

midonet> vtep add management-ip 10.50.20.22 management-port 6632
tunnel-zone tzone0
name sw12 description sw12 management-ip 10.50.20.22 management-
port 6632 tunnel-zone tzone0 connection-state CONNECTED

```



In this step, MidoNet initiates a connection between the OpenStack Controller and the Cumulus Linux switch. If the OVS client is successfully connected to the OVSDB server, the returned values should show the name and description matching the `switch-name` parameter specified in the bootstrap process.



Verify the connection-state as CONNECTED, otherwise if ERROR is returned, you must debug. Typically this only fails if the `management-ip` and/or `management-port` settings are wrong.

4. The VTEP binding uses the information provided to MidoNet from the OVSDB server, providing a list of ports that the hardware VTEP can use for layer 2 attachment. This binding virtually connects the physical interface to the overlay switch, and joins it to the Neutron bridged network.

First, get the UUID of the Neutron network behind the MidoNet bridge:

```
midonet> list bridge
bridge bridge0 name internal state up
bridge bridge1 name internal2 state up
midonet> show bridge bridge1 id
6c9826da-6655-4fe3-a826-4dcba6477d2d
```

Next, create the VTEP binding, using the UUID and the switch port being bound to the VTEP on the remote end. If there is no VLAN ID, set `vlan` to 0:

```
midonet> vtep name sw12 binding add network-id 6c9826da-6655-4
fe3-a826-4dcba6477d2d physical-port swp11s0 vlan 0
management-ip 10.50.20.22 physical-port swp11s0 vlan 0 network-
id 6c9826da-6655-4fe3-a826-4dcba6477d2d
```

At this point, the VTEP should be connected, and the layer 2 overlay should be operational. From the openstack instance (VM), you should be able to ping a physical server connected to the port bound to the hardware switch VTEP.

## Troubleshooting MidoNet and Cumulus VTEPs

As with any complex system, there is a control plane and data plane.

### *Troubleshooting the Control Plane*

In this solution, the control plane consists of the connection between the OpenStack Controller, and each Cumulus Linux switch running the `ovsdb-server` and `vtep` daemons.

### *Verifying VTEP and OVSDB Services*

First, it is important that the OVSDB server and `ovs-vtep` daemon are running. Verify this is the case:



```
cumulus@switch12:~$ systemctl status openvswitch-vtep.service
ovsdb-server is running with pid 17440
ovs-vtep is running with pid 17444
```

## Verifying OVSDB-server Connections

From the OpenStack Controller host, verify that it can connect to the ovsdb-server. Telnet to the switch IP address on port 6632:

```
root@os-controller:~# telnet 10.50.20.22 6632
Trying 10.50.20.22...
Connected to 10.50.20.22.
Escape character is '^]'.
<Ctrl+c>
Connection closed by foreign host.
```

If the connection fails, verify IP reachability from the host to the switch. If that succeeds, it is likely the bootstrap process did not set up port 6632. Redo the bootstrapping procedures above.

```
root@os-controller:~# ping -c1 10.50.20.22
PING 10.50.20.22 (10.50.20.22) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 10.50.20.22: icmp_seq=1 ttl=63 time=0.315 ms
--- 10.50.20.22 ping statistics ---
1 packets transmitted, 1 received, 0% packet loss, time 0ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.315/0.315/0.315/0.000 ms
```

## Verifying the VXLAN Bridge and VTEP Interfaces

After creating the VTEP in MidoNet and adding an interface binding, you should see **br-vxln** and **vxln** interfaces on the switch. You can verify that the VXLAN bridge and VTEP interface are created and UP:

```
cumulus@switch12:~$ sudo brctl show
bridge name      bridge id               STP      enabled interfaces
bridge          8000.00e0ec2749a2    no        swp11s0
                           vxln10006
cumulus@switch12:~$ sudo ip -d link show vxln10006
55: vxln10006: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
    master br-vxln10006 state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT
    link/ether 72:94:eb:b6:6c:c3 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    vxlan id 10006 local 10.111.1.2 port 32768 61000 nolearning ageing 3
    00 svcnode 10.111.0.182
                           bridge_slave
```

Next, look at the bridging table for the VTEP and the forwarding entries. The bound interface and the VTEP should be listed along with the MAC addresses of those interfaces. When the hosts attached to the bound port send data, those MACs are learned, and entered into the bridging table, as well as the OVSDB.

```
cumulus@switch12:~$ brctl showmacs br-vxln10006
port name      mac addr          vlan  is local?    ageing timer
swp11s0        00:e0:ec:27:49:a2   0     yes           0.00
swp11s0        64:ae:0c:32:f1:41   0     no            0.01
vxln10006      72:94:eb:b6:6c:c3   0     yes           0.00

cumulus@switch12:~$ sudo bridge fdb show br-vxln10006
fa:16:3e:14:04:2e dev vxln10004 dst 10.111.0.182 vlan 65535 self
permanent
00:e0:ec:27:49:a2 dev swp11s0 vlan 0 master br-vxln10004 permanent
b6:71:33:3b:a7:83 dev vxln10004 vlan 0 master br-vxln10004 permanent
64:ae:0c:32:f1:41 dev swp11s0 vlan 0 master br-vxln10004
```

## Datapath Troubleshooting

If you have verified the control plane is correct, and you still cannot get data between the OpenStack instances and the physical nodes on the switch, there may be something wrong with the data plane. The data plane consists of the actual VXLAN encapsulated path, between one of the OpenStack nodes running the `midolman` service. This is typically the compute nodes, but can include the MidoNet gateway nodes. If the OpenStack instances can ping the tenant router address but cannot ping the physical device connected to the switch (or vice versa), then something is wrong in the data plane.

## Verifying IP Reachability

First, there must be IP reachability between the encapsulating node, and the address you bootstrapped as the tunnel IP on the switch. Verify the OpenStack host can ping the tunnel IP. If this doesn't work, check the routing design, and fix the layer 3 problem first.

```
root@os-compute1:~# ping -c1 10.111.1.2
PING 10.111.1.2 (10.111.1.2) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 10.111.1.2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=62 time=0.649 ms
--- 10.111.1.2 ping statistics ---
1 packets transmitted, 1 received, 0% packet loss, time 0ms
rtt min/avg/max/mdev = 0.649/0.649/0.649/0.000 ms
```

## MidoNet VXLAN Encapsulation

If the instance (VM) cannot ping the physical server, or the reply is not returning, look at the packets on the OpenStack node. Initiate a ping from the OpenStack instance, then using `tcpdump`, hopefully you can see the VXLAN data. This example displays what it looks like when it is working.

```
root@os-compute1:~# tcpdump -i eth1 -l -nnn -vvv -X -e port 4789
52:54:00:85:ac:d6 > 00:e0:ec:26:50:36, ethertype IPv4 (0x0800),
length 148: (tos 0x0, ttl 255, id 7583, offset 0, flags [none], proto
UDP (17), length 134)
```



```
10.111.0.182.41568 > 10.111.1.2.4789: [no cksum] VXLAN, flags [I] (0x08), vni 10008
fa:16:3e:14:04:2e > 64:ae:0c:32:f1:41, ethertype IPv4 (0x0800),
length 98: (tos 0x0, ttl 64, id 64058, offset 0, flags [DF], proto
ICMP (1), length 84)
 10.111.102.104 > 10.111.102.2: ICMP echo request, id 15873, seq 0,
length 64
 0x0000: 4500 0086 1d9f 0000 ff11 8732 0a6f 00b6 E.....2.o..
 0x0010: 0a6f 0102 a260 12b5 0072 0000 0800 0000 .o...`....r....
 0x0020: 0027 1800 64ae 0c32 f141 fa16 3e14 042e .'..d..2.A..>...
 0x0030: 0800 4500 0054 fa3a 4000 4001 5f26 0a6f ..E..T.:@. @_&.o
 0x0040: 6668 0a6f 6602 0800 f9de 3e01 0000 4233 fh.of....>...B3
 0x0050: 7dec 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 }.....
 0x0060: 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 .....
 0x0070: 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 .....
 0x0080: 0000 0000 0000 .....  
00:e0:ec:26:50:36 > 52:54:00:85:ac:d6, ethertype IPv4 (0x0800),
length 148: (tos 0x0, ttl 62, id 2689, offset 0, flags [none], proto
UDP (17), length 134)
 10.111.1.2.63385 > 10.111.0.182.4789: [no cksum] VXLAN, flags [I] (0x08), vni 10008
64:ae:0c:32:f1:41 > fa:16:3e:14:04:2e, ethertype IPv4 (0x0800),
length 98: (tos 0x0, ttl 255, id 64058, offset 0, flags [DF], proto
ICMP (1), length 84)
 10.111.102.2 > 10.111.102.104: ICMP echo reply, id 15873, seq 0,
length 64
 0x0000: 4500 0086 0a81 0000 3e11 5b51 0a6f 0102 E.....>.[Q.o..
 0x0010: 0a6f 00b6 f799 12b5 0072 0000 0800 0000 .o.....r.....
 0x0020: 0027 1800 fa16 3e14 042e 64ae 0c32 f141 .'....>..d..2.A
 0x0030: 0800 4500 0054 fa3a 4000 ff01 a025 0a6f ..E..T.:@....%o
 0x0040: 6602 0a6f 6668 0000 01df 3e01 0000 4233 f..ofh....>...B3
 0x0050: 7dec 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 }.....
 0x0060: 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 .....
 0x0070: 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 0000 .....
 0x0080: 0000 0000 0000 .....  
.....
```

## Inspecting the OVSDB

### Using VTEP-CTL

These commands show you the information installed in the OVSDB. This database is structured using the *physical switch ID*, with one or more *logical switch IDs* associated with it. The bootstrap process creates the physical switch, and MidoNet creates the logical switch after the control session is established.

### Listing the Physical Switch

```
cumulus@switch12:~$ vtep-ctl list-ps
sw12
```



## *Listing the Logical Switch*

```
cumulus@switch12:~$ vtep-ctl list-ls  
mn-6c9826da-6655-4fe3-a826-4dcba6477d2d
```

## *Listing Local or Remote MAC Addresses*

These commands show the MAC addresses learned from the connected port bound to the logical switch, or the MAC addresses advertised from MidoNet. The *unknown-dst* entries are installed to satisfy the ethernet flooding of unknown unicast, and important for learning.

```
cumulus@switch12:~$ vtep-ctl list-local-macs mn-6c9826da-6655-4fe3-  
a826-4dcba6477d2d  
ucast-mac-local  
  64:ae:0c:32:f1:41 -> vxlan_over_ipv4/10.111.1.2  
mcast-mac-local  
  unknown-dst -> vxlan_over_ipv4/10.111.1.2  
  
cumulus@switch12:~$ vtep-ctl list-remote-macs mn-6c9826da-6655-4fe3-  
a826-4dcba6477d2d  
ucast-mac-remote  
  fa:16:3e:14:04:2e -> vxlan_over_ipv4/10.111.0.182  
mcast-mac-remote  
  unknown-dst -> vxlan_over_ipv4/10.111.0.182oh
```

## *Getting Open Vswitch Database (OVSDB) Data*

The `ovsdb-client dump` command is large, but shows all of the information and tables that are used in communication between the OVS client and server.

Click to expand the output ...

```
cumulus@switch12:~$ ovsdb-client dump  
Arp_Sources_Local table  
_uuid locator src_mac  
-----  
Arp_Sources_Remote table  
_uuid locator src_mac  
-----  
Global table  
_uuid managers switches  
-----  
-----  
76672d6a-2740-4c8d-9618-9e8dfb4b0bd7 [ ] [6d459554-0c75-4170-bb3d-  
117eb4ce1f4d]
```



```
Logical_Binding_Stats table
_uuid bytes_from_local bytes_to_local packets_from_local
packets_to_local
-----
d2e378b4-61c1-4daf-9aec-a7fd352d3193 5782569 1658250 21687 14589
Logical_Router table
_uuid description name static_routes switch_binding
-----
Logical_Switch table
_uuid description name tunnel_key
-----
44d162dc-0372-4749-a802-5b153c7120ec "" "mn-6c9826da-6655-4fe3-a826-
4dcba6477d2d" 10006
Manager table
_uuid inactivity_probe is_connected max_backoff other_config status
target
-----
Mcast_Macs_Local table
MAC _uuid ipaddr locator_set logical_switch
-----
unknown-dst 25eaf29a-c540-46e3-8806-3892070a2de5 "" 7a4c000a-244e-
4b37-8f25-fd816c1a80dc 44d162dc-0372-4749-a802-5b153c7120ec
Mcast_Macs_Remote table
MAC _uuid ipaddr locator_set logical_switch
-----
unknown-dst b122b897-5746-449e-83ba-fa571a64b374 "" 6c04d477-18d0-
41df-8d52-dc7b17845ebe 44d162dc-0372-4749-a802-5b153c7120ec
Physical_Locator table
_uuid dst_ip encapsulation_type
-----
2fcf8b7e-e084-4bcb-b668-755ae7ac0bfb "10.111.0.182" "vxlan_over_ipv4"
3f78dbb0-9695-42ef-a31f-aaaf525147f1 "10.111.1.2" "vxlan_over_ipv4"
Physical_Locator_Set table
_uuid locators
-----
6c04d477-18d0-41df-8d52-dc7b17845ebe [2fcf8b7e-e084-4bcb-b668-
755ae7ac0bfb]
7a4c000a-244e-4b37-8f25-fd816c1a80dc [3f78dbb0-9695-42ef-a31f-
aaaf525147f1]
Physical_Port table
_uuid description name port_fault_status vlan_bindings vlan_stats
-----
```

```

bf69fcbb-36b3-4dbc-a90d-fc7412e57076 "swp1" "swp1" [] {} {}
bf38137d-3a14-454e-8df0-9c56e4b4e640 "swp10" "swp10" [] {} {}
69585fff-4360-4177-901d-8360ade5391b "swp11s0" "swp11s0" [] {0=44d162d
c-0372-4749-a802-5b153c7120ec} {0=d2e378b4-61c1-4daf-9aec-
a7fd352d3193}
2a2d04fa-7190-41fe-8cee-318fcbafb2ea "swp11s1" "swp11s1" [] {} {}
684f99d5-426c-45c8-b964-211489f45599 "swp11s2" "swp11s2" [] {} {}
47cc66fb-ef8a-4a9b-a497-1844b89f7d32 "swp11s3" "swp11s3" [] {} {}
5be3a052-be0f-4258-94cb-5e8be9afb896 "swp12" "swp12" [] {} {}
631b19bd-3022-4353-bb2d-f498b0c1cb17 "swp13" "swp13" [] {} {}
3001c904-b152-4dc4-9d8e-718f24ffa439 "swp14" "swp14" [] {} {}
a6f8a88a-3877-4f81-b9b4-d75394a09d2c "swp15" "swp15" [] {} {}
7cb681f4-2206-4c70-85b7-23b60963cd21 "swp16" "swp16" [] {} {}
3943fb6a-0b49-4806-a014-2bcd4d469537 "swp17" "swp17" [] {} {}
109a9911-d6c7-4142-b6c9-7c985506abb4 "swp18" "swp18" [] {} {}
93b85c31-be38-4384-8b7a-9696764f9ba9 "swp19" "swp19" [] {} {}
bcfb2920-6676-494c-9dc9-b474123b7e59 "swp2" "swp2" [] {} {}
4223559a-dalc-4c34-b8bf-bff7ced376ad "swp20" "swp20" [] {} {}
6bccda8-d7e5-4b19-b978-4ec7f5b868e0 "swp21" "swp21" [] {} {}
c6876886-8386-4e34-a307-931909fca58f "swp22" "swp22" [] {} {}
c5a88dd6-d931-4b2c-9baa-a0abfb9d41f5 "swp23" "swp23" [] {} {}
124d1e01-a187-4427-819f-21de66e76f13 "swp24" "swp24" [] {} {}
55b49814-b5c5-405e-8e9f-898f3df4f872 "swp25" "swp25" [] {} {}
b2b2cd14-662d-45a5-87c1-277acbccdfffd "swp26" "swp26" [] {} {}
c35f55f5-8ec6-4fed-bef4-49801cd0934c "swp27" "swp27" [] {} {}
a44c5402-6218-4f09-bf1e-518f41a5546e "swp28" "swp28" [] {} {}
a9294152-2b32-4058-8796-23520fffb7379 "swp29" "swp29" [] {} {}
e0ee993a-8383-4701-a766-d425654dbb7f "swp3" "swp3" [] {} {}
d9db91a6-1c10-4154-9269-84877faa79b4 "swp30" "swp30" [] {} {}
b26ce4dd-b771-4d7b-8647-41fa97aa40e3 "swp31" "swp31" [] {} {}
652c6cd1-0823-4585-bb78-658e6ca2abfc "swp32" "swp32" [] {} {}
5b15372b-89f0-4e14-a50b-b6c6f937d33d "swp4" "swp4" [] {} {}
e00741f1-ba34-47c5-ae23-9269c5d1a871 "swp5" "swp5" [] {} {}
7096abaf-eebf-4ee3-b0cc-276224bc3e71 "swp6" "swp6" [] {} {}
439afb62-067e-4bbe-a0d9-ee33a23d2a9c "swp7" "swp7" [] {} {}
54f6c9df-01a1-4d96-9dcf-3035a33ffb3e "swp8" "swp8" [] {} {}
c85ed6cd-a7d4-4016-b3e9-34df592072eb "swp9s0" "swp9s0" [] {} {}
cf382ed6-60d3-43f5-8586-81f4f0f2fb28 "swp9s1" "swp9s1" [] {} {}
c32a9ff9-fd11-4399-815f-806322f26ff5 "swp9s2" "swp9s2" [] {} {}
9a7e42c4-228f-4b55-b972-7c3b8352c27d "swp9s3" "swp9s3" [] {} {}

Physical_Switch table
_uuid description management_ips name ports switch_fault_status
tunnel_ips tunnels
-----
```

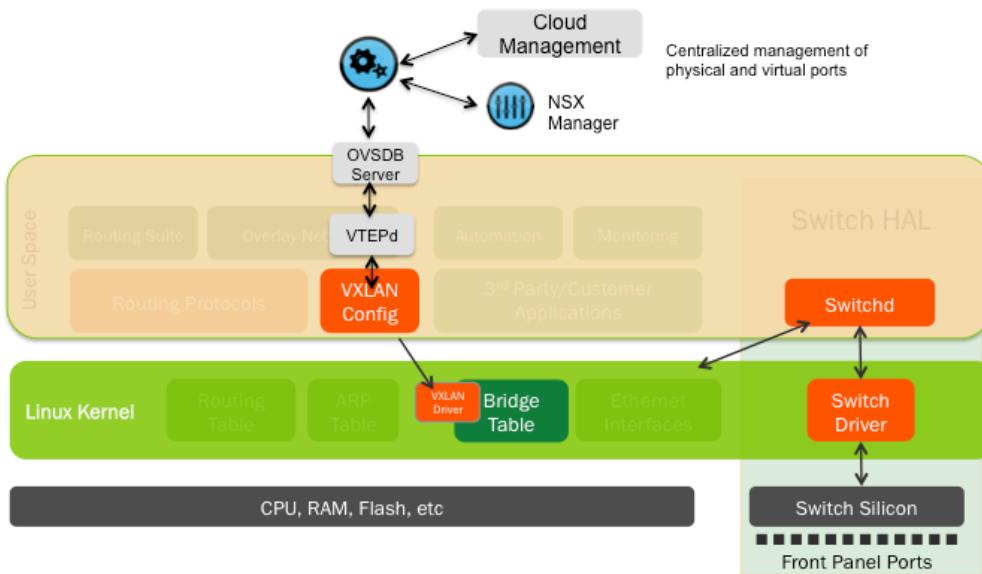


```
"64:ae:0c:32:f1:41" 47a83a7c-bd2d-4c02-9814-8222229c592f "" 3f78dbb0-9695-42ef-a31f-aaaf525147f1 44d162dc-0372-4749-a802-5b153c7120ec
Ucast_Macs_Remote table
MAC _uuid ipaddr locator logical_switch

"fa:16:3e:14:04:2e" 65605488-9ee5-4c8e-93e5-7b1cc15cfcc7 "" 2fcf8b7e-e084-4bcb-b668-755ae7ac0bfb 44d162dc-0372-4749-a802-5b153c7120ec
```

## Integrating Hardware VTEPs with VMware NSX-V

Switches running Cumulus Linux can integrate with VMware NSX-V to act as hardware VTEP gateways. The VMware NSX-V controller provides consistent provisioning across virtual and physical server infrastructures.



## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- [Getting Started \(see page 557\)](#)
  - [Caveats and Errata \(see page 557\)](#)
- [Bootstrapping the NSX-V Integration \(see page 557\)](#)
  - [Enabling the openvswitch-vtep Package \(see page 557\)](#)
  - [Using the Bootstrapping Script \(see page 558\)](#)
  - [Manually Bootstrapping the NSX-V Integration \(see page 559\)](#)
  - [Generating the Credentials Certificate \(see page 559\)](#)



- Configuring the Switch as a VTEP Gateway (see page 561)
- Configuring the Transport Zone and Segment ID (see page 563)
- Configuring the Logical Layer (see page 565)
  - Defining Logical Switches (see page 565)
  - Configuring the Replication Cluster (see page 565)
  - Defining Logical Switch Ports (see page 566)
- Verifying the VXLAN Configuration (see page 568)

## Getting Started

Before you integrate VXLANs with NSX-V, make sure you have the following components:

- A switch (L2 gateway) with a Broadcom Tomahawk, Trident II+ or Trident II chipset, or a Mellanox Spectrum chipset running Cumulus Linux
- OVSDB server (`ovsdb-server`), included in Cumulus Linux
- VTEPd (`ovs-vtep`), included in Cumulus Linux and supports [VLAN-aware bridges](#) (see page 328)

Integrating a VXLAN with NSX-V involves:

- Bootstrapping the NSX-V integration
- Configuring the transport zone and segment ID
- Configuring the logical layer
- Verifying the VXLAN configuration

## Caveats and Errata

- As mentioned in [Network Virtualization](#) (see page 399), the switches with the source and destination VTEPs cannot reside on the same subnet; there must be at least one layer 3 hop between the VXLAN source and destination.
- There is no support for [VXLAN routing](#) (see page 511) in the Trident II chipset; use a loopback interface ([hyperloop](#) (see page 530)) instead.
- The `ovsdb-server` cannot select the loopback interface as the source IP address, causing TOR registration to the controller to fail. To work around this issue, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp redistribute connected
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

- Do not use 0 or 16777215 as the VNI ID, as they are reserved values under Cumulus Linux.
- For more information about NSX-V, see the VMware NSX User Guide, version 4.0.0 or later.

## Bootstrapping the NSX-V Integration

Before you start configuring the gateway service and logical switches and ports that comprise the VXLAN, you need to complete some steps to bootstrap the process. You need to do the bootstrapping just once, before you begin the integration.

## *Enabling the openvswitch-vtep Package*

Before you start bootstrapping the integration, you need to enable then start the `openvswitch-vtep` package, as it is disabled by default in Cumulus Linux.

```
cumulus@switch$ sudo systemctl enable openvswitch-vtep.service
cumulus@switch$ sudo systemctl start openvswitch-vtep.service
```

## *Using the Bootstrapping Script*

A script is available so you can do the bootstrapping automatically. For information, read `man vtep-bootstrap`.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ vtep-bootstrap -h
usage: vtep-bootstrap [-h] [--controller_ip CONTROLLER_IP]
                      [--controller_port CONTROLLER_PORT] [--no_encryption]
                      [--credentials-path CREDENTIALS_PATH]
                      [--pki-path PKI_PATH]
                      switch_name tunnel_ip management_ip

positional arguments:
  switch_name           Switch name
  tunnel_ip            local VTEP IP address for tunnel termination
  (data
    plane)
  management_ip        local management interface IP address for OVSDB
                       connection (control plane)

optional arguments:
  -h, --help            show this help message and exit
  --controller_ip CONTROLLER_IP
  --controller_port CONTROLLER_PORT
  --no_encryption      clear text OVSDB connection
  --credentials-path CREDENTIALS_PATH
  --pki-path PKI_PATH
```

The output of the script is displayed here:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ vtep-bootstrap --credentials-path /var/lib
/openvswitch vtep7 --controller_ip 192.168.110.110 172.16.20.157
192.168.110.25
Executed:
  create certificate on a switch, to be used for authentication
with controller
```



```
( ).  
Executed:  
    sign certificate  
        (vtep7-req.pem      Wed May  3 01:15:24 UTC 2017  
         fingerprint bcc876b7bc8d1d596d1e78d3bde9337d2550f92e) .  
Executed:  
    define physical switch  
        ().  
Executed:  
    define NSX controller IP address in OVSDB  
        ().  
Executed:  
    define local tunnel IP address on the switch  
        ().  
Executed:  
    define management IP address on the switch  
        ().  
Executed:  
    restart a service  
        () .
```

In the above example, the following information was passed to the `vtep-bootstrap` script:

- `--credentials-path /var/lib/openvswitch`: Is the path to where the certificate and key pairs for authenticating with the NSX controller are stored.
- `vtep7`: is the ID for the VTEP, the switch name.
- `192.168.110.110`: Is the IP address of the NSX controller.
- `172.16.20.157`: Is the datapath IP address of the VTEP.
- `192.168.110.25`: Is the IP address of the management interface on the switch.

These IP addresses will be used throughout the rest of the examples below.

## *Manually Bootstrapping the NSX-V Integration*

If you don't use the script, then you must:

- Initialize the OVS database instance
- Generate a certificate and key pair for authentication by NSX-V
- Configure a switch as a VTEP gateway

These steps are described next.

## *Generating the Credentials Certificate*

First, in Cumulus Linux, you must generate a certificate that the NSX controller uses for authentication.

1. In a terminal session connected to the switch, run the following commands:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ovs-pki init  
Creating controllerca...
```



```
Creating switchca...
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ovs-pki req+sign cumulus

cumulus-req.pem Wed Oct 23 05:32:49 UTC 2013
    fingerprint b587c9fe36f09fb371750ab50c430485d33a174a

cumulus@switch:~$ ls -l
total 12
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 4028 Oct 23 05:32 cumulus-cert.pem
-rw----- 1 root root 1679 Oct 23 05:32 cumulus-privkey.pem
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 3585 Oct 23 05:32 cumulus-req.pem
```

2. In `/usr/share/openvswitch/scripts/ovs-ctl-vtep`, make sure the lines containing **private-key**, **certificate** and **bootstrap-ca-cert** point to the correct files; **bootstrap-ca-cert** is obtained dynamically the first time the switch talks to the controller:

```
# Start ovsdb-server.
set ovsdb-server "$DB_FILE"
set "$@" -vANY:CONSOLE:EMER -vANY:SYSLOG:ERR -vANY:FILE:INFO
set "$@" --remote=unix:"$DB_SOCK"
set "$@" --remote=db:Global,managers
set "$@" --remote=ptcp:6633:$LOCALIP
set "$@" --private-key=/root/cumulus-privkey.pem
set "$@" --certificate=/root/cumulus-cert.pem
set "$@" --bootstrap-ca-cert=/root/controller.cacert
```

If files have been moved or regenerated, restart the OVSDB server and `vtep`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart openvswitch-vtep.service
```

3. Define the NSX Controller Cluster IP address in OVSDB. This causes the OVSDB server to start contacting the NSX controller:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtep-ctl set-manager ssl:192.168.100.17:
6632
```

4. Define the local IP address on the VTEP for VXLAN tunnel termination. First, find the physical switch name as recorded in OVSDB:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtep-ctl list-ps
vtep7
```

Then set the tunnel source IP address of the VTEP. This is the datapath address of the VTEP, which is typically an address on a loopback interface on the switch that is reachable from the underlying L3 network:

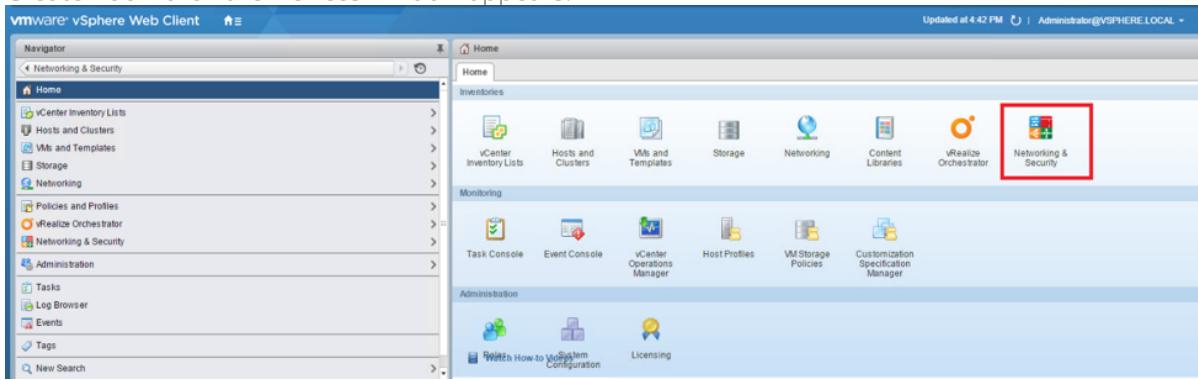
```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtep-ctl set Physical_Switch vtep7
tunnel_ips=172.16.20.157
```

Once you finish generating the certificate, keep the terminal session active, as you need to paste the certificate into NSX Manager when you configure the VTEP gateway.

## Configuring the Switch as a VTEP Gateway

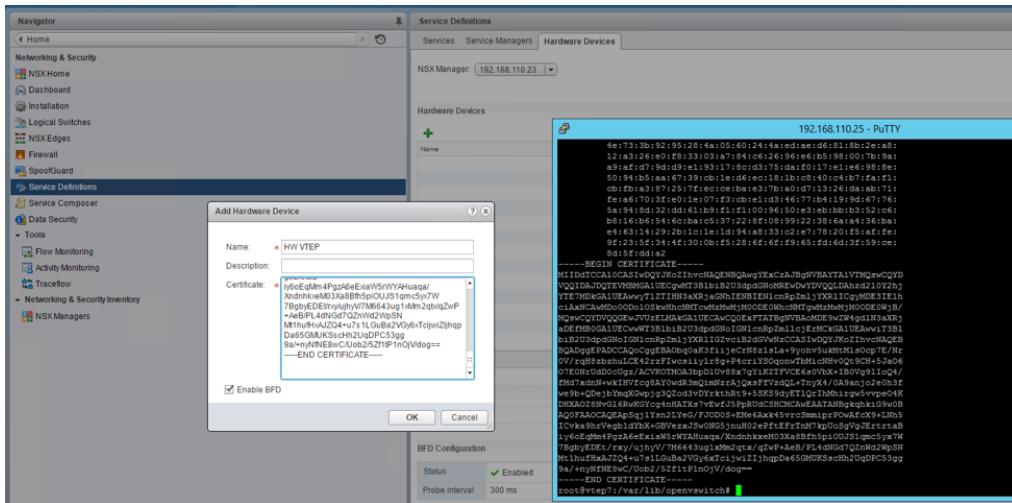
After you create a certificate, connect to NSX Manager in a browser to configure a Cumulus Linux switch as a hardware VTEP gateway. In this example, the IP address of the NSX Manager is 192.168.110.23.

1. In NSX Manager, add a new HW VTEP gateway. Click the **Network & Security** icon, **Service Definitions** category, then the **Hardware Devices** tab. Under **Hardware Devices**, click **+**. The Create Add Hardware Devices window appears.

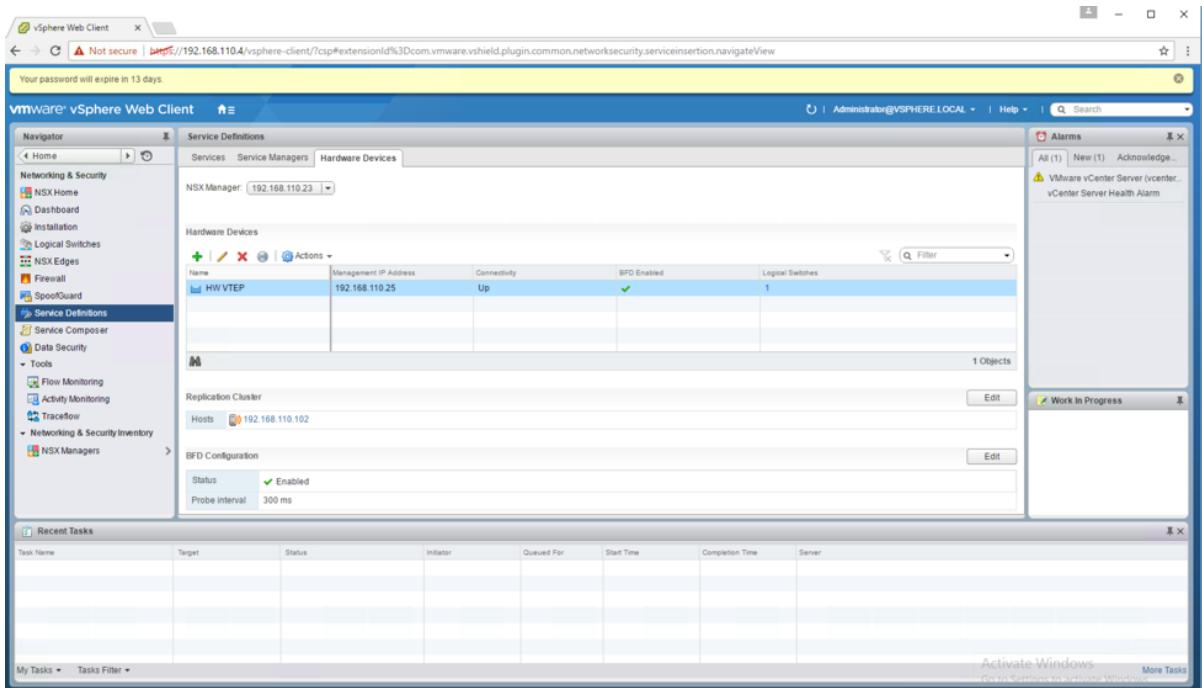


2. In the **Name** field, give the HW VTEP gateway a name.
3. Enable the BFD service to the service nodes. Select the **Enable BFD** check box.
4. From the terminal session connected to the switch where you generated the certificate, copy the certificate and paste it into the **Certificate** text field. Copy only the bottom portion, including the **BEGIN CERTIFICATE** and **END CERTIFICATE** lines. For example, copy all the highlighted text in the terminal terminal and paste it into NSX Manager:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cd /var/lib/openvswitch
cumulus@switch:/var/lib/openvswitch$ ls
conf.db  pki  vtep7-cert.pem  vtep7-privkey.pem  vtep7-req.pem
cumulus@switch:/var/lib/openvswitch$ cat vtep7-cert.pem
```



5. Click **OK** to save the gateway.



Once communication is established between the switch and the controller, a `controller.cacert` file will be downloaded onto the switch.

Verify the controller and switch handshake is successful. In a terminal connected to the switch, run this command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ovsdb-client dump -f list | grep -A 7 "Manager"
Manager table
_uuid : 2693ea2e-306-4c23-ac03-934ala304077
_inactivity_probe : []
_is_connected : true
_max_backoff : []
_other_config : {}
_status : {sec_since_connect="557", state=ACTIVE}
```



```
target : "ssl:192.168.110.110:6640"
```

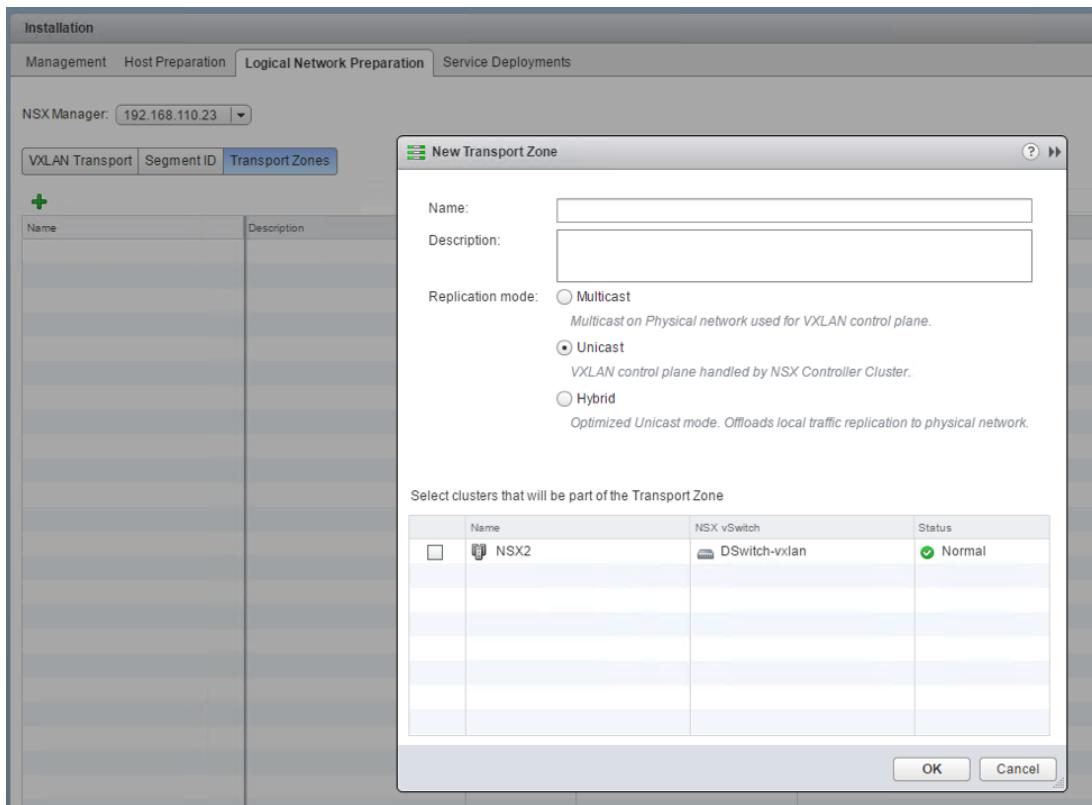
## Configuring the Transport Zone and Segment ID

After you finish bootstrapping the NSX-V integration, you need to configure the transport zone and segment ID.

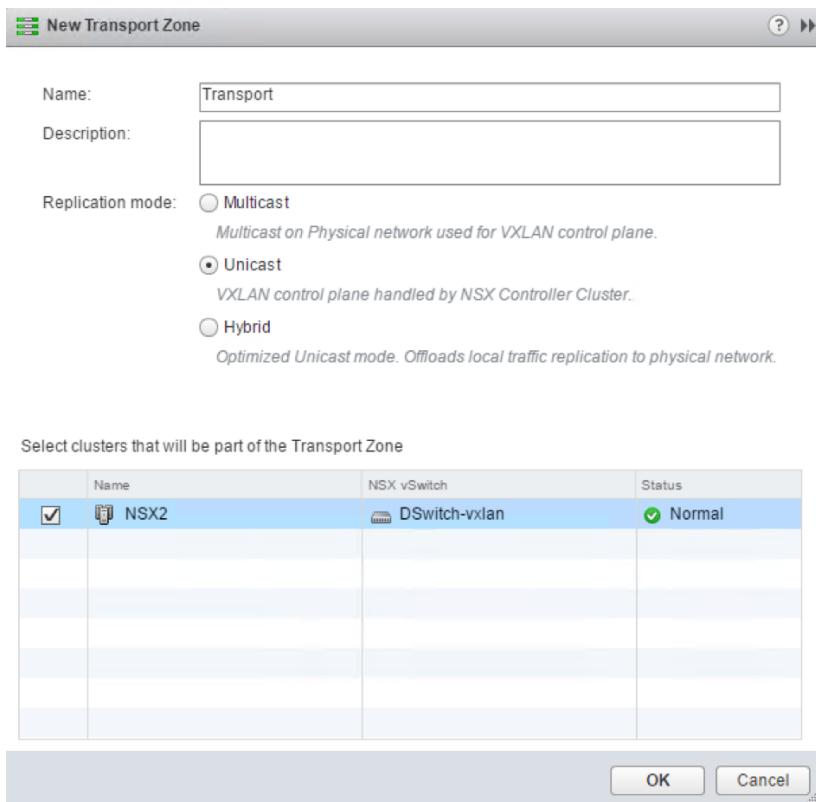
1. In the **Installation** category, click the **Logical Network Preparation** tab, then click the **Segment ID** tab.
2. Click **Edit** and add the segment IDs (VNIDs) to be used. Here VNIs 5000-5999 are configured.

The screenshot shows two instances of the Cumulus VX interface. The top instance displays the 'Segment IDs & Multicast Addresses allocation (system wide settings)' page. It includes tabs for 'NSX Manager' (set to 192.168.110.23), 'VXLAN Transport', 'Segment ID' (which is selected and highlighted in blue), and 'Transport Zones'. Below these tabs is a table with columns for 'Segment ID pool' and 'Multicast addresses'. A red box highlights the 'Edit' button at the top right of this section. The bottom instance shows a modal dialog titled 'Edit Segment IDs and Multicast Address Allocation'. It contains a text input field for 'Segment ID pool' with the value '5000-5999' (also highlighted with a red box). There is also a checkbox for 'Enable Multicast addressing' which is unchecked. At the bottom of the dialog are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

3. Click **OK** to save and provision the segment IDs.
4. Click the **Transport Zones** tab, choose the name of the transport zone.



5. Select **Unicast** to choose the NSX-V Controller Cluster to handle the VXLAN control plane.



6. Click **OK** to save the new transport zone.

Next, you will configure the logical layer on NSX-V.

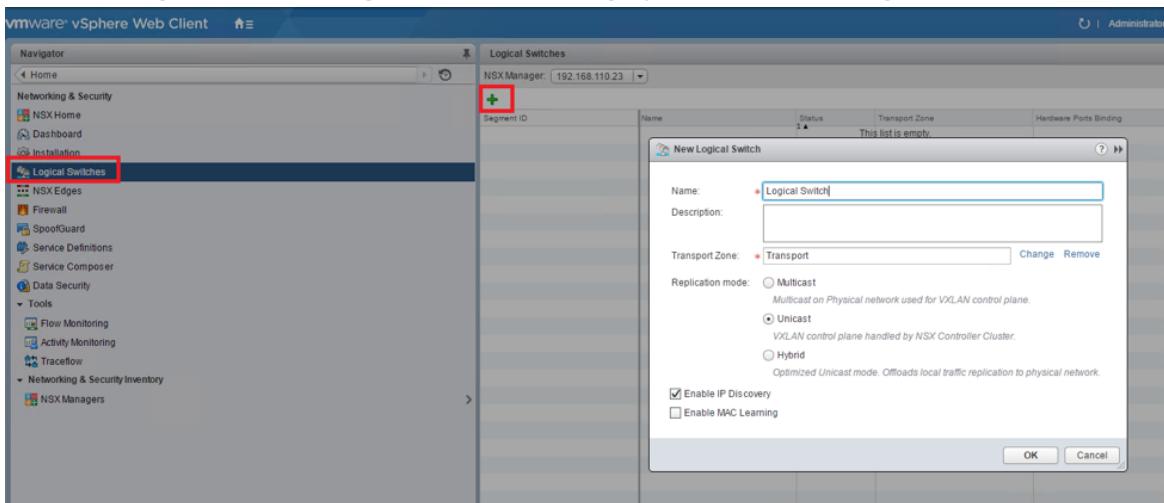
## Configuring the Logical Layer

To complete the integration with NSX-V, you need to configure the logical layer, which requires defining a logical switch (the VXLAN instance) and all the logical ports needed.

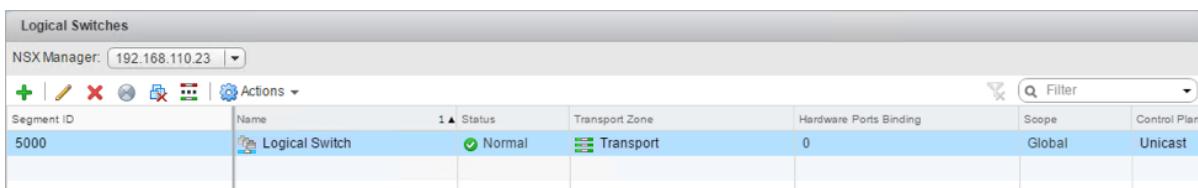
### Defining Logical Switches

To define the logical switch, do the following:

1. In NSX Manager, select the **Logical Switches** category. Click **+** to add a logical switch instance.



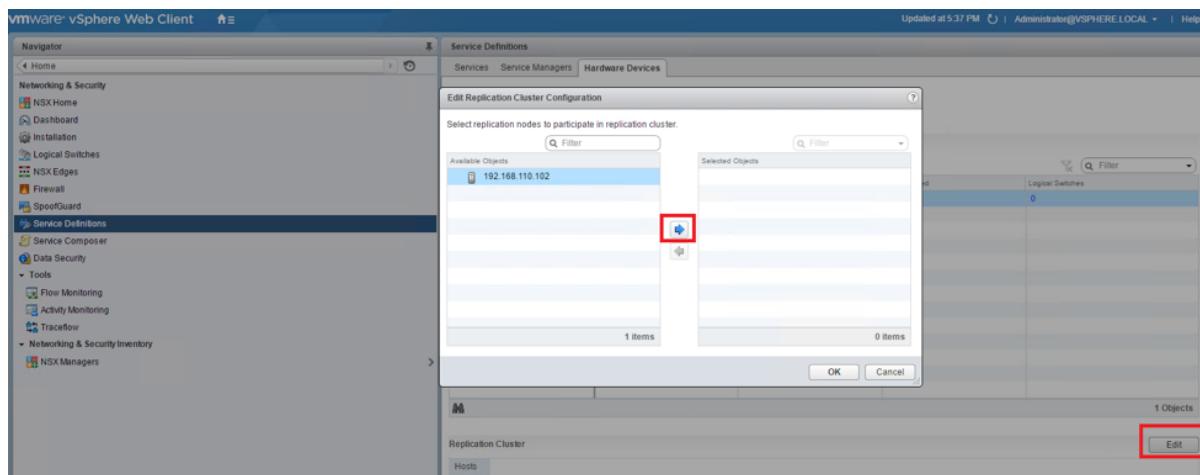
2. In the **Name** field, enter a name for the logical switch.
3. In the **Transport Zone** field, add the transport zone that you created earlier.
4. In the **Replication Mode** field, select **Unicast** for replication by the service node. Then check the **Enable IP Discovery** check box.
5. Click **OK**.



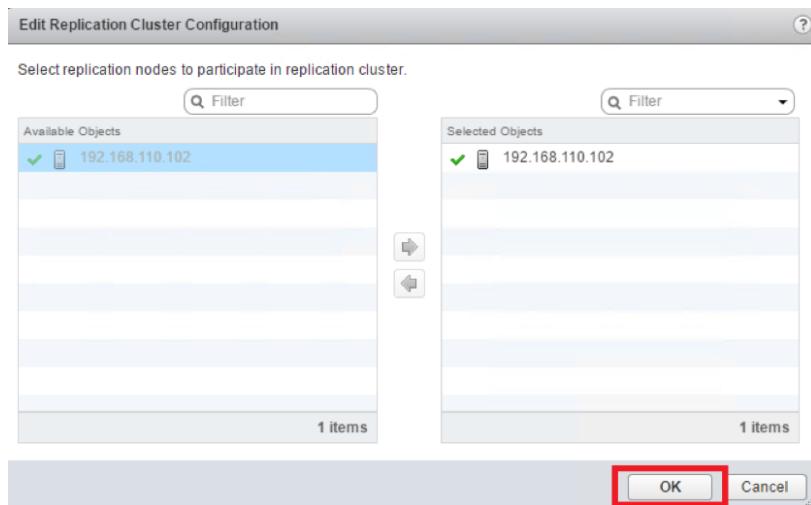
Segment ID	Name	Status	Transport Zone	Hardware Ports Binding	Scope	Control Plane
5000	Logical Switch	Normal	Transport	0	Global	Unicast

## Configuring the Replication Cluster

1. Select the **Service Definitions** category, then click the **Hardware Devices** tab. Next to the **Replication Cluster** field, click **Edit**.



2. Hypervisors connected to the NSX controller for replication appear in the **Available Objects** list. Select the required service nodes, then click the green arrow to move them to the **Selected Objects** list.



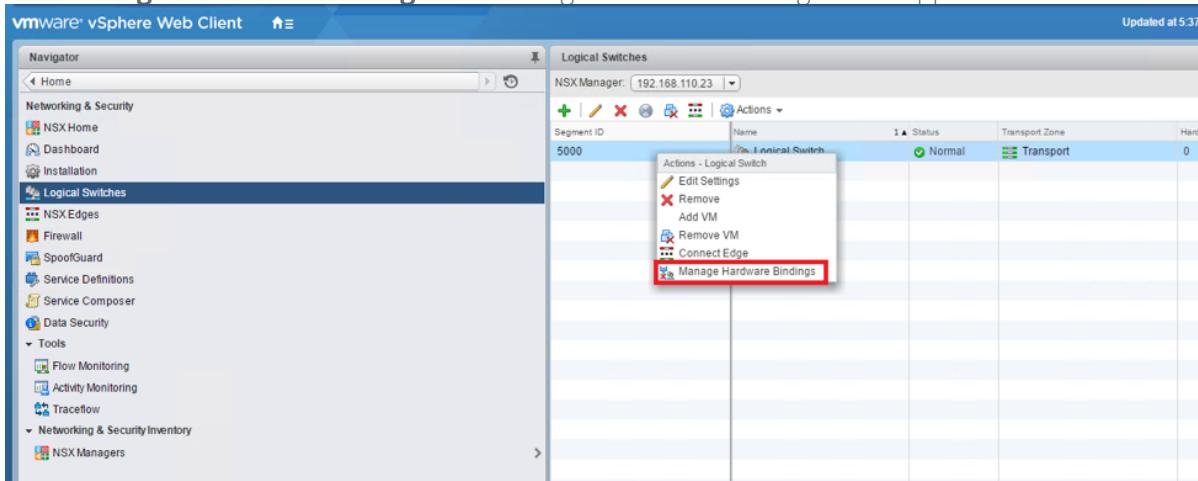
3. Click **OK** to save the replication node configuration.

## *Defining Logical Switch Ports*

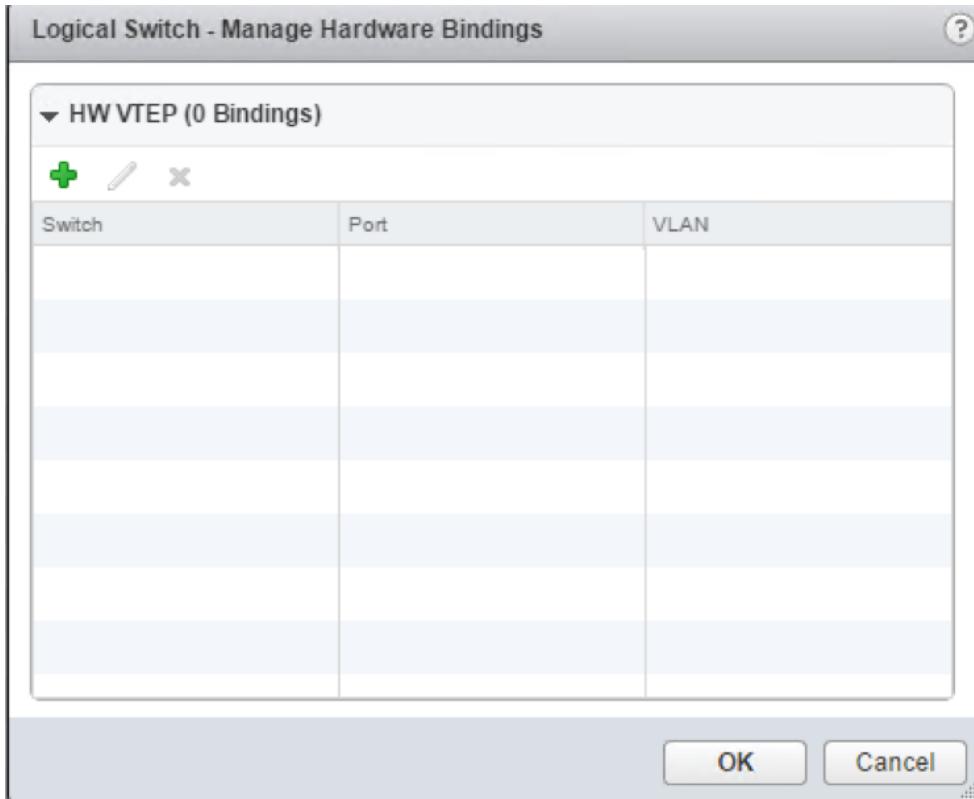
As the final step, define the logical switch ports. A VLAN-to-VNI binding can be defined for each switch port associated with a particular logical switch.

To define the logical switch ports, do the following:

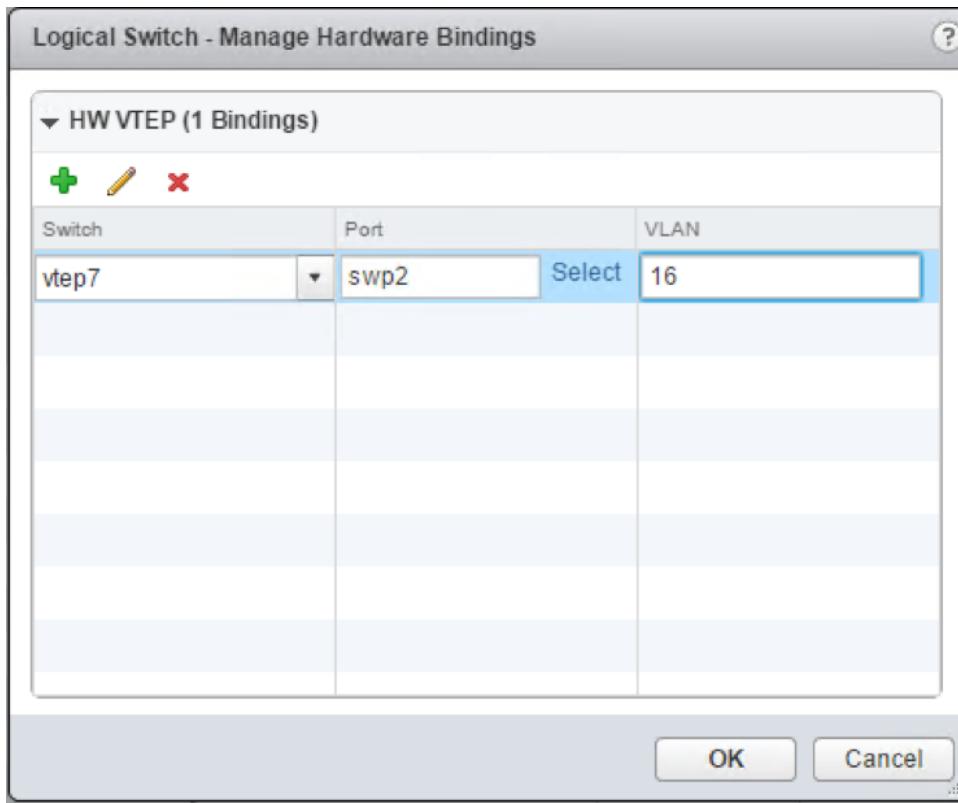
- In NSX Manager, add a new logical switch port. Click the **Logical Switches** category. Under **Actions**, click **Manage Hardware Bindings**. The Manage Hardware Binding wizard appears.



- Click **+** to add a logical port to the logical switch.



- Select the logical switch that you created earlier (5000).
- Select the switch port and the corresponding VLAN binding for logical switch 5000. This creates the logical switch port and also maps VLAN 16 of switch port swp2 to VNI 5000.
- Click **OK** to save the logical switch port. Connectivity is established. Repeat this procedure for each logical switch port you want to define.



## Verifying the VXLAN Configuration

Once configured, you can verify the VXLAN configuration using either or both of these Cumulus Linux commands in a terminal connected to the switch:

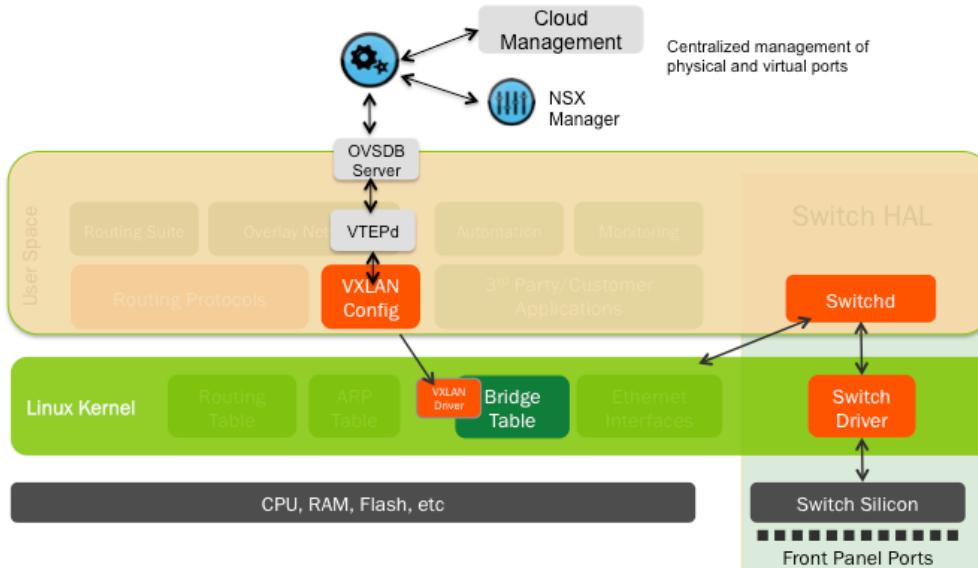
```
cumulus@switch:/var/lib/openvswitch$ ip -d link show vxln5000
65: vxln5000: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 9152 qdisc
noqueue master br-vxln5000 state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT group default
    link/ether da:d1:23:44:c4:5e brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff promiscuity 1
    vxlan id 5000 local 172.16.20.157 srcport 0 0 dstport 4789 ageing
300
    bridge_slave state forwarding priority 8 cost 100 hairpin off
    guard off root_block off fastleave off learning on port_id
    0x8006 port_no 0x6 designated_port 32774 designated_cost 0
    designated_bridge 8000.16:28:56:cc:97:e5 designated_root 8000.16:28:
    56:cc:97:e5 hold_timer      0.00 message_age_timer      0.00
    forward_delay_timer      0.00 topology_change_ack 0 config_pending 0
    proxy_arp off proxy_arp_wifi off mcast_router 1 mcast_fast_leave off
    mcast_flood on neigh_suppress off addrgenmode eui64
```

```
cumulus@switch:/var/lib/openvswitch$ bridge fdb show
b6:fb:be:89:99:65 dev vxln5000 master br-vxln5000 permanent
00:50:56:b5:3f:d2 dev vxln5000 master br-vxln5000 static
00:00:00:00:00:00 dev vxln5000 dst 172.16.1.11 self permanent
```

```
00:50:56:b5:d2 dev vxln5000 dst 172.16.1.11 self static
36:cc:7a:bc:b9:e1 dev vxln0 master br-vxln0 permanent
00:23:20:00:00:01 dev dummy0 master br-vxln0 permanent
00:23:20:00:00:01 dev dummy 5000 master br-vxln5000 permanent
7c:fe:90:0b:c5:7e dev swp2.16 master br-vxln5000 permanent
```

## Integrating Hardware VTEPs with VMware NSX

Switches running Cumulus Linux can integrate with VMware NSX to act as hardware VTEP gateways. The VMware NSX controller provides consistent provisioning across virtual and physical server infrastructures.



## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- [Getting Started \(see page 570\)](#)
  - [Caveats and Errata \(see page 570\)](#)
- [Bootstrapping the NSX Integration \(see page 570\)](#)
  - [Enabling the openvswitch-vtep Package \(see page 570\)](#)
  - [Using the Bootstrapping Script \(see page 571\)](#)
  - [Manually Bootstrapping the NSX Integration \(see page 572\)](#)
  - [Generating the Credentials Certificate \(see page 572\)](#)
  - [Configuring the Switch as a VTEP Gateway \(see page 574\)](#)
- [Configuring the Transport Layer \(see page 576\)](#)
- [Configuring the Logical Layer \(see page 577\)](#)
  - [Defining Logical Switches \(see page 577\)](#)
  - [Defining Logical Switch Ports \(see page 579\)](#)
- [Verifying the VXLAN Configuration \(see page 581\)](#)



- Troubleshooting VXLANS in NSX (see page 581)

## Getting Started

Before you integrate VXLANS with NSX, make sure you have the following components:

- A switch (L2 gateway) with a Broadcom Tomahawk, Trident II+ or Trident II chipset, or a Mellanox Spectrum chipset running Cumulus Linux
- OVSDB server (`ovsdb-server`), included in Cumulus Linux
- VTEPd (`ovs-vtep`), included in Cumulus Linux and supports [VLAN-aware bridges](#) (see page 328)

Integrating a VXLAN with NSX involves:

- Bootstrapping the NSX Integration
- Configuring the Transport Layer
- Configuring the Logical Layer
- Verifying the VXLAN Configuration

## Caveats and Errata

- As mentioned in [Network Virtualization](#) (see page 399), the switches with the source and destination VTEPs cannot reside on the same subnet; there must be at least one layer 3 hop between the VXLAN source and destination.
- There is no support for [VXLAN routing](#) (see page 511) in the Trident II chipset; use a loopback interface ([hyperloop](#) (see page 530)) instead.
- The `ovsdb-server` cannot select the loopback interface as the source IP address, causing TOR registration to the controller to fail. To work around this issue, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp redistribute connected  
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending  
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

- Do not use 0 or 16777215 as the VNI ID, as they are reserved values under Cumulus Linux.
- For more information about NSX, see the VMware NSX User Guide, version 4.0.0 or later.

## Bootstrapping the NSX Integration

Before you start configuring the gateway service and logical switches and ports that comprise the VXLAN, you need to complete some steps to bootstrap the process. You need to do the bootstrapping just once, before you begin the integration.

### Enabling the `openvswitch-vtep` Package

Before you start bootstrapping the integration, you need to enable the `openvswitch-vtep` package, as it is disabled by default in Cumulus Linux.

1. In `/etc/default/openvswitch-vtep`, change the `START` option from `no` to `yes`:



```
cumulus@switch$ cat /etc/default/openvswitch-vtep
# This is a POSIX shell fragment                         -*- sh -*-

# Start openvswitch at boot ? yes/no
START=yes

# FORCE_COREFILES: If 'yes' then core files will be enabled.
# FORCE_COREFILES=yes

# BRCOMPAT: If 'yes' and the openvswitch-brcompat package is
installed, then
# Linux bridge compatibility will be enabled.
# BRCOMPAT=no
```

2. Start the daemon:

```
cumulus@switch$ sudo systemctl start openvswitch-vtep.service
```

## *Using the Bootstrapping Script*

A script is available so you can do the bootstrapping automatically. For information, read `man vtep-bootstrap`. The output of the script is displayed here:

```
cumulus@vtep7: ~
cumulus@vtep7$ sudo vtep-bootstrap --credentials-path /var/lib/openvswitch vtep7 192.168.100.17 172.1
6.20.157 192.168.100.157
Executed:
    create certificate on a switch, to be used for authentication with controller
    () .
Executed:
    sign certificate
        (vtep7-req.pem      Fri Jan 17 18:04:33 UTC 2014
         fingerprint 6f443eb8445317b545d8564c2ae9638ea0a9184a).
Executed:
    define physical switch
    () .
Executed:
    define NSX controller IP address in OVSDB
    () .
Executed:
    define local tunnel IP address on the switch
    () .
Executed:
    define management IP address on the switch
    () .
Executed:
    restart a service
        (Killing ovs-vtepd (4973).
Killing ovsdb-server (4969).
Starting ovsdb-server.
Starting ovs-vtepd.).
cumulus@vtep7$ 
cumulus@vtep7$ 
cumulus@vtep7$ ps xa | grep ovsdb-server
 5184 pts/0    S<     0:00 ovsdb-server: monitoring pid 5185 (healthy)

5185 ?      S<     0:00 ovsdb-server /var/lib/openvswitch/conf.db -vANY:CONSOLE:EMER -vANY:SYSLOG:
ERR -vANY:FILE:INFO --remote=unix:/var/run/openvswitch/db.sock --remote=db:Global,managers --remote=
ptcp:6633: --private-key=/var/lib/openvswitch/vtep7-privkey.pem --certificate=/var/lib/openvswitch/vt
ep7-cert.pem --bootstrap-ca-cert=/var/lib/openvswitch/controller.ca.cert --no-chdir --log-file=/var/lo
g/openvswitch/ovsdb-server.log --pidfile=/var/run/openvswitch/ovsdb-server.pid --detach --monitor
 5436 pts/0    S+    0:00 grep ovsdb-server
cumulus@vtep7$
```

In the above example, the following information was passed to the `vtep-bootstrap` script:

- `--credentials-path /var/lib/openvswitch`: Is the path to where the certificate and key pairs for authenticating with the NSX controller are stored.
- `vtep7`: is the ID for the VTEP.
- `192.168.100.17`: is the IP address of the NSX controller.
- `172.16.20.157`: is the datapath IP address of the VTEP.
- `192.168.100.157`: is the IP address of the management interface on the switch.

These IP addresses will be used throughout the rest of the examples below.

## *Manually Bootstrapping the NSX Integration*

If you don't use the script, then you must:

- Initialize the OVS database instance
- Generate a certificate and key pair for authentication by NSX
- Configure a switch as a VTEP gateway

These steps are described next.



## Generating the Credentials Certificate

First, in Cumulus Linux, you must generate a certificate that the NSX controller uses for authentication.

1. In a terminal session connected to the switch, run the following commands:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ovs-pki init
Creating controllerca...
Creating switchca...
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ovs-pki req+sign cumulus

cumulus-req.pem Wed Oct 23 05:32:49 UTC 2013
fingerprint b587c9fe36f09fb371750ab50c430485d33a174a

cumulus@switch:~$ ls -l
total 12
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 4028 Oct 23 05:32 cumulus-cert.pem
-rw----- 1 root root 1679 Oct 23 05:32 cumulus-privkey.pem
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 3585 Oct 23 05:32 cumulus-req.pem
```

2. In `/usr/share/openvswitch/scripts/ovs-ctl-vtep`, make sure the lines containing **private-key**, **certificate** and **bootstrap-ca-cert** point to the correct files; **bootstrap-ca-cert** is obtained dynamically the first time the switch talks to the controller:

```
# Start ovsdb-server.
set ovsdb-server "$DB_FILE"
set "$@" -vANY:CONSOLE:EMER -vANY:SYSLOG:ERR -vANY:FILE:INFO
set "$@" --remote=punix:"$DB_SOCK"
set "$@" --remote=db:Global,managers
set "$@" --remote=ptcp:$LOCALIP:6633:$LOCALIP
set "$@" --private-key=/root/cumulus-privkey.pem
set "$@" --certificate=/root/cumulus-cert.pem
set "$@" --bootstrap-ca-cert=/root/controller.cacert
```

If files have been moved or regenerated, restart the OVSDB server and vtepd:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart openvswitch-vtep.service
```

3. Define the NSX controller cluster IP address in OVSDB. This causes the OVSDB server to start contacting the NSX controller:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtep-ctl set-manager ssl:192.168.100.17:66
32
```

4. Define the local IP address on the VTEP for VXLAN tunnel termination. First, find the physical switch name as recorded in OVSDB:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtep-ctl list-ps
vtep7
```

Then set the tunnel source IP address of the VTEP. This is the datapath address of the VTEP, which is typically an address on a loopback interface on the switch that is reachable from the underlying L3 network:

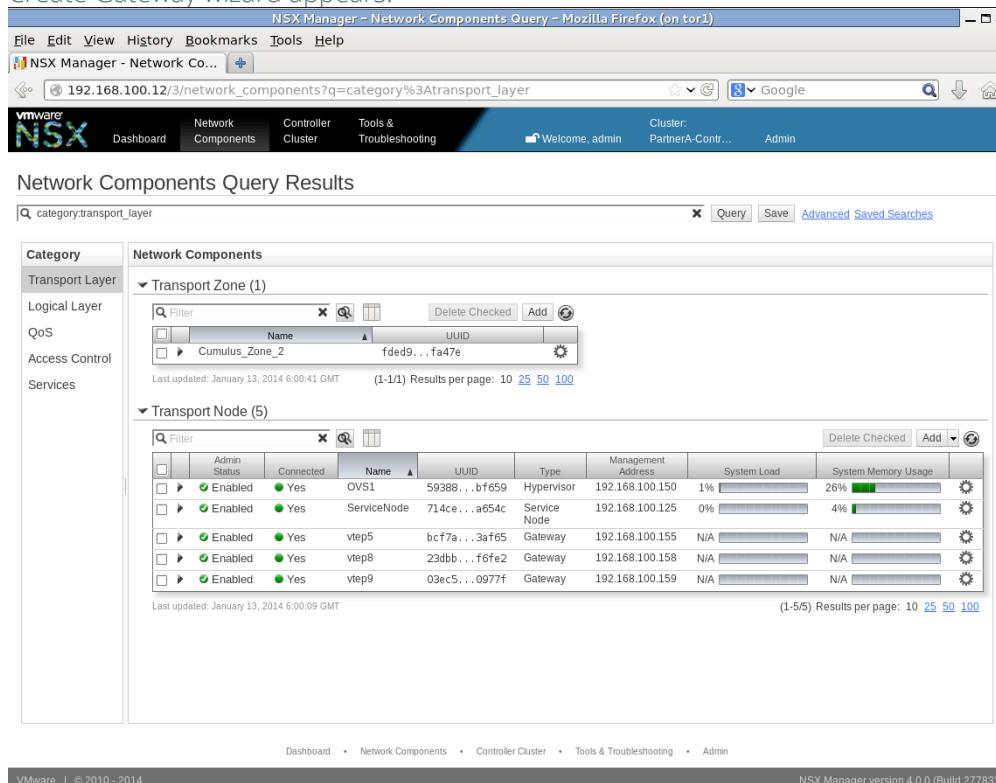
```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtep-ctl set Physical_Switch vtep7
tunnel_ips=172.16.20.157
```

Once you finish generating the certificate, keep the terminal session active, as you need to paste the certificate into NSX Manager when you configure the VTEP gateway.

## *Configuring the Switch as a VTEP Gateway*

After you create a certificate, connect to NSX Manager in a browser to configure a Cumulus Linux switch as a VTEP gateway. In this example, the IP address of the NSX manager is 192.168.100.12.

1. In NSX Manager, add a new gateway. Click the **Network Components** tab, then the **Transport Layer** category. Under **Transport Node**, click **Add**, then select **Manually Enter All Fields**. The Create Gateway wizard appears.



The screenshot shows the NSX Manager interface for Network Components. The left sidebar lists categories: Transport Layer, Logical Layer, QoS, Access Control, and Services. The main area displays two tables under the Transport Layer category:

- Transport Zone (1)**: Shows one entry, Cumulus\_Zone\_2, with a UUID of fded9...fa47e.
- Transport Node (5)**: Shows five entries:
 

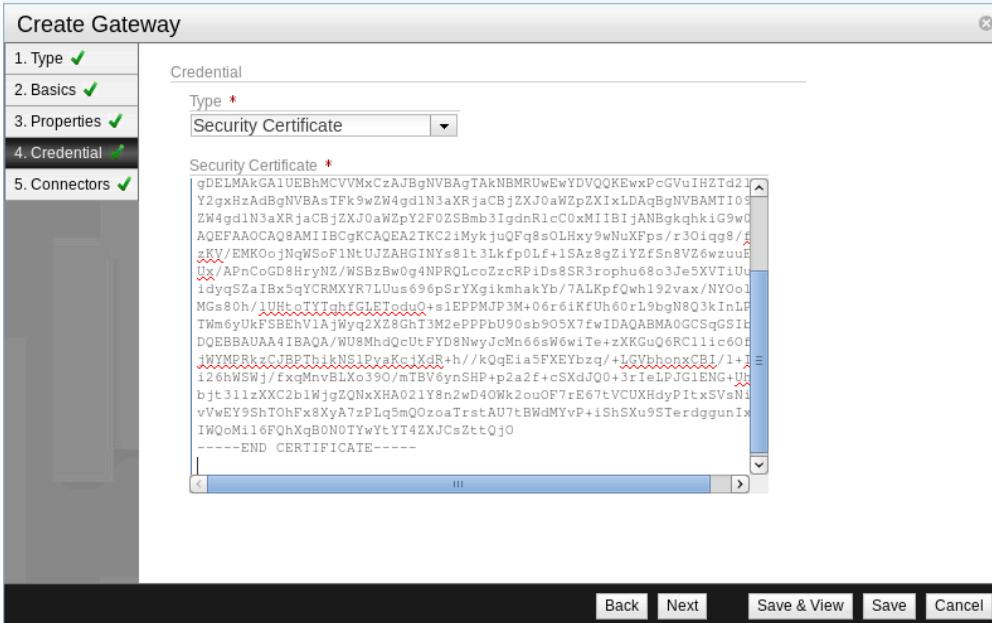
Name	UUID	Type	Management Address	System Load	System Memory Usage
OVS1	5938b...b1f659	Hypervisor	192.168.100.150	1%	26% (green)
ServiceNode	714ce...a654c	Service Node	192.168.100.125	0%	4% (green)
vtep5	bcf7a...3af65	Gateway	192.168.100.155	N/A	N/A
vtep8	23dbb...f1f6e2	Gateway	192.168.100.158	N/A	N/A
vtep9	03ec5...0977f	Gateway	192.168.100.159	N/A	N/A

2. In the Create Gateway dialog, select **Gateway** for the **Transport Node Type**, then click **Next**.
3. In the **Display Name** field, give the gateway a name, then click **Next**.
4. Enable the VTEP service. Select the **VTEP Enabled** checkbox, then click **Next**.

5. From the terminal session connected to the switch where you generated the certificate, copy the certificate and paste it into the **Security Certificate** text field. Copy only the bottom portion, including the `BEGIN CERTIFICATE` and `END CERTIFICATE` lines. For example, copy all the highlighted text in the terminal:

```
ubuntu@tor1: ~
87:3f:ea:76:6b:67:fe:71:25:dd:25:0d:3e:de:b2:1e:2c:f2:
46:94:43:46:f9:48:43:6e:3b:77:96:5c:d7:5c:2d:9b:95:68:
e0:65:03:71:5c:70:34:da:56:3c:9f:6c:03:e0:e5:a4:da:8b:
8e:17:ba:c4:eb:bb:55:09:45:77:77:23:e8:b7:14:95:b0:d8:
ba:bd:9c:04:63:cd:al:4:c:e8:45:c:f5:f2:03:bcc:cf:2e:a:
66:40:ec:e0:69:3a:ec:cb:4:05:b5:b4:15:9d:31:b6:c7:fa:24:
a1:49:7:b:bd:49:37:ab:76:08:2e:9c:8c:44:21:64:28:32:2d:
7:a15:08:57:a8:1d:0d:d1:36:30:62:d6:13:e1:95:c9:0a:c6:
6d:b5:08:ce
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIIDdzCAIwCA18CQYwDQYJKoZIhvCNQEEBQAwYEcxAJBgNVBAYTA1VTMQswCQYD
VQIEwJDUUVEWBMG4UECKMHT3B1b1B2U3dpQhNREwUwYDVQLEwhz21OY2hj
YTE7IDkG41UEAxMyT2THN3aXRjaGNh1ENB1cnRpZmlJYXRICgMDEzER1
YqAyLyuXNzowD0oyNCwHhcMTMh1jZtXz8xJhNMToMj1zMcMzAxhjCB
gDELMAkG41UEBhMCVWmxCzAxBgNB9eTAhNBMRUwUwYDVQKEuxFcGwIH2td210
Y2gxH2d9gNV8aTFk9uZl4gd1N3aXRjaCBjZXJ0aWZpZXIxLDAgBwNBAMTI09w
ZM49d1N3aXRjaCBjZXJ0aWZpYF02SBmB31gdhR1CoXM1BIjAnBgkqhkiG9w0B
AQEFRAOCQ0AHM1IBCkCkADEh2TK21MykjuQFq8sULhx9uMuFps/r301qg8/FP
zkV/EMKo,jNqUSf1TUJZAHGINYs81tLkf0LF15a8g2Y1Zf5w8V26zuwE8
Ux/APnCoD8HryNz/WSbzBw0g4NPRQLcoZccRP1D8sR3rrophu68o3Je5XVt1UuZ
idyg5ZaIBx5gYCRMXYR7LUus636gSrYXgikmhakYb/7ALKpfQwh192vax/NYoo1
MGs80h/1UhtoTYTghfGLETodU+1sLEPPMJP3M+06.61KFUh60rL9bN803kInLPN
TMs6yUKFSBEHV1Ajlwyq2XZ8GhT3M2ePPPBuU9osb905X7fwIDAQABMA0GCSqGS1b3
DQEBAUAA41BHQA/wU8hhdQoUFYD8WuyJchm66s6wTe+zXKG06RC11c60Fq
jMMPMrzJBPTh1kNS1pYaKo,jKdR+h//kQxEiaFKEYbzq/*LGvbphonCBl/1+IG
i26hMSUjfxqhnBLXo390/TBV6ynSHP+p2a2f+CSDjQ0+3r1eLPJG1ENG+UhD
bjt311zXXC2b1WjgZQNxXHA021Y8n2wD40Wk2ouOF7rE67tVCUXHdyPiTxSVsN1
vVwEY95hTOhFx8YyA7zLq5mQzoaTrstAU7BldMyvP+iShSXu9SterdggunIx
IWQoMi16FQhXqBONOTyWytYT42XJCscTtQj0
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
root@vtcp-1:~#
```

And paste it into NSX Manager:



Then click **Next**.

- In the Connectors dialog, click **Add Connector** to add a transport connector. This defines the tunnel endpoint that terminates the VXLAN tunnel and connects NSX to the physical gateway. You must choose a tunnel **Transport Type** of **VXLAN**. Choose an existing transport zone for the connector, or click **Create** to create a new transport zone.
- Define the connector's IP address (that is, the underlay IP address on the switch for tunnel termination).
- Click **OK** to save the connector, then click **Save** to save the gateway.

Once communication is established between the switch and the controller, a `controller.cacert` file will be downloaded onto the switch.

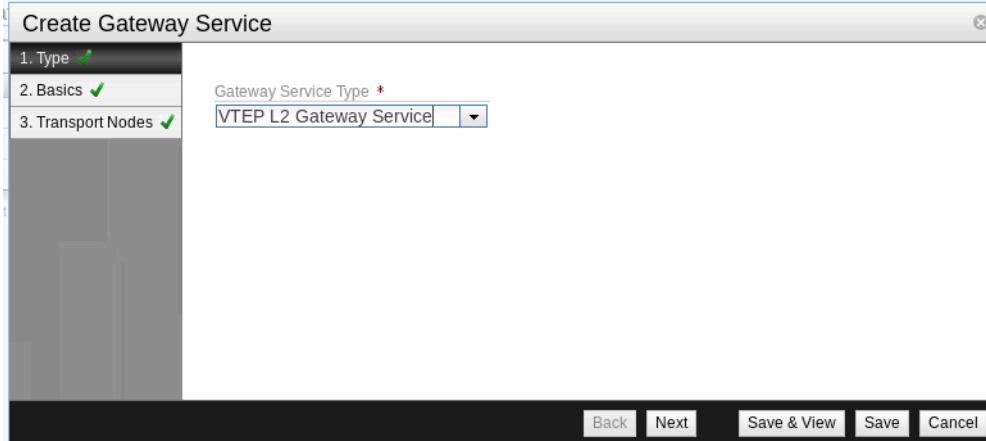
Verify the controller and switch handshake is successful. In a terminal connected to the switch, run this command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ovsdb-client dump -f list | grep -A 7 "Manager"
Manager table
_uuid              : 505f32af-9acb-4182-a315-022e405aa479
inactivity_probe   : 30000
is_connected       : true
max_backoff        : []
other_config       : {}
status             : {sec_since_connect="18223",
sec_since_disconnect="18225", state=ACTIVE}
target             : "ssl:192.168.100.17:6632"
```

## Configuring the Transport Layer

After you finish bootstrapping the NSX integration, you need to configure the transport layer. For each host-facing switch port that is to be associated with a VXLAN instance, define a **Gateway Service** for the port.

1. In NSX Manager, add a new gateway service. Click the **Network Components** tab, then the **Services** category. Under **Gateway Service**, click **Add**. The Create Gateway Service wizard appears.
2. In the Create Gateway Service dialog, select *VTEP L2 Gateway Service* as the **Gateway Service Type**.



3. Give the service a **Display Name** to represent the VTEP in NSX.
4. Click **Add Gateway** to associate the service with the gateway you created earlier.
5. In the **Transport Node** field, choose the name of the gateway you created earlier.
6. In the **Port ID** field, choose the physical port on the gateway (for example, swp10) that will connect to a logical L2 segment and carry data traffic.
7. Click **OK** to save this gateway in the service, then click **Save** to save the gateway service.

The gateway service shows up as type *VTEP L2* in NSX.



The screenshot shows the NSX Manager interface for querying network components. The left sidebar has categories: Transport Layer, Logical Layer, QoS, Access Control, and Services (which is selected). The main area displays 'Network Components' under the 'Gateway Service (5)' category. A table lists five VTEP L2 entries with columns: Name, UUID, Type, and # Transport Nodes. The table includes a header row and five data rows. At the bottom, it says 'Last updated: January 13, 2014 6:14:50 GMT' and '(1-5/5) Results per page: 10 25 50 100'. The footer shows 'Dashboard • Network Components • Controller Cluster • Tools & Troubleshooting • Admin' and 'NSX Manager version 4.0.0 (Build 27783)'.

Next, you will configure the logical layer on NSX.

## Configuring the Logical Layer

To complete the integration with NSX, you need to configure the logical layer, which requires defining a logical switch (the VXLAN instance) and all the logical ports needed.

### Defining Logical Switches

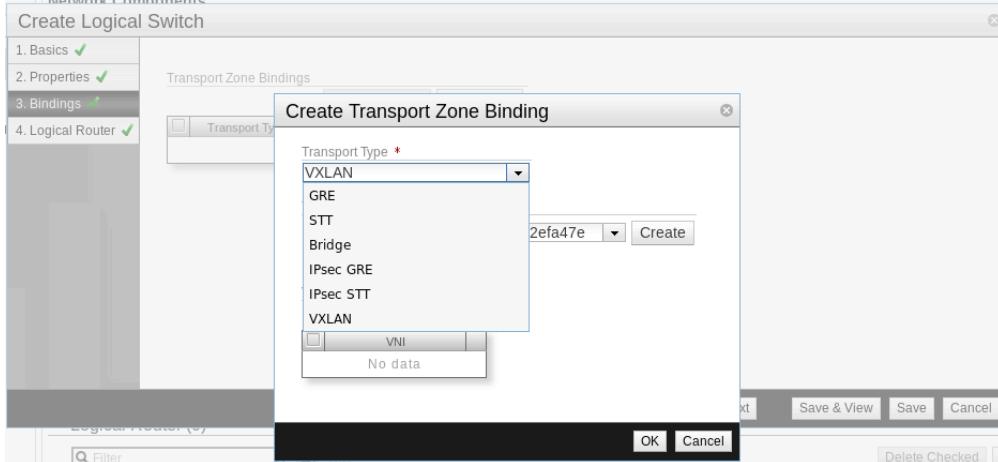
To define the logical switch, do the following:

1. In NSX Manager, add a new logical switch. Click the **Network Components** tab, then the **Logical Layer** category. Under **Logical Switch**, click **Add**. The Create Logical Switch wizard appears.
2. In the **Display Name** field, enter a name for the logical switch, then click **Next**.

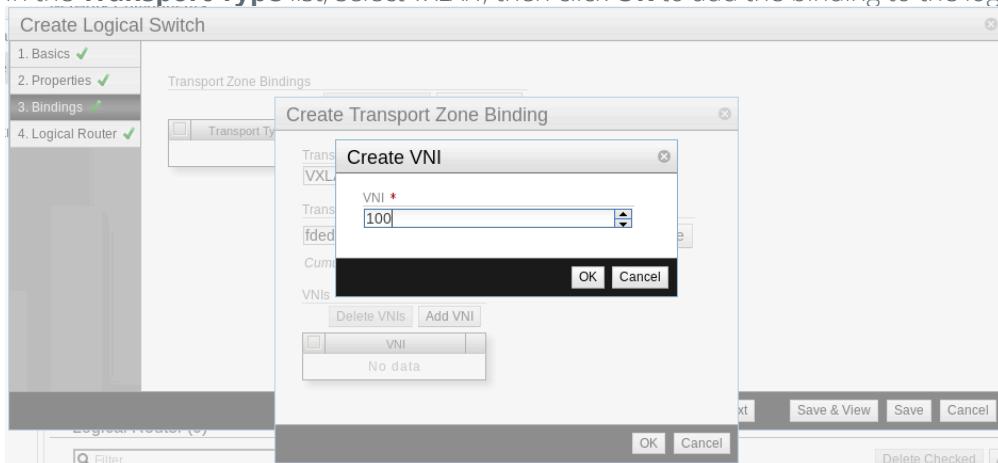
The screenshot shows the 'Create Logical Switch' wizard, step 1: Basics. The left sidebar has tabs: 1. Basics (selected), 2. Properties, 3. Bindings, and 4. Logical Router. The main area has a 'Display Name' field containing 'vxlan100' and a 'Tags' section with a table labeled 'No data'. At the bottom are buttons: Back, Next, Save & View, Save, and Cancel.

3. Under **Replication Mode**, select **Service Nodes**, then click **Next**.

4. Specify the transport zone bindings for the logical switch. Click **Add Binding**. The Create Transport Zone Binding dialog appears.



5. In the **Transport Type** list, select **VXLAN**, then click **OK** to add the binding to the logical switch.



6. In the **VNI** field, assign the switch a VNI ID, then click **OK**.



Do not use 0 or 16777215 as the VNI ID, as they are reserved values under Cumulus Linux.

7. Click **Save** to save the logical switch configuration.



The screenshot shows the NSX Manager - Network Components Query interface in Mozilla Firefox. The URL is 192.168.100.123/network\_components?q=category%3Alogical\_layer. The interface includes a navigation bar with links like Dashboard, Network Components, Controller Cluster, Tools & Troubleshooting, and Admin. A search bar at the top has the query "category:logical\_layer". Below it, there are two main sections: "Logical Switch (3)" and "Logical Switch Port (2)".

**Logical Switch (3)**

Fabric	Name	UUID	Logical Switch Ports	Logical Router	Transport Zone Bindings	Replication Mode	Port Isolation
Up	vxlan100	47a37...b1790	0	-	1	Service Node	Disabled
Up	LS-B	80b3e...36454	1	-	1	Service Node	Disabled
Up	LS-A	c1be3...fb689	1	-	1	Service Node	Disabled

Last updated: January 13, 2014 15:12:16 GMT (1-3/3) Results per page: 10 25 50 100

**Logical Switch Port (2)**

Admin	Link	Fabric	Message	Name	Port	Switch Name	UUID	Attachment	Attached MAC
Up	Up	Up	-	v1	1	LS-A	3db81...e2af8	VIF: 5e690...42dfb	52:54:00:15:44:34
Up	Up	Up	-	v2	3	LS-B	a080d...b5588	VIF: 0afff...a8571	52:54:00:92:25:bd

Last updated: January 13, 2014 9:03:07 GMT (1-2/2) Results per page: 10 25 50 100

**Logical Router (0)**

Fabric	Name	UUID	Distributed	NAT Synchronization	Replication Mode	Logical Router Ports	Routing Type	L3 Gateway Service
No Logical Routers								

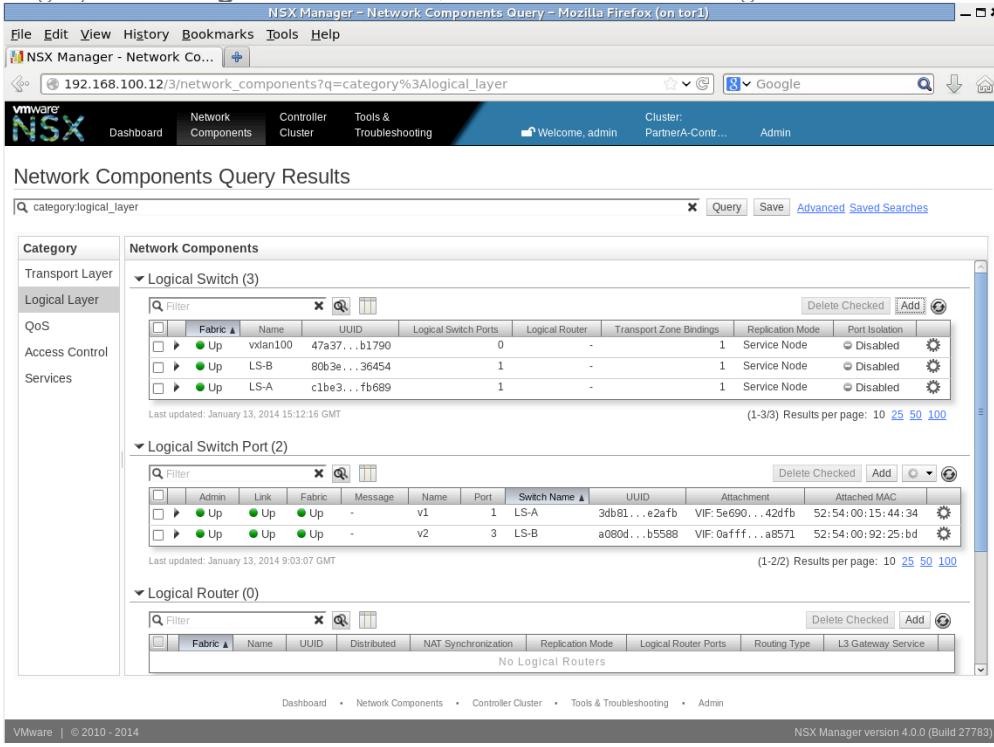
Dashboard • Network Components • Controller Cluster • Tools & Troubleshooting • Admin  
VMware | © 2010 - 2014 NSX Manager version 4.0.0 (Build 27783)

## Defining Logical Switch Ports

As the final step, define the logical switch ports. They can be virtual machine VIF interfaces from a registered OVS, or a VTEP gateway service instance on this switch, as defined above in the Configuring the Transport Layer. A VLAN binding can be defined for each VTEP gateway service associated with the particular logical switch.

To define the logical switch ports, do the following:

- In NSX Manager, add a new logical switch port. Click the **Network Components** tab, then the **Logical Layer** category. Under **Logical Switch Port**, click **Add**. The Create Logical Switch Port



The screenshot shows the NSX Manager interface with the 'Network Components' tab selected. In the left sidebar, 'Logical Layer' is chosen under 'Category'. The main area displays 'Network Components' results:

- Logical Switch (3):**

Fabric	Name	UUID	Logical Switch Ports	Logical Router	Transport Zone Bindings	Replication Mode	Port Isolation
Up	vxlan100	47a37...b1790	0	-	-	1 Service Node	Disabled
Up	LS-B	80b3e...36454	1	-	-	1 Service Node	Disabled
Up	LS-A	c1be3...fb689	1	-	-	1 Service Node	Disabled
- Logical Switch Port (2):**

Admin	Link	Fabric	Message	Name	Port	Switch Name	UUID	Attachment	Attached MAC
Up	Up	Up	-	v1	1	LS-A	3db81...e2afb	VIF: 5e690...42dfb	52:54:00:15:44:34
Up	Up	Up	-	v2	3	LS-B	a080d...b5588	VIF: 0affff...a8571	52:54:00:92:25:bd
- Logical Router (0):**

Fabric	Name	UUID	Distributed	NAT Synchronization	Replication Mode	Logical Router Ports	Routing Type	L3 Gateway Service
No Logical Routers								

wizard appears.

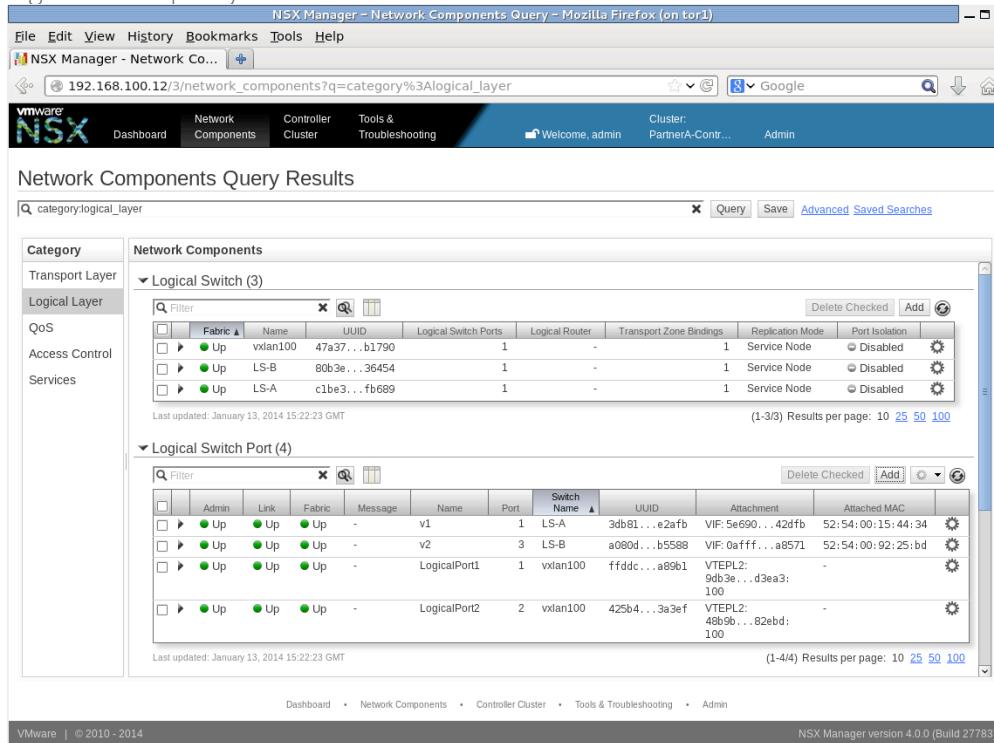
- In the **Logical Switch UUID** list, select the logical switch you created above, then click **Create**.



The screenshot shows the 'Create Logical Switch Port' wizard, step 1: Logical Switch. The left sidebar lists steps 1 through 7, with step 1 highlighted. The main area shows a dropdown menu for 'Logical Switch UUID' containing 'vxlan100'. At the bottom are 'Back', 'Next', 'Save & View', 'Save', and 'Cancel' buttons.

- In the **Display Name** field, give the port a name that indicates it is the port that connects the gateway, then click **Next**.
- In the **Attachment Type** list, select *VTEP L2 Gateway*.
- In the **VTEP L2 Gateway Service UUID** list, choose the name of the gateway service you created earlier.
- In the **VLAN** list, you can optionally choose a VLAN if you wish to connect only traffic on a specific VLAN of the physical network. Leave it blank to handle all traffic.

7. Click **Save** to save the logical switch port. Connectivity is established. Repeat this procedure for each logical switch port you want to define.



The screenshot shows the NSX Manager interface for Network Components Query. On the left, a sidebar lists categories: Transport Layer, Logical Layer (selected), QoS, Access Control, and Services. The main area displays two tables:

- Logical Switch (3)**: Shows three entries. The first entry is vxlan100, which is up, has a Fabric name, and is associated with port 1. The second and third entries are LS-B and LS-A, both up, with Fabric names and associated with port 1.
- Logical Switch Port (4)**: Shows four entries. The first two are v1 and v2, which are up and associated with ports 1 and 3 respectively. The third entry is LogicalPort1, which is up and associated with port 1. The fourth entry is LogicalPort2, which is up and associated with port 2.

Both tables include columns for Admin, Link, Fabric, Message, Name, Port, Switch Name, UUID, Attachment, and Attached MAC. Buttons for Delete Checked, Add, and search/filter are present at the top of each table.

## Verifying the VXLAN Configuration

Once configured, you can verify the VXLAN configuration using these Cumulus Linux commands in a terminal connected to the switch:

```
cumulus@switch1:~$ sudo ip -d link show vxln100
71: vxln100: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
    master br-vxln100 state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT
        link/ether d2:ca:78:bb:7c:9b brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
        vxlan id 100 local 172.16.20.157 port 32768 61000 nolearning
        ageing 1800 svchnode 172.16.21.125
```

OR

```
cumulus@switch1:~$ sudo bridge fdb show
52:54:00:ae:2a:e0 dev vxln100 dst 172.16.21.150 self permanent
d2:ca:78:bb:7c:9b dev vxln100 permanent
90:e2:ba:3f:ce:34 dev swp2s1.100
90:e2:ba:3f:ce:35 dev swp2s0.100
44:38:39:00:48:0e dev swp2s1.100 permanent
44:38:39:00:48:0d dev swp2s0.100 permanent
```



## Troubleshooting VXLANS in NSX

Use `ovsdb-client dump` to troubleshoot issues on the switch. It verifies that the controller and switch handshake is successful. This command works only for VXLANS integrated with NSX:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ovsdb-client dump -f list | grep -A 7 "Manager"
Manager table
_uuid              : 505f32af-9acb-4182-a315-022e405aa479
_inactivity_probe   : 30000
_is_connected       : true
_max_backoff        : []
_other_config        :
_status             : {sec_since_connect="18223",
                     sec_since_disconnect="18225", state=ACTIVE}
_target              : "ssl:192.168.100.17:6632"
```

## VXLAN Scale

On Broadcom Trident II and Tomahawk (but not Trident II+ or Maverick) and Mellanox Spectrum switches running Cumulus Linux, there is a limit on the amount of VXLANS you can configure simultaneously. The limit most often given is 2000 VXLANS that can be run, but network architects want to get more specific and know exactly the limit for their specific design.

The limit is a physical to virtual mappings where a switch can hold 15000 mappings in hardware before you encounter hash collisions. There is also an upper limit of around 3000 VLANs you can configure before you hit the reserved range (Cumulus Linux uses 3000-3999 by default). Cumulus Networks typically uses a soft number because the math is unique to each customer's environment. An internal VLAN is consumed by each layer 3 port, subinterface, [traditional bridge \(see page 340\)](#) and the [VLAN-aware bridge \(see page 328\)](#). Thus, the number of configurable VXLANS is:

(total configurable 802.1q VLANs) - (reserved VLANs) - (physical or logical interfaces) =  
4094-999-eth0-loopback = **3093** by default (without any other configuration)

The equation for the number of configurable VXLANS looks like this:

(number of trunks) \* (VXLAN/VLANS per trunk) - (Linux logical and physical interfaces) = 15000

For example, on a 10Gb switch with  $48 * 10$  G ports and  $6 * 40$ G uplinks, you can calculate for X, the amount of configurable VXLANS:

$48 * X + (48 \text{ downlinks} + 6 \text{ uplinks} + 1 \text{ loopback} + 1 \text{ eth0} + 1 \text{ bridge}) = 15000$

$48 * X = 14943$

$X = \mathbf{311}$  VXLANS

Similarly, this logic can be applied to a 32 port 100G switch where 16 ports have been broken up to  $4 * 25$  Gbps ports, for a total of  $64 * 25$  Gbps ports:

$64 * X + (64 \text{ downlinks} + 16 \text{ uplinks} + 1 \text{ loopback} + 1 \text{ eth0} + 1 \text{ bridge}) = 15000$

$64 * X = 14917$

$X = \mathbf{233}$  VXLANS

However, not all ports are trunks for all VXLANS (or at least not all the time). It is much more common for subsets of ports to be used for different VXLANS. For example, a 10G ( $48 * 10$ G +  $6 * 40$ G uplinks) can have the following configuration:



Ports	Trunks
swp1-20	100 VXLAN/VLANS
swp21-30	100 VXLAN/VLANS
swp31-48	X VXLAN/VLANS

The equation now looks like this:

$$20 \text{ swps} * 100 \text{ VXLANs} + 10 \text{ swps} * 100 \text{ VXLANs} + 18 \text{ swps} * X \text{ VXLANs} + (48 \text{ downlinks} + 6 \text{ uplinks} + \text{loopback} + 1 \text{ eth0} + 1 \text{ bridge}) = 15000$$

$$20 \text{ swps} * 100 \text{ VXLANs} + 10 \text{ swps} * 100 \text{ VXLANs} + 18 \text{ swps} * X \text{ VXLANs} = 14943$$

$$18 * X = 11943$$

$$663 = \text{VXLANS (still configurable) for a total of } \mathbf{863}$$

## Hybrid Cloud Connectivity with QinQ and VXLANs

*QinQ* is an amendment to the [IEEE 802.1Q specification](#) that provides the capability for multiple [VLAN tags](#) ([see page 344](#)) to be inserted into a single Ethernet frame.

The primary use case for QinQ with VXLAN is where a service provider who offers multi-tenant layer 2 connectivity between different customers' data centers (private clouds) may also need to connect those data centers to public cloud providers. Public clouds often has a mandatory QinQ handoff interface, where the outer tag is for the customer and the inner tag is for the service.

In Cumulus Linux, you map QinQ packets to VXLANs through:

- *Single tag translation*, where you map a customer to a VNI and preserve the service as an inner VLAN inside a VXLAN packet.
- *Double tag translation*, where you map a customer and service to a VNI.

QinQ is available on the following switches:

- Broadcom Tomahawk, Trident II+ and Trident II switches.
- Mellanox switches, only with [VLAN-aware bridges](#) ([see page 328](#)) with 802.1ad and only with single tag translation.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Removing the Early Access QinQ Metapackage ([see page 584](#))
- Configuring Single Tag Translation ([see page 584](#))
  - Configuring the Public Cloud-facing Switch ([see page 584](#))
  - Configuring the Customer-facing Edge Switch ([see page 585](#))
  - Viewing the Configuration ([see page 587](#))

- Configuring Double Tag Translation (see page 588)
  - Configuring the Switch (see page 588)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 590)
  - Feature Limitations (see page 590)
  - Long Interface Names (see page 590)

## Removing the Early Access QinQ Metapackage

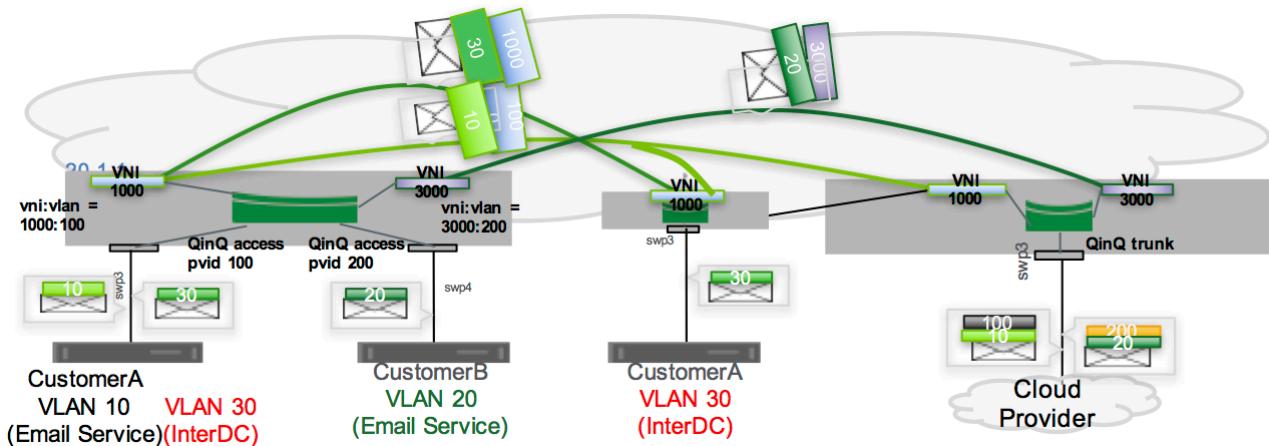
If you are upgrading Cumulus Linux from a version earlier than 3.4.0 and had installed the early access QinQ metapackage, you need to remove the `cumulus-qinq` metapackage before upgrading to Cumulus Linux 3.4.0 or later. To remove the `cumulus-qinq` metapackage, read the [early access feature](#) article.

## Configuring Single Tag Translation

Single tag translation adheres to traditional QinQ service model. The customer-facing interface is a QinQ access port with the outer S-tag being the PVID, representing the customer. The S-tag is translated to a VXLAN VNI. The inner C-tag, which represents the service, is transparent to the provider. The public cloud handoff interface is a QinQ trunk where packets on the wire carry both the S-tag and the C-tag.

Single tag translation leverages [VLAN-aware Linux bridge](#) (see page 328) mode with the use of the 802.1ad VLAN protocol (the only supported protocol at the time of writing). Hence, it is more scalable.

An example configuration could look like the following:



You configure two switches: one at the service provider edge that faces the customer (the switch on the left above), and one on the public cloud handoff edge (the righthand switch above).



All edges need to support QinQ with VXLANs to correctly interoperate.

## Configuring the Public Cloud-facing Switch

For the switch facing the public cloud:

- Configure the bridge with `vlan_protocol` set to `802.1ad`.
- The VNI maps back to S-tag (customer).

- A trunk port connected to the public cloud is the QinQ trunk, and packets are double tagged, where the S-tag is for the customer and the C-tag is for the service.

To configure the public cloud-facing switch, run the following [NCLU \(see page 85\)](#) commands:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni-1000 vxlan id 1000
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni-1000 vxlan local-tunnelip 10.0.0.1
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni-1000 bridge access 100
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni-3000 vxlan id 3000
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni-3000 vxlan local-tunnelip 10.0.0.1
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni-3000 bridge access 200
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni-1000 bridge learning off
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni-3000 bridge learning off
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge bridge vlan-protocol 802.1ad
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge bridge ports swp3,vni-1000,vni-3000
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit

```

These commands create the following configuration in the /etc/network/interfaces file:

```

auto vni-1000
iface vni-1000
    bridge-access 100
    bridge-learning off
    vxlan-id 1000
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.0.0.1

auto vni-3000
iface vni-3000
    bridge-access 200
    bridge-learning off
    vxlan-id 3000
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.0.0.1

auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports swp3 vni-1000 vni-3000
    bridge-vids 100 200
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-vlan-protocol 802.1ad

```

## *Configuring the Customer-facing Edge Switch*

For the switch facing the customer:

- Configure the bridge with `vlan_protocol` set to `802.1ad`.
- The customer interface is the QinQ access port, the PVID is the S-tag (customer) and is mapped to a VNI.

- The service VLAN tags (C-tags) are preserved during VXLAN encapsulation.

To configure the customer-facing switch, run the following [NCLU \(see page 85\)](#) commands:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp3 bridge access 100
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp4 bridge access 200
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni-1000 vxlan id 1000
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni-1000 vxlan local-tunnelip 10.0.0.1
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni-1000 bridge access 100
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni-3000 vxlan id 3000
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni-3000 vxlan local-tunnelip 10.0.0.1
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni-3000 bridge access 200
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni-1000 bridge learning off
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vxlan vni-3000 bridge learning off
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge bridge ports swp3,swp4,vni-1000,vni-3000
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge bridge vlan-protocol 802.1ad
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```
auto vni-1000
iface vni-1000
    bridge-access 100
    bridge-learning off
    vxlan-id 1000
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.0.0.1

auto vni-3000
iface vni-3000
    bridge-access 200
    bridge-learning off
    vxlan-id 3000
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.0.0.1

auto swp3
iface swp3
    bridge-access 100

auto swp4
iface swp4
    bridge-access 200

auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports swp3 swp4 vni-1000 vni-3000
    bridge-vids 100 200
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-vlan-protocol 802.1ad
```



## Viewing the Configuration

In the output below, customer A is on VLAN 100 (S-TAG) and customer B is on VLAN 200 (S-TAG).

To check the public cloud-facing switch, use `net show bridge vlan`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show bridge vlan

Interface      VLAN   Flags          VNI
-----  -----
swp3           1       PVID, Egress Untagged
              100
              200
vni-1000       100    PVID, Egress Untagged  1000
vni-3000       200    PVID, Egress Untagged  3000
```

To check the customer-facing switch, use `net show bridge vlan`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show bridge vlan

Interface      VLAN   Flags          VNI
-----  -----
swp3           100    PVID, Egress Untagged
swp4           200    PVID, Egress Untagged
vni-1000       100    PVID, Egress Untagged  1000
vni-3000       200    PVID, Egress Untagged  3000
```

To verify that the bridge is configured for QinQ, run `ip -d link show bridge` and look for `vlan_protocol 802.1ad` in the output:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ip -d link show bridge
287: bridge: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
state UP mode DEFAULT group default
    link/ether 06:a2:ae:de:e3:43 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff promiscuity 0
    bridge forward_delay 1500 hello_time 200 max_age 2000 ageing_time
30000 stp_state 2 priority 32768 vlan_filtering 1 vlan_protocol 802.1
ad bridge_id 8000.6:a2:ae:de:e3:43 designated_root 8000.6:a2:ae:de:e3:
43 root_port 0 root_path_cost 0 topology_change 0
topology_change_detected 0 hello_timer      0.00 tcn_timer      0.00
topology_change_timer     0.00 gc_timer      64.29 vlan_default_pvid 1
vlan_stats_enabled 1 group_fwd_mask 0 group_address 01:80:c2:00:00:08
mcast_snooping 0 mcast_router 1 mcast_query_use_ifaddr 0
mcast_querier 0 mcast_hash_elasticity 4096 mcast_hash_max 4096
mcast_last_member_count 2 mcast_startup_query_count 2
mcast_last_member_interval 100 mcast_membership_interval 26000
mcast_querier_interval 25500 mcast_query_interval 12500
```

```
mcast_query_response_interval 1000 mcast_startup_query_interval 3125
mcast_stats_enabled 1 mcast_igmp_version 2 mcast_mld_version 1
nf_call_iptables 0 nf_call_ip6tables 0 nf_call_arptables 0
addrgenmode eui64
```

## Configuring Double Tag Translation

Double tag translation involves a bridge with double-tagged member interfaces, where a combination of the C-tag and S-tag map to a VNI. You create the configuration only at the edge facing the public cloud. The VXLAN configuration at the customer-facing edge doesn't need to change.

The double tag is always a cloud connection. The customer-facing edge is either single-tagged or untagged. At the public cloud handoff point, the VNI maps to double VLAN tags, with the S-tag indicating the customer and the C-tag indicating the service.



The configuration in Cumulus Linux uses the outer tag for the customer and the inner tag for the service.

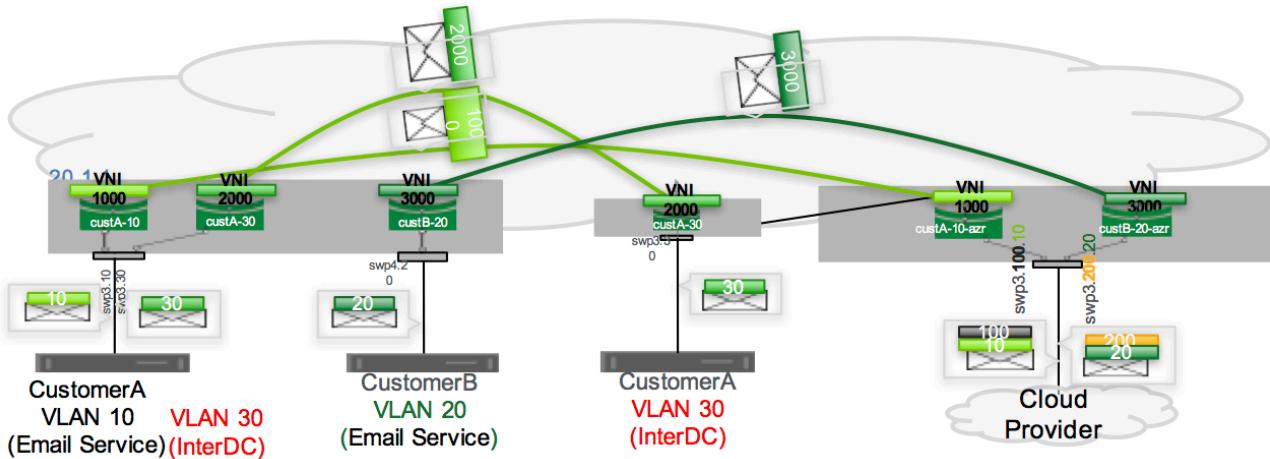
You configure a double-tagged interface by stacking the VLANs in the following manner: <port>.<outer tag>.<inner tag>. For example, consider swp1.100.10: the outer tag is VLAN 100, which represents the customer, and the inner tag is VLAN 10, which represents the service.

The outer tag or *TPID* (tagged protocol identifier) needs the `vlan_protocol` to be specified. It can be either `802.1Q` or `802.1ad`. If `802.1ad` is used, it must be specified on the lower VLAN device, such as `swp3.100` in the example below.



Double tag translation only works with bridges in [traditional mode](#) (see page 340) (not VLAN-aware). As such, you cannot use [NCLU](#) (see page 85) to configure it.

An example configuration could look like the following:



## Configuring the Switch

To configure the switch for double tag translation using the above example, edit the `/etc/network/interfaces` file in a text editor and add the following:



```
auto swp3.100
iface swp3.100
    vlan_protocol 802.1ad

auto swp3.100.10
iface swp3.100.10
    mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes
    mstpctl-bpduguard yes

auto vni1000
iface vni1000
    vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.0.0.1
    mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes
    mstpctl-bpduguard yes
    vxlan-id 1000

auto custA-10-azr
iface custA-10-azr
    bridge-ports swp3.100.10 vni1000
    bridge-vlan-aware no
    bridge-learning vni1000=off
```

You can check the configuration with the `brctl show` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl show
bridge name      bridge id          STP enabled   interfaces
custA-10-azr    8000.00020000004b  yes           swp3.
100.10                                     vni1000
                                         swp3.

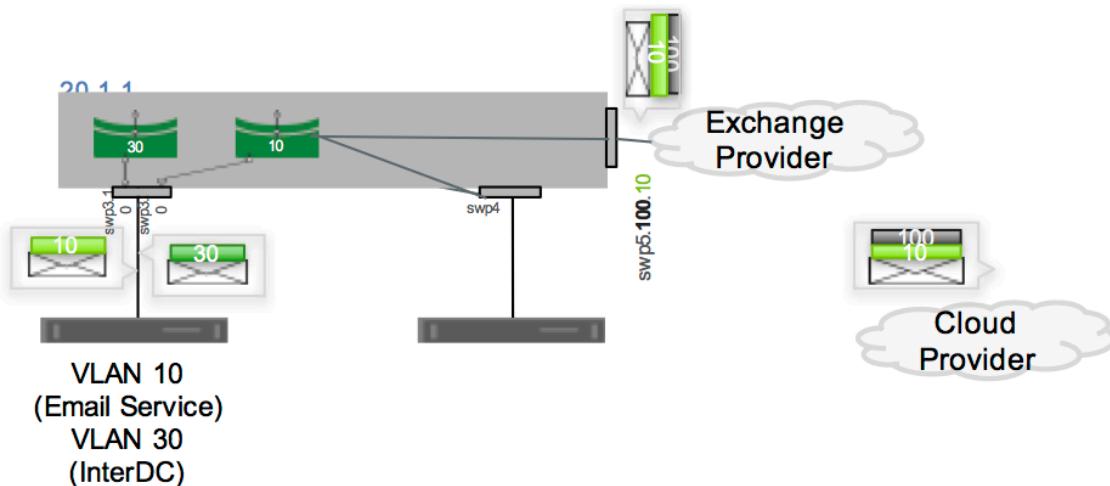
custB-20-azr    8000.00020000004b  yes           vni3000
200.20                                     swp3.
```



You can try this out without the bridge being VXLAN-enabled. The configuration would look something like this:

```
auto swp5.100.10
iface swp5.100.10
    mstpctl-portbpdufilter yes
    mstpctl-bpduguard yes

auto br10
iface br10
    bridge-ports swp3.10  swp4  swp5.100.10
    bridge-vlan-aware no
```



## Caveats and Errata

### Feature Limitations

- `iptables` match on double-tagged interfaces is not supported.
- Single-tagged translation supports only [VLAN-aware bridge mode](#) (see page 328) with the bridge's VLAN 802.1ad protocol.
- [MLAG](#) (see page 351) is only supported with single-tagged translation.
- No layer 2 protocol (STP BPDU, LLDP) tunneling support.
- Mixing 802.1Q and 802.1ad subinterfaces on the same switch port is not supported.
- When using switches with Mellanox Spectrum ASICs in an MLAG pair:
  - The peerlink (peerlink.4094) between the MLAG pair should be configured for VLAN protocol 802.1ad.
  - The peerlink cannot be used as a backup datapath in the event that one of the MLAG peers loses all uplinks.
- For switches with the Spectrum ASIC (but not the Spectrum 2), when the bridge VLAN protocol is 802.1ad and is VXLAN-enabled, either:
  - All bridge ports are access ports, except for the MLAG peerlink.
  - All bridge ports are VLAN trunks.

This means the switch terminating the cloud provider connections (double-tagged) cannot have local clients; these clients must be on a separate switch.

### Long Interface Names

The Linux kernel limits interface names to 15 characters in length. For QinQ interfaces, this limit can be reached fairly easily.

To work around this issue, you'll need to create two VLANs as nested VLAN raw devices, one for the outer tag and one for the inner tag. For example, you can't create an interface called `swp50s0.1001.101`, since it has 16 characters in its name. Instead, you'll create VLANs with IDs 1001 and 101 as follows by editing `/etc/network/interfaces` and adding a configuration like the following:

```
auto vlan1001
iface vlan1001
    vlan-id 1001
    vlan-raw-device swp50s0
    vlan-protocol 802.1ad

auto vlan1001-101
iface vlan1001-101
    vlan-id 101
    vlan-raw-device vlan1001

auto bridge101
iface bridge101
    bridge-ports vlan1001-101 vxlan1000101
```



# Layer 3

## Routing

This chapter discusses routing on switches running Cumulus Linux.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Managing Static Routes (see page 592)
  - Static Multicast Routes (see page 593)
  - Static Routing via ip route (see page 593)
  - Applying a Route Map for Route Updates (see page 595)
- Configuring a Gateway or Default Route (see page 595)
- Supported Route Table Entries (see page 595)
  - Forwarding Table Profiles (see page 595)
  - TCAM Resource Profiles for Mellanox Switches (see page 596)
  - Number of Supported Route Entries, by Platform (see page 597)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 599)
  - Don't Delete Routes via Linux Shell (see page 599)
  - Adding IPv6 Default Route with src Address on eth0 Fails without Adding Delay (see page 599)
- Related Information (see page 600)

### Managing Static Routes

You manage static routes using [NCLU](#) (see page 85) or the Cumulus Linux `ip route` command. The routes are added to the `FRRouting` routing table, and are then updated into the kernel routing table as well.

To add a static route, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add routing route 203.0.113.0/24 198.51.100.2
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration in the `/etc/frr/frr.conf` file:

```
!
ip route 203.0.113.0/24 198.51.100.2
!
```

To delete a static route, run:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ net del routing route 203.0.113.0/24 198.51.100.2
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

To view static routes, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show route static
RIB entry for static
=====
Codes: K - kernel route, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP,
       O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP, P - PIM, T - Table,
       > - selected route, * - FIB route
S>* 203.0.113.0/24 [1/0] via 198.51.100.2, swp3
```

## Static Multicast Routes

Static mroutes are also managed with NCLU, or with the `ip route` command. To add an mroute:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add routing mroute 230.0.0.0/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration in the `/etc/frr/frr.conf` file:

```
!
ip mroute 230.0.0.0/24
!
```

To delete an mroute, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net del routing mroute 230.0.0.0/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

To view mroutes, open the FRRouting CLI, and run the following command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh
switch# show ip rpf 230.0.0.0
Routing entry for 230.0.0.0/24 using Multicast RIB
  Known via "static", distance 1, metric 0, best
    * directly connected, swp31s0
```



## Static Routing via ip route

A static route can also be created by adding `post-up ip route add` command to a switch port configuration. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp3 ip address 198.51.100.1/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp3 post-up routing route add
203.0.113.0/24 via 198.51.100.2
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands produce the following configuration in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```
auto swp3
iface swp3
    address 198.51.100.1/24
    post-up ip route add 203.0.113.0/24 via 198.51.100.2
```



If an IPv6 address is assigned to a DOWN interface, the associated route is still installed into the routing table. The type of IPv6 address doesn't matter: link local, site local and global all exhibit the same problem.

If the interface is bounced up and down, then the routes are no longer in the route table.

The `ip route` command allows manipulating the kernel routing table directly from the Linux shell. See `man ip(8)` for details. FRRouting monitors the kernel routing table changes and updates its own routing table accordingly.

To display the routing table:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip route show
default via 10.0.1.2 dev eth0
10.0.1.0/24 dev eth0 proto kernel scope link src 10.0.1.52
192.0.2.0/24 dev swp1 proto kernel scope link src 192.0.2.12
192.0.2.10/24 via 192.0.2.1 dev swp1 proto zebra metric 20
192.0.2.20/24 proto zebra metric 20
    nexthop via 192.0.2.1 dev swp1 weight 1
    nexthop via 192.0.2.2 dev swp2 weight 1
192.0.2.30/24 via 192.0.2.1 dev swp1 proto zebra metric 20
192.0.2.40/24 dev swp2 proto kernel scope link src 192.0.2.42
192.0.2.50/24 via 192.0.2.2 dev swp2 proto zebra metric 20
192.0.2.60/24 via 192.0.2.2 dev swp2 proto zebra metric 20
192.0.2.70/24 proto zebra metric 30
    nexthop via 192.0.2.1 dev swp1 weight 1
    nexthop via 192.0.2.2 dev swp2 weight 1
198.51.100.0/24 dev swp3 proto kernel scope link src 198.51.100.1
198.51.100.10/24 dev swp4 proto kernel scope link src 198.51.100.11
```



```
198.51.100.20/24 dev br0 proto kernel scope link src 198.51.100.21
```

## Applying a Route Map for Route Updates

To apply a [route map](#) to filter route updates from Zebra into the Linux kernel:

```
cumulus@switch:$ net add ip protocol static route-map <route-map-name>
```

## Configuring a Gateway or Default Route

On each switch, it's a good idea to create a *gateway* or *default route* for traffic destined outside the switch's subnet, or local network. All such traffic passes through the gateway, which is a host on the same network that routes packets to their destination beyond the local network.

In the following example, you create a default route in the routing table — 0.0.0.0/0 — which indicates any IP address can get sent to the gateway, which is another switch with the IP address 10.1.0.1.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add routing route 0.0.0.0/0 10.1.0.1
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

## Supported Route Table Entries

Cumulus Linux — via `switchd` — advertises the maximum number of route table entries that are supported on a given switch architecture, including:

- L3 IPv4 LPM (longest prefix match) entries, which have a mask that is less than /32
- L3 IPv6 LPM entries, which have a mask that is /64 or less
- L3 IPv6 LPM entries, which have a mask that is greater than /64
- L3 IPv4 neighbor (or host) entries, which are the next hops seen in `ip neighbor`
- L3 IPv6 neighbor entries, which are the next hops seen in `ip -6 neighbor`
- ECMP next hops, which are IP address entries in a router's routing table that specify the next closest /most optimal router in its routing path
- MAC addresses

In addition, switches on the Tomahawk, Trident II+ and Trident II platforms are configured to manage route table entries using Algorithm Longest Prefix Match (ALPM). In ALPM mode, the hardware can store significantly more route entries.

You can use `cl-resource-query` (see page 771) to determine the current table sizes on a given switch.

## Forwarding Table Profiles

Mellanox Spectrum and some Broadcom ASICs provide the ability to configure the allocation of forwarding table resources and mechanisms. Cumulus Linux provides a number of generalized profiles for the platforms described below. These profiles work only with layer 2 and layer 3 unicast forwarding.

Cumulus Linux defines these profiles as *default*, *l2-heavy*, *v4-lpm-heavy* and *v6-lpm-heavy*. Choose the profile that best suits your network architecture and specify the profile name for the `forwarding_table.profile` variable in the `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf` file.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf | grep forwarding_table -B 4
# Manage shared forwarding table allocations
# Valid profiles -
# default, l2-heavy, v4-lpm-heavy, v6-lpm-heavy
#
forwarding_table.profile = default
```

After you specify a different profile, [restart `switchd` \(see page 193\)](#) for the change to take effect. You can see the forwarding table profile when you run `cl-resource-query`.



Broadcom ASICs other than Tomahawk and Trident II/Trident II+ support only the *default* profile.



For Broadcom ASICs, the maximum number of IP multicast entries is 8k.

## TCAM Resource Profiles for Mellanox Switches

The Mellanox Spectrum ASIC provides the ability to configure the TCAM resource allocation, which is shared between IP multicast forwarding entries and ACL tables. Cumulus Linux provides a number of general profiles for this platform: *default*, *ipmc-heavy* and *acl-heavy*. Choose the profile that best suits your network architecture and specify that profile name in the `tcam_resource.profile` variable in the `/usr/lib/python2.7/dist-packages/cumulus/__chip_config/mlx/datapath.conf` file.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /usr/lib/python2.7/dist-packages/cumulus/__chip_config/mlx/datapath.conf | grep -B3 "tcam_resource"
#TCAM resource forwarding profile

1. Valid profiles -
2. default, ipmc-heavy, acl-heavy, ipmc-max
tcam_resource.profile = default
```

After you specify a different profile, [restart `switchd` \(see page 193\)](#) for the change to take effect.

When [nonatomic updates \(see page 144\)](#) are enabled (that is, the `acl.non_atomic_update_mode` is set to *TRUE* in `/etc/cumulus/switchd.conf` file), the maximum number of mroute and ACL entries for each profile are as follows:

Profile	Mroute Entries	ACL Entries
default	1000	1500 (IPv6) or 3500 (IPv4)
ipmc-heavy	8500	160 (IPv6) or 400 (IPv4)
acl-heavy	450	4000 (IPv6) or 8000 (IPv4)
ipmc-max	13000	160 (IPv6) or 400 (IPv4)

When [nonatomic updates \(see page 144\)](#) are disabled (that is, the `acl.non_atomic_update_mode` is set to `FALSE` in `/etc/cumulus/switchd.conf` file), the maximum number of mroute and ACL entries for each profile are as follows:

Profile	Mroute Entries	ACL Entries
default	1000	750 (IPv6) or 1750 (IPv4)
ipmc-heavy	8500	80 (IPv6) or 200 (IPv4)
acl-heavy	450	2000 (IPv6) or 4000 (IPv4)
ipmc-max	13000	80 (IPv6) or 200 (IPv4)

### Number of Supported Route Entries, by Platform

The following tables list the number of MAC addresses, layer 3 neighbors and LPM routes validated for each forwarding table profile for the various supported platforms. If you are not specifying any profiles as described above, the *default* values are the ones that the switch will use.



The values in the following tables reflect results from our testing on the different platforms we support, and may differ from published manufacturers' specifications provided about these chipsets.

### Mellanox Spectrum Switches

Profile	MAC Addresses	L3 Neighbors	Longest Prefix Match (LPM)
default	40k	32k (IPv4) and 16k (IPv6)	64k (IPv4) or 28k (IPv6-long)
I2-heavy	88k	48k (IPv4) and 40k (IPv6)	8k (IPv4) and 8k (IPv6-long)
I2-heavy-1	180K	8k (IPv4) and 8k (IPv6)	8k (IPv4) and 8k (IPv6-long)

<b>Profile</b>	<b>MAC Addresses</b>	<b>L3 Neighbors</b>	<b>Longest Prefix Match (LPM)</b>
v4-lpm-heavy	8k	8k (IPv4) and 16k (IPv6)	80k (IPv4) and 16k (IPv6-long)
v4-lpm-heavy-1	8k	8k (IPv4) and 2k (IPv6)	176k (IPv4) and 2k (IPv6-long)
v6-lpm-heavy	40k	8k (IPv4) and 40k (IPv6)	8k (IPv4) and 64k (IPv6-long)

### Broadcom Tomahawk Switches

<b>Profile</b>	<b>MAC Addresses</b>	<b>L3 Neighbors</b>	<b>Longest Prefix Match (LPM)</b>
default	40k	40k	64k (IPv4) or 8k (IPv6-long)
l2-heavy	72k	72k	8k (IPv4) or 2k (IPv6-long)
v4-lpm-heavy, v6-lpm-heavy	8k	8k	128k (IPv4) or 20k (IPv6-long)

### Broadcom Trident II/Trident II+ Switches

<b>Profile</b>	<b>MAC Addresses</b>	<b>L3 Neighbors</b>	<b>Longest Prefix Match (LPM)</b>
default	32k	16k	128k (IPv4) or 20k (IPv6-long)
l2-heavy	160k	96k	8k (IPv4) or 2k (IPv6-long)
v4-lpm-heavy, v6-lpm-heavy	32k	16k	128k (IPv4) or 20k (IPv6-long)

### Broadcom Helix4 Switches

Note that Helix4 switches do not have profiles

<b>MAC Addresses</b>	<b>L3 Neighbors</b>	<b>Longest Prefix Match (LPM)</b>
24k	12k	7.8k (IPv4) or 2k (IPv6-long)



For Broadcom switches, IPv4 and IPv6 entries are not carved in separate spaces so it is not possible to define explicit numbers in the L3 Neighbors column of the tables shown above. However, note that an IPv6 entry takes up twice the space of an IPv4 entry.



## Caveats and Errata

### *Don't Delete Routes via Linux Shell*

Static routes added via FRRouting can be deleted via Linux shell. This operation, while possible, should be avoided. Routes added by FRRouting should only be deleted by FRRouting, otherwise FRRouting might not be able to clean up all its internal state completely and incorrect routing can occur as a result.

### *Adding IPv6 Default Route with src Address on eth0 Fails without Adding Delay*

Attempting to install an IPv6 default route on eth0 with a source address fails at reboot or when running `ifup` on eth0.

The first execution of `ifup -dv` returns this warning and does not install the route:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifup -dv eth0
warning: eth0: post-up cmd '/sbin/ip route add default via 2001:620:5ca1:160::1 /
src 2001:620:5ca1:160::45 dev eth0' failed (RTNETLINK answers: Invalid argument)<<<<<<<
```

Running `ifup` a second time on eth0 successfully installs the route.

There are two ways you can work around this issue.

- Add a sleep 2 to the eth0 interface in `/etc/network/interfaces`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface eth0 ipv6 address 2001:620:5ca1:160::45/64 post-up /bin/sleep 2s
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface eth0 post-up /sbin/ip route add default via 2001:620:5ca1:160::1 src 2001:620:5ca1:160::45 dev eth0
```

- Exclude the `src` parameter to the `ip route add` that causes the need for the delay. If the `src` parameter is removed, the route is added correctly.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface eth0 post-up /sbin/ip route add default via 2001:620:5ca1:160::1 dev eth0
```

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ifdown eth0
Stopping NTP server: ntpd.
Starting NTP server: ntpd.
cumulus@switch:~$ ip -6 r s
cumulus@switch:~$ ifup eth0
```



```
Stopping NTP server: ntpd.  
Starting NTP server: ntpd.  
cumulus@switch:~$ ip -6 r s  
2001:620:5cal:160::/64 dev eth0 proto kernel metric 256  
fe80::/64 dev eth0 proto kernel metric 256  
default via 2001:620:5cal:160::1 dev eth0 metric 1024
```

## Related Information

- Linux IP - [ip route command](#)
- FRRouting docs - [static route commands](#)

## Introduction to Routing Protocols

This chapter discusses the various routing protocols, and how to configure them.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- [Defining Routing Protocols \(see page 600\)](#)
- [Configuring Routing Protocols \(see page 600\)](#)
- [Protocol Tuning \(see page 601\)](#)

### Defining Routing Protocols

A *routing protocol* dynamically computes reachability between various end points. This enables communication to work around link and node failures, and additions and withdrawals of various addresses.

*IP routing protocols* are typically distributed; that is, an instance of the routing protocol runs on each of the routers in a network.



Cumulus Linux does **not** support running multiple instances of the same protocol on a router.

*Distributed routing protocols* compute reachability between end points by disseminating relevant information and running a routing algorithm on this information to determine the routes to each end station. To scale the amount of information that needs to be exchanged, routes are computed on address prefixes rather than on every end point address.

### Configuring Routing Protocols

A routing protocol needs to know three pieces of information, at a minimum:

- Who am I (my identity)
- To whom to disseminate information
- What to disseminate

Most routing protocols use the concept of a router ID to identify a node. Different routing protocols answer the last two questions differently.



The way they answer these questions affects the network design and thereby configuration. For example, in a link-state protocol such as OSPF (see [Open Shortest Path First \(OSPF\) Protocol \(see page 620\)](#)) or IS-IS, complete local information (links and attached address prefixes) about a node is disseminated to every other node in the network. Since the state that a node has to keep grows rapidly in such a case, link-state protocols typically limit the number of nodes that communicate this way. They allow for bigger networks to be built by breaking up a network into a set of smaller subnetworks (which are called areas or levels), and by advertising summarized information about an area to other areas.

Besides the two critical pieces of information mentioned above, protocols have other parameters that can be configured. These are usually specific to each protocol.

## Protocol Tuning

Most protocols provide certain tunable parameters that are specific to convergence during changes.

Wikipedia defines [convergence](#) as the “state of a set of routers that have the same topological information about the network in which they operate”. It is imperative that the routers in a network have the same topological state for the proper functioning of a network. Without this, traffic can be blackholed, and thus not reach its destination. It is normal for different routers to have differing topological states during changes, but this difference should vanish as the routers exchange information about the change and recompute the forwarding paths. Different protocols converge at different speeds in the presence of changes.

A key factor that governs how quickly a routing protocol converges is the time it takes to detect the change. For example, how quickly can a routing protocol be expected to act when there is a link failure. Routing protocols classify changes into two kinds: hard changes such as link failures, and soft changes such as a peer dying silently. They're classified differently because protocols provide different mechanisms for dealing with these failures.

It is important to configure the protocols to be notified immediately on link changes. This is also true when a node goes down, causing all of its links to go down.

Even if a link doesn't fail, a routing peer can crash. This causes that router to usually delete the routes it has computed or worse, it makes that router impervious to changes in the network, causing it to go out of sync with the other routers in the network because it no longer shares the same topological information as its peers.

The most common way to detect a protocol peer dying is to detect the absence of a heartbeat. All routing protocols send a heartbeat (or “hello”) packet periodically. When a node does not see a consecutive set of these hello packets from a peer, it declares its peer dead and informs other routers in the network about this. The period of each heartbeat and the number of heartbeats that need to be missed before a peer is declared dead are two popular configurable parameters.

If you configure these timers very low, the network can quickly descend into instability under stressful conditions when a router is not able to keep sending the heartbeats quickly as it is busy computing routing state; or the traffic is so much that the hellos get lost. Alternately, configuring this timer to very high values also causes blackholing of communication because it takes much longer to detect peer failures. Usually, the default values initialized within each protocol are good enough for most networks. Cumulus Networks recommends you do not adjust these settings.

## Network Topology

In computer networks, *topology* refers to the structure of interconnecting various nodes. Some commonly used topologies in networks are star, hub and spoke, leaf and spine, and broadcast.

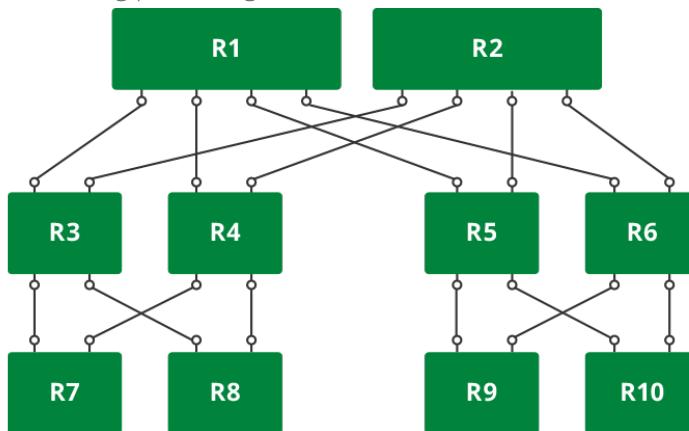
## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Clos Topologies (see page 602)
- Over-Subscribed and Non-Blocking Configurations (see page 602)
- Containing the Failure Domain (see page 603)
- Load Balancing (see page 603)

## Clos Topologies

In the vast majority of modern data centers, [Clos or fat tree topology](#) is very popular. This topology is shown in the figure below. It is also commonly referred to as leaf-spine topology. We shall use this topology throughout the routing protocol guide.



This topology allows the building of networks of varying size using nodes of different port counts and/or by increasing the tiers. The picture above is a three-tiered Clos network. We number the tiers from the bottom to the top. Thus, in the picture, the lowermost layer is called tier 1 and the topmost tier is called tier 3.

The number of end stations (such as servers) that can be attached to such a network is determined by a very simple mathematical formula.

In a 2-tier network, if each node is made up of  $m$  ports, then the total number of end stations that can be connected is  $m^2/2$ . In more general terms, if tier-1 nodes are  $m$ -port nodes and tier-2 nodes are  $n$ -port nodes, then the total number of end stations that can be connected are  $(m*n)/2$ . In a three tier network, where tier-3 nodes are  $o$ -port nodes, the total number of end stations that can be connected are  $(m*n*o)/2^{(number\ of\ tiers-1)}$ .

Let's consider some practical examples. In many data centers, it is typical to connect 40 servers to a top-of-rack (ToR) switch. The ToRs are all connected via a set of spine switches. If a ToR switch has 64 ports, then after hooking up 40 ports to the servers, the remaining 24 ports can be hooked up to 24 spine switches of the same link speed or to a smaller number of higher link speed switches. For example, if the servers are all hooked up as 10GE links, then the ToRs can connect to the spine switches via 40G links. So, instead of connecting to 24 spine switches with 10G links, the ToRs can connect to 6 spine switches with each link being 40G. If the spine switches are also 64-port switches, then the total number of end stations that can be connected is 2560 ( $40*64$ ) stations.

In a three tier network of 64-port switches, the total number of servers that can be connected are  $(40*64*64)/2^{(3-1)} = 40960$ . As you can see, this kind of topology can serve quite a large network with three tiers.



## Over-Subscribed and Non-Blocking Configurations

In the above example, the network is *over-subscribed*; that is, 400G of bandwidth from end stations (40 servers \* 10GE links) is serviced by only 240G of inter-rack bandwidth. The over-subscription ratio is 0.6 (240/400).

This can lead to congestion in the network and hot spots. Instead, if network operators connected 32 servers per rack, then 32 ports are left to be connected to spine switches. Now, the network is said to be **rearrangably non-blocking**. Now any server in a rack can talk to any other server in any other rack without necessarily blocking traffic between other servers.

In such a network, the total number of servers that can be connected are  $(64*64)/2 = 2048$ . Similarly, a three-tier version of the same can serve up to  $(64*64*64)/4 = 65536$  servers.

## Containing the Failure Domain

Traditional data centers were built using just two spine switches. This means that if one of those switches fails, the network bandwidth is cut in half, thereby greatly increasing network congestion and adversely affecting many applications. To avoid this, vendors typically try and make the spine switches resilient to failures by providing such features as dual control line cards and attempting to make the software highly available. However, as Douglas Adams famously noted, ">>>". In many cases, HA is among the top two or three causes of software failure (and thereby switch failure).

To support a fairly large network with just two spine switches also means that these switches have a large port count. This can make the switches quite expensive.

If the number of spine switches were to be merely doubled, the effect of a single switch failure is halved. With 8 spine switches, the effect of a single switch failure only causes a 12% reduction in available bandwidth.

So, in modern data centers, people build networks with anywhere from 4 to 32 spine switches.

## Load Balancing

In a Clos network, traffic is load balanced across the multiple links using equal cost multi-pathing (ECMP).

Routing algorithms compute shortest paths between two end stations where shortest is typically the lowest path cost. Each link is assigned a metric or cost. By default, a link's cost is a function of the link speed. The higher the link speed, the lower its cost. A 10G link has a higher cost than a 40G or 100G link, but a lower cost than a 1G link. Thus, the link cost is a measure of its traffic carrying capacity.

In the modern data center, the links between tiers of the network are homogeneous; that is, they have the same characteristics (same speed and therefore link cost) as the other links. As a result, the first hop router can pick any of the spine switches to forward a packet to its destination (assuming that there is no link failure between the spine and the destination switch). Most routing protocols recognize that there are multiple equal-cost paths to a destination and enable any of them to be selected for a given traffic flow.

## FRRouting Overview

Cumulus Linux uses FRRouting to provide the routing protocols for dynamic routing. FRRouting provides many routing protocols, of which Cumulus Linux supports the following:

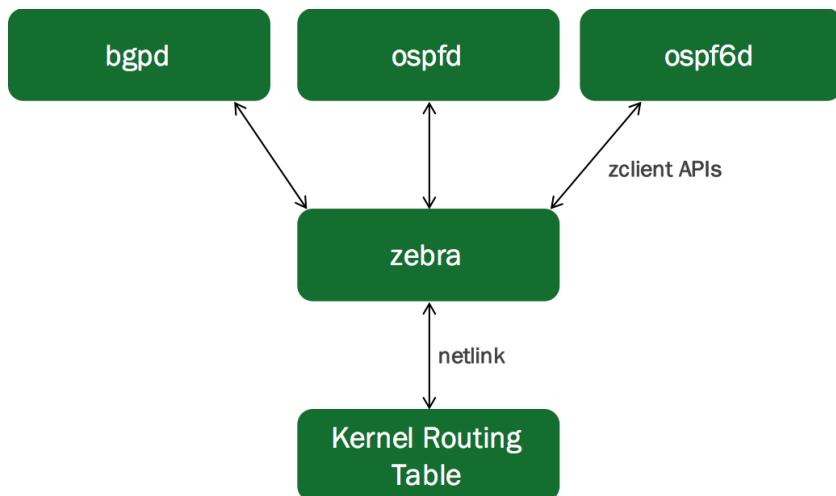
- Open Shortest Path First ([v2 \(see page 620\)](#) and [v3 \(see page 634\)](#))
- Border Gateway Protocol ([see page 636](#))

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Architecture (see page 604)
- About zebra (see page 604)
- Related Information (see page 604)

## Architecture



As shown in the figure above, the FRRouting suite consists of various protocol-specific daemons and a protocol-independent daemon called `zebra`. Each of the protocol-specific daemons are responsible for running the relevant protocol and building the routing table based on the information exchanged.

It is not uncommon to have more than one protocol daemon running at the same time. For example, at the edge of an enterprise, protocols internal to an enterprise (called IGP for Interior Gateway Protocol) such as [OSPF \(see page 620\)](#) or RIP run alongside the protocols that connect an enterprise to the rest of the world (called EGP or Exterior Gateway Protocol) such as [BGP \(see page 636\)](#).

## About zebra

`zebra` is the daemon that resolves the routes provided by multiple protocols (including static routes specified by the user) and programs these routes in the Linux kernel via `netlink` (in Linux). `zebra` does more than this, of course. The [FRRouting documentation](#) defines `zebra` as the IP routing manager for FRRouting that "provides kernel routing table updates, interface lookups, and redistribution of routes between different routing protocols."

## Related Information

- [frrouting.org](#)
- [GitHub](#)



## Upgrading from Quagga to FRRouting

Cumulus Linux 3.4 and later releases replace Quagga with FRRouting. This section outlines the upgrade process for users currently using Quagga.



These instructions only apply to upgrading to Cumulus Linux 3.4 or later from releases earlier than 3.4. New image installations contain `frr` instead of `quagga` or `quagga-compat`. If you are using any automation tools to configure your network and are installing a new Cumulus Linux image, make sure your automation tools refer to FRR and not to Quagga.

If you are upgrading Cumulus Linux using `apt-get upgrade`, existing automation that references Quagga continues to work until you upgrade to FRR. Once you perform the following upgrade steps, your automation **must** reference FRR instead of Quagga.



Upgrading to Cumulus Linux 3.4 or later results in both `quagga.service` and `frr.service` being present on the system, until `quagga.service` is removed. These services have been configured to conflict with each other; starting one service automatically stops the other, as they cannot run concurrently.

- Run the following commands to begin the upgrade process:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get update  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get upgrade
```



At the end of the `apt-get upgrade` process, the output shows details of the upgrade process, regarding the Quagga to FRR switchover.

```
Unpacking quagga-compat (1.0.0+c13u15-1)  
...  
[476/476]  
Selecting previously unselected package frr.  
Preparing to unpack .../frr_3.1+c13u1_amd64.deb ...  
Unpacking frr (3.1+c13u1) ...  
Processing triggers for man-db (2.7.0.2-5) ...  
Setting up frr (3.1+c13u1) ...  
Setting up quagga-compat (1.0.0+c13u15-1) ...  
-----  
-----+  
| Your system has been upgraded to use Cumulus Linux's  
new routing protocol |  
| suite, FRRouting. The 'quagga' package is now a dummy  
transitional package |
```

```

| and may be
| removed.
|
|
| As part of this upgrade, please take note of the
| following information:
|
|
| - The location of your configuration files has changed
| to /etc/frr.
| In order to enable a seamless transition, FRRouting
| will continue to
| read all configuration files from /etc/quagga until
| the transition is
|
| completed.
|
|
| - In the interest of stability, action is required on
| your part to
| complete the transition to FRRouting. For
| instructions on how to do
| this, please refer to the Cumulus Linux
| documentation.
+-----+
-----+
Setting up quagga (1.0.0+cl3u14-1) ...
Processing triggers for libc-bin (2.19-18+deb8u10) ...
Creating post-apt snapshot... 245 done.
root@dell-s6000-16:/etc#

```

Once the upgrade process is completed, the switch is in the following state:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl list-unit-files | grep "quagga\|frr"
frr.service                           enabled
quagga.service                         enabled
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl status frr
frr.service - Cumulus Linux FRR
  Loaded: loaded (/etc/systemd/system/frr.service; enabled)
  Active: inactive (dead) since Fri 2017-07-28 18:54:59 UTC; 3 days
ago
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl status quagga
quagga.service - Quagga (Transitional)
  Loaded: loaded (/lib/systemd/system/quagga.service; enabled)
  Active: active (running) since Fri 2017-07-28 18:55:49 UTC; 3 days
ago

```



```
Process: 29436 ExecStop=/usr/lib/frr/quagga stop (code=exited,
status=0/SUCCESS)
Process: 29772 ExecStart=/usr/lib/frr/quagga start (code=exited,
status=0/SUCCESS)
CGroup: /system.slice/quagga.service
        29791 /usr/lib/frr/zebra -s 90000000 --daemon -A 127.0.0.1
-q
        29798 /usr/lib/frr/bgpd --daemon -A 127.0.0.1 -q
        29805 /usr/lib/frr/ripd --daemon -A 127.0.0.1 -q
        29812 /usr/lib/frr/ospfd --daemon -A 127.0.0.1 -q
        29819 /usr/lib/frr/ospf6d --daemon -A ::1 -q
        29825 /usr/lib/frr/watchfrr -q -adz -r /usr/sbin
/servicebBquaggabBrestartbB%s -s /usr/sbin/servicebBquaggabBstartbB%s
-k /usr/sbin/servicebBquaggabBstopbB%s -b bB -t 90 zebra bgpd ripd
ospfd ospf6d
```

The output below shows the FRR / Quagga package status:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ dpkg -l quagga\* frr\*
interacting with quagga
rc  quagga                  1.0.0+cl3u14-
1               amd64          transitional package
ii   quagga-compat           1.0.0+cl3u15-
1               all            Quagga compatibility for
FRRouting
ii   frr                     3.1             amd64          BGP/OSPF/RIP
+cl3u1
routing daemon
```



Cumulus 3.4 and later releases do not support or implement `python-clcmd`. While the package remains, the related commands have been removed.

To complete the transition to FRR:

1. Migrate all `/etc/quagga/*` files to `/etc/frr/*`.



The `vtysh.conf` file should not be moved, as it is unlikely any configuration is in the file. However, if there is necessary configuration in place, copy the contents into `/etc/frr/vtysh.conf`.

2. Merge the current `Quagga.conf` file with the new `frr.conf` file. Keep the default configuration for `frr.conf` in place, and add the additional configuration sections from `Quagga.conf`.
3. Enable the daemons needed for your installation in `/etc/frr/daemons`.
4. Manually update the log file locations to `/var/log/frr` or `syslog`.
5. Remove the compatibility package:



**!** This step stops the Quagga compatibility mode, causing routing to go down.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get remove quagga quagga-compat  
quagga-doc
```

**!** Removing the `quagga-compat` package also removes `quagga.service`. However, the `/etc/quagga` directory is not removed in this step, as it is left in place for reference.

#### 6. Purge the Quagga packages:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo dpkg -P quagga quagga-compat
```

**!** This step deletes all Quagga configuration files. Please ensure you back up your configuration.

**!** Cumulus Networks does not recommend reinstalling the `quagga` and `quagga-compat` packages once they have been removed. While they can be reinstalled to continue migration iterations, limited testing has taken place, and configuration issues may occur.

#### 7. Start FRR without Quagga compatibility mode:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start frr.service  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl -l status frr.service
```

## Troubleshooting

If the `systemctl -l status frr` output shows an issue, edit the configuration files to correct it, and repeat the process. If issues persist, you can return to Quagga compatibility mode for further testing:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get install quagga-compat  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl stop frr.service  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl disable frr.service
```





Several configuration migration iterations may be necessary to ensure the configuration is behaving the same in both Quagga and FRR.

Once further testing is complete, run the following commands to reset the FRR installation, and then repeat the steps from the beginning of this section to upgrade to FRR:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl reset-failed frr.service  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable frr.service
```

## Configuring FRRouting

This section provides an overview of configuring FRRouting, the routing software package that provides a suite of routing protocols so you can configure routing on your switch.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Configuring FRRouting (see page 609)
  - Enabling and Starting FRRouting (see page 610)
  - Understanding Integrated Configurations (see page 610)
  - Restoring the Default Configuration (see page 611)
- Interface IP Addresses and VRFs (see page 612)
- Using the FRRouting vtysh Modal CLI (see page 612)
- Reloading the FRRouting Configuration (see page 617)
  - Debugging (see page 617)
- Related Information (see page 617)

## Configuring FRRouting

FRRouting does not start by default in Cumulus Linux. Before you run FRRouting, make sure all you have enabled relevant daemons that you intend to use — `zebra`, `bgpd`, `ospfd`, `ospf6d` or `pimd` — in the `/etc/frr/daemons` file.



Cumulus Networks has not tested RIP, RIPv6, IS-IS and Babel.

The `zebra` daemon must always be enabled. The others you can enable according to how you plan to route your network — using [BGP \(see page 636\)](#) for example, instead of [OSPF \(see page 620\)](#).

Before you start FRRouting, you need to enable the corresponding daemons. Edit the `/etc/frr/daemons` file and set to `yes` each daemon you are enabling. For example, to enable BGP, set both `zebra` and `bgpd` to `yes`:

```
zebra=yes (* this one is mandatory to bring the others up)
```



```
bgpd=yes
ospf6d=no
ripd=no
ripngd=no
isisd=no
babeld=no
pimd=no
```

## Enabling and Starting FRRouting

Once you enable the appropriate daemons, then you need to enable and start the FRRouting service.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable frr.service
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start frr.service
```

- ☑ All the routing protocol daemons (`bgpd`, `ospf6d`, `ripd`, `ripngd`, `isisd` and `pimd`) are dependent on `zebra`. When you start `frr`, `systemd` determines whether `zebra` is running; if `zebra` is not running, it starts `zebra`, then starts the dependent service, such as `bgpd`.  
In general, if you restart a service, its dependent services also get restarted. For example, running `systemctl restart frr.service` restarts any of the routing protocol daemons that are enabled and running.  
For more information on the `systemctl` command and changing the state of daemons, read [Managing Application Daemons \(see page 183\)](#).

## Understanding Integrated Configurations

By default in Cumulus Linux, FRRouting saves the configuration of all daemons in a single integrated configuration file, `frr.conf`.

You can disable this mode by running the following command in the `vtysh` FRRouting CLI (see page 612):

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# no service integrated-vtysh-config
```

To enable the integrated configuration file mode again, run:

```
switch(config)# service integrated-vtysh-config
```

If you disable the integrated configuration mode, FRRouting saves each daemon-specific configuration file in a separate file. At a minimum for a daemon to start, that daemon must be enabled and its daemon-specific configuration file must be present, even if that file is empty.



You save the current configuration by running:

```
switch# write mem
Building Configuration...
Integrated configuration saved to /etc/frr/frr.conf
[OK]
switch# exit
cumulus@switch:~$
```



You can use `write file` instead of `write mem`.

When the integrated configuration mode disabled, the output looks like this:

```
switch# write mem
Building Configuration...
Configuration saved to /etc/frr/zebra.conf
Configuration saved to /etc/frr/bgpd.conf
[OK]
```

## *Restoring the Default Configuration*

If you need to restore the FRRouting configuration to the default running configuration, you need to delete the `frr.conf` file and restart the `frr` service. You should back up `frr.conf` (or any configuration files you may remove, see the note below) before proceeding.

1. Confirm service `integrated-vtysh-config` is enabled:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show configuration | grep integrated
service integrated-vtysh-config
```

2. Remove `/etc/frr/frr.conf`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo rm /etc/frr/frr.conf
```

3. Restart FRRouting:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart frr.service
```





If for some reason you disabled `service integrated-vtysh-config`, then you should remove all the configuration files (such as `zebra.conf` or `ospf6d.conf`) instead of `frr.conf` in step 2 above.

## Interface IP Addresses and VRFs

FRRouting inherits the IP addresses and any associated routing tables for the network interfaces from the `/etc/network/interfaces` file. This is the recommended way to define the addresses; do **not** create interfaces using FRRouting. For more information, see [Configuring IP Addresses](#) (see page 217) and [Virtual Routing and Forwarding - VRF](#) (see page 696).

## Using the FRRouting vtysh Modal CLI

FRRouting provides a CLI – `vtysh` – for configuring and displaying the state of the protocols. It is invoked by running:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh  
  
Hello, this is FRRouting (version 0.99.23.1+cl3u2).  
Copyright 1996-2005 Kunihiro Ishiguro, et al.  
  
switch#
```

`vtysh` provides a Cisco-like modal CLI, and many of the commands are similar to Cisco IOS commands. By modal CLI, we mean that there are different modes to the CLI, and certain commands are only available within a specific mode. Configuration is available with the `configure terminal` command, which is invoked thus:

```
switch# configure terminal  
switch(config)#
```

The prompt displays the mode the CLI is in. For example, when the interface-specific commands are invoked, the prompt changes to:

```
switch(config)# interface swp1  
switch(config-if)#
```

When the routing protocol specific commands are invoked, the prompt changes to:

```
switch(config)# router ospf  
switch(config-router)#
```

At any level, "?" displays the list of available top-level commands at that level:



```
switch(config-if)# ?
bandwidth      Set bandwidth informational parameter
description    Interface specific description
end           End current mode and change to enable mode
exit          Exit current mode and down to previous mode
ip             IP Information
ipv6          IPv6 Information
isis            IS-IS commands
link-detect   Enable link detection on interface
list           Print command list
mpls-te       MPLS-TE specific commands
multicast     Set multicast flag to interface
no             Negate a command or set its defaults
ptm-enable    Enable neighbor check with specified topology
quit          Exit current mode and down to previous mode
shutdown      Shutdown the selected interface
```

?-based completion is also available to see the parameters that a command takes:

```
switch(config-if)# bandwidth ?
<1-10000000> Bandwidth in kilobits
switch(config-if)# ip ?
address      Set the IP address of an interface
irdp        Alter ICMP Router discovery preference this interface
ospf        OSPF interface commands
rip          Routing Information Protocol
router      IP router interface commands
```

Displaying state can be done at any level, including the top level. For example, to see the routing table as seen by zebra, you use:

```
switch# show ip route
Codes: K - kernel route, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP,
       O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP, T - Table,
       > - selected route, * - FIB route
B>* 0.0.0.0/0 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:c, swp29, 00:11:57
   *                   via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:52, swp30, 00:11:57
B>* 10.0.0.1/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:c, swp29, 00:11:57
   *                   via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:52, swp30, 00:11:57
B>* 10.0.0.11/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5b, swp1, 00:11:57
B>* 10.0.0.12/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:2e, swp2, 00:11:58
B>* 10.0.0.13/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:57, swp3, 00:11:59
B>* 10.0.0.14/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:43, swp4, 00:11:59
C>* 10.0.0.21/32 is directly connected, lo
B>* 10.0.0.51/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:c, swp29, 00:11:57
   *                   via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:52, swp30, 00:11:57
B>* 172.16.1.0/24 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5b, swp1, 00:11:57
   *                   via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:2e, swp2, 00:11:57
B>* 172.16.3.0/24 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:57, swp3, 00:11:59
```

```
*          via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:43, swp4, 00:11:59
```

To run the same command at a config level, you prepend do to it:

```
switch(config-router)# do show ip route
Codes: K - kernel route, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP,
       O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP, T - Table,
       > - selected route, * - FIB route
B>* 0.0.0.0/0 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:c, swp29, 00:05:17
   *           via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:52, swp30, 00:05:17
B>* 10.0.0.1/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:c, swp29, 00:05:17
   *           via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:52, swp30, 00:05:17
B>* 10.0.0.11/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5b, swp1, 00:05:17
B>* 10.0.0.12/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:2e, swp2, 00:05:18
B>* 10.0.0.13/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:57, swp3, 00:05:18
B>* 10.0.0.14/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:43, swp4, 00:05:18
C>* 10.0.0.21/32 is directly connected, lo
B>* 10.0.0.51/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:c, swp29, 00:05:17
   *           via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:52, swp30, 00:05:17
B>* 172.16.1.0/24 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5b, swp1, 00:05:17
   *           via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:2e, swp2, 00:05:17
B>* 172.16.3.0/24 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:57, swp3, 00:05:18
   *           via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:43, swp4, 00:05:18
```

Running single commands with vtysh is possible using the -c option of vtysh:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh -c 'sh ip route'
Codes: K - kernel route, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP,
       O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP, A - Babel,
       > - selected route, * - FIB route

K>* 0.0.0.0/0 via 192.168.0.2, eth0
C>* 192.0.2.11/24 is directly connected, swp1
C>* 192.0.2.12/24 is directly connected, swp2
B>* 203.0.113.30/24 [200/0] via 192.0.2.2, swp1, 11:05:10
B>* 203.0.113.31/24 [200/0] via 192.0.2.2, swp1, 11:05:10
B>* 203.0.113.32/24 [200/0] via 192.0.2.2, swp1, 11:05:10
C>* 127.0.0.0/8 is directly connected, lo
C>* 192.168.0.0/24 is directly connected, eth0
```

Running a command multiple levels down is done thus:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh -c 'configure terminal' -c 'router ospf'
-c 'area 0.0.0.1 range 10.10.10.0/24'
```

Notice that the commands also take a partial command name (for example, sh ip route above) as long as the partial command name is not aliased:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh -c 'sh ip r'  
% Ambiguous command.
```

A command or feature can be disabled in FRRouting by prepending the command with `no`. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh  
switch# configure terminal  
switch(config)# router ospf  
switch(config-router)# no area 0.0.0.1 range 10.10.10.0/24  
switch(config-router)# exit  
switch(config)# exit  
switch# write mem  
switch# exit  
cumulus@switch:~$
```

The current state of the configuration can be viewed using the `show running-config` command:

```
switch# show running-config  
Building configuration...  
  
Current configuration:  
!  
username cumulus nopassword  
!  
service integrated-vtysh-config  
!  
vrf mgmt  
!  
interface lo  
link-detect  
!  
interface swp1  
 ipv6 nd ra-interval 10  
link-detect  
!  
interface swp2  
 ipv6 nd ra-interval 10  
link-detect  
!  
interface swp3  
 ipv6 nd ra-interval 10  
link-detect  
!  
interface swp4  
 ipv6 nd ra-interval 10  
link-detect  
!
```

```

interface swp29
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
  link-detect
!
interface swp30
  ipv6 nd ra-interval 10
  link-detect
!
interface swp31
  link-detect
!
interface swp32
  link-detect
!
interface vagrant
  link-detect
!
interface eth0 vrf mgmt
  ipv6 nd suppress-ra
  link-detect
!
interface mgmt vrf mgmt
  link-detect
!
router bgp 65020
  bgp router-id 10.0.0.21
  bgp bestpath as-path multipath-relax
  bgp bestpath compare-routerid
  neighbor fabric peer-group
  neighbor fabric remote-as external
  neighbor fabric description Internal Fabric Network
  neighbor fabric capability extended-nexthop
  neighbor swp1 interface peer-group fabric
  neighbor swp2 interface peer-group fabric
  neighbor swp3 interface peer-group fabric
  neighbor swp4 interface peer-group fabric
  neighbor swp29 interface peer-group fabric
  neighbor swp30 interface peer-group fabric
!
address-family ipv4 unicast
  network 10.0.0.21/32
  neighbor fabric activate
  neighbor fabric prefix-list dc-spine in
  neighbor fabric prefix-list dc-spine out
  exit-address-family
!
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 10 permit 0.0.0.0/0
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 20 permit 10.0.0.0/24 le 32
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 30 permit 172.16.1.0/24
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 40 permit 172.16.2.0/24
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 50 permit 172.16.3.0/24
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 60 permit 172.16.4.0/24

```



```
ip prefix-list dc-spine seq 500 deny any
!
ip forwarding
ipv6 forwarding
!
line vty
!
end
```



If you attempt to configure a routing protocol that has not been started, `vtysh` silently ignores those commands.

Alternately, if you do not want to use a modal CLI to configure FRRouting, you can use a suite of [Cumulus Linux-specific commands](#) (see page 618) instead.

## Reloading the FRRouting Configuration

If you make a change to your routing configuration, you need to reload FRRouting so your changes take place. `FRRouting reload` enables you to apply only the modifications you make to your FRRouting configuration, synchronizing its running state with the configuration in `/etc/frr/frr.conf`. This is useful for optimizing automation of FRRouting in your environment or to apply changes made at runtime.



FRRouting reload only applies to an integrated service configuration, where your FRRouting configuration is stored in a single `frr.conf` file instead of one configuration file per FRRouting daemon (like `zebra` or `bgpd`).

To reload your FRRouting configuration after you've modified `/etc/frr/frr.conf`, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl reload frr.service
```

Examine the running configuration and verify that it matches the config in `/etc/frr/frr.conf`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show configuration
```

## Debugging

If the running configuration is not what you expected, please [submit a support request](#) and supply the following information:

- The current running configuration (run `net show configuration` and output the contents to a file)
- The contents of `/etc/frr/frr.conf`
- The contents of `/var/log/frr/frr-reload.log`



## Related Information

- [frrouting.org/user-guide/BGP.html#BGP](http://frrouting.org/user-guide/BGP.html#BGP)
- [frrouting.org/user-guide/IPv6-Support.html#IPv6-Support](http://frrouting.org/user-guide/IPv6-Support.html#IPv6-Support)
- [frrouting.org/user-guide/Zebra.html#Zeb](http://frrouting.org/user-guide/Zebra.html#Zeb) [frrouting.org/user-guide/Zebra.html#Zebra](http://frrouting.org/user-guide/Zebra.html#Zebra)

## Comparing NCLU and vtysh Commands

Using NCLU (see page 85) is the primary way to [configure routing](#) (see page 609) in Cumulus Linux. However, an alternative exists in the the `vtysh` modal CLI. The available commands are as follows:

### Comparing vtysh and NCLU Commands

The following table compares the various FRRouting commands with their Cumulus Linux NCLU counterparts.

Action	NCLU Commands	FRRouting Commands
Display the routing table	<pre>cumulus@switch: ~\$ net show route</pre>	<pre>switch# show ip route</pre>
Create a new neighbor	<pre>cumulus@switch: ~\$ net add bgp autonomous- system 65002 cumulus@switch: ~\$ net add bgp neighbor 14.0.0.2 2</pre>	<pre>switch(config) # router bgp 65 002 switch(config- router)# neighbor 14.0.0 .22</pre>
Redistribute routing information from static route entries into RIP tables	<pre>cumulus@switch: ~\$ net add bgp redistribute static</pre>	<pre>switch(config) # router bgp 65 002 switch(config- router)# redistribute st atic</pre>
Define a <a href="#">static route</a> (see page 592)		



Action	NCLU Commands	FRRouting Commands
	<pre>cumulus@switch: ~\$ net add routing route 155 .1.2.20/24 bridge 45</pre>	<pre>switch(config) # ip route 155. 1.2.20/24 bridge 45</pre>
Configure an IPv6 address	<pre>cumulus@switch: ~\$ net add <b>interf</b> <b>ace</b> swp3 ipv6 address 3002:2123 .1234:1abc::21/64</pre>	<pre>switch(config) # <b>int</b> swp3 switch(config-if) # ipv6 address 3002:21 23:1234:1abc::2 1/64</pre>
Enable topology checking ( <a href="#">PTM (see page 304)</a> )	<pre>cumulus@switch: ~\$ net add routing ptm- enable</pre>	<pre>switch(config) # ptm-enable</pre>
Configure <a href="#">MTU (see page 238)</a> in IPv6 network discovery for an interface	<pre>cumulus@switch: ~\$ sudo cl-ra <b>int</b> <b>erface</b> swp3 set mtu 9000</pre>	<pre>switch(config) # <b>int</b> swp3 switch(config-if) # ipv6 nd mtu 9000</pre>
Set the OSPF interface priority	<pre>cumulus@switch: ~\$ net add <b>interf</b> <b>ace</b> swp3 ospf6 priority 120</pre>	<pre>switch(config) # <b>int</b> swp3 switch(config-if) # ip ospf6 priority 120</pre>
Configure timing for OSPF SPF calculations		

Action	NCLU Commands	FRouting Commands
	<pre>cumulus@switch: ~\$ net add ospf6 timers throttle spf 40 50 60</pre>	<pre>switch(config) # router ospf6 switch(config- ospf6)# timer throttle spf 40 50 60</pre>
Configure the OSPF Hello packet interval in number of seconds for an interface	<pre>cumulus@switch: ~\$ net add <b>interf</b> ace swp4 ospf6 hello-interval 60</pre>	<pre>switch(config) # <b>int</b> swp4 switch(config-i f)# ipv6 ospf6 hello- interval 60</pre>
Display BGP (see page 636) information	<pre>cumulus@switch: ~\$ net show bgp summary</pre>	<pre>switch# show ip bgp summary</pre>
Display OSPF debugging status	<pre>cumulus@switch: ~\$ net show debugs</pre>	<pre>switch# show debugging ospf</pre>

## Open Shortest Path First - OSPF - Protocol

OSPFv2 is a [link-state routing protocol](#) for IPv4. OSPF maintains the view of the network topology conceptually as a directed graph. Each router represents a vertex in the graph. Each link between neighboring routers represents a unidirectional edge. Each link has an associated weight (called cost) that is either automatically derived from its bandwidth or administratively assigned. Using the weighted topology graph, each router computes a shortest path tree (SPT) with itself as the root, and applies the results to build its forwarding table. The computation is generally referred to as *SPF computation* and the resultant tree as the *SPF tree*.

An LSA (*link-state advertisement*) is the fundamental quantum of information that OSPF routers exchange with each other. It seeds the graph building process on the node and triggers SPF computation. LSAs originated by a node are distributed to all the other nodes in the network through a mechanism called



*flooding*. Flooding is done hop-by-hop. OSPF ensures reliability by using link state acknowledgement packets. The set of LSAs in a router's memory is termed *link-state database* (LSDB), a representation of the network graph. Thus, OSPF ensures a consistent view of LSDB on each node in the network in a distributed fashion (eventual consistency model); this is key to the protocol's correctness.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

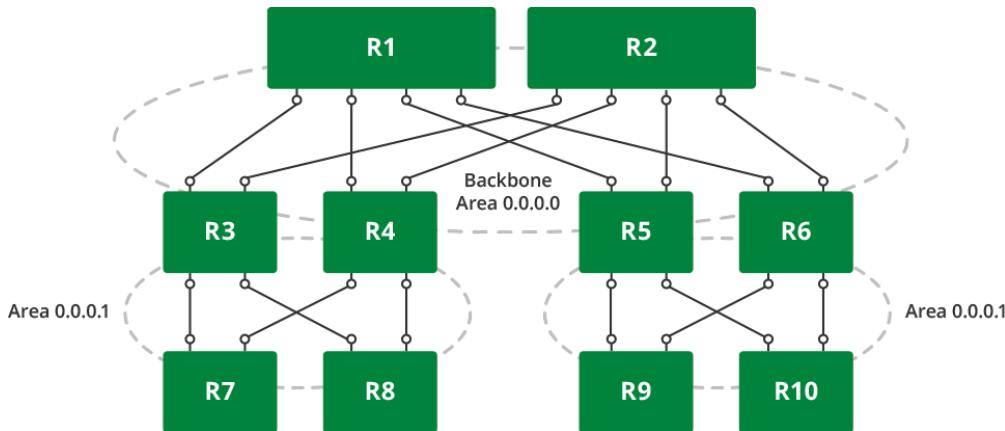
- Scalability and Areas (see page 621)
- Configuring OSPFv2 (see page 622)
  - Enabling the OSPF and Zebra Daemons (see page 622)
  - Configuring OSPF (see page 622)
  - Defining (Custom) OSPF Parameters on the Interfaces (see page 624)
  - OSPF SPF Timer Defaults (see page 624)
  - Configure MD5 Authentication for OSPF Neighbors (see page 624)
- Scaling Tips (see page 625)
  - Summarization (see page 625)
  - Stub Areas (see page 626)
  - Running Multiple ospfd Instances (see page 627)
- Unnumbered Interfaces (see page 631)
- Applying a Route Map for Route Updates (see page 632)
- ECMP (see page 632)
- Topology Changes and OSPF Reconvergence (see page 633)
  - Example Configurations (see page 633)
- Debugging OSPF (see page 633)
- Related Information (see page 634)

## Scalability and Areas

An increase in the number of nodes affects OSPF scalability in the following ways:

- Memory footprint to hold the entire network topology,
- Flooding performance,
- SPF computation efficiency.

The OSPF protocol advocates hierarchy as a *divide and conquer* approach to achieve high scale. The topology may be divided into areas, resulting in a two-level hierarchy. Area 0 (or 0.0.0.0), called the backbone area, is the top level of the hierarchy. Packets traveling from one non-zero area to another must go via the backbone area. As an example, the leaf-spine topology we have been referring to in the routing section can be divided into areas as follows:



Here are some points to note about areas and OSPF behavior:

- Routers that have links to multiple areas are called *area border routers* (ABR). For example, routers R3, R4, R5, R6 are ABRs in the diagram. An ABR performs a set of specialized tasks, such as SPF computation per area and summarization of routes across areas.
- Most of the LSAs have an area-level flooding scope. These include router LSA, network LSA, and summary LSA.



In the diagram, we reused the same non-zero area address. This is fine since the area address is only a scoping parameter provided to all routers within that area. It has no meaning outside the area. Thus, in the cases where ABRs do not connect to multiple non-zero areas, the same area address can be used, thus reducing the operational headache of coming up with area addresses.

## Configuring OSPFv2

Configuring OSPF involves the following tasks:

- Enabling the OSPF daemon
- Enabling OSPF
- Defining (Custom) OSPF parameters on the interfaces

### Enabling the OSPF and Zebra Daemons

To enable OSPF, enable the `zebra` and `ospf` daemons, as described in [Configuring FRRouting \(see page 609\)](#), then start the FRRouting service:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable frr.service
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start frr.service
```

### Configuring OSPF

As discussed in [Introduction to Routing Protocols \(see page 600\)](#), there are three steps to the configuration:

1. Identifying the router with the router ID.



2. With whom should the router communicate?
3. What information (most notably the prefix reachability) to advertise?

There are two ways to achieve (2) and (3) in FRRouting OSPF:

1. The `network` statement under `router ospf` does both. The statement is specified with an IP subnet prefix and an area address. All the interfaces on the router whose IP address matches the `network` subnet are put into the specified area. OSPF process starts bringing up peering adjacency on those interfaces. It also advertises the interface IP addresses formatted into LSAs (of various types) to the neighbors for proper reachability.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add ospf router-id 0.0.0.1
cumulus@switch:~$ net add ospf network 10.0.0.0/16 area 0.0.0.0
cumulus@switch:~$ net add ospf network 192.0.2.0/16 area 0.0.0.1
```

The subnets can be as coarse as possible to cover the most number of interfaces on the router that should run OSPF.

There may be interfaces where it's undesirable to bring up OSPF adjacency. For example, in a data center topology, the host-facing interfaces need not run OSPF; however the corresponding IP addresses should still be advertised to neighbors. This can be achieved using the `passive-interface` construct:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add ospf passive-interface swp10
cumulus@switch:~$ net add ospf passive-interface swp11
```

Or use the `passive-interface default` command to put all interfaces as passive and selectively remove certain interfaces to bring up protocol adjacency:

```
R3# configure terminal
R3(config)# router ospf
R3(config-router)# passive-interface default
R3(config-router)# no passive-interface swp1
```

2. Explicitly enable OSPF for each interface by configuring it under the interface configuration mode:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 ospf area 0.0.0.0
```

If OSPF adjacency bringup is not desired, you should configure the corresponding interfaces as passive as explained above.

This model of configuration is required for unnumbered interfaces as discussed later in this guide.

For achieving step (3) alone, the FRRouting configuration provides another method: *redistribution*. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add ospf redistribute connected
```

Redistribution, however, unnecessarily loads the database with type-5 LSAs and should be limited to generating real external prefixes (for example, prefixes learned from BGP). In general, it is a good practice to generate local prefixes using `network` and/or `passive-interface` statements.



The OSPF setting `log-adjacency-changes` is enabled by default. It logs a single message when a peer transitions to/from FULL state.

## *Defining (Custom) OSPF Parameters on the Interfaces*

There are a number of custom parameters you can define for OSPF, including:

- Network type, such as point-to-point or broadcast.
- Timer tuning, like a hello interval.
- For unnumbered interfaces (see below (see page 631)), enable OSPF.

To see the list of options, type `net add interface swp1 ospf`, then press **Tab**.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 ospf network point-to-point
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 ospf hello-interval 5
```

The OSPF configuration is saved in `/etc/frr/ospfd.conf`.

## *OSPF SPF Timer Defaults*

OSPF uses the following three timers as an exponential backoff, to prevent consecutive SPFs from hammering the CPU:

- 0 ms from initial event until SPF runs
- 50 ms between consecutive SPF runs (the number doubles with each SPF, until it reaches the value of C)
- 5000 ms maximum between SPFs

## *Configure MD5 Authentication for OSPF Neighbors*

Simple text passwords have largely been deprecated in FRRouting, in favor of MD5 hash authentication.

To configure MD5 authentication on Cumulus Linux switches, you create a key and key ID for MD5 using NCLU:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface <interface> ospf message-digest-key <KEYID> md5 <KEY>
```

In the example command above, `KEYID` represents the key used to create the message digest. It's a value between 1-255 and must be consistent across all routers on a link.

`KEY` represents the actual message digest key, and is associated to the given `KEYID`. This value has an upper range of 16 characters; longer strings get truncated.



Existing MD5 authentication hashes can be removed with the `net del interface <interface> ospf message-digest-key <1-255> md5 <text>` command.

## Scaling Tips

Here are some tips for how to scale out OSPF.

### *Summarization*

By default, an ABR creates a summary (type-3) LSA for each route in an area and advertises it in adjacent areas. Prefix range configuration optimizes this behavior by creating and advertising one summary LSA for multiple routes.

To configure a range:

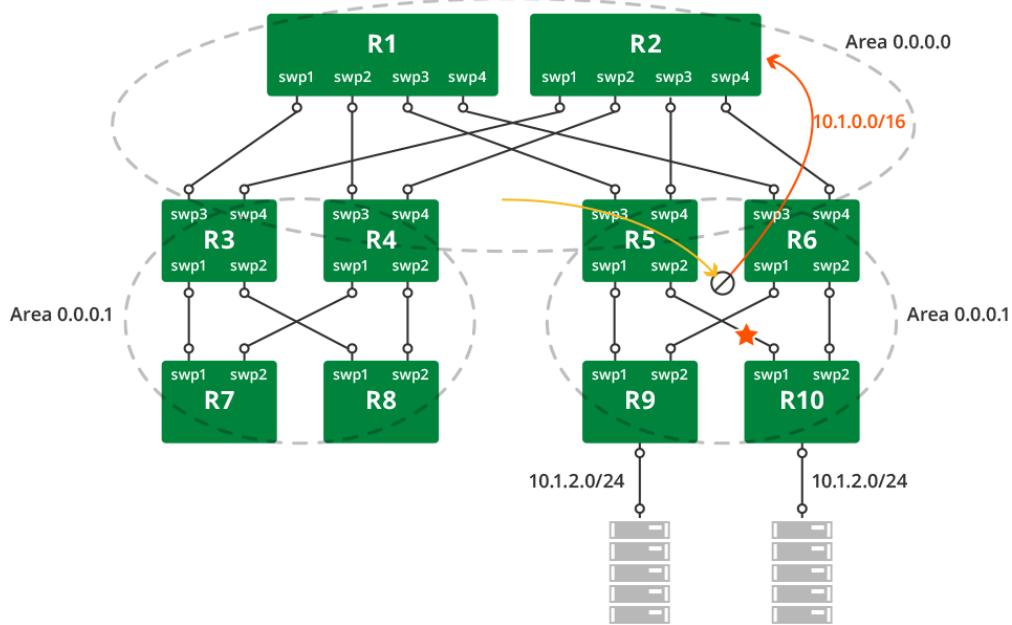
```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# router ospf
switch(config-router)# area 0.0.0.1 range 30.0.0.0/8
switch(config-router)# exit
switch(config)# exit
switch# write mem
switch# exit
cumulus@switch:~$
```



Summarize in the direction to the backbone. The backbone receives summarized routes and injects them to other areas already summarized.



Summarization can cause non-optimal forwarding of packets during failures. Here is an example scenario:



As shown in the diagram, the ABRs in the right non-zero area summarize the host prefixes as 10.1.0.0/16. When the link between R5 and R10 fails, R5 will send a worse metric for the summary route (metric for the summary route is the maximum of the metrics of intra-area routes that are covered by the summary route. Upon failure of the R5-R10 link, the metric for 10.1.2.0/24 goes higher at R5 as the path is R5-R9-R6-R10). As a result, other backbone routers shift traffic destined to 10.1.0.0/16 towards R6. This breaks ECMP and is an under-utilization of network capacity for traffic destined to 10.1.1.0/24.

## Stub Areas

Nodes in an area receive and store intra-area routing information and summarized information about other areas from the ABRs. In particular, a good summarization practice about inter-area routes through prefix range configuration helps scale the routers and keeps the network stable.

Then there are external routes. External routes are the routes redistributed into OSPF from another protocol. They have an AS-wide flooding scope. In many cases, external link states make up a large percentage of the LSDB.

*Stub areas* alleviate this scaling problem. A stub area is an area that does not receive external route advertisements.

To configure a stub area:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add ospf area 0.0.0.1 stub
```

Stub areas still receive information about networks that belong to other areas of the same OSPF domain. Especially, if summarization is not configured (or is not comprehensive), the information can be overwhelming for the nodes. *Totally stubby areas* address this issue. Routers in totally stubby areas keep in their LSDB information about routing within their area, plus the default route.

To configure a totally stubby area:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add ospf area 0.0.0.1 stub no-summary
```



Here is a brief tabular summary of the area type differences:

Type	Behavior
Normal non-zero area	LSA types 1, 2, 3, 4 area-scoped, type 5 externals, inter-area routes summarized
Stub area	LSA types 1, 2, 3, 4 area-scoped, No type 5 externals, inter-area routes summarized
Totally stubby area	LSA types 1, 2 area-scoped, default summary, No type 3, 4, 5 LSA types allowed

## *Running Multiple ospfd Instances*

You can configure OSPF to run multiple instances of its `ospfd` daemon. By doing so, FRRouting act as if were managing multiple routers on the same switch, one for each OSPF process.

You can run multiple `ospfd` instances with OSPFv2 only, not with OSPFv3. The functional equivalent for [BGP](#) ([see page 636](#)) is a VRF, which provides for multiple BGP router statements, although only one instance of the `bgpd` daemon is running on the switch. FRRouting supports up to 5 instances currently, and the instance ID must be within the range of 1 through 65535.

To configure multiple `ospfd` instances, do the following:

1. Edit `/etc/frr/daemons` and add `ospfd_instances="instance1 instance2 ..."` to the `ospfd` line, specifying an instance ID for each separate instance. For example, the following configuration has OSPF enabled with 2 `ospfd` instances, 11 and 22:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/frr/daemons
zebra=yes
bgpd=no
ospfd=yes ospfd_instances="11 22"
ospf6d=no
ripd=no
ripngd=no
isisd=no
```

2. After you modify the `daemons` file, restart FRRouting:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart frr.service
```

3. Configure each instance:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 ospf instance-id 11
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 ospf area 0.0.0.0
cumulus@switch:~$ net add ospf router-id 1.1.1.1
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp2 ospf instance-id 22
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp2 ospf area 0.0.0.0
```



```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add ospf router-id 1.1.1.1
```

4. Confirm the configuration:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show configuration ospf

hostname zebra
log file /var/log/frr/zebra.log
username cumulus nopassword

service integrated-vtysh-config

interface eth0
  ipv6 nd suppress-ra
  link-detect

interface lo
  link-detect

interface swp1
  ip ospf 11 area 0.0.0.0
  link-detect

interface swp2
  ip ospf 22 area 0.0.0.0
  link-detect

interface swp45
  link-detect

interface swp46
  link-detect

interface swp47
  link-detect

interface swp48
  link-detect

interface swp49
  link-detect

interface swp50
  link-detect

interface swp51
  link-detect

interface swp52
  link-detect
```



```
interface vagrant
    link-detect

router ospf 11
    ospf router-id 1.1.1.1

router ospf 22
    ospf router-id 1.1.1.1

ip forwarding
ipv6 forwarding

line vty

end
```

5. Confirm that all the OSPF instances are running:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ps -ax | grep ospf
21135 ? S<s 0:00 /usr/lib/frr/ospfd --daemon -A 127.0.0
.1 -n 11
21139 ? S<s 0:00 /usr/lib/frr/ospfd --daemon -A 127.0.0
.1 -n 22
21160 ? S<s 0:01 /usr/lib/frr/watchfrr -adz -r /usr
/sbin/servicebBfrrbBrestartbB%s -s /usr/sbin
/servicebBquaggabBstartbB%s -k /usr/sbin/servicebBfrrbBstopbB%s -
b bB -t 30 zebra ospfd-11 ospfd-22 pimd
22021 pts/3 S+ 0:00 grep ospf
```

## Caveats

You can use the `redistribute ospf` option in your `frr.conf` file works with this so you can route between the instances. Specify the instance ID for the other OSPF instance. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/frr/frr.conf
hostname zebra
log file /var/log/frr/zebra.log
username cumulus nopassword
!
service integrated-vtysh-config
!

...
!

router ospf 11
    ospf router-id 1.1.1.1
```



```
!
router ospf 22
 ospf router-id 1.1.1.1
 redistribute ospf 11
!
...
...
```



Don't specify a process ID unless you are using multi-instance OSPF.



If you disabled the [integrated \(see page 610\)](#) FRRouting configuration, you must create a separate `ospfd` configuration file for each instance. The `ospfd.conf` file must include the instance ID in the file name. Continuing with our example, you would create `/etc/frr/ospfd-11.conf` and `/etc/frr/ospfd-22.conf`.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/frr/ospfd-11.conf
!
hostname zebra
log file /var/log/frr/zebra.log
username cumulus nopassword
!
service integrated-vtysh-config
!
interface eth0
    ipv6 nd suppress-ra
    link-detect
!
interface lo
    link-detect
!
interface swp1
    ip ospf 11 area 0.0.0.0
    link-detect
!
interface swp2
    ip ospf 22 area 0.0.0.0
    link-detect
!
interface swp45
    link-detect
!
interface swp46
    link-detect
!
interface swp47
    link-detect
!
```



```
interface swp48
    link-detect
!
interface swp49
    link-detect
!
interface swp50
    link-detect
!
interface swp51
    link-detect
!
interface swp52
    link-detect
!
interface vagrant
    link-detect
!
router ospf 11
    ospf router-id 1.1.1.1
!
router ospf 22
    ospf router-id 1.1.1.1
!
ip forwarding
ipv6 forwarding
!
line vty
!
```

## Unnumbered Interfaces

Unnumbered interfaces are interfaces without unique IP addresses. In OSPFv2, configuring unnumbered interfaces reduces the links between routers into pure topological elements, which dramatically simplifies network configuration and reconfiguration. In addition, the routing database contains only the real networks, so the memory footprint is reduced and SPF is faster.



Unnumbered is usable for point-to-point interfaces only.



If there is a `network <network number>/<mask> area <area ID>` command present in the FRRouting configuration, the `ip ospf area <area ID>` command is rejected with the error “Please remove network command first.” This prevents you from configuring other areas on some of the unnumbered interfaces. You can use either the `network area` command or the `ospf area` command in the configuration, but not both.

 Unless the Ethernet media is intended to be used as a LAN with multiple connected routers, we recommend configuring the interface as point-to-point. It has the additional advantage of a simplified adjacency state machine; there is no need for DR/BDR election and *LSA reflection*. See [RFC5309](#) for a more detailed discussion.

To configure an unnumbered interface, take the IP address of another interface (called the *anchor*) and use that as the IP address of the unnumbered interface:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add loopback lo ip address 192.0.2.1/32
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 ip address 192.0.2.1/32
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp2 ip address 192.0.2.1/32
```

These commands create the following configuration in the /etc/network/interfaces file:

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
    address 192.0.2.1/32

auto swp1
iface swp1
    address 192.0.2.1/32

auto swp2
iface swp2
    address 192.0.2.1/32
```

To enable OSPF on an unnumbered interface:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 ospf area 0.0.0.1
```

## Applying a Route Map for Route Updates

To apply a [route map](#) to filter route updates from Zebra into the Linux kernel:

```
cumulus@switch:$ net add routing protocol ospf route-map <route-map-name>
```

## ECMP

During SPF computation for an area, if OSPF finds multiple paths with equal cost (metric), all those paths are used for forwarding. For example, in the reference topology diagram, R8 uses both R3 and R4 as next hops to reach a destination attached to R9.



## Topology Changes and OSPF Reconvergence

Topology changes usually occur due to one of four events:

1. Maintenance of a router node
2. Maintenance of a link
3. Failure of a router node
4. Failure of a link

For the maintenance events, operators typically raise the OSPF administrative weight of the link(s) to ensure that all traffic is diverted from the link or the node (referred to as *costing out*). The speed of reconvergence does not matter. Indeed, changing the OSPF cost causes LSAs to be reissued, but the links remain in service during the SPF computation process of all routers in the network.

For the failure events, traffic may be lost during reconvergence; that is, until SPF on all nodes computes an alternative path around the failed link or node to each of the destinations. The reconvergence depends on layer 1 failure detection capabilities and at the worst case *DeadInterval* OSPF timer.

### Example Configurations

Example configuration for event 1, using vtysh:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# router ospf
switch(config-router)# max-metric router-lsa administrative
switch(config-router)# exit
switch(config)# exit
switch# write mem
switch# exit
cumulus@switch:~$
```

Example configuration for event 2:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 ospf cost 65535
```

## Debugging OSPF

[OperState](#) lists all the commands to view the operational state of OSPF.

The three most important states while troubleshooting the protocol are:

1. Neighbors, with `net show ospf neighbor`. This is the starting point to debug neighbor states (also see `tcpdump` below).
2. Database, with `net show ospf database`. This is the starting point to verify that the LSDB is, in fact, synchronized across all routers in the network. For example, sweeping through the output of `show ip ospf database router` taken from all routers in an area will ensure if the topology graph building process is complete; that is, every node has seen all the other nodes in the area.



3. Routes, with `net show route ospf`. This is the outcome of SPF computation that gets downloaded to the forwarding table, and is the starting point to debug, for example, why an OSPF route is not being forwarded correctly.

[Debugging-OSPF](#) lists all of the OSPF debug options.

Using `zebra` under `vtysh`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh
switch# show [zebra]

IOBJECT := { events | status | timers }
OOBJECT := { interface | redistribute }
POBJECT := { all | dd | hello | ls-ack | ls-request | ls-update }
ZOBJECT := { all | events | kernel | packet | rib | }
```

Using `tcpdump` to capture OSPF packets:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo tcpdump -v -i swp1 ip proto ospf
```

## Related Information

- Bidirectional forwarding detection (see page 672) (BFD) and OSPF
- [en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Open\\_Shortest\\_Path\\_First](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Open_Shortest_Path_First)
- [frrouting.org/user-guide/OSPFv2.html#OSPFv2](https://frrouting.org/user-guide/OSPFv2.html#OSPFv2)
- Perlman, Radia (1999). Interconnections: Bridges, Routers, Switches, and Internetworking Protocols (2 ed.). Addison-Wesley.
- Moy, John T. OSPF: Anatomy of an Internet Routing Protocol. Addison-Wesley.

## Open Shortest Path First v3 - OSPFv3 - Protocol

OSPFv3 is a revised version of OSPFv2 to support the IPv6 address family. Refer to [Open Shortest Path First \(OSPF\) Protocol \(see page 620\)](#) for a discussion on the basic concepts, which remain the same between the two versions.

OSPFv3 has changed the formatting in some of the packets and LSAs either as a necessity to support IPv6 or to improve the protocol behavior based on OSPFv2 experience. Most notably, v3 defines a new LSA, called intra-area prefix LSA to separate out the advertisement of stub networks attached to a router from the router LSA. It is a clear separation of node topology from prefix reachability and lends itself well to an optimized SPF computation.



IETF has defined extensions to OSPFv3 to support multiple address families (that is, both IPv6 and IPv4). [frr \(see page 603\)](#) does not support it yet.



## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Configuring OSPFv3 (see page 635)
- Unnumbered Interfaces (see page 635)
- Debugging OSPF (see page 635)
- Related Information (see page 636)

## Configuring OSPFv3

Configuring OSPFv3 involves the following tasks:

1. Enabling the `zebra` and `ospf6` daemons, as described in [Configuring FRRouting \(see page 609\)](#) then start the FRRouting service:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable frr.service
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start frr.service
```

2. Enabling OSPF6 and map interfaces to areas:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add ospf6 router-id 0.0.0.1
cumulus@switch:~$ net add ospf6 interface swp1 area 0.0.0.0
cumulus@switch:~$ net add ospf6 interface swp2 area 0.0.0.1
```

3. Defining (custom) OSPF6 parameters on the interfaces, such as:

- a. Network type (such as point-to-point, broadcast)
- b. Timer tuning (for example, hello interval)

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 ospf6 network point-to-
point
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 ospf6 hello-interval 5
```

The OSPFv3 configuration is saved in `/etc/frr/ospf6d.conf`.

## Unnumbered Interfaces

Unlike OSPFv2, OSPFv3 intrinsically supports unnumbered interfaces. Forwarding to the next hop router is done entirely using IPv6 link local addresses. Therefore, you are not required to configure any global IPv6 address to interfaces between routers.

## Debugging OSPF

See [Debugging OSPF \(see page 633\)](#) for OSPFv2 for the troubleshooting discussion. The equivalent commands are:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show ospf6 neighbor [detail|drchoice]
cumulus@switch:~$ net show ospf6 database [adv-
router|detail|dump|internal|linkstate-id|self-originated]
cumulus@switch:~$ net show route ospf6
```

Another helpful command is `net show ospf6 spf tree`. It dumps the node topology as computed by SPF to help visualize the network view.

## Related Information

- Bidirectional forwarding detection (see page 672) (BFD) and OSPF
- [en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Open\\_Shortest\\_Path\\_First](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Open_Shortest_Path_First)
- [frrouting.org/user-guide/OSPFv3.html#OSPFv3](https://frrouting.org/user-guide/OSPFv3.html#OSPFv3)

## Border Gateway Protocol - BGP

BGP is the routing protocol that runs the Internet. It is an increasingly popular protocol for use in the data center as it lends itself well to the rich interconnections in a Clos topology. Specifically, BGP:

- Does not require routing state to be periodically refreshed, unlike OSPF.
- Is less chatty than its link-state siblings. For example, a link or node transition can result in a bestpath change, causing BGP to send updates.
- Is multi-protocol and extensible.
- Has many robust vendor implementations.
- Is very mature as a protocol and comes with many years of operational experience.

RFC 7938 provides further details of the use of BGP within the data center.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Autonomous System Number (ASN) (see page 637)
- eBGP and iBGP (see page 638)
- Route Reflectors (see page 638)
  - Configuring Clusters (see page 639)
- ECMP with BGP (see page 640)
  - Maximum Paths (see page 640)
  - BGP for Both IPv4 and IPv6 (see page 640)
- Configuring BGP (see page 640)
- Using BGP Unnumbered Interfaces (see page 641)
  - BGP and Extended Next-hop Encoding (see page 642)
  - Configuring BGP Unnumbered Interfaces (see page 642)
  - Managing Unnumbered Interfaces (see page 643)



- How traceroute Interacts with BGP Unnumbered Interfaces (see page 645)
- Advanced: Understanding How Next-hop Fields Are Set (see page 645)
- Limitations (see page 646)
- BGP add-path (see page 647)
  - BGP add-path RX (see page 647)
  - BGP add-path TX (see page 648)
- Fast Convergence Design Considerations (see page 650)
  - Specifying the Interface Name in the neighbor Command (see page 650)
- Using Peer Groups to Simplify Configuration (see page 651)
- Configuring BGP Dynamic Neighbors (see page 651)
- Configuring BGP Peering Relationships across Switches (see page 652)
- Configuring MD5-enabled BGP Neighbors (see page 654)
  - Manually Configuring an MD5-enabled BGP Neighbor (see page 655)
- Configuring eBGP Multihop (see page 657)
- Configuring BGP TTL Security (see page 658)
- Configuration Tips (see page 660)
  - BGP Advertisement Best Practices (see page 660)
  - Utilizing Multiple Routing Tables and Forwarding (see page 661)
  - Using BGP Community Lists (see page 661)
  - Additional Default Settings (see page 662)
  - Configuring BGP Neighbor maximum-prefixes (see page 662)
- Troubleshooting BGP (see page 662)
  - Debugging Tip: Logging Neighbor State Changes (see page 665)
  - Troubleshooting Link-local Addresses (see page 665)
- Enabling Read-only Mode (see page 668)
- Applying a Route Map for Route Updates (see page 668)
  - Filtering Routes from BGP into Zebra (see page 668)
  - Filtering Routes from Zebra into the Linux Kernel (see page 669)
- Protocol Tuning (see page 669)
  - Converging Quickly On Link Failures (see page 669)
  - Converging Quickly On Soft Failures (see page 669)
  - Reconnecting Quickly (see page 670)
  - Advertisement Interval (see page 670)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 671)
  - ttl-security Issue (see page 671)
  - BGP Dynamic Capabilities not Supported (see page 671)
  - Related Information (see page 671)

## Autonomous System Number (ASN)

One of the key concepts in BGP is an *autonomous system number* or ASN. An **autonomous system** is defined as a set of routers under a common administration. Because BGP was originally designed to peer between independently managed enterprises and/or service providers, each such enterprise is treated as an autonomous system, responsible for a set of network addresses. Each such autonomous system is given a unique number called its ASN. ASNs are handed out by a central authority (ICANN). However, ASNs between 64512 and 65535 are reserved for private use. Using BGP within the data center relies on either using this number space or using the single ASN you own.

The ASN is central to how BGP builds a forwarding topology. A BGP route advertisement carries with it not only the originator's ASN, but also the list of ASNs that this route advertisement has passed through. When forwarding a route advertisement, a BGP speaker adds itself to this list. This list of ASNs is called the *AS path*. BGP uses the AS path to detect and avoid loops.

ASNs were originally 16-bit numbers, but were later modified to be 32-bit. FRRouting supports both 16-bit and 32-bit ASNs, but most implementations still run with 16-bit ASNs.

## eBGP and iBGP

When BGP is used to peer between autonomous systems, the peering is referred to as *external BGP* or eBGP. When BGP is used within an autonomous system, the peering used is referred to as *internal BGP* or iBGP. eBGP peers have different ASNs while iBGP peers have the same ASN.

The heart of the protocol is the same when used as eBGP or iBGP, however, there is a key difference in the protocol behavior between use as eBGP and iBGP: an iBGP speaker does not forward routing information learned from one iBGP peer to another iBGP peer to prevent loops. eBGP prevents loops using the *AS\_Path* attribute.

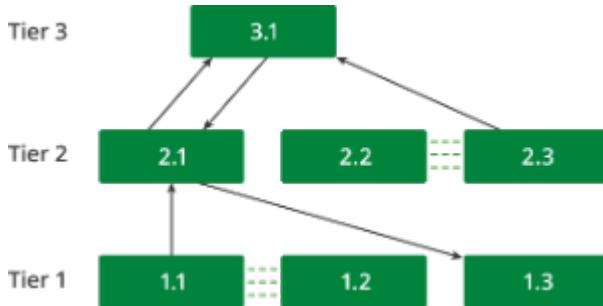
All iBGP speakers need to be peered with each other in a full mesh. In a large network, this requirement can quickly become unscalable. The most popular method to scale iBGP networks is to introduce a *route reflector*.

## Route Reflectors

Route reflectors are quite easy to understand in a Clos topology. In a two-tier Clos network, the leaf (or tier 1) switches are the only ones connected to end stations. Subsequently, this means that the spines themselves do not have any routes to announce; they are merely **reflecting** the routes announced by one leaf to the other leaves. Therefore, the spine switches function as route reflectors while the leaf switches serve as route reflector clients.

In a three-tier network, the tier 2 nodes (or mid-tier spines) act as both route reflector servers and route reflector clients. They act as route reflectors because they announce the routes learned from the tier 1 nodes to other tier 1 nodes and to tier 3 nodes. They also act as route reflector clients to the tier 3 nodes, receiving routes learned from other tier 2 nodes. Tier 3 nodes act only as route reflectors.

In the following illustration, tier 2 node 2.1 is acting as a route reflector server, announcing the routes between tier 1 nodes 1.1 and 1.2 to tier 1 node 1.3. It is also a route reflector client, learning the routes between tier 2 nodes 2.2 and 2.3 from the tier 3 node, 3.1.



## Configuring route-reflector-client Requires Specific Order

When configuring a route to be a route reflector client, you must specify the FRRouting configuration in a specific order; otherwise, the router will not be a route reflector client.

You must run the `net add bgp neighbor <IPv4/IPv6> route-reflector-client` command after the `net add bgp neighbor <IPv4/IPv6> activate` command; otherwise, the `route-reflector-client` command is ignored. For example:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp ipv4 unicast neighbor 14.0.0.9
activate
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor 14.0.0.9 next-hop-self
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor 14.0.0.9 route-
reflector-client >>> Must be after activate
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor 2001:ded:beef:2::1
remote-as 65000
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp ipv6 unicast redistribute
connected
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp maximum-paths ibgp 4
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor 2001:ded:beef:2::1
activate
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor 2001:ded:beef:2::1 next-
hop-self
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor 2001:ded:beef:2::1
route-reflector-client >>> Must be after activate
    
```

## Configuring Clusters

A cluster consists of route reflectors (RRs) and their clients and is used in iBGP environments where multiple sets of route reflectors and their clients are configured. Configuring a unique ID per cluster (on the route reflector server and clients) prevents looping as a route reflector does not accept routes from another that has the same cluster ID. Additionally, because all route reflectors in the cluster recognize updates from peers in the same cluster, they do not install routes from a route reflector in the same cluster; this reduces the number of updates that need to be stored in BGP routing tables.

To configure a cluster ID on a route reflector, run the `net add bgp cluster-id (<ipv4>|<1-4294967295>)` command. You can enter the cluster ID as an IP address or as a 32-bit quantity.

The following example configures a cluster ID on a route reflector in IP address format:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp cluster-id 14.0.0.9
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

The following example configures a cluster ID on a route reflector as a 32-bit quantity:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp cluster-id 321
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

## ECMP with BGP

If a BGP node hears a prefix **p** from multiple peers, it has all the information necessary to program the routing table to forward traffic for that prefix **p** through all of these peers; BGP supports equal-cost multipathing (ECMP).

To perform ECMP in BGP, you may need to configure `net add bgp bestpath as-path multipath-relax` (if you are using eBGP).

## Maximum Paths

In Cumulus Linux, the BGP `maximum-paths` setting is enabled by default, so multiple routes are already installed. The default setting is 64 paths.

## BGP for Both IPv4 and IPv6

Unlike OSPF, which has separate versions of the protocol to announce IPv4 and IPv6 routes, BGP is a multi-protocol routing engine, capable of announcing both IPv4 and IPv6 prefixes. It supports announcing IPv4 prefixes over an IPv4 session and IPv6 prefixes over an IPv6 session. It also supports announcing prefixes of both these address families over a single IPv4 session or over a single IPv6 session.

## Configuring BGP

A basic BGP configuration looks like the following. However, the rest of this chapter discusses how to configure various other features, from unnumbered interfaces to route maps.

1. Enable the BGP and Zebra daemons, `zebra` and `bgpd`, then enable the FRRouting service and start it, as described in [Configuring FRRouting \(see page 609\)](#).
2. Identify the BGP node by assigning an ASN and `router-id`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp autonomous-system 65000
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp router-id 10.0.0.1
```

3. Specify where to disseminate routing information:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor 10.0.0.2 remote-as  
external
```

If it is an iBGP session, the `remote-as` is the same as the local AS:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor 10.0.0.2 remote-as  
internal
```

Specifying the IP address of the peer, allows BGP to set up a TCP socket with this peer, but it doesn't distribute any prefixes to it, unless it is explicitly told that it must with the `activate` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp ipv4 unicast neighbor 10.0.0.2  
activate  
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp ipv6 unicast neighbor 2001:db8:  
0002::0a00:0002 activate
```

As you can see, `activate` has to be specified for each address family that is being announced by the BGP session.

4. Specify some properties of the BGP session:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor 10.0.0.2 next-hop-self
```

If this is a route-reflector client, it can be specified as follows:

```
cumulus@switchRR:~$ net add bgp neighbor 10.0.0.1 route-  
reflector-client
```



It is node `switchRR`, the route reflector, on which the peer is specified as a client.

5. Specify what prefixes to originate:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp ipv4 unicast network 192.0.2.0/24  
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp ipv4 unicast network 203.0.113.1/24  
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending  
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

## Using BGP Unnumbered Interfaces

Unnumbered interfaces are interfaces without unique IP addresses. In BGP, you configure unnumbered interfaces using *extended next-hop encoding* (ENHE), which is defined by [RFC 5549](#). BGP unnumbered interfaces provide a means of advertising an IPv4 route with an IPv6 next-hop. Prior to RFC 5549, an IPv4 route could be advertised only with an IPv4 next-hop.

BGP unnumbered interfaces are particularly useful in deployments where IPv4 prefixes are advertised through BGP over a section without any IPv4 address configuration on links. As a result, the routing entries are also IPv4 for destination lookup and have IPv6 next-hops for forwarding purposes.

## *BGP and Extended Next-hop Encoding*

When enabled and active, BGP makes use of the available IPv6 next-hops for advertising any IPv4 prefixes. BGP learns the prefixes, calculates the routes and installs them in IPv4 AFI to IPv6 AFI format. However, ENHE in Cumulus Linux does not install routes into the kernel in IPv4 prefix to IPv6 next-hop format. For link-local peerings enabled by dynamically learning the other end's link-local address using IPv6 neighbor discovery router advertisements, an IPv6 next-hop is converted into an IPv4 link-local address and a static neighbor entry is installed for this IPv4 link-local address with the MAC address derived from the link-local address of the other end.



It is assumed that the IPv6 implementation on the peering device will use the MAC address as the interface ID when assigning the IPv6 link-local address, as suggested by RFC 4291.

## *Configuring BGP Unnumbered Interfaces*

Configuring a BGP unnumbered interface requires enabling IPv6 neighbor discovery router advertisements. The `interval` you specify is measured in seconds and defaults to 10 seconds. Extended next-hop encoding is sent only for the link-local address peerings:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp autonomous-system 65020
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp router-id 10.0.0.21
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp bestpath as-path multipath-relax
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp bestpath compare-routerid
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor fabric peer-group
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor fabric remote-as external
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor fabric description Internal
Fabric Network
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor fabric capability extended-
nexthop
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor swp1 interface peer-group
fabric
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor swp2 interface peer-group
fabric
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor swp3 interface peer-group
fabric
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor swp4 interface peer-group
fabric
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor swp29 interface peer-group
fabric
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor swp30 interface peer-group
fabric
```

These commands create the following configuration in the `/etc/frr/frr.conf` file:



```
router bgp 65020
bgp router-id 10.0.0.21
bgp bestpath as-path multipath-relax
bgp bestpath compare-routerid
neighbor fabric peer-group
neighbor fabric remote-as external
neighbor fabric description Internal Fabric Network
neighbor fabric capability extended-nexthop
neighbor swp1 interface peer-group fabric
neighbor swp2 interface peer-group fabric
neighbor swp3 interface peer-group fabric
neighbor swp4 interface peer-group fabric
neighbor swp29 interface peer-group fabric
neighbor swp30 interface peer-group fabric
!
```

Notice above, for an unnumbered configuration, you can use a single command to configure a neighbor and attach it to a [peer group \(see page 651\)](#) (making sure to substitute for the interface and peer group below):

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor <swpX> interface peer-group
<group name>
```

## *Managing Unnumbered Interfaces*

All the relevant BGP commands are now capable of showing IPv6 next-hops and/or the interface name for any IPv4 prefix:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show bgp

show bgp ipv4 unicast
=====
BGP table version is 6, local router ID is 10.0.0.11
Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, > best, =
multipath,
          i internal, r RIB-failure, S Stale, R Removed
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete
      Network          Next Hop            Metric LocPrf Weight Path
*> 10.0.0.11/32      0.0.0.0                  0        32768 ?
*> 10.0.0.12/32      swp51                   0       65020 65012 ?
*=                  swp52                   0       65020 65012 ?
*> 10.0.0.21/32      swp51                   0       65020 ?
*> 10.0.0.22/32      swp52                   0       65020 ?
*> 172.16.1.0/24     0.0.0.0                  0        32768 i
*> 172.16.2.0/24     swp51                   0       65020 65012 i
*=                  swp52                   0       65020 65012 i
Total number of prefixes 6
```



```
show bgp ipv6 unicast
=====
No BGP network exists
```

FRRouting RIB commands are also modified:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show route
RIB entry for route
=====
Codes: K - kernel route, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP,
       O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP, P - PIM, T - Table,
       > - selected route, * - FIB route
K>* 0.0.0.0/0 via 192.168.0.254, eth0
C>* 10.0.0.11/32 is directly connected, lo
B>* 10.0.0.12/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5c, swp51, 1d01h04m
   *
   via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:2b, swp52, 1d01h04m
B>* 10.0.0.21/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5c, swp51, 1d01h04m
B>* 10.0.0.22/32 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:2b, swp52, 1d01h04m
C>* 172.16.1.0/24 is directly connected, br0
B>* 172.16.2.0/24 [20/0] via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5c, swp51, 1d01h04m
   *
   via fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:2b, swp52, 1d01h04m
C>* 192.168.0.0/24 is directly connected, eth0
```

The following commands show how the IPv4 link-local address 169.254.0.1 is used to install the route and static neighbor entry to facilitate proper forwarding without having to install an IPv4 prefix with IPv6 next-hop in the kernel:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show route 10.0.0.12
RIB entry for 10.0.0.12
=====
Routing entry for 10.0.0.12/32
  Known via "bgp", distance 20, metric 0, best
  Last update 1d01h06m ago
  *
  * fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5c, via swp51
  * fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:2b, via swp52

FIB entry for 10.0.0.12
=====
10.0.0.12 proto zebra metric 20
  nexthop via 169.254.0.1 dev swp51 weight 1 onlink
  nexthop via 169.254.0.1 dev swp52 weight 1 onlink
```

You can use this `iproute2` command to display more neighbor information:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip neighbor
192.168.0.254 dev eth0 lladdr 44:38:39:00:00:5f REACHABLE
169.254.0.1 dev swp52 lladdr 44:38:39:00:00:2b PERMANENT
169.254.0.1 dev swp51 lladdr 44:38:39:00:00:5c PERMANENT
```

```
fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:2b dev swp52 lladdr 44:38:39:00:00:2b router
REACHABLE
fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5c dev swp51 lladdr 44:38:39:00:00:5c router
REACHABLE
```

## *How traceroute Interacts with BGP Unnumbered Interfaces*

Every router or end host must have an IPv4 address to complete a traceroute of IPv4 addresses. In this case, the IPv4 address used is that of the loopback device.

Even if ENHE is not used in the data center, link addresses are not typically advertised. This is because:

- Link addresses take up valuable FIB resources. In a large Clos environment, the number of such addresses can be quite large.
- Link addresses expose an additional attack vector for intruders to use to either break in or engage in DDOS attacks.

Assigning an IP address to the loopback device is essential.

## *Advanced: Understanding How Next-hop Fields Are Set*

This section describes how the IPv6 next-hops are set in the MP\_REACH\_NLRI ([multiprotocol reachable NLRI](#)) initiated by the system, which applies whether IPv6 prefixes or IPv4 prefixes are exchanged with ENHE. There are two main aspects to determine — how many IPv6 next-hops are included in the MP\_REACH\_NLRI (since the RFC allows either one or two next-hops) and the values of the next-hop(s). This section also describes how a received MP\_REACH\_NLRI is handled as far as processing IPv6 next-hops.

- Whether peering to a global IPv6 address or link-local IPv6 address, the determination whether to send one or two next-hops is as follows:
  1. If reflecting the route, two next-hops are sent only if the peer has `nexthop-local unchanged` configured and the attribute of the received route has an IPv6 link-local next-hop; otherwise, only one next-hop is sent.
  2. Otherwise (if it is not reflecting the route), two next-hops are sent if explicitly configured (`nexthop-local unchanged`) or the peer is directly connected (that is, either peering is on link-local address or the global IPv4 or IPv6 address is *directly connected*) and the route is either a local/self-originated route or the peer is an eBGP peer.
  3. In all other cases, only one next-hop gets sent, unless an outbound route map adds another next-hop.
- `route-map` can impose two next-hops in scenarios where Cumulus Linux only sends one next-hop — by specifying `set ipv6 nexthop link-local`.
- For all routes to eBGP peers and self-originated routes to iBGP peers, the global next-hop (first value) is the peering address of the local system. If the peering is on the link-local address, this is the global IPv6 address on the peering interface, if present; otherwise, it is the link-local IPv6 address on the peering interface.
- For other routes to iBGP peers (eBGP to iBGP or reflected), the global next-hop will be the global next-hop in the received attribute.



If this address were a link-local IPv6 address, it would get reset so that the link-local IPv6 address of the eBGP peer is not passed along to an iBGP peer, which most likely may be on a different link.



- `route-map` and/or the peer configuration can change the above behavior. For example, `route-map` can set the global IPv6 next-hop or the peer configuration can set it to `self` — which is relevant for *iBGP* peers. The route map or peer configuration can also set the next-hop to unchanged, which ensures the source IPv6 global next-hop is passed around — which is relevant for *eBGP* peers.
- Whenever two next-hops are being sent, the link-local next-hop (the second value of the two) is the link-local IPv6 address on the peering interface unless it is due to `nh-local-unchanged` or `route-map` has set the link-local next-hop.
- Network administrators cannot set **martian values** for IPv6 next-hops in `route-map`. Also, global and link-local next-hops are validated to ensure they match the respective address types.
- In a received update, a martian check is imposed for the IPv6 global next-hop. If the check fails, it gets treated as an implicit withdraw.
- If two next-hops are received in an update and the second next-hop is not a link-local address, it gets ignored and the update is treated as if only one next-hop was received.
- Whenever two next-hops are received in an update, the second next-hop is used to install the route into `zebra`. As per the previous point, it is already assured that this is a link-local IPv6 address. Currently, this is assumed to be reachable and is not registered with NHT.
- When `route-map` specifies the next-hop as `peer-address`, the global IPv6 next-hop as well as the link-local IPv6 next-hop (if it's being sent) is set to the *peering address*. If the peering is on a link-local address, the former could be the link-local address on the peering interface, unless there is a global IPv6 address present on this interface.

The above rules imply that there are scenarios where a generated update has two IPv6 next-hops, and both of them are the IPv6 link-local address of the peering interface on the local system. If you are peering with a switch or router that is not running Cumulus Linux and expects the first next-hop to be a global IPv6 address, a route map can be used on the sender to specify a global IPv6 address. This conforms with the recommendations in the Internet draft [draft-kato-bgp-ipv6-link-local-00.txt](#), "BGP4+ Peering Using IPv6 Link-local Address".

## Limitations

- Interface-based peering with separate IPv4 and IPv6 sessions is not supported.
- ENHE is sent for IPv6 link-local peerings only.
- If an IPv4 /30 or /31 IP address is assigned to the interface, IPv4 peering is used over IPv6 link-local peering.
- If the default router lifetime in the generated IPv6 route advertisements (RA) is set to 0, the receiving FRRouting instance drops the RA if it is on a Cumulus Linux **2.5.z** switch. To work around this issue, either:
  - Explicitly configure the switch to advertise a router lifetime of 0, unless a value is specifically set by the operator — with the assumption that the host is running Cumulus Linux 3.y.z version of FRRouting. When hosts see an IPv6 RA with a router lifetime of 0, they do not make that router a default router.
  - Use the `sysctl` on the host — `net.ipv6.conf.all.accept_ra_defrtr`. However, this requires applying this setting on all hosts, which might mean many hosts, especially if FRRouting is run on the hosts.

## BGP add-path

### *BGP add-path RX*

*BGP add-path RX* allows BGP to receive multiple paths for the same prefix. A path identifier is used so that additional paths do not override previously advertised paths. No additional configuration is required for BGP add-path RX.



BGP advertises the add-path RX capability by default. Add-Path TX requires an administrator to enable it. Enabling TX resets the session.

To view the existing capabilities, run `net show bgp neighbor`. The existing capabilities are listed in the subsection *Add Path*, below *Neighbor capabilities*:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show bgp neighbor
BGP neighbor on swp51: fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5c, remote AS 65020,
local AS 65011, external link
Hostname: spine01
Member of peer-group fabric for session parameters
  BGP version 4, remote router ID 10.0.0.21
  BGP state = Established, up for 1d01h15m
  Last read 00:00:00, Last write 1d01h15m
  Hold time is 3, keepalive interval is 1 seconds
  Configured hold time is 3, keepalive interval is 1 seconds
  Neighbor capabilities:
    4 Byte AS: advertised and received
    AddPath:
      IPv4 Unicast: RX advertised IPv4 Unicast and received
      Extended nexthop: advertised and received
      Address families by peer:
        IPv4 Unicast
        Route refresh: advertised and received(old & new)
        Address family IPv4 Unicast: advertised and received
        Hostname Capability: advertised and received
        Graceful Restart Capabilty: advertised and received
        Remote Restart timer is 120 seconds
      Address families by peer:
        none
...
```

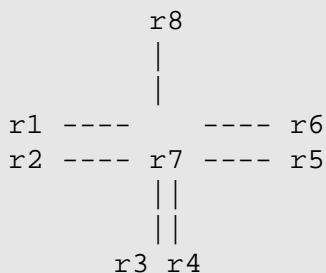
The example output above shows that additional BGP paths can be sent and received (TX and RX are advertised). It also shows that the BGP neighbor, fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5c, supports both.

To view the current additional paths, run `net show bgp <network>`. The example output shows an additional path that has been added by the TX node for receiving. Each path has a unique AddPath ID.

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show bgp 10.0.0.12
BGP routing table entry for 10.0.0.12/32
Paths: (2 available, best #1, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Advertised to non peer-group peers:
    spine01(swp51) spine02(swp52)
  65020 65012
    fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5c from spine01(swp51) (10.0.0.21)
      (fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5c) (used)
        Origin incomplete, localpref 100, valid, external, multipath,
        bestpath-from-AS 65020, best
        AddPath ID: RX 0, TX 6
        Last update: Wed Nov 16 22:47:00 2016
  65020 65012
    fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:2b from spine02(swp52) (10.0.0.22)
      (fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:2b) (used)
        Origin incomplete, localpref 100, valid, external, multipath
        AddPath ID: RX 0, TX 3
        Last update: Wed Nov 16 22:47:00 2016
```

## BGP add-path TX

AddPath TX allows BGP to advertise more than just the bestpath for a prefix. Consider the following topology:



In this topology:

- r1 and r2 are in AS 100
- r3 and r4 are in AS 300
- r5 and r6 are in AS 500
- r7 is in AS 700
- r8 is in AS 800
- r7 learns 1.1.1.1/32 from r1, r2, r3, r4, r5, and r6. Among these r7 picks the path from r1 as the bestpath for 1.1.1.1/32

The example below configures the r7 session to advertise the bestpath learned from each AS. In this case, this means a path from AS 100, a path from AS 300, and a path from AS 500. The `net show bgp 1.1.1.1 /32` from r7 has "bestpath-from-AS 100" so the user can see what the bestpath is from each AS:

```
cumulus@r7:~$ net add bgp autonomous-system 700
```



```
cumulus@r7:~$ net add bgp neighbor 192.0.2.2 addpath-tx-bestpath-per-  
AS
```

The output below shows the result on r8:

```
cumulus@r8:~$ net show bgp 1.1.1.1/32  
BGP routing table entry for 1.1.1.1/32  
Paths: (3 available, best #3, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)  
    Advertised to non peer-group peers:  
        r7(10.7.8.1)  
        700 100  
            10.7.8.1 from r7(10.7.8.1) (10.0.0.7)  
                Origin IGP, localpref 100, valid, external  
                Community: 1:1  
                AddPath ID: RX 2, TX 4  
                Last update: Thu Jun 2 00:57:14 2016  
  
        700 300  
            10.7.8.1 from r7(10.7.8.1) (10.0.0.7)  
                Origin IGP, localpref 100, valid, external  
                Community: 3:3  
                AddPath ID: RX 4, TX 3  
                Last update: Thu Jun 2 00:57:14 2016  
  
        700 500  
            10.7.8.1 from r7(10.7.8.1) (10.0.0.7)  
                Origin IGP, localpref 100, valid, external, bestpath-from-AS  
    700, best  
        Community: 5:5  
        AddPath ID: RX 6, TX 2  
        Last update: Thu Jun 2 00:57:14 2016
```

The example below shows the results if r7 is configured to advertise all paths to r8:

```
cumulus@r7:~$ net add bgp autonomous-system 700  
cumulus@r7:~$ net add bgp neighbor 192.0.2.2 addpath-tx-all-paths
```

The output below shows the result on r8:

```
cumulus@r8:~$ net show bgp 1.1.1.1/32  
BGP routing table entry for 1.1.1.1/32  
Paths: (3 available, best #3, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)  
    Advertised to non peer-group peers:  
        r7(10.7.8.1)  
        700 100  
            10.7.8.1 from r7(10.7.8.1) (10.0.0.7)  
                Origin IGP, localpref 100, valid, external  
                Community: 1:1
```

```

AddPath ID: RX 2, TX 4
Last update: Thu Jun 2 00:57:14 2016

700 300
 10.7.8.1 from r7(10.7.8.1) (10.0.0.7)
    Origin IGP, localpref 100, valid, external
    Community: 3:3
    AddPath ID: RX 4, TX 3
    Last update: Thu Jun 2 00:57:14 2016

700 500
 10.7.8.1 from r7(10.7.8.1) (10.0.0.7)
    Origin IGP, localpref 100, valid, external, bestpath-from-AS
700, best
    Community: 5:5
    AddPath ID: RX 6, TX 2
    Last update: Thu Jun 2 00:57:14 2016

```

## Fast Convergence Design Considerations

Without getting into the why (see the IETF draft cited in Useful Links below that talks about BGP use within the data center), we strongly recommend the following use of addresses in the design of a BGP-based data center network:

- Use of interface addresses: Set up BGP sessions only using interface-scoped addresses. This allows BGP to react quickly to link failures.
- Use of next-hop-self: Every BGP node says that it knows how to forward traffic to the prefixes it is announcing. This reduces the requirement to announce interface-specific addresses and thereby reduces the size of the forwarding table.

### *Specifying the Interface Name in the neighbor Command*

When you are configuring BGP for the neighbors of a given interface, you can specify the interface name instead of its IP address. All the other `neighbor` command options remain the same.

This is equivalent to BGP peering to the link-local IPv6 address of the neighbor on the given interface. The link-local address is learned via IPv6 neighbor discovery router advertisements.

Consider the following example configuration in the `/etc/frr/frr.conf` file:

```

router bgp 65000
  bgp router-id 10.0.0.1
  neighbor swp1 interface
  neighbor swp1 remote-as internal
  neighbor swp1 next-hop-self
!
  address-family ipv6
  neighbor swp1 activate
  exit-address-family

```

You create the above configuration with the following NCLU commands:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp autonomous-system 65000
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp router-id 10.0.0.1
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor swp1 interface
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor swp1 remote-as internal
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor swp1 next-hop-self
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp ipv6 unicast neighbor swp1 activate
```



By default, Cumulus Linux sends IPv6 neighbor discovery router advertisements. Cumulus Networks recommends you adjust the interval of the router advertisement to a shorter value (`net add interface <interface> ipv6 nd ra-interval <interval>`) to address scenarios when nodes come up and miss router advertisement processing to relay the neighbor's link-local address to BGP. The `interval` is measured in seconds and defaults to 10 seconds.

## Using Peer Groups to Simplify Configuration

When there are many peers to connect to, the amount of redundant configuration becomes overwhelming. For example, repeating the `activate` and `next-hop-self` commands for even 60 neighbors makes for a very long configuration file. Using `peer-group` addresses this problem.

Instead of specifying properties of each individual peer, FRRouting allows for defining one or more peer groups and associating all the attributes common to that peer session to a peer group. A peer needs to be attached to a peer group only once, when it then inherits all address families activated for that peer group.

After doing this, the only task is to associate an IP address with a peer group. Here is an example of defining and using peer groups:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor tier-2 peer-group
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp ipv4 unicast
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor tier-2 activate
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor tier-2 next-hop-self
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor 10.0.0.2 peer-group tier-2
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor 192.0.2.2 peer-group tier-2
```



BGP peer-group restrictions have been replaced with update-groups, which dynamically examine all peers and group them if they have the same outbound policy.

## Configuring BGP Dynamic Neighbors

The *BGP dynamic neighbor* feature provides BGP peering to a group of remote neighbors within a specified range of IPv4 or IPv6 addresses for a BGP peer group. You can configure each range as a subnet IP address.

You configure dynamic neighbors using the `bgp listen range <IP address> peer-group <GROUP>` command. After you configure the dynamic neighbors, a BGP speaker can listen for and form peer relationships with any neighbor in the IP address range and mapped to a peer group.



```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp autonomous-system 65001
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp listen range 10.1.1.0/24 peer-group
SPINE
```

You can limit the number of dynamic peers by specifying that limit in the `bgp listen limit` command (the default value is 100):

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp listen limit 5
```

Collectively, a sample configuration for IPv4 looks like this:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp autonomous-system 65001
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor SPINE peer-group
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor SPINE remote-as 65000
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp listen limit 5
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp listen range 10.1.1.0/24 peer-group
SPINE
```

These commands produce an IPv4 configuration that looks like this:

```
router bgp 65001
neighbor SPINE peer-group
neighbor SPINE remote-as 65000
bgp listen limit 5
bgp listen range 10.1.1.0/24 peer-group SPINE
```

## Configuring BGP Peering Relationships across Switches

A BGP peering relationship is typically initiated with the `neighbor <IP address> remote-as [internal|external]` command.

Specifying *internal* signifies an iBGP peering; that is, the neighbor only creates or accepts a connection with the specified neighbor if the remote peer AS number matches this BGP AS number.

Specifying *external* signifies an eBGP peering; that is, the neighbor will only create a connection with the neighbor if the remote peer AS number does **not** match this BGP AS number.

You can make this distinction using the `neighbor` command or the `peer-group` command.

In general, use the following syntax with the `neighbor` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor [<IP address>|<BGP
peer>|<interface>] remote-as [<value>|internal|external]
```

Some example configurations follow.



To connect to **the same AS** using the `neighbor` command, modify your configuration similar to the following:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp autonomous-system 500
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor 192.168.1.2 remote-as
internal
```

These commands create the following configuration snippet:

```
router bgp 500
neighbor 192.168.1.2 remote-as internal
```

To connect to a **different AS** using the `neighbor` command, modify your configuration similar to the following:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp autonomous-system 500
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor 192.168.1.2 remote-as
external
```

These commands create the following configuration snippet:

```
router bgp 500
neighbor 192.168.1.2 remote-as external
```

To connect to **the same AS** using the `peer-group` command, modify your configuration similar to the following:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp autonomous-system 500
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor swp1 interface
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor IBGP peer-group
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor IBGP remote-as internal
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor swp1 interface peer-group
IBGP
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor 192.0.2.3 peer-group IBGP
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor 192.0.2.4 peer-group IBGP
```

These commands create the following configuration snippet:



```
router bgp 500
neighbor swp1 interface
neighbor IBGP peer-group
neighbor IBGP remote-as internal
neighbor swp1 peer-group IBGP
neighbor 192.0.2.3 peer-group IBGP
neighbor 192.0.2.4 peer-group IBGP
```

To connect to a **different AS** using the `peer-group` command, modify your configuration similar to the following:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp autonomous-system 500
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor swp2 interface
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor EBGP peer-group
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor EBGP remote-as external
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor 192.0.2.2 peer-group EBGP
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor swp2 interface peer-group
EBGP
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor 192.0.2.4 peer-group EBGP
```

These commands create the following configuration snippet:

```
router bgp 500
neighbor swp2 interface
neighbor EBGP peer-group
neighbor EBGP remote-as external
neighbor 192.0.2.2 peer-group EBGP
neighbor swp2 peer-group EBGP
neighbor 192.0.2.4 peer-group EBGP
```

## Configuring MD5-enabled BGP Neighbors

The following sections outline how to configure an MD5-enabled BGP neighbor. Each process assumes that FRRouting is used as the routing platform, and consists of two switches (AS 65011 and AS 65020), connected by the link 10.0.0.100/30, with the following configurations:

**switch1**

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show bgp summary
show bgp ipv4 unicast summary
=====
BGP router identifier 10.0.0.11, local AS number 65011 vrf-id 0
BGP table version 6
```

```
RIB entries 11, using 1320 bytes of memory
Peers 2, using 36 KiB of memory
Peer groups 1, using 56 bytes of memory
Neighbor          V           AS MsgRcvd MsgSent      TblVer  InQ OutQ Up
/Down  State/PfxRcd
spine01(swp51)   4 65020     93587    93587      0       0       0
1d02h00m         3
spine02(swp52)   4 65020     93587    93587      0       0       0
1d02h00m         3
Total number of neighbors 2

show bgp ipv6 unicast summary
=====
No IPv6 neighbor is configured
```

### **switch2**

```
cumulus@spine01:~$ net show bgp summary
show bgp ipv4 unicast summary
=====
BGP router identifier 10.0.0.21, local AS number 65020 vrf-id 0
BGP table version 5
RIB entries 9, using 1080 bytes of memory
Peers 4, using 73 KiB of memory
Peer groups 1, using 56 bytes of memory
Neighbor          V           AS MsgRcvd MsgSent      TblVer  InQ OutQ Up
/Down  State/PfxRcd
leaf01(swp1)   4 65011     782      782      0       0       0 00:12:54
2
leaf02(swp2)   4 65012     781      781      0       0       0 00:12:53
2
swp3            4 0          0        0        0       0       0 never
Idle
swp4            4 0          0        0        0       0       0 never
Idle
Total number of neighbors 4

show bgp ipv6 unicast summary
=====
No IPv6 neighbor is configured
```

## *Manually Configuring an MD5-enabled BGP Neighbor*

1. SSH into leaf01.
2. Configure the password for the neighbor:



```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add bgp neighbor 10.0.0.102 password  
mypassword
```

3. Confirm the configuration has been implemented with the `net show bgp summary` command:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show bgp summary  
show bgp ipv4 unicast summary  
=====  
BGP router identifier 10.0.0.11, local AS number 65011 vrf-id 0  
BGP table version 18  
RIB entries 11, using 1320 bytes of memory  
Peers 2, using 36 KiB of memory  
Peer groups 1, using 56 bytes of memory  
Neighbor      V          AS MsgRcvd MsgSent     TblVer  InQ OutQ  
Up/Down  State/PfxRcd  
spine01(swp51)  4 65020    96144   96146        0       0       0 00:30:  
29            3  
spine02(swp52)  4 65020    96209   96217        0       0       0  
1d02h44m      3  
Total number of neighbors 2  
  
show bgp ipv6 unicast summary  
=====  
No IPv6 neighbor is configured
```

4. SSH into spine01.

5. Configure the password for the neighbor:

```
cumulus@spine01:~$ net add bgp neighbor 10.0.0.101 password  
mypassword
```

6. Confirm the configuration has been implemented with the `net show bgp summary` command:

```
cumulus@spine01:~$ net show bgp summary  
show bgp ipv4 unicast summary  
=====  
BGP router identifier 10.0.0.21, local AS number 65020 vrf-id 0  
BGP table version 5  
RIB entries 9, using 1080 bytes of memory  
Peers 4, using 73 KiB of memory  
Peer groups 1, using 56 bytes of memory  
Neighbor      V          AS MsgRcvd MsgSent     TblVer  InQ OutQ  
Up/Down  State/PfxRcd  
leaf01(swp1)  4 65011    782     782        0       0       0 00:12:  
54            2  
leaf02(swp2)  4 65012    781     781        0       0       0 00:12:  
53            2
```

```

swp3          4      0      0      0      0      0      0      0
never      Idle
swp4          4      0      0      0      0      0      0      0
never      Idle
Total number of neighbors 4

show bgp ipv6 unicast summary
=====
No IPv6 neighbor is configured

```

## Configuring eBGP Multihop

The eBGP Multihop option lets you use BGP to exchange routes with an external peer that is more than one hop away.

1. To establish a connection between two eBGP peers that are not directly connected:

```

cumulus@leaf02:mgmt-vrf:~$ net add bgp neighbor <ip> remote-as
external
cumulus@leaf02:mgmt-vrf:~$ net add bgp neighbor <ip> ebgp-
multihop

```

2. Confirm the configuration with the `net show bgp neighbor <ip>` command:

```

cumulus@leaf02:mgmt-vrf:~$ net show bgp neighbor 10.0.0.11
BGP neighbor is 10.0.0.11, remote AS 65011, local AS 65012, external
link
Hostname: leaf01
        BGP version 4, remote router ID 10.0.0.11
        BGP state = Established, up for 00:02:54
        Last read 00:00:00, Last write 00:00:00
        Hold time is 9, keepalive interval is 3 seconds
        Neighbor capabilities:
                4 Byte AS: advertised and received
                AddPath:
                        IPv4 Unicast: RX advertised IPv4 Unicast and received
                        Route refresh: advertised and received(old & new)
                        Address Family IPv4 Unicast: advertised and received
                        Hostname Capability: advertised (name: leaf02, domain name: n/a)
                        received (name: leaf01, domain name: n/a)
                Graceful Restart Capability: advertised and received
                        Remote Restart timer is 120 seconds
                        Address families by peer:
                                none
                Graceful restart informations:

```

```

End-of-RIB send: IPv4 Unicast
End-of-RIB received: IPv4 Unicast
Message statistics:
  Inq depth is 0
  Outq depth is 0
      Sent          Rcvd
  Opens:           1            1
  Notifications:  0            0
  Updates:        2868         2872
  Keepalives:     60            60
  Route Refresh:  0            0
  Capability:    0            0
  Total:          2929         2933

  Minimum time between advertisement runs is 0 seconds

For address family: IPv4 Unicast
  Update group 2, subgroup 4
  Packet Queue length 0
  Community attribute sent to this neighbor(all)
  9 accepted prefixes
  Connections established 1; dropped 0
  Last reset never

External BGP neighbor may be up to 255 hops away.
  Local host: 10.0.0.12, Local port: 40135
  Foreign host: 10.0.0.11, Foreign port: 179
  Nexthop: 10.0.0.12
  Nexthop global: ::

  Nexthop local: ::

  BGP connection: non shared network
  BGP Connect Retry Timer in Seconds: 10
  Estimated round trip time: 1 ms
  Read thread: on  Write thread: on

```

## Configuring BGP TTL Security

The steps below cover how to configure BGP ttl security on Cumulus Linux, using a leaf (leaf01), and spine (spine01) for the example output:

1. SSH into leaf01 and configure it for TTL security:

```

cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add bgp autonomous-system 65000
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add bgp neighbor [spine01-IP] ttl-security
      hops [value]

```

2. SSH into spine01 and configure it for TTL security:



```
cumulus@spine01:~$ net add bgp autonomous-system 65001
cumulus@spine01:~$ net add bgp neighbor [leaf01-IP] ttl-security
hops [value]
```

3. Confirm the configuration with the `show ip bgp neighbor` command:

```
cumulus@spine01:mgmt-vrf:~$ net show bgp neighbor swp1
BGP neighbor on swp1: fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5b, remote AS 65011, local
AS 65020, external link
Hostname: leaf01
    BGP version 4, remote router ID 10.0.0.11
    BGP state = Established, up for 00:10:45
    Last read 00:00:03, Last write 00:00:03
    Hold time is 9, keepalive interval is 3 seconds
    Neighbor capabilities:
        4 Byte AS: advertised and received
    AddPath:
        IPv4 Unicast: RX advertised IPv4 Unicast and received
        Extended nexthop: advertised and received
    Address families by peer:
        IPv4 Unicast
        Route refresh: advertised and received(old & new)
        Address Family IPv4 Unicast: advertised and received
        Hostname Capability: advertised (name: spine01, domain name: n/a)
        received (name: leaf01, domain name: n/a)
    Graceful Restart Capabilty: advertised and received
        Remote Restart timer is 120 seconds
    Address families by peer:
        none
    Graceful restart informations:
        End-of-RIB send: IPv4 Unicast
        End-of-RIB received: IPv4 Unicast
    Message statistics:
        Inq depth is 0
        Outq depth is 0
                    Sent          Rcvd
        Opens:            46            2
        Notifications:   41            0
        Updates:          38            34
        Keepalives:       49334         49331
        Route Refresh:    0             0
        Capability:       0             0
        Total:           49459         49367
```

```
Minimum time between advertisement runs is 0 seconds

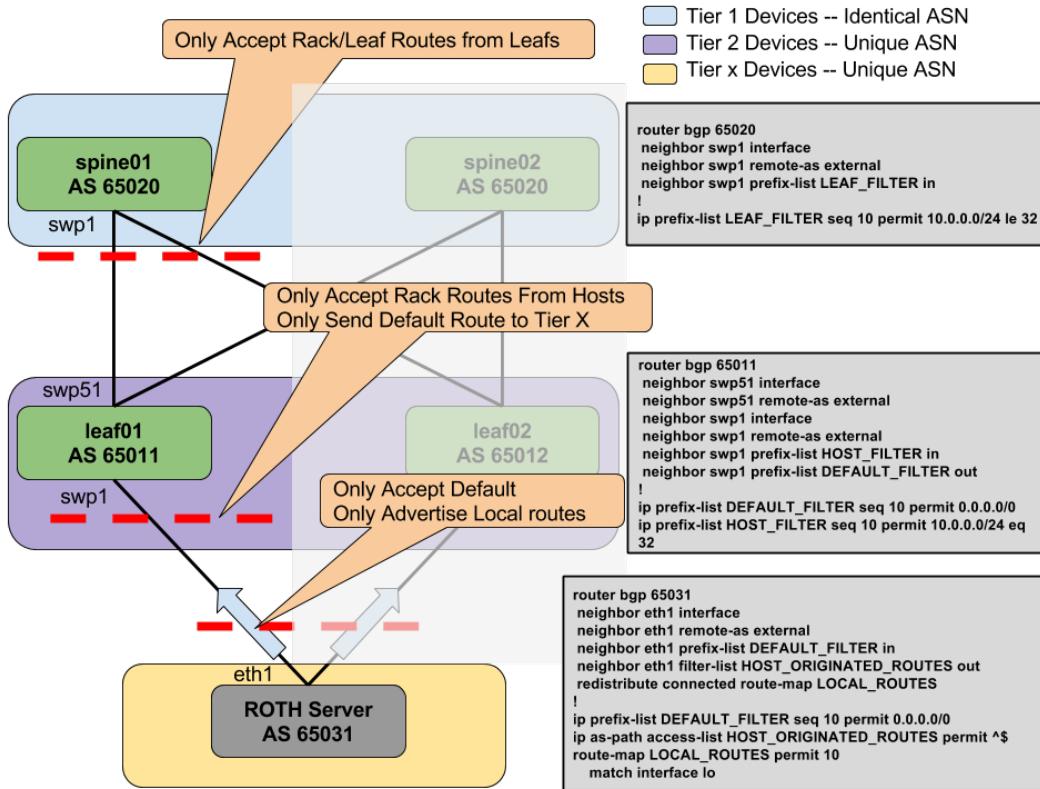
For address family: IPv4 Unicast
  Update group 1, subgroup 1
  Packet Queue length 0
  Community attribute sent to this neighbor(all)
  3 accepted prefixes

  Connections established 2; dropped 1
  Last reset 00:17:37, due to NOTIFICATION sent (Hold Timer
  Expired)
External BGP neighbor may be up to 1 hops away.
  Local host: fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5c, Local port: 35564
  Foreign host: fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5b, Foreign port: 179
  Nexthop: 10.0.0.21
  Nexthop global: fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5c
  Nexthop local: fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5c
  BGP connection: shared network
  BGP Connect Retry Timer in Seconds: 10
  Read thread: on  Write thread: on
```

## Configuration Tips

### *BGP Advertisement Best Practices*

Limiting the exchange of routing information at various parts in the network is a best practice you should follow. The following image illustrates one way you can do so in a typical Clos architecture:



## Utilizing Multiple Routing Tables and Forwarding

You can run multiple routing tables (one for in-band/data plane traffic and one for out-of-band/management plane traffic) on the same switch using [management VRF](#) (see page 720) (multiple routing tables and forwarding).



In Cumulus Linux 3.0 and later, BGP and static routing (IPv4 and IPv6) are supported within a VRF context. For more information, refer to [Virtual Routing and Forwarding - VRF](#) (see page 696).

## Using BGP Community Lists

You can use [community lists](#) to define a BGP community to tag one or more routes. You can then use the communities to apply route policy on either egress or ingress.

The BGP community list can be either *standard* or *expanded*. The standard BGP community list is a pair of values (such as 100:100) that can be tagged on a specific prefix and advertised to other neighbors or applied on route ingress. Alternately, it can be one of four BGP default communities:

- *internet*: a BGP community that matches all routes
- *local-AS*: a BGP community that restrict routes to your confederation's sub-AS
- *no-advertise*: a BGP community that isn't advertised to anyone
- *no-export*: a BGP community that isn't advertised to the eBGP peer

An expanded BGP community list takes a regular expression of communities matches the listed communities.

When the neighbor receives the prefix, it examines the community value and takes action accordingly, such as permitting or denying the community member in the routing policy.

Here's an example of standard community list filter:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add routing community-list standard COMMUNITY1
permit 100:100
```

You can apply the community list to a route map to define the routing policy:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp table-map ROUTE-MAP1
```

## *Additional Default Settings*

Other default settings not discussed in detail in this chapter include the following; they're all enabled by default:

- `bgp deterministic-med`, which ensures path ordering no longer impacts bestpath selection.
- `bgp show-hostname`, which displays the hostname in show command output.
- `bgp network import-check`, which enables the advertising of the BGP network in IGP.

## *Configuring BGP Neighbor maximum-prefixes*

The maximum number of route announcements, or prefixes, allowed by a BGP neighbor can be configured using the `maximum-prefixes` command in the CLI. Replace the `PEER` input with the relevant peer, and replace `NUMBER` with the maximum number of prefixes desired:

```
frr(config)# neighbor PEER maximum-prefix NUMBER
```

## **Troubleshooting BGP**

The most common starting point for troubleshooting BGP is to view the summary of neighbors connected to and some information about these connections. A sample output of this command is as follows:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show bgp summary
show bgp ipv4 unicast summary
=====
BGP router identifier 10.0.0.11, local AS number 65011 vrf-id 0
BGP table version 8
RIB entries 11, using 1320 bytes of memory
Peers 2, using 36 KiB of memory
Peer groups 1, using 56 bytes of memory
Neighbor          V      AS MsgRcvd MsgSent   TblVer  InQ OutQ Up
/DOWN  State/PfxRcd
```



```
spine01(swp51) 4 65020      549      551      0 0 0 00:09:  
03            3  
spine02(swp52) 4 65020      548      550      0 0 0 00:09:  
02            3  
Total number of neighbors 2  
  
show bgp ipv6 unicast summary  
=====  
No IPv6 neighbor is configured
```



You can determine whether the sessions above are iBGP or eBGP sessions by looking at the ASNs.

It is also useful to view the routing table as defined by BGP:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show bgp ipv4  
ERROR: Command not found  
Use 'net help KEYWORD(s)' to list all options that use KEYWORD(s)  
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show bgp ipv4  
      unicast : add help text  
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show bgp ipv4 unicast  
BGP table version is 8, local router ID is 10.0.0.11  
Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, > best, =  
multipath,  
              i internal, r RIB-failure, S Stale, R Removed  
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete  
      Network          Next Hop          Metric LocPrf Weight Path  
*> 10.0.0.11/32    0.0.0.0          0        32768 ?  
*= 10.0.0.12/32   swp52           0        65020 65012 ?  
*>                  swp51           0        65020 65012 ?  
*> 10.0.0.21/32   swp51           0        65020 ?  
*> 10.0.0.22/32   swp52           0        65020 ?  
*> 172.16.1.0/24  0.0.0.0          0        32768 i  
*= 172.16.2.0/24  swp52           0        65020 65012 i  
*>                  swp51           0        65020 65012 i  
Total number of prefixes 6
```

A more detailed breakdown of a specific neighbor can be obtained using `net show bgp neighbor <neighbor>`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show bgp neighbor swp51  
BGP neighbor on swp51: fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5c, remote AS 65020,  
local AS 65011, external link  
Hostname: spine01  
Member of peer-group fabric for session parameters  
BGP version 4, remote router ID 10.0.0.21  
BGP state = Established, up for 00:11:30
```

```
Last read 00:00:00, Last write 00:11:26
Hold time is 3, keepalive interval is 1 seconds
Configured hold time is 3, keepalive interval is 1 seconds
Neighbor capabilities:
  4 Byte AS: advertised and received
AddPath:
  IPv4 Unicast: RX advertised IPv4 Unicast and received
  Extended nexthop: advertised and received
  Address families by peer:
    IPv4 Unicast
  Route refresh: advertised and received(old & new)
  Address family IPv4 Unicast: advertised and received
  Hostname Capability: advertised and received
  Graceful Restart Capabilty: advertised and received
  Remote Restart timer is 120 seconds
  Address families by peer:
    none
Graceful restart informations:
  End-of-RIB send: IPv4 Unicast
  End-of-RIB received: IPv4 Unicast
Message statistics:
  Inq depth is 0
  Outq depth is 0
      Sent          Rcvd
  Opens:           1            1
  Notifications:  0            0
  Updates:        7            6
  Keepalives:     690          689
  Route Refresh:  0            0
  Capability:    0            0
  Total:         698          696
Minimum time between advertisement runs is 0 seconds
For address family: IPv4 Unicast
  fabric peer-group member
  Update group 1, subgroup 1
  Packet Queue length 0
  Community attribute sent to this neighbor(both)
  Inbound path policy configured
  Outbound path policy configured
  Incoming update prefix filter list is *dc-leaf-in
  Outgoing update prefix filter list is *dc-leaf-out
  3 accepted prefixes
  Connections established 1; dropped 0
  Last reset never
Local host: fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5b, Local port: 48424
Foreign host: fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5c, Foreign port: 179
Nexthop: 10.0.0.11
Nexthop global: fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5b
Nexthop local: fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5b
BGP connection: shared network
BGP Connect Retry Timer in Seconds: 3
Estimated round trip time: 3 ms
```



Read thread: on Write thread: off

To see the details of a specific route such as from whom it was received, to whom it was sent, and so forth, use the `net show bgp <ip address/prefix>` command:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show bgp 10.0.0.11/32
BGP routing table entry for 10.0.0.11/32
Paths: (1 available, best #1, table Default-IP-Routing-Table)
  Advertised to non peer-group peers:
    spine01(swp51) spine02(swp52)
  Local
    0.0.0.0 from 0.0.0.0 (10.0.0.11)
      Origin incomplete, metric 0, localpref 100, weight 32768,
    valid, sourced, bestpath-from-AS Local, best
      AddPath ID: RX 0, TX 9
      Last update: Fri Nov 18 01:48:17 2016
```

This shows that the routing table prefix seen by BGP is 10.0.0.11/32, that this route was advertised to two neighbors, and that it was not heard by any neighbors.

### *Debugging Tip: Logging Neighbor State Changes*

It is very useful to log the changes that a neighbor goes through to troubleshoot any issues associated with that neighbor. This is done using the `log-neighbor-changes` command, which is enabled by default.

The output is sent to the specified log file, usually `/var/log/frr/bgpd.log`, and looks like this:

```
2016/07/08 10:12:06.572827 BGP: %NOTIFICATION: sent to neighbor
10.0.0.2 6/3 (Cease/Peer Unconfigured) 0 bytes
2016/07/08 10:12:06.572954 BGP: Notification sent to neighbor
10.0.0.2: type 6/3
2016/07/08 10:12:16.682071 BGP: %ADJCHANGE: neighbor 192.0.2.2 Up
2016/07/08 10:12:16.682660 BGP: %ADJCHANGE: neighbor 10.0.0.2 Up
```

### *Troubleshooting Link-local Addresses*

To verify that `frr` learned the neighboring link-local IPv6 address via the IPv6 neighbor discovery router advertisements on a given interface, use the `show interface <if-name>` command. If `ipv6 nd suppress-ra` isn't enabled on both ends of the interface, then `Neighbor address(s):` should have the other end's link-local address. That is the address that BGP would use when BGP is enabled on that interface.



IPv6 route advertisements (RAs) are automatically enabled on an interface with IPv6 addresses, so the step `no ipv6 nd suppress-ra` is no longer needed for BGP unnumbered.

Use `vtysh` to verify the configuration:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh

Hello, this is Quagga (version 0.99.23.1+cl3u2).
Copyright 1996-2005 Kunihiro Ishiguro, et al.

R7# show interface swp1
Interface swp1 is up, line protocol is up
  Link ups:      0    last: (never)
  Link downs:   0    last: (never)
  PTM status: disabled
  vrf: Default-IP-Routing-Table
  index 4 metric 0 mtu 1500
  flags: <UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST>
  HWaddr: 44:38:39:00:00:5c
  inet6 fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5c/64
  ND advertised reachable time is 0 milliseconds
  ND advertised retransmit interval is 0 milliseconds
  ND router advertisements are sent every 10 seconds
  ND router advertisements lifetime tracks ra-interval
  ND router advertisement default router preference is medium
  Hosts use stateless autoconfig for addresses.
  Neighbor address(s):
    inet6 fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5b/128
```

Instead of the IPv6 address, the peering interface name is displayed in the `show ip bgp summary` command and wherever else applicable:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show bgp summary
BGP router identifier 10.0.0.21, local AS number 65020 vrf-id 0
BGP table version 15
RIB entries 17, using 2040 bytes of memory
Peers 6, using 97 KiB of memory
Peer groups 1, using 56 bytes of memory

Neighbor          V     AS MsgRcvd MsgSent     TblVer  InQ OutQ Up/Down
State/PfxRcd
leaf01(swp1)      4 65011    2834    2843      0      0      0 02:21:
35              2
leaf02(swp2)      4 65012    2834    2844      0      0      0 02:21:
36              2
leaf03(swp3)      4 65013    2834    2843      0      0      0 02:21:
35              2
leaf04(swp4)      4 65014    2834    2844      0      0      0 02:21:
36              2
edge01(swp29)     4 65051    8509    8505      0      0      0 02:21:
37              3
edge01(swp30)     4 65051    8506    8503      0      0      0 02:21:
35              3

Total number of neighbors 6
```



Most of the show commands can take the interface name instead of the IP address, if that level of specificity is needed:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show bgp neighbor
    fabric  : BGP neighbor or peer-group
    swp51   : BGP neighbor or peer-group
    swp52   : BGP neighbor or peer-group
<ENTER>
```

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net show bgp neighbor swp51
BGP neighbor on swp51: fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5c, remote AS 65020,
local AS 65011, external link
Hostname: spine01
Member of peer-group fabric for session parameters
  BGP version 4, remote router ID 0.0.0.0
  BGP state = Connect
  Last read 20:16:21, Last write 20:55:51
  Hold time is 30, keepalive interval is 10 seconds
  Configured hold time is 30, keepalive interval is 10 seconds
Message statistics:
  Inq depth is 0
  Outq depth is 0
      Sent          Rcvd
  Opens:           1            1
  Notifications:  1            0
  Updates:        7            6
  Keepalives:     2374         2373
  Route Refresh:  0            0
  Capability:    0            0
  Total:          2383         2380
Minimum time between advertisement runs is 5 seconds
For address family: IPv4 Unicast
  fabric peer-group member
  Not part of any update group
  Community attribute sent to this neighbor(both)
  Inbound path policy configured
  Outbound path policy configured
  Incoming update prefix filter list is *dc-leaf-in
  Outgoing update prefix filter list is *dc-leaf-out
  0 accepted prefixes
  Connections established 1; dropped 1
  Last reset 20:16:20, due to NOTIFICATION sent (Cease/Other
Configuration Change)
  BGP Connect Retry Timer in Seconds: 3
  Next connect timer due in 1 seconds
  Read thread: on  Write thread: on
```



## Enabling Read-only Mode

You can enable read-only mode for when the BGP process restarts or when the BGP process is cleared using `clear ip bgp *`. When enabled, read-only mode begins as soon as the first peer reaches its *established* state and a timer for `<max-delay>` seconds is started.

While in read-only mode, BGP doesn't run best-path or generate any updates to its peers. This mode continues until:

- All the configured peers, except the shutdown peers, have sent an explicit EOR (End-Of-RIB) or an implicit EOR. The first keep-alive after BGP has reached the established state is considered an implicit EOR. If the `<establish-wait>` option is specified, then BGP will wait for peers to reach the established state from the start of the `update-delay` until the `<establish-wait>` period is over; that is, the minimum set of established peers for which EOR is expected would be peers established during the `establish-wait` window, not necessarily all the configured neighbors.
- The `max-delay` period is over.

Upon reaching either of these two conditions, BGP resumes the decision process and generates updates to its peers.

To enable read-only mode:

```
cumulus@switch:$ net add bgp update-delay <max-delay in 0-3600 seconds> [<establish-wait in 1-3600 seconds>]
```

The default `<max-delay>` is 0 — the feature is off by default.

Use output from `show ip bgp summary` for information about the state of the update delay.

This feature can be useful in reducing CPU/network usage as BGP restarts/clears. It's particularly useful in topologies where BGP learns a prefix from many peers. Intermediate best paths are possible for the same prefix as peers get established and start receiving updates at different times. This feature is also valuable if the network has a high number of such prefixes.

## Applying a Route Map for Route Updates

There are two ways you can apply [route maps](#) for BGP:

- By filtering routes from BGP into Zebra
- By filtering routes from Zebra into the Linux kernel

### Filtering Routes from BGP into Zebra

For the first way, you can apply a route map on route updates from BGP to Zebra. All the applicable match operations are allowed, such as match on prefix, next-hop, communities, and so forth. Set operations for this attach-point are limited to metric and next-hop only. Any operation of this feature does not affect BGPs internal RIB.

Both IPv4 and IPv6 address families are supported. Route maps work on multi-paths as well. However, the metric setting is based on the best path only.

To apply a route map to filter route updates from BGP into Zebra:

```
cumulus@switch:$ net add bgp table-map <route-map-name>
```



## Filtering Routes from Zebra into the Linux Kernel

To apply a route map to filter route updates from Zebra into the Linux kernel:

```
cumulus@switch:$ net add routing protocol bgp route-map <route-map-name>
```

## Protocol Tuning

### Converging Quickly On Link Failures

In the Clos topology, we recommend that you only use interface addresses to set up peering sessions. This means that when the link fails, the BGP session is torn down immediately, triggering route updates to propagate through the network quickly. This requires the following commands be enabled for all links: `link-detect` and `ttl-security hops <hops>`. `ttl-security hops` specifies how many hops away the neighbor is. For example, in a Clos topology, every peer is at most 1 hop away.



See Caveats and Errata below for information regarding `ttl-security hops`.

Here is an example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor 10.0.0.2 ttl-security hops 1
```

### Converging Quickly On Soft Failures

It is possible that the link is up, but the neighboring BGP process is hung or has crashed. If a BGP process crashes, FRRouting's `watchquagga` daemon, which monitors the various FRRouting daemons, will attempt to restart it. If the process is also hung, `watchquagga` will attempt to restart the process. BGP itself has a `keepalive` timer that is exchanged between neighbors. By default, this `keepalive` timer is set to 3 seconds. This time can be increased to a higher number, which decreases CPU load, especially in the presence of a lot of neighbors. `keepalive-time` is the periodicity with which the `keepalive` message is sent. `hold-time` specifies how many `keepalive` messages can be lost before the connection is considered invalid. It is usually set to 3 times the `keepalive` time, so it defaults to 9 seconds. Here is an example of changing these timers:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor swp51 timers 10 30
```

The following display snippet shows that the default values have been modified for this neighbor:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show bgp neighbor swp51
BGP neighbor on swp51: fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5c, remote AS 65020,
local AS 65011, external link
Hostname: spine01
```



```
Member of peer-group fabric for session parameters
BGP version 4, remote router ID 0.0.0.0
BGP state = Connect
Last read 00:00:13, Last write 00:39:43
Hold time is 30, keepalive interval is 10 seconds
Configured hold time is 30, keepalive interval is 10 seconds
...
...
```

## Reconnecting Quickly

A BGP process attempts to connect to a peer after a failure (or on startup) every `connect-time` seconds. By default, this is 10 seconds. To modify this value, use:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor swp51 timers connect 30
```

This command has to be specified per each neighbor, peer-group doesn't support this option in `frr`.

## Advertisement Interval

BGP by default chooses stability over fast convergence. This is very useful when routing for the Internet. For example, unlike link-state protocols, BGP typically waits for a duration of `advertisement-interval` seconds between sending consecutive updates to a neighbor. This ensures that an unstable neighbor flapping routes won't be propagated throughout the network. By default, this is set to 0 seconds for both eBGP and iBGP sessions, which allows for very fast convergence. You can modify this as follows:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor swp51 advertisement-interval 5
```

The following output shows the modified value:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show bgp neighbor swp51
BGP neighbor on swp51: fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5c, remote AS 65020,
local AS 65011, external link
Hostname: spine01
Member of peer-group fabric for session parameters
BGP version 4, remote router ID 0.0.0.0
BGP state = Connect
Last read 00:04:37, Last write 00:44:07
Hold time is 30, keepalive interval is 10 seconds
Configured hold time is 30, keepalive interval is 10 seconds
Message statistics:
  Inq depth is 0
  Outq depth is 0
          Sent        Rcvd
  Opens:           1            1
  Notifications:  1            0
  Updates:         7            6
  Keepalives:     2374        2373
```



```
Route Refresh:          0          0
Capability:            0          0
Total:                 2383      2380
Minimum time between advertisement runs is 5 seconds
...
```



This command is not supported with peer-groups.

See this [IETF draft](#) for more details on the use of this value.

## Caveats and Errata

### *ttl-security Issue*

Enabling `ttl-security` does not cause the hardware to be programmed with the relevant information. This means that frames will come up to the CPU and be dropped there. It is recommended that you use the `net add acl` command to explicitly add the relevant entry to hardware.

For example, you can configure a file, like `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/01control_plane_bgp.rules`, with a rule like this for TTL:

```
INGRESS_INTF = swp1
INGRESS_CHAIN = INPUT, FORWARD

[iptables]
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p tcp --dport bgp
-m ttl --ttl 255 POLICE --set-mode pkt --set-rate 2000 --set-burst
1000
-A $INGRESS_CHAIN --in-interface $INGRESS_INTF -p tcp --dport bgp DROP
```



For more information about ACLs, see [Netfilter \(ACLs\) \(see page 137\)](#).

### *BGP Dynamic Capabilities not Supported*

Dynamic capabilities, which enable BGP to renegotiate a new feature for an already established peer, are not supported in Cumulus Linux.

### *Related Information*

- Bidirectional forwarding detection (see page 672) (BFD) and BGP
- Wikipedia entry for BGP (includes list of useful RFCs)
- [frrouting.org/user-guide/BGP.html#BGP](http://frrouting.org/user-guide/BGP.html#BGP)
- IETF draft discussing BGP use within data centers

## Bidirectional Forwarding Detection - BFD

*Bidirectional Forwarding Detection* (BFD) provides low overhead and rapid detection of failures in the paths between two network devices. It provides a unified mechanism for link detection over all media and protocol layers. Use BFD to detect failures for IPv4 and IPv6 single or multihop paths between any two network devices, including unidirectional path failure detection.



Cumulus Linux does not support demand mode in BFD.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- [Using BFD Multihop Routed Paths \(see page 672\)](#)
- [BFD Parameters \(see page 672\)](#)
- [Configuring BFD \(see page 673\)](#)
- [BFD in BGP \(see page 673\)](#)
- [BFD in OSPF \(see page 674\)](#)
- [OSPF Show Commands \(see page 675\)](#)
- [Scripts \(see page 676\)](#)
- [Echo Function \(see page 677\)
  - \[About the Echo Packet \\(see page 677\\)\]\(#\)
  - \[Transmitting and Receiving Echo Packets \\(see page 677\\)\]\(#\)
  - \[Using Echo Function Parameters \\(see page 677\\)\]\(#\)](#)
- [Troubleshooting BFD \(see page 678\)](#)

### Using BFD Multihop Routed Paths

BFD multihop sessions are built over arbitrary paths between two systems, which results in some complexity that does not exist for single hop sessions. Here are some best practices for using multihop paths:

- **Spoofing:** To avoid spoofing with multihop paths, configure `max_hop_cnt` (maximum hop count) for each peer, which limits the number of hops for a BFD session. All BFD packets exceeding the max hop count will be dropped.
- **Demultiplexing:** Since multihop BFD sessions can take arbitrary paths, demultiplex the initial BFD packet based on the source/destination IP address pair. Use FRRouting, which monitors connectivity to the peer, to determine the source/destination IP address pairs.

Multihop BFD sessions are supported for both IPv4 and IPv6 peers. See below for more details.

### BFD Parameters

You can configure the following BFD parameters for both IPv4 and IPv6 sessions:

- The required minimum interval between the received BFD control packets.
- The minimum interval for transmitting BFD control packets.



- The detection time multiplier.

## Configuring BFD

You configure BFD one of two ways: by specifying the configuration in the [PTM topology.dot file \(see page 304\)](#), or using [FRRouting \(see page 603\)](#). However, the topology file has some limitations:

- The `topology.dot` file supports creating BFD IPv4 and IPv6 single hop sessions only; you cannot specify IPv4 or IPv6 multihop sessions in the topology file.
- The topology file supports BFD sessions for only link-local IPv6 peers; BFD sessions for global IPv6 peers discovered on the link will not be created.



You cannot specify BFD multihop sessions in the `topology.dot` file since you cannot specify the source and destination IP address pairs in that file. Use [FRRouting \(see page 609\)](#) to configure multihop sessions.

The FRRouting CLI can track IPv4 and IPv6 peer connectivity — both single hop and multihop, and both link-local IPv6 peers and global IPv6 peers — using BFD sessions without needing the `topology.dot` file. Use FRRouting to register multihop peers with PTM and BFD as well as for monitoring the connectivity to the remote BGP multihop peer. FRRouting can dynamically register and unregister both IPv4 and IPv6 peers with BFD when the BFD-enabled peer connectivity is established or de-established, respectively. Also, you can configure BFD parameters for each BGP or OSPF peer using FRRouting.



The BFD parameter configured in the topology file is given higher precedence over the client-configured BFD parameters for a BFD session that has been created by both topology file and client (FRRouting).



BFD requires an IP address for any interface on which it is configured. The neighbor IP address for a single hop BFD session must be in the ARP table before BFD can start sending control packets.

## BFD in BGP

For FRRouting when using **BGP**, neighbors are registered and de-registered with [PTM \(see page 304\)](#) dynamically when you enable BFD in BGP using `net add bgp neighbor <neighbor|IP|interface> bfd`. For example:

Configuration of BFD for a peergroup or individual neighbors is performed in the same way.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor swp1 bfd
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands add the `neighbor SPINE bfd` line below the last address family configuration in the `/etc/frr/frr.conf` file:



```
...
router bgp 65000
neighbor swp1 bfd
...
...
```

The configuration above configures the default BFD values of intervals: 3, minimum RX interval: 300ms, minimum TX interval: 300ms.

To see neighbor information in BGP, including BFD status, run `net show bgp neighbor <interface>`.

```
cumulus@spine01:~$ net show bgp neighbor swp1
...
BFD: Type: single hop
    Detect Mul: 3, Min Rx interval: 300, Min Tx interval: 300
    Status: Down, Last update: 0:00:00:08
...
...
```

To change the BFD values to something other than the defaults, BFD parameters can be configured for each BGP neighbor. For example:

#### BFD in BGP

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp neighbor swp1 bfd 4 400 400
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

## BFD in OSPF

For FRRouting using **OSFP**, neighbors are registered and de-registered dynamically with [PTM \(see page 304\)](#) when you enable or disable BFD in OSPF. A neighbor is registered with BFD when two-way adjacency is established and deregistered when adjacency goes down if the BFD is enabled on the interface. The BFD configuration is per interface and any IPv4 and IPv6 neighbors discovered on that interface inherit the configuration.

#### BFD in OSPF

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 ospf6 bfd 5 500 500
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration snippet in the `/etc/frr/frr.conf` file:

```
interface swp1
```



```
 ipv6 ospf6 bfd 5 500 500  
end
```

## OSPF Show Commands

The BFD lines at the end of each code block shows the corresponding IPv6 or IPv4 OSPF interface or neighbor information.

### Show IPv6 OSPF Interface

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show ospf6 interface swp2s0  
swp2s0 is up, type BROADCAST  
  Interface ID: 4  
  Internet Address:  
    inet : 11.0.0.21/30  
    inet6: fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:6c8e/64  
  Instance ID 0, Interface MTU 1500 (autodetect: 1500)  
  MTU mismatch detection: enabled  
  Area ID 0.0.0.0, Cost 10  
  State PointToPoint, Transmit Delay 1 sec, Priority 1  
  Timer intervals configured:  
    Hello 10, Dead 40, Retransmit 5  
  DR: 0.0.0.0 BDR: 0.0.0.0  
  Number of I/F scoped LSAs is 2  
    0 Pending LSAs for LSUpdate in Time 00:00:00 [thread off]  
    0 Pending LSAs for LSAck in Time 00:00:00 [thread off]  
  BFD: Detect Mul: 3, Min Rx interval: 300, Min Tx interval: 300
```

### Show IPv6 OSPF Neighbor

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show ospf6 neighbor detail  
Neighbor 0.0.0.4%swp2s0  
  Area 0.0.0.0 via interface swp2s0 (ifindex 4)  
  His IfIndex: 3 Link-local address: fe80::202:ff:fe00:a  
  State Full for a duration of 02:32:33  
  His choice of DR/BDR 0.0.0.0/0.0.0.0, Priority 1  
  DbDesc status: Slave SeqNum: 0x76000000  
  Summary-List: 0 LSAs  
  Request-List: 0 LSAs  
  Retrans-List: 0 LSAs  
  0 Pending LSAs for DbDesc in Time 00:00:00 [thread off]  
  0 Pending LSAs for LSReq in Time 00:00:00 [thread off]  
  0 Pending LSAs for LSUpdate in Time 00:00:00 [thread off]  
  0 Pending LSAs for LSAck in Time 00:00:00 [thread off]  
  BFD: Type: single hop  
    Detect Mul: 3, Min Rx interval: 300, Min Tx interval: 300  
    Status: Up, Last update: 0:00:00:20
```



### Show IPv4 OSPF Interface

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show ospf interface swp2s0
swp2s0 is up
  ifindex 4, MTU 1500 bytes, BW 0 Kbit <UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,
MULTICAST>
    Internet Address 11.0.0.21/30, Area 0.0.0.0
    MTU mismatch detection:enabled
    Router ID 0.0.0.3, Network Type POINTOPOINT, Cost: 10
    Transmit Delay is 1 sec, State Point-To-Point, Priority 1
    No designated router on this network
    No backup designated router on this network
    Multicast group memberships: OSPFAllRouters
    Timer intervals configured, Hello 10s, Dead 40s, Wait 40s,
Retransmit 5
      Hello due in 7.056s
    Neighbor Count is 1, Adjacent neighbor count is 1
    BFD: Detect Mul: 5, Min Rx interval: 500, Min Tx interval: 500
```

### Show IPv4 OSPF Neighbor

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show ospf neighbor detail
Neighbor 0.0.0.4, interface address 11.0.0.22
  In the area 0.0.0.0 via interface swp2s0
  Neighbor priority is 1, State is Full, 5 state changes
  Most recent state change statistics:
    Progressive change 3h59m04s ago
    DR is 0.0.0.0, BDR is 0.0.0.0
    Options 2 *|-|-|-|-|E|*
    Dead timer due in 38.501s
    Database Summary List 0
    Link State Request List 0
    Link State Retransmission List 0
    Thread Inactivity Timer on
    Thread Database Description Retransmission off
    Thread Link State Request Retransmission on
    Thread Link State Update Retransmission on
    BFD: Type: single hop
      Detect Mul: 5, Min Rx interval: 500, Min Tx interval: 500
      Status: Down, Last update: 0:00:01:29
```

## Scripts

ptmd executes scripts at /etc/ptm.d/bfd-sess-down and /etc/ptm.d/bfd-sess-up for when BFD sessions go down or up, running bfd-sess-down when a BFD session goes down and running bfd-sess-up when a BFD session goes up.

You should modify these default scripts as needed.

## Echo Function

Cumulus Linux supports the *echo function* for IPv4 single hops only, and with the asynchronous operating mode only (Cumulus Linux does not support demand mode).

You use the echo function primarily to test the forwarding path on a remote system. To enable the echo function, set `echoSupport` to 1 in the topology file.

Once the echo packets are looped by the remote system, the BFD control packets can be sent at a much lower rate. You configure this lower rate by setting the `slowMinTx` parameter in the topology file to a non-zero value of milliseconds.

You can use more aggressive detection times for echo packets since the round-trip time is reduced because they are accessing the forwarding path. You configure the detection interval by setting the `echoMinRx` parameter in the topology file to a non-zero value of milliseconds; the minimum setting is 50 milliseconds. Once configured, BFD control packets are sent out at this required minimum echo Rx interval. This indicates to the peer that the local system can loop back the echo packets. Echo packets are transmitted if the peer supports receiving echo packets.

### About the Echo Packet

BFD echo packets are encapsulated into UDP packets over destination and source UDP port number 3785. The BFD echo packet format is vendor-specific and has not been defined in the RFC. BFD echo packets that originate from Cumulus Linux are 8 bytes long and have the following format:

0	1	2	3
Version	Length	Reserved	
My Discriminator			

Where:

- **Version** is the version of the BFD echo packet.
- **Length** is the length of the BFD echo packet.
- **My Discriminator** is a non-zero value that uniquely identifies a BFD session on the transmitting side. When the originating node receives the packet after being looped back by the receiving system, this value uniquely identifies the BFD session.

### Transmitting and Receiving Echo Packets

BFD echo packets are transmitted for a BFD session only when the peer has advertised a non-zero value for the required minimum echo Rx interval (the `echoMinRx` setting) in the BFD control packet when the BFD session starts. The transmit rate of the echo packets is based on the peer advertised echo receive value in the control packet.

BFD echo packets are looped back to the originating node for a BFD session only if locally the `echoMinRx` and `echoSupport` are configured to a non-zero values.

### Using Echo Function Parameters

You configure the echo function by setting the following parameters in the topology file at the global, template and port level:

- **echoSupport:** Enables and disables echo mode. Set to 1 to enable the echo function. It defaults to 0 (disable).
- **echoMinRx:** The minimum interval between echo packets the local system is capable of receiving. This is advertised in the BFD control packet. When the echo function is enabled, it defaults to 50. If you disable the echo function, this parameter is automatically set to 0, which indicates the port or the node cannot process or receive echo packets.
- **slowMinTx:** The minimum interval between transmitting BFD control packets when the echo packets are being exchanged.

## Troubleshooting BFD

You can use the following commands to view information about active BFD sessions.

To return information on active BFD sessions, use the `net show bfd sessions` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show bfd sessions

-----
port  peer          state  local          type      diag
-----
swp1  11.0.0.2     Up     N/A           singlehop  N/A
N/A   12.12.12.1   Up     12.12.12.4   multihop   N/A
```

To return more **detailed** information on active BFD sessions, use the `net show bfd sessions detail` command (results are for an IPv6-connected peer):

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show bfd sessions detail

-----
port  peer          state  local          type      diag  det
tx_timeout rx_timeout
-----
mult
-----
swp1  fe80::202:ff:fe00:1  Up     N/A           singlehop  N/A   3
300      900
swp1  3101:abc:bcad::2    Up     N/A           singlehop  N/A   3
300      900

#continuation of output
-----
echo      echo      max      rx_ctrl  tx_ctrl  rx_echo  tx_echo
tx_timeout rx_timeout hop_cnt
-----
0         0        N/A      187172   185986   0        0
0         0        N/A      501       533      0        0
```



# Equal Cost Multipath Load Sharing - Hardware ECMP

Cumulus Linux supports hardware-based [equal cost multipath](#) (ECMP) load sharing. ECMP is enabled by default in Cumulus Linux. Load sharing occurs automatically for all routes with multiple next hops installed. ECMP load sharing supports both IPv4 and IPv6 routes.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Understanding Equal Cost Routing (see page 679)
- Understanding ECMP Hashing (see page 679)
  - Using cl-ecmpcalc to Determine the Hash Result (see page 680)
  - cl-ecmpcalc Limitations (see page 681)
  - ECMP Hash Buckets (see page 681)
- Resilient Hashing (see page 683)
  - Resilient Hash Buckets (see page 684)
  - Removing Next Hops (see page 684)
  - Adding Next Hops (see page 686)
  - Configuring Resilient Hashing (see page 686)

## Understanding Equal Cost Routing

ECMP operates only on equal cost routes in the Linux routing table.

In this example, the 10.1.1.0/24 route has two possible next hops that have been installed in the routing table:

```
$ ip route show 10.1.1.0/24
10.1.1.0/24 proto zebra metric 20
nexthop via 192.168.1.1 dev swp1 weight 1 onlink
nexthop via 192.168.2.1 dev swp2 weight 1 onlink
```

For routes to be considered equal they must:

- Originate from the same routing protocol. Routes from different sources are not considered equal. For example, a static route and an OSPF route are not considered for ECMP load sharing.
- Have equal cost. If two routes from the same protocol are unequal, only the best route is installed in the routing table.



As of Cumulus Linux 3.0, the BGP `maximum-paths` setting is enabled, so multiple routes are installed by default. See the [ECMP section \(see page 640\)](#) of the BGP chapter for more information.



## Understanding ECMP Hashing

Once multiple routes are installed in the routing table, a hash is used to determine which path a packet follows.

Cumulus Linux hashes on the following fields:

- IP protocol
- Ingress interface
- Source IPv4 or IPv6 address
- Destination IPv4 or IPv6 address

For TCP/UDP frames, Cumulus Linux also hashes on:

- Source port
- Destination port

ECMP Hash Fields					
Source IP	Destination IP	Layer 4 Protocol	Source Port	Destination Port	Payload

To prevent out of order packets, ECMP hashing is done on a per-flow basis, which means that all packets with the same source and destination IP addresses and the same source and destination ports always hash to the same next hop. ECMP hashing does not keep a record of flow states.

ECMP hashing does not keep a record of packets that have hashed to each next hop and does not guarantee that traffic sent to each next hop is equal.

## Using `cl-ecmpcalc` to Determine the Hash Result

Since the hash is deterministic and always provides the same result for the same input, you can query the hardware and determine the hash result of a given input. This is useful when determining exactly which path a flow takes through a network.

On Cumulus Linux, use the `cl-ecmpcalc` command to determine a hardware hash result.

In order to use `cl-ecmpcalc`, all fields that are used in the hash must be provided. This includes ingress interface, layer 3 source IP, layer 3 destination IP, layer 4 source port and layer 4 destination port.

```
$ sudo cl-ecmpcalc -i swp1 -s 10.0.0.1 -d 10.0.0.1 -p tcp --sport 2000
0 --dport 80
ecmpcalc: will query hardware
swp3
```

If any field is omitted, `cl-ecmpcalc` fails.

```
$ sudo cl-ecmpcalc -i swp1 -s 10.0.0.1 -d 10.0.0.1 -p tcp
ecmpcalc: will query hardware
usage: cl-ecmpcalc [-h] [-v] [-p PROTOCOL] [-s SRC] [--sport SPORT] [-d DST]
                  [--dport DPORT] [--vid VID] [-i IN_INTERFACE]
                  [--sportid SPORTID] [--smoidid SMODID] [-o
OUT_INTERFACE]
```

```
[--dportid DPORTID] [--dmodid DMODID] [--hardware]
[--nohardware] [-hs HASHSEED]
[-hf HASHFIELDS [HASHFIELDS ...]]
[--hashfunction {crc16-ccitt,crc16-bisync}] [-e
EGRESS]
[-c MCOUNT]
cl-ecmpcalc: error: --sport and --dport required for TCP and UDP
frames
```

### cl-ecmpcalc Limitations

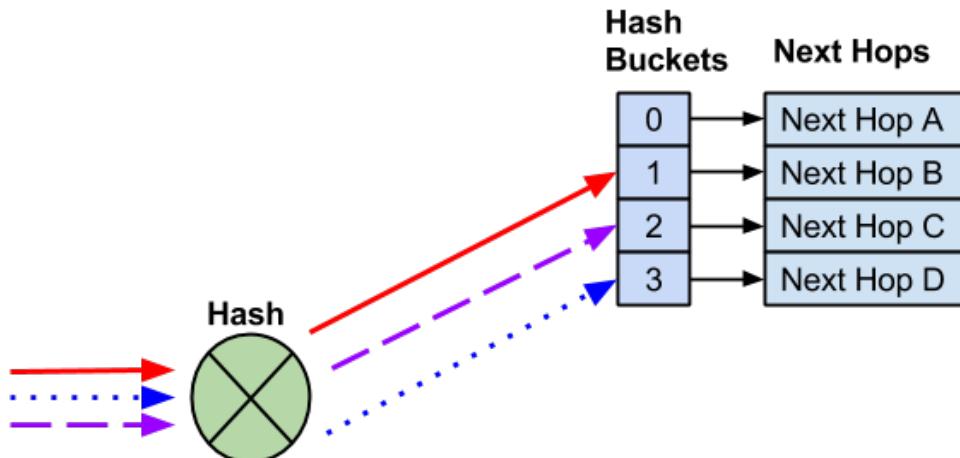
cl-ecmpcalc can only take input interfaces that can be converted to a single physical port in the port tab file, like the physical switch ports (swp). Virtual interfaces like bridges, bonds, and subinterfaces are not supported.

cl-ecmpcalc is supported only on switches with the Spectrum, Tomahawk, Trident II+ and Trident II chipsets.

### ECMP Hash Buckets

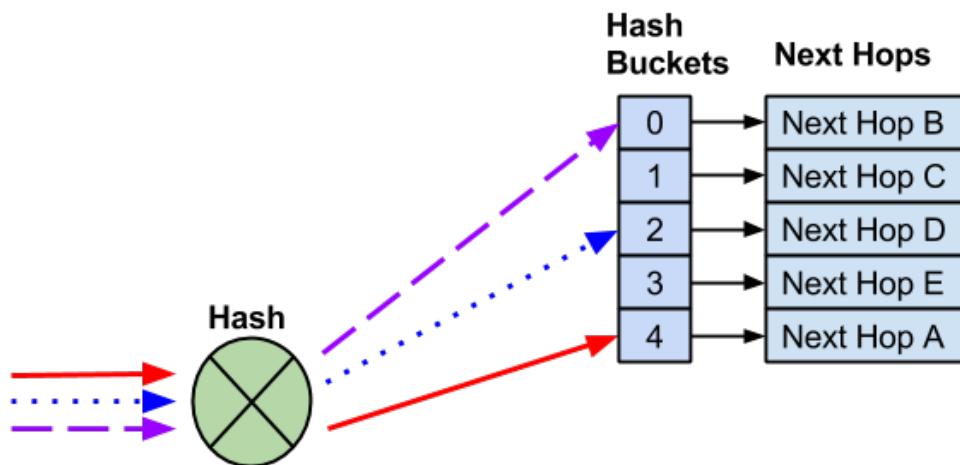
When multiple routes are installed in the routing table, each route is assigned to an ECMP *bucket*. When the ECMP hash is executed the result of the hash determines which bucket gets used.

In the following example, 4 next hops exist. Three different flows are hashed to different hash buckets. Each next hop is assigned to a unique hash bucket.



### Adding a Next Hop

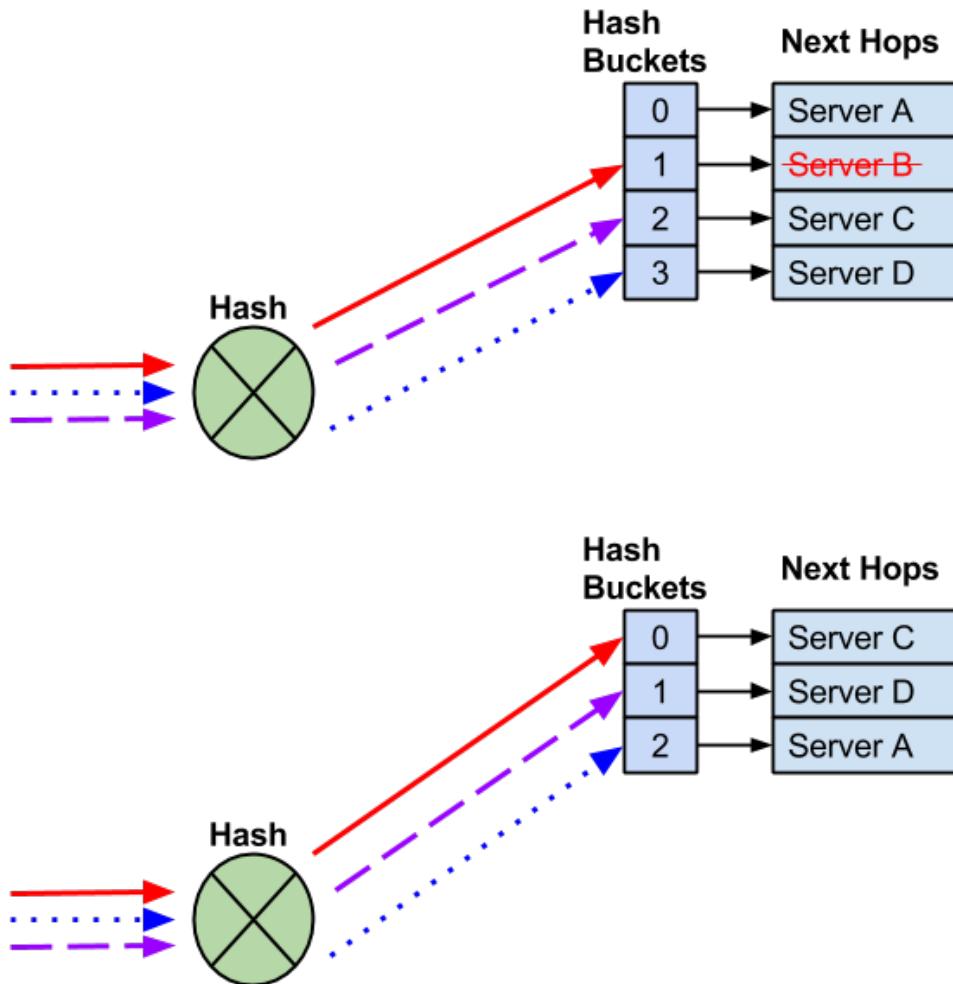
When a next hop is added, a new hash bucket is created. The assignment of next hops to hash buckets, as well as the hash result, may change when additional next hops are added.



A new next hop is added and a new hash bucket is created. As a result, the hash and hash bucket assignment changed, causing the existing flows to be sent to different next hops.

### *Removing a Next Hop*

When a next hop is removed, the remaining hash bucket assignments may change, again, potentially changing the next hop selected for an existing flow.



A next hop fails and the next hop and hash bucket are removed. The remaining next hops may be reassigned.

In most cases, the modification of hash buckets has no impact on traffic flows as traffic is being forward to a single end host. In deployments where multiple end hosts are using the same IP address (anycast), *resilient hashing* must be used.

## Resilient Hashing

In Cumulus Linux, when a next hop fails or is removed from an ECMP pool, the hashing or hash bucket assignment can change. For deployments where there is a need for flows to always use the same next hop, like TCP anycast deployments, this can create session failures.

The ECMP hash performed with resilient hashing is exactly the same as the default hashing mode. Only the method in which next hops are assigned to hash buckets differs.

Resilient hashing supports both IPv4 and IPv6 routes.

Resilient hashing is not enabled by default. See below for steps on configuring it.



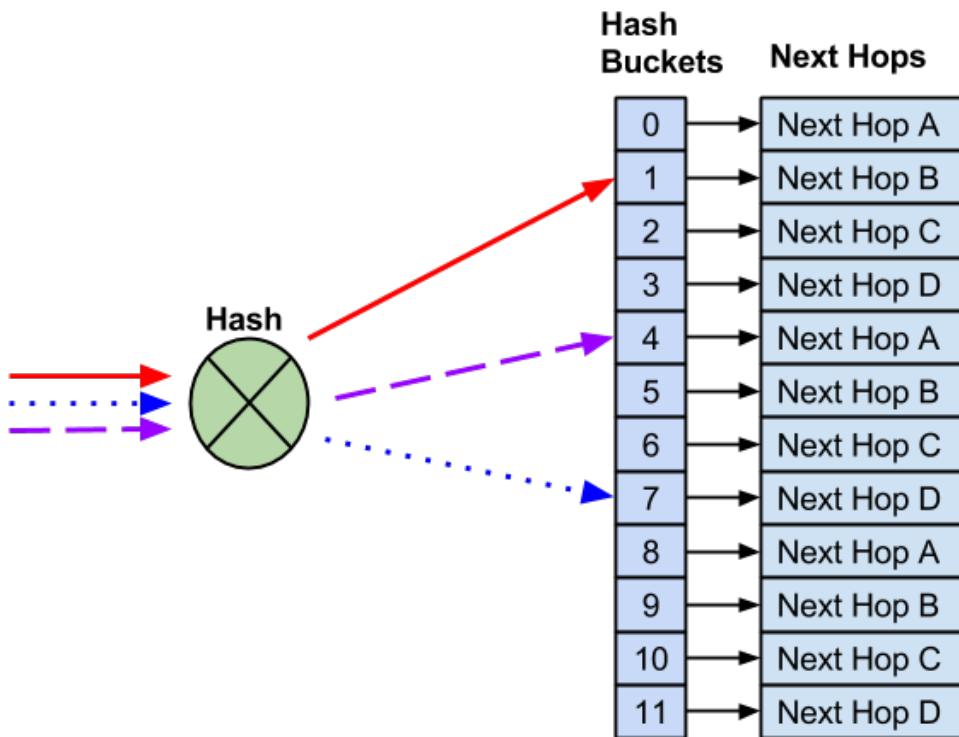
Resilient hashing prevents disruptions when new next hops are removed. It does not prevent disruption when next hops are added.



Resilient hashing is supported only on switches with the [Broadcom Tomahawk](#), [Trident II+](#) and [Trident II](#) as well as [Mellanox Spectrum](#) chipsets. You can run `net show system` to determine the chipset.

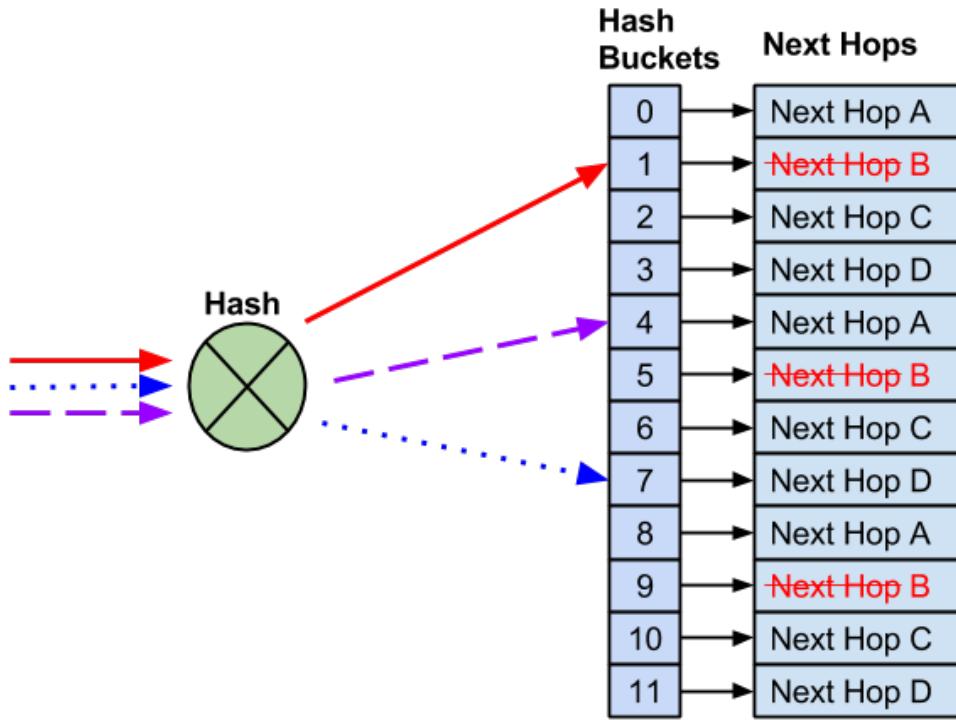
## *Resilient Hash Buckets*

When resilient hashing is configured, a fixed number of buckets are defined. Next hops are then assigned in round robin fashion to each of those buckets. In this example, 12 buckets are created and four next hops are assigned.

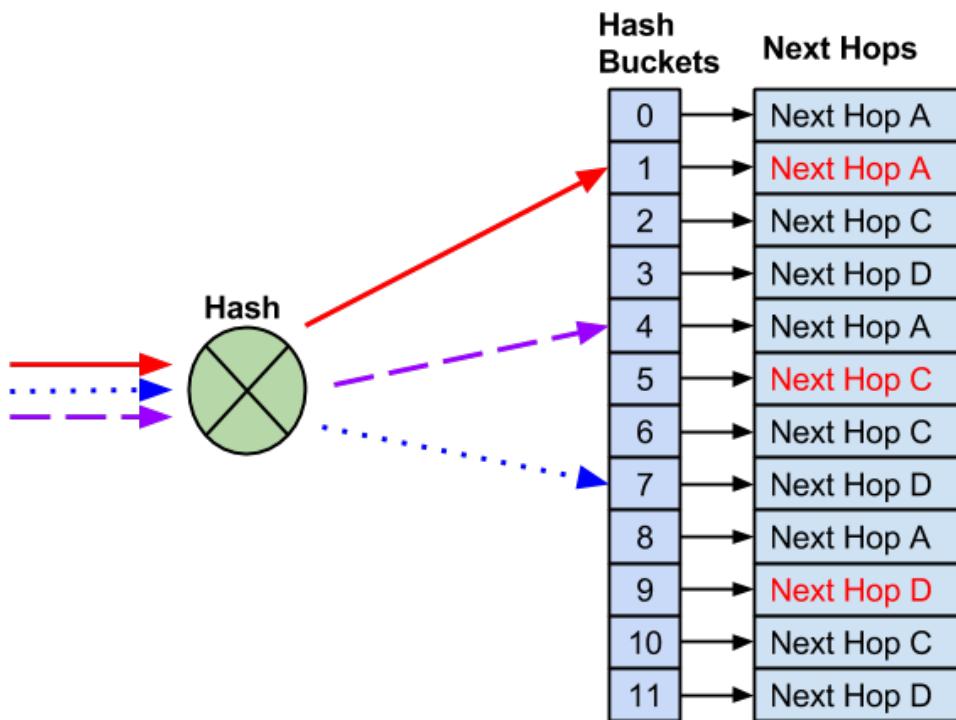


## *Removing Next Hops*

Unlike default ECMP hashing, when a next hop needs to be removed, the number of hash buckets does not change.



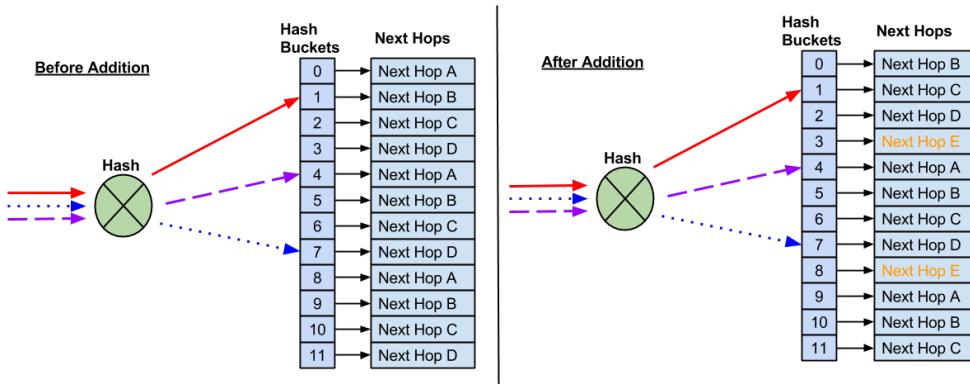
With 12 buckets assigned and four next hops, instead of reducing the number of buckets — which would impact flows to known good hosts — the remaining next hops replace the failed next hop.



After the failed next hop is removed, the remaining next hops are installed as replacements. This prevents impact to any flows that hash to working next hops.

## *Adding Next Hops*

Resilient hashing does not prevent possible impact to existing flows when new next hops are added. Due to the fact there are a fixed number of buckets, a new next hop requires reassigning next hops to buckets.



As a result, some flows may hash to new next hops, which can impact anycast deployments.

## *Configuring Resilient Hashing*

Resilient hashing is not enabled by default. When resilient hashing is enabled, 65,536 buckets are created to be shared among all ECMP groups. An ECMP group is a list of unique next hops that are referenced by multiple ECMP routes.



An ECMP route counts as a single route with multiple next hops. The following example is considered to be a single ECMP route:

```
$ ip route show 10.1.1.0/24
10.1.1.0/24 proto zebra metric 20
nexthop via 192.168.1.1 dev swp1 weight 1 onlink
nexthop via 192.168.2.1 dev swp2 weight 1 onlink
```

All ECMP routes must use the same number of buckets (the number of buckets cannot be configured per ECMP route).

The number of buckets can be configured as 64, 128, 256, 512 or 1024; the default is 128:

Number of Hash Buckets	Number of Supported ECMP Groups
64	1024
<b>128</b>	<b>512</b>



Number of Hash Buckets	Number of Supported ECMP Groups
256	256
512	128
1024	64

A larger number of ECMP buckets reduces the impact on adding new next hops to an ECMP route. However, the system supports fewer ECMP routes. If the maximum number of ECMP routes have been installed, new ECMP routes log an error and are not installed.

To enable resilient hashing, edit `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf`:

1. Enable resilient hashing:

```
# Enable resilient hashing
resilient_hash_enable = TRUE
```

2. **(Optional)** Edit the number of hash buckets:

```
# Resilient hashing flowset entries per ECMP group
# Valid values - 64, 128, 256, 512, 1024
resilient_hash_entries_ecmp = 256
```

3. Restart (see page 193) the `switchd` service:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart switchd.service
```

## Redistribute Neighbor

*Redistribute neighbor* provides a mechanism for IP subnets to span racks without forcing the end hosts to run a routing protocol.

The fundamental premise behind redistribute neighbor is to announce individual host /32 routes in the routed fabric. Other hosts on the fabric can then use this new path to access the hosts in the fabric. If multiple equal-cost paths (ECMP) are available, traffic can load balance across the available paths natively.

The challenge is to accurately compile and update this list of reachable hosts or neighbors. Luckily, existing commonly-deployed protocols are available to solve this problem. Hosts use [ARP](#) to resolve MAC addresses when sending to an IPv4 address. A host then builds an ARP cache table of known MAC addresses: IPv4 tuples as they receive or respond to ARP requests.

In the case of a leaf switch, where the default gateway is deployed for hosts within the rack, the ARP cache table contains a list of all hosts that have ARP'd for their default gateway. In many scenarios, this table contains all the layer 3 information that's needed. This is where redistribute neighbor comes in, as it is a mechanism of formatting and syncing this table into the routing protocol.



## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- [Availability \(see page 688\)](#)
- [Target Use Cases and Best Practices \(see page 688\)](#)
- [How It Works \(see page 689\)](#)
- [Configuration Steps \(see page 689\)
  - \[Configuring the Leaf\\(s\\) \\(see page 689\\)\]\(#\)
  - \[Configuring the Host\\(s\\) \\(see page 692\\)\]\(#\)](#)
- [Known Limitations \(see page 693\)
  - \[TCAM Route Scale \\(see page 693\\)\]\(#\)
  - \[Possible Uneven Traffic Distribution \\(see page 693\\)\]\(#\)
  - \[Silent Hosts Never Receive Traffic \\(see page 693\\)\]\(#\)
  - \[Support for IPv4 Only \\(see page 693\\)\]\(#\)
  - \[VRFs Are not Supported \\(see page 693\\)\]\(#\)
  - \[Only 1024 Interfaces Supported \\(see page 693\\)\]\(#\)](#)
- [Troubleshooting \(see page 693\)
  - \[Verification \\(see page 696\\)\]\(#\)](#)

## Availability

Redistribute neighbor is distributed as `python-rdnbrd`.

## Target Use Cases and Best Practices

Redistribute neighbor was created with these use cases in mind:

- Virtualized clusters
- Hosts with service IP addresses that migrate between racks
- Hosts that are dual connected to two leaf nodes without using proprietary protocols such as [MLAG \(see page 351\)](#)
- Anycast services needing dynamic advertisement from multiple hosts

Cumulus Networks recommends following these guidelines with redistribute neighbor:

- Use a single logical connection from each host to each leaf.
- A host can connect to one or more leafs. Each leaf advertises the /32 it sees in its neighbor table.
- A host-bound bridge/VLAN should be local to each switch only.
- Leaf switches with redistribute neighbor enabled should be directly connected to the hosts.
- IP addressing must be non-overlapping, as the host IPs are directly advertised into the routed fabric.
- Run redistribute neighbor on Linux-based hosts primarily; other host operating systems may work, but Cumulus Networks has not actively tested any at this stage.

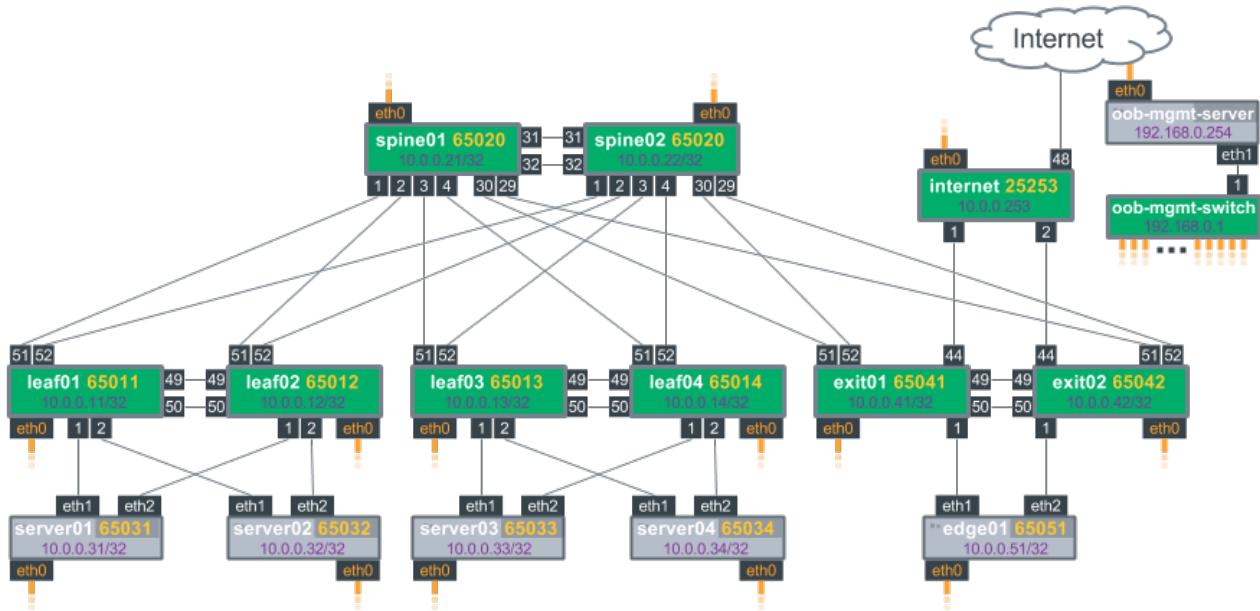
## How It Works

Redistribute neighbor works as follows:

1. The leaf/ToR switches learn about connected hosts when the host sends an ARP request or ARP reply.
2. An entry for the host is added to the kernel neighbor table of each leaf switch.
3. The redistribute neighbor daemon, `rdnbrd`, monitors the kernel neighbor table and creates a /32 route for each neighbor entry. This /32 route is created in kernel table 10.
4. FRRouting is configured to import routes from kernel table 10.
5. A route-map is used to control which routes from table 10 are imported.
6. In FRRouting these routes are imported as *table* routes.
7. BGP, OSPF and so forth are then configured to redistribute the table 10 routes.

## Configuration Steps

The following configuration steps are based on the [reference topology](#) set forth by Cumulus Networks. Here is a diagram of the topology:



## Configuring the Leaf(s)

The following steps demonstrate how to configure leaf01, but the same steps can be applied to any of the leafs.

1. Configure the host facing ports, using the same IP address on both host-facing interfaces as well as a /32 prefix. In this case, `swp1` and `swp2` are configured as they are the ports facing server01 and server02:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add loopback lo ip address 10.0.0.11/32
```



```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add interface swp1-2 ip address 10.0.0.11  
/32  
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net pending  
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net commit
```

The commands produce the following configuration in the /etc/network/interfaces file:

```
auto lo  
iface lo inet loopback  
    address 10.0.0.11/32  
  
auto swp1  
iface swp1  
    address 10.0.0.11/32  
  
auto swp2  
iface swp2  
    address 10.0.0.11/32
```

2. Enable the daemon so it starts at bootup:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo systemctl enable rdnbrd.service
```

3. Start the daemon:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo systemctl restart rdnbrd.service
```

4. Configure routing:
  - Define a route-map that matches on the host-facing interfaces:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add routing route-map REDIST_NEIGHBOR  
permit 10 match interface swp1  
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add routing route-map REDIST_NEIGHBOR  
permit 20 match interface swp2
```

- Import routing table 10 and apply the route-map:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add routing import-table 10 route-map  
REDIST_NEIGHBOR
```

- Redistribute the imported *table* routes in into the appropriate routing protocol.

**BGP:**



```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add bgp autonomous-system 65001
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add bgp ipv4 unicast redistribute
table 10
```

**OSPF:**

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add ospf redistribute table 10
```

- d. Save the configuration by committing your changes.

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net pending
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net commit
```

[Click here to expand the contents of /etc/frr/frr.conf](#)

This configuration uses OSPF as the routing protocol.

```
cumulus@leaf01$ cat /etc/frr/frr.conf
frr version 3.1+cl3ul1
frr defaults datacenter
ip import-table 10 route-map REDIST_NEIGHBOR
username cumulus nopassword
!
service integrated-vtysh-config
!
log syslog informational
!
router bgp 65001
!
address-family ipv4 unicast
  redistribute table 10
exit-address-family
!
route-map REDIST_NEIGHBOR permit 10
  match interface swp1
!
route-map REDIST_NEIGHBOR permit 20
  match interface swp2
!
router ospf
  redistribute table 10
!
line vty
!
```



## Configuring the Host(s)

There are a few possible host configurations that range in complexity. This document only covers the basic use case: dual-connected Linux hosts with static IP addresses assigned.

Additional host configurations will be covered in future separate knowledge base articles.

## Configuring a Dual-connected Host

Configure a host with the same /32 IP address on its loopback (lo) and uplinks (in this example, eth1 and eth2). This is done so both leaf switches advertise the same /32 regardless of the interface. Cumulus Linux relies on [ECMP \(see page 679\)](#) to load balance across the interfaces southbound, and an equal cost static route (see the configuration below) for load balancing northbound.

The loopback hosts the primary service IP address(es) and to which you can bind services.

Configure the loopback and physical interfaces. Referring back to the topology diagram, server01 is connected to leaf01 via eth1 and to leaf02 via eth2. You should note:

- The loopback IP is assigned to lo, eth1 and eth2.
- The post-up ARPing is used to force the host to ARP as soon as its interface comes up. This allows the leaf to learn about the host as soon as possible.
- The post-up ip route replace is used to install a default route via one or both leaf nodes if both swp1 and swp2 are up.

```
user@server01:$ cat /etc/network/interfaces
# The loopback network interface
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback

auto lo:1
iface lo:1
    address 10.1.0.101/32

auto eth1
iface eth1
    address 10.1.0.101/32
    post-up for i in {1..3}; do arping -q -c 1 -w 0 -i eth1
10.0.0.11; sleep 1; done
    post-up ip route add 0.0.0.0/0 nexthop via 10.0.0.11 dev eth1
onlink nexthop via 10.0.0.12 dev eth2 onlink || true

auto eth2
iface eth2
    address 10.1.0.101/32
    post-up for i in {1..3}; do arping -q -c 1 -w 0 -i eth2
10.0.0.12; sleep 1; done
    post-up ip route add 0.0.0.0/0 nexthop via 10.0.0.11 dev eth1
onlink nexthop via 10.0.0.12 dev eth2 onlink || true
```



## *Installing ifplugd*

Additionally, install and use [ifplugd \(see page 392\)](#). `ifplugd` modifies the behavior of the Linux routing table when an interface undergoes a link transition (carrier up/down). The Linux kernel by default leaves routes up even when the physical interface is unavailable (NO-CARRIER).

After you install `ifplugd`, edit `/etc/default/ifplugd` as follows, where `eth1` and `eth2` are the interface names that your host uses to connect to the leaves.

```
user@server01:$ cat /etc/default/ifplugd
INTERFACES="eth1 eth2"
HOTPLUG_INTERFACES=""
ARGS="-q -f -u10 -d10 -w -I"
SUSPEND_ACTION="stop"
```

For full instructions on installing `ifplugd` on Ubuntu, [follow this guide](#).

## **Known Limitations**

### *TCAM Route Scale*

This feature adds each ARP entry as a /32 host route into the routing table of all switches within a summarization domain. Take care to keep the number of hosts minus fabric routes under the TCAM size of the switch. Review the [Cumulus Networks datasheets](#) for up to date scalability limits of your chosen hardware platforms. If in doubt, contact Cumulus Networks support or your Cumulus Networks CSE; they will be happy to help.

### *Possible Uneven Traffic Distribution*

Linux uses source L3 addresses only to do load balancing on most older distributions.

### *Silent Hosts Never Receive Traffic*

Freshly provisioned hosts that have never sent traffic may not ARP for their default gateways. The post-up ARPing in `/etc/network/interfaces` on the host should take care of this. If the host does not ARP, then `rdbnrd` on the leaf cannot learn about the host.

### *Support for IPv4 Only*

This release of redistribute neighbor supports IPv4 only.

### *VRFs Are not Supported*

This release of redistribute neighbor does not support [VRFs \(see page 696\)](#).

### *Only 1024 Interfaces Supported*

Redistribute neighbor does not work with more than 1024 interfaces. Doing so can cause the `rdbnrd` service to crash.



## Troubleshooting

- **How do I determine if rdnbrd (the redistribute neighbor daemon) is running?**

Use `systemctl` to check:

```
cumulus@leaf01$ systemctl status rdnbrd.service
* rdnbrd.service - Cumulus Linux Redistribute Neighbor Service
  Loaded: loaded (/lib/systemd/system/rdnbrd.service; enabled)
  Active: active (running) since Wed 2016-05-04 18:29:03 UTC; 1h
  13min ago
    Main PID: 1501 (python)
      CGroup: /system.slice/rdnbrd.service
             `--1501 /usr/bin/python /usr/sbin/rdnbrd -d
```

- **How do I change rdnbrd's default configuration?**

By editing `/etc/rdnbrd.conf` then running `systemctl restart rdnbrd.service`:

```
cumulus@leaf01$ cat /etc/rdnbrd.conf
# syslog logging level CRITICAL, ERROR, WARNING, INFO, or DEBUG
loglevel = INFO

# TX an ARP request to known hosts every keepalive seconds
keepalive = 1

# If a host does not send an ARP reply for holdtime consider the
host down
holdtime = 3

# Install /32 routes for each host into this table
route_table = 10

# Uncomment to enable ARP debugs on specific interfaces.
# Note that ARP debugs can be very chatty.
# debug_arp = swp1 swp2 swp3 br1
# If we already know the MAC for a host, unicast the ARP
request. This is
# unusual for ARP (why ARP if you know the destination MAC) but
we will be
# using ARP as a keepalive mechanism and do not want to
broadcast so many ARPs
# if we do not have to. If a host cannot handle a unicasted ARP
request, set
# the following option to False.
#
# Unicasting ARP requests is common practice (in some scenarios)
for other
# networking operating systems so it is unlikely that you will
need to set
# this to False.
```



```
unicast_arp_requests = True  
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo systemctl restart rdnbrd.service
```

- **What is table 10? Why was table 10 chosen?**

The Linux kernel supports multiple routing tables and has the ability to utilize 0 through 255 as table IDs. However, tables 0, 253, 254 and 255 are reserved, and 1 is usually the first one utilized, so `rdnbrd` only allows you to specify 2-252. The number 10 was chosen for no particular reason. Feel free to set it to any value between 2-252. You can see all the tables specified here:

```
cumulus@switch$ cat /etc/iproute2/rt_tables  
#  
# reserved values  
#  
255 local  
254 main  
253 default  
0 unspec  
#  
# local  
#  
#1 inr.ruhep
```

Read more information on [Linux route tables](#), or you can read the [Ubuntu man pages for ip route](#).

- **How do I determine that the /32 redistribute neighbor routes are being advertised to my neighbor?**

For BGP, check the advertised routes to the neighbor.

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ sudo vtysh  
Hello, this is Quagga (version 0.99.23.1+cl3u2).  
Copyright 1996-2005 Kunihiro Ishiguro, et al.  
leaf01# show ip bgp neighbor swp51 advertised-routes  
BGP table version is 5, local router ID is 10.0.0.11  
Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, >  
best, = multipath,  
          i internal, r RIB-failure, S Stale, R Removed  
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete  
  
      Network          Next Hop            Metric LocPrf Weight Path  
*> 10.0.0.11/32    0.0.0.0                  0        32768 i  
*> 10.0.0.12/32    ::                      0  
65020 65012 i  
*> 10.0.0.21/32    ::                      0  
65020 i  
*> 10.0.0.22/32    ::                      0  
65020 i  
  
Total number of prefixes 4
```



## Verification

The following workflow can be used to verify that the kernel routing table is being correctly populated, and that routes are being correctly imported/advertised:

1. Verify that ARP neighbour entries are being populated into the Kernel routing table 10.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip route show table 10  
10.0.1.101 dev swp1 scope link
```

If these routes are not being generated, verify the following:

- That the `rdnbrd` daemon is running
- Check `/etc/rdnbrd.conf` to verify the correct table number is used

2. Verify that routes are being imported into FRRouting from the kernel routing table 10.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh  
Hello, this is Quagga (version 0.99.23.1+cl3u2).  
Copyright 1996-2005 Kunihiro Ishiguro, et al.  
  
switch# show ip route table  
Codes: K - kernel route, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP,  
       O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP, A - Babel, T - Table,  
       > - selected route, * - FIB route  
T[10]>* 10.0.1.101/32 [19/0] is directly connected, swp1, 01:25:  
29
```

Both the `>` and `*` should be present so that table 10 routes are installed as preferred into the routing table. If the routes are not being installed, verify the following:

- The imported distance of the locally imported kernel routes using the `ip import 10 distance X` command, where X is **not** less than the administrative distance of the routing protocol. If the distance is too low, routes learned from the protocol may overwrite the locally imported routes.
- The routes are in the kernel routing table.

3. Confirm that routes are in the BGP/OSPF database and being advertised.

```
switch# show ip bgp
```

## Virtual Routing and Forwarding - VRF

Cumulus Linux provides *virtual routing and forwarding* (VRF) to allow for the presence of multiple independent routing tables working simultaneously on the same router or switch. This permits multiple network paths without the need for multiple switches. Think of this feature as VLAN for layer 3, but unlike VLANs, there is no field in the IP header carrying it. Other implementations call this feature *VRF-Lite*.



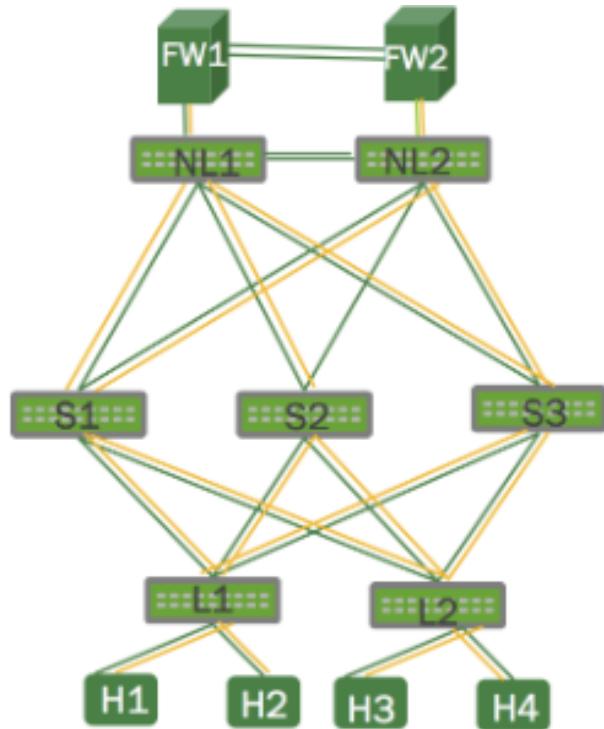
The primary use cases for VRF in a data center are similar to VLANs at layer 2: using common physical infrastructure to carry multiple isolated traffic streams for multi-tenant environments, where these streams are allowed to cross over only at configured boundary points, typically firewalls or IDS. You can also use it to burst traffic from private clouds to enterprise networks where the burst point is at layer 3. Or you can use it in an OpenStack deployment.

VRF is fully supported in the Linux kernel, so it has the following characteristics:

- The VRF is presented as a layer 3 master network device with its own associated routing table.
- The layer 3 interfaces (VLAN interfaces, bonds, switch virtual interfaces/SVIs) associated with the VRF are enslaved to that VRF; IP rules direct FIB (forwarding information base) lookups to the routing table for the VRF device.
- The VRF device can have its own IP address, known as a *VRF-local loopback*.
- Applications can use existing interfaces to operate in a VRF context — by binding sockets to the VRF device or passing the `ifindex` using `cmsg`. By default, applications on the switch run against the default VRF. Services started by `systemd` run in the default VRF unless the VRF instance is used. If [management VRF \(see page 720\)](#) is enabled, logins to the switch default to the management VRF. This is a convenience for users to not have to specify management VRF for each command.
- Listen sockets used by services are VRF-global by default unless the application is configured to use a more limited scope — for example, read about [services in the management VRF \(see page 722\)](#). Connected sockets (like TCP) are then bound to the VRF domain in which the connection originates. The kernel provides a sysctl that allows a single instance to accept connections over all VRFs. For TCP, connected sockets are bound to the VRF the first packet was received. This sysctl is enabled for Cumulus Linux.
- Connected and local routes are placed in appropriate VRF tables.
- Neighbor entries continue to be per-interface, and you can view all entries associated with the VRF device.
- A VRF does not map to its own network namespace; however, you can nest VRFs in a network namespace.
- You can use existing Linux tools to interact with it, such as `tcpdump`.

Cumulus Linux supports up to 64 VRFs on a switch.

You configure VRF by associating each subset of interfaces to a VRF routing table, and configuring an instance of the routing protocol — BGP or OSPFv2 — for each routing table.



## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Configuring VRF (see page 698)
  - Specifying a Table ID (see page 699)
  - Configure Route Leaking (see page 699)
  - Bringing a VRF Up after Downing It with ifdown (see page 700)
  - Using the vrf Command (see page 700)
  - Services in VRFs (see page 701)
- FRRouting Operation in a VRF (see page 702)
  - Example BGP and OSPF Configurations (see page 703)
- Example Commands to Show VRF Data (see page 705)
  - Showing VRF Data Using NCLU Commands (see page 705)
  - Showing VRF Data Using FRRouting Commands (see page 707)
  - Showing VRF Data Using ip Commands (see page 709)
- Using BGP Unnumbered Interfaces with VRF (see page 713)
- Using DHCP with VRF (see page 715)
  - Caveats for DHCP with VRF (see page 716)
  - Example Configuration (see page 716)
- Using ping or traceroute (see page 719)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 720)



## Configuring VRF

Each routing table is called a *VRF table*, and has its own table ID. You configure VRF using [NCLU \(see page 85\)](#), then place the layer 3 interface in the VRF. You can have a maximum of 64 VRFs on a switch.

When you configure a VRF, you follow a similar process to other network interfaces. Keep in mind the following for a VRF table:

- It can have an IP address, a loopback interface for the VRF.
- Associated rules are added automatically.
- You can also add a default route to avoid skipping across tables when the kernel forwards the packet.
- Names for VRF tables can be up to 15 characters. However, you **cannot** use the name *mgmt*, as this name can **only** be used for [management VRF \(see page 720\)](#).

To configure a VRF, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vrf red vrf-table auto
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 vrf red
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands result in the following VRF configuration in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```
auto red
iface red
    vrf-table auto

auto swp1
iface swp1
    vrf red
```

## Specifying a Table ID

Instead of having Cumulus Linux assign a table ID for the VRF table, you can specify your own table ID in the configuration. The table ID to name mapping is saved in `/etc/iproute2/rt_tables.d/` for name-based references. So instead of using the `auto` option above, specify the table ID like this:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vrf red vrf-table 1016
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```



If you do specify a table ID, it **must** be in the range of 1001 to 1255 which is reserved in Cumulus Linux for VRF table IDs.



## Configure Route Leaking

Route leaking enables route prefixes from one VRF instance to be leaked to another VRF instance on the same switch. The example command below adds a new route specification (5.5.5.0/24) to a VRF named *blue*, with a device named *swp2*. For this example, *swp2* is assumed to be part of a second VRF, named *red*:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip route add vrf blue 5.5.5.0/24 dev swp2
```



If you are trying to leak a static route in a VRF, the operation is handled in software and is not hardware accelerated, so there is a noticeable performance impact.

## Bringing a VRF Up after Downing It with ifdown

If you take down a VRF using `ifdown`, to bring it back up you need to do one of two things:

- Use `ifup --with-dependents <vrf>`
- Use `ifreload -a`

For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifdown red
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifup --with-dependents red
```

## Using the vrf Command

The `vrf` command returns information about VRF tables that is otherwise not available in other Linux commands, such as `iproute`. You can also use it to execute non-VRF-specific commands and perform other tasks related to VRF tables.

To get a list of VRF tables, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ vrf list
VRF          Table
-----
red          1016
```

To return a list of processes and PIDs associated with a specific VRF table, run `vrf task list <vrf-name>`. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ vrf task list red
VRF: red
-----
```



dhclient	2508
sshd	2659
bash	2681
su	2702
bash	2720
vrf	2829

To determine which VRF table is associated with a particular PID, run `vrf task identify <pid>`. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ vrf task identify 2829  
red
```

## Running IPv4 and IPv6 Commands in a VRF Context

You can execute non-VRF-specific Linux commands and perform other tasks against a given VRF table. This typically applies to single-use commands started from a login shell, as they affect only AF\_INET and AF\_INET6 sockets opened by the command that gets executed; it has no impact on netlink sockets, associated with the `ip` command.

To execute such a command against a VRF table, run `vrf task exec <vrf-name> <command>`. For example, to SSH from the switch to a device accessible through VRF `red`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vrf task exec red ssh user@host
```

You should manage long-running services with `systemd` using the `service@vrf` notation; for example, `systemctl start ntp@mgmt`. `systemd`-based services are stopped when a VRF is deleted and started when the VRF is created. For example, restarting networking or running an `ifdown/ifup` sequence.

## Services in VRFs

For services that need to run against a specific VRF, Cumulus Linux uses `systemd` instances, where the instance is the VRF. In general, you start a service within a VRF like this:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start <service>@<vrf>
```

For example, you can run the NTP service in the blue VRF using:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start ntp@blue
```

In most cases, the instance running in the default VRF needs to be stopped before a VRF instance can start. This is because the instance running in the default VRF owns the port across all VRFs — that is, it is VRF global. `systemd`-based services are stopped when the VRF is deleted and started when the VRF is created. For example, when you restart networking or run an `ifdown/ifup` sequence — as mentioned above. The [management VRF chapter](#) (see page 722) details how to do this.

In Cumulus Linux, the following services work with VRF instances:

- chef-client
- collectd
- dhcpcd
- dhcrelay
- hsflowd
- netq-agent
- ntp
- puppet
- snmpd
- snmptrapd
- ssh
- zabbix-agent



There are cases where `systemd` instances do not work; you must use a service-specific configuration option instead. For example, you can configure `rsyslogd` to send messages to remote systems over a VRF:

```
action(type="omfwd" Target="hostname or ip here" Device="mgmt"
Port=514
Protocol="udp")
```

## FRouting Operation in a VRF

In Cumulus Linux 3.5 and later, [BGP](#) (see page 636), [OSPFv2](#) (see page 620) and [static routing](#) (see page 592) (IPv4 and IPv6) are supported within a VRF context. Various FRRouting routing constructs, such as routing tables, nexthops, router-id, and related processing are also VRF-aware.

[FRRouting](#) (see page 603) learns of VRFs provisioned on the system as well as interface attachment to a VRF through notifications from the kernel.

You can assign switch ports to each VRF table with an interface-level configuration, and BGP instances can be assigned to the table with a BGP router-level command.

Because BGP is VRF-aware, they support per-VRF neighbors, both iBGP and eBGP as well as numbered and unnumbered interfaces. Non-interface-based VRF neighbors are bound to the VRF, which is how you can have overlapping address spaces in different VRFs. Each VRF can have its own parameters, such as address families and redistribution. Incoming connections rely on the Linux kernel for VRF-global sockets. BGP neighbors can be tracked using [BFD](#) (see page 672), both for single and multiple hops. You can configure multiple BGP instances, associating each with a VRF.

A VRF-aware OSPFv2 configuration also supports numbered and unnumbered interfaces. Supported layer 3 interfaces include SVIs, sub-interfaces and physical interfaces. The VRF supports types 1 through 5 (ABR /ASBR – external LSAs) and types 9 through 11 (opaque LSAs) link state advertisements, redistributing other routing protocols, connected and static routes, and route maps. As with BGP, you can track OSPF neighbors with [BFD](#) (see page 672).



VRFs are provisioned using NCLU. VRFs can be pre-provisioned in FRRouting too, but they become active only when configured with NCLU.

- You pre-provision a VRF in FRRouting by running the command `vrf vrf-name`.
- A BGP instance corresponding to a VRF can be pre-provisioned by configuring `net add bgp vrf <VRF> autonomous-system <ASN>`. Under this context, all existing BGP parameters can be configured: neighbors, peer-groups, address-family configuration, redistribution, and so forth.
- An OSPFv2 instance can be configured using the `net add ospf vrf <VRF>` command; as with BGP, all OSPFv2 parameters can be configured.
- Static routes (IPv4 and IPv6) can be provisioned in a VRF by specifying the VRF along with the static route configuration. For example, `ip route prefix dev vrf vrf-name`. The VRF has to exist for this configuration to be accepted — either already defined through `/etc/network/interfaces` or pre-provisioned in FRRouting. If you want to leak a static route in a VRF, see the note above (see page 700).

## Example BGP and OSPF Configurations

Here's an example VRF configuration in BGP:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1012 autonomous-system 64900
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1012 router-id 6.0.2.7
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1012 neighbor ISL peer-group
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1012 neighbor ISLv6 peer-group
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1012 neighbor swp1.2 interface
v6only peer-group ISLv6
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1012 neighbor swp1.2 remote-as
external
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1012 neighbor swp3.2 interface
v6only peer-group ISLv6
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1012 neighbor swp3.2 remote-as
external
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1012 neighbor 169.254.2.18
remote-as external
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1012 neighbor 169.254.2.18 peer-
group ISL
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1012 ipv4 unicast network
20.7.2.0/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1012 ipv4 unicast neighbor ISL
activate
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1012 neighbor ISL route-map
ALLOW_BR2 out
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1012 ipv6 unicast network 2003:7:2::/125
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1012 ipv6 unicast neighbor ISLv6
activate
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1012 neighbor ISLv6 route-map
ALLOW_BR2_v6 out
```

These commands produce the following configuration in the `/etc/frr/frr.conf` file:

```

router bgp 64900 vrf vrf1012
  bgp router-id 6.0.2.7
  no bgp default ipv4-unicast
  neighbor ISL peer-group
  neighbor ISLv6 peer-group
  neighbor swp1.2 interface v6only peer-group ISLv6
  neighbor swp1.2 remote-as external
  neighbor swp3.2 interface v6only peer-group ISLv6
  neighbor swp3.2 remote-as external
  neighbor 169.254.2.18 remote-as external
  neighbor 169.254.2.18 peer-group ISL
!
address-family ipv4 unicast
  network 20.7.2.0/24
  neighbor ISL activate
  neighbor ISL route-map ALLOW_BR2 out
exit-address-family
!
address-family ipv6 unicast
  network 2003:7:2::/125
  neighbor ISLv6 activate
  neighbor ISLv6 route-map ALLOW_BR2_v6 out
exit-address-family
!
```

Here is the FRRouting OSPF configuration:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ net add ospf vrf vrf1
cumulus@switch:~$ net add ospf vrf vrf1 router-id 4.4.4.4
cumulus@switch:~$ net add ospf vrf vrf1 log-adjacency-changes detail
cumulus@switch:~$ net add ospf vrf vrf1 network 10.0.0.0/24 area
0.0.0.1
cumulus@switch:~$ net add ospf vrf vrf1 network 9.9.0.0/16 area
0.0.0.0
cumulus@switch:~$ net add ospf vrf vrf1 redistribute connected
cumulus@switch:~$ net add ospf vrf vrf1 redistribute bgp
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration in the `/etc/frr/frr.conf` file:

```

router ospf vrf vrf1
  ospf router-id 4.4.4.4
  log-adjacency-changes detail
  redistribute connected
  redistribute bgp
  network 9.9.0.0/16 area 0.0.0.0
  network 10.0.0.0/24 area 0.0.0.1
```



!

## Example Commands to Show VRF Data

There are a number of ways to interact with VRFs, including NCLU, `vtysh` (the FRRouting CLI) and `iproute2`.

### *Showing VRF Data Using NCLU Commands*

To show the routes in the VRF:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show route vrf red
RIB entry for red
=====
Codes: K - kernel route, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP,
       O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP, T - Table,
       > - selected route, * - FIB route

C>* 169.254.2.8/30 is directly connected, swp1.2
C>* 169.254.2.12/30 is directly connected, swp2.2
C>* 169.254.2.16/30 is directly connected, swp3.2
```

To show the BGP summary for the VRF:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show bgp vrf red summary
BGP router identifier 6.0.2.7, local AS number 64900 vrf-id 14
BGP table version 0
RIB entries 1, using 120 bytes of memory
Peers 6, using 97 KiB of memory
Peer groups 2, using 112 bytes of memory

Neighbor          V     AS MsgRcvd MsgSent      TblVer  InQ OutQ Up/Down
State/PfxRcd
s3(169.254.2.18)
                  4 65000  102039  102040          0      0      0
3d13h03m          0
s1(169.254.2.10)
                  4 65000  102039  102040          0      0      0
3d13h03m          0
s2(169.254.2.14)
                  4 65000  102039  102040          0      0      0
3d13h03m          0

Total number of neighbors 3
```

To show BGP (IPv4) routes in the VRF:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show bgp vrf vrf1012
BGP table version is 0, local router ID is 6.0.2.7
Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, > best, =
multipath,
          i internal, r RIB-failure, S Stale, R Removed
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete

      Network          Next Hop          Metric LocPrf Weight Path
  20.7.2.0/24        0.0.0.0            0          32768 i

Total number of prefixes 1
```

However, to show BGP IPv6 routes in the VRF, you need to use vtysh, the FRRouting CLI:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh
switch# show bgp vrf vrf1012
BGP table version is 0, local router ID is 6.0.2.7
Status codes: s suppressed, d damped, h history, * valid, > best, =
multipath,
          i internal, r RIB-failure, S Stale, R Removed
Origin codes: i - IGP, e - EGP, ? - incomplete

      Network          Next Hop          Metric LocPrf Weight Path
  2003:7:2::/125      ::                 0          32768 i

Total number of prefixes 1
switch# exit
cumulus@switch:~$
```

To show the OSPF VRFs:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show ospf vrf all
Name                      Id      RouterId
Default-IP-Routing-Table  0       6.0.0.7
vrf1012                   45      9.9.12.7
vrf1013                   52      9.9.13.7
vrf1014                   59      9.9.14.7
vrf1015                   65535   0.0.0.0      <- OSPF
instance not active, pre-provisioned config.
vrf1016                   65535   0.0.0.0

Total number of OSPF VRFs: 6
```

To show all the OSPF routes in a VRF:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show ospf vrf vrf1012 route
```



```
Codes: K - kernel route, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP,
       O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP, P - PIM, E - EIGRP, N - NHRP,
       T - Table, v - VNC, V - VNC-Direct, A - Babel,
       > - selected route, * - FIB route

VRF vrf1012:
O>* 6.0.0.1/32 [110/210] via 200.254.2.10, swp2s0.2, 00:13:30
  *
  *
  *
O>* 6.0.0.2/32 [110/210] via 200.254.2.10, swp2s0.2, 00:13:30
  *
  *
  *
O>* 9.9.12.5/32 [110/20] via 200.254.2.10, swp2s0.2, 00:13:29
  *
  *
  *
```

## Showing VRF Data Using FRRouting Commands

Show all VRFs learned by FRRouting from the kernel. The table ID shows the corresponding routing table in the kernel either automatically assigned or manually defined:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh
switch# show vrf
vrf vrf1012 id 14 table 1012
vrf vrf1013 id 21 table 1013
vrf vrf1014 id 28 table 1014
switch# exit
cumulus@switch:~$
```

Show VRFs configured in BGP, including the default. A non-zero ID is a VRF that has also been actually provisioned — that is, defined in /etc/network/interfaces:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh
switch# show bgp vrf
Type  Id      RouterId          #PeersCfg  #PeersEstb  Name
DFLT  0       6.0.0.7           0          0          Default
VRF   14      6.0.2.7           6          6          vrf1012
VRF   21      6.0.3.7           6          6          vrf1013
VRF   28      6.0.4.7           6          6          vrf1014

Total number of VRFs (including default): 4
switch# exit
cumulus@switch:~$
```

Display interfaces known to FRRouting and attached to this VRF:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh
```



```
switch# show interface vrf vrf1012
Interface br2 is up, line protocol is down
  PTM status: disabled
  vrf: vrf1012
  index 13 metric 0 mtu 1500
  flags: <UP,BROADCAST,MULTICAST>
  inet 20.7.2.1/24

  inet6 fe80::202:ff:fe00:a/64
    ND advertised reachable time is 0 milliseconds
    ND advertised retransmit interval is 0 milliseconds
    ND router advertisements are sent every 600 seconds
    ND router advertisements lifetime tracks ra-interval
    ND router advertisement default router preference is medium
    Hosts use stateless autoconfig for addresses.
switch# exit
cumulus@switch:~$
```

To show VRFs configured in OSPF:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh
switch# show ip ospf vrf
Name           Id      RouterId
Default-IP-Routing-Table 0      0.0.0.0
red            57      0.0.0.10
blue           58      0.0.0.20
Total number of OSPF VRFs (including default): 3
switch# exit
cumulus@switch:~$
```

To show all OSPF routes in a VRF:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh
switch# show ip ospf vrf all route
=====
OSPF network routing table =====
N    7.0.0.0/24          [10] area: 0.0.0.0
                                directly attached to swp2

=====
OSPF router routing table =====

=====
OSPF external routing table =====

=====
OSPF network routing table =====
N    8.0.0.0/24          [10] area: 0.0.0.0
                                directly attached to swp1

=====
OSPF router routing table =====

=====
OSPF external routing table =====
```



```
switch# exit  
cumulus@switch:~$
```

To see the routing table for each VRF, use the `show ip route vrf all` command. The OSPF route is denoted in the row that starts with O:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh  
switch# show ip route vrf all  
Codes: K - kernel route, C - connected, S - static, R - RIP,  
       O - OSPF, I - IS-IS, B - BGP, P - PIM, E - EIGRP, N - NHRP,  
       T - Table, v - VNC, V - VNC-Direct, A - Babel,  
       > - selected route, * - FIB route  
VRF blue:  
K>* 0.0.0.0/0 [0/8192] unreachable (ICMP unreachable)  
O 7.0.0.0/24 [110/10] is directly connected, swp2, 00:28:35  
C>* 7.0.0.0/24 is directly connected, swp2  
C>* 7.0.0.5/32 is directly connected, blue  
C>* 7.0.0.100/32 is directly connected, blue  
C>* 50.1.1.0/24 is directly connected, swp3ls1  
VRF red:  
K>* 0.0.0.0/0 [0/8192] unreachable (ICMP unreachable)  
O  
8.0.0.0/24 [110/10]  
is directly connected, swp1, 00:23:26  
C>* 8.0.0.0/24 is directly connected, swp1  
C>* 8.0.0.5/32 is directly connected, red  
C>* 8.0.0.100/32 is directly connected, red  
C>* 50.0.1.0/24 is directly connected, swp3ls0  
switch# exit  
cumulus@switch:~$
```

## Showing VRF Data Using ip Commands

To list all VRFs provisioned, showing the VRF ID (vrf1012, vrf1013 and vrf1014 below) as well as the table ID:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip -d link show type vrf  
14: vrf1012: <NOARP,MASTER,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast  
    state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT group default qlen 1000  
        link/ether 46:96:c7:64:4d:fa brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff promiscuity 0  
        vrf table 1012 addrgenmode eui64  
21: vrf1013: <NOARP,MASTER,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast  
    state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT group default qlen 1000  
        link/ether 7a:8a:29:0f:5e:52 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff promiscuity 0  
        vrf table 1013 addrgenmode eui64  
28: vrf1014: <NOARP,MASTER,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc pfifo_fast  
    state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT group default qlen 1000  
        link/ether e6:8c:4d:fc:eb:b1 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff promiscuity 0
```

```
vrf table 1014 addrgenmode eui64
```

To list the interfaces attached to a specific VRF:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip -d link show vrf vrf1012
8: swp1.2@swp1: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
    master vrf1012 state UP mode DEFAULT group default
      link/ether 00:02:00:00:00:07 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff promiscuity 0
      vlan protocol 802.1Q id 2 <REORDER_HDR>
      vrf_slave addrgenmode eui64
9: swp2.2@swp2: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
    master vrf1012 state UP mode DEFAULT group default
      link/ether 00:02:00:00:00:08 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff promiscuity 0
      vlan protocol 802.1Q id 2 <REORDER_HDR>
      vrf_slave addrgenmode eui64
10: swp3.2@swp3: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
     master vrf1012 state UP mode DEFAULT group default
      link/ether 00:02:00:00:00:09 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff promiscuity 0
      vlan protocol 802.1Q id 2 <REORDER_HDR>
      vrf_slave addrgenmode eui64
11: swp4.2@swp4: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
     master vrf1012 state UP mode DEFAULT group default
      link/ether 00:02:00:00:00:0a brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff promiscuity 0
      vlan protocol 802.1Q id 2 <REORDER_HDR>
      vrf_slave addrgenmode eui64
12: swp5.2@swp5: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
     master vrf1012 state UP mode DEFAULT group default
      link/ether 00:02:00:00:00:0b brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff promiscuity 0
      vlan protocol 802.1Q id 2 <REORDER_HDR>
      vrf_slave addrgenmode eui64
13: br2: <NO-CARRIER,BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
     master vrf1012 state DOWN mode DEFAULT group default
      link/ether 00:00:00:00:00:00 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff promiscuity 0
      bridge forward_delay 100 hello_time 200 max_age 2000 ageing_time 30000
      stp_state 0 priority 32768
      vlan_filtering 0
      vlan_protocol 802.1Q
      bridge_id 8000.0:0:0:0:0:0
      designated_root 8000.0:0:0:0:0:0
      root_port 0
      root_path_cost 0
      topology_change 0
      topology_change_detected 0
      hello_timer 0.00
      tcn_timer 0.00
      topology_change_timer 0.00
      gc_timer 202.23
      vlan_default_pvid 1
      group_fwd_mask 0
      group_address 01:80:c2:00:00:00
      mcast_snooping 1
      mcast_router 1
      mcast_query_use_ifaddr 0
      mcast_querier 0
      mcast_hash_elasticity 4096
      mcast_hash_max 4096
      mcast_last_member_count 2
      mcast_startup_query_count 2
      mcast_last_member_interval 100
      mcast_membership_interval 26000
      mcast_querier_interval 25500
      mcast_query_interval 12500
      mcast_query_response_interval 1000
      mcast_startup_query_interval 3125
      nf_call_iptables 0
      nf_call_ip6tables 0
      nf_call_arptables 0
```



```
vrf_slave addrgenmode eui64
```

To show IPv4 routes in a VRF:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip route show table vrf1012
unreachable default metric 240
broadcast 20.7.2.0 dev br2 proto kernel scope link src 20.7.2.1
dead linkdown
20.7.2.0/24 dev br2 proto kernel scope link src 20.7.2.1 dead
linkdown
local 20.7.2.1 dev br2 proto kernel scope host src 20.7.2.1
broadcast 20.7.2.255 dev br2 proto kernel scope link src 20.7.2.1
dead linkdown
broadcast 169.254.2.8 dev swp1.2 proto kernel scope link src
169.254.2.9
169.254.2.8/30 dev swp1.2 proto kernel scope link src 169.254.2.9
local 169.254.2.9 dev swp1.2 proto kernel scope host src
169.254.2.9
broadcast 169.254.2.11 dev swp1.2 proto kernel scope link src
169.254.2.9
broadcast 169.254.2.12 dev swp2.2 proto kernel scope link src
169.254.2.13
169.254.2.12/30 dev swp2.2 proto kernel scope link src
169.254.2.13
local 169.254.2.13 dev swp2.2 proto kernel scope host src
169.254.2.13
broadcast 169.254.2.15 dev swp2.2 proto kernel scope link src
169.254.2.13
broadcast 169.254.2.16 dev swp3.2 proto kernel scope link src
169.254.2.17
169.254.2.16/30 dev swp3.2 proto kernel scope link src
169.254.2.17
local 169.254.2.17 dev swp3.2 proto kernel scope host src
169.254.2.17
broadcast 169.254.2.19 dev swp3.2 proto kernel scope link src
169.254.2.17
```

To show IPv6 routes in a VRF:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip -6 route show table vrf1012
local fe80:: dev lo proto none metric 0 pref medium
local fe80:: dev lo proto none metric 0 pref medium
local fe80:: dev lo proto none metric 0 pref medium
local fe80:: dev lo proto none metric 0 pref medium
local fe80::202:ff:fe00:7 dev lo proto none metric 0 pref medium
local fe80::202:ff:fe00:8 dev lo proto none metric 0 pref medium
local fe80::202:ff:fe00:9 dev lo proto none metric 0 pref medium
local fe80::202:ff:fe00:a dev lo proto none metric 0 pref medium
fe80::/64 dev br2 proto kernel metric 256 dead linkdown pref medium
```

```
fe80::/64 dev swp1.2 proto kernel metric 256 pref medium
fe80::/64 dev swp2.2 proto kernel metric 256 pref medium
fe80::/64 dev swp3.2 proto kernel metric 256 pref medium
ff00::/8 dev br2 metric 256 dead linkdown pref medium
ff00::/8 dev swp1.2 metric 256 pref medium
ff00::/8 dev swp2.2 metric 256 pref medium
ff00::/8 dev swp3.2 metric 256 pref medium
unreachable default dev lo metric 240 error -101 pref medium
```

To see a list of links associated with a particular VRF table, run `ip link list <vrf-name>`. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip link list red

VRF: red
-----
swp1.10@swp1      UP          6c:64:1a:00:5a:0c <BROADCAST,
MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP>
swp2.10@swp2      UP          6c:64:1a:00:5a:0d <BROADCAST,
MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP>
```

To see a list of routes associated with a particular VRF table, run `ip route list <vrf-name>`. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip route list red

VRF: red
-----
unreachable default metric 8192
10.1.1.0/24 via 10.10.1.2 dev swp2.10
10.1.2.0/24 via 10.99.1.2 dev swp1.10
broadcast 10.10.1.0 dev swp2.10 proto kernel scope link src
10.10.1.1
10.10.1.0/28 dev swp2.10 proto kernel scope link src 10.10.1.1
local 10.10.1.1 dev swp2.10 proto kernel scope host src 10.10.1.1
broadcast 10.10.1.15 dev swp2.10 proto kernel scope link src
10.10.1.1
broadcast 10.99.1.0 dev swp1.10 proto kernel scope link src
10.99.1.1
10.99.1.0/30 dev swp1.10 proto kernel scope link src 10.99.1.1
local 10.99.1.1 dev swp1.10 proto kernel scope host src 10.99.1.1
broadcast 10.99.1.3 dev swp1.10 proto kernel scope link src
10.99.1.1

local fe80:: dev lo proto none metric 0 pref medium
local fe80:: dev lo proto none metric 0 pref medium
local fe80::6e64:1aff:fe00:5a0c dev lo proto none metric 0 pref
medium
```

```
local fe80::6e64:1aff:fe00:5a0d dev lo proto none metric 0 pref medium
fe80::/64 dev swp1.10 proto kernel metric 256 pref medium
fe80::/64 dev swp2.10 proto kernel metric 256 pref medium
ff00::/8 dev swp1.10 metric 256 pref medium
ff00::/8 dev swp2.10 metric 256 pref medium
unreachable default dev lo metric 8192 error -101 pref medium
```



You can also show routes in a VRF using `ip [-6] route show vrf <name>`. This command omits local and broadcast routes, which can clutter the output.

## Using BGP Unnumbered Interfaces with VRF

BGP unnumbered interface configurations (see page 636) are supported with VRF. In BGP unnumbered, there are no addresses on any interface. However, debugging tools like `traceroute` need at least a single IP address per node as the node's source IP address. Typically, this address was assigned to the loopback device. With VRF, you need a loopback device for each VRF table since VRF is based on interfaces, not IP addresses. While Linux does not support multiple loopback devices, it does support the concept of a dummy interface, which is used to achieve the same goal.

An IP address can be associated with the VRF device, which will then act as the dummy (loopback-like) interface for that VRF.

1. Configure the BGP unnumbered configuration. The BGP unnumbered configuration is the same for a non-VRF, applied under the VRF context (`router bgp asn vrf <vrf-name>`).

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vrf vrf1 vrf-table auto
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vrf vrf1 ip address 6.1.0.6/32
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vrf vrf1 ipv6 address 2001:6:1::6/128
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 link speed 10000
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 link autoneg off
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 vrf vrf1
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan 101 ip address 20.1.6.1/24
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vlan 101 ipv6 address 2001:20:1:6::1/80
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bridge bridge ports vlan101
```

These commands create the following configuration in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```
auto swp1
iface swp1
    link-autoneg on
    link-speed 10000
    vrf vrf1

auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-ports vlan101
```

```

bridge-vids 101
bridge-vlan-aware yes

auto vlan101
iface vlan101
    address 20.1.6.1/24
    address 2001:20:1:6::1/80
    vlan-id 101
    vlan-raw-device bridge

auto vrf1
iface vrf1
    address 6.1.0.6/32
    address 2001:6:1::6/128
    vrf-table auto

```

Here is the FRRouting BGP configuration:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1 autonomous-system 65001
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1 bestpath as-path multipath-relax
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1 bestpath compare-routerid
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1 neighbor LEAF peer-group
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1 neighbor LEAF remote-as external
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1 neighbor LEAF capability extended-nexthop
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1 neighbor swp1.101 interface peer-group LEAF
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1 neighbor swp2.101 interface peer-group LEAF
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1 ipv4 unicast redistribute connected
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1 ipv4 unicast neighbor LEAF activate
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1 ipv6 unicast redistribute connected
cumulus@switch:~$ net add bgp vrf vrf1 ipv6 unicast neighbor LEAF activate
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit

```

These commands create the following configuration in the `/etc/frr/frr.conf` file:

```

!
router bgp 65001 vrf vrf1
  no bgp default ipv4-unicast
  bgp bestpath as-path multipath-relax

```



```
bgp bestpath compare-routerid
neighbor LEAF peer-group
neighbor LEAF remote-as external
neighbor LEAF capability extended-nexthop
neighbor swp1.101 interface peer-group LEAF
neighbor swp2.101 interface peer-group LEAF
!
address-family ipv4 unicast
  redistribute connected
  neighbor LEAF activate
exit-address-family
!
address-family ipv6 unicast
  redistribute connected
  neighbor LEAF activate
exit-address-family
!
```

## Using DHCP with VRF

Since you can use VRF to bind IPv4 and IPv6 sockets to non-default VRF tables, you have the ability to start DHCP servers and relays in any non-default VRF table using the `dhcpd` and `dhcrelay` services, respectively. These services must be managed by `systemd` in order to run in a VRF context; in addition, the services must be listed in `/etc/vrf/systemd.conf`. By default, this file already lists these two services, as well as others like `ntp` and `snmpd`. You can add more services as needed, such as `dhcpd6` and `dhcrelay6` for IPv6.

If you edit `/etc/vrf/systemd.conf`, run `sudo systemctl daemon-reload` to generate the `systemd` instance files for the newly added service(s). Then you can start the service in the VRF using `systemctl start <service>@<vrf-name>.service`, where `<service>` is the name of the service — such as `dhcpd` or `dhcrelay` — and `<vrf-name>` is the name of the VRF.

For example, to start the `dhcrelay` service after you configured a VRF named `blue`, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start dhcrelay@blue.service
```

To enable the service at boot time you should also run `systemctl enable <service>@<vrf-name>`. To continue with the previous example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable dhcrelay@blue.service
```

In addition, you need to create a separate default file in `/etc/default` for every instance of a DHCP server and/or relay in a non-default VRF; this is where you set the server and relay options. To run multiple instances of any of these services, you need a separate file for each instance. The files must be named as follows:

- `isc-dhcp-server-<vrf-name>`
- `isc-dhcp-server6-<vrf-name>`
- `isc-dhcp-relay-<vrf-name>`

- isc-dhcp-relay6-<vrf-name>

See the example configuration below for more details.

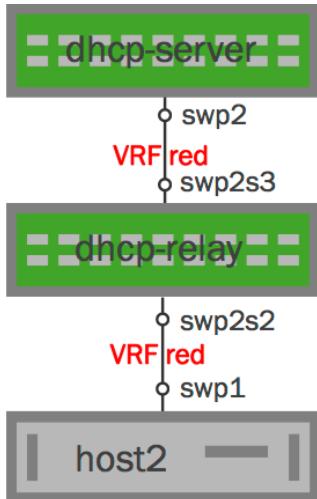
## Caveats for DHCP with VRF

- Cumulus Linux does **not** support DHCP server and relay across VRFs, so the server and host cannot be in different VRF tables. In addition, the server and relay cannot be in different VRF tables.
- Typically a service running in the default VRF owns a port across all VRFs. If the VRF local instance is preferred, the global one may need to be disabled and stopped first.
- VRF is a layer 3 routing feature. It only makes sense to run programs that use AF\_INET and AF\_INET6 sockets in a VRF. VRF context does not affect any other aspects of the operation of a program.
- This method only works with `systemd`-based services.

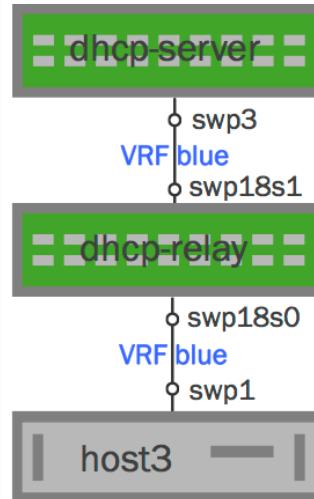
## Example Configuration

In the following example, there is one IPv4 network with a VRF named *red* and one IPv6 network with a VRF named *blue*.

The IPv4 DHCP server/relay network looks like this:



The IPv6 DHCP server/relay network looks like this:



Configure each DHCP server and relay as follows:

### Sample DHCP Server Configuration

1. Create the file `isc-dhcp-server-red` in `/etc/default/`. Here is sample content:

```

# Defaults for isc-dhcp-
server initscript
# sourced by /etc/init.d
/isc-dhcp-server
  
```

### Sample DHCP6 Server Configuration

1. Create the file `isc-dhcp-server6-blue` in `/etc/default/`. Here is sample content:

```

# Defaults for isc-dhcp-
server initscript
# sourced by /etc/init.d
/isc-dhcp-server
  
```



```
# installed at /etc/default  
/isc-dhcp-server by the  
maintainer scripts  
#  
# This is a POSIX shell  
fragment  
#  
# Path to dhcpcd's config  
file (default: /etc/dhcp  
/dhcpcd.conf).  
DHCPD_CONF="-cf /etc/dhcp  
/dhcpcd-red.conf"  
# Path to dhcpcd's PID file  
(default: /var/run/dhcpcd.  
pid).  
DHCPD_PID="-pf /var/run  
/dhcpcd-red.pid"  
# Additional options to  
start dhcpcd with.  
# Don't use options -cf or  
-pf here; use DHCPD_CONF/  
DHCPD_PID instead  
#OPTIONS=""  
# On what interfaces  
should the DHCP server  
(dhcpcd) serve DHCP  
requests?  
# Separate multiple  
interfaces with spaces, e.  
g. "eth0 eth1".  
INTERFACES="swp2"
```

2. Enable the DHCP server:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl  
enable dhcpcd@red.service
```

3. Start the DHCP server:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl  
start dhcpcd@red.service  
or  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl  
restart dhcpcd@red.service
```

4. Check status:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl  
status dhcpcd@red.service
```



You can create this configuration using  
the `vrf` command ([see above \(see page 701\)](#) for more details):

```
# installed at /etc/default  
/isc-dhcp-server by the  
maintainer scripts  
#  
# This is a POSIX shell  
fragment  
#  
# Path to dhcpcd's config  
file (default: /etc/dhcp  
/dhcpcd.conf).  
DHCPD_CONF="-cf /etc/dhcp  
/dhcpcd6-blue.conf"  
# Path to dhcpcd's PID file  
(default: /var/run/dhcpcd.  
pid).  
DHCPD_PID="-pf /var/run  
/dhcpcd6-blue.pid"  
# Additional options to  
start dhcpcd with.  
# Don't use options -cf or  
-pf here; use DHCPD_CONF/  
DHCPD_PID instead  
#OPTIONS=""  
# On what interfaces  
should the DHCP server  
(dhcpcd) serve DHCP  
requests?  
# Separate multiple  
interfaces with spaces, e.  
g. "eth0 eth1".  
INTERFACES="swp3"
```

2. Enable the DHCP server:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl  
enable dhcpcd@blue.service
```

3. Start the DHCP server:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl  
start dhcpcd@blue.service  
or  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl  
restart dhcpcd@blue.service
```

4. Check status:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl  
status dhcpcd@blue.service
```



You can create this configuration using  
the `vrf` command ([see above \(see page 701\)](#) for more details):

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo
vrf task exec red /usr
/sbin/dhcpd -f -q -cf /
/etc/dhcp/dhcpd-red.
conf -pf /var/run/dhcpd-
red.pid swp2
```

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo
vrf task exec blue dhcpcd
-6 -q -cf /
/etc/dhcp/dhcpd6-
blue.conf -pf /var/run
/dhcpd6-blue.pid swp3
```

### Sample DHCP Relay Configuration

1. Create the file `isc-dhcp-relay-red` in `/etc/default/`. Here is sample content:

```
# Defaults for isc-dhcp-
relay initscript
# sourced by /etc/init.d
/isc-dhcp-relay
# installed at /etc/default
/isc-dhcp-relay by the
maintainer scripts
#
# This is a POSIX shell
fragment
#
# What servers should the
DHCP relay forward
requests to?
SERVERS="102.0.0.2"
# On what interfaces
should the DHCP relay
(dhrelay) serve DHCP
requests?
# Always include the
interface towards the DHCP
server.
# This variable requires a
-i for each interface
configured above.
# This will be used in the
actual dhcrelay command
# For example, "-i eth0 -i
eth1"
INTF_CMD="-i swp2s2 -i
swp2s3"
# Additional options that
are passed to the DHCP
relay daemon?
OPTIONS=""
```

### Sample DHCP6 Relay Configuration

1. Create the file `isc-dhcp-relay6-blue` in `/etc/default/`. Here is sample content:

```
# Defaults for isc-dhcp-
relay initscript
# sourced by /etc/init.d
/isc-dhcp-relay
# installed at /etc/default
/isc-dhcp-relay by the
maintainer scripts
#
# This is a POSIX shell
fragment
#
# What servers should the
DHCP relay forward
requests to?
#SERVERS="103.0.0.2"
# On what interfaces
should the DHCP relay
(dhrelay) serve DHCP
requests?
# Always include the
interface towards the DHCP
server.
# This variable requires a
-i for each interface
configured above.
# This will be used in the
actual dhcrelay command
# For example, "-i eth0 -i
eth1"
INTF_CMD="-l swp18s0 -u
swp18s1"
# Additional options that
are passed to the DHCP
relay daemon?
```



2. Enable the DHCP relay:  
cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo systemctl enable dhcrelay@red.service
3. Start the DHCP relay:  
cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo systemctl start dhcrelay@red.service  
or  
cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo systemctl restart dhcrelay@red.service
4. Check status:  
cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo systemctl status dhcrelay@red.service



You can create this configuration using the `vrf` command ([see above \(see page 701\)](#) for more details):

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo
vrf task exec red /usr
/sbin/dhcrelay -d -q -i /
swp2s2 -i swp2s3
102.0.0.2
```

```
OPTIONS="-pf /var/run
/dhcrelay6@blue.pid"
```

2. Enable the DHCP relay:  
cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo systemctl enable dhcrelay6@blue.service
3. Start the DHCP relay:  
cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo systemctl start dhcrelay6@blue.service  
or  
cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo systemctl restart dhcrelay6@blue.service
4. Check status:  
cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo systemctl status dhcrelay6@blue.service



You can create this configuration using the `vrf` command ([see above \(see page 701\)](#) for more details):

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo
vrf task exec blue /usr
/sbin/dhcrelay -d -q -6 -
l /
swp18s0 -u swp18s1 -
pf /var/run
/dhcrelay6@blue.pid
```

## Using ping or traceroute

If you wish to use ping or traceroute on a VRF, use the `-I <vrf>` flag for ping and `-i <vrf>` for traceroute.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ping -I blue
```

Or:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo traceroute -i blue
```



## Caveats and Errata

- Switches using the Hurricane2 ASIC (such as the Penguin Computing Arctica 4804IP) do not support VRFs.
- Table selection based on the incoming interface only; currently, packet attributes or output-interface-based selection are not available.
- Setting the router ID outside of BGP via the `router-id` option causes all BGP instances to get the same router ID. If you want each BGP instance to have its own router ID, specify the `router-id` under the BGP instance using `bgp router-id`. If both are specified, the one under the BGP instance overrides the one provided outside BGP.
- You cannot configure [EVPN address families](#) (see page 466) within a VRF.

## Management VRF

Management VRF is a subset of [VRF \(see page 696\)](#) (virtual routing tables and forwarding) and provides a separation between the out-of-band management network and the in-band data plane network. For all VRFs, the *main* routing table is the default table for all of the data plane switch ports. With management VRF, a second table, *mgmt*, is used for routing through the Ethernet ports of the switch. The *mgmt* name is special cased to identify the management VRF from a data plane VRF. FIB rules are installed for DNS servers because this is the typical deployment case.

Cumulus Linux only supports eth0 as the management interface, or eth1, depending on the switch platform. The Ethernet ports are software-only parts that are not hardware accelerated by `switchd`. VLAN subinterfaces, bonds, bridges, and the front panel switch ports are not supported as management interfaces.

When management VRF is enabled, logins to the switch are set into the management VRF context. IPv4 and IPv6 networking applications (for example, Ansible, Chef, and `apt-get`) run by an administrator communicate out the management network by default. This default context does not impact services run through `systemd` and the `systemctl` command, and does not impact commands examining the state of the switch, such as the `ip` command to list links, neighbors, or routes.



The management VRF configurations in this chapter contain a localhost loopback IP address (127.0.0.1/8). Adding the loopback address to the L3 domain of the management VRF prevents issues with applications that expect the loopback IP address to exist in the VRF, such as NTP.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- [Enabling Management VRF](#) (see page 721)
  - [Bringing the Management VRF Up after Downing It with ifdown](#) (see page 722)
- [Running Services within the Management VRF](#) (see page 722)
  - [Enabling Polling with snmpd in a Management VRF](#) (see page 724)
  - [Enabling hsflowd](#) (see page 724)
  - [Using ping or traceroute](#) (see page 725)

- Running Services as a Non-root User (see page 725)
- OSPF and BGP (see page 727)
  - Redistributing Routes in Management VRF (see page 727)
- Using SSH within a Management VRF Context (see page 727)
- Viewing the Routing Tables (see page 727)
  - Viewing a Single Route (see page 728)
- Using the mgmt Interface Class (see page 728)
- Management VRF and DNS (see page 729)
- Incompatibility with cl-ns-mgmt (see page 730)

## Enabling Management VRF

To enable management VRF on eth0, complete the following steps:

### Example Management VRF Configuration

The example NCLU commands below create a VRF called *mgmt*:

 The management VRF must be named `mgmt` to differentiate from a data plane VRF.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add vrf mgmt
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

The NCLU commands above create the following snippets in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file:

```
...
auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
    vrf mgmt

...
auto mgmt
iface mgmt
    address 127.0.0.1/8
    vrf-table auto

...
```





When you commit the change to add the management VRF, all connections over eth0 are dropped. This can impact any automation that might be running, such as Ansible or Puppet scripts.

## Bringing the Management VRF Up after Downing It with `ifdown`

If you take down the management VRF using `ifdown`, to bring it back up you need to do one of two things:

- Use `ifup --with-dependents <vrf>`
- Use `ifreload -a`

For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifdown mgmt
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifup --with-dependents mgmt
```



Running `ifreload -a` disconnects the session for any interface configured as *auto*.

## Running Services within the Management VRF

You can run a variety of services within the management VRF instead of the default VRF. In most cases, you must stop and disable the instance running in the default VRF before you can start the service in the management VRF. This is because the instance running in the default VRF owns the port across all VRFs. The list of services that must be disabled in the default VRF are:

- chef-client
- collectd
- dhcpcd
- dhcrelay
- hsflowd
- netq-agent
- ntp
- puppet
- snmpd
- snmptrapd
- ssh
- zabbix-agent

When you run a service inside the management VRF, that service runs **only** on eth0; it no longer runs on any switch port. However, you can keep the service running in the default VRF with a wildcard for [agentAddress](#) (see page 844). This enables the service to run on **all** interfaces no matter which VRF, so you don't have to run a different process for each VRF.



Some applications can work across all VRFs. The kernel provides a `sysctl` that allows a single instance to accept connections over all VRFs. For TCP, connected sockets are bound to the VRF on which the first packet is received. This `sysctl` is enabled for Cumulus Linux.

To enable a service to run in the management VRF, do the following. These steps use the NTP service, but you can use any of the services listed above, except for `dhcrelay` (discussed [here \(see page 267\)](#)) and `hsflowd` (discussed [below \(see page 724\)](#)).

1. Configure the management VRF as described in the [Enabling Management VRF section above \(see page 720\)](#).
2. If NTP is running, stop the service:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl stop ntp.service
```

3. Disable NTP from starting automatically in the default VRF:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl disable ntp.service
```

4. Start NTP in the management VRF.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start ntp@mgmt.service
```

5. Enable `ntp@mgmt` so that it starts when the switch boots:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable ntp@mgmt.service
```

After you enable `ntp@mgmt`, you can verify that NTP peers are active:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ntpq -pn
      remote          refid      st t when poll reach   delay
offset  jitter
=====
=====
*38.229.71.1    204.9.54.119    2 u    42    64   377   31.275
-0.625  3.105
-104.131.53.252 209.51.161.238    2 u    47    64   377   16.381
-5.251  0.681
+45.79.10.228   200.98.196.212    2 u    44    64   377   42.998
0.115   0.585
+74.207.240.206 127.67.113.92     2 u    43    64   377   73.240
-1.623  0.320
```



## *Enabling Polling with snmpd in a Management VRF*

When you enable `snmpd` to run in the management VRF, `snmpd` listens **only** on eth0; you can no longer listen on a switch port.

SNMP configuration in NCLU is not VRF aware so the `snmpd` daemon is always started in the default VRF. Because interfaces in a particular VRF (routing table) are not aware of interfaces in a different VRF, the `snmpd` daemon only responds to polling requests and sends traps on the interfaces of the VRF on which it is running. If you configure a management VRF, you need to start the `snmpd` daemon manually in the management VRF and stop all other `snmpd` daemons.

## *Enabling hsflowd*

If you are using `sFlow` to monitor traffic in the management VRF, you need to complete the following steps to enable sFlow.

1. Add the `hsflowd` process to the `systemd` configuration file in `/etc/vrf`. Edit the `/etc/vrf/systemd.conf` file with a text editor.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nano /etc/vrf/systemd.conf
# Systemd-based services that are expected to be run in a VRF
context.
#
# If changes are made to this file run systemctl daemon-reload
# to re-generate systemd files.
chef-client
collectd
dhcpcd
dhcrelay
hsflowd  <<< Add this line
ntp
puppet
snmpd
snmptrapd
ssh
zabbix-agent
```

2. Stop the `hsflowd` daemon if it is running:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl stop hsflowd.service
```

3. Disable `hsflowd` to ensure it does not start in the default VRF if the system is rebooted:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl disable hsflowd.service
```

4. Run the `daemon-reload` command:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl systemctl daemon-reload
```

5. Start hsflowd in the management VRF:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start hsflowd@mgt.service
```

6. Enable hsflowd@mgt so it starts when the switch boots:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable hsflowd@mgt.service
```

7. Verify that the hsflowd service is running in the management VRF:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ps aux | grep flow
root      7294  0.0  0.4  81320  2108 ?          Ssl   22:22   0:00
/usr/sbin/hsflowd
cumulus    7906  0.0  0.4  12728  2056 pts/0      S+    22:34   0:00
grep flow
cumulus@switch:~$ vrf task identify 7294
mgt
```

## Using ping or traceroute

By default, when you issue a `ping` or `traceroute`, the packet is sent to the dataplane network (the main routing table). To use `ping` or `traceroute` on the management network, use the `-I` flag for `ping` and `-i` for `traceroute`.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ping -I mgmt
```

Or:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo traceroute -i mgmt
```

## Running Services as a Non-root User

Sometimes you may want to run services in the management VRF as a non-root user. To do so, you need to create a custom service based on the original service file.

1. Copy the original service file to its new name and store the file in `/etc/systemd/system`.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cp /lib/systemd/system/myservice.service
/etc/systemd/system/myservice.service
```



2. If there is a *User* directive, comment it out. If it exists, you can find it under *[Service]*.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo nano /etc/systemd/system/myservice.service

[Unit]
Description=Example
Documentation=https://www.example.io/

[Service]
#User=username
ExecStart=/usr/local/bin/myservice agent -data-dir=/tmp
/myservice -bind=192.168.0.11

[Install]
WantedBy=multi-user.target
```

3. Modify the *ExecStart* line to */usr/bin/vrf exec mgmt /sbin/runuser -u USER -- COMMAND*. For example, to have the *cumulus* user run the *foocommand*:

```
[Unit]
Description=Example
Documentation=https://www.example.io/

[Service]
#User=username
ExecStart=/usr/bin/vrf task exec mgmt /sbin/runuser -u cumulus
-- foocommand

[Install]
WantedBy=multi-user.target
```

4. Save and exit the file.

```
^O
^X
cumulus@switch:~$
```

5. Reload the service so the changes take effect:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl daemon-reload
```



## OSPF and BGP

In general, no changes are required for either BGP or OSPF. FRRouting is VRF-aware and automatically sends packets based on the switch port routing table. This includes BGP peering via loopback interfaces. BGP does routing lookups in the default table. However, depending on how your routes are redistributed, you might want to perform the following modification.

### *Redistributing Routes in Management VRF*

Management VRF uses the mgmt table, including local routes. It does not affect how the routes are redistributed when using routing protocols such as OSPF and BGP.

To redistribute the routes in your network, use the `redistribute connected` command under BGP or OSPF. This enables the directly-connected network out of eth0 to be advertised to its neighbor.



This also creates a route on the neighbor device to the management network through the data plane, which might not be desired.

Cumulus Networks recommends you always use route maps to control the advertised networks redistributed by the `redistribute connected` command. For example, you can specify a route map to redistribute routes in this way (for both BGP and OSPF):

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add routing route-map REDISTRIBUTE-CONNECTED  
deny 100 match interface eth0  
cumulus@leaf01:~$ net add routing route-map REDISTRIBUTE-CONNECTED  
permit 1000
```

These commands produce the following configuration snippet in the `/etc/frr/frr.conf` file:

```
<routing protocol>  
redistribute connected route-map REDISTRIBUTE-CONNECTED  
  
route-map REDISTRIBUTE-CONNECTED deny 100  
  match interface eth0  
!  
route-map REDISTRIBUTE-CONNECTED permit 1000
```

## Using SSH within a Management VRF Context

If you SSH to the switch through a switch port, SSH works as expected. If you need to SSH from the device out of a switch port, use `vrf exec default ssh <ip_address_of_swport>`. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vrf exec default ssh 10.23.23.2 10.3.3.3
```



## Viewing the Routing Tables

When you look at the routing table with `ip route show`, you are looking at the switch port (*main*) table. You can also see the dataplane routing table with `net show route vrf main`.

To look at information about eth0 (the management routing table), use `net show route vrf mgmt`.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show route vrf mgmt
default via 192.168.0.1 dev eth0

cumulus@switch:~$ net show route
default via 10.23.23.3 dev swp17 proto zebra metric 20
10.3.3.3 via 10.23.23.3 dev swp17
10.23.23.0/24 dev swp17 proto kernel scope link src 10.23.23.2
192.168.0.0/24 dev eth0 proto kernel scope link src 192.168.0.11
```

## Viewing a Single Route

If you use `ip route get` to return information about a single route, the command resolves over the *mgmt* table by default. To obtain information about the route in the switching silicon, use:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show route <addr>
```

To get the route for any VRF, run the following command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show route vrf mgmt <addr>
```

## Using the *mgmt* Interface Class

In `ifupdown2`, [interface classes](#) (see page 210) are used to create a user-defined grouping for interfaces. The special class *mgmt* is available to separate the management interfaces of the switch from the data interfaces. This allows you to manage the data interfaces by default using `ifupdown2` commands. Performing operations on the *mgmt* interfaces requires specifying the `--allow-mgmt` option, which prevents inadvertent outages on the management interfaces. Cumulus Linux by default brings up all interfaces in both the *auto* (default) class and the *mgmt* interface class when the switch boots.



The management VRF interface class is not supported if you are configuring Cumulus Linux using [NCLU](#) (see page 85).

You configure the management interface in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file. In the example below, the management interface, eth0 and the management VRF stanzas are added to the *mgmt* interface class:

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback
```

```
allow-mgmt eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
    vrf mgmt

allow-mgmt mgmt
iface mgmt
    address 127.0.0.1/8
    vrf-table auto
```

When you run `ifupdown2` commands against the interfaces in the mgmt class, include `--allow=mgmt` with the commands. For example, to see which interfaces are in the mgmt interface class, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ifquery l --allow=mgmt
eth0
mgmt
```

To reload the configurations for interfaces in the mgmt class, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifreload --allow=mgmt
```

You can still bring the management interface up and down using `ifup eth0` and `ifdown eth0`.

## Management VRF and DNS

Cumulus Linux supports both DHCP and static DNS entries over management VRF through IP FIB rules. These rules are added to direct lookups to the DNS addresses out of the management VRF.

For DNS to use the management VRF, the static DNS entries must reference the management VRF in the `/etc/resolv.conf` file. For example:

```
nameserver 192.0.2.1
nameserver 198.51.100.31 # vrf mgmt
nameserver 203.0.113.13 # vrf mgmt
```

Nameservers configured through DHCP are updated automatically. Statically configured nameservers (configured in the `/etc/resolv.conf` file) only get updated when you run `ifreload -a`.



Because DNS lookups are forced out of the management interface using FIB rules, this might affect data plane ports if overlapping addresses are used. For example, when the DNS server IP address is learned over the management VRF, a FIB rule is created for that IP address. When DHCP relay is configured for the same IP address, a DHCP discover packet received on the front panel port is forwarded out of the management interface (`eth0`) even though a route is present out the front-panel port.



## Incompatibility with cl-ns-mgmt



Management VRF has replaced the management namespace functionality in Cumulus Linux. The management namespace feature (used with the `cl-ns-mgmt` utility) has been deprecated, and the `cl-ns-mgmt` command has been removed.

## Protocol Independent Multicast - PIM

Protocol Independent Multicast (PIM) is a multicast control plane protocol, that advertises multicast sources and receivers over a routed layer 3 network. Layer 3 multicast relies on PIM to advertise information about multicast capable routers and the location of multicast senders and receivers. For this reason, multicast cannot be sent through a routed network without PIM.

PIM has two modes of operation: Sparse Mode (PIM-SM) and Dense Mode (PIM-DM).



Cumulus Linux only supports PIM Sparse Mode.

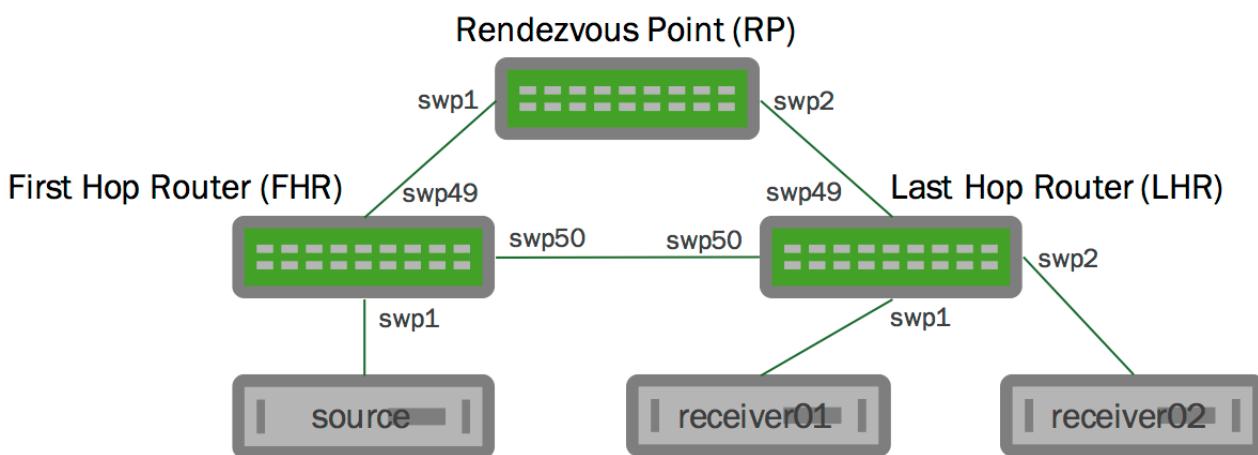
## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- PIM Overview (see page 731)
  - PIM Messages (see page 733)
  - PIM Neighbors (see page 735)
- PIM Sparse Mode (PIM-SM) (see page 735)
  - Any-source Multicast Routing (see page 735)
  - PIM Null-Register (see page 739)
  - PIM and ECMP (see page 740)
- Configuring PIM (see page 740)
  - Configuring PIM Using FRRouting (see page 742)
  - Example Configurations (see page 743)
- Source Specific Multicast Mode (SSM) (see page 745)
- IP Multicast Boundaries (see page 746)
- Multicast Source Discovery Protocol (MSDP) (see page 747)
- Verifying PIM (see page 748)
  - Source Starts First (see page 748)
  - Receiver Joins First (see page 751)
- PIM in a VRF (see page 752)
- BFD for PIM Neighbors (see page 755)

- Troubleshooting PIM (see page 755)
  - FHR Stuck in Registering Process (see page 755)
  - No \*,G Is Built on LHR (see page 757)
  - No mroute Created on FHR (see page 757)
  - No S,G on RP for an Active Group (see page 758)
  - No mroute Entry Present in Hardware (see page 758)
  - Verify MSDP Session State (see page 759)
  - View the Active Sources (see page 759)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 759)

## PIM Overview



Network Element	Description
First Hop Router (FHR)	The FHR is the router attached to the source. The FHR is responsible for the PIM register process.
Last Hop Router (LHR)	The LHR is the last router in the path, attached to an interested multicast receiver. There is a single LHR for each network subnet with an interested receiver, however multicast groups can have multiple LHRs throughout the network.
Rendezvous Point (RP)	The RP allows for the discovery of multicast sources and multicast receivers. The RP is responsible for sending PIM Register Stop messages to FHRs. The PIM RP address must be globally routable.

Network Element	Description
	<p>Do not use a spine switch as an RP. If you're running <a href="#">BGP (see page 636)</a> on a spine switch and it's configured for allow-as in origin, BGP does not accept routes learned through other spines that did not originate on the spine itself. The RP must route to a multicast source. During a single failure scenario, this would not be possible if the RP were on the spine. This also applies to Multicast Source Discovery Protocol (MSDP — <a href="#">see below (see page 730)</a>).</p>
PIM Shared Tree (RP Tree) or (*, G) Tree	<p>The Shared Tree is the multicast tree rooted at the RP. When receivers wish to join a multicast group, join messages are sent along the shared tree towards the RP.</p>
PIM Shortest Path Tree (SPT) or (S, G) Tree	<p>The SPT is the multicast tree rooted at the multicast source for a given group. Each multicast source will have a unique SPT. The SPT may match the RP Tree, but this is not a requirement. The SPT represents the most efficient way to send multicast traffic from a source to the interested receivers.</p>
Outgoing Interface (OIF)	<p>The outgoing interface indicates the interface a PIM or multicast packet should be sent out on. OIFs are the interfaces towards the multicast receivers.</p>
Incoming Interface (IIF)	<p>The incoming interface indicates the interface a multicast packet should be received on. IIFs can be the interfaces towards the source or towards the RP.</p>
Reverse Path Forwarding Interface (RPF Interface)	<p>Reverse path forwarding interface is the path used to reach the RP or source. There must be a valid PIM neighbor to determine the RPF unless directly connected to source.</p>
Multicast Route (mroute)	<p>A multicast route indicates the multicast source and multicast group as well as associated OIFs, IIFs, and RPF information.</p>
Star-G mroute (*, G)	<p>The (*,G) mroute represents the RP Tree. The * is a wildcard indicating any multicast source. The G is the multicast group. An example (*,G) would be (*, 239.1.2.9).</p>
S-G mroute (S,G)	<p>This is the mroute representing the source entry. The S is the multicast source IP. The G is the multicast group. An example (S,G) would be (10.1.1.1, 239.1.2.9).</p>



## PIM Messages

PIM Message	Description
PIM Hello	<p>PIM hellos announce the presence of a multicast router on a segment. PIM hellos are sent every 30 seconds by default.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px;"><p><b>PIM Hello Example</b></p><pre>22.1.2.2 &gt; 224.0.0.13: PIMv2, length 34 Hello, cksm 0xfdbb (correct) Hold Time Option (1), length 2, Value: 1m45s 0x0000: 0069 LAN Prune Delay Option (2), length 4, Value: T-bit=0, LAN delay 500ms, Override interval 2500ms 0x0000: 01f4 09c4 DR Priority Option (19), length 4, Value: 1 0x0000: 0000 0001 Generation ID Option (20), length 4, Value: 0x2459b190 0x0000: 2459 b190</pre></div>
PIM Join /Prune (J/P)	<p>PIM J/P messages indicate the groups that a multicast router would like to receive or no longer receive. Often PIM join/prune messages are described as distinct message types, but are actually a single PIM message with a list of groups to join and a second list of groups to leave. PIM J/P messages can be to join or prune from the SPT or RP trees (also called (*,G) joins or (S,G) joins).</p> <div style="border: 2px solid #ffcc00; padding: 10px; margin-top: 10px;"><p><b>!</b> PIM join/prune messages are sent to PIM neighbors on individual interfaces. Join /prune messages are never unicast.</p><div style="border: 1px solid #ffcc00; padding: 10px; background-color: #ffffcc;"><pre>► Internet Protocol Version 4, Src: 10.4.1.1, Dst: 224.0.0.13 ▼ Protocol Independent Multicast     0010 .... = Version: 2     .... 0011 = Type: Join/Prune (3)     Reserved byte(s): 00     Checksum: 0x8dd9 [correct] ▼ PIM Options     Upstream-neighbor: 10.4.1.2     Reserved byte(s): 00     Num Groups: 1     Holdtime: 210 ▼ Group 0: 239.1.1.9/32     ▼ Num Joins: 1         IP address: 104.255.224.1/32 (SWR)         Num Prunes: 0</pre></div></div>

PIM Message	Description
	<p>This PIM join/prune is for group 239.1.1.9, with 1 join and 0 prunes for the group. Join/prunes for multiple groups can exist in a single packet.</p> <div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px;"> <p><b>S,G Prune Example</b></p> <pre>21:49:59.470885 IP (tos 0x0, ttl 255, id 138, offset 0,   flags [none], proto PIM (103), length 54)     22.1.2.2 &gt; 224.0.0.13: PIMv2, length 34       Join / Prune, cksum 0xb9e5 (correct), upstream-neighbor:     22.1.2.1       1 group(s), holdtime: 3m30s       group #1: 225.1.0.0, joined sources: 0, pruned sources: 1       pruned source #1: 33.1.1.1(S)</pre> </div>
PIM Register	PIM register messages are unicast packets sent from a FHR destined to the RP to advertise a multicast group. The FHR fully encapsulates the original multicast packet in a PIM register messages. The RP is responsible for decapsulating the PIM register message and forwarding it along the (*,G) tree towards the receivers.
PIM Null Register	PIM null register is a special type of PIM register message where the "Null-Register" flag is set within the packet. Null register messages are used for an FHR to signal to an RP that a source is still sending multicast traffic. Unlike normal PIM register messages, null register messages do not encapsulate the original data packet.
PIM Register Stop	PIM register stop messages are sent by an RP to the FHR to indicate that PIM register messages should no longer be sent.
	<div style="background-color: #f0f0f0; padding: 10px;"> <p><b>Register Stop Example</b></p> <pre>21:37:00.419379 IP (tos 0x0, ttl 255, id 24, offset 0,   flags [none], proto PIM (103), length 38)     100.1.2.1 &gt; 33.1.1.10: PIMv2, length 18       Register Stop, cksum 0xd8db (correct) group=225.1.0.0       source=33.1.1.1</pre> </div>
IGMP Membership Report (IGMP Join)	IGMP membership reports are sent by multicast receivers to tell multicast routers of their interest in a specific multicast group. IGMP join messages trigger PIM *,G joins. IGMP version 2 queries are sent to the all hosts multicast address, 224.0.0.1. IGMP version 2 reports (joins) are sent to the group's multicast address. IGMP version 3 messages are sent to an IGMP v3 specific multicast address, 224.0.0.22.
IGMP Leave	IGMP leaves tell a multicast router that a multicast receiver no longer wants the multicast group. IGMP leave messages trigger PIM *,G prunes.



## PIM Neighbors

When PIM is configured on an interface, PIM Hello messages are sent to the link local multicast group 224.0.0.13. Any other router configured with PIM on the segment that hears the PIM Hello messages will build a PIM neighbor with the sending device.



PIM neighbors are stateless. No confirmation of neighbor relationship is exchanged between PIM endpoints.

## PIM Sparse Mode (PIM-SM)

PIM Sparse Mode (PIM-SM) is a "pull" multicast distribution method. This means that multicast traffic is only sent through the network if receivers explicitly ask for it. When a receiver "pulls" multicast traffic, the network must be periodically notified that the receiver wishes to continue the multicast stream.



This behavior is in contrast to PIM Dense Mode (PIM-DM), where traffic is flooded, and the network must be periodically notified that the receiver wishes to stop receiving the multicast stream.

PIM-SM has three configuration options: Any-source Multicast (ASM), Bi-directional Multicast (BiDir), and Source Specific Multicast (SSM):

- Any-source Multicast (ASM) is the traditional, and most commonly deployed PIM implementation. ASM relies on rendezvous points to connect multicast senders and receivers that then dynamically determine the shortest path through the network between source and receiver, to efficiently send multicast traffic.
- Bidirectional PIM (BiDir) forwards all traffic through the multicast rendezvous point (RP), rather than tracking multicast source IPs, allowing for greater scale, while resulting in inefficient forwarding of network traffic.
- Source Specific Multicast (SSM) requires multicast receivers to know exactly which source they wish to receive multicast traffic from, rather than relying on multicast rendezvous points. SSM requires the use of IGMPv3 on the multicast clients.



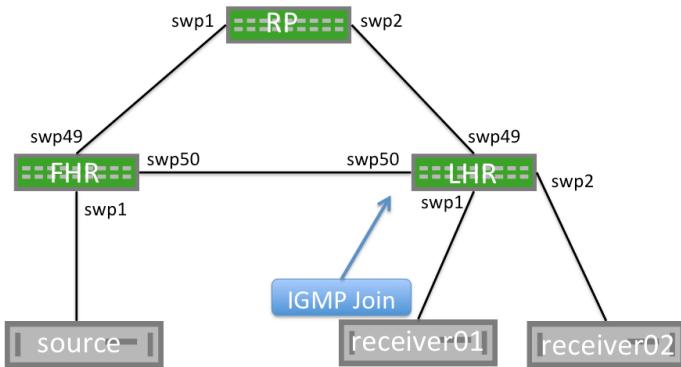
Cumulus Linux only supports ASM and SSM. PIM BiDir is not currently supported.

## Any-source Multicast Routing

Multicast routing behaves differently depending on whether the source is sending before receivers request the multicast stream, or if a receiver tries to join a stream before there are any sources.

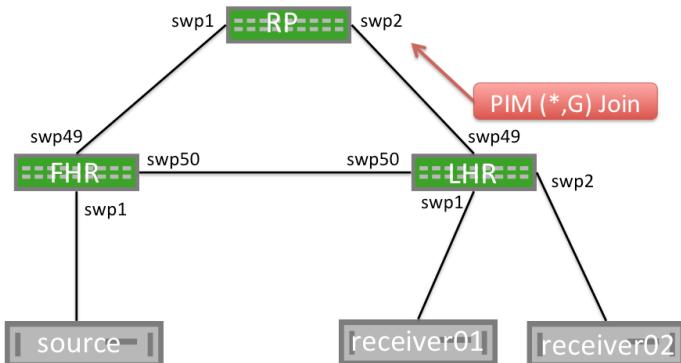
### Receiver Joins First

When a receiver joins a group, an IGMP membership join message is sent to the IGMPv3 multicast group, 224.0.0.22. The PIM multicast router for the segment, listening to the IGMPv3 group, receives the IGMP membership join message, and becomes an LHR for this group.



This creates a  $(*,G)$  mroute, with an OIF of the interface on which the IGMP Membership Report was received and an IIF of the RPF interface for the RP.

The LHR generates a PIM  $(*,G)$  join message, and sends it from the interface towards the RP. Each multicast router between the LHR and the RP will build a  $(*,G)$  mroute with the OIF being the interface on which the PIM join message was received and an Incoming Interface of the reverse path forwarding interface for the RP.



When the RP receives the  $(*,G)$  Join message, it will not send any additional PIM join messages. The RP will maintain a  $(*,G)$  state as long as the receiver wishes to receive the multicast group.



Unlike multicast receivers, multicast sources do not send IGMP (or PIM) messages to the FHR. A multicast source begins sending and the FHR will receive the traffic and build both a  $(*,G)$  and an  $(S,G)$  mroute. The FHR will then begin the PIM register process.

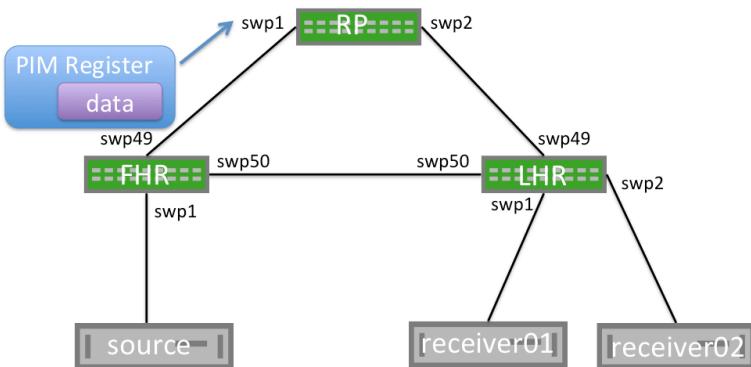
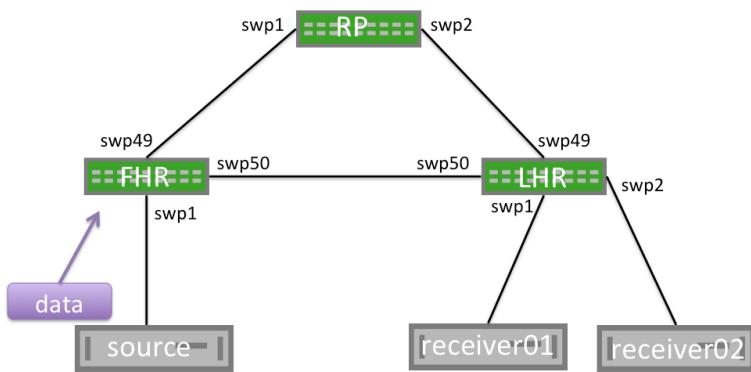
### *PIM Register Process*

When a first hop router (FHR) receives a multicast data packet from a source, the FHR does not know if there are any interested multicast receivers in the network. The FHR encapsulates the data packet in a unicast PIM register message. This packet is sourced from the FHR and destined to the RP address. The RP will build an  $(S,G)$  mroute and decapsulate the multicast packet and forward it along the  $(*,G)$  tree.

As the unencapsulated multicast packet travels down the  $(*,G)$  tree towards the interested receivers, at the same time, the RP sends a PIM  $(S,G)$  join towards the FHR. This builds an  $(S,G)$  state on each multicast router between the RP and FHR.

When the FHR receives a PIM  $(S,G)$  join, it continues encapsulating and sending PIM register messages, but also makes a copy of the packet and sends it along the  $(S,G)$  mroute.

The RP then receives the multicast packet along the  $(S,G)$  tree and sends a PIM register stop to the FHR to end the register process.



## PIM SPT Switchover

When the LHR receives the first multicast packet, in order to efficiently forward traffic through the network, it will send a PIM (S,G) join towards the FHR. This builds the shortest path tree (SPT), or the tree that is the shortest path to the source.

When the traffic arrives over the SPT, a PIM (S,G) RPT prune is sent up the shared tree towards the RP. This removes multicast traffic from the shared tree; multicast data is only sent over the SPT.

SPT switchover can be configured on a per-group basis, allowing for some groups to never switch to a shortest path tree; this may also be called *SPT infinity*.

The LHR now sends both (\*,G) joins and (S,G) RPT prune messages towards the RP.

To configure a group to never follow the SPT, complete the following steps:

1. Create the necessary prefix-lists using the FRouting CLI:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# ip prefix-list spt-range permit 235.0.0.0/8 ge 32
switch(config)# ip prefix-list spt-range permit 238.0.0.0/8 ge 32
```

2. Configure SPT switchover for the *spt-range* prefix-list:

```
switch(config)# ip pim spt-swapover infinity prefix-list spt-
range
```

The configured prefix-list can be viewed with the `net show mroute` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show mroute
Source          Group          Proto  Input    Output   TTL
Uptime
*              235.0.0.0      IGMP   swp31s0  pimreg  1      00:
03:3
                                IGMP
03:38
*              238.0.0.0      IGMP   swp31s0  br1     1      00:
02:08
```

In the example above, 235.0.0.0 has been configured for SPT switchover, identified by *pimreg*.

### *Sender Starts Before Receivers Join*

As previously mentioned, a multicast sender can send multicast data without any additional IGMP or PIM signaling. When the FHR receives the multicast traffic it encapsulates it and sends a PIM register to the rendezvous point (RP).

When the RP receives the PIM register, it builds an (S,G) mroute; however, there is no (\*,G) mroute and no interested receivers.

The RP drops the PIM register message and immediately sends a PIM register stop message to the FHR.

Receiving a PIM register stop without any associated PIM joins leaves the FHR without any outgoing interfaces. The FHR drops this multicast traffic until a PIM join is received.



PIM register messages are sourced from the interface that received the multicast traffic and are destined to the RP address. The PIM register is not sourced from the interface towards the RP.

### *PIM Null-Register*

In order to notify the RP that multicast traffic is still flowing when the RP has no receiver, or if the RP is not on the SPT tree, the FHR periodically sends PIM null register messages. The FHR sends a PIM register with the Null-Register flag set, but without any data. This special PIM register notifies the RP that a multicast source is still sending, should any new receivers come online.



After receiving a PIM Null-Register, the RP immediately sends a PIM register stop to acknowledge the reception of the PIM null register message.

## PIM and ECMP

PIM uses the RPF procedure to choose an upstream interface in order to build a forwarding state. If equal-cost multipaths (ECMP) are configured, PIM can use choose the RPF based on ECMP using hash algorithms.

The FRR `ip pim ecmp` command enables PIM to use all the available nexthops for the installation of mroutes. For example, if you have 4-way ECMP, PIM spreads the S,G and \*,G mroutes across the 4 different paths.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# ip pim ecmp
```

The `ip pim ecmp rebalance` command recalculates all stream paths in the event of a loss of path over one of the ECMP paths. Without this command, only the streams that were using the path that was lost are moved to alternate ECMP paths. Rebalance does not affect existing groups.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh
switch# configure terminal
switch(config)# ip pim ecmp rebalance
```



The rebalance command can cause some packet loss.

The `show ip pim nexthop` provides you with a way to review which nexthop is selected for a specific source/group:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh
switch# show ip pim nexthop
Number of registered addresses: 3
Address          Interface      Nexthop
-----
6.0.0.9          swp31s0       169.254.0.9
6.0.0.9          swp31s1       169.254.0.25
6.0.0.11         lo           0.0.0.0
6.0.0.10         swp31s0       169.254.0.9
6.0.0.10         swp31s1       169.254.0.25
```

## Configuring PIM

To configure PIM using NCLU:

1. Configure the PIM interface:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 pim sm
```

**⚠** PIM must be enabled on all interfaces facing multicast sources or multicast receivers, as well as on the interface where the RP address is configured.

2. **Optional:** Run the following command to enable IGMP (either version 2 or 3) on the interfaces with hosts attached. IGMP version 3 is the default, so you only need to specify the version if you want to use IGMP version 2:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 igmp version 2
```

**⚠** IGMP must be configured on all interfaces where multicast receivers exist.

3. Configure a group mapping for a static RP:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add pim rp 192.168.0.1
```

**⚠** Unless you are using PIM SSM, each PIM-SM enabled device must configure a static RP to a group mapping, and all PIM-SM enabled devices must have the same RP to group mapping configuration.

IP PIM RP group ranges can overlap. Cumulus Linux performs a longest prefix match (LPM) to determine the RP. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add pim rp 192.168.0.1 224.10.0.0/16
cumulus@switch:~$ net add pim rp 192.168.0.2 224.10.2.0/24
```

In this example, if the group is in 224.10.2.5, the RP that gets selected is 192.168.0.2. If the group is 224.10.15, the RP that gets selected is 192.168.0.1.

4. Review and commit your changes:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```



## Configuring PIM Using FRRouting

PIM is included in the FRRouting package. For proper PIM operation, PIM depends on Zebra. PIM relies on unicast routing to be configured and operational in order to do RPF operations. As such, some other routing protocol or static routes must be configured.

To configure PIM on a switch using FRR:

1. Open `/etc/frr/daemons` in a text editor.
2. Add the following line to the end of the file to enable `pimd`, and save the file:

```
zebra=yes  
pimd=yes
```

3. Run the `sudo systemctl restart frr` command to restart FRRouting:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart frr
```

4. In a terminal, run the `vtysh` command to start the FRRouting CLI on the switch.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh  
cumulus#
```

5. Run the following commands to configure the PIM interfaces:

```
cumulus# configure terminal  
cumulus(config)# int swp1  
cumulus(config-if)# ip pim sm
```



PIM must be enabled on all interfaces facing multicast sources or multicast receivers, as well as on the interface where the RP address is configured.

6. **Optional:** Run the following commands to enable IGMP (either version 2 or 3) on the interfaces with hosts attached. IGMP version 3 is the default, so you only need to specify the version if you want to use IGMP version 2:

```
cumulus# configure terminal  
cumulus(config)# int swp1  
cumulus(config-if)# ip igmp  
cumulus(config-if)# ip igmp version 2 #skip this step if you are  
using version 3
```



IGMP must be configured on all interfaces where multicast receivers exist.

7. Configure a group mapping for a static RP:

```
cumulus# configure terminal  
cumulus(config)# ip pim rp 192.168.0.1
```



Each PIM-SM enabled device must configure a static RP to a group mapping, and all PIM-SM enabled devices must have the same RP to group mapping configuration.

IP PIM RP group ranges can overlap. Cumulus Linux performs a longest prefix match (LPM) to determine the RP. For example:

```
cumulus(config)# ip pim rp 10.0.0.13 224.10.0.0/16
```

## Example Configurations

Complete Multicast Network Configuration Example

The following is example configuration:

### RP Configuration

```
RP# show run  
Building configuration...  
Current configuration:  
!  
log syslog  
ip multicast-routing  
ip pim rp 192.168.0.1 224.0.0.0/4  
username cumulus nopassword  
!  
!  
interface lo  
description RP Address interface  
ip ospf area 0.0.0.0  
ip pim sm  
!  
interface swp1  
description interface to FHR  
ip ospf area 0.0.0.0  
ip ospf network point-to-point  
ip pim sm  
!
```



```
interface swp2
description interface to LHR
ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
ip ospf network point-to-point
ip pim sm
!
router ospf
ospf router-id 192.168.0.1
!
line vty
!
end
```

## FHR Configuration

```
FHR# show run
!
log syslog
ip multicast-routing
ip pim rp 192.168.0.1 224.0.0.0/4
username cumulus nopassword
!
interface bridge10.1
description Interface to multicast source
ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
ip ospf network point-to-point
ip pim sm
!
interface lo
ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
ip pim sm
!
interface swp49
description interface to RP
ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
ip ospf network point-to-point
ip pim sm
!
interface swp50
description interface to LHR
ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
ip ospf network point-to-point
ip pim sm
!
router ospf
ospf router-id 192.168.1.1
!
line vty
!
end
```



## LHR Configuration

```
LHR# show run
!
log syslog
ip multicast-routing
ip pim rp 192.168.0.1 224.0.0.0/4
username cumulus nopassword
!
interface bridge10.1
description interface to multicast receivers
ip igmp
ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
ip ospf network point-to-point
ip pim sm
!
interface lo
ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
ip pim sm
!
interface swp49
description interface to RP
ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
ip ospf network point-to-point
ip pim sm
!
interface swp50
description interface to FHR
ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
ip ospf network point-to-point
ip pim sm
!
router ospf
ospf router-id 192.168.2.2
!
line vty
!
end
```

## Source Specific Multicast Mode (SSM)

The source-specific multicast method uses prefix-lists to configure a receiver to only allow traffic to a multicast address from a single source. This removes the need for an RP, as the source must be known before traffic can be accepted. The default range is 232.0.0.0/8, and be further configured by setting a prefix-list.

The example process below configures a prefix-list named `ssm-range`, and prefix-lists permitting traffic from 230.0.0.0/8 and 238.0.0.0/8, for prefixes longer than 32.

**!** PIM considers 232.0.0.0/8 the default range if the ssm range is not configured. If this default is overridden with a prefix-list, **all** ranges that should be considered must be in the prefix-list

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add pim prefix-list ipv4 ssm range permit
232.0.0.0/8 ge 32
cumulus@switch:~$ net add pim prefix-list ipv4 ssm range permit
238.0.0.0/8 ge 32
cumulus@switch:~$ net add pim prefix-list ipv4 ssm range permit
cumulus@switch:~$ net add pim ssm prefix-list ssm-range
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

This configuration can also be done with the FRRouting CLI:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo vtysh
switch# conf t
switch(config)# ip prefix-list ssm-range seq 5 permit 232.0.0.0/8 ge
32
switch(config)# ip prefix-list ssm-range seq 10 permit 238.0.0.0/8 ge
32
switch(config)# ip pim ssm prefix-list ssm-range
switch(config)# exit
switch# write mem
```

To view the existing prefix-lists, use the `net show ip` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show ip prefix-list ssm-range
ZEBRA: ip prefix-list ssm-range: 2 entries
    seq 5 permit 232.0.0.0/8 ge 32
    seq 10 permit 238.0.0.0/8 ge 32
OSPF: ip prefix-list ssm-range: 2 entries
    seq 5 permit 232.0.0.0/8 ge 32
    seq 10 permit 238.0.0.0/8 ge 32
PIM: ip prefix-list ssm-range: 2 entries
    seq 5 permit 232.0.0.0/8 ge 32
    seq 10 permit 238.0.0.0/8 ge 32
```

## IP Multicast Boundaries

Multicast boundaries enable network administrators to limit the distribution of multicast traffic by setting boundaries with the goal of pushing multicast to a subset of the network.

With such boundaries in place, any incoming IGMP or PIM joins are dropped or accepted based upon the prefix-list specified. The boundary is implemented by applying an IP multicast boundary OIL (outgoing interface list) on an interface.

To configure the boundary, use NCLU:



1. Create a prefix-list as above.
2. Configure the IP multicast boundary:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add <interface> multicast boundary oil
<prefix-list>
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

## Multicast Source Discovery Protocol (MSDP)

The Multicast Source Discovery Protocol (MSDP) can be used to connect multiple PIM-SM multicast domains together, using the PIM-SM RPs. By configuring any cast RPs with the same IP address on multiple multicast switches (primarily on the loopback interface), the PIM-SM limitation of only one RP per multicast group is relaxed. This allows for an increase in both failover and load-balancing throughout.

When an RP discovers a new source (typically a PIM-SM register message), a source-active (SA) message is sent to each MSDP peer. The peer then determines if any receivers are interested.



Cumulus Linux MSDP support is primarily for anycast-RP configuration, rather than multiple multicast domains. Each MSDP peer must be configured in a full mesh, as SA messages are not received and re-forwarded.



Cumulus Linux currently only supports one MSDP mesh-group.

The following steps demonstrate configuring a Cumulus switch to use the MSDP:

1. Add an anycast IP address to the loopback interface for each RP in the domain:

```
cumulus@rp01:~$ net add loopback lo ip address 10.1.1.1/32
cumulus@rp01:~$ net add loopback lo ip address 10.1.1.100/32
```

2. On every multicast switch, configure the group to RP mapping using the anycast address:

```
cumulus@switch:$ net add pim rp 100.1.1.100 224.0.0.0/4
cumulus@switch:$ net pending
cumulus@switch:$ net commit
```

3. Configure the MSDP mesh group for all active RPs (the following example uses 3 RPs):

The mesh group should include all RPs in the domain as members, with a unique address as the source. This configuration results in MSDP peerings between all RPs.



```
cumulus@rp01:$ net add msdp mesh-group cumulus member 100.1.1.2  
cumulus@rp01:$ net add msdp mesh-group cumulus member 100.1.1.3
```

```
cumulus@rp02:$ net add msdp mesh-group cumulus member 100.1.1.1  
cumulus@rp02:$ net add msdp mesh-group cumulus member 100.1.1.3
```

```
cumulus@rp03:$ net add msdp mesh-group cumulus member 100.1.1.1  
cumulus@rp03:$ net add msdp mesh-group cumulus member 100.1.1.2
```

4. Pick the local loopback address as the source of the MSDP control packets:

```
cumulus@rp01:$ net add msdp mesh-group cumulus source 100.1.1.1
```

```
cumulus@rp02:$ net add msdp mesh-group cumulus source 100.1.1.2
```

```
cumulus@rp03:$ net add msdp mesh-group cumulus source 100.1.1.3
```

5. Inject the anycast IP address into the domain's IGP.



If the network is unnumbered and uses unnumbered BGP as the IGP, avoid using the anycast IP address for establishing unicast or multicast peerings. For PIM-SM, ensure that the unique address is used as the PIM hello source by setting the source:

```
cumulus@rp01:$ net add interface lo pim use-source 100.1.1.1
```

## Verifying PIM



The following outputs are based on the [Cumulus Reference Topology](#) with cldemo-pim.

### Source Starts First

On the FHR, an mroute is built, but the upstream state is "Prune". The FHR flag is set on the interface receiving multicast.



Use the `net show mroute` command (or `show ip mroute` in FRR) to review detailed output for the FHR:

```
cumulus@fhr:~$ net show mroute
Source          Group          Proto  Input     Output    TTL
Uptime
172.16.5.105   239.1.1.1    none   br0      none     0      --:
--:--
!
cumulus@fhr:~$ net show pim upstream
Iif Source Group State Uptime JoinTimer RSTimer KATimer RefCnt
br0 172.16.5.105 239.1.1.1 Prune 00:07:40 --:--- 00:00:36 00:02:50 1
!
cumulus@fhr:~$ net show pim upstream-join-desired
Interface Source          Group          LostAssert Joins PimInclude
JoinDesired EvalJD
!
cumulus@fhr:~$ net show pim interface
Interface State          Address    PIM Nbrs      PIM DR  FHR
br0       up            172.16.5.1  0           local   1
swp51     up            10.1.0.17  1           local   0
swp52     up            10.1.0.19  0           local   0
!
cumulus@fhr:~$ net show pim state
Source          Group          IIF      OIL
172.16.5.105   239.1.1.1    br0
!
cumulus@fhr:~$ net show pim interface detail
Interface : br0
State      : up
Address    : 172.16.5.1
Designated Router
-----
Address    : 172.16.5.1
Priority   : 1
Uptime     : --:---:--
Elections  : 2
Changes    : 0

FHR - First Hop Router
-----
239.1.1.1 : 172.16.5.105 is a source, uptime is 00:27:43
```

On the RP, no mroute state is created, but the `net show pim upstream` output includes the S,G:

```
cumulus@rp01:~$ net show mroute
Source          Group          Proto  Input     Output    TTL
Uptime
!
cumulus@rp01:~$ net show pim upstream
```

Iif	Source	Group	State	Uptime
JoinTimer	RSTimer	KATimer	RefCnt	
swp30	172.16.5.105	239.1.1.1	Prune	00:00:19 --::--
--	--::--	00:02:46	1	

As a receiver joins the group, the mroute output interface on the FHR transitions from "none" to the RPF interface of the RP:

```
cumulus@fhr:~$ net show mroute
Source          Group          Proto  Input       Output      TTL
Uptime
172.16.5.105   239.1.1.1    PIM    br0        swp51      1     00:
05:40
!
cumulus@fhr:~$ net show pim upstream
Iif          Source          Group          State       Uptime
JoinTimer    RSTimer    KATimer    RefCnt
br0          172.16.5.105   239.1.1.1    Prune     00:48:23 --::--
-- 00:00:00 00:00:37      2
!
cumulus@fhr:~$ net show pim upstream-join-desired
Interface Source          Group          LostAssert Joins PimInclude
JoinDesired EvalJD
swp51      172.16.5.105   239.1.1.1    no        yes     no
yes        yes
!
cumulus@fhr:~$ net show pim state
Source          Group          IIF       OIL
172.16.5.105   239.1.1.1    br0      swp51
```

```
cumulus@rp01:~$ net show mroute
Source          Group          Proto  Input       Output      TTL
Uptime
*            239.1.1.1    PIM    lo         swp1      1     00:
09:59
172.16.5.105   239.1.1.1    PIM    swp30     swp1      1     00:
09:59
!
cumulus@rp01:~$ net show pim upstream
Iif          Source          Group          State       Uptime
JoinTimer    RSTimer    KATimer    RefCnt
lo          *            239.1.1.1    Joined    00:10:01 00:00:
59  --::--  --::--      1
swp30      172.16.5.105   239.1.1.1    Joined    00:00:01 00:00:
59  --::--  00:02:35      1
!
cumulus@rp01:~$ net show pim upstream-join-desired
```



```
Interface Source          Group          LostAssert  Joins  PimInclude
JoinDesired EvalJD
swp1      *              239.1.1.1    no         yes     no
yes       yes
!
cumulus@rp01:~$ net show pim state
Source          Group          IIF          OIL
*              239.1.1.1    lo           swp1
172.16.5.105   239.1.1.1    swp30       swp1
```

## Receiver Joins First

On the LHR attached to the receiver:

```
cumulus@lhr:~$ net show mroute
Source          Group          Proto        Input        Output        TTL
Uptime
*              239.2.2.2    IGMP        swp51       br0          1  00:
01:19
!
cumulus@lhr:~$ net show pim local-membership
Interface Address      Source          Group          Membership
br0      172.16.1.1      *              239.2.2.2    INCLUDE
!
cumulus@lhr:~$ net show pim state
Source          Group          IIF          OIL
*              239.2.2.2    swp51       br0
!
cumulus@lhr:~$ net show pim upstream
Iif      Source          Group          State        Uptime
JoinTimer RSTimer      KATimer      RefCnt
swp51      *              239.2.2.2    Joined      00:02:07 00:00:
53  --:---:--  --:---:--      1
!
cumulus@lhr:~$ net show pim upstream-join-desired
Interface Source          Group          LostAssert  Joins  PimInclude
JoinDesired EvalJD
br0      *              239.2.2.2    no         no     yes
yes       yes
!
cumulus@lhr:~$ net show igmp groups
Interface Address      Group          Mode        Timer      Srcs V Uptime
br0      172.16.1.1      239.2.2.2    EXCL      00:04:02    1 3 00:04:
12
!
cumulus@lhr:~$ net show igmp sources
Interface Address      Group          Source        Timer Fwd
Uptime
br0      172.16.1.1      239.2.2.2    *           03:54     Y
00:04:21
```



On the RP:

```
cumulus@rp01:~$ net show mroute
Source          Group          Proto  Input     Output    TTL
Uptime
*              239.2.2.2      PIM    lo        swp1      1       00:
00:03
!
cumulus@rp01:~$ net show pim state
Source          Group          IIF    OIL
*              239.2.2.2      lo      swp1
!
cumulus@rp01:~$ net show pim upstream
Iif      Source          Group          State    Uptime
JoinTimer RSTimer   KATimer   RefCnt
lo        *              239.2.2.2      Joined   00:05:17 00:00:
43  ---:---:---  ---:---:---      1
!
cumulus@rp01:~$ net show pim upstream-join-desired
Interface Source          Group          LostAssert Joins PimInclude
JoinDesired EvalJD
swp1      *              239.2.2.2      no         yes     no
yes      yes
```

## PIM in a VRF

VRFs (see page 696) divide the routing table on a per-tenant basis, ultimately providing for separate layer 3 networks over a single layer 3 infrastructure. With a VRF, each tenant has its own virtualized layer 3 network, so IP addresses can overlap between tenants.

PIM in a VRF enables PIM trees and multicast data traffic to run inside a layer 3 virtualized network, with a separate tree per domain or tenant. Each VRF has its own multicast tree with its own RP(s), sources, and so forth. Thus you can have one tenant per corporate division, client or product, for example.

VRFs on different switches typically connect or are peered over subinterfaces, where each subinterface is in its own VRF, provided MP-BGP VPN is not enabled or supported.

To configure PIM in a VRF, run the following commands. First, add the VRFs and associate them with switch ports:

```
cumulus@rp01:~$ net add vrf blue
cumulus@rp01:~$ net add vrf purple
cumulus@rp01:~$ net add interface swp1 vrf blue
cumulus@rp01:~$ net add interface swp2 vrf purple
```

Then add the PIM configuration to FRR, review and commit the changes:

```
cumulus@fhr:~$ net add interface swp1 pim sm
```

```

cumulus@fhr:~$ net add interface swp2 pim sm
cumulus@fhr:~$ net add bgp vrf blue auto 65001
cumulus@fhr:~$ net add bgp vrf purple auto 65000
cumulus@fhr:~$ net add bgp vrf blue router-id 10.1.1.1
cumulus@fhr:~$ net add bgp vrf purple router-id 10.1.1.2
cumulus@fhr:~$ net add bgp vrf blue neighbor swp1 interface remote-as
external
cumulus@fhr:~$ net add bgp vrf purple neighbor swp2 interface remote-
as external
cumulus@fhr:~$ net pending
cumulus@fhr:~$ net commit

```

These commands create the following configuration in the `/etc/network/interfaces` file and the `/etc/frr/frr.conf` file:

```

auto purple
iface purple
    vrf-table auto

auto blue
iface blue
    vrf-table auto

auto swp1
iface swp1
    vrf purple

auto swp49.1
iface swp49.1
    vrf purple

auto swp2
iface swp2
    vrf blue

auto swp49.2
iface swp49.2
    vrf blue

...

```

```

ip pim rp 192.168.0.1 224.0.0.0/4

vrf purple
    ip pim rp 192.168.0.1 224.0.0.0/4
!
vrf blue
    ip pim rp 192.168.0.1 224.0.0.0/4

```



```
!  
  
int swp1 vrf purple  
    ip pim sm  
    ip igmp version 2  
  
int swp2 vrf blue  
    ip pim sm  
    ip igmp version 3  
  
int swp49.1 vrf purple  
    ip pim sm  
  
int swp49.2  
    ip pim sm  
  
router bgp 65000 vrf purple  
    Bgp router-id 10.1.1.1  
    Neighbor PURPLE peer-group  
    Neighbor PURPLE remote-as external  
    neighbor swp49.1 interface peer-group PURPLE  
  
router bgp 65001 vrf blue  
    bgp router-id 10.1.1.2  
    neighbor BLUE peer-group  
    neighbor BLUE remote-as external  
    neighbor swp49.2 interface peer-group BLUE
```

In FRR, you can use show commands to display VRF information:

```
cumulus@fhr:~$ net show mroute vrf blue  
Source          Group          Proto  Input      Output     TTL  
Uptime  
11.1.0.1        239.1.1.1    IGMP   swp32s0   swp32s1   1 00:  
01:13           *             IGMP   br0.200   br0.200   1 00:  
01:13           *             239.1.1.2  IGMP   mars      pimreg1001 1 00:  
01:13           *             239.1.1.2  IGMP   br0.200   br0.200   1 00:  
01:12           *             239.1.1.2  IGMP   br0.200   br0.200   1 00:  
01:13           *             239.1.1.2  IGMP   br0.200   br0.200   1 00:
```

```
cumulus@fhr:~$ net show mroute  
Source          Group          Proto  Input      Output     TTL  
Uptime
```

11.1.0.1 01:15	239.1.1.1	IGMP	swp31s0	swp31s1	1	00:
		IGMP		br0.100	1	00:
01:15	239.1.1.2	IGMP	lo	pimreg	1	00:
*		IGMP		swp31s1	1	00:
01:14		IGMP		br0.100	1	00:
01:15						

## BFD for PIM Neighbors

You can use [bidirectional forward detection \(see page 672\)](#) (BFD) for PIM neighbors to quickly detect link failures. When you configure an interface, include the `pim bfd` option:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp31s3 pim bfd
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

## Troubleshooting PIM

### FHR Stuck in Registering Process

When a multicast source starts, the FHR sends unicast PIM register messages from the RPF interface towards the source. After the PIM register is received by the RP, a `PIM register stop` message is sent from the RP to the FHR to end the register process. If an issue occurs with this communication, the FHR becomes stuck in the registering process, which can result in high CPU, as PIM register packets are generated by the FHR CPU, and sent to the RP CPU.

To assess this issue:

- Review the FHR. The output interface of `pimreg` can be seen here. If this does not change to an interface within a few seconds, the FHR is likely stuck.

```
cumulus@fhr:~$ net show mroute
Source          Group          Proto  Input    Output
TTL   Uptime
172.16.5.105   239.2.2.3    PIM    br0      pimreg
1    00:03:59
```

To troubleshoot the issue:

- Validate that the FHR can reach the RP. If the RP and FHR can not communicate, the registration process fails:

```
cumulus@fhr:~$ ping 10.0.0.21 -I br0
```



```
PING 10.0.0.21 (10.0.0.21) from 172.16.5.1 br0: 56(84) bytes of
data.
^C
--- 10.0.0.21 ping statistics ---
4 packets transmitted, 0 received, 100% packet loss, time 3000ms
```

2. On the RP, use `tcpdump` to see if the PIM register packets are arriving:

```
cumulus@rp01:~$ sudo tcpdump -i swp30
tcpdump: verbose output suppressed, use -v or -vv for full
protocol decode
listening on swp30, link-type EN10MB (Ethernet), capture size
262144 bytes
23:33:17.524982 IP 172.16.5.1 > 10.0.0.21: PIMv2, Register,
length 66
```

3. If PIM registration packets are being received, verify that they are seen by PIM by issuing `debug pim packets` from within FRRouting:

```
cumulus@fhr:~$ sudo vtysh -c "debug pim packets"
PIM Packet debugging is on

cumulus@rp01:~$ sudo tail /var/log/frr/frr.log
2016/10/19 23:46:51 PIM: Recv PIM REGISTER packet from
172.16.5.1 to 10.0.0.21 on swp30: ttl=255 pim_version=2
pim_msg_size=64 checksum=a681
```

4. Repeat the process on the FHR to see if PIM register stop messages are being received on the FHR and passed to the PIM process:

```
cumulus@fhr:~$ sudo tcpdump -i swp51
23:58:59.841625 IP 172.16.5.1 > 10.0.0.21: PIMv2, Register,
length 28
23:58:59.842466 IP 10.0.0.21 > 172.16.5.1: PIMv2, Register Stop,
length 18

cumulus@fhr:~$ sudo vtysh -c "debug pim packets"
PIM Packet debugging is on

cumulus@fhr:~$ sudo tail -f /var/log/frr/frr.log
2016/10/19 23:59:38 PIM: Recv PIM REGSTOP packet from 10.0.0.21
to 172.16.5.1 on swp51: ttl=255 pim_version=2 pim_msg_size=18
checksum=5a39
```



## No \*,G Is Built on LHR

The most common reason for a \*,G to not be built on a LHR is for both PIM **and** IGMP to not be enabled on an interface facing a receiver.

```
lhr# show run
!
interface br0
  ip igmp
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
  ip pim sm
```

To troubleshoot this issue, if both PIM and IGMP are enabled, ensure that IGMPv3 joins are being sent by the receiver:

```
cumulus@lhr:~$ sudo tcpdump -i br0 igmp
tcpdump: verbose output suppressed, use -v or -vv for full protocol
decode
listening on br0, link-type EN10MB (Ethernet), capture size 262144
bytes
00:03:55.789744 IP 172.16.1.101 > igmp.mcast.net: igmp v3 report, 1
group record(s)
```

## No mroute Created on FHR

To troubleshoot this issue:

1. Verify that multicast traffic is being received:

```
cumulus@fhr:~$ sudo tcpdump -i br0
tcpdump: verbose output suppressed, use -v or -vv for full
protocol decode
listening on br0, link-type EN10MB (Ethernet), capture size
262144 bytes
00:11:52.944745 IP 172.16.5.105.51570 > 239.2.2.9.1000: UDP,
length 9
```

2. Verify that PIM is configured on the interface facing the source:

```
fhr# show run
!
interface br0
  ip ospf area 0.0.0.0
  ip pim sm
```

3. If PIM is configured, verify that the RPF interface for the source matches the interface the multicast traffic is received on:

```
fhr# show ip rpf 172.16.5.105
Routing entry for 172.16.5.0/24 using Multicast RIB
  Known via "connected", distance 0, metric 0, best
    * directly connected, br0
```

4. Verify that an RP is configured for the multicast group:

```
fhr# show ip pim rp-info
RP address          group/prefix-list   OIF           I am RP
10.0.0.21           224.0.0.0/4        swp51         no
```

### No S,G on RP for an Active Group

An RP does not build an mroute when there are no active receivers for a multicast group, even though the mroute was created on the FHR:

```
cumulus@rp01:~$ net show mroute
Source          Group          Proto  Input       Output      TTL
Uptime
spine01#
```

```
cumulus@rp01:~$ net show mroute
Source          Group          Proto  Input       Output      TTL
Uptime
172.16.5.105   239.2.2.9     none   br0        none       0        --:
--:--
```

This is expected behavior. The active source can be seen on the RP with `show ip pim upstream`:

```
cumulus@rp01:~$ net show pim upstream
Iif      Source          Group          State      Uptime
JoinTimer RSTimer      KATimer      RefCnt
swp30    172.16.5.105   239.2.2.9   Prune     00:08:03 --:--
--:--:--:-- 00:02:20      1
!
cumulus@rp01:~$ net show mroute
Source          Group          Proto  Input       Output      TTL
Uptime
```



## No mroute Entry Present in Hardware

Please verify that the hardware IP multicast entry is the maximum value already, using the `cl-resource-query` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cl-resource-query | grep Mcast
Total Mcast Routes: 450, 0% of maximum value 450
```

For Mellanox chipsets, please refer to [TCAM Resource Profiles for Mellanox Switches \(see page 596\)](#).

## Verify MSDP Session State

Run the following commands to verify the state of MSDP sessions:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show msdp mesh-group
Mesh group : pod1
Source : 100.1.1.1
Member           State
100.1.1.2      established
100.1.1.3      established
cumulus@switch:~$
cumulus@switch:~$ net show msdp peer
Peer             Local          State       Uptime   SaCnt
100.1.1.2       100.1.1.1    established  00:07:21   0
100.1.1.3       100.1.1.1    established  00:07:21   0
```

## View the Active Sources

Review the active sources learned locally (via PIM registers) and from MSDP peers:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show msdp sa
Source                  Group          RP   Local   SPT
Uptime
44.1.11.2              239.1.1.1    n    n     00:00:
40
44.1.11.2              239.1.1.2    n    n     00:00:
25
```

## Caveats and Errata

- Cumulus Linux only supports *PIM sparse mode* (PIM-SM), *any-source multicast* (PIM-SM ASM) and *source-specific multicast* (SSM). *Dense mode* and *bidirectional multicast* are not supported.
- Non-native forwarding (register decapsulation) is not supported. Initial packet loss is expected while the PIM  $*,G$  tree is built from the rendezvous point to the FHR to trigger native forwarding.
- Cumulus Linux does not currently build an S,G mroute when forwarding over an  $*,G$  tree.



# Monitoring and Troubleshooting

This chapter introduces monitoring and troubleshooting Cumulus Linux.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Using the Serial Console (see page 760)
  - Configuring the Serial Console on ARM Switches (see page 760)
  - Configuring the Serial Console on x86 Switches (see page 761)
- Getting General System Information (see page 762)
- Diagnostics Using cl-support (see page 762)
- Sending Log Files to a syslog Server (see page 763)
  - Using NCLU (see page 763)
  - Logging Technical Details (see page 763)
  - Local Logging (see page 764)
  - Enabling Remote syslog (see page 765)
  - Writing to syslog with Management VRF Enabled (see page 766)
  - Rate-limiting syslog Messages (see page 766)
  - Harmless syslog Error: Failed to reset devices.list (see page 767)
  - Syslog Troubleshooting Tips (see page 767)
- Next Steps (see page 770)

## Using the Serial Console

The serial console can be a useful tool for debugging issues, especially when you find yourself rebooting the switch often or if you don't have a reliable network connection.

The default serial console baud rate is 115200, which is the baud rate ONIE uses.

## Configuring the Serial Console on ARM Switches

On ARM switches, the U-Boot environment variable `baudrate` identifies the baud rate of the serial console. To change the `baudrate` variable, use the `fw_setenv` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo fw_setenv baudrate 9600
Updating environment variable: `baudrate'
Proceed with update [N/y]? y
```

You must reboot the switch for the `baudrate` change to take effect.



The valid values for `baudrate` are:

- 300
- 600
- 1200
- 2400
- 4800
- 9600
- 19200
- 38400
- 115200

## Configuring the Serial Console on x86 Switches

On x86 switches, you configure serial console baud rate by editing `grub`.



Incorrect configuration settings in `grub` can cause the switch to be inaccessible via the console. Grub changes should be carefully reviewed before implementation.

The valid values for the baud rate are:

- 300
- 600
- 1200
- 2400
- 4800
- 9600
- 19200
- 38400
- 115200

To change the serial console baud rate:

1. Edit `/etc/default/grub`. The two relevant lines in `/etc/default/grub` are as follows; replace the `115200` value with a valid value specified above in the `--speed` variable in the first line and in the `console` variable in the second line:

```
GRUB_SERIAL_COMMAND="serial --port=0x2f8 --speed=115200 --word=8  
--parity=no --stop=1"  
GRUB_CMDLINE_LINUX="console=ttyS1,115200n8  
cl_platform=accton_as5712_54x"
```

2. After you save your changes to the grub configuration, type the following at the command prompt:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ update-grub
```

3. If you plan on accessing your switch's BIOS over the serial console, you need to update the baud rate in the switch BIOS. For more information, see [this knowledge base article](#).
4. Reboot the switch.

## Getting General System Information

Two commands are helpful for getting general information about the switch and the version of Cumulus Linux you are running. These are helpful with system diagnostics and if you need to submit a support request to Cumulus Networks.

For information about the version of Cumulus Linux running on the switch, run `net show version`, which displays the contents of `/etc/lsb-release`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show version
NCLU_VERSION=1.0
DISTRIB_ID="Cumulus Linux"
DISTRIB_RELEASE=3.4.0
DISTRIB_DESCRIPTION="Cumulus Linux 3.4.0"
```

For general information about the switch, run `net show system`, which gathers information about the switch from a number of files in the system:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show system

Penguin Arctica 4806XP
Cumulus Version 3.4.0
Build: Cumulus Linux 3.4.0

Chipset: Broadcom Trident2 BCM56854

Port Config: 48 x 10G-SFP+ & 6 x 40G-QSFP+

CPU: (x86_64) Intel Atom C2558 2.40GHz

Uptime: 4 days, 20:53:49
```

## Diagnostics Using cl-support

You can use `cl-support` to generate a single export file that contains various details and the configuration from a switch. This is useful for remote debugging and troubleshooting. For more information about `cl-support`, read [Understanding the cl-support Output File \(see page 789\)](#).

You should run `cl-support` before you submit a support request to Cumulus Networks as this file helps in the investigation of issues.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-support -h
Usage: cl-support [-h] [-s] [-t] [-v] [reason]...

Args:
[reason]: Optional reason to give for invoking cl-support.
          Saved into tarball's cmdline.args file.

Options:
-h: Print this usage statement
-s: Security sensitive collection
-t: User filename tag
-v: Verbose
-e MODULES: Enable modules. Comma separated module list (run with -e
help for module names)
-d MODULES: Disable modules. Comma separated module list (run with -d
help for module names)
```

## Sending Log Files to a syslog Server

### Using NCLU

The remote syslog server can be configured on the switch using the following configuration:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add syslog host ipv4 192.168.0.254 port udp 514
```

This creates a file called `/etc/rsyslog.d/11-remotesyslog.conf` in the `rsyslog` directory. The file has the following content:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/rsyslog.d/11-remotesyslog.conf
# This file was automatically generated by NCLU.
*.*    @192.168.0.254:514    # UDP
```



NCLU cannot configure a remote syslog if management VRF is enabled on the switch. To do so, please refer to the section [Writing to syslog with Management VRF Enabled](#) (see page 766) below.

### Logging Technical Details

Logging on Cumulus Linux is done with `rsyslog`. `rsyslog` provides both local logging to the `syslog` file as well as the ability to export logs to an external `syslog` server. High precision timestamps are enabled for all `rsyslog` log files; here's an example:

```
2015-08-14T18:21:43.337804+00:00 cumulus switchd[3629]: switchd.c:
1409 switchd version 1.0-cl2.5+5
```



There are applications in Cumulus Linux that could write directly to a log file without going through `rsyslog`. These files are typically located in `/var/log/`.



All Cumulus Linux rules are stored in separate files in `/etc/rsyslog.d/`, which are called at the end of the `GLOBAL DIRECTIVES` section of `/etc/rsyslog.conf`. As a result, the `RULES` section at the end of `rsyslog.conf` is ignored because the messages have to be processed by the rules in `/etc/rsyslog.d` and then dropped by the last line in `/etc/rsyslog.d/99-syslog.conf`.

## Local Logging

Most logs within Cumulus Linux are sent through `rsyslog`, which then writes them to files in the `/var/log` directory. There are default rules in the `/etc/rsyslog.d/` directory that define where the logs are written:

Rule	Purpose
10-rules.conf	Sets defaults for log messages, include log format and log rate limits.
15-crit.conf	Logs crit, alert or emerg log messages to <code>/var/log/crit.log</code> to ensure they are not rotated away rapidly.
20-clagd.conf	Logs <code>clagd</code> messages to <code>/var/log/clagd.log</code> for <a href="#">MLAG</a> (see page 351).
22-linkstate.conf	Logs link state changes for all physical and logical network links to <code>/var/log/linkstate</code>
25-switchd.conf	Logs <code>switchd</code> messages to <code>/var/log/switchd.log</code> .
30-ptmd.conf	Logs <code>ptmd</code> messages to <code>/var/log/ptmd.log</code> for <a href="#">Prescription Topology Manager</a> (see page 304).
35-rdnbrd.conf	Logs <code>rdnbrd</code> messages to <code>/var/log/rdnbrd.log</code> for <a href="#">redistribute neighbor</a> (see page 687).
40-netd.conf	Logs <code>netd</code> messages to <code>/var/log/netd.log</code> for <a href="#">NCLU</a> (see page 85).
45-frr.conf	Logs routing protocol messages to <code>/var/log/frr/frr.log</code> . This includes BGP and OSPF log messages.
99-syslog.conf	All remaining processes that use <code>rsyslog</code> are sent to <code>/var/log/syslog</code> .



Log files that are rotated are compressed into an archive. Processes that do not use `rsyslog` write to their own log files within the `/var/log` directory. For more information on specific log files, see [Troubleshooting Log Files](#) (see page 791).

## Enabling Remote syslog

If you need to send other log files — such as `switchd` logs — to a `syslog` server, do the following:

1. Create a file in `/etc/rsyslog.d/`. Make sure it starts with a number lower than 99 so that it executes before log messages are dropped in, such as `20-clagd.conf` or `25-switchd.conf`. Our example file is called `/etc/rsyslog.d/11-remotesyslog.conf`. Add content similar to the following:

```
## Logging switchd messages to remote syslog server  
@192.168.1.2:514
```

This configuration sends log messages to a remote `syslog` server for the following processes: `clagd`, `switchd`, `ptmd`, `rdnbrd`, `netd` and `syslog`. It follows the same syntax as the `/var/log/syslog` file, where @ indicates UDP, 192.168.1.2 is the IP address of the `syslog` server, and 514 is the UDP port.

**⚠️** For TCP-based syslog, use two @@ before the IP address: @@192.168.1.2:514. Running `syslog` over TCP places a burden on the switch to queue packets in the `syslog` buffer. This may cause detrimental effects if the remote `syslog` server becomes unavailable.

**⚠️** The numbering of the files in `/etc/rsyslog.d/` dictates how the rules are installed into `rsyslog.d`. If you want to remotely log only the messages in `/var/syslog`, and not those in `/var/log/clagd.log` or `/var/log/switchd.log`, for instance, then name the file `98-remotesyslog.conf`, since it's lower than the `/var/syslog` file `99-syslog.conf` only.

**⚠️** Do not use the `imfile` module with any file written by `rsyslogd`.

2. Restart `rsyslog`.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart rsyslog.service
```



## Writing to syslog with Management VRF Enabled

You can write to syslog with management VRF (see page 720) enabled by applying the following configuration; this configuration is commented out in the `/etc/rsyslog.d/11-remotesyslog.conf` file:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/rsyslog.d/11-remotesyslog.conf
## Copy all messages to the remote syslog server at 192.168.0.254
port 514
action(type="omfwd" Target="192.168.0.254" Device="mgmt" Port="514"
Protocol="udp")
```

For each syslog server, configure a unique action line. For example, to configure two syslog servers at 192.168.0.254 and 10.0.0.1:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/rsyslog.d/11-remotesyslog.conf
## Copy all messages to the remote syslog servers at 192.168.0.254
and 10.0.0.1 port 514
action(type="omfwd" Target="192.168.0.254" Device="mgmt" Port="514"
Protocol="udp")
action(type="omfwd" Target="10.0.0.1" Device="mgmt" Port="514"
Protocol="udp")
```

## Rate-limiting syslog Messages

If you want to limit the number of syslog messages that can be written to the `syslog` file from individual processes, add the following configuration to `/etc/rsyslog.conf`. Adjust the interval and burst values to rate-limit messages to the appropriate levels required by your environment. For more information, read the [rsyslog documentation](#).

```
module(load="imuxsock"
       SysSock.RateLimit.Interval="2" SysSock.RateLimit.Burst="50")
```

The following test script shows an example of rate-limit output in Cumulus Linux ...

```
root@leaf1:mgmt-vrf:/home/cumulus# cat ./syslog.py
#!/usr/bin/python
import syslog
message_count=100
print "Sending %s Messages..."%(message_count)
for i in range(0,message_count):
    syslog.syslog("Message Number:%s"%(i))
print "DONE."
root@leaf1:mgmt-vrf:/home/cumulus# ./syslog.py
Sending 100 Messages...
```



```
DONE.  
root@leaf1:mgmt-vrf:/home/cumulus# tail -n 60 /var/log/syslog  
2017-02-22T19:59:50.043342+00:00 leaf1 syslog.py[22830]: Message  
Number:0  
2017-02-22T19:59:50.043723+00:00 leaf1 syslog.py[22830]: Message  
Number:1  
2017-02-22T19:59:50.043941+00:00 leaf1 syslog.py[22830]: Message  
Number:2  
2017-02-22T19:59:50.044565+00:00 leaf1 syslog.py[22830]: Message  
Number:3  
2017-02-22T19:59:50.044830+00:00 leaf1 syslog.py[22830]: Message  
Number:4  
2017-02-22T19:59:50.045680+00:00 leaf1 syslog.py[22830]: Message  
Number:5  
<...snip...>  
2017-02-22T19:59:50.056727+00:00 leaf1 syslog.py[22830]: Message  
Number:45  
2017-02-22T19:59:50.057599+00:00 leaf1 syslog.py[22830]: Message  
Number:46  
2017-02-22T19:59:50.057741+00:00 leaf1 syslog.py[22830]: Message  
Number:47  
2017-02-22T19:59:50.057936+00:00 leaf1 syslog.py[22830]: Message  
Number:48  
2017-02-22T19:59:50.058125+00:00 leaf1 syslog.py[22830]: Message  
Number:49  
2017-02-22T19:59:50.058324+00:00 leaf1 rsyslogd-2177: imuxsock[pid  
22830]: begin to drop messages due to rate-limiting
```

## Harmless syslog Error: Failed to reset devices.list

The following message gets logged to `/var/log/syslog` when you run `sudo systemctl daemon-reload` and during system boot:

```
systemd[1]: Failed to reset devices.list on /system.slice: Invalid  
argument
```

This message is harmless, and can be ignored. It is logged when `systemd` attempts to change cgroup attributes that are read only. The upstream version of `systemd` has been modified to not log this message by default.

The `sudo systemctl daemon-reload` command is often issued when Debian packages are installed, so the message may be seen multiple times when upgrading packages.

## Syslog Troubleshooting Tips

You can use the following commands to troubleshoot `syslog` issues.



## Verifying that rsyslog is Running

To verify that the `rsyslog` service is running, use the `sudo systemctl status rsyslog.service` command:

```
cumulus@leaf01:mgmt-vrf:~$ sudo systemctl status rsyslog.service
rsyslog.service - System Logging Service
   Loaded: loaded (/lib/systemd/system/rsyslog.service; enabled)
   Active: active (running) since Sat 2017-12-09 00:48:58 UTC; 7min
ago
     Docs: man:rsyslogd(8)
           http://www.rsyslog.com/doc/
 Main PID: 11751 (rsyslogd)
    CGroup: /system.slice/rsyslog.service
             11751 /usr/sbin/rsyslogd -n

Dec 09 00:48:58 leaf01 systemd[1]: Started System Logging Service.
```

## Verifying your rsyslog Configuration.

After making manual changes to any files in the `/etc/rsyslog.d` directory, use the `sudo rsyslogd -N1` command to identify any errors in the configuration files that might prevent the `rsyslog` service from starting.

In the following example, a closing parenthesis is missing in the `11-remotesyslog.conf` file, which is used to configure `syslog` for management VRF:

```
cumulus@leaf01:mgmt-vrf:~$ cat /etc/rsyslog.d/11-remotesyslog.conf
action(type="omfwd" Target="192.168.0.254" Device="mgmt" Port="514"
Protocol="udp"

cumulus@leaf01:mgmt-vrf:~$ sudo rsyslogd -N1
rsyslogd: version 8.4.2, config validation run (level 1), master
config /etc/rsyslog.conf
rsyslogd: error during parsing file /etc/rsyslog.d/15-crit.conf, on
or before line 3: invalid character '$' in object definition - is
there an invalid escape sequence somewhere? [try http://www.rsyslog.
com/e/2207 ]
rsyslogd: error during parsing file /etc/rsyslog.d/15-crit.conf, on
or before line 3: syntax error on token 'crit_log' [try http://www.
rsyslog.com/e/2207 ]
```

After correcting the invalid syntax, issuing the `sudo rsyslogd -N1` command produces the following output.

```
cumulus@leaf01:mgmt-vrf:~$ cat /etc/rsyslog.d/11-remotesyslog.conf
```



```
action(type="omfwd" Target="192.168.0.254" Device="mgmt" Port="514"
Protocol="udp")
cumulus@leaf01:mgmt-vrf:~$ sudo rsyslogd -N1
rsyslogd: version 8.4.2, config validation run (level 1), master
config /etc/rsyslog.conf
rsyslogd: End of config validation run. Bye.
```

## Using `tcpdump`

If a syslog server is not accessible to validate that `syslog` messages are being exported, you can use `tcpdump`.

In the following example, a syslog server has been configured at 192.168.0.254 for UDP syslogs on port 514:

```
cumulus@leaf01:mgmt-vrf:~$ sudo tcpdump -i eth0 host 192.168.0.254
and udp port 514
```

A simple way to generate `syslog` messages is to use `sudo` in another session, such as `sudo date`. Using `sudo` generates an `authpriv` log.

```
cumulus@leaf01:mgmt-vrf:~$ sudo tcpdump -i eth0 host 192.168.0.254
and udp port 514
tcpdump: verbose output suppressed, use -v or -vv for full protocol
decode
listening on eth0, link-type EN10MB (Ethernet), capture size 262144
bytes
00:57:15.356836 IP leaf01.lab.local.33875 > 192.168.0.254.syslog:
SYSLOG authpriv.notice, length: 105
00:57:15.364346 IP leaf01.lab.local.33875 > 192.168.0.254.syslog:
SYSLOG authpriv.info, length: 103
00:57:15.369476 IP leaf01.lab.local.33875 > 192.168.0.254.syslog:
SYSLOG authpriv.info, length: 85
```

To see the contents of the `syslog` file, use the `tcpdump -X` option:

```
cumulus@leaf01:mgmt-vrf:~$ sudo tcpdump -i eth0 host 192.168.0.254
and udp port 514 -X -c 3
tcpdump: verbose output suppressed, use -v or -vv for full protocol
decode
listening on eth0, link-type EN10MB (Ethernet), capture size 262144
bytes
00:59:15.980048 IP leaf01.lab.local.33875 > 192.168.0.254.syslog:
SYSLOG authpriv.notice, length: 105
0x0000: 4500 0085 33ee 4000 4011 8420 c0a8 000b E...3.@.@@.....
0x0010: c0a8 00fe 8453 0202 0071 9d18 3c38 353e .....S...q..<85>
0x0020: 4465 6320 2039 2030 303a 3539 3a31 3520 Dec..9.00:59:15.
```



```
0x0030: 6c65 6166 3031 2073 7564 6f3a 2020 6375 leaf01.sudo:..cu
0x0040: 6d75 6c75 7320 3a20 5454 593d 7074 732f mulus.:TTY=pts/
0x0050: 3120 3b20 5057 443d 2f68 6f6d 652f 6375 1.:PWD=/home/cu
0x0060: 6d75 6c75 7320 3b20 5553 4552 3d72 6f6f mulus.;.USER=roo
0x0070: 7420 3b20 434f 4d4d 414e 443d 2f62 696e t.;.COMMAND=/bin
0x0080: 2f64 6174 65 /date
```

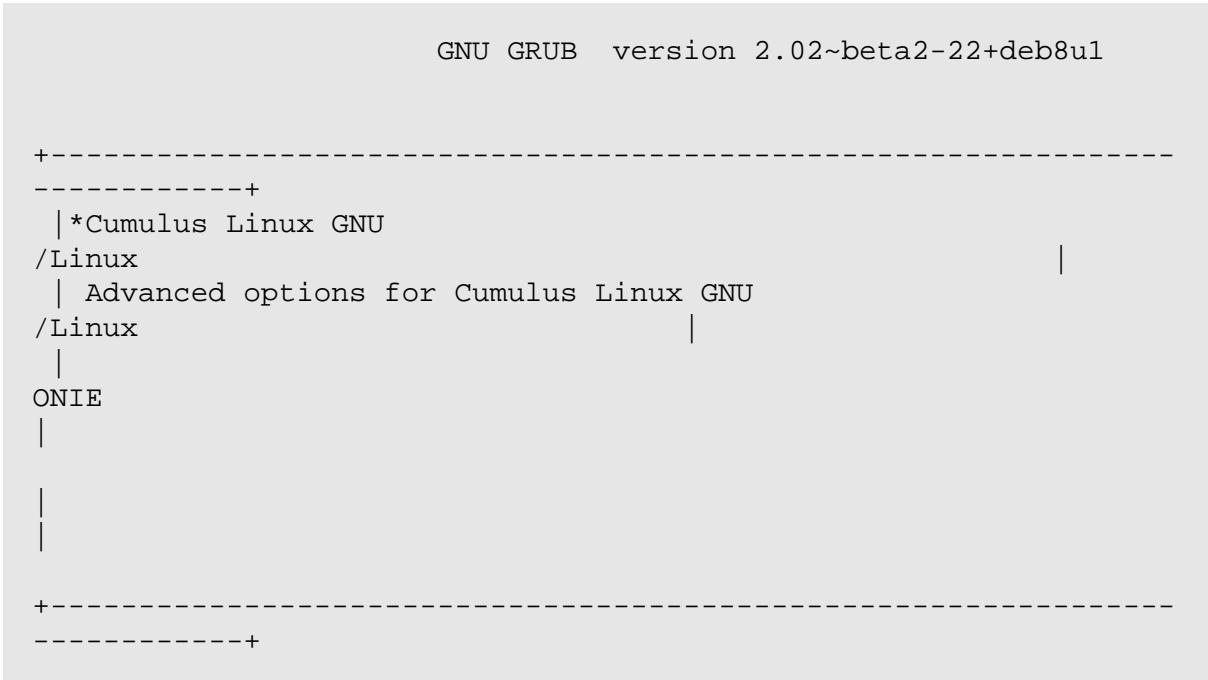
## Next Steps

The links below discuss more specific monitoring topics.

## Single User Mode - Boot Recovery

Use single user mode to assist in troubleshooting system boot issues or for password recovery. To enter single user mode, follow the steps below.

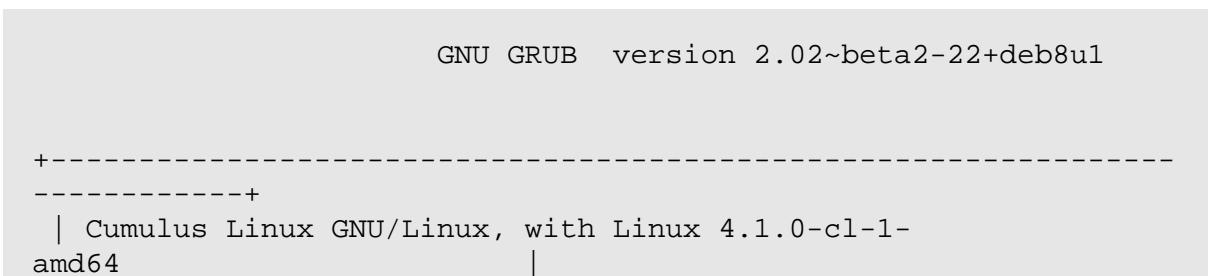
1. Boot the switch, as soon as you see the GRUB menu.



GNU GRUB version 2.02~beta2-22+deb8u1

```
+-----+
-----+
| *Cumulus Linux GNU
/Linux
| Advanced options for Cumulus Linux GNU
/Linux
|
ONIE
|
|
+
-----+
-----+
```

2. Use the ^ and v arrow keys to select **Advanced options for Cumulus Linux GNU/Linux**. A menu similar to the following should appear:



GNU GRUB version 2.02~beta2-22+deb8u1

```
+-----+
-----+
| Cumulus Linux GNU/Linux, with Linux 4.1.0-cl-1-
amd64
|
+
-----+
```



```
| Cumulus Linux GNU/Linux, with Linux 4.1.0-cl-1-amd64
(sysvinit)           |
| *Cumulus Linux GNU/Linux, with Linux 4.1.0-cl-1-amd64
(recovery mode)      |

+-----+
-----+
```

3. Select **Cumulus Linux GNU/Linux, with Linux 4.1.0-cl-1-amd64 (recovery mode)**.
4. Press **ctrl-x** to reboot.
5. After the system reboots, set a new password.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo passwd
Enter new UNIX password:
Retype new UNIX password:
passwd: password updated successfully
```

6. Sync the **/etc** directory using **btrfs**, then reboot the system:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo btrfs filesystem sync /etc
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo reboot -f
Restarting the system.
```

## Resource Diagnostics Using cl-resource-query

You can use **cl-resource-query** to retrieve information about host entries, MAC entries, L2 and L3 routes, and ECMPs (equal-cost multi-path routes, see [Load Balancing \(see page 603\)](#)) that are in use. This is especially useful because Cumulus Linux syncs routes between the kernel and the switching silicon. If the required resource pools in hardware fill up, new kernel routes can cause existing routes to move from being fully allocated to being partially allocated.

In order to avoid this, routes in the hardware should be monitored and kept below the ASIC limits. For example, on systems with a Broadcom Trident II chipset, the limits are as follows:

```
routes: 8092 <<< if all routes are IPv6, or 16384 if all routes are
IPv4
long mask routes 2048 <<< these are routes with a mask longer than
the route mask limit
route mask limit 64
host_routes: 8192
ecmp_nhs: 16346
ecmp_nhs_per_route: 52
```

This translates to about 314 routes with ECMP next hops, if every route has the maximum ECMP NHs.

You can monitor this in Cumulus Linux with the `cl-resource-query` command. Results vary between switches running on different chipsets.

`cl-resource-query` results for a Mellanox Spectrum switch:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-resource-query
Host entries:          2,  0% of maximum value  5120
IPv4 neighbors:        2
IPv6 neighbors:        0
IPv4 entries:          33,  0% of maximum value 39936
IPv6 entries:          13,  0% of maximum value 15360
IPv4 Routes:           33
IPv6 Routes:           13
Total Routes:          46,  0% of maximum value 32768
ECMP nexthops:         0,  0% of maximum value 209664
MAC entries:           25,  0% of maximum value 409600
```

`cl-resource-query` results for a Broadcom Tomahawk switch:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-resource-query
Host entries:          1,  0% of maximum value  20480 <<< 2
IPv4 neighbors can use one entry
IPv4 neighbors:         1
IPv6 neighbors:         0
IPv4 entries:          5,  0% of maximum value 32668 <<< swtc
h overrides the SDK max limits
IPv6 entries:          4,  0% of maximum value 16384 <<<
IPv4 Routes:            5
IPv6 Routes:            4
Total Routes:           9,  0% of maximum value 32768
ECMP nexthops:          0,  0% of maximum value 16350
MAC entries:            2,  0% of maximum value 40960
```

`cl-resource-query` results for a Broadcom Trident II switch:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-resource-query
Host entries:          1,  0% of maximum value  8192 <<< this
is the default software-imposed limit, 50% of the hardware limit
IPv4 neighbors:         1           <<< these are counts of the
number of valid entries in the table
IPv6 neighbors:         0
IPv4 entries:          13,  0% of maximum value 32668
IPv6 entries:          18,  0% of maximum value 16384
IPv4 Routes:            13
IPv6 Routes:            18
Total Routes:           31,  0% of maximum value 32768
ECMP nexthops:          0,  0% of maximum value 16346
```



MAC entries: 12, 0% of maximum value 32768

## Monitoring System Hardware

You monitor system hardware in these ways, using:

- decode-syseeprom
- sensors
- smond
- Net-SNMP (see page 835)
- watchdog

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Monitoring Hardware Using decode-syseeprom (see page 773)
  - Command Options (see page 774)
  - Related Commands (see page 774)
- Monitoring Hardware Using sensors (see page 774)
  - Command Options (see page 775)
- Monitoring Switch Hardware Using SNMP (see page 776)
- Monitoring System Units Using smond (see page 776)
  - Command Options (see page 777)
- Keeping the Switch Alive Using the Hardware Watchdog (see page 777)
- Related Information (see page 778)

## Monitoring Hardware Using decode-syseeprom

The decode-syseeprom command enables you to retrieve information about the switch's EEPROM. If the EEPROM is writable, you can set values on the EEPROM.

For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ decode-syseeprom
TlvInfo Header:
  Id String:      TlvInfo
  Version:        1
  Total Length:   114
TLV Name           Code Len Value
-----
Product Name       0x21  4  4804
Part Number        0x22  14 R0596-F0009-00
Device Version    0x26  1  2
Serial Number      0x23  19 D1012023918PE000012
```

```

Manufacture Date      0x25  19 10/09/2013 20:39:02
Base MAC Address     0x24   6 00:E0:EC:25:7B:D0
MAC Addresses         0x2A    2 53
Vendor Name           0x2D   17 Penguin Computing
Label Revision        0x27    4 4804
Manufacture Country   0x2C    2 CN
CRC-32                0xFE    4 0x96543BC5
(checksum valid)

```

## Command Options

Usage: /usr/cumulus/bin/decode-syseeprom [-a][-r][-s [args]][-t]

Option	Description
-h, --help	Displays the help message and exits.
-a	Prints the base MAC address for switch interfaces.
-r	Prints the number of MACs allocated for switch interfaces.
-s	Sets the EEPROM content if the EEPROM is writable. <code>args</code> can be supplied in command line in a comma separated list of the form ' <code>&lt;field&gt;=&lt;value&gt;, ...'</code> . ' ' and '=' are illegal characters in field names and values. Fields that are not specified will default to their current values. If <code>args</code> are supplied in the command line, they will be written without confirmation. If <code>args</code> is empty, the values will be prompted interactively.
-t TARGET	Selects the target EEPROM ( <code>board</code> , <code>psu2</code> , <code>psu1</code> ) for the read or write operation; default is <code>board</code> .
-e, --serial	Prints the device serial number.

## Related Commands

You can also use the `dmidecode` command to retrieve hardware configuration information that's been populated in the BIOS.

You can use `apt-get` to install the `lshw` program on the switch, which also retrieves hardware configuration information.

## Monitoring Hardware Using sensors

The `sensors` command provides a method for monitoring the health of your switch hardware, such as power, temperature and fan speeds. This command executes `lm-sensors`.

For example:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ sensors
tmp75-i2c-6-48
Adapter: i2c-1-mux (chan_id 0)
temp1:      +39.0 C  (high = +75.0 C, hyst = +25.0 C)

tmp75-i2c-6-49
Adapter: i2c-1-mux (chan_id 0)
temp1:      +35.5 C  (high = +75.0 C, hyst = +25.0 C)

ltc4215-i2c-7-40
Adapter: i2c-1-mux (chan_id 1)
in1:      +11.87 V
in2:      +11.98 V
power1:   12.98 W
curr1:    +1.09 A

max6651-i2c-8-48
Adapter: i2c-1-mux (chan_id 2)
fan1:     13320 RPM (div = 1)
fan2:     13560 RPM

```



Output from the `sensors` command varies depending upon the switch hardware you use, as each platform ships with a different type and number of sensors.

## Command Options

Usage: `sensors [OPTION]... [CHIP]...`

Option	Description
<code>-c, --config-file</code>	Specify a config file; use <code>-</code> after <code>-c</code> to read the config file from <code>stdin</code> ; by default, <code>sensors</code> references the configuration file in <code>/etc/sensors.d/</code> .
<code>-s, --set</code>	Executes set statements in the config file (root only); <code>sensors -s</code> is run once at boot time and applies all the settings to the boot drivers.
<code>-f, --fahrenheits</code>	Show temperatures in degrees Fahrenheit.
<code>-A, --no-adapter</code>	Do not show the adapter for each chip.
<code>--bus-list</code>	Generate bus statements for <code>sensors.conf</code> .

If `[CHIP]` is not specified in the command, all chip info will be printed. Example chip names include:

- `lm78-i2c-0-2d *-i2c-0-2d`



- lm78-i2c-0-\* \*-i2c-0-\*
- lm78-i2c-\*-2d \*-i2c-\*-2d
- lm78-i2c-\*-\* \*-i2c-\*-\*
- lm78-isa-0290 \*-isa-0290
- lm78-isa-\* \*-isa-\*
- lm78-\*

## Monitoring Switch Hardware Using SNMP

The Net-SNMP documentation is discussed here (see page 835).

## Monitoring System Units Using smond

The `smond` daemon monitors system units like power supply and fan, updates their corresponding LEDs, and logs the change in the state. Changes in system unit state are detected via the `cp1d` registers. `smond` utilizes these registers to read all sources, which impacts the health of the system unit, determines the unit's health, and updates the system LEDs.

Use `smonctl` to display sensor information for the various system units:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo smonctl
Board : OK
Fan   : OK
PSU1  : OK
PSU2  : BAD
Temp1  (Networking ASIC Die Temp Sensor ) : OK
Temp10 (Right side of the board ) : OK
Temp2  (Near the CPU (Right) ) : OK
Temp3  (Top right corner ) : OK
Temp4  (Right side of Networking ASIC ) : OK
Temp5  (Middle of the board ) : OK
Temp6  (P2020 CPU die sensor ) : OK
Temp7  (Left side of the board ) : OK
Temp8  (Left side of the board ) : OK
Temp9  (Right side of the board ) : OK
```



Some switch models lack the sensor for reading voltage information, so this data is not output from the `smonctl` command.

For example, the Dell S4048 series has this sensor and displays power and voltage information:

```
cumulus@dell-s4048-ON:~$ sudo smonctl -v -s PSU2
PSU2:  OK
power:8.5 W  (voltages = ['11.98', '11.87'] V currents =
[ '0.72' ] A)
```

Whereas the Penguin Arctica 3200C (Celestica Seastone) does not:



```
cumulus@cel-sea:~/tmp$ sudo smonctl -v -s PSU1  
PSU1: OK
```

## Command Options

Usage: `smonctl [OPTION]... [CHIP]...`

Option	Description
<code>-S SENSOR, --sensor SENSOR</code>	Displays data for the specified sensor.
<code>-v, --verbose</code>	Displays detailed hardware sensors data.

For more information, read `man smond` and `man smonctl`.

## Keeping the Switch Alive Using the Hardware Watchdog

Cumulus Linux includes a simplified version of the `wd_keepalive(8)` daemon from the standard `watchdog` Debian package. `wd_keepalive` writes to a file called `/dev/watchdog` periodically to keep the switch from resetting, at least once per minute. Each write delays the reboot time by another minute. After one minute of inactivity where `wd_keepalive` doesn't write to `/dev/watchdog`, the switch resets itself. The watchdog is enabled by default on all supported switches, and starts when you boot the switch, before `switchd` starts.

To enable the hardware watchdog, edit the `/etc/watchdog.d/<your_platform>` file and set `run_watchdog` to 1:

```
run_watchdog=1
```

To disable the watchdog, edit the `/etc/watchdog.d/<your_platform>` file and set `run_watchdog` to 0 :

```
run_watchdog=0
```

Then stop the daemon:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl stop wd_keepalive.service
```

You can modify the settings for the watchdog — like the timeout setting and scheduler priority — in its configuration file, `/etc/watchdog.conf`.



## Related Information

- [packages.debian.org/search?keywords=lshw](http://packages.debian.org/search?keywords=lshw)
- [lm-sensors.org](http://lm-sensors.org)
- Net-SNMP tutorials

## Network Switch Port LED and Status LED Guidelines

Data centers today have a large number of network switches manufactured by different hardware vendors running NOSes (network operating system) from different providers. This chapter provides a set of guidelines for how network port and status LEDs should appear on the front panel of a network switch. This provides a network operator with a standard way to identify the state of a switch and its ports by looking at its front panel, irrespective of the hardware vendor or NOS.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Network Port LEDs (see page 778)
- Status LEDs (see page 779)
  - Locate a Switch (see page 780)

### Network Port LEDs

A network port LED indicates the state of the link, e.g. link UP, Tx/Rx activity etc.. Here are the requirements for these LEDs

- **Number of LEDs per port** — Ports that cannot be split; for example, 1G ports must have 1 LED per port. Ports that can be split should have 1 LED per split port. So a 40G port that can be split into 4 10G ports has 4 LEDs, one per split port.
- **Location** — A port LED should be placed right above the port. This prevents the LEDs from being hidden by drooping cables. If the port can be split, the LED for each split port should also be placed above the port. The LEDs should be evenly spaced and be inside the edges of the ports to prevent confusion.
- **Port Number Label** — The port number must be printed in white on the switch front panel directly under the corresponding LED.
- **Colors** — As network port technology improves with smaller ports and higher speeds, having different colors for different types of ports or speeds is confusing. The focus should be on giving a network operator a simple set of indications that provide the operator with basic information about the port. Hence, green and amber colors must be used on the LED to differentiate between good and bad states. These colors are commonly found on network port LEDs and should be easy to implement on future switches.
- **Signaling** — The table below indicates the information that can be conveyed via port LEDs and how it should be done.
  - **Max Speed** indicates the maximum speed at which the port can be run. For a 10G port, if the port speed is 10G, then it is running at its maximum speed. If the 10G port is running at 1G speed, then its running at a *lower speed*.
  - **Physical Link Up/Down** displays layer 2 link status.

- **Beaconing** provides a way for a network operator to identify a particular link. The administrator can *beacon* that port from a remote location so the network operator has visual indication for that port.
- **Fault** can also be considered a form of beaconing or vice versa. Both try to draw attention of the network operator towards the port, thus they are signaled the same way.
- **Blinking amber** implies a blink rate of 33ms. *Slow blinking amber* indicates a blink rate of 500 ms, with a 50% on/off duty cycle. In other words, a slow blinking amber LED is amber for 500 ms and then off for 500ms.

Activity	Max Speed indication	Lower Speed Indication
Physical Link Down	Off	Off
Physical Link UP	Solid Green	Solid Amber
Link Tx/Rx Activity	Blinking Green	Blinking Amber
Beaconing	Slow Blinking Amber	Slow Blinking Amber
Fault	Slow Blinking Amber	Slow Blinking Amber

## Status LEDs

A set of status LEDs are typically located on one side of a network switch. The status LEDs provide a visual indication on what is physically wrong with the network switch. Typical LEDs on the front panel are for PSU (Power Supply Units), fans and system. Locator LEDs are also found on the front panel of a switch. Let's call the different components for which the LEDs are there as just units for now.

- **Number of LEDs per unit** — Each unit should have only 1 LED.
- **Location** — All units should have their LEDs on the righthand side of the switch after the physical ports.
- **Unit label** — The label should be printed on the front panel directly above the LED.
- **Colors** — The focus should be on giving a network operator a simple set of indications that provide basic information about the unit. The following section has more information about the indications, but colors are standardized on green and amber. These colors are universally found on all status LEDs and should be easy to implement on future switches.
- **Defined LED** — Every network switch must have LEDs for the following:
  - PSU
  - Fans
  - System LED
  - Locator LED
- **PSU LEDs** — Each PSU must have its own LED. PSU faults are difficult to debug. If a network operator knows which PSU is faulty, he or she can quickly check if it is powered up correctly and if that fault persists, replace the PSU.

Unit Activity	Indication
Installed and power OK	Solid Green
Installed, but no power	Slow Blinking Amber
Installed, powered, but has faults.	Slow Blinking Amber

- **Fan LED** — A network switch may have multiple fan trays (3 - 6). It is difficult to put an LED for each fan tray on the front panel, given the limited real estate. Hence, the recommendation is one LED for all fans.

Unit Activity	Indication
All fans running OK	Solid Green
Fault on any one of the fans.	Slow Blinking Amber

- **System LED** — A network switch must have a system LED that indicates the general state of a switch. This state could be of hardware, software, or both. It is up to the individual switch NOS to decide what this LED indicates. But the LED can have only the following indications:

Unit Activity	Indication
All OK	Solid Green
Not OK	Slow Blinking Amber

- **Locator LED** — The locator LED helps locate a particular switch in a data center full of switches. Thus, it should have a different color and predefined location. It must be located at the top right corner on the front panel of the switch and its color must be blue.

Unit Activity	Indication
Locate enabled	Blinking Blue
Locate disabled	Off

## Locate a Switch

Cumulus Linux 3.3 and newer versions support the locator LED functionality for identifying a switch, by blinking a single LED on a specified network port, on the following switches:

- Celestica Seastone, Dell Z9100-ON, Edgecore AS7712-32X, Penguin Arctica 3200C, Quanta QuantaMesh BMS T4048-IX2, Supermicro SSE-C3632S

To use the locator LED functionality, run:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ ethtool -p --identify PORT_NAME TIME
```

In the example above, `INTERFACE_NAME` should be replaced with the name of the port, and `TIME` should be replaced with the length of time, in seconds, that the port LED should blink.



This functionality is only supported on `swp*` ports, not `eth*` management interfaces.

## Monitoring Virtual Device Counters

Cumulus Linux gathers statistics for VXLANS and VLANs using virtual device counters. These counters are supported on Tomahawk, Trident II+ and Trident II-based platforms only; see the [Cumulus Networks HCL](#) for a list of supported platforms.

You can retrieve the data from these counters using tools like `ip -s link show`, `ifconfig`, `/proc/net/dev`, or `netstat -i`.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Sample VXLAN Statistics (see page 781)
- Sample VLAN Statistics (see page 782)
  - For VLANs Using the non-VLAN-aware Bridge Driver (see page 782)
  - For VLANs Using the VLAN-aware Bridge Driver (see page 783)
- Configuring the Counters in `switchd` (see page 783)
  - Configuring the Poll Interval (see page 784)
  - Configuring Internal VLAN Statistics (see page 784)
  - Clearing Statistics (see page 784)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 784)

### Sample VXLAN Statistics

VXLAN statistics are available as follows:

- Aggregate statistics are available per VNI; this includes access and network statistics.
- Network statistics are available for each VNI and displayed against the VXLAN device. This is independent of the VTEP used, so this is a summary of the VNI statistics across all tunnels.
- Access statistics are available per VLAN subinterface.

First, get interface information regarding the VXLAN bridge:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ brctl show br-vxln16757104
bridge name          bridge id      STP enabled    interfaces
-vxln16757104        8000.443839006988    no           swp2s0.6
                                         swp2s1.6
```

```
swp2s2.6
swp2s3.6
vxln16757104
```

To get VNI statistics, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip -s link show br-vxln16757104
62: br-vxln16757104: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue state UP mode DEFAULT
    link/ether 44:38:39:00:69:88 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    RX: bytes   packets   errors   dropped overrun mcast
      10848       158        0        0        0        0
    TX: bytes   packets   errors   dropped carrier collsns
      27816       541        0        0        0        0
```

To get access statistics, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip -s link show swp2s0.6
63: swp2s0.6@swp2s0: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue master br-vxln16757104 state UP mode DEFAULT
    link/ether 44:38:39:00:69:88 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    RX: bytes   packets   errors   dropped overrun mcast
      2680        39        0        0        0        0
    TX: bytes   packets   errors   dropped carrier collsns
      7558       140        0        0        0        0
```

To get network statistics, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip -s link show vxln16757104
61: vxln16757104: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue master br-vxln16757104 state UNKNOWN mode DEFAULT
    link/ether e2:37:47:db:f1:94 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
    RX: bytes   packets   errors   dropped overrun mcast
      0         0         0         0         0         0
    TX: bytes   packets   errors   dropped carrier collsns
      0         0         0         9         0         0
```

## Sample VLAN Statistics

### *For VLANs Using the non-VLAN-aware Bridge Driver*

In this case, each bridge is a single L2 broadcast domain and is associated with an internal VLAN. This internal VLAN's counters are displayed as bridge netdev stats.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ brctl show br0
```



```
bridge name    bridge id          STP enabled   interfaces
br0           8000.443839006989    yes          bond0.100
                                         bond0.100
                                         swp2s2.100

cumulus@switch:~$ ip -s link show br0
42: br0: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc noqueue
state UP mode DEFAULT
link/ether 44:38:39:00:69:89 brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
RX: bytes packets errors dropped overrun mcast
23201498 227514 0 0 0 0
TX: bytes packets errors dropped carrier collsns
18198262 178443 0 0 0 0
```

## For VLANs Using the VLAN-aware Bridge Driver

For a bridge using the [VLAN-aware driver \(see page 328\)](#), the bridge is a just a container and each VLAN (VID /PVID) in the bridge is an independent L2 broadcast domain. As there is no netdev available to display these VLAN statistics, the `switchd` nodes are used instead:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ifquery bridge
auto bridge
iface bridge inet static
  bridge-vlan-aware yes
  bridge-ports swp2s0 swp2s1
  bridge-stp on
  bridge-vids 2000-2002 4094
cumulus@switch:~$ ls /cumulus/switchd/run/stats/vlan/
2 2000 2001 2002 all
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /cumulus/switchd/run/stats/vlan/2000/aggregate
Vlan id                      : 2000
L3 Routed In Octets           : -
L3 Routed In Packets          : -
L3 Routed Out Octets          : -
L3 Routed Out Packets         : -
Total In Octets               : 375
Total In Packets              : 3
Total Out Octets              : 387
Total Out Packets             : 3
```

## Configuring the Counters in `switchd`

These counters are enabled by default. To configure them, use `cl-cfg` and configure them as you would any other `switchd` parameter ([see page 191](#)). The `switchd` parameters are as follows:

- `stats.vlan.aggregate`, which controls the statistics available for each VLAN. Its value defaults to `BRIEF`.
- `stats.vxlan.aggregate`, which controls the statistics available for each VNI (access and network). Its value defaults to `DETAIL`.



- `stats.vxlan.member`, which controls the statistics available for each local/access port in a VXLAN bridge. Its value defaults to *BRIEF*.

The values for each parameter can be one of the following:

- **NONE**: This disables the counter.
- **BRIEF**: This provides tx/rx packet/byte counters for the associated parameter.
- **DETAIL**: This provides additional feature-specific counters. In the case of `stats.vxlan.aggregate`, **DETAIL** provides access vs. network statistics. For the other types, **DETAIL** has the same effect as **BRIEF**.



If you change one of these settings on the fly, the new configuration applies only to those VNIs or VLANs set up after the configuration changed; previously allocated counters remain as is.

## Configuring the Poll Interval

The virtual device counters are polled periodically. This can be CPU intensive, so the interval is configurable in `switchd`, with a default of 2 seconds.

```
# Virtual devices hw-stat poll interval (in seconds)
#stats.vdev_hw_poll_interval = 2
```

## Configuring Internal VLAN Statistics

For debugging purposes, you may need to access packet statistics associated with internal VLAN IDs. These statistics are hidden by default, but can be configured in `switchd`:

```
#stats.vlan.show_internal_vlans = FALSE
```

## Clearing Statistics

Since `ethtool` is not supported for virtual devices, you cannot clear the statistics cache maintained by the kernel. You can clear the hardware statistics via `switchd`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo echo 1 > /cumulus/switchd/clear/stats/vlan
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo echo 1 > /cumulus/switchd/clear/stats/vxlan
cumulus@switch:~$
```

## Caveats and Errata

- Currently the CPU port is internally added as a member of all VLANs. Because of this, packets sent to the CPU are counted against the corresponding VLAN's tx packets/bytes. There is no workaround.

- When checking the virtual counters for the bridge, the TX count is the number of packets destined to the CPU before any hardware policers take effect. For example, if 500 broadcast packets are sent into the bridge, the CPU is also sent 500 packets. These 500 packets are policed by the default ACLs in Cumulus Linux, so the CPU might receive fewer than the 500 packets if the incoming packet rate is too high. The TX counter for the bridge should be equal to  $500 * (\text{number of ports in the bridge} - \text{incoming port} + \text{CPU port})$  or just  $500 * \text{number of ports in the bridge}$ .
- You cannot use `ethtool -S` for virtual devices. This is because the counters available via `netdev` are sufficient to display the `vlan/vxlan` counters currently supported in the hardware (only rx/tx packets/bytes are supported currently).

## Buffer Monitoring

Monitoring [packet buffers \(see page 250\)](#) and their utilization is vital for proper traffic management on a network. It is quite useful for:

- Identifying microbursts that result in longer packet latency
- Giving early warning signs of packet buffer congestion that could lead to packet drops
- Quickly identifying a network problem with a particular switch, port or traffic class

You can use buffer utilization monitoring to quickly filter out non-problematic switches so you can focus on the ones causing trouble on the network.

The monitoring involves a set of configurable triggers, that, when triggered can lead to any or all of the following three actions:

- Log actions**, which involves writing to `syslog`
- Snapshot actions**, which involves writing to a file detailing the current state
- Collect actions**, where the switch can collect more information

The monitoring is managed by the `asic-monitor` service, which is in turn managed by `systemd`.



Buffer monitoring is supported on Mellanox switches only.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- [Understanding Histograms \(see page 785\)](#)
- [Configuring Buffer Monitoring \(see page 786\)](#)
- [Restarting the asic-monitor Service \(see page 788\)](#)
- [Understanding Triggers \(see page 789\)](#)
- [Understanding Monitoring Actions \(see page 789\)](#)
- [Caveats and Errata \(see page 789\)](#)

## Understanding Histograms

The Mellanox Spectrum ASIC provides a mechanism to measure and report egress queue lengths in *histograms*. You can configure the ASIC to measure up to 64 egress queues. Each queue is reported through a histogram with 10 bins, where each bin represents a range of queue lengths.



You configure the histogram with a minimum size boundary (*Min*) and a histogram size — the *monitor.histogram\_pg.histogram.minimum\_bytes\_boundary* and *monitor.histogram\_pg.histogram.bin\_size\_bytes* settings, which are described in the table below.

You then derive the maximum size boundary (*Max*) by adding the Min and the histogram size.

The 10 bins are numbered 0 through 9. Bin 0 represents queue lengths up to the Min specified, including queue length 0.

Bin 9 represents queue lengths of Max and above.

Bins 1 through 8 represent equal-sized ranges between the Min and Max, which is determined by dividing the histogram size by 8.

For example, consider the following histogram queue length ranges, in bytes:

- Min = 960
- Histogram size = 12288
- Max = 13248
- Range size = 1536
- Bin 0: 0:959
- Bin 1: 960:2495
- Bin 2: 2496:4031
- Bin 3: 4032:5567
- Bin 4: 5568:7103
- Bin 5: 7104:8639
- Bin 6: 8640:10175
- Bin 7: 10176:11711
- Bin 8: 11712:13247
- Bin 9: 13248:\*

When using the snapshot action, all of this information is captured in the file specified by the *monitor.histogram\_pg.snapshot.file* setting.

## Configuring Buffer Monitoring

The `asic-monitor` tool has a number of settings you need to configure before you can start monitoring. They're described in the following table:

Setting	Description
<code>monitor.port_group_list</code>	A user-defined list of all the port groups in the monitor file. The configuration file contains the following port group names as examples: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <code>all_packet_pg</code></li><li>• <code>buffers_pg</code></li><li>• <code>discards_pg</code></li><li>• <code>histogram_pg</code></li></ul> You must specify at least one port group. If the port group list is empty, then <code>systemd</code> shuts down the <code>asic-monitor</code> service.



Setting	Description
monitor.histogram_pg.port_set	The range of ports for which histograms are configured. This setting can take GLOBS and comma-separated lists, like <code>swp1-swp4,swp8,swp10-swp50</code> .
monitor.histogram_pg.stat_type	Each port group monitors one kind of hardware state, in this case, a <i>histogram</i> .
monitor.histogram_pg.cos_list	Each CoS (Class of Service) value in the list has its own histogram on each port.
monitor.histogram_pg.trigger_type	The type of trigger that can initiate state collection. The only valid option is <i>timer</i> . This setting is optional. If no port group has its trigger type set to <i>timer</i> , the <code>asic-monitor</code> service exits without an error.
monitor.histogram_pg.timer	The frequency at which the histogram triggers; for example, a setting of <code>1s</code> indicates it executes once per second. The timer can be set to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• 1 to 60 seconds, so <code>1s</code>, <code>2s</code>, and so on up to <code>60s</code></li><li>• 1 to 60 minutes, so <code>1m</code>, <code>2m</code>, and so on up to <code>60m</code></li><li>• 1 to 24 hours, so <code>1h</code>, <code>2h</code>, and so on up to <code>24h</code></li><li>• 1 to 7 days, so <code>1d</code>, <code>2d</code> and so on up to <code>7d</code></li></ul>
monitor.histogram_pg.action_list	State collection is initiated when triggered by the <code>asic-monitor</code> service. The state collection may result in one or more actions — <code>snapshot</code> , <code>collect</code> and <code>log</code> — in response.
monitor.histogram_pg.snapshot.file	The prefix file name for the snapshot file. All snapshots use this name, with a sequential number appended to it. For example, <code>/var/lib/cumulus/histogram_stats_0</code> .
monitor.histogram_pg.snapshot.file_count	The number of snapshots that can be created before the first snapshot file is overwritten. While more snapshots can provide you with more data, they can occupy a lot of disk space on the switch. See <a href="#">Caveats and Errata (see page 789)</a> below.
monitor.histogram_pg.histogram.minimum_bytes_boundary	The minimum boundary size for the histogram in bytes. On a Mellanox switch, this number must be a multiple of 96. Adding this number to the size of the histogram produces the maximum boundary size.
monitor.histogram_pg.histogram.bin_size_bytes	The size of the histogram in bytes. Adding this number and the <code>minimum_bytes_boundary</code> value together produces the maximum boundary size.

Setting	Description
monitor.histogram_pg.histogram.sample_time_ns	The sampling time of the histogram in nanoseconds.
monitor.histogram_pg.log.queue_bytes	The length of the queue in bytes before the log action writes a message to syslog.
monitor.histogram_pg.collect.queue_bytes	During state collection, when this queue length (measured in bytes) is reached, the collect action initiates another state collection.
monitor.histogram_pg.collect.port_group_list	The port groups that get triggered by the histogram_pg collect action.

The configuration is stored in the `/etc/cumulus/datapath/monitor.conf` file. You edit the settings in the file directly with a text editor. There is no default configuration. Here is a sample configuration:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/cumulus/datapath/monitor.conf

monitor.port_group_list = [discards_pg,histogram_pg,all_packet_pg,
buffers_pg]

# The queue length histograms are collected every second
# and the results are written to a snapshot file.
# Sixty-four snapshot files will be maintained.
monitor.histogram_pg.port_set = swp1-swp50
monitor.histogram_pg.stat_type = histogram
monitor.histogram_pg.cos_list = [0]
monitor.histogram_pg.trigger_type = timer
monitor.histogram_pg.timer = 1s
monitor.histogram_pg.action_list = [snapshot,collect,log]
monitor.histogram_pg.snapshot.file = /var/lib/cumulus/histogram_stats
monitor.histogram_pg.snapshot.file_count = 64
monitor.histogram_pg.histogram.minimum_bytes_boundary = 1024
monitor.histogram_pg.histogram.bin_size_bytes = 1024
monitor.histogram_pg.histogram.sample_time_ns = 1024
monitor.histogram_pg.log.queue_bytes = 500
monitor.histogram_pg.collect.queue_bytes =
500
monitor.histogram_pg.collect.port_group_list = [buffers_pg,
all_packet_pg]
```

## Restarting the asic-monitor Service

After you modify the configuration in the `monitor.conf` file, you need to restart the `asic-monitor` service. This does not disrupt traffic, nor does it require you to restart `switchd` in order for the changes to take effect.



```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart asic-monitor.service
```

The service is enabled by default when you boot the switch and is restarted whenever you restart `switchd`.

## Understanding Triggers

During state collection, the monitoring service may respond to a threshold being crossed, which triggers a monitoring action.

At this time, the only type of trigger that initiates state collection is a *timer*. The timer is the frequency at which the histogram triggers and reads the ASIC state.

When a monitoring statistic meets a configured threshold, it can trigger an action. Triggers can include:

- Queue length, as measured by a histogram
- Packet drops due to packet buffer congestion
- Packet drops due to errors

If no trigger is configured for a monitoring action, the action happens unconditionally and always occurs.

## Understanding Monitoring Actions

Monitoring actions are responses to triggers issued by the `asic-monitor` service.

There are three types of monitoring actions: *collect*, *log* and *snapshot*. And any or all three of these actions can be triggered by one monitoring step.

A *collect* action triggers the collection of additional ASIC state. Multiple port groups can be daisy chained into a single collect action. A collect action requires a port group.

A *log* action writes out the state to `syslog`. For example:

```
2017-04-26T20:14:41.560840+00:00 cumulus asic-monitor-module INFO:  
2017-04-26 20:14:41.559967: Egress queue(s) greater than 500 bytes in  
monitor port group histogram_pg
```

A *snapshot* action takes a snapshot of the current state that was collected and writes it out to a file. You specify the prefix for the snapshot file name — including the path, like `/var/lib/cumulus/` for example — and the number of snapshots that can be taken before the system starts overwriting the earliest snapshot files. For example, if the snapshot file is called `/var/lib/cumulus/snapshot` and the snapshot file count is set to 64, then the first snapshot file is named `snapshot_0` and the 64th snapshot is named `snapshot_63`. When the 65th snapshot has taken, the original snapshot file — `/var/lib/cumulus/snapshot_0` — is overwritten and the files are overwritten in sequence..

## Caveats and Errata

Keep in mind that a lot of overhead is involved in collecting this data, hitting the CPU and SDK process, which can affect execution of `switchd`. Snapshots and logging can occupy a lot of disk space if you're not limiting the number of files to copy.



## Understanding the `c1-support` Output File

The `c1-support` script generates a compressed archive file of useful information for troubleshooting. The system either creates the archive file automatically or you can create the archive file manually.

The system creates the `c1-support` archive file automatically for the following reasons:

- When there is a [core file dump](#) of any application (not specific to Cumulus Linux, but something all Linux distributions support), located in `/var/support/core`
- After the first failure of one of the following monitored services since the switch was rebooted or power cycled:
  - `clagd`
  - `frr`
  - `openvswitch-vtep`
  - `portwd`
  - `ptmd`
  - `rdnbrd`
  - `switchd`
  - `vxrd`
  - `vxsnd`

When the system creates the `c1-support` archive automatically due to a failure, the archive contains a file called `Control` that provides the reason why the script was executed. For example:

```
Reason: switchd first heartbeat miss
```

To create the `c1-support` archive file manually, run the `c1-support` command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo c1-support
```

If the Cumulus Networks support team requests that you submit the output from `c1-support` to help with the investigation of issues you might experience with Cumulus Linux and you need to include security-sensitive information, such as the `sudoers` file, use the `-s` option:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo c1-support -s
```

For information on the directories included in the `c1-support` archive, see:

- [Troubleshooting the etc Directory \(see page 793\)](#) — In terms of the sheer number of files, `/etc` contains the largest number of files to send to Cumulus Networks. However, log files might be significantly larger in file size.
- [Troubleshooting Log Files \(see page 791\)](#) — This guide highlights the most important log files to inspect. Keep in mind, `c1-support` includes all of the log files.



## Troubleshooting Log Files

The only real unique entity for logging on Cumulus Linux compared to any other Linux distribution is `switchd.log`, which logs the HAL (hardware abstraction layer) from hardware like the Broadcom or Mellanox ASIC.

This guide on [NixCraft](#) is amazing for understanding how `/var/log` works. The green highlighted rows below are the most important logs and usually looked at first when debugging.

Log	Description	Why is this important?
<code>/var/log/alternatives.log</code>	Information from the update-alternatives are logged into this log file.	
<code>/var/log/apt</code>	Information the <code>apt</code> utility can send logs here; for example, from <code>apt-get install</code> and <code>apt-get remove</code> .	
<code>/var/log/audit/*</code>	Contains log information stored by the Linux audit daemon, <code>audited</code> .	
<code>/var/log/auth.log</code>	Authentication logs. Note that Cumulus Linux does not write to this log file; but because it's a standard file, Cumulus Linux creates it as a zero length file.	
<code>/var/log/autoprovision</code>	Logs output generated by running the <a href="#">zero touch provisioning (see page 74)</a> script.	
<code>/var/log/boot.log</code>	Contains information that is logged when the system boots.	
<code>/var/log/btmp</code>	This file contains information about failed login attempts. Use the <code>last</code> command to view the <code>btmp</code> file. For example:	
	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ last -f /var/log/btmp   more</pre>	
<code>/var/log/clagd.log</code>	Logs status of the <code>clagd</code> service ( <a href="#">see page 351</a> ).	
<code>/var/log/dmesg</code>	Contains kernel ring buffer information. When the system boots up, it prints number of messages on the screen that display information about the hardware devices that the kernel detects during boot process. These messages are available in the kernel ring buffer and whenever a new message arrives, the old message gets overwritten. You can also view the content of this file using the <code>dmesg</code> command.	



Log	Description	Why is this important?
	Note that Cumulus Linux does not write to this log file; but because it's a standard file, Cumulus Linux creates it as a zero length file.	
/var/log/dpkg.log	Contains information that is logged when a package is installed or removed using the <code>dpkg</code> command.	
/var/log/faillog	Contains failed user login attempts. Use the <code>faillog</code> command to display the contents of this file.  Note that Cumulus Linux does not write to this log file; but because it's a standard file, Cumulus Linux creates it as a zero length file.	
/var/log/fsck/*	The <code>fsck</code> utility is used to check and optionally repair one or more Linux filesystems.  Note that Cumulus Linux does not write to this log file; but because it's a standard file, Cumulus Linux creates it as a zero length file.	
/var/log/installer/*	Directory containing files related to the installation of Cumulus Linux.	
/var/log/lastlog	Formats and prints the contents of the last login log file.	
/var/log/netd.log	Log file for <a href="#">NCLU (see page 85)</a> .	
/var/log/news/*	The <code>news</code> command keeps you informed of news concerning the system.  Note that Cumulus Linux does not write to this log file; but because it's a standard file, Cumulus Linux creates it as a zero length file.	
/var/log/ntpstats	Logs for network configuration protocol.	
/var/log/openvswitch/*	ovsdb-server logs.	
/var/log/frr/*	Where FRRouting logs to once enabled.	This is how Cumulus Networks troubleshoots routing. For



Log	Description	Why is this important?
		example an md5 or mtu mismatch with OSPF.
/var/log/rdnbrd.log	Logs for <a href="#">redistribute neighbor</a> (see page 687).	
/var/log/snapper.log	Log file for <a href="#">snapshots</a> (see page 61).	These logs are valuable for the snapshots you take on your switch.
/var/log/switchd.log	The HAL log for Cumulus Linux.	This is specific to Cumulus Linux. Any <code>switchd</code> crashes are logged here.
/var/log/syslog	The main system log, which logs everything except auth-related messages.	The primary log; it's easiest to <code>grep</code> this file to see what occurred during a problem.
/var/log/wtmp	Login records file.	

## Troubleshooting the etc Directory

The [cl-support](#) (see page 789) script replicates the `/etc` directory.

Files that `cl-support` deliberately excludes are:

File	Description
<code>/etc/nologin</code>	<code>nologin</code> prevents unprivileged users from logging into the system.
<code>/etc/alternatives</code>	<code>update-alternatives</code> creates, removes, maintains and displays information about the symbolic links comprising the Debian alternatives system.

This is the alphabetical of the output from running `ls -l` on the `/etc` directory structure created by `cl-support`. The green highlighted rows are the ones Cumulus Networks finds most important when troubleshooting problems.



File	Description	Why is this important?
acpi	Advanced configuration and power interface files. This directory is present only on x86 systems.	
adduser.conf	The file <code>/etc/adduser.conf</code> contains defaults for the programs <code>adduser</code> , <code>addgroup</code> , <code>deluser</code> , and <code>delgroup</code> .	
adjtime	Corrects the time to synchronize the <a href="#">system clock</a> .	
apt	apt (Advanced Package Tool) is the command-line <a href="#">tool for handling packages</a> . This folder contains all the configurations.	apt interactions or unsupported apps can affect machine performance.
audisp	The directory that contains <code>audisp-remote.conf</code> , which is the file that controls the <a href="#">configuration of the audit remote logging subsystem</a> .	
audit	The directory that contains the <code>/etc/audit/auditd.conf</code> , which contains configuration information specific to the <a href="#">audit daemon</a> .	
bash.bashrc	<a href="#">Bash is an sh-compatible command language interpreter</a> that executes commands read from standard input or from a file.	
bash_completion	This points to <code>/usr/share/bash-completion/bash_completion</code> .	
bash_completion.d	This folder contains app-specific code for Bash completion on Cumulus Linux, such as <code>mstpcctl</code> .	
bcm.d	Broadcom-specific ASIC file structure (hardware interaction). If there are questions, <a href="#">contact the Cumulus Networks Support team</a> . This is unique to Cumulus Linux.	
bindresvport.blacklist	This file contains a list of port numbers between 600 and 1024, which should not be used by <code>bindresvport</code> .	
binfmt.d	For configuring additional binary formats for executables at boot.	
ca-certificates		



File	Description	Why is this important?
	The folder for <code>ca-certificates</code> . It is empty by default on Cumulus Linux; see below for more information.	
<code>ca-certificates.conf</code>	Each lines list the pathname of activated CA certificates under <code>/usr/share/ca-certificates</code> .	
<code>calendar</code>	The system-wide <a href="#">default calendar file</a> .	
<code>chef</code>	This is an example of something that is not included by default. In this instance, <code>c1-support</code> included the <a href="#"><code>chef</code> folder</a> for some reason.	This is not installed by default, but this tool could have been installed or configured incorrectly, which is why it's included in the <code>c1-support</code> output.
<code>cron.d</code>	<code>cron</code> is a daemon that <a href="#">executes scheduled commands</a> .	
<code>cron.daily</code>	See above.	
<code>cron.hourly</code>	See above.	
<code>cron.monthly</code>	See above.	
<code>cron.weekly</code>	See above.	
<code>crontab</code>	See above.	
<code>cruft</code>	Debian <a href="#">housecleaning tool</a> .	
<code>cumulus</code>	This directory contains the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• ACL information, stored in the <code>acl</code> directory.</li><li>• <code>switchd</code> configuration file, <code>switchd.conf</code>.</li><li>• <code>qos</code>, which is under the <code>datapath</code> directory.</li><li>• The routing protocol process priority, <code>nice.conf</code>.</li><li>• The breakout cable configuration, under <code>ports.conf</code>.</li></ul>	This folder is specific to Cumulus Linux and does not exist on other Linux platforms. For example, while you can configure <code>iptables</code> , to hardware accelerate rules into the hardware you need to use <code>c1-acltool</code> and have the rules under the <code>/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/&lt;filename.rules</code> )
<code>dbus-1</code>	Message bus for sending messages between applications.	

File	Description	Why is this important?
debconf.conf	Debconf is a configuration system for Debian packages. .	
debian_version	The complete Debian version string.	
debsums-ignore	debsums verifies installed package files against their MD5 checksums. This file identifies the packages to ignore.	
default	This folder contains files with configurable flags for many different applications (most installed by default or added manually). For example, /etc/default/networking has a flag for EXCLUDE_INTERFACES=, which is set to nothing by default, but a user could change it to something like swp3.	
deluser.conf	The file /etc/deluser.conf contains defaults for the programs deluser and delgroup.	
dhcp	This directory contains DHCP-specific information.	
discover.conf.d	Configuration directory for hardware detection utility.	
discover-modprobe.conf	Configuration file for Linux discover-modprobe utility, which retrieves and loads kernel modules.	
dnsmasq.conf	dnsmasq configuration file.	
dnsmasq.d	Directory of dnsmasq configuration files.	
dpkg	The package manager for Debian.	
e2fsck.conf	The configuration file for e2fsck. It controls the default behavior of e2fsck while it checks ext2, ext3 or ext4 filesystems.	
environment	Utilized by pam_env for setting and unsetting environment variables.	
etckeeper	Directory of files for etckeeper, which enables /etc to be stored in a repository.	
ethertypes	This file can be used to show readable characters instead of hexadecimal numbers for the protocols. For example, 0x0800 will be represented by IPv4.	



File	Description	Why is this important?
frr	Contains the configuration files for the <a href="#">FRRouting suite</a> ( <a href="#">see page 609</a> ), the preferred Cumulus Linux routing engine.	
fstab	Static information about the <a href="#">filesystems</a> .	
fstab.d	The directory that can contain additional <code>fstab</code> information; it is empty by default.	
fw_env.config	Configuration file utilized by <a href="#">U-Boot</a> . The file is present only on ARM systems.	
gai.conf	Configuration file for sorting the return information from <a href="#">getaddrinfo</a> .	
groff	The directory containing information for <code>groffer</code> , an application used for displaying <a href="#">Unix man pages</a> .	
group	The <code>/etc/group</code> file is a text file that <a href="#">defines the groups</a> on the system.	
group-	Backup for the <code>/etc/group</code> file.	
grub.d	Directory of GRUB configuration files.	
gshadow	<code>/etc/gshadow</code> contains the <a href="#">shadowed information for group accounts</a> .	
gshadow-	Backup for the <code>/etc/gshadow</code> file.	
gss		
hostapd	Directory for host AP driver files. Used for <a href="#">802.1X interfaces</a> ( <a href="#">see page 273</a> ).	
hostapd.conf	802.1X configuration settings. This file is generated automatically.	
host.conf	<a href="#">Resolver configuration file</a> , which contains options like <code>multi</code> that determines whether <code>/etc/hosts</code> will respond with multiple entries for DNS names.	
hostname	The <a href="#">system host name</a> , such as leaf1, spine1, sw1.	



File	Description	Why is this important?
hosts	The static table lookup for hostnames.	
hosts.allow	The part of the <code>host_access</code> program for controlling a simple access control language. <code>hosts.allow=Access</code> is granted when a daemon/client pair matches an entry.	
hosts.deny	See hosts.allow above, except that access is denied when a daemon/client pair matches an entry.	
hsflowd.conf	Configuration file for the <code>hsflowd</code> daemon that samples and sends sFlow data (see page 832) to configured collectors.	
hw_init.d	Cumulus Linux/Cumulus VX hardware-specific tools.	
image-release	Contains the version of Cumulus Linux that was installed with the installer. This version number does not change when you upgrade using <code>apt-get</code> .	Useful for determining baseline version.
init	Default location of the system job configuration files.	
init.d	In order for a service to start when the switch boots, you should add the necessary script to the director here. The differences between <code>init</code> and <code>init.d</code> are explained well <a href="#">here</a> .	
initramfs-tools	Contains tools for creating an <code>initramfs</code> .	
inputrc	The initialization file utilized by <code>readline</code> .	
insserv	This application enables installed system init scripts; this directory is empty by default.	
insserv.conf	Configuration file for <code>insserv</code> .	
insserv.conf.d	Additional directory for <code>insserv</code> configurations.	
iproute2	Directory containing values for the Linux command line tool <code>ip</code> .	
issue	<code>/etc/issue</code> is a text file that contains a message or system identification to be printed before the login prompt.	



File	Description	Why is this important?
issue.net	Identification file for <a href="#">telnet sessions</a> .	
kbd	Linux <a href="#">console font and keytable utilities</a> .	
kernel	Kernel executable files.	
ld.so.cache	Contains a <a href="#">compiled list of candidate libraries</a> previously found in the augmented library path.	
ld.so.conf	Used by the <code>ldconfig</code> tool, which <a href="#">configures dynamic linker run-time bindings</a> .	
ld.so.conf.d	The directory that contains additional <code>ld.so.conf</code> configuration (see above).	
ldap	The directory containing the <a href="#">ldap.conf configuration file</a> used to set the system-wide default to be applied when running LDAP clients.	
libaudit.conf	Configuration file utilized by <a href="#">get_auditfail_action</a> .	
libnl	Directory for the configuration relating to the <a href="#">libnl library</a> , which is the core library for implementing the fundamentals required to use the netlink protocol such as socket handling, message construction and parsing, and sending and receiving of data.	
lldpd.d	Directory containing configuration files whose commands are executed by <code>lldpccli</code> at startup.	
locale.alias	Locale name alias database.	
locale.gen	Locale definitions.	
localtime	Copy of the original data file for <code>/etc/timezone</code> .	
logcheck	Directory containing <code>logcheck.conf</code> and logfiles utilized by the <code>log check</code> program, which scans system logs for interesting lines.	
login.defs	<a href="#">Shadow password suite configuration</a> .	
logrotate.conf	Rotates, compresses and mails <a href="#">system logs</a> .	



File	Description	Why is this important?
logrotate.d	Directory containing additional log rotate configurations.	
lsb-release	Shows the current version of <a href="#">Linux</a> on the system. Run <code>cat /etc/lsb-release</code> for output.	This shows you the version of the operating system you are running; also compare this to the output of <code>onie-select</code> .
lvm	Configuration for local volume manager.	
machine-id	Local machine ID.	
magic	Used by the <a href="#">file command</a> to determine file type. <code>magic</code> tests check for files with data in particular fixed formats.	
magic.mime	The <a href="#">magic MIME type</a> causes the <code>file</code> command to output MIME type strings rather than the more traditional human readable ones.	
mailcap	The <code>mailcap</code> file is read by the metamail program to determine how to <a href="#">display non-text at the local site</a> .	
mailcap.order	The <a href="#">order of entries</a> in the <code>/etc/mailcap</code> file can be altered by editing the <code>/etc/mailcap.order</code> file.	
manpath.config	The <a href="#">manpath configuration file</a> is used by the manual page utilities to assess users' manpaths at run time, to indicate which manual page hierarchies (manpaths) are to be treated as system hierarchies and to assign them directories to be used for storing cat files.	
mcelog	Machine check event log. The file is present only on x86 systems.	
mime.types	MIME type description file for <a href="#">cups</a> .	
mke2fs.conf	Configuration file for <code>mke2fs</code> , which is a program that <a href="#">creates an ext, ext3 or ext4 filesystem</a> .	
mlx	Mellanox-specific ASIC file structure (hardware interaction). If there are questions, <a href="#">contact the Cumulus Networks Support team</a> . This is unique to Cumulus Linux.	



File	Description	Why is this important?
modprobe.d	Configuration directory for <code>modprobe</code> , which is a utility that can <a href="#">add and remove modules from the Linux kernel</a> .	
modules	The kernel modules to <a href="#">load at boot time</a> .	
modules-load.d	Configuration for modules to load at system boot.	
motd	The contents of <code>/etc/motd</code> ("message of the day") are displayed by <code>pam_motd</code> after a successful login but just before it executes the login shell.	
motd.distrib	Generic message of the day for Debian.	
mtab	The programs <code>mount</code> and <code>umount</code> maintain a list of <a href="#">currently mounted filesystems</a> in the <code>/etc/mtab</code> file. If no arguments are given to <code>mount</code> , this list is printed.	
mysql	MySQL configuration file.	
nanorc	The GNU nano <code>rcfile</code> .	
netd.conf	The <a href="#">NCLU (see page 85)</a> configuration file.	Contains the settings for which Linux commands are operable under NCLU. Also contains the blacklist of infrequently used commands.
network	Contains the <a href="#">network interface configuration</a> for <code>ifup</code> and <code>ifdown</code> .	The main configuration file is under <code>/etc/network/interfaces</code> . This is where you configure L2 and L3 information for all of your front panel ports (swp interfaces). Settings like MTU, link speed, IP address information, and VLANs are all included here.
networks	<a href="#">Network name information</a> .	
nsswitch.conf	<a href="#">System databases and name service switch</a> configuration file.	
ntp.conf	<a href="#">NTP (network time protocol) server</a> configuration file.	



openvswitch	The directory containing the <a href="#">conf.db</a> file, which is used by <a href="#">ovsdb-server</a> .	
openvswitch-vtep	Configuration files used for the VTEP daemon and <a href="#">ovsdb-server</a> .	
opt	Host-specific configuration files for <a href="#">add-on applications</a> installed in /opt.	
os-release	<a href="#">Operating system identification</a> .	
pam.conf	The <a href="#">PAM (pluggable authentication module)</a> configuration file. When a PAM-aware privilege granting application is started, it activates its attachment to the PAM-API. This activation performs a number of tasks, the most important being the reading of the configuration file(s).	
pam.d	Alternate directory to configure PAM (see above).	
pam_radius.conf	Configuration file for RADIUS. This file is present only if a RADIUS client is installed.	
passwd	<a href="#">User account information</a> .	
passwd-	Backup file for /etc/passwd.	
perl	<a href="#">Perl</a> is an available scripting language. /etc/perl contains configuration files specific to Perl.	
popularity-contest.conf	Configuration for package popularity information.	
profile	/etc/profile is utilized by <a href="#">sysprofile</a> , a modular centralized shell configuration.	
profile.d	The directory version of the above, which contains configuration files.	
protocols	The <a href="#">protocols definition file</a> , a plain ASCII file that describes the various DARPA/Net protocols that are available from the TCP/IP subsystem.	
ptm.d	The directory containing scripts that are run if <a href="#">PTM</a> ( <a href="#">see page 304</a> ) passes or fails.	



File	Description	Why is this important?
		Cumulus Linux-specific folder for PTM (prescriptive topology manager).
python	Python is an available scripting language.	
python2.6	The 2.6 version of python.	
python2.7	The 2.7 version of python.	
python3	The 3.0 version of python.	
python3.4	The 3.4 version of python.	
rc.local	The /etc/rc.local script is used by the system administrator to <a href="#">execute after all the normal system services are started</a> , at the end of the process of switching to a multiuser runlevel. You can use it to start a custom service, for example, a server that's installed in /usr/local. Most installations don't need /etc/rc.local; it's provided for the minority of cases <a href="#">where it's needed</a> .	
rc0.d	Like rc.local, these scripts are booted by default, but the number of the folder represents the <a href="#">Linux runlevel</a> . This folder 0 represents runlevel 0 (halt the system).	
rc1.d	This is run level 1, which is single-user/minimal mode.	
rc2.d	Runlevels 2 through 5 are multiuser modes. Debian systems (such as Cumulus Linux) come with id=2, which indicates that the <a href="#">default runlevel will be 2 when the multi-user state is entered</a> , and the scripts in /etc/rc2.d/ will be run.	
rc3.d	See above.	
rc4.d	See above.	
rc5.d	See above.	
rc6.d	Runlevel 6 is reboot the system.	
rcS.d	S stands for <i>single</i> and is equivalent to rc1.	



File	Description	Why is this important?
rdnbrd.conf	Redistribute neighbor (see page 687) configuration file.	
resolvconf	Resolver configuration file directory.	
resolv.conf	Resolver configuration file, which is where DNS is set (domain, nameserver and search).	You need DNS to reach the Cumulus Linux repository.
rmt	This is not a mistake. The shell script <code>/etc/rmt</code> is provided for compatibility with other Unix-like systems, some of which have utilities that expect to find (and execute) <code>rmt</code> in the <code>/etc</code> directory on remote systems.	
rpc	The <code>rpc</code> file contains human-readable names that can be used in place of RPC program numbers.	
rsyslog.conf	The <code>rsyslog.conf</code> file is the main configuration file for <code>rsyslogd</code> , which logs system messages on *nix systems.	
rsyslog.d	The directory containing additional configuration for <code>rsyslog.conf</code> (see above).	
screenrc	System screen settings.	
securetty	This file lists terminals into which the root user can log in.	
security	The <code>/etc/security</code> directory contains security-related configurations files. Whereas PAM concerns itself with the methods used to authenticate any given user, the files under <code>/etc/security</code> are concerned with just what a user can or cannot do. For example, the <code>/etc/security/access.conf</code> file contains a list of which users are allowed to log in and from what host (for example, using telnet). The <code>/etc/security/limits.conf</code> file contains various system limits, such as maximum number of processes.	
selinux	NSA Security-Enhanced Linux.	
sensors.d	The directory from which the sensors program loads its configuration; this is unique for each hardware platform. See also Monitoring System Hardware (see page 773).	



File	Description	Why is this important?
sensors3.conf	The <a href="#">sensors.conf file</a> describes how <code>libsensors</code> , and thus all programs using it, should translate the raw readings from the kernel modules to real-world values.	
services	<code>services</code> is a plain ASCII file providing a mapping between human-readable textual names for internet services and their underlying assigned port numbers and protocol types.	
shadow	shadow is a file that <a href="#">contains the password information</a> for the system's accounts and optional aging information.	
shadow-	The backup for the <code>/etc/shadow</code> file.	
shells	The pathnames of <a href="#">valid login shells</a> .	
skel	The skeleton directory (usually <code>/etc/skel</code> ) is used to copy default files and also sets a umask for the creation used by <code>pam_mkhomedir</code> .	
snmp	Interface functions to the <a href="#">SNMP</a> (simple network management protocol) toolkit.	
ssh	The <a href="#">ssh configuration</a> .	
ssl	The <a href="#">OpenSSL ss1 library</a> implements the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL v2/v3) and Transport Layer Security (TLS v1) protocols. This directory holds certificates and configuration.	
staff-group-for-usr-local	Use <code>cat</code> or <code>more</code> on this file to learn more information, see <a href="http://bugs.debian.org/299007">http://bugs.debian.org/299007</a> .	
subgid	Subordinate <code>gid</code> file, for group IDs.	
subgid-	The backup for the <code>/etc/subgid</code> file.	
subuid	Subordinate <code>uid</code> file, for user IDs.	
subuid-	The backup for the <code>/etc/subuid</code> file.	
sudoers		

<b>File</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Why is this important?</b>
	The <code>sudoers</code> policy plugin determines a user's <code>sudo</code> privileges.	
<code>sudoers.d</code>	The directory file containing additional <code>sudoers</code> configuration (see above).	
<code>sysctl.conf</code>	Configures kernel parameters at boot.	
<code>sysctl.d</code>	The directory file containing additional configuration (see above).	
<code>systemd</code>	<code>systemd</code> system and service manager.	
<code>tacplus_nss.conf</code>	Basic configuration file for TACACS+ and the <code>libnss_tacplus</code> package. This file is present only if the TACACS+ client is installed on the system.	
<code>tacplus_servers</code>	TACACS+ server configuration file. This file is present only if the TACACS+ client is installed on the system.	
<code>terminfo</code>	Terminal capability database.	
<code>timezone</code>	If this file exists, it is read and its contents are used as the time zone name.	
<code>ucf.conf</code>	The update configuration file preserves user changes in configuration files.	
<code>udev</code>	Dynamic device management.	
<code>ufw</code>	Provides both a command line interface and a framework for managing a netfilter firewall.	
<code>vim</code>	Configuration file for command line tool <code>vim</code> .	
<code>vrf</code>	Configuration for services to run in a VRF (see page 696) context.	
<code>vxrd.conf</code>	LNV (see page 410) registration node configuration file.	
<code>vxsnd.conf</code>	LNV (see page 410) service node configuration file.	



File	Description	Why is this important?
watchdog.conf	Hardware watchdog (see page 773) configuration file.	
wgetrc	Configuration file for command line tool wget.	
X11	Keyboard configuration.	
xdg	Default configuration files.	

## Troubleshooting Network Interfaces

The following sections describe various ways you can troubleshoot `ifupdown2`.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Enabling Logging for Networking (see page 807)
- Using ifquery to Validate and Debug Interface Configurations (see page 808)
- Debugging Mako Template Errors (see page 809)
- ifdown Cannot Find an Interface that Exists (see page 810)
- Removing All References to a Child Interface (see page 810)
- MTU Set on a Logical Interface Fails with Error: "Numerical result out of range" (see page 811)
- Interpreting iproute2 batch Command Failures (see page 811)
- Understanding the "RTNETLINK answers: Invalid argument" Error when Adding a Port to a Bridge (see page 811)
- MLAG Peerlink Interface Drops Many Packets (see page 812)

### Enabling Logging for Networking

The `/etc/default/networking` file contains two settings for logging:

- To get `ifupdown2` logs when the switch boots (stored in `syslog`)
- To enable logging when you run `systemctl [start|stop|reload] networking.service`

This file also contains an option for excluding interfaces when you boot the switch or run `systemctl start|stop|reload networking.service`. You can exclude any interface specified in `/etc/network/interfaces`. These interfaces do not come up when you boot the switch or start/stop/reload the networking service.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat /etc/default/networking
#
#
```

```
# Parameters for the /etc/init.d/networking script
#
#
# Change the below to yes if you want verbose logging to be enabled
VERBOSE="no"

# Change the below to yes if you want debug logging to be enabled
DEBUG="no"

# Change the below to yes if you want logging to go to syslog
SYSLOG="no"

# Exclude interfaces
EXCLUDE_INTERFACES=
```

## Using ifquery to Validate and Debug Interface Configurations

You use ifquery to print parsed interfaces file entries.

To use ifquery to pretty print iface entries from the interfaces file, run:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifquery bond0
auto bond0
iface bond0
    address 14.0.0.9/30
    address 2001:ded:beef:2::1/64
    bond-slaves swp25 swp26
```

Use ifquery --check to check the current running state of an interface within the interfaces file. It will return exit code 0 or 1 if the configuration does not match. The line bond-xmit-hash-policy layer3+7 below fails because it should read bond-xmit-hash-policy layer3+4.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifquery --check bond0
iface bond0
    bond-xmit-hash-policy layer3+7  [fail]
    bond-slaves swp25 swp26        [pass]
    address 14.0.0.9/30           [pass]
    address 2001:ded:beef:2::1/64 [pass]
```



ifquery --check is an experimental feature.

Use ifquery --running to print the running state of interfaces in the interfaces file format:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifquery --running bond0
```



```
auto bond0
iface bond0
    bond-slaves swp25 swp26
    address 14.0.0.9/30
    address 2001:ded:beef:2::1/64
```

ifquery --syntax-help provides help on all possible attributes supported in the `interfaces` file. For complete syntax on the `interfaces` file, see `man interfaces` and `man ifupdown-addons-interfaces`.

You can use `ifquery --print-savedstate` to check the `ifupdown2` state database. `ifdown` works only on interfaces present in this state database.

```
cumulus@leaf1$ sudo ifquery --print-savedstate eth0
auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
```

## Debugging Mako Template Errors

An easy way to debug and get details about template errors is to use the `mako-render` command on your `interfaces` template file or on `/etc/network/interfaces` itself.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mako-render /etc/network/interfaces
# This file describes the network interfaces available on your system
# and how to activate them. For more information, see interfaces(5).

# The loopback network interface
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback

# The primary network interface
auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp
#auto eth1
#iface eth1 inet dhcp

# Include any platform-specific interface configuration
source /etc/network/interfaces.d/*.if

# ssim2 added
auto swp45
iface swp45

auto swp46
iface swp46

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mako-render /etc/network/interfaces.d
/<interfaces_stub_file>
```

## ifdown Cannot Find an Interface that Exists

If you are trying to bring down an interface that you know exists, use `ifdown` with the `--use-current-config` option to force `ifdown` to check the current `/etc/network/interfaces` file to find the interface. This can solve issues where the `ifup` command issues for that interface was interrupted before it updated the state database. For example:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifdown br0
error: cannot find interfaces: br0 (interface was probably never up ?)

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo brctl show
bridge name      bridge id      STP enabled      interfaces
br0              8000.44383900279f    yes            downlink
                                         peerlink

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ifdown br0 --use-current-config
```

## Removing All References to a Child Interface

If you have a configuration with a child interface, whether it's a VLAN, bond or another physical interface, and you remove that interface from a running configuration, you must remove every reference to it in the configuration. Otherwise, the interface continues to be used by the parent interface.

For example, consider the following configuration:

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback

auto eth0
iface eth0 inet dhcp

auto bond1
iface bond1
  bond-slaves swp2 swp1

auto bond3
iface bond3
  bond-slaves swp8 swp6 swp7

auto br0
iface br0
  bridge-ports swp3 swp5 bond1 swp4 bond3
  bridge-pathcosts swp3=4 swp5=4 swp4=4
  address 11.0.0.10/24
  address 2001::10/64
```

Notice that `bond1` is a member of `br0`. If `bond1` is removed, you must remove the reference to it from the `br0` configuration. Otherwise, if you reload the configuration with `ifreload -a`, `bond1` is still part of `br0`.



## MTU Set on a Logical Interface Fails with Error: "Numerical result out of range"

This error occurs when the [MTU \(see page 238\)](#) you are trying to set on an interface is higher than the MTU of the lower interface or dependent interface. Linux expects the upper interface to have an MTU less than or equal to the MTU on the lower interface.

In the example below, the swp1.100 VLAN interface is an upper interface to physical interface swp1. If you want to change the MTU to 9000 on the VLAN interface, you must include the new MTU on the lower interface swp1 as well.

```
auto swp1.100
iface swp1.100
    mtu 9000

auto swp1
iface swp1
    mtu 9000
```

## Interpreting iproute2 batch Command Failures

ifupdown2 batches iproute2 commands for performance reasons. A batch command contains `ip -force -batch` – in the error message. The command number that failed is at the end of this line:  
Command failed -:1.

Below is a sample error for the command `1: link set dev host2 master bridge`. There was an error adding the bond `host2` to the bridge named `bridge` because `host2` did not have a valid address.

```
error: failed to execute cmd 'ip -force -batch - [link set dev host2
master bridge
addr flush dev host2
link set dev host1 master bridge
addr flush dev host1
]' (RTNETLINK answers: Invalid argument
Command failed -:1)
warning: bridge configuration failed (missing ports)
```

## Understanding the "RTNETLINK answers: Invalid argument" Error when Adding a Port to a Bridge

This error can occur when the bridge port does not have a valid hardware address.

This can typically occur when the interface being added to the bridge is an incomplete bond; a bond without slaves is incomplete and does not have a valid hardware address.



## MLAG Peerlink Interface Drops Many Packets

Losing a large number of packets across an MLAG peerlink interface may not be a problem. Instead this could be occurring in order to prevent looping of BUM (broadcast, unknown unicast and multicast) packets. For more information, and how to detect these drops, read the [MLAG chapter \(see page 382\)](#).

## Monitoring Interfaces and Transceivers Using ethtool

The `ethtool` command enables you to query or control the network driver and hardware settings. It takes the device name (like `swp1`) as an argument. When the device name is the only argument to `ethtool`, it prints the current settings of the network device. See `man ethtool(8)` for details. Not all options are currently supported on switch port interfaces.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Monitoring Interface Status Using ethtool (see page 812)
  - Viewing and Clearing Interface Counters (see page 813)
- Monitoring Switch Port SFP/QSFP Hardware Information Using ethtool (see page 814)

### Monitoring Interface Status Using ethtool

To check the status of an interface using `ethtool`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ethtool swp1
Settings for swp1:
  Supported ports: [ FIBRE ]
  Supported link modes:  1000baseT/Full
                        10000baseT/Full
  Supported pause frame use: No
  Supports auto-negotiation: No
  Advertised link modes:  1000baseT/Full
  Advertised pause frame use: No
  Advertised auto-negotiation: No
  Speed: 10000Mb/s
  Duplex: Full
  Port: FIBRE
  PHYAD: 0
  Transceiver: external
  Auto-negotiation: off
  Current message level: 0x00000000 (0)

  Link detected: yes
```

To query interface statistics:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo ethtool -S swp1
NIC statistics:
HwIfInOctets: 1435339
HwIfInUcastPkts: 11795
HwIfInBcastPkts: 3
HwIfInMcastPkts: 4578
HwIfOutOctets: 14866246
HwIfOutUcastPkts: 11791
HwIfOutMcastPkts: 136493
HwIfOutBcastPkts: 0
HwIfInDiscards: 0
HwIfInL3Drops: 0
HwIfInBufferDrops: 0
HwIfInAclDrops: 28
HwIfInDot3LengthErrors: 0
HwIfInErrors: 0
SoftInErrors: 0
SoftInDrops: 0
SoftInFrameErrors: 0
HwIfOutDiscards: 0
HwIfOutErrors: 0
HwIfOutQDrops: 0
HwIfOutNonQDrops: 0
SoftOutErrors: 0
SoftOutDrops: 0
SoftOutTxFifoFull: 0
HwIfOutQLen: 0
```

## *Viewing and Clearing Interface Counters*

Interface counters contain information about an interface. You can view this information when you run `cl-netstat`, `ifconfig`, or `cat /proc/net/dev`. You can also use `cl-netstat` to save or clear this information:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-netstat
Kernel Interface table
Iface      MTU Met            RX_OK RX_ERR RX_DRP RX_OVR          TX_OK TX_ERR
TX_DRP TX_OVR   Flg
-----
eth0      1500 0              611   0     0     0             487   0
0          0    BMRU
lo       16436 0              0     0     0     0             0     0
0          0    LRU
swp1     1500 0              0     0     0     0             0     0
0          0    BMU

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-netstat -c
Cleared counters
```



Option	Description
-c	Copies and clears statistics. It does not clear counters in the kernel or hardware.  ⚠️ The -c argument is applied per user ID by default. You can override it by using the -t argument to save statistics to a different directory.
-d	Deletes saved statistics, either the <code>uid</code> or the specified tag.  ⚠️ The -d argument is applied per user ID by default. You can override it by using the -t argument to save statistics to a different directory.
-D	Deletes all saved statistics.
-l	Lists saved tags.
-r	Displays raw statistics (unmodified output of <code>cl-netstat</code> ).
-t <tag name>	Saves statistics with <tag name>.
-v	Prints <code>cl-netstat</code> version and exits.

## Monitoring Switch Port SFP/QSFP Hardware Information Using ethtool

To see hardware capabilities and measurement information on the SFP or QSFP module installed in a particular port, use the `ethtool -m` command. If the SFP/QSFP supports Digital Optical Monitoring (that is, the `optical diagnostics support` field in the output below is set to Yes), the optical power levels and thresholds are also printed below the standard hardware details.

In the sample output below, you can see that this module is a 1000BASE-SX short-range optical module, manufactured by JDSU, part number PLRXPL-VI-S24-22. The second half of the output displays the current readings of the Tx power levels (`Laser output power`) and Rx power (`Receiver signal average optical power`), temperature, voltage and alarm threshold settings.

```
cumulus@switch$ sudo ethtool -m swp3
      Identifier : 0x03 (SFP)
      Extended identifier : 0x04 (GBIC/SFP
defined by 2-wire interface ID)
      Connector   : 0x07 (LC)
      Transceiver codes : 0x00 0x00 0x00 0x0
1 0x20 0x40 0x0c 0x05
```



	Transceiver type	: Ethernet:
1000BASE-SX		
	Transceiver type	: FC: intermediate
distance (I)		
	Transceiver type	: FC: Shortwave
laser w/o OFC (SN)		
	Transceiver type	: FC: Multimode, 62.
5um (M6)		
	Transceiver type	: FC: Multimode,
50um (M5)		
	Transceiver type	: FC: 200 MBytes/sec
	Transceiver type	: FC: 100 MBytes/sec
Encoding		: 0x01 (8B/10B)
BR, Nominal		: 2100MBd
Rate identifier		: 0x00 (unspecified)
Length (SMF,km)		: 0km
Length (SMF)		: 0m
Length (50um)		: 300m
Length (62.5um)		: 150m
Length (Copper)		: 0m
Length (OM3)		: 0m
Laser wavelength		: 850nm
Vendor name		: JDSU
Vendor OUI		: 00:01:9c
Vendor PN		: PLRXPL-VI-S24-22
Vendor rev		: 1
Optical diagnostics support		: Yes
Laser bias current		: 21.348 mA
Laser output power		: 0.3186 mW / -4.97
dBm		
	Receiver signal average optical power	: 0.3195 mW / -4.96
dBm		
	Module temperature	: 41.70 degrees C /
107.05	degrees F	
	Module voltage	: 3.2947 V
	Alarm/warning flags implemented	: Yes
	Laser bias current high alarm	: Off
	Laser bias current low alarm	: Off
	Laser bias current high warning	: Off
	Laser bias current low warning	: Off
	Laser output power high alarm	: Off
	Laser output power low alarm	: Off
	Laser output power high warning	: Off
	Laser output power low warning	: Off
	Module temperature high alarm	: Off
	Module temperature low alarm	: Off
	Module temperature high warning	: Off
	Module temperature low warning	: Off
	Module voltage high alarm	: Off
	Module voltage low alarm	: Off
	Module voltage high warning	: Off
	Module voltage low warning	: Off

```

Laser rx power high alarm           : Off
Laser rx power low alarm          : Off
Laser rx power high warning       : Off
Laser rx power low warning        : Off
Laser bias current high alarm threshold : 10.000 mA
Laser bias current low alarm threshold : 1.000 mA
Laser bias current high warning threshold : 9.000 mA
Laser bias current low warning threshold : 2.000 mA
Laser output power high alarm threshold : 0.8000 mW / -0.97
dBm
Laser output power low alarm threshold : 0.1000 mW / -10.00
dBm
Laser output power high warning threshold : 0.6000 mW / -2.22
dBm
Laser output power low warning threshold : 0.2000 mW / -6.99
dBm
Module temperature high alarm threshold : 90.00 degrees C /
194.00 degrees F
Module temperature low alarm threshold : -40.00 degrees C
/ -40.00 degrees F
Module temperature high warning threshold : 85.00 degrees C /
185.00 degrees F
Module temperature low warning threshold : -40.00 degrees C
/ -40.00 degrees F
Module voltage high alarm threshold : 4.0000 V
Module voltage low alarm threshold : 0.0000 V
Module voltage high warning threshold : 3.6450 V
Module voltage low warning threshold : 2.9550 V
Laser rx power high alarm threshold : 1.6000 mW / 2.04
dBm
Laser rx power low alarm threshold : 0.0100 mW / -20.00
dBm
Laser rx power high warning threshold : 1.0000 mW / 0.00
dBm
Laser rx power low warning threshold : 0.0200 mW / -16.99
dBm

```

## Network Troubleshooting

Cumulus Linux contains a number of command line and analytical tools to help you troubleshoot issues with your network.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- [Checking Reachability Using ping \(see page 817\)](#)
- [Printing Route Trace Using traceroute \(see page 817\)](#)
- [Manipulating the System ARP Cache \(see page 818\)](#)

- Generating Traffic Using mz (see page 818)
- Creating Counter ACL Rules (see page 819)
- Configuring SPAN and ERSPAN (see page 820)
  - Configuring SPAN for Switch Ports (see page 821)
  - Configuring SPAN for Bonds (see page 824)
  - Configuring ERSPAN (see page 825)
  - Selective Spanning (see page 826)
  - Removing SPAN Rules (see page 828)
- Monitoring Control Plane Traffic with tcpdump (see page 828)
- Caveats and Errata (see page 829)
- Related Information (see page 829)

## Checking Reachability Using ping

ping is used to check reachability of a host. ping also calculates the time it takes for packets to travel the round trip. See `man ping` for details.

To test the connection to an IPv4 host:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ping 192.0.2.45
PING 192.0.2.45 (192.0.2.45) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from 192.0.2.45: icmp_req=1 ttl=53 time=40.4 ms
64 bytes from 192.0.2.45: icmp_req=2 ttl=53 time=39.6 ms
...
...
```

To test the connection to an IPv6 host:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ping6 -I swp1 2001::db8:ff:fe00:2
PING 2001::db8:ff:fe00:2(2001::db8:ff:fe00:2) from 2001::db8:ff:fe00:
1 swp1: 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 2001::db8:ff:fe00:2: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=1.43 ms
64 bytes from 2001::db8:ff:fe00:2: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.927 ms
```

## Printing Route Trace Using traceroute

traceroute tracks the route that packets take from an IP network on their way to a given host. See `man traceroute` for details.

To track the route to an IPv4 host:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ traceroute www.google.com
traceroute to www.google.com (74.125.239.49), 30 hops max, 60 byte
packets
1  cumulusnetworks.com (192.168.1.1)  0.614 ms  0.863 ms  0.932 ms
...
...
```



```
5 core2-1-1-0.pao.net.google.com (198.32.176.31) 22.347 ms 22.584
ms 24.328 ms
6 216.239.49.250 (216.239.49.250) 24.371 ms 25.757 ms 25.987 ms
7 72.14.232.35 (72.14.232.35) 27.505 ms 22.925 ms 22.323 ms
8 nuq04s19-in-f17.le100.net (74.125.239.49) 23.544 ms 21.851 ms
22.604 ms
```

## Manipulating the System ARP Cache

`arp` manipulates or displays the kernel's IPv4 network neighbor cache. See `man arp` for details.

To display the ARP cache:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ arp -a
? (11.0.2.2) at 00:02:00:00:00:10 [ether] on swp3
? (11.0.3.2) at 00:02:00:00:00:01 [ether] on swp4
? (11.0.0.2) at 44:38:39:00:01:c1 [ether] on swp1
```

To delete an ARP cache entry:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ arp -d 11.0.2.2
cumulus@switch:~$ arp -a
? (11.0.2.2) at <incomplete> on swp3
? (11.0.3.2) at 00:02:00:00:00:01 [ether] on swp4
? (11.0.0.2) at 44:38:39:00:01:c1 [ether] on swp1
```

To add a static ARP cache entry:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ arp -s 11.0.2.2 00:02:00:00:00:10
cumulus@switch:~$ arp -a
? (11.0.2.2) at 00:02:00:00:00:10 [ether] PERM on swp3
? (11.0.3.2) at 00:02:00:00:00:01 [ether] on swp4
? (11.0.0.2) at 44:38:39:00:01:c1 [ether] on swp1
```

If you need to flush or remove an ARP entry for a specific interface, you can disable dynamic ARP learning:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ip link set arp off dev INTERFACE
```

## Generating Traffic Using mz

`mz` is a fast traffic generator. It can generate a large variety of packet types at high speed. See `man mz` for details.

For example, to send two sets of packets to TCP port 23 and 24, with source IP 11.0.0.1 and destination 11.0.0.2, do the following:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo mz swp1 -A 11.0.0.1 -B 11.0.0.2 -c 2 -v -t tcp  
"dp=23-24"  
  
Mausezahn 0.40 - (C) 2007-2010 by Herbert Haas - http://www.perihel.at  
/sec/mz/  
Use at your own risk and responsibility!  
-- Verbose mode --  
  
This system supports a high resolution clock.  
The clock resolution is 4000250 nanoseconds.  
Mausezahn will send 4 frames...  
IP: ver=4, len=40, tos=0, id=0, frag=0, ttl=255, proto=6, sum=0,  
SA=11.0.0.1, DA=11.0.0.2,  
payload=[see next layer]  
TCP: sp=0, dp=23, S=42, A=42, flags=0, win=10000, len=20, sum=0,  
payload=  
  
IP: ver=4, len=40, tos=0, id=0, frag=0, ttl=255, proto=6, sum=0,  
SA=11.0.0.1, DA=11.0.0.2,  
payload=[see next layer]  
TCP: sp=0, dp=24, S=42, A=42, flags=0, win=10000, len=20, sum=0,  
payload=  
  
IP: ver=4, len=40, tos=0, id=0, frag=0, ttl=255, proto=6, sum=0,  
SA=11.0.0.1, DA=11.0.0.2,  
payload=[see next layer]  
TCP: sp=0, dp=23, S=42, A=42, flags=0, win=10000, len=20, sum=0,  
payload=  
  
IP: ver=4, len=40, tos=0, id=0, frag=0, ttl=255, proto=6, sum=0,  
SA=11.0.0.1, DA=11.0.0.2,  
payload=[see next layer]  
TCP: sp=0, dp=24, S=42, A=42, flags=0, win=10000, len=20, sum=0,  
payload=
```

## Creating Counter ACL Rules

In Linux, all ACL rules are always counted. To create an ACL rule for counting purposes only, set the rule action to ACCEPT. See the [Netfilter \(see page 137\)](#) chapter for details on how to use cl-acltool to set up iptables-/ip6tables-/ebtables-based ACLs.



Always place your rules files under /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/.

To count all packets going to a Web server:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ cat sample_count.rules
```

```
[iptables]
-A FORWARD -p tcp --dport 80 -j ACCEPT

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -i -p sample_count.rules
Using user provided rule file sample_count.rules
Reading rule file sample_count.rules ...
Processing rules in file sample_count.rules ...
Installing acl policy... done.

cumulus@switch:~$ sudo iptables -L -v
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT 16 packets, 2224 bytes)
pkts bytes target     prot opt in      out      source
destination

Chain FORWARD (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
pkts bytes target     prot opt in      out      source
destination
      2    156 ACCEPT      tcp   --  any     any     anywhere
anywhere           tcp  dpt:http

Chain OUTPUT (policy ACCEPT 44 packets, 8624 bytes)
pkts bytes target     prot opt in      out      source
destination
```



The `-p` option clears out all other rules, and the `-i` option is used to reinstall all the rules.

## Configuring SPAN and ERSPAN

SPAN (Switched Port Analyzer) provides for the mirroring of all packets coming in from or going out of an interface (the *SPAN source*), and being copied and transmitted out of a local port (the *SPAN destination*) for monitoring. The SPAN destination port is also referred to as a mirror-to-port (MTP). The original packet is still switched, while a mirrored copy of the packet is sent out of the MTP.

ERSPAN (Encapsulated Remote SPAN) enables the mirrored packets to be sent to a monitoring node located anywhere across the routed network. The switch finds the outgoing port of the mirrored packets by doing a lookup of the destination IP address in its routing table. The original L2 packet is encapsulated with GRE for IP delivery. The encapsulated packets have the following format:

-----	MAC_HEADER	IP_HEADER	GRE_HEADER	L2_Mirrored_Packet	-----
-------	------------	-----------	------------	--------------------	-------



Mirrored traffic is not guaranteed. If the MTP is congested, mirrored packets may be discarded.



SPAN and ERSPAN are configured via `c1-acltool`, the [same utility for security ACL configuration \(see page 137\)](#). The match criteria for SPAN and ERSPAN is usually an interface; for more granular match terms, use [selective spanning \(see page 826\)](#). The SPAN source interface can be a port, a subinterface or a bond interface. Both ingress and egress traffic on interfaces can be matched.

Cumulus Linux supports a maximum of 2 SPAN destinations. Multiple rules (SPAN sources) can point to the same SPAN destination, although a given SPAN source cannot specify 2 SPAN destinations. The SPAN destination (MTP) interface can be a physical port, a subinterface, or a bond interface. The SPAN/ERSPAN action is independent of security ACL actions. If packets match both a security ACL rule and a SPAN rule, both actions will be carried out.



Always place your rules files under `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/`.



In order to configure SPAN or ERSPAN on a Tomahawk-based switch, you must enable [non-atomic update mode \(see page 169\)](#).



Mellanox switches reject SPAN ACL rules for an output interface that is a subinterface.

## Configuring SPAN for Switch Ports

This section describes how to set up, install, verify and uninstall SPAN rules. In the examples that follow, you will span (mirror) switch port `swp4` input traffic and `swp4` output traffic to destination switch port `swp19`.

First, create a rules file in `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo bash -c 'cat <<EOF > /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/span.rules
[iptables]
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp4 -j SPAN --dport swp19
-A FORWARD --out-interface swp4 -j SPAN --dport swp19
EOF'
```



Using `c1-acltool` with the `--out-interface` rule applies to transit traffic only; it does not apply to traffic sourced from the switch.

Next, verify all the rules that are currently installed:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo iptables -L -v
Chain INPUT (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
 pkts bytes target     prot opt in      out      source
destination
```

```

      0      0  DROP      all  --  swp+    any     240.0.0.0/5
anywhere
      0      0  DROP      all  --  swp+    any     loopback/8
anywhere
      0      0  DROP      all  --  swp+    any     base-address.mcast.net
/8  anywhere
      0      0  DROP      all  --  swp+    any     255.255.255.255
anywhere
      0      0  SETCLASS  ospf  --  swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere          SETCLASS  class:7
      0      0  POLICE    ospf  --  any     any     anywhere
anywhere          POLICE   mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:2000
      0      0  SETCLASS  tcp   --  swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere          tcp dpt:bgp SETCLASS  class:7
      0      0  POLICE    tcp   --  any     any     anywhere
anywhere          tcp dpt:bgp POLICE   mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:2000
      0      0  SETCLASS  tcp   --  swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere          tcp spt:bgp SETCLASS  class:7
      0      0  POLICE    tcp   --  any     any     anywhere
anywhere          tcp spt:bgp POLICE   mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:2000
      0      0  SETCLASS  tcp   --  swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere          tcp dpt:5342 SETCLASS  class:7
      0      0  POLICE    tcp   --  any     any     anywhere
anywhere          tcp dpt:5342 POLICE   mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:
2000
      0      0  SETCLASS  tcp   --  swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere          tcp spt:5342 SETCLASS  class:7
      0      0  POLICE    tcp   --  any     any     anywhere
anywhere          tcp spt:5342 POLICE   mode:pkt rate:2000 burst:
2000
      0      0  SETCLASS  icmp  --  swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere          SETCLASS  class:2
      0      0  POLICE    icmp  --  any     any     anywhere
anywhere          POLICE   mode:pkt rate:100 burst:40
      15     5205  SETCLASS  udp   --  swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere          udp dpts:bootps:bootpc SETCLASS  class:2
      11     3865  POLICE    udp   --  any     any     anywhere
anywhere          udp dpt:bootps POLICE   mode:pkt rate:100 burst:
100
      0      0  POLICE    udp   --  any     any     anywhere
anywhere          udp dpt:bootpc POLICE   mode:pkt rate:100 burst:
100
      0      0  SETCLASS  tcp   --  swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere          tcp dpts:bootps:bootpc SETCLASS  class:2
      0      0  POLICE    tcp   --  any     any     anywhere
anywhere          tcp dpt:bootps POLICE   mode:pkt rate:100 burst:
100
      0      0  POLICE    tcp   --  any     any     anywhere
anywhere          tcp dpt:bootpc POLICE   mode:pkt rate:100 burst:
100
      17     1088  SETCLASS  igmp  --  swp+    any     anywhere
anywhere          SETCLASS  class:6

```



```
    17 1156 POLICE      igmp -- any     any     anywhere
anywhere          POLICE mode:pkt rate:300 burst:100
    394 41060 POLICE     all -- swp+   any     anywhere
anywhere          ADDRTYPE match dst-type LOCAL POLICE mode:pkt
rate:1000 burst:1000 class:0
    0     0 POLICE     all -- swp+   any     anywhere
anywhere          ADDRTYPE match dst-type IPROUTER POLICE mode:
pkt rate:400 burst:100 class:0
    988 279K SETCLASS   all -- swp+   any     anywhere
anywhere          SETCLASS class:0

Chain FORWARD (policy ACCEPT 0 packets, 0 bytes)
pkts bytes target      prot opt in     out     source
destination
    0     0 DROP        all -- swp+   any     240.0.0.0/5
anywhere
    0     0 DROP        all -- swp+   any     loopback/8
anywhere
    0     0 DROP        all -- swp+   any     base-address.mcast.net
/8 anywhere
    0     0 DROP        all -- swp+   any     255.255.255.255
anywhere
26864 4672K SPAN      all -- swp4    any     anywhere
anywhere          dport:swp19 <---- input packets on swp4

40722  47M SPAN      all -- any     swp4    anywhere
anywhere          dport:swp19 <---- output packets on swp4

Chain OUTPUT (policy ACCEPT 67398 packets, 5757K bytes)
pkts bytes target      prot opt in     out     source
destination
```

Install the rules:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -i
[sudo] password for cumulus:
Reading rule file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/00control_plane.rules ...
Processing rules in file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/00control_plane.
rules ...
Reading rule file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/99control_plane_catch_all.
rules ...
Processing rules in file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/99control_plane_catch_all.rules ...
Reading rule file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/span.rules ...
Processing rules in file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/span.rules ...
Installing acl policy
done.
```

**!** Running the following command is incorrect and will remove **all** existing control-plane rules or other installed rules and only install the rules defined in `span.rules`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -i -P /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d
/span.rules
```

Verify that the SPAN rules were installed:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -L all | grep SPAN
38025 7034K SPAN      all -- swp4    any     anywhere
anywhere              dport:swp19
50832 55M SPAN       all -- any     swp4    anywhere
anywhere              dport:swp19
```

## Configuring SPAN for Bonds

This section describes how to configure SPAN for all packets going out of `bond0` locally to `bond1`.

First, create a rules file in `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo bash -c 'cat <<EOF > /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d
/span_bond.rules
[iptables]
-A FORWARD --out-interface bond0 -j SPAN --dport bond1
EOF'
```

**!** Using `cl-acltool` with the `--out-interface` rule applies to transit traffic only; it does not apply to traffic sourced from the switch.

Install the rules:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -i
[sudo] password for cumulus:
Reading rule file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/00control_plane.rules ...
Processing rules in file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/00control_plane.
rules ...
Reading rule file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/99control_plane_catch_all.
rules ...
Processing rules in file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/99control_plane_catch_all.rules ...
Reading rule file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/span_bond.rules ...
Processing rules in file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/span_bond.rules ...
```



```
Installing acl policy
done.
```

Verify that the SPAN rules were installed:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo iptables -L -v | grep SPAN
 19  1938 SPAN      all -- any    bond0    anywhere
 anywhere          dport:bond1
```

## Configuring ERSPAN

This section describes how to configure ERSPAN for all packets coming in from `swp1` to `12.0.0.2`.

### ⚠ Cut-through Mode Support

Cut-through mode (see page 260) is **not** supported for ERSPAN in Cumulus Linux on switches using Broadcom Tomahawk, Trident II+ and Trident II ASICs.

Cut-through mode **is** supported for ERSPAN in Cumulus Linux on switches using Mellanox Spectrum ASICs.

1. First, create a rules file in `/etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo bash -c 'cat <<EOF > /etc/cumulus/acl
/policy.d/erspan.rules
[iptables]
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp1 -j ERSPAN --src-ip 12.0.0.1 --dst-
ip 12.0.0.2 --ttl 64
EOF'
```

2. Install the rules:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -i
Reading rule file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/00control_plane.
rules ...
Processing rules in file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d
/00control_plane.rules ...
Reading rule file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d
/99control_plane_catch_all.rules ...
Processing rules in file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d
/99control_plane_catch_all.rules ...
Reading rule file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/erspan.rules ...
Processing rules in file /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/erspan.rules
...
Installing acl policy
done.
```



- Verify that the ERSPAN rules were installed:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo iptables -L -v | grep SPAN
 69 6804 ERSPAN      all -- swp1    any
 anywhere           anywhere          ERSPAN src-ip:12.0.0.1
 dst-ip:12.0.0.2
```

The `src-ip` option can be any IP address, whether it exists in the routing table or not. The `dst-ip` option must be an IP address reachable via the routing table. The destination IP address must be reachable from a front-panel port, and not the management port. Use `ping` or `ip route get <ip>` to verify that the destination IP address is reachable. Setting the `--ttl` option is recommended.



When using [Wireshark](#) to review the ERSPAN output, Wireshark may report the message "Unknown version, please report or test to use fake ERSPAN preference", and the trace is unreadable. To resolve this, go into the General preferences for Wireshark, then go to **Protocols** > **ERSPAN** and check the **Force to decode fake ERSPAN frame** option.

## Selective Spanning

SPAN/ERSPAN traffic rules can be configured to limit the traffic that is spanned, to reduce the volume of copied data.



Cumulus Linux supports selective spanning for `iptables` only. `ip6tables` and `ebtables` are not supported.

The following matching fields are supported:

- IPv4 SIP/DIP
- IP protocol
- L4 (TCP/UDP) src/dst port
- TCP flags
- An ingress port/wildcard (`swp+`) can be specified in addition



With ERSPAN, a maximum of two `--src-ip` `--dst-ip` pairs are supported. Exceeding this limit produces an error when you install the rules with `cl-acltool`.

## SPAN Examples

- To mirror forwarded packets from all ports matching SIP 20.0.1.0 and DIP 20.0.1.2 to port `swp1s1`:



```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp+ -s 20.0.0.2 -d 20.0.1.2 -j SPAN --  
dport swp1s2
```

- To mirror icmp packets from all ports to swp1s2:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp+ -s 20.0.0.2 -p icmp -j SPAN --  
dport swp1s2
```

- To mirror forwarded UDP packets received from port swp1s0, towards DIP 20.0.1.2 and destination port 53:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp1s0 -d 20.0.1.2 -p udp --dport 53 -  
j SPAN --dport swp1s2
```

- To mirror all forwarded TCP packets with only SYN set:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp+ -p tcp --tcp-flags ALL SYN -j  
SPAN --dport swp1s2
```

- To mirror all forwarded TCP packets with only FIN set:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp+ -p tcp --tcp-flags ALL FIN -j  
SPAN --dport swp1s2
```

## ERSPAN Examples

- To mirror forwarded packets from all ports matching SIP 20.0.1.0 and DIP 20.0.1.2:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp+ -s 20.0.0.2 -d 20.0.1.2 -j ERSPAN  
--src-ip 90.0.0.1 --dst-ip 20.0.2.2
```

- To mirror ICMP packets from all ports:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp+ -s 20.0.0.2 -p icmp -j ERSPAN --  
src-ip 90.0.0.1 --dst-ip 20.0.2.2
```

- To mirror forwarded UDP packets received from port swp1s0, towards DIP 20.0.1.2 and destination port 53:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp1s0 -d 20.0.1.2 -p udp --dport 53 -  
j ERSPAN --src-ip 90.0.0.1 --dst-ip 20.0.2.2
```



- To mirror all forwarded TCP packets with only SYN set:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp+ -p tcp --tcp-flags ALL SYN -j  
ERSPAN --src-ip 90.0.0.1 --dst-ip 20.0.2.2
```

- To mirror all forwarded TCP packets with only FIN set:

```
-A FORWARD --in-interface swp+ -p tcp --tcp-flags ALL FIN -j  
ERSPAN --src-ip 90.0.0.1 --dst-ip 20.0.2.2
```

## Removing SPAN Rules

To remove your SPAN rules, run:

```
#Remove rules file:  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo rm /etc/cumulus/acl/policy.d/span.rules  
#Reload the default rules  
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -i  
cumulus@switch:~$
```

To verify that the SPAN rules were removed:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cl-acltool -L all | grep SPAN  
cumulus@switch:~$
```

## Monitoring Control Plane Traffic with `tcpdump`

You can use `tcpdump` to monitor control plane traffic — traffic sent to and coming from the switch CPUs. `tcpdump` does **not** monitor data plane traffic; use `cl-acltool` instead (see above).

For more information on `tcpdump`, read [the `tcpdump` documentation](#) and the [`tcpdump` man page](#).

The following example incorporates a few `tcpdump` options:

- `-i bond0`, which captures packets from bond0 to the CPU and from the CPU to bond0
- `host 169.254.0.2`, which filters for this IP address
- `-c 10`, which captures 10 packets then stops

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo tcpdump -i bond0 host 169.254.0.2 -c 10  
tcpdump: WARNING: bond0: no IPv4 address assigned  
tcpdump: verbose output suppressed, use -v or -vv for full protocol  
decode  
listening on bond0, link-type EN10MB (Ethernet), capture size 65535  
bytes
```



```
16:24:42.532473 IP 169.254.0.2 > 169.254.0.1: ICMP echo request, id  
27785, seq 6, length 64  
16:24:42.532534 IP 169.254.0.1 > 169.254.0.2: ICMP echo reply, id  
27785, seq 6, length 64  
16:24:42.804155 IP 169.254.0.2.40210 > 169.254.0.1.5342: Flags [..],  
seq 266275591:266277039, ack 3813627681, win 58, options [nop,nop,TS  
val 590400681 ecr 530346691], length 1448  
16:24:42.804228 IP 169.254.0.1.5342 > 169.254.0.2.40210: Flags [..],  
ack 1448, win 166, options [nop,nop,TS val 530348721 ecr 590400681],  
length 0  
16:24:42.804267 IP 169.254.0.2.40210 > 169.254.0.1.5342: Flags [P.],  
seq 1448:1836, ack 1, win 58, options [nop,nop,TS val 590400681 ecr  
530346691], length 388  
16:24:42.804293 IP 169.254.0.1.5342 > 169.254.0.2.40210: Flags [..],  
ack 1836, win 165, options [nop,nop,TS val 530348721 ecr 590400681],  
length 0  
16:24:43.532389 IP 169.254.0.2 > 169.254.0.1: ICMP echo request, id  
27785, seq 7, length 64  
16:24:43.532447 IP 169.254.0.1 > 169.254.0.2: ICMP echo reply, id  
27785, seq 7, length 64  
16:24:43.838652 IP 169.254.0.1.59951 > 169.254.0.2.5342: Flags [..],  
seq 2555144343:2555145791, ack 2067274882, win 58, options [nop,nop,  
TS val 530349755 ecr 590399688], length 1448  
16:24:43.838692 IP 169.254.0.1.59951 > 169.254.0.2.5342: Flags [P.],  
seq 1448:1838, ack 1, win 58, options [nop,nop,TS val 530349755 ecr  
590399688], length 390  
10 packets captured  
12 packets received by filter  
0 packets dropped by kernel
```

## Caveats and Errata

- SPAN rules cannot match outgoing subinterfaces.
- ERSPAN rules must include `ttl` for versions 1.5.1 and earlier.

## Related Information

- [www.perihel.at/sec/mz/mzguide.html](http://www.perihel.at/sec/mz/mzguide.html)
- [en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ping](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ping)
- [www.tcpdump.org](http://www.tcpdump.org)
- [en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Traceroute](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Traceroute)

## Using NCLU to Troubleshoot Your Network Configuration

The `network` command line utility (see page 85) (NCLU) can quickly return a lot of information about your network configuration.



## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Using net show Commands (see page 830)
- Showing Interfaces (see page 830)
- Other Useful Features (see page 832)
- Installing netshow on a Linux Server (see page 832)

## Using net show Commands

Running `net show` and pressing TAB displays all available command line arguments usable by `net`. The output looks like this:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show <TAB>
bgp          : Border Gateway Protocol
bridge       : A layer2 bridge
clag         : Multi-Chassis Link Aggregation
commit       : apply the commit buffer to the system
configuration : Settings, configuration state, etc
counters     : show netstat counters
hostname     : System hostname
igmp         : Internet Group Management Protocol
interface    : An interface such as swp1, swp2, etc
ip           : Internet Protocol version 4
ipv6         : Internet Protocol version 6
lldp         : Link Layer Discovery Protocol
lrv          : Lightweight Network Virtualization
mroute       : Configure static unicast route into MRIB for
multicast RPF lookup
msdp         : Multicast Source Discovery Protocol
ospf         : Open Shortest Path First (OSPFv2)
ospf6        : Open Shortest Path First (OSPFv3)
pim          : Protocol Independent Multicast
rollback     : revert to a previous configuration state
route        : Static routes
route-map    : Route-map
system       : System information
version      : Version number
```

## Showing Interfaces

To show all available interfaces that are physically UP, run `net show interface`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show interface
```

Name	Speed	MTU	Mode	Summary
------	-------	-----	------	---------



```
-- -----  
-----  
UP lo N/A 65536 Loopback IP: 10.0.0.11/32, 127.0.0.1  
/8, ::1/128  
UP eth0 1G 1500 Mgmt IP: 192.168.0.11/24(DHCP)  
UP swp1 1G 1500 Access/L2 Untagged: br0  
UP swp2 1G 1500 NotConfigured  
UP swp51 1G 1500 NotConfigured  
UP swp52 1G 1500 NotConfigured  
UP blue N/A 65536 NotConfigured  
UP br0 N/A 1500 Bridge/L3 IP: 172.16.1.1/24  
Untagged Members: swp1  
802.1q Tag: Untagged  
STP: RootSwitch(32768)  
UP red N/A 65536 NotConfigured
```

Whereas `net show interface all` displays every interface regardless of state:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show interface all  
      Name      Speed      MTU      Mode           Summary  
-----  
-----  
UP    lo      N/A      65536  Loopback      IP: 10.0.0.11/32,  
127.0.0.1/8, ::1/128  
UP    eth0     1G      1500  Mgmt          IP: 192.168.0.11/24  
(DHCP)  
UP    swp1     1G      1500  Access/L2    Untagged: br0  
UP    swp2     1G      1500  NotConfigured  
ADMDN swp45   0M      1500  NotConfigured  
ADMDN swp46   0M      1500  NotConfigured  
ADMDN swp47   0M      1500  NotConfigured  
ADMDN swp48   0M      1500  NotConfigured  
ADMDN swp49   0M      1500  NotConfigured  
ADMDN swp50   0M      1500  NotConfigured  
UP    swp51     1G      1500  NotConfigured  
UP    swp52     1G      1500  NotConfigured  
UP    blue     N/A      65536 NotConfigured  
UP    br0      N/A      1500  Bridge/L3    IP: 172.16.1.1/24  
Untagged Members: swp1  
802.1q Tag: Untagged  
STP: RootSwitch(32768)  
UP    red      N/A      65536 NotConfigured  
ADMDN vagrant 0M      1500  NotConfigured
```

You can get information about the switch itself by running `net show system`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show system  
Penguin Arctica 4806XP
```



```
Cumulus Version 3.4.0  
Build: Cumulus Linux 3.4.0  
Chipset: Broadcom Trident2 BCM56854  
Port Config: 48 x 10G-SFP+ & 6 x 40G-QSFP+  
CPU: (x86_64) Intel Atom C2558 2.40GHz  
Uptime: 8 days, 0:45:29
```

## Other Useful Features

NCLU uses the [python network-docopt](#) package. This is inspired by [docopt](#) and provides the ability to specify partial commands, without tab completion and running the complete option. For example:

```
net show int runs netshow interface  
net show sys runs netshow system
```

## Installing netshow on a Linux Server

netshow is a tool developed by Cumulus Networks for troubleshooting networks. In Cumulus Linux, it's been replaced by NCLU. However, NCLU is not available on Linux hosts at this time, so Cumulus Networks recommends you use netshow to help troubleshoot servers. To install netshow on a Linux server, run:

```
root@host:~# pip install netshow-linux-lib
```



Debian and Red Hat packages will be available in the near future.

## Monitoring System Statistics and Network Traffic with sFlow

sFlow is a monitoring protocol that samples network packets, application operations, and system counters. sFlow collects both interface counters and sampled 5-tuple packet information, enabling you to monitor your network traffic as well as your switch state and performance metrics. An outside server, known as an *sFlow collector*, is required to collect and analyze this data.

`hsflowd` is the daemon that samples and sends sFlow data to configured collectors. `hsflowd` is not included in the base Cumulus Linux installation. After installation, `hsflowd` will automatically start when the switch boots up.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- [Installing hsflowd \(see page 833\)](#)
- [Configuring sFlow \(see page 833\)](#)
  - [Configuring sFlow via DNS-SD \(see page 833\)](#)

- Manually Configuring /etc/hsflowd.conf (see page 834)
- Configuring sFlow Visualization Tools (see page 834)
- Related Information (see page 835)

## Installing hsflowd

To download and install the `hsflowd` package, use `apt-get`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get update
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get install -y hsflowd
```

## Configuring sFlow

You can configure `hsflowd` to send to the designated collectors via two methods:

- DNS service discovery (DNS-SD)
- Manually configuring /etc/hsflowd.conf

## Configuring sFlow via DNS-SD

With this method, you need to configure your DNS zone to advertise the collectors and polling information to all interested clients. Add the following content to the zone file on your DNS server:

```
_sflow._udp SRV 0 0 6343 collector1
_sflow._udp SRV 0 0 6344 collector2
_sflow._udp TXT (
  "txtvers=1"
  "sampling.1G=2048"
  "sampling.10G=4096"
  "sampling.40G=8192"
  "polling=20"
)
```

The above snippet instructs `hsflowd` to send sFlow data to collector1 on port 6343 and to collector2 on port 6344. `hsflowd` will poll counters every 20 seconds and sample 1 out of every 2048 packets.



The maximum samples per second delivered from the hardware is limited to 16K. You can configure the number of samples per second in the `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf` file, as shown below:

```
# Set sflow/sample ingress cpu packet rate and burst in packets
/sec
# Values: {0..16384}
#sflow.rate = 16384
#sflow.burst = 16384
```



After the initial configuration is ready, bring up the sFlow daemon by running:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start hsflowd.service
```

No additional configuration is required in `/etc/hsflowd.conf`.

### *Manually Configuring /etc/hsflowd.conf*

With this method you will set up the collectors and variables on each switch.

Edit `/etc/hsflowd.conf` and change `DNSSD = on` to `DNSSD = off`:

```
DNSSD = off
```

Then set up your collectors and sampling rates in `/etc/hsflowd.conf`:

```
# Manual Configuration (requires DNSSD=off above)
#####
#
# Typical configuration is to send every 30 seconds
polling = 20

sampling.1G=2048
sampling.10G=4096
sampling.40G=8192

collector {
    ip = 192.0.2.100
    udpport = 6343
}

collector {
    ip = 192.0.2.200
    udpport = 6344
}
```

This configuration polls the counters every 20 seconds, samples 1 of every 2048 packets and sends this information to a collector at 192.0.2.100 on port 6343 and to another collector at 192.0.2.200 on port 6344.



Some collectors require each source to transmit on a different port, others may listen on only one port. Please refer to the documentation for your collector for more information.



## Configuring sFlow Visualization Tools

For information on configuring various sFlow visualization tools, read this [Help Center article](#).

### Related Information

- [sFlow Collectors](#)
- [sFlow Wikipedia page](#)

## SNMP Monitoring

Cumulus Linux utilizes the open source Net-SNMP agent `snmpd`, v5.7.3, which provides support for most of the common industry-wide MIBs, including interface counters and TCP/UDP IP stack data.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- [Introduction to SNMP \(Simple Network Management Protocol\) \(see page 836\)](#)
- [Configuring Ports for SNMP to Listen for Requests \(see page 836\)](#)
- [Quick Start Guide \(see page 836\)](#)
- [Starting the SNMP Daemon \(see page 839\)](#)
- [Configuring SNMP \(see page 839\)
  - \[Configuring SNMP with NCLU \\(see page 840\\)\]\(#\)
  - \[Configuring SNMP Manually \\(see page 842\\)\]\(#\)
  - \[Configuring SNMP with Management VRF \\(see page 842\\)\]\(#\)
  - \[Configuring the agentAddress \\(see page 844\\)\]\(#\)
  - \[Setting up the Custom Cumulus Networks MIBs \\(see page 845\\)\]\(#\)
  - \[Setting the Community String \\(see page 845\\)\]\(#\)
  - \[Enabling SNMP Support for FRRouting \\(see page 846\\)\]\(#\)
  - \[Enabling the .1.3.6.1.2.1 Range \\(see page 848\\)\]\(#\)
  - \[Configuring SNMPv3 \\(see page 849\\)\]\(#\)](#)
- [snmpwalk a Switch from Another Linux Device \(see page 852\)
  - \[Troubleshooting Tips Table for snmpwalks \\(see page 853\\)\]\(#\)](#)
- [SNMP Traps \(see page 854\)
  - \[Generating Event Notification Traps \\(see page 854\\)\]\(#\)
  - \[snmptrapd.conf \\(see page 863\\)\]\(#\)](#)
- [Supported MIBs \(see page 864\)](#)
- [About Pass Persist Scripts \(see page 867\)](#)
- [Troubleshooting \(see page 868\)](#)



## Introduction to SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol)

SNMP is an IETF standards-based network management architecture and protocol that traces its roots back to Carnegie-Mellon University in 1982. Since then, it's been modified by programmers at the University of California. In 1995, this code was also made publicly available as the UCD project. After that, `ucd-snmp` was extended by work done at the University of Liverpool as well as later in Denmark. In late 2000, the project name changed to `net-snmp` and became a fully-fledged collaborative open source project. The version used by Cumulus Networks is base on the latest `net-snmp` 5.7.3 branch with added custom MIBs and pass through and pass persist scripts ([see below \(see page 867\)](#) for more information on pass persist scripts).

## Configuring Ports for SNMP to Listen for Requests

For security reasons, the default port binding for `snmpd` is the loopback local address; consequently by default, the SNMP service does not listen for SNMP requests from outside the switch. In order to listen to requests from outside the switch, you need to change this binding to a specific IP address (or all interfaces) after configuring security access (community strings, users, and so forth). This is a change from older versions of Cumulus Linux (before version 3.0), which listened to incoming requests on all interfaces by default. The `snmpd` configuration file is `/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf` and should be modified before enabling and starting `snmpd`. The default configuration has no access community strings defined so `snmpd` will not respond to any SNMP requests until this is added.

## Quick Start Guide

The SNMP daemon, `snmpd`, uses the configuration file `/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf` for almost all of its configuration. The syntax of the most important keywords are defined in the following table.

Syntax	Meaning
<b>agentAddress</b>	<b>Required.</b> This command sets the protocol, IP address, and the port for <code>snmpd</code> to listen on for <b>incoming</b> requests. The IP address must exist on an interface that has link UP on the switch where <code>snmpd</code> is being used. By default, this is set to <code>udp:127.0.0.1:161</code> , which means <code>snmpd</code> listens on the loopback interface and so only responds to requests ( <code>snmpwalk</code> , <code>snmpget</code> , <code>snmpgetnext</code> ) originating from the switch. A wildcard setting of <code>udp:161</code> , <code>udp6:161</code> forces <code>snmpd</code> to listen on all IPv4 and IPv6 interfaces for incoming SNMP requests. Multiple IP address can be configured as comma-separated values, as in <code>udp:66.66.66.66:161,udp:77.77.77.77:161, udp6:[2001::1]:161</code> .
<b>rcommunity</b>	<b>Required.</b> This command defines the password that is required for SNMP version 1 or 2c requests for GET or GETNEXT. By default, this provides access to the full OID tree for such requests, regardless of from where they were sent. There is no default password set, so that <code>snmpd</code> does not respond to any requests that arrive. Users often specify a source IP address token to restrict access to only that host or network given. Users also specify a view name (as defined above) to restrict the subset of the OID tree.  Some examples of <code>rcommunity</code> commands are shown below. The first command sets the read only community string to "simplepassword" for SNMP requests sourced from the 10.10.10.0/24 subnet and restricts



Syntax	Meaning
	<p>viewing to the <i>systemonly</i> view name defined previously with the <code>view</code> command. The second example simply creates a read-only community password that allows access to the entire OID tree from any source IP address.</p> <pre>rocommunity simplepassword 10.10.10.0/24 -V systemonly  rocommunity cumulustestpassword</pre>
<code>view</code>	<p>This command defines a view name that specifies a subset of the overall OID tree. This restricted view can then be referenced by name in the <code>rocommunity</code> command to link the view to a password that is used to see this restricted OID subset. By default, the <code>snmpd.conf</code> file contains numerous views with the <i>systemonly</i> view name:</p> <pre>view systemonly included .1.3.6.1.2.1.1 view systemonly included .1.3.6.1.2.1.2 view systemonly included .1.3.6.1.2.1.3</pre> <p>The <i>systemonly</i> view is used by <code>rocommunity</code> to create a password for access to only these branches of the OID tree.</p>
<code>trapsink</code> <code>trap2sink</code>	<p>This command defines the IP address of the notification (or trap) receiver for either SNMPv1 traps or SNMPv2 traps. If several sink directives are specified, multiple copies of each notification (in the appropriate formats) are generated. Note that a trap server must be configured to receive and decode these trap messages (for example, <code>snmptrapd</code>). The address of the trap receiver can be configured with a different protocol and port but this is most often left out. The defaults are to use the well-known UDP packets and port 162.</p>
<code>createUser</code> <code>iquerySecName</code> <code>rouser</code>	<p>These three commands define an internal SNMPv3 username that is required in order for <code>snmpd</code> to send traps. This username is required to authorize the DisMan service even though SNMPv3 is not being configured for use. The example <code>snmpd.conf</code> configuration shown below creates <code>snmptrapusernameX</code> as the username (this is just an example username) using the <code>createUser</code> command. <code>iquerySecName</code> defines the default SNMPv3 username to be used when making internal queries to retrieve monitored expressions. <code>rouser</code> specifies which username should be used for these SNMPv3 queries. All three are required for <code>snmpd</code> to retrieve information and send built-in traps or for those configured with the <code>monitor</code> command shown below in the examples.</p>

Syntax	Meaning
	<pre>createUser snmptrapusernameX  iquerySecName snmptrapusernameX  rouser snmptrapusernameX</pre>
<b>linkUpDownNotifications yes</b>	<p>This command enables link up and link down trap notifications, assuming the other trap configurations settings are set. This command configures the Event MIB tables to monitor the ifTable for network interfaces being taken up or down, and triggering a <i>linkUp</i> or <i>linkDown</i> notification as appropriate. This is exactly equivalent to the following configuration:</p> <pre>notificationEvent linkUpTrap linkUp ifIndex ifAdminStatus ifOperStatus  notificationEvent linkDownTrap linkDown ifIndex ifAdminStatus ifOperStatus  monitor -r 60 -e linkUpTrap "Generate linkUp" ifOperStatus != 2  monitor -r 60 -e linkDownTrap "Generate linkDown" ifOperStatus == 2</pre>
<b>defaultMonitors yes</b>	<p>This command configures the Event MIB tables to monitor the various UCD-SNMP-MIB tables for problems (as indicated by the appropriate xxErrFlag column objects) and send a trap. This assumes the user has downloaded the <code>snmp-mibs-downloader</code> Debian package and comments out "mibs" from <code>/etc/snmp/snmp.conf</code> (as in: "#mibs"). This command is exactly equivalent to the following configuration:</p> <pre>monitor -o prNames -o prErrMsg "process table" prErrorFlag != 0  monitor -o memErrName -o memSwapErrorMsg "memory" memSwapError != 0  monitor -o extNames -o extOutput "extTable" extResult != 0  monitor -o dskPath -o dskErrorMsg "dskTable" dskErrorFlag != 0</pre>

Syntax	Meaning
	<pre>monitor -o laNames -o laErrMessage "laTable" laErrorFlag != 0  monitor -o fileName -o fileErrorMsg "fileTable" fileErrorFlag != 0</pre>

## Starting the SNMP Daemon

The following procedure is the recommended process to start `snmpd` and monitor it using `systemctl`.

To start the SNMP daemon:

1. Start the `snmpd` daemon:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start snmpd.service
```

2. Configure the `snmpd` daemon to start automatically after reboot:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl enable snmpd.service
```

3. To enable `snmpd` to restart automatically after failure:
  - a. Create a file called `/etc/systemd/system/snmpd.service.d/restart.conf`.
  - b. Add the following lines:

```
[Service]  
Restart=always  
RestartSec=60
```

- c. Run `sudo systemctl daemon-reload`.

Once the service is started, SNMP can be used to manage various components on the Cumulus Linux switch.

## Configuring SNMP

Cumulus Linux ships with a production usable default `snmpd.conf` file included. This section covers a few basic configuration options in `snmpd.conf`. For more information regarding further configuring this file, refer to the `snmpd.conf` man page.



Cumulus Linux 3.4 and later releases support configuring SNMP with NCLU.

**!** The default `snmpd.conf` file does not include all supported MIBs or OIDs that can be exposed.

**!** Customers must at least change the default community string for v1 or v2c environments or the `snmpd` daemon will not respond to any requests.

## Configuring SNMP with NCLU

The table below highlights the structure of NCLU commands available for configuring SNMP. An example command set can be found below the table.

Command	Summary
<code>net del all</code> or <code>net del snmp-server all</code>	Removes all entries in the <code>/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf</code> file and replaces them with defaults. The defaults remove all SNMPv3 usernames, readonly-communities, and a listening-address of localhost will be configured.
<code>net add snmp-server listening-address localhost</code>	For security reasons, the localhost is set to a listening address 127.0.0.1 by default. This means that the SNMP agent will only respond to requests originating on the switch itself. One or more IP addresses can be deleted.
<code>net add snmp-server listening-address all</code>	Configures the <code>snmpd</code> agent to listen on all interfaces for UDP port 161 SNMP requests.
<code>net add snmp-server listening-address IP_ADDRESS IP_ADDRESS ...</code>	Sets the SNMP agent <code>snmpd</code> to listen to a specific IPv4 or IPv6 address, or a group of addresses with space separated values, for incoming SNMP queries.
	<pre>net add snmp-server listening-address 10.10.10.1 0</pre>
	<pre>net add snmp-server listening-address 10.10.10.1 0 44.44.44.44</pre>
<code>net add snmp-server viewname [view name] (included   excluded) [OID or name]</code>	<p>Creates a view to restrict MIB tree exposure. By itself, this view definition has no effect; however, when linked to an SNMPv3 username or community password, and a host from a restricted subnet, any SNMP request with that username/password must have a source IP address within the configured subnet.</p> <p>Note that OID can be either a string of period separated decimal numbers or a unique text string that identifies an SNMP MIB object. Some MIBs are not installed by default and must be installed either by hand or with the</p>



Command	Summary
	latest Debian package called snmp-mibs-downloader. Specific viewname entries can be removed with the delete command or with just a view name to remove all entries matching that view name. A specific view name can be defined multiple times and fine tuned to provide or restrict access using included or excluded command to specify branches of certain MIB trees net add snmp-server viewname cumulusOnly included .1.3.6.1.4.1.40310
net add snmp-server (readonly-community   readonly-community-v6) [password] access (any   localhost   [network]) [(view [view name]) or [oid [oid or name]])	Defines the community password, and which parts of the OID tree to apply the password to for incoming SNMP requests.
net add snmp-server trap-destination (localhost   [ipaddress]) community-password [password] [version [1   2c]]	Sets the SNMP Trap destination IP address. Multiple destinations can exist, but at least one must be set to enable SNMP Traps to be sent. Removing all settings will disable SNMP traps. The default version is 2c, unless otherwise configured.
net add snmp-server trap-link-up [check-frequency [seconds]]	Enables notifications for interface link-up to be sent to SNMP Trap destinations.
net add snmp-server trap-link-down [check-frequency [seconds]]	Enables notifications for interface link-down to be sent to SNMP Trap destinations.
net add snmp-server trap-snmp-auth-failures	Enables SNMP Trap notifications to be sent for every SNMP authentication failure.
net add snmp-server trap-cpu-load-average one-minute [threshold] five-minute [5-min-threshold] fifteen-minute [15-min-threshold]	Enables a trap when the cpu-load-average exceeds the configured threshold. Only integers or floating point numbers can be used.

This table covers system setting configuration commands for SNMPv2-MIB:



Command	Summary
net add snmp-server system-location [string]	Sets the system physical location for the node in the SNMPv2-MIB system table.
net add snmp-server system-contact [string]	Sets the identification of the contact person for this managed node, together with information on how to contact this person.
net add snmp-server system-name [string]	Sets an administratively-assigned name for the managed node. By convention, this is the node's fully-qualified domain name.

The example commands below enable an SNMP agent to listen on all IP addresses with a community string password, set the trap destination host IP address, and create four types of SNMP traps:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add snmp-server listening-address all
cumulus@switch:~$ net add snmp-server readonly-community tempPassword
access any
cumulus@switch:~$ net add snmp-server trap-destination 1.1.1.1
community-password mypass version 2c
cumulus@switch:~$ net add snmp-server trap-link-up check-frequency 15
cumulus@switch:~$ net add snmp-server trap-link-down check-frequency 1
0
cumulus@switch:~$ net add snmp-server trap-cpu-load-average one-
minute 7.45 five-minute 5.14
cumulus@switch:~$ net add snmp-server trap-snmp-auth-failures
```

## Configuring SNMP Manually

There are times when you need to manually edit the SNMP configuration; for example, there may not be the necessary option in NCLU. In cases like this, you need to edit the configuration directly, which is stored in the `/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf` file.

Use caution when making direct edits to the file, however, because the next time you use NCLU to update your SNMP configuration, some of the options you specified may get overwritten by NCLU as it may not be able to correctly parse the syntax. However, if NCLU is not aware of a given configuration option, it will not overwrite such an option.

Make sure you do not delete the `snmpd.conf` file as this can cause issues with the package manager the next time you update Cumulus Linux.

## Configuring SNMP with Management VRF

When you configure [Management VRF](#) (see page 720), you need to be aware of the interface IP addresses on which SNMP is listening. If you set listening-address to all, the `snmpd` daemon responds to incoming requests on all interfaces in the default VRF. If you prefer to listen on a limited number of IP addresses, Cumulus Networks recommends that you run only one instance of the `snmpd` daemon and that all of the configured interfaces are in the same VRF.



SNMP configuration in NCLU is not VRF aware so the `snmpd` daemon is always started in the default VRF. Because interfaces in a particular VRF (routing table) are not aware of interfaces in a different VRF, the `snmpd` daemon only responds to polling requests and sends traps on the interfaces of the VRF on which it is running.

When management VRF is configured, most users will want to start the `snmpd` daemon in the management VRF to receive and respond to SNMP polling requests on eth0. Follow these guidelines:

1. Configure all the required SNMP settings with NCLU. Pay particular attention to the listening-address configuration setting, which should contain one or more IP addresses that belong to interfaces within a single VRF (if management VRF is configured, this is typically the IP address of eth0). You can use IP addresses other than eth0, but the interfaces for these IP addresses must be in the same VRF (typically the management VRF).
2. Commit the changes to start the `snmpd` daemon in the default VRF.
3. Manually stop the `snmpd` daemon from running in the default VRF.
4. Manually restart the `snmpd` daemon in the management VRF.

## ⓘ Running Multiple Instances of snmpd

More complex configurations are possible; for example, you can run more than one `snmpd` daemon (one in each VRF designed to receive SNMP polling requests). Cumulus Networks does not recommend this for memory and cpu resource reasons. However, if this is required, you must use a separate configuration file with each instance of the `snmpd` daemon. You can use a copy of the `/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf` file. When you use this file, start an `snmpd` daemon with the following command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo /usr/sbin/snmpd -y -LS 0-4 d -Lf /dev/null -u snmp -g snmp -I -smux -p /run/snmpd.pid -C -c <new snmp config filename> (edited)
```

To use management VRF, you need to configure the IP address of eth0 as the listening-address. In the example below, eth0 IP address is 10.10.10.10. You can also add other `snmp-server` configurations, then commit the changes.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add snmp-server listening-address 10.10.10.10
cumulus@switch:~$ net add snmp-server readonly-community tempPassword
access any
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

This restarts the `snmpd` daemon in the default VRF. Then, to run `snmpd` in the correct VRF, stop the daemon in the default VRF (or stop any other `snmpd` daemons that happen to be running), then restart `snmpd` in the management VRF so that it can respond to requests on interfaces only in that VRF. Make sure that only one instance of the `snmpd` daemon is running and that it is running in the desired VRF. Assuming the Management VRF has been enabled, the following example shows how to stop `snmpd` and restart it in the management VRF.



```
cumulus@switch:mgmt-vrf:~$ systemctl stop snmpd.service
cumulus@switch:mgmt-vrf:~$ systemctl disable snmpd.service
cumulus@switch:mgmt-vrf:~$ ps aux | grep snmpd
cumulus@switch:mgmt-vrf:~$ 
cumulus@switch:mgmt-vrf:~$ systemctl start snmpd@mgmt.service
cumulus@switch:mgmt-vrf:~$ systemctl enable snmpd.service
cumulus@switch:mgmt-vrf:~$ systemctl status snmpd@mgmt.service
root@switch:mgmt-vrf:/home/cumulus# systemctl status snmpd@mgmt.
service
    snmpd@mgmt.service - Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP)
  Daemon.
   Loaded: loaded (/lib/systemd/system/snmpd.service;
  disabled)
   Drop-In: /run/systemd/generator/snmpd@.service.
d
  vrf.conf
    Active: active (running) since Thu 2017-12-07 20:05:41 UTC; 2min
  22s
 ago
  Main PID: 30880 (snmpd)
    CGroup: /system.slice/system-snmpd.slice/snmpd@mgmt.
service
  30880 /usr/sbin/snmpd -y -LS 0-4 d -Lf /dev/null -u snmp -g snmp -I -
-smux -p /run/snmpd.pid -f

Dec 07 20:05:41 cel-redxp-01 systemd[1]: Started Simple Network
Management Protocol (SNMP) Daemon..

cumulus@switch:mgmt-vrf:~$ ps aux | grep snmpd
snmp      30880  0.4  0.3  57176 12276 ?          Ss   20:05   0:00 /usr
/sbin/snmpd -y -LS 0-4 d -Lf /dev/null -u snmp -g snmp -I -smux -p
/run/snmpd.pid -f
```

## Configuring the agentAddress

As mentioned earlier, you need to configure the transport protocol, IP address and port where SNMP listens. In Cumulus Linux, the transport defaults to UDP, the IP address defaults to the localhost (127.0.0.1) and the port defaults to 161. If you want to change any of these settings, do the following:

1. Open the `/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf` file in a text editor, and edit the following line:

```
agentAddress udp:127.0.0.1:161
```



You can only specify one `agentAddress` line. If you want to listen on multiple IP addresses, use comma-separated addresses, like this:



```
agentAddress 10.10.10.10,44.44.44.44,127.0.0.1
```

- Save the file, then restart the `snmpd` service:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart snmpd.service
```

## Setting up the Custom Cumulus Networks MIBs

No changes are required in the `/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf` file on the switch, in order to support the custom Cumulus Networks MIBs. The following lines are already included by default:

```
view systemonly included .1.3.6.1.4.1.40310.1
view systemonly included .1.3.6.1.4.1.40310.2
sysObjectID 1.3.6.1.4.1.40310
pass_persist .1.3.6.1.4.1.40310.1 /usr/share/snmp/resq_pp.py
pass_persist .1.3.6.1.4.1.40310.2 /usr/share/snmp/cl_drop_cntrs_pp.py
```

However, several files need to be copied to the server, in order for the custom Cumulus MIB to be recognized on the destination NMS server.

- `/usr/share/snmp/mibs/Cumulus-Snmp-MIB.txt`
- `/usr/share/snmp/mibs/Cumulus-Counters-MIB.txt`
- `/usr/share/snmp/mibs/Cumulus-Resource-Query-MIB.txt`

## Setting the Community String

The `snmpd` authentication for versions 1 and 2 is disabled by default in Cumulus Linux. This password (called a community string) can be enabled by setting **rocommunity** (for read-only access) or **rwcommunity** (for read-write access). Setting a community string is required.

To enable read-only querying by a client:

- Open `/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf` in a text editor.
- To allow read-only access, uncomment the following line, then save the file:

```
rocommunity public default -V systemonly
```

The line can be broken down as follows:

Keyword	Meaning
rocommunity	Read-only community; <i>rwcommunity</i> is for read-write access.
public	Plain text password/community string.



Keyword	Meaning
	Cumulus Networks strongly recommends you change this password to something else.
default	The <i>default</i> keyword allows connections from any system. The <i>localhost</i> keyword allows requests only from the local host. A restricted source can either be a specific hostname (or address), or a subnet, represented as IP/MASK (like 10.10.10.0/255.255.255.0), or IP/BITS (like 10.10.10.0/24), or the IPv6 equivalents.
systemonly	The name of this particular SNMP view. This is a user-defined value.

3. Restart `snmpd`:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart snmpd.service
```

## Enabling SNMP Support for FRRouting

As of Cumulus Linux 3.3.1, SNMP is now supported for [FRRouting \(see page 603\)](#). To enable SNMP support for FRRouting, you need to:

- Configure [AgentX](#) (ASX) access in FRRouting
- Create an SNMP-specific `frr.conf` file
- Restart the SNMP and FRRouting services

Enabling FRRouting includes support for BGP. However, if you plan on using the BGP4 MIB, you need to expose .1.3.6.1.2.1.15 in the `/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf` file.



At this time, SNMP does not support monitoring BGP unnumbered neighbors.

Similarly, if you plan on using the OSPFv2 MIB, you need to expose .1.3.6.1.2.1.14 in the `/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf` file, and expose .1.3.6.1.2.1.191 for the OSPV3 MIB.

To enable SNMP support for FRRouting, do the following:

1. Configure AgentX access in FRRouting:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add routing agentx
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

2. Update the SNMP configuration to enable FRRouting to respond to SNMP requests. Open the `/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf` file in a text editor, and add the following lines:



```
agentAddress udp:161
rocommunity public default

# these next three lines configure agentx and allows FRRouting
# to respond to snmp requests.
master agentx
agentXSocket /run/agentx/master
agentXPerms 777 777
```



The rocommunity password is defined [above \(see page 845\)](#).

3. Optionally, you need to uncomment parts of `snmpd.conf` if you intend to use SNMP with the following MIBs:

- For the BGP4 MIB, uncomment the `view systemonly included .1.3.6.1.2.1.15` line below.
- For the OSPF MIB, uncomment the `view systemonly included .1.3.6.1.2.1.14` line below.
- For the OSPFV3 MIB, uncomment the `view systemonly included .1.3.6.1.2.1.191` line below.

```
# Note: FRRouting snmpd support has been reenabled.
# Please see FRRouting documentation for instructions
# on enabling AgentX functionality in FRRouting and
# also set agentxsocket and agentxperms at the bottom
# of this config file.
#
# Uncomment the following to enable OSPF, OSPFV3 and BGP4 MIBs
# The following line exposes OSPF-MIB in this view
# view systemonly included .1.3.6.1.2.1.14
# frrouting bgp
# The following line exposes BGP4-MIB in this view
# view systemonly included .1.3.6.1.2.1.15
# frrouting ospf6
# The following line exposes OSPFV3-MIB in this view
# view systemonly included .1.3.6.1.3.191
#
# This pass persist script bgp4_pp.py is deprecated. Please
enable
# AgentX support in FRRouting for BGP4-MIB support.
```

4. After you save the `snmpd.conf` file, create a file called `/etc/snmp/frr.conf` that contains the following line:

```
agentXSocket /run/agentx/master
```



- After you save this file, restart the `snmpd` and FRRouting services for these changes to take effect and to reload the FRRouting daemons with AgentX access:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart snmpd.service
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart frr.service
```

To verify the configuration, run `snmpwalk`. For example, if you have a running OSPF configuration with routes, you can check this OSPF-MIB first from the switch itself with:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo snmpwalk -v2c -cpublic localhost .
1.3.6.1.2.1.14
```

### *Enabling the .1.3.6.1.2.1 Range*

Some MIBs, including storage information, are not included by default in `snmpd.conf` in Cumulus Linux. This results in some default views on common network tools (like `librenms`) to return less than optimal data. More MIBs can be included, by enabling all the .1.3.6.1.2.1 range. This simplifies the configuration file, removing concern that any required MIBs will be missed by the monitoring system. Various MIBs were added to version 3.0 and include the following: ENTITY and ENTITY-SENSOR MIB and parts of the BRIDGE-MIB and Q-BRIDGE-MIBs. These are included in the default configuration.



The view of the BRIDGE-MIB and Q-BRIDGE-MIB are commented out.



This configuration grants access to a large number of MIBs, including all MIB2 MIBs, which could reveal more data than expected. In addition to being a security vulnerability, it could consume more CPU resources.

To enable the .1.3.6.1.2.1 range:

- Open `/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf` in a text editor.
- Make sure the following lines are included in the configuration:

```
#####
#
# ACCESS CONTROL
#
#
# system
view systemonly included .1.3.6.1.2.1
# frrouting ospf6
view systemonly included .1.3.6.1.3.102
# lldpd (Note: lldpd must be restarted with the -x option
```



```
#      configured in order to send info to snmpd via Agent X
view  systemonly included   .1.0.8802.1.1.2
# Cumulus specific
view  systemonly included   .1.3.6.1.4.1.40310.1
view  systemonly included   .1.3.6.1.4.1.40310.2
```

3. Restart snmpd:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart snmpd.service
```

## Configuring SNMPv3

SNMPv3 is often used to enable authentication and encryption, as community strings in versions 1 and 2c are sent in plaintext. SNMPv3 usernames are added to the `/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf` file, along with plaintext authentication and encryption pass phrases.

The NCLU command structures for configuring SNMP user passwords are:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add snmp-server username <username> [auth-none]
| [(auth-md5 | auth-sha) <auth-password>]
cumulus@switch:~$ net add snmp-server username <username> auth-(none
| sha | md5) (oid <OID> | view <view>)
```

An example is shown below, defining five users, each with a different combination of authentication and encryption:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add snmp-server username user1 auth-none
cumulus@switch:~$ net add snmp-server username user2 auth-md5
user2password
cumulus@switch:~$ net add snmp-server username user3 auth-md5
user3password encrypt-des user3encryption
cumulus@switch:~$ net add snmp-server username user666 auth-sha
user666password encrypt-aes user666encryption
cumulus@switch:~$ net add snmp-server username user999 auth-md5
user999password encrypt-des user999encryption
cumulus@switch:~$ net add snmp-server username user1 auth-none oid 1.3
.6.1.2.1
cumulus@switch:~$ net add snmp-server username user1 auth-none oid
system
cumulus@switch:~$ net add snmp-server username user2 auth-md5
test1234 view testview oid 1.3.6.1.2.1
cumulus@switch:~$ net add snmp-server username user3 auth-sha
testshax encrypt-aes testaesx oid 1.3.6.1.2.1
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```



```
# simple no auth user
#createUser user1

# user with MD5 authentication
#createUser user2 MD5 user2password

# user with MD5 for auth and DES for encryption
#createUser user3 MD5 user3password DES user3encryption

# user666 with SHA for authentication and AES for encryption
createUser user666 SHA user666password AES user666encryption

# user999 with MD5 for authentication and DES for encryption
createUser user999 MD5 user999password DES user999encryption

# restrict users to certain OIDs
# (Note: creating rouser or rwuser will give
# access regardless of the createUser command above. However,
# createUser without rouser or rwuser will not provide any access).
rouser user1 noauth 1.3.6.1.2.1
rouser user2 auth 1.3.6.1.2.1
rwuser user3 priv 1.3.6.1.2.1
rwuser user666
rwuser user999
```

After configuring user passwords and restarting the `snmpd` daemon, the user access can be checked with a client.



The `snmp` Debian package contains `snmpget`, `snmpwalk`, and other programs that are useful for checking daemon functionality from the switch itself or from another workstation.

The following commands check the access for each user defined above from the localhost:

```
# check user1 which has no authentication or encryption (NoauthNoPriv)
snmpget -v 3 -u user1 -l NoauthNoPriv localhost 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.1.0
snmpwalk -v 3 -u user1 -l NoauthNoPriv localhost 1.3.6.1.2.1.1

# check user2 which has authentication but no encryption (authNoPriv)
snmpget -v 3 -u user2 -l authNoPriv -a MD5 -A user2password localhost
1.3.6.1.2.1.1.1.0
snmpget -v 3 -u user2 -l authNoPriv -a MD5 -A user2password localhost
1.3.6.1.2.1.2.1.0
snmpwalk -v 3 -u user2 -l authNoPriv -a MD5 -A user2password
localhost 1.3.6.1.2.1

# check user3 which has both authentication and encryption (authPriv)
snmpget -v 3 -u user3 -l authPriv -a MD5 -A user3password -x DES -X
user3encryption localhost .1.3.6.1.2.1.1.1.0
```

```
snmpwalk -v 3 -u user3 -l authPriv -a MD5 -A user3password -x DES -X
user3encryption localhost .1.3.6.1.2.1
snmpwalk -v 3 -u user666 -l authPriv -a SHA -x AES -A user666password
-X user666encryption localhost 1.3.6.1.2.1.1
snmpwalk -v 3 -u user999 -l authPriv -a MD5 -x DES -A user999password
-X user999encryption localhost 1.3.6.1.2.1.1
```

A slightly more secure method of configuring SNMPv3 users without creating cleartext passwords is the following:

1. Install the `net-snmp-config` script that is in `libsntp-dev` package:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get update
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get install libsnmp-dev
```

2. Stop the daemon:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl stop snmpd.service
```

3. Use the `net-snmp-config` command to create two users, one with MD5 and DES, and the next with SHA and AES.

**⚠** The minimum password length is 8 characters and the arguments `-a` and `-x` to `net-snmp-config` have different meanings than they do for `snmpwalk`.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo net-snmp-config --create-snmpv3-user -a
md5authpass -x desprivpass -A MD5 -X DES userMD5withDES
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo net-snmp-config --create-snmpv3-user -a
shaauthpass -x aesprivpass -A SHA -X AES userSHAwithAES
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl start snmpd.service
```

This adds a `createUser` command in `/var/lib/snmp/snmpd.conf`. Do **not** edit this file by hand, unless you are removing usernames. It also adds the `rwuser` in `/usr/share/snmp/snmpd.conf`. You may want to edit this file and restrict access to certain parts of the MIB by adding `noauth`, `auth` or `priv` to allow unauthenticated access, require authentication or to enforce use of encryption, respectively.

The `snmpd` daemon reads the information from the `/var/lib/snmp/snmpd.conf` file and then the line is removed (eliminating the storage of the master password for that user) and replaced with the key that is derived from it (using the EnginID). This key is a localized key, so that if it is stolen it cannot be used to access other agents. To remove the two users `userMD5withDES` and `userSHAwithAES`, you need simply stop the `snmpd` daemon and edit the files `/var/lib/snmp/snmpd.conf` and `/usr/share/snmp/snmpd.conf`. Simply remove the lines containing the username. Then restart the `snmpd` daemon as in step 3 above.

From a client, you would access the MIB with the correct credentials. (Again, note that the roles of `-x`, `-a` and `-X` and `-A` are reversed on the client side as compared with the `net-snmp-config` command used above.)



```
snmpwalk -v 3 -u userMD5withDES -l authPriv -a MD5 -x DES -A  
md5authpass -X desprivpass localhost 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.1  
snmpwalk -v 3 -u userSHAwithAES -l authPriv -a SHA -x AES -A  
shaauthpass -X aesprivpass localhost 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.1
```

## snmpwalk a Switch from Another Linux Device

One of the most important ways to troubleshoot is to `snmpwalk` the switch from another Linux device that can reach the Cumulus Linux switch.



`snmpwalk` does not show enterprise MIBs by default (from the 1.3.6.1.4.1 tree); these need to be explicitly named.

For this demonstration, another switch running Cumulus Linux within the network is used.

1. Open `/etc/apt/sources.list` in an editor.
2. Add the following line, and save the file:

```
deb http://ftp.us.debian.org/debian/ jessie main non-free
```

3. Update the switch:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get update
```

4. Many SNMP clients (`snmpwalk`, `snmpget` and `snmpgetnext`) as well as the SNMP agent (`snmpd`) can benefit from having MIBs installed.



Enabling monitoring for traps with **defaultMonitors** and **monitor** (when referring to OIDs by name) require MIBs to be installed on the switch.

Install the `snmp` and `snmp-mibs-downloader` packages:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get install snmp snmp-mibs-  
downloader
```

5. Verify that the "mibs :" line is commented out in `/etc/snmp/snmp.conf`:

```
#  
# As the snmp packages come without MIB files due to license  
# reasons, loading
```



```
# of MIBs is disabled by default. If you added the MIBs you can  
reenable  
# loading them by commenting out the following line.  
#mibs :
```

6. Perform an `snmpwalk` on the switch. The switch running `snmpd` in the demonstration is using IP address 192.168.0.111. It is possible to `snmpwalk` the switch from itself. Run the following command, which rules out an SNMP problem against a networking problem.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ snmpwalk -c public -v2c 192.168.0.111 .1
```

Here is some sample output:

```
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.2 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:80  
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.3 = STRING: 0:e0:ec:25:b8:54  
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.4 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:81  
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.5 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:82  
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.6 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:83  
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.7 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:84  
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.8 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:85  
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.9 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:86  
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.10 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:87  
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.11 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:88  
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.12 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:89  
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.13 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:8a  
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.14 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:8b  
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.15 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:8c  
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.16 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:8d  
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.17 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:8e  
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.18 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:8f  
IF-MIB::ifPhysAddress.19 = STRING: 74:e6:e2:f5:a2:90
```

Any information gathered here should verify that `snmpd` is running correctly on the Cumulus Linux side, reducing locations where a problem may reside.

### Troubleshooting Tips Table for `snmpwalks`

Run <code>snmpwalk</code> from	If it works	If it does not work
<b>switch</b> (switch to monitor)	<code>snmpd</code> is serving information correctly. The problem resides somewhere else. For example, network connectivity, or Prism misconfiguration.	Is <code>snmpd</code> misconfigured or installed incorrectly?

Run <code>snmpwalk</code> from	If it works	If it does not work
<b>switch2</b> (another Cumulus Linux switch in the network)	<p><code>snmpd</code> is serving information correctly and network reachability works between <b>switch</b> and <b>switch2</b>.</p> <p>The problem resides somewhere else. For example, Prism cannot reach <b>switch</b>, or there is a Prism misconfiguration.</p>	<p>Network connectivity is not able to grab information? Is there an <code>iptables</code> rule blocking? Is the <code>snmpwalk</code> being run correctly?</p>
<a href="#">Nutanix Prism CLI (see page 869)</a> (SSH to the cluster IP address)	<p><code>snmpd</code> is serving information correctly and network reachability works between <b>switch</b> and the <b>Nutanix Appliance</b>.</p> <p>The problem resides somewhere else. For example, the GUI might be misconfigured.</p>	<p>Is the right community name being used in the GUI? Is <code>snmp v2c</code> being used?</p>

## SNMP Traps

### Generating Event Notification Traps

The Net-SNMP agent provides a method to generate SNMP trap events via the Distributed Management (DisMan) Event MIB for various system events, including:

- Link up/down.
- Exceeding the temperature sensor threshold, CPU load or memory threshold.
- Other SNMP MIBs.

In order to enable specific types of traps, you need to create the following configurations in `/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf`.

### Defining Access Credentials

An SNMPv3 username is required to authorize the DisMan service even though you are not configuring SNMPv3 here. The example `snmpd.conf` configuration shown below creates `trapusername` as the username using the `createUser` command. `iquerySecName` defines the default SNMPv3 username to be used when making internal queries to retrieve monitored expressions. `rouser` specifies which username should be used for these SNMPv3 queries. All three are required for `snmpd` to retrieve information and send traps (even with the `monitor` command shown below in the examples). Add the following lines to your `/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf` configuration file:

```
createUser trapusername
iquerySecName trapusername
rouser trapusername
```



`iquerySecName` specifies the default SNMPv3 username to be used when making internal queries to retrieve any necessary information — either for evaluating the monitored expression or building a notification payload. These internal queries always use SNMPv3, even if normal

querying of the agent is done using SNMPv1 or SNMPv2c. Note that this user must also be explicitly created via `createUser` and given appropriate access rights, for `rouser`, for example. The `iquerySecName` directive is purely concerned with defining which user should be used, not with actually setting this user up.

## Defining Trap Receivers

The following configuration defines the trap receiver IP address where SNMPv2 traps are sent:

```
trap2sink 192.168.1.1 public
# For SNMPv1 Traps, use
# trapsink 192.168.1.1 public
```



Although the traps are sent to an SNMPv2 receiver, the SNMPv3 user is still required. Starting with Net-SNMP 5.3, `snmptrapd` no longer accepts all traps by default. `snmptrapd` must be configured with authorized SNMPv1/v2c community strings and/or SNMPv3 users. Non-authorized traps/informs will be dropped. Please refer to the [snmptrapd.conf\(5\) manual page](#) for details.



It is possible to define multiple trap receivers and to use the domain name instead of an IP address in the `trap2sink` directive.

Once configured, restart the `snmpd` service to apply the changes.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart snmpd.service
```

## SNMP Version 3 Trap and Inform Messages

You can configure SNMPv3 trap and inform messages with the `trapsess` configuration command. Inform messages are traps that are acknowledged by the receiving trap daemon. You configure inform messages with the `-ci` parameter. You must specify the EnginID of the receiving trap server with the `-e` field.

### SNMPv3 TRAP/INFORM

```
trapsess -Ci -e 0x80ccff112233445566778899 -v3 -l authPriv -u
trapuser1 -a MD5 -A trapuser1password -x DES -X trapuser1encryption
192.168.1.1
```

The SNMP trap receiving daemon must have usernames, authentication passwords, and encryption passwords created with its own EnginID. You must configure this trap server EnginID in the switch `snmpd` daemon sending the trap and inform messages. You specify the level of authentication and encryption for SNMPv3 trap and inform messages with `-l` (`NoauthNoPriv`, `authNoPriv`, or `authPriv`).



You can define multiple trap receivers and use the domain name instead of an IP address in the `trap2sink` directive.

After you complete the configuration, restart the `snmpd` service to apply the changes:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart snmpd.service
```

### Sourcing Traps from a Different Source IP Address

When client SNMP programs (such as `snmpget`, `snmpwalk` or `snmptrap`) are run from the command line, or when `snmpd` is configured to send a trap (based on `snmpd.conf`), you can configure a `clientaddr` in `snmp.conf` that allow the SNMP client programs or `snmpd` (for traps) to source requests from a different source IP address.



`snmptrap`, `snmpget`, `snmpwalk` and `snmpd` itself must be able to bind to this address.

For more information, read the the `snmp.conf` man page:

```
clientaddr [<transport-specifier>:]<transport-address>
            specifies the source address to be used by command-line
applica
            tions when sending SNMP requests. See snmpcmd(1) for
more infor
            mation about the format of addresses.
            This value is also used by snmpd when generating
notifications.
```

### Monitoring Fans, Power Supplies and Transformers

The usual behavior of an SNMP agent (`snmpd`) is to wait for incoming SNMP requests and respond to them. If no requests are received, an agent will typically not initiate any actions. However, various commands can configure `snmpd` to send traps based on preconfigured settings (`load`, `file`, `proc`, `disk` or `swap` commands) or customized `monitor` commands.

From the `snmpd.conf` man page, the `monitor` command is defined this way:

```
monitor [OPTIONS] NAME EXPRESSION

            defines a MIB object to monitor. If the EXPRESSION
condition holds then
            this will trigger the corresponding event, and either
send a notification or
```

apply a SET assignment (or both). Note that the event will only be triggered once, when the expression first matches. This monitor entry will not fire again until the monitored condition first becomes false, and then matches again. NAME is an administrative name for this expression, and is used for indexing the mteTriggerTable (and related tables).

Note also that such monitors use an internal SNMPv3 request to retrieve the values

being monitored (even if normal agent queries typically use SNMPv1 or SNMPv2c).

See the iquerySecName token described above.

#### EXPRESSION

There are three types of monitor expression supported by the Event MIB - existence, boolean and threshold tests.

`OID | ! OID | != OID`

defines an `existence(0)` monitor test. A bare OID specifies a `present(0)` test,

which will fire when (an instance of) the monitored OID is created. An expression

of the form `! OID` specifies an `absent(1)` test, which will fire when the monitored

`OID` is deleted. An expression of the form `!= OID` specifies a `changed(2)` test,

which will fire whenever the monitored value(s) change. Note that there must be whitespace before the OID token.

`OID OP VALUE`

defines a `boolean(1)` monitor test. OP should be one of the defined comparison operators

`(!=, ==, <, <=, >, >=)` and VALUE should be an integer value to compare against. Note that

there must be whitespace around the OP token. A comparison such as `OID !=0` will not be handled correctly.

`OID MIN MAX [DMIN DMAX]`

defines a `threshold(2)` monitor test. MIN and MAX are integer values, specifying

lower and upper thresholds. If the value of the monitored OID falls below the lower

threshold (MIN) or rises above the upper threshold (MAX), then the monitor entry will trigger the corresponding event.

Note that the rising threshold event will only be re-armed when the monitored value falls below the lower threshold (MIN). Similarly, the falling threshold event will be re-armed by the upper threshold (MAX).

The optional parameters DMIN and DMAX configure a pair of similar threshold tests, but working with the delta differences between successive sample values.

#### OPTIONS

There are various options to control the behaviour of the monitored expression. These include:

-D indicates that the expression should be evaluated using delta differences between sample values (rather than the values themselves).  
-d OID or -di OID specifies a discontinuity marker for validating delta differences. A -di object instance will be used exactly as given. A -d object will have the instance subidentifiers from the corresponding (wildcarded) expression object appended. If the -I flag is specified, then there is no difference between these two options. This option also implies -D.

-e EVENT specifies the event to be invoked when this monitor entry is triggered. If this option is not given, the monitor entry will generate one of the standard notifications defined in the DISMAN-EVENT-MIB.

-I indicates that the monitored expression should be applied to the specified OID as a single instance. By default, the OID will be treated as a wildcarded object, and the monitor expanded to cover all matching instances.

-i OID or -o OID define additional varbinds to be added to the notification payload when this monitor trigger fires. For a wildcarded expression, the suffix of the matched instance will be added to any OIDs specified using -o, while OIDs specified using -i will be treated as exact instances. If the -I flag is specified, then there is no difference between these two options.

See strictDisman for details of the ordering of notification payloads.

-r FREQUENCY

monitors the given expression every FREQUENCY, where FREQUENCY is in seconds or optionally suffixed by one of s (for seconds), m (for minutes), h (for hours), d (for days), or w (for weeks). By default, the expression will be evaluated every 600s (10 minutes).

-S indicates that the monitor expression should not be evaluated when the agent first starts up.

The first evaluation will be done once the first repeat interval has expired.

-s indicates that the monitor expression should be evaluated when the agent first starts up.

This is the default behaviour.

Note: Notifications triggered by this initial evaluation will be sent before the coldStart trap.

-u SECNAME

specifies a security name to use for scanning the local host, instead of the default

iquerySecName. Once again, this user must be explicitly created and given suitable access rights.

`snmpd` can be configured to monitor the operational status of an Entity MIB or Entity-Sensor MIB. The operational status, given as a value of *ok(1)*, *unavailable(2)* or *nonoperational(3)*, can be determined by adding the following example configuration to `/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf`, and adjusting the values:

- Using the `entPhySensorOperStatus` integer:

```
# without installing extra MIBS we can check the check Fan1
status
# if the Fan1 index is 100011001, monitor this specific OID (-I)
every 10 seconds (-r), and defines additional information to be
included in the trap (-o).
monitor -I -r 10 -o 1.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.7.100011001 "Fan1
Not OK" 1.3.6.1.2.1.99.1.1.1.5.100011001 > 1
# Any Entity Status non OK (greater than 1)
monitor -r 10 -o 1.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.7 "Sensor Status
Failure" 1.3.6.1.2.1.99.1.1.1.5 > 1
```

- Using the OID name:

```
# for a specific fan called Fan1 with an index 100011001
monitor -I -r 10 -o entPhysicalName.100011001 "Fan1 Not OK"
entPhySensorOperStatus.100011001 > 1
# for any Entity Status not OK ( greater than 1)
monitor -r 10 -o entPhysicalName "Sensor Status Failure"
entPhySensorOperStatus > 1
```



The OID name can be used if the `snmp-mibs-downloader` package is installed.



The `entPhySensorOperStatus` integer can be found by walking the `entPhysicalName` table.

- To get all sensor information, run `snmpwalk` on the `entPhysicalName` table. For example:

```
cumulus@leaf01:~$ snmpwalk -v 2c -cp public localhost .
1.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.7
iso.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.7.100000001 = STRING: "PSU1Temp1"
iso.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.7.100000002 = STRING: "PSU2Temp1"
iso.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.7.100000003 = STRING: "Temp1"
iso.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.7.100000004 = STRING: "Temp2"
iso.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.7.100000005 = STRING: "Temp3"
iso.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.7.100000006 = STRING: "Temp4"
iso.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.7.100000007 = STRING: "Temp5"
iso.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.7.100011001 = STRING: "Fan1"
iso.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.7.100011002 = STRING: "Fan2"
iso.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.7.100011003 = STRING: "Fan3"
iso.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.7.100011004 = STRING: "Fan4"
iso.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.7.100011005 = STRING: "Fan5"
iso.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.7.100011006 = STRING: "Fan6"
iso.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.7.100011007 = STRING: "PSU1Fan1"
iso.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.7.100011008 = STRING: "PSU2Fan1"
iso.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.7.110000001 = STRING: "PSU1"
iso.3.6.1.2.1.47.1.1.1.1.7.110000002 = STRING: "PSU2"
```

## Enabling MIB to OID Translation

MIB names can be used instead of OIDs, by installing the `snmp-mibs-downloader`, to download SNMP MIBs to the switch prior to enabling traps. This greatly improves the readability of the `snmpd.conf` file.

1. Open `/etc/apt/sources.list` in a text editor.
2. Add the `non-free` repository, and save the file:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo deb http://ftp.us.debian.org/debian/
jessie main non-free
```

3. Update the switch:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get update
```

4. Install the `snmp-mibs-downloader`:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo -E apt-get install snmp-mibs-downloader
```

5. Open the /etc/snmp/snmp.conf file to verify that the mibs : line is commented out:

```
#  
# As the snmp packages come without MIB files due to license  
reasons, loading  
# of MIBs is disabled by default. If you added the MIBs you can  
reenable  
# loading them by commenting out the following line.  
#mibs :
```

6. Open the /etc/default/snmpd file to verify that the export MIBS= line is commented out:

```
# This file controls the activity of snmpd and snmptrapd  
  
# Don't load any MIBs by default.  
# You might comment this lines once you have the MIBs Downloaded.  
#export MIBS=
```

7. Once the configuration has been confirmed, remove or comment out the non-free repository in /etc/apt/sources.list.

```
#deb http://ftp.us.debian.org/debian/ jessie main non-free
```

## Configuring Link Up/Down Notifications

The linkUpDownNotifications directive is used to configure link up/down notifications when the operational status of the link changes.

```
linkUpDownNotifications yes
```



The default frequency for checking link up/down is 60 seconds. The default frequency can be changed using the monitor directive directly instead of the linkUpDownNotifications directive. See `man snmpd.conf` for details.

## Configuring Temperature Notifications

Temperature sensor information for each available sensor is maintained in the the lmSensors MIB. Each platform may contain a different number of temperature sensors. The example below generates a trap event when any temperature sensors exceeds a threshold of 68 degrees (centigrade). It monitors each lmTempSensorsValue. When the threshold value is checked and exceeds the lmTempSensorsValue, a

trap is generated. The `-o lmTempSensorsDevice` option is used to instruct SNMP to also include the `lmTempSensorsDevice` MIB in the generated trap. The default frequency for the `monitor` directive is 600 seconds. The default frequency may be changed using the `-r` option.:

```
monitor lmTemSensor -o lmTempSensorsDevice lmTempSensorsValue > 68000
```

Alternatively, temperature sensors may be monitored individually. To monitor the sensors individually, first use the `sensors` command to determine which sensors are available to be monitored on the platform.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo sensors  
  
CY8C3245-i2c-4-2e  
Adapter: i2c-0-mux (chan_id 2)  
fan5: 7006 RPM (min = 2500 RPM, max = 23000 RPM)  
fan6: 6955 RPM (min = 2500 RPM, max = 23000 RPM)  
fan7: 6799 RPM (min = 2500 RPM, max = 23000 RPM)  
fan8: 6750 RPM (min = 2500 RPM, max = 23000 RPM)  
temp1: +34.0 C (high = +68.0 C)  
temp2: +28.0 C (high = +68.0 C)  
temp3: +33.0 C (high = +68.0 C)  
temp4: +31.0 C (high = +68.0 C)  
temp5: +23.0 C (high = +68.0 C)
```

Configure a `monitor` command for the specific sensor using the `-I` option. The `-I` option indicates that the monitored expression is applied to a single instance. In this example, there are five temperature sensors available. The following monitor directive can be used to monitor only temperature sensor three at five minute intervals.

```
monitor -I -r 300 lmTemSensor3 -o lmTempSensorsDevice.3  
lmTempSensorsValue.3 > 68000
```

## Configuring Free Memory Notifications

You can monitor free memory using the following directives. The example below generates a trap when free memory drops below 1,000,000KB. The free memory trap also includes the amount of total real memory:

```
monitor MemFreeTotal -o memTotalReal memTotalFree < 1000000
```

## Configuring Processor Load Notifications

To monitor CPU load for 1, 5 or 15 minute intervals, use the `load` directive in conjunction with the `monitor` directive. The following example will generate a trap when the 1 minute interval reaches 12%, the 5 minute interval reaches 10% or the 15 minute interval reaches 5%.



```
load 12 10 5
```

## Configuring Disk Utilization Notifications

To monitor disk utilization for all disks, use the `includeAllDisks` directive in conjunction with the `monitor` directive. The example code below generates a trap when a disk is 99% full:

```
includeAllDisks 1%
monitor -r 60 -o dskPath -o DiskErrMsg "dskTable" diskErrorFlag !=0
```

## Configuring Authentication Notifications

To generate authentication failure traps, use the `authtrapenable` directive:

```
authtrapenable 1
```

## *snmptrapd.conf*

To **receive** SNMP traps, the Net-SNMP trap daemon can be used on the switch. The configuration file, `/etc/snmp/snmptrapd.conf`, is used to configure how **incoming** traps should be processed. Starting with release 5.3, it is necessary to explicitly specify who is authorized to send traps and informs to the notification receiver (and what types of processing these are allowed to trigger). There are currently three types of processing that can be specified:

- *log*: Logs the details of the notification, in a specified file, to standard output (or stderr), or via syslog (or similar).
- *execute*: Passes the details of the trap to a specified handler program, including embedded Perl.
- *net*: Forwards the trap to another notification receiver.

Most commonly, this configuration typically is *log,execute,net* to cover any style of processing for a particular category of notification. But it is possible (even desirable) to limit certain notification sources to selected processing only.

`authCommunity TYPES COMMUNITY [ SOURCE [ OID | -v VIEW ] ]` authorizes traps and SNMPv2c INFORM requests with the specified community to trigger the types of processing listed. By default, this allows any notification using this community to be processed. The SOURCE field can be used to specify that the configuration should only apply to notifications received from particular sources. For more information about specific configuration options within the file, look at the `snmpd.conf(5)` man page with the following command:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ man 5 snmptrapd.conf
```

```
#####
#####
```



```
#  
# EXAMPLE-trap.conf:  
#   An example configuration file for configuring the Net-SNMP  
snmptrapd agent.  
#  
#####  
####  
#  
# This file is intended to only be an example. If, however, you want  
# to use it, it should be placed in /etc/snmp/snmptrapd.conf.  
# When the snmptrapd agent starts up, this is where it will look for  
it.  
#  
# All lines beginning with a '#' are comments and are intended for you  
# to read. All other lines are configuration commands for the agent.  
  
#  
# PLEASE: read the snmptrapd.conf(5) manual page as well!  
#  
# this is the default (port 162) and defines the listening  
# protocol and address (e.g. udp:10.10.10.10)  
snmpTrapdAddr localhost  
#  
# defines the actions and the community string  
authCommunity log,execute,net public
```

## Supported MIBs

Below are the MIBs supported by Cumulus Linux, as well as suggested uses for them. The overall Cumulus Linux MIB is defined in `/usr/share/snmp/mibs/Cumulus-Snmp-MIB.txt`.

MIB Name	Suggested Uses
BRIDGE and Q-BRIDGE	The dot1dBBasePortEntry and dot1dBBasePortIfIndex tables in the BRIDGE-MIB and dot1qBase, dot1qFdbEntry, dot1qTpFdbEntry, dot1qTpFdbStatus, and the dot1qVlanStaticName tables in the Q-BRIDGE-MIB tables. You must uncomment the <code>bridge_pp.py pass_persist</code> script in <code>/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf</code> .
BGP4, OSPF, OSPFv3, RIPv2	FRouting SNMP support may be enabled to provide support for OSPF-MIB (RFC-1850), OSPFv3-MIB (RFC-5643), and BGP4-MIB (RFC-4273). To enable this support, see the <a href="#">FRouting section (see page 846)</a> above.
CUMULUS-COUNTERS-MIB	Discard counters: Cumulus Linux also includes its own counters MIB, defined in <code>/usr/share/snmp/mibs/Cumulus-Counters-MIB.txt</code> . It has the OID .1.3.6.1.4.1.40310.2
CUMULUS-RESOURCE-QUERY-MIB	



MIB Name	Suggested Uses
	Cumulus Linux includes its own resource utilization MIB, which is similar to using <code>c1-resource-query</code> . It monitors L3 entries by host, route, nexthops, ECMP groups and L2 MAC/BPDUs. The MIB is defined in <code>/usr/share/snmp/mibs/Cumulus-Resource-Query-MIB.txt</code> , and has the OID <code>.1.3.6.1.4.1.40310.1</code> .
CUMULUS-POE-MIB	The Cumulus Networks custom <a href="#">Power over Ethernet (see page 194)</a> PoE MIB defined in <code>/usr/share/snmp/mibs/Cumulus-POE-MIB.txt</code> . For devices that provide PoE, this provides users with the system wide power information in <code>poeSystemValues</code> as well as per interface <code>PoeObjectsEntry</code> values for the <code>poeObjectsTable</code> . Most of this information comes from the <code>poectl</code> command. This MIB is enabled by uncommenting the following line in <code>/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf</code> :
	<pre>#pass_persist .1.3.6.1.4.1.40310.3 /usr/share/snmp /cl_poe_pp.py</pre>
DISMAN-EVENT	Trap monitoring
ENTITY	From RFC 4133, the temperature sensors, fan sensors, power sensors, and ports are covered.
ENTITY-SENSOR	Physical sensor information (temperature, fan, and power supply) from RFC 3433.
HOST-RESOURCES	Users, storage, interfaces, process info, run parameters
IEEE8023-LAG-MIB	Implementation of the IEEE 8023-LAG-MIB includes the <code>dot3adAggTable</code> and <code>dot3adAggPortListTable</code> tables. To enable this, edit <code>/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf</code> and uncomment or add the following lines:
	<pre>view systemonly included .1.2.840.10006.300.43 pass_persist .1.2.840.10006.300.43 /usr/share/snmp /ieee8023_lag_pp.py</pre>
IF-MIB	Interface description, type, MTU, speed, MAC, admin, operation status, counters
	<p><b>!</b> The IF-MIB cache is disabled by default. To enable the counter to reflect traffic statistics, remove the <code>-y</code> option from the <code>SNMPDOPTS</code> line in the <code>/etc/default/snmpd</code> file. The example below first shows the original line, commented out, then the modified line without the <code>-y</code> option:</p>



MIB Name	Suggested Uses
	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ cat /etc/default/snmpd # SNMPDOPTS='-y -LS 0-4 d -Lf /dev/null -u snmp -g snmp -I -smux -p /run/snmpd.pid' SNMPDOPTS='-LS 0-4 d -Lf /dev/null -u snmp -g snmp -I -smux -p /run/snmpd.pid'</pre>
IP (includes ICMP)	IPv4, IPv4 addresses, counters, netmasks
IPv6	IPv6 counters
IP-FORWARD	IP routing table
LLDP	L2 neighbor info from <code>lldpd</code> (note, you need to <a href="#">enable the SNMP subagent (see page 304)</a> in LLDP). <code>lldpd</code> needs to be started with the <code>-x</code> option to enable connectivity to <code>snmpd</code> (AgentX).
LM-SENSORS MIB	Fan speed, temperature sensor values, voltages. This is deprecated since the ENTITY-SENSOR MIB has been added.
NET-SNMP-AGENT	Agent timers, user, group config
NET-SNMP-EXTEND	Agent timers, user, group config
NET-SNMP-EXTEND-MIB	See <a href="#">this knowledge base article</a> on extending NET-SNMP in Cumulus Linux to include data from power supplies, fans and temperature sensors.
NET-SNMP-VACM	Agent timers, user, group config
NOTIFICATION-LOG	Local logging
SNMP-FRAMEWORK	Users, access
SNMP-MPD	Users, access
SNMP-TARGET	



MIB Name	Suggested Uses
SNMP-USER-BASED-SM	Users, access
SNMP-VIEW-BASED-ACM	Users, access
SNMPv2	SNMP counters. For information on exposing CPU and memory information via SNMP, see this <a href="#">knowledge base article</a> .
TCP	TCP related information
UCD-SNMP	System memory, load, CPU, disk IO
UDP	UDP related information



The ENTITY MIB does not currently show the chassis information in Cumulus Linux.

## About Pass Persist Scripts

The pass persist scripts in Cumulus Linux use the [pass\\_persist extension](#) to Net-SNMP. The scripts are stored in `/usr/share/snmp` and include:

- `bgp4_pp.py`
- `bridge_pp.py`
- `cl_drop_cntrs_pp.py`
- `cl_poe_pp.py`
- `entity_pp.py`
- `entity_sensor_pp.py`
- `ieee8023_lag_pp.py`
- `resq_pp.py`
- `snmpifAlias_pp.py`
- `sysDescr_pass.py`

All the scripts are enabled by default in Cumulus Linux, except for the `bgp4_pp.py` and `cl_poe_pp.py` scripts:

- `bgp4_pp.py` is now handled by [FRRouting \(see page 603\)](#) instead of Quagga, so monitoring has changed accordingly.
- `cl_poe_pp.py` is disabled by default as only some platforms that Cumulus Linux supports are capable of doing [Power over Ethernet \(see page 194\)](#).



## Troubleshooting

The following commands can be used to troubleshoot potential SNMP issues:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show snmp-server
status
Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Daemon.

-----
-----
-----
Current Status                  failed (failed)
Reload Status                   enabled
Listening IP Addresses          localhost 9.9.9.9
Main snmpd PID                 0
Version 1 and 2c Community String Configured
Version 3 Usernames             Not Configured
Last Logs (with Errors)        -- Logs begin at Thu 2017-08-03 16:
                               23:05 UTC, end at Fri 2017-08-04 18:17:24 UTC. --
                               Aug 04 18:17:19 cel-redxp-01 snmpd[8389]: Error opening specified endpoint "9.9.9.9"
                               Aug 04 18:17:19 cel-redxp-01 snmpd[8389]: Server Exiting with code 1
-----
```

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show configuration snmp-
server
snmp-server
  listening-address 127.0.0.1
  readonly-community public access default
  readonly-community allpass access any
  readonly-community temp2 access 1.1.1.1
  readonly-community temp2 access 2.2.2.2
  trap-destination 1.1.1.1 community-password public version 2c
  trap-link-up check-frequency 10
  trap-snmp-auth-failures
```

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show configuration commands
...
net add snmp-server listening-address all
net add snmp-server readonly-community allpass access any
net add snmp-server readonly-community temp2 access 1.1.1.1
net add snmp-server readonly-community temp2 access 2.2.2.2
```



```
net add snmp-server trap-destination 1.1.1.1 community-password public
  version 2c
net add snmp-server trap-link-up check-frequency 10
net add snmp-server trap-snmp-auth-failures
...
```

## Using Nutanix Prism as a Monitoring Tool

Nutanix Prism is a graphical user interface (GUI) for managing infrastructure and virtual environments. In order to use it, you need to take special steps within Cumulus Linux before you can configure Prism.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Configuring Cumulus Linux (see page 869)
- Configuring Nutanix (see page 870)
- Switch Information Displayed on Nutanix Prism (see page 873)
- Troubleshooting a Nutanix Node (see page 874)
- Enabling LLDP/CDP on VMware ESXi (Hypervisor on Nutanix) (see page 875)
  - Enabling LLDP/CDP on Nutanix Acropolis (Hypervisor on Nutanix Acropolis) (see page 876)
- Troubleshooting Connections without LLDP or CDP (see page 876)

### Configuring Cumulus Linux

1. SSH to the Cumulus Linux switch that needs to be configured, replacing [switch] below as appropriate:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ ssh cumulus@[switch]
```

2. Confirm the switch is running Cumulus Linux 2.5.5 or newer:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show system

Penguin Arctica 4806XP
Cumulus Version 3.4.0
Build: Cumulus Linux 3.4.0

Chipset: Broadcom Trident2 BCM56854

Port Config: 48 x 10G-SFP+ & 6 x 40G-QSFP+

CPU: (x86_64) Intel Atom C2558 2.40GHz

Uptime: 4 days, 20:53:49
```

3. Open the `/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf` file in an editor.
4. Uncomment the following 3 lines in the `/etc/snmp/snmpd.conf` file, and save the file:

- `bridge_pp.py`

```
pass_persist .1.3.6.1.2.1.17 /usr/share/snmp/bridge_pp.py
```

- Community

```
rocommunity public default -V systemonly
```

- Line directly below the Q-BRIDGE-MIB (.1.3.6.1.2.1.17)

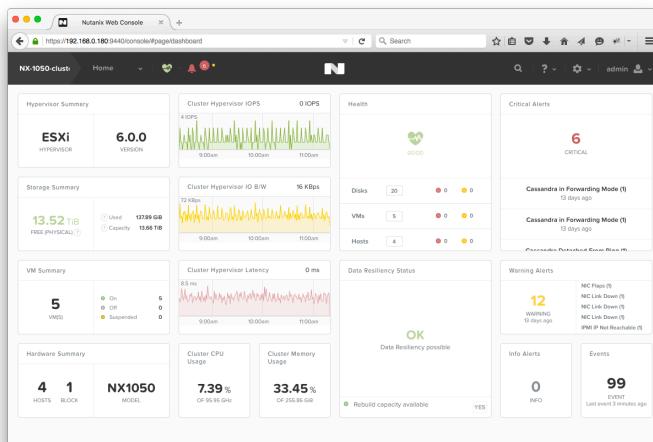
```
# BRIDGE-MIB and Q-BRIDGE-MIB tables
view systemonly included .1.3.6.1.2.1.17
```

5. Restart `snmpd`:

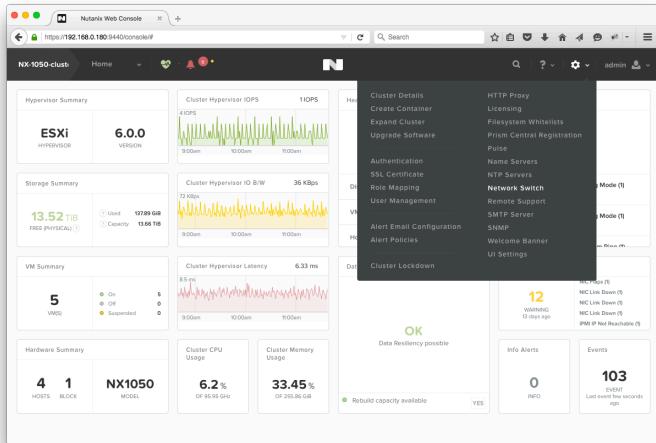
```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart snmpd.service
Restarting network management services: snmpd.
```

## Configuring Nutanix

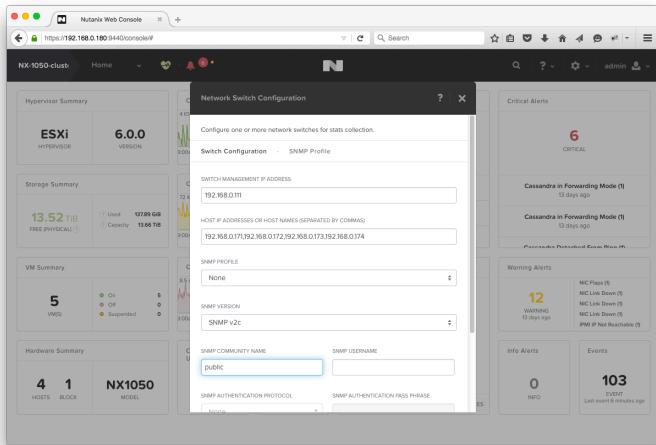
1. Log into the Nutanix Prism. Nutanix defaults to the Home menu, referred to as the Dashboard:



2. Click on the gear icon  in the top right corner of the dashboard, and select NetworkSwitch:



3. Click the **+Add Switch Configuration** button in the **Network Switch Configuration** pop up window.
4. Fill out the **Network Switch Configuration** for the Top of Rack (ToR) switch configured for snmpd in the previous section:



Configuration Parameter	Description	Value Used in Example
Switch Management IP Address	This can be any IP address on the box. In the screenshot above, the eth0 management IP is used.	192.168.0.111
Host IP Addresses or Host Names		192.168.0.171, 192.168.0.172, 192.168.0.173, 192.168.0.174



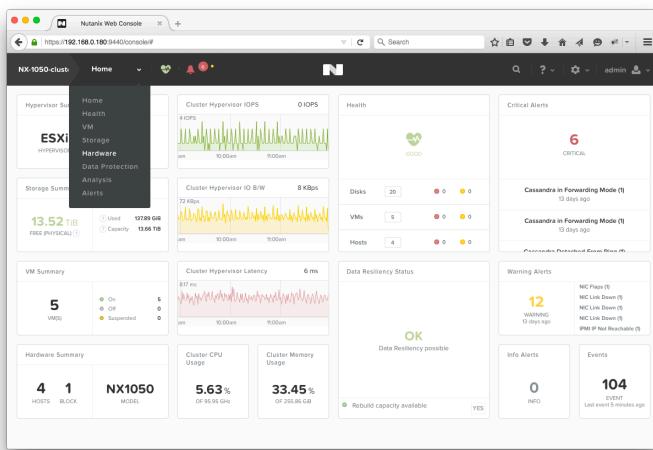
Configuration Parameter	Description	Value Used in Example
	IP addresses of Nutanix hosts connected to that particular ToR switch.	
SNMP Profile	Saved profiles, for easy configuration when hooking up to multiple switches.	None
SNMP Version	SNMP v2c or SNMP v3. Cumulus Linux has only been tested with SNMP v2c for Nutanix integration.	SNMP v2c
SNMP Community Name	SNMP v2c uses communities to share MIBs. The default community for snmpd is 'public'.	public



The rest of the values were not touched for this demonstration. They are usually used with SNMP v3.

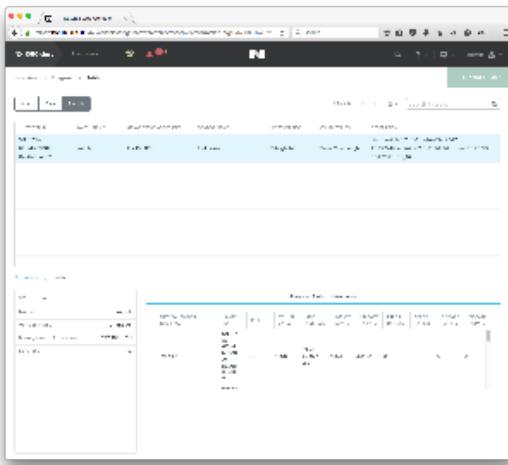
5. Save the configuration. The switch will now be present in the **Network Switch Configuration** menu now.
6. Close the pop up window to return to the dashboard.

7. Open the **Hardware** option from the **Home** dropdown menu:



8. Click the **Table** button.

9. Click the **Switch** button. Configured switches are shown in the table, as indicated in the screenshot below, and can be selected in order to view interface statistics:



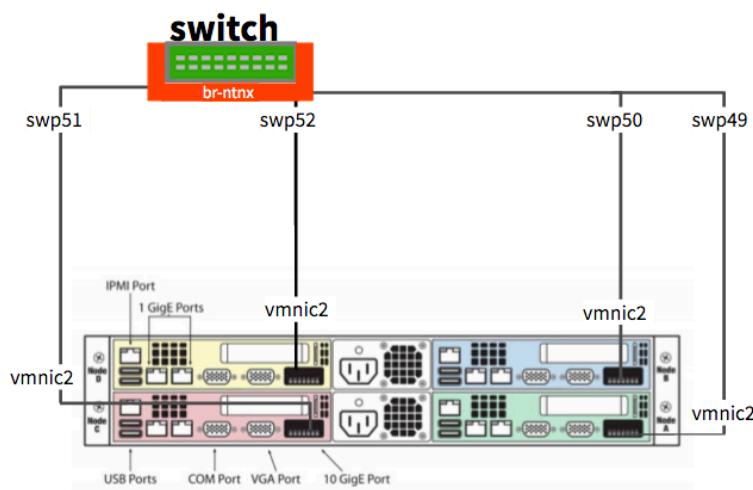
- Unicast TX Packets (Transmitted)
- Error RX Packets (Received)
- Error TX Packets (Transmitted)
- Discard RX Packets (Received)
- Discard TX Packets (Transmitted)

The Nutanix appliance will use Switch IDs that can also be viewed on the Prism CLI (by SSHing to the box). To view information from the Nutanix CLI, login using the default username **nutanix**, and the password **nutanix/4u**.

```
nutanix@NTNX-14SM15270093-D-CVM:192.168.0.184:~$ ncli network list-switch
Switch ID : 00051a76-f711-89b6-0000-000000003bac::5f13678e-6ffd-4b33-912f-f1aa6e8da982
Name : switch
Switch Management Address : 192.168.0.111
Description : Linux switch 3.2.65-1+deb7u2+cl2.5+2 #3.2.65-1+deb7u2+cl2.5+2 SMP Mon Jun 1 18:26:59 PDT 2015 x86_64
Object ID : enterprises.40310
Contact Information : Admin <admin@company.com>
Location Information : Raleigh, NC
Services : 72
Switch Vendor Name : Unknown
Port Ids : 00051a76-f711-89b6-0000-000000003bac::5f13678e-6ffd-4b33-912f-f1aa6e8da982:52, 00051a76-f711-89b6-0000-000000003bac::5f13678e-6ffd-4b33-912f-f1aa6e8da982:53, 00051a76-f711-89b6-0000-000000003bac::5f13678e-6ffd-4b33-912f-f1aa6e8da982:54, 00051a76-f711-89b6-0000-000000003bac::5f13678e-6ffd-4b33-912f-f1aa6e8da982:55
```

## Troubleshooting a Nutanix Node

To help visualize the following diagram is provided:





Nutanix Node	Physical Port	Cumulus Linux Port
Node A (Green)	vmnic2	swp49
Node B (Blue)	vmnic2	swp50
Node C (Red)	vmnic2	swp51
Node D (Yellow)	vmnic2	swp52

## Enabling LLDP/CDP on VMware ESXi (Hypervisor on Nutanix)

1. Follow the directions on one of the following websites to enable CDP:

- [kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en\\_US&cmd=displayKC&externalId=1003885](http://kb.vmware.com/selfservice/microsites/search.do?language=en_US&cmd=displayKC&externalId=1003885)
- [wahlnetwork.com/2012/07/17/utilizing-cdp-and-lldp-with-vsphere-networking/](http://wahlnetwork.com/2012/07/17/utilizing-cdp-and-lldp-with-vsphere-networking/)

For example, switch CDP on:

```
root@NX-1050-A:~] esxcli network vswitch standard set -c both -v vSwitch0
```

Then confirm it is running:

```
root@NX-1050-A:~] esxcli network vswitch standard list -v
vSwitch0
vSwitch0
  Name: vSwitch0
  Class: etherswitch
  Num Ports: 4082
  Used Ports: 12
  Configured Ports: 128
  MTU: 1500
  CDP Status: both
  Beacon Enabled: false
  Beacon Interval: 1
  Beacon Threshold: 3
  Beacon Required By:
  Uplinks: vmnic3, vmnic2, vmnic1, vmnic0
  Portgroups: VM Network, Management Network
```

The **both** means CDP is now running, and the llpd dameon on Cumulus Linux is capable of 'seeing' CDP devices.

2. After the next CDP interval, the Cumulus Linux box will pick up the interface via the `lldp` daemon:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ lldpctl show neighbor swp49
-----
-----
LLDP neighbors:
-----
Interface:    swp49, via: CDPv2, RID: 6, Time: 0 day, 00:34:58
Chassis:
    ChassisID:      local NX-1050-A
    SysName:        NX-1050-A
    SysDescr:       Releasebuild-2494585 running on VMware ESX
    MgmtIP:         0.0.0.0
    Capability:    Bridge, on
Port:
    PortID:        ifname vmnic2
    PortDescr:     vmnic2
-----
```

3. Use `net show` to look at lldp information:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net show lldp

Local Port      Speed   Mode          Remote Port
Remote Host    Summary
-----  -----  -----  -----
-----  -----
eth0           1G      Mgmt        ===  swp6
oob-mgmt-switch IP: 192.168.0.11/24(DHCP)
swp1           1G      Access/L2   ===  44:38:39:00:00:03
server01        Untagged: br0
spine01
spine01
swp52           1G      NotConfigured  ===  swp1
spine02
```

## *Enabling LLDP/CDP on Nutanix Acropolis (Hypervisor on Nutanix Acropolis)*

Nutanix Acropolis is an alternate hypervisor that Nutanix supports. Acropolis Hypervisor uses the yum packaging system and is capable of installing normal Linux lldp daemons to operating just like Cumulus Linux. LLDP should be enabled for each interface on the host. Refer to <https://community.mellanox.com/docs/DOC-1522> for setup instructions.

## *Troubleshooting Connections without LLDP or CDP*

1. Find the MAC address information in the Prism GUI, located in: **Hardware > Table > Host > Host NICs**



2. Select a MAC address to troubleshoot (e.g. 0c:c4:7a:09:a2:43 represents vmnic0 which is tied to NX-1050-A).
3. List out all the MAC addresses associated to the bridge:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ brctl showmacs br-ntnx
port name mac addr      vlan  is local?   ageing timer
swp9    00:02:00:00:00:06  0     no          66.94
swp52   00:0c:29:3e:32:12  0     no          2.73
swp49   00:0c:29:5a:f4:7f  0     no          2.73
swp51   00:0c:29:6f:e1:e4  0     no          2.73
swp49   00:0c:29:74:0c:ee  0     no          2.73
swp50   00:0c:29:a9:36:91  0     no          2.73
swp9    08:9e:01:f8:8f:0c  0     no          13.56
swp9    08:9e:01:f8:8f:35  0     no          2.73
swp4    0c:c4:7a:09:9e:d4  0     no          24.05
swp1    0c:c4:7a:09:9f:8e  0     no          13.56
swp3    0c:c4:7a:09:9f:93  0     no          13.56
swp2    0c:c4:7a:09:9f:95  0     no          24.05
swp52   0c:c4:7a:09:a0:c1  0     no          2.73
swp51   0c:c4:7a:09:a2:35  0     no          2.73
swp49   0c:c4:7a:09:a2:43  0     no          2.73
swp9    44:38:39:00:82:04  0     no          2.73
swp9    74:e6:e2:f5:a2:80  0     no          2.73
swp1    74:e6:e2:f5:a2:81  0     yes         0.00
swp2    74:e6:e2:f5:a2:82  0     yes         0.00
swp3    74:e6:e2:f5:a2:83  0     yes         0.00
swp4    74:e6:e2:f5:a2:84  0     yes         0.00
swp5    74:e6:e2:f5:a2:85  0     yes         0.00
swp6    74:e6:e2:f5:a2:86  0     yes         0.00
swp7    74:e6:e2:f5:a2:87  0     yes         0.00
swp8    74:e6:e2:f5:a2:88  0     yes         0.00
swp9    74:e6:e2:f5:a2:89  0     yes         0.00
swp10   74:e6:e2:f5:a2:8a  0     yes         0.00
swp49   74:e6:e2:f5:a2:b1  0     yes         0.00
swp50   74:e6:e2:f5:a2:b2  0     yes         0.00
swp51   74:e6:e2:f5:a2:b3  0     yes         0.00
swp52   74:e6:e2:f5:a2:b4  0     yes         0.00
swp9    8e:0f:73:1b:f8:24  0     no          2.73
swp9    c8:1f:66:ba:60:cf  0     no          66.94
```

Alternatively, you can use grep:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ brctl showmacs br-ntnx | grep 0c:c4:7a:09:a2:43
swp49   0c:c4:7a:09:a2:43   0     no          4.58
```

vmnic1 is now hooked up to swp49. This matches what is seen in lldp:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ lldpctl show neighbor swp49
-----
-----
LLDP neighbors:
-----
Interface:      swp49, via: CDPv2, RID: 6, Time: 0 day, 01:11:12
Chassis:
    ChassisID:      local NX-1050-A
    SysName:        NX-1050-A
    SysDescr:       Releasebuild-2494585 running on VMware ESX
    MgmtIP:         0.0.0.0
    Capability:    Bridge, on
Port:
    PortID:         ifname vmnic2
    PortDescr:      vmnic2
-----
```

## Monitoring Best Practices

The following monitoring processes are considered best practices for reviewing and troubleshooting potential issues with Cumulus Linux environments. In addition, several of the more common issues have been listed, with potential solutions included.

### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Overview (see page 879)
  - Trend Analysis Using Metrics (see page 879)
  - Generating Alerts with Triggered Logging (see page 879)
  - Log Formatting (see page 879)
- Hardware (see page 880)
- System Data (see page 882)
  - CPU Idle Time (see page 882)
  - Disk Usage (see page 883)
- Process Restart (see page 884)
- Layer 1 Protocols and Interfaces (see page 884)
- Layer 2 Protocols (see page 891)
- Layer 3 Protocols (see page 893)
  - BGP (see page 893)
  - OSPF (see page 894)
  - Route and Host Entries (see page 894)
  - Routing Logs (see page 895)



- Logging (see page 896)
- Protocols and Services (see page 898)
  - NTP (see page 898)
- Device Management (see page 898)
  - Device Access Logs (see page 898)
  - Device Super User Command Logs (see page 898)

## Overview

This document describes:

- Metrics that you can poll from Cumulus Linux and use in trend analysis
- Critical log messages that you can monitor for triggered alerts

### Trend Analysis Using Metrics

A metric is a quantifiable measure that is used to track and assess the status of a specific infrastructure component. It is a check collected over time. Examples of metrics include bytes on an interface, CPU utilization, and total number of routes.

Metrics are more valuable when used for trend analysis.

### Generating Alerts with Triggered Logging

Triggered issues are normally sent to `syslog`, but can go to another log file depending on the feature. In Cumulus Linux, `rsyslog` handles all logging, including local and remote logging. Logs are the best method to use for generating alerts when the system transitions from a stable steady state.

Sending logs to a centralized collector, then creating alerts based on critical logs is an optimal solution for alerting.

### Log Formatting

Most log files in Cumulus Linux use a standard presentation format. For example, consider this `syslog` entry:

```
2017-03-08T06:26:43.569681+00:00 leaf01 sysmonitor: Critically high  
CPU use: 99%
```

- 2017-03-08T06:26:43.569681+00:00 is the timestamp.
- *leaf01* is the hostname.
- *sysmonitor* is the process that is the source of the message.
- *Critically high CPU use: 99%* is the message.

For brevity and legibility, the timestamp and hostname have been omitted from the examples in this chapter.



## Hardware

The `smonctl` process provides monitoring functionality for various switch hardware elements. Minimum or maximum values are output depending on the flags applied to the basic command. The hardware elements and applicable commands and flags are listed in the table below.

Hardware Element	Monitoring Command/s	Interval Poll
Temperature	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ smonctl -j cumulus@switch:~\$ smonctl -j -s TEMP[X]</pre>	10 seconds
Fan	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ smonctl -j cumulus@switch:~\$ smonctl -j -s FAN[X]</pre>	10 seconds
PSU	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ smonctl -j cumulus@switch:~\$ smonctl -j -s PSU[X]</pre>	10 seconds
PSU Fan	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ smonctl -j cumulus@switch:~\$ smonctl -j -s PSU[X]Fan[X]</pre>	10 seconds
PSU Temperature	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ smonctl -j cumulus@switch:~\$ smonctl -j -s PSU[X]Temp [X]</pre>	10 seconds
Voltage	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ smonctl -j cumulus@switch:~\$ smonctl -j -s Volt[X]</pre>	10 seconds



Hardware Element	Monitoring Command/s	Interval Poll
Front Panel LED	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ ledmgrd -d cumulus@switch:~\$ ledmgrd -j</pre>	5 seconds



Not all switch models include a sensor for monitoring power consumption and voltage. See [this note \(see page 776\)](#) for details.

Hardware Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
High temperature	/var /log /syslog	<pre>/usr/sbin/smond : : Temp1(Board Sensor near CPU): state changed from UNKNOWN to OK /usr/sbin/smond : : Temp2(Board Sensor Near Virtual Switch): state changed from UNKNOWN to OK /usr/sbin/smond : : Temp3(Board Sensor at Front Left Corner): state changed from UNKNOWN to OK /usr/sbin/smond : : Temp4(Board Sensor at Front Right Corner): state changed from UNKNOWN to OK /usr/sbin/smond : : Temp5(Board Sensor near Fan): state changed from UNKNOWN to OK</pre>
Fan speed issues	/var /log /syslog	<pre>/usr/sbin/smond : : Fan1(Fan Tray 1, Fan 1): state changed from UNKNOWN to OK /usr/sbin/smond : : Fan2(Fan Tray 1, Fan 2): state changed from UNKNOWN to OK /usr/sbin/smond : : Fan3(Fan Tray 2, Fan 1): state changed from UNKNOWN to OK /usr/sbin/smond : : Fan4(Fan Tray 2, Fan 2): state changed from UNKNOWN to OK /usr/sbin/smond : : Fan5(Fan Tray 3, Fan 1): state changed from UNKNOWN to OK /usr/sbin/smond : : Fan6(Fan Tray 3, Fan 2): state changed from UNKNOWN to OK</pre>
PSU failure		



Hardware Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
	/var /log /syslog	/usr/sbin/smond : : PSU1Fan1(PSU1 Fan): state changed from UNKNOWN to OK /usr/sbin/smond : : PSU2Fan1(PSU2 Fan): state changed from UNKNOWN to BAD

## System Data

Cumulus Linux includes a number of ways to monitor various aspects of system data. In addition, alerts are issued in high risk situations.

### CPU Idle Time

When a CPU reports five high CPU alerts within a span of five minutes, an alert is logged.

#### ① Short High CPU Bursts

Short bursts of high CPU can occur during `switchd` churn or routing protocol startup. Do not set alerts for these short bursts.

System Element	Monitoring Command/s	Interval Poll
CPU utilization	cumulus@switch:~\$ cat /proc/stat cumulus@switch:~\$ top -b -n 1	30 seconds

CPU Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
High CPU	/var/log /syslog	sysmonitor: Critically high CPU use: 99% systemd[1]: Starting Monitor system resources (cpu, memory, disk)... systemd[1]: Started Monitor system resources (cpu, memory, disk). sysmonitor: High CPU use: 89% systemd[1]: Starting Monitor system resources (cpu, memory, disk)...



CPU Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
		<pre>systemd[1]: Started Monitor system resources (cpu, memory, disk). sysmonitor: CPU use no longer high: 77%</pre>

Cumulus Linux 3.0 and later monitors CPU, memory, and disk space via `sysmonitor`. The configurations for the thresholds are stored in `/etc/cumulus/sysmonitor.conf`. More information is available with `man sysmonitor`.

CPU measure	Thresholds
Use	Alert: 90% Crit: 95%
Process Load	Alarm: 95% Crit: 125%

[Click here to see differences between Cumulus Linux 2.5 ESR and 3.0 and later...](#)

CPU Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
High CPU	/var /log /syslog	<pre>jdoe[2803]: 'localhost' cpu system usage of 41.1% matches resource limit [cpu system usage&gt;30.0%] jdoe[4727]: 'localhost' sysloadavg(15min) of 111.0 matches resource limit [sysloadavg(15min)&gt;110.0]</pre>

In Cumulus Linux 2.5, CPU logs are created with each unique threshold:

CPU measure	< 2.5 Threshold
User	70%
System	30%
Wait	20%

In Cumulus Linux 2.5, CPU and memory warnings are generated with `jdoe`. The configuration for the thresholds is stored in `/etc/jdoe/jdoorc.d/cl-utilities.rc`.

## Disk Usage

When monitoring disk utilization, you can exclude `tmpfs` from monitoring.



System Element	Monitoring Command/s	Interval Poll
Disk utilization	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ /bin/df -x tmpfs</pre>	300 seconds

## Process Restart

In Cumulus Linux 3.0 and later, `systemd` is responsible for monitoring and restarting processes.

Process Element	Monitoring Command/s
View processes monitored by <code>systemd</code>	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ systemctl status</pre>

[Click here to changes from Cumulus Linux 2.5 ESR to 3.0 and later...](#)

Cumulus Linux 2.5.2 through 2.5 ESR uses a forked version of `monit` called `jdoe` to monitor processes. If the process fails, `jdoe` invokes `init.d` to restart the process.

Process Element	Monitoring Command/s
View processes monitored by <code>jdoe</code>	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ jdoe summary</pre>
View process restarts	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ sudo cat /var/log /syslog</pre>
View current process state	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ ps -aux</pre>



## Layer 1 Protocols and Interfaces

Link and port state interface transitions are logged to `/var/log/syslog` and `/var/log/switchd.log`.

Interface Element	Monitoring Command/s
Link state	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ cat /sys/class/net/[iface] /operstate cumulus@switch:~\$ net show interface all json</pre>
Link speed	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ cat /sys/class/net/[iface] /speed cumulus@switch:~\$ net show interface all json</pre>
Port state	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ ip link show cumulus@switch:~\$ net show interface all json</pre>
Bond state	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ cat /proc/net/bonding/[bond] cumulus@switch:~\$ net show interface all json</pre>

Interface counters are obtained from either querying the hardware or the Linux kernel. The two outputs should align, but the Linux kernel aggregates the output from the hardware.

Interface Counter Element	Monitoring Command/s	Interval Poll
Interface counters	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ cat /sys/class/net/[iface] /statistics/[stat_name] cumulus@switch:~\$ net show counters json cumulus@switch:~\$ cl-netstat -j cumulus@switch:~\$ ethtool -S [iface]</pre>	10 seconds



Element		POLL
Layer 1 Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
Link failure/Link flap	/var /log /swi tchd .log	<pre>switchd[5692]: nic.c:213 nic_set_carrier: swp17: setting kernel carrier: down switchd[5692]: netlink.c:291 libnl: swp1, family 0, ifi 20, oper down switchd[5692]: nic.c:213 nic_set_carrier: swp1: setting kernel carrier: up switchd[5692]: netlink.c:291 libnl: swp17, family 0, ifi 20, oper up</pre>
Unidirectional link	/var /log /swi tchd .log  /var /log /ptm .log	<pre>ptmd[7146]: ptm_bfd.c:2471 Created new session 0x1 with peer 10.255.255.11 port swp1 ptmd[7146]: ptm_bfd.c:2471 Created new session 0x2 with peer fe80::4638:39ff:fe00:5b port swp1 ptmd[7146]: ptm_bfd.c:2471 Session 0x1 down to peer 10.255.255.11, Reason 8 ptmd[7146]: ptm_bfd.c:2471 Detect timeout on session 0x1 with peer 10.255.255.11, in state 1</pre>
Bond Negotiation • Working	/var /log /sys log	<pre>kernel: [85412.763193] bonding: bond0 is being created... kernel: [85412.770014] bond0: Enslaving swp2 as a backup interface with an up link kernel: [85412.775216] bond0: Enslaving swp1 as a backup interface with an up link kernel: [85412.797393] IPv6: ADDRCONF (NETDEV_UP): bond0: link is not ready kernel: [85412.799425] IPv6: ADDRCONF (NETDEV_CHANGE): bond0: link becomes ready</pre>
Bond Negotiation • Failing	/var /log	<pre>kernel: [85412.763193] bonding: bond0 is being created...</pre>



Layer 1 Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
	/sys log	<pre>kernel: [85412.770014] bond0: Enslaving swp2 as a backup interface with an up link kernel: [85412.775216] bond0: Enslaving swp1 as a backup interface with an up link kernel: [85412.797393] IPv6: ADDRCONF (NETDEV_UP): bond0: link is not ready</pre>
MLAG peerlink negotiation <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Working</li> </ul>	/var /log /sys log	<pre>lldpd[998]: error while receiving frame on swp50: Network is down lldpd[998]: error while receiving frame on swp49: Network is down kernel: [76174.262893] peerlink: Setting ad_actor_system to 44:38:39:00:00:11 kernel: [76174.264205] 8021q: adding VLAN 0 to HW filter on device peerlink mstpd: one_clag_cmd: setting (1) peer link: peerlink mstpd: one_clag_cmd: setting (1) clag state: up mstpd: one_clag_cmd: setting system-mac 44:38: 39:ff:40:94 mstpd: one_clag_cmd: setting clag-role secondary</pre>
	/var /log /clagd.log	<pre>clagd[14003]: Cleanup is executing. clagd[14003]: Cannot open file "/tmp/pre-clagd. q7Xio clagd[14003]: Cleanup is finished clagd[14003]: Beginning execution of clagd version 1 clagd[14003]: Invoked with: /usr/sbin/clagd -- daemon clagd[14003]: Role is now secondary clagd[14003]: HealthCheck: role via backup is second clagd[14003]: HealthCheck: backup active clagd[14003]: Initial config loaded clagd[14003]: The peer switch is active. clagd[14003]: Initial data sync from peer done. clagd[14003]: Initial handshake done. clagd[14003]: Initial data sync to peer done.</pre>

Layer 1 Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
MLAG peerlink negotiation ● Failing	/var /log /sys log	<pre>lldpd[998]: error while receiving frame on swp50: Network is down lldpd[998]: error while receiving frame on swp49: Network is down kernel: [76174.262893] peerlink: Setting ad_actor_system to 44:38:39:00:00:11 kernel: [76174.264205] 8021q: adding VLAN 0 to HW filter on device peerlink mstpd: one_clag_cmd: setting (1) peer link: peerlink mstpd: one_clag_cmd: setting (1) clag state: down mstpd: one_clag_cmd: setting system-mac 44:38: 39:ff:40:94 mstpd: one_clag_cmd: setting clag-role secondary</pre>
	/var /log /cla gd. log	<pre>clagd[26916]: Cleanup is executing. clagd[26916]: Cannot open file "/tmp/pre-clagd. 6M527vvGX0/brbatch" for reading: No such file or directory clagd[26916]: Cleanup is finished clagd[26916]: Beginning execution of clagd version 1.3.0 clagd[26916]: Invoked with: /usr/sbin/clagd -- daemon 169.254.1.2 peerlink.4094 44:38:39:FF: 01:01 --priority 1000 --backupIp 10.0.0.2 clagd[26916]: Role is now secondary clagd[26916]: Initial config loaded</pre>
MLAG port negotiation ● Working	/var /log /sys log	<pre>kernel: [77419.112195] bonding: server01 is being created... lldpd[998]: error while receiving frame on swp1: Network is down kernel: [77419.122707] 8021q: adding VLAN 0 to HW filter on device swp1 kernel: [77419.126408] server01: Enslaving swp1 as a backup interface with a down link</pre>



Layer 1 Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
		<pre>kernel: [77419.177175] server01: Setting ad_actor_system to 44:38:39:ff:40:94 kernel: [77419.190874] server01: Warning: No 802.3ad response from the link partner for any adapters in the bond kernel: [77419.191448] IPv6: ADDRCONF (NETDEV_UP): server01: link is not ready kernel: [77419.191452] 8021q: adding VLAN 0 to HW filter on device server01 kernel: [77419.192060] server01: link status definitely up for interface swp1, 1000 Mbps full duplex kernel: [77419.192065] server01: now running without any active interface! kernel: [77421.491811] IPv6: ADDRCONF (NETDEV_CHANGE): server01: link becomes ready mstpd: one_clag_cmd: setting (1) mac 44:38:39:00:00:17 &lt;server01, None&gt;</pre>
	/var/log/cla gd.log	<pre>clagd[14003]: server01 is now dual connected.</pre>
MLAG port negotiation • Failing	/var/log/sys log	<pre>kernel: [79290.290999] bonding: server01 is being created... kernel: [79290.299645] 8021q: adding VLAN 0 to HW filter on device swp1 kernel: [79290.301790] server01: Enslaving swp1 as a backup interface with a down link kernel: [79290.358294] server01: Setting ad_actor_system to 44:38:39:ff:40:94 kernel: [79290.373590] server01: Warning: No 802.3ad response from the link partner for any adapters in the bond kernel: [79290.374024] IPv6: ADDRCONF (NETDEV_UP): server01: link is not ready kernel: [79290.374028] 8021q: adding VLAN 0 to HW filter on device server01</pre>



Layer 1 Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
		<pre>kernel: [79290.375033] server01: link status definitely up for interface swp1, 1000 Mbps full duplex kernel: [79290.375037] server01: now running without any active interface!</pre>
	/var/log/cla gd.log	<pre>clagd[14291]: Conflict (server01): matching clag-id (1) not configured on peer ... clagd[14291]: Conflict cleared (server01): matching clag-id (1) detected on peer</pre>
MLAG port negotiation <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Flapping</li> </ul>	/var/log/sys log	<pre>mstpd: one_clag_cmd: setting (0) mac 00:00:00:00:00:00 &lt;server01, None&gt; mstpd: one_clag_cmd: setting (1) mac 44:38:39:00:00:03 &lt;server01, None&gt;</pre>
	/var/log/cla gd.log	<pre>clagd[14291]: server01 is no longer dual connected clagd[14291]: server01 is now dual connected.</pre>

Prescriptive Topology Manager (PTM) uses LLDP information to compare against a `topology.dot` file that describes the network. It has built in alerting capabilities, so it is preferable to use PTM on box rather than polling LLDP information regularly. The PTM code is available on the Cumulus Networks [GitHub repository](#). Additional PTM, BFD, and associated logs are documented in the code.



Cumulus Networks recommends that you track peering information through PTM. For more information, refer to the [Prescriptive Topology Manager documentation \(see page 304\)](#).



Neighbor Element	Monitoring Command/s	Interval Poll
LLDP Neighbor	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ lldpctl -f json</pre>	300 seconds
Prescriptive Topology Manager	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ ptmctl -j [-d]</pre>	Triggered

## Layer 2 Protocols

Spanning tree is a protocol that prevents loops in a layer 2 infrastructure. In a stable state, the spanning tree protocol should stably converge. Monitoring the Topology Change Notifications (TCN) in STP helps identify when new BPDUs are received.

Interface Counter Element	Monitoring Command/s	Interval Poll
STP TCN Transitions	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ mstpctl showbridge json cumulus@switch:~\$ mstpctl showport json</pre>	60 seconds
MLAG peer state	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ clagctl status cumulus@switch:~\$ clagd -j cumulus@switch:~\$ cat /var/log/clagd.log</pre>	60 seconds
MLAG peer MACs	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ clagctl dumppeermacs cumulus@switch:~\$ clagctl dumpourmacs</pre>	300 seconds



Layer 2 Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
Spanning Tree Working	/var /log /syslog	<pre>kernel: [1653877.190724] device swp1 entered promiscuous mode kernel: [1653877.190796] device swp2 entered promiscuous mode mstpd: create_br: Add bridge bridge mstpd: clag_set_sys_mac_br: set bridge mac 00: 00:00:00:00:00 mstpd: create_if: Add iface swp1 as port#2 to bridge bridge mstpd: set_if_up: Port swp1 : up mstpd: create_if: Add iface swp2 as port#1 to bridge bridge mstpd: set_if_up: Port swp2 : up mstpd: set_br_up: Set bridge bridge up mstpd: MSTP_OUT_set_state: bridge:swp1:0 entering blocking state(Disabled) mstpd: MSTP_OUT_set_state: bridge:swp2:0 entering blocking state(Disabled) mstpd: MSTP_OUT_flush_all_fids: bridge:swp1:0 Flushing forwarding database mstpd: MSTP_OUT_flush_all_fids: bridge:swp2:0 Flushing forwarding database mstpd: MSTP_OUT_set_state: bridge:swp1:0 entering learning state(Designated) mstpd: MSTP_OUT_set_state: bridge:swp2:0 entering learning state(Designated) sudo: pam_unix(sudo:session): session closed for user root mstpd: MSTP_OUT_set_state: bridge:swp1:0 entering forwarding state(Designated) mstpd: MSTP_OUT_set_state: bridge:swp2:0 entering forwarding state(Designated) mstpd: MSTP_OUT_flush_all_fids: bridge:swp2:0 Flushing forwarding database mstpd: MSTP_OUT_flush_all_fids: bridge:swp1:0 Flushing forwarding database</pre>
Spanning Tree Blocking	/var /log /syslog	<pre>mstpd: MSTP_OUT_set_state: bridge:swp2:0 entering blocking state(Designated) mstpd: MSTP_OUT_set_state: bridge:swp2:0 entering learning state(Designated)</pre>



Layer 2 Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
		<pre>mstpd: MSTP_OUT_set_state: bridge:swp2:0 entering forwarding state(Designated) mstpd: MSTP_OUT_flush_all_fids: bridge:swp2:0 Flushing forwarding database mstpd: MSTP_OUT_flush_all_fids: bridge:swp2:0 Flushing forwarding database mstpd: MSTP_OUT_set_state: bridge:swp2:0 entering blocking state(Alternate) mstpd: MSTP_OUT_flush_all_fids: bridge:swp2:0 Flushing forwarding database</pre>

## Layer 3 Protocols

When FRRouting boots up for the first time, there is a different log file for each daemon that is activated. If the log file is ever edited (for example, through `vtysh` or `frr.conf`), the integrated configuration sends all logs to the same file.

To send FRRouting logs to syslog, apply the configuration `log syslog` in `vtysh`.

### BGP

When monitoring BGP, check if BGP peers are operational. There is not much value in alerting on the current operational state of the peer; monitoring the transition is more valuable, which you can do by monitoring `syslog`.

Monitoring the routing table provides trending on the size of the infrastructure. This is especially useful when integrated with host-based solutions (such as Routing on the Host) when the routes track with the number of applications available.

BGP Element	Monitoring Command/s	Interval Poll
BGP peer failure	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ vtysh -c "show ip bgp summary json" cumulus@switch:~\$ cl-bgp summary show json</pre>	60 seconds
BGP route table	<pre>cumulus@switch:~\$ vtysh -c "show ip bgp json" cumulus@switch:~\$ cl-bgp route show</pre>	600 seconds



BGP Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
BGP peer down	/var/log /syslog /var/log /frr/*.log	bgpd[ 3000]: %NOTIFICATION: sent to neighbor swp1 4/0 (Hold Timer Expired) 0 bytes bgpd[ 3000]: %ADJCHANGE: neighbor swp1 Down BGP Notification send

## OSPF

When monitoring OSPF, check if OSPF peers are operational. There is not much value in alerting on the current operational state of the peer; monitoring the transition is more valuable, which you can do by monitoring `syslog`.

Monitoring the routing table provides trending on the size of the infrastructure. This is especially useful when integrated with host-based solutions (such as Routing on the Host) when the routes track with the number of applications available.

OSPF Element	Monitoring Command(s)	Interval Poll
OSPF protocol peer failure	cumulus@switch:~\$ vtysh -c "show ip ospf neighbor all json" cumulus@switch:~\$ cl-ospf summary show json	60 seconds
OSPF link state database	cumulus@switch:~\$ vtysh - c "show ip ospf database"	600 seconds

## Route and Host Entries

Route Element	Monitoring Command(s)	Interval Poll
Host Entries		600 seconds



Route Element	Monitoring Command(s)	Interval Poll
	cumulus@switch:~\$ cl-resource-query cumulus@switch:~\$ cl-resource-query -k	
Route Entries	cumulus@switch:~\$ cl-resource-query cumulus@switch:~\$ cl-resource-query -k	600 seconds

## Routing Logs

Layer 3 Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
Routing protocol process crash	/var /log /sys log	frrouting[1824]: Starting FRRouting daemons (prio:10):. zebra. bgpd. bgpd[1847]: BGPd 1.0.0+cl3u7 starting: vty@2605, bgp@<all>:179 zebra[1840]: client 12 says hello and bids fair to announce only bgp routes watchquagga[1853]: watchquagga 1.0.0+cl3u7 watching [zebra bgpd], mode [phased zebra restart] watchquagga[1853]: bgpd state -> up : connect succeeded watchquagga[1853]: bgpd state -> down : read returned EOF cumulus-core: Running cl-support for core files bgpd.3030.1470341944.core.core_helper core_check.sh[4992]: Please send /var/support /cl_support_spine01_20160804_201905.tar.xz to Cumulus support watchquagga[1853]: Forked background command [pid 6665]: /usr/sbin/service frr restart bgpd watchquagga[1853]: watchquagga 0.99.24+cl3u2 watching [zebra bgpd ospfd], mode [phased zebra restart] watchquagga[1853]: zebra state -> up : connect succeeded



Layer 3 Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
		<pre>watchquagga[1853]: bgpd state -&gt; up : connect succeeded watchquagga[1853]: Watchquagga: Notifying Systemd we are up and running</pre>

## Logging

The table below describes the various log files.

Logging Element	Monitoring Command/s	Log Location
syslog	Catch all log file. Identifies memory leaks and CPU spikes.	/var/log/syslog
switchd functionality	Hardware Abstraction Layer (HAL).	/var/log/switc.hd.log
Routing daemons	FRRouting zebra daemon details.	/var/log/daemons



Logging Element	Monitoring Command/s	Log Location
		emo n. log
Routing protocol	<p>The log file is configurable in FRRouting. When FRRouting first boots, it uses the non-integrated configuration so each routing protocol has its own log file. After booting up, FRRouting switches over to using the integrated configuration, so that all logs go to a single place.</p> <p>To edit the location of the log files, use the <code>log file &lt;location&gt;</code> command. By default, FRRouting logs are not sent to <code>syslog</code>. Use the <code>log syslog &lt;level&gt;</code> command to send logs through <code>rsyslog</code> and into <code>/var/log/syslog</code>.</p>	/va r /lo g /fr r /ze bra .log /va r /lo g /fr r/ {pr oto col }.log /va r /lo g /fr r/ {pr oto col }.log /va r /lo g /fr r. log



## Protocols and Services

### NTP

Run the following command to confirm that the NTP process is working correctly and that the switch clock is in sync with NTP:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ /usr/bin/ntpq -p
```

## Device Management

### Device Access Logs

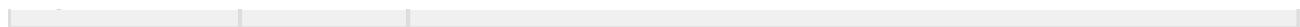
Access Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
User Authentication and Remote Login	/var/log/syslog	<pre>sshd[31830]: Accepted publickey for cumulus from 192.168.0.254 port 45582 ssh2: RSA 38:e6:3b:cc:04:ac:41:5e:c9:e3:93:9d:cc:9e:48:25 sshd[31830]: pam_unix(sshd:session): session opened for user cumulus by (uid=0)</pre>

### Device Super User Command Logs

Super User Command Logs	Log Location	Log Entries
Executing commands using sudo	/var/log/syslog	<pre>sudo: cumulus : TTY=unknown ; PWD=/home/cumulus ; USER=root ; COMMAND=/tmp/script_9938.sh -v sudo: pam_unix(sudo:session): session opened for user root by (uid=0) sudo: pam_unix(sudo:session): session closed for user root</pre>



Cumulus Networks



# Network Solutions

## Data Center Host to ToR Architecture

This chapter discusses the various architectures and strategies available from the top of rack (ToR) switches all the way down to the server hosts.

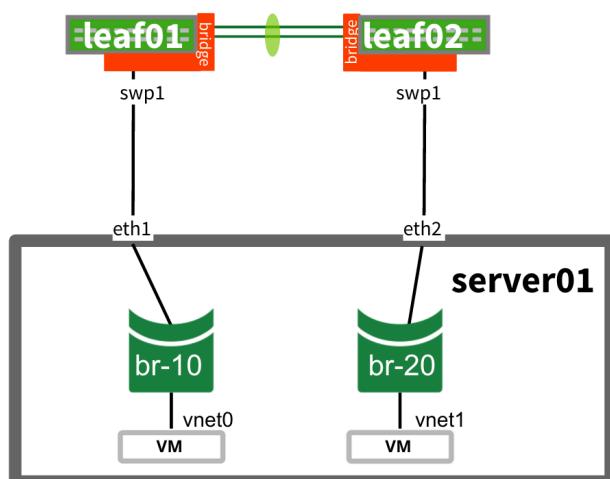
### Contents

This chapter covers ...

- Layer 2 - Architecture (see page 900)
  - Traditional Spanning Tree - Single Attached (see page 900)
  - MLAG (see page 902)
- Layer 3 Architecture (see page 904)
  - Single-attached Hosts (see page 904)
  - Redistribute Neighbor (see page 906)
  - Routing on the Host (see page 907)
  - Routing on the VM (see page 908)
  - Virtual Router (see page 909)
  - Anycast with Manual Redistribution (see page 910)
- Network Virtualization (see page 912)
  - LNV with MLAG (see page 912)

### Layer 2 - Architecture

#### *Traditional Spanning Tree - Single Attached*





## Summary

Bond (see page 316)/Etherchannel is not configured on host to multiple switches (bonds can still occur but only to one switch at a time), so leaf01 and leaf02 see two different MAC addresses.

### Configurations

#### leaf01 Config

```
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-ports swp1 peerlink
    bridge-vids 1-2000
    bridge-stp on

auto bridge.10
iface bridge.10
    address 10.1.10.2/24

auto peerlink
iface peerlink
    bond-slaves glob swp49-50

auto swp1
iface swp1
    mstptctl-portadminedge yes
    mstptctl-bpduguard yes
```

#### Example Host Config (Ubuntu)

```
auto eth1
iface eth1 inet manual

auto eth1.10
iface eth1.10 inet manual

auto eth2
iface eth1 inet manual

auto eth2.20
iface eth2.20 inet manual

auto br-10
iface br-10 inet manual
    bridge-ports eth1.10 vnet0
```

## More Information

### Benefits

- Established technology
  - Interoperability with other vendors
  - Easy configuration for customer
  - Immense documentation from multiple vendors and industry
- Ability to use [spanning tree \(see page 284\)](#) commands
  - mstptctl-portadminedge
  - [BPDU guard \(see page 291\)](#)
- Layer 2 reachability to all VMs

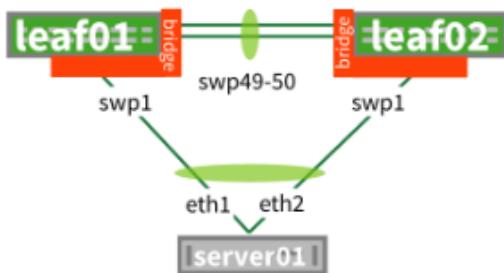
### Caveats

- The load balancing mechanism on the host can cause problems. If there is only host pinning to each NIC, there are no problems, but if you are doing a bond, you need to look at an MLAG solution.
- No active-active host links. Some operating systems allow HA (NIC failover), but this still does not utilize all the bandwidth. VMs are using one NIC, not two.

Summary	More Information
<pre>auto br-20 iface br-20 inet manual     bridge-ports eth2.20 vnet1</pre>	

Active-Active Mode	Active-Passive Mode	L2 to L3 Demarcation
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>None (not possible with traditional spanning tree)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>VRR (see page 386)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ToR layer (recommended)</li> <li>Spine layer</li> <li>Core/edge/exit</li> </ul> <p>More Info... VRR can be configured on a pair of switches at any level in the network. However, the higher up the network you configure it, the larger the L2 domain becomes. The benefit here is L2 reachability. The drawback is the L2 domain is more difficult to troubleshoot, does not scale as well, and the pair of switches running VRR needs to carry the entire MAC address table of everything below it in the network. Minimizing the L2 domain as much as possible is recommended by Cumulus Professional Services. <a href="#">Please see this presentation for more information.</a></p>

## MLAG



Summary	More Information
<p>MLAG (see page 351) (multi-chassis link aggregation) is when both uplinks are utilized at the same time. VRR gives the ability for both spines to act as gateways simultaneously for HA (high availability) and active-active mode (see page 438) (both are being used at the same time).</p> <p><b>Configurations</b></p> <p><b>leaf01 Config</b></p>	<p><b>Benefits</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>100% of links utilized</li> </ul> <p><b>Caveats</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>More complicated (more moving parts)</li> <li>More configuration</li> </ul>



## Summary

```
auto bridge
iface bridge
    bridge-vlan-aware yes
    bridge-ports host-01 peerlink
    bridge-vids 1-2000
    bridge-stp on

auto bridge.10
iface bridge.10
    address 172.16.1.2/24
    address-virtual 44:38:39:00:00:10
    172.16.1.1/24

auto peerlink
iface peerlink
    bond-slaves glob swp49-50

auto peerlink.4094
iface peerlink.4094
    address 169.254.1.2
    clagd-enable yes
    clagd-peer-ip 169.254.1.2
    clagd-system-mac 44:38:39:FF:40:94

auto host-01
iface host-01
    bond-slaves swp1
    clag-id 1
    {bond-defaults removed for brevity}
```

## More Information

- No interoperability between vendors
- ISL (inter-switch link) required

## Additional Comments

- Can be done with either the [traditional \(see page 322\)](#) or [VLAN-aware \(see page 328\)](#) bridge driver depending on overall STP needs
- There are a few different solutions including Cisco VPC and Arista MLAG, but none of them interoperate and are very vendor specific
- Cumulus Networks Layer 2 HA validated design guide

## Example Host Config (Ubuntu)

```
auto bond0
iface bond0 inet manual
    bond-slaves eth0 eth1
    {bond-defaults removed for brevity}

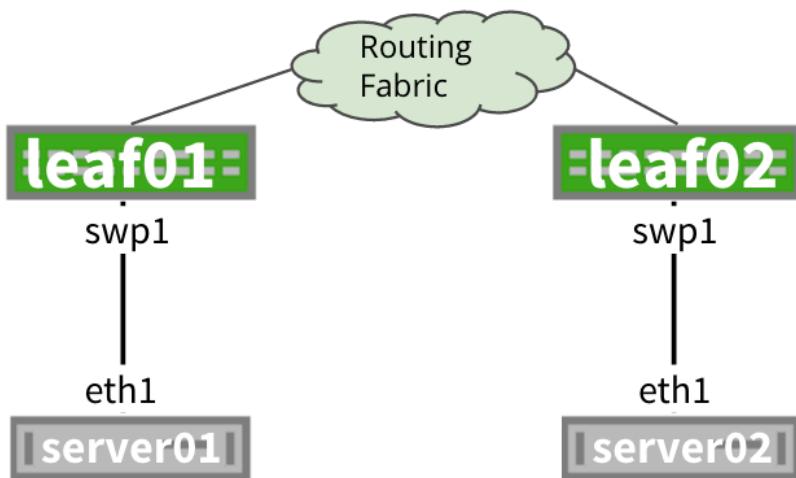
auto bond0.10
iface bond0.10 inet manual

auto vm-br10
iface vm-br10 inet manual
    bridge-ports bond0.10 vnet0
```

Active-Active Mode	Active-Passive Mode	L2->L3 Demarcation
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• VRR (see page 386)</li> </ul>	None	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ToR layer (recommended)</li> <li>• Spine layer</li> <li>• Core/edge/exit</li> </ul>

## Layer 3 Architecture

### Single-attached Hosts

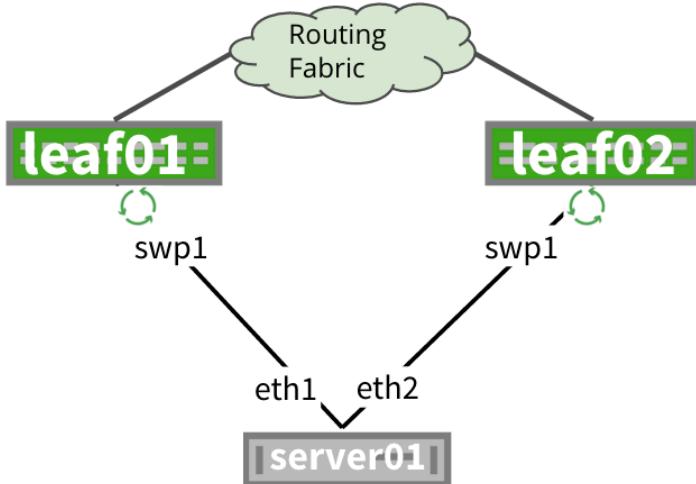


Summary	More Information
<p>The server (physical host) has only has one link to one ToR switch.</p> <p><b>Configurations</b></p> <p><b>leaf01 Config</b></p> <pre>/etc/network/interfaces</pre> <pre>auto swp1 iface swp1   address 172.16.1.1/30</pre> <pre>/etc/frr/frr.conf</pre> <pre>router ospf   router-id 10.0.0.11   interface swp1</pre>	<p><b>Benefits</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Relatively simple network configuration</li> <li>• No STP</li> <li>• No MLAG</li> <li>• No L2 loops</li> <li>• No crosslink between leafs</li> <li>• Greater route scaling and flexibility</li> </ul> <p><b>Caveats</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• No redundancy for ToR, upgrades would cause downtime</li> <li>• Many customers do not have software to support application layer redundancy</li> </ul> <p><b>Additional Comments</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• For additional bandwidth links between host and leaf may be bonded</li> </ul>



Summary	More Information
<pre>ip ospf area 0</pre>	
<p><b>leaf02 Config</b></p> <p>/etc/network/interfaces</p> <pre>auto swp1 iface swp1     address 172.16.2.1/30</pre>	
<p>/etc/frr/frr.conf</p> <pre>router ospf     router-id 10.0.0.12     interface swp1         ip ospf area 0</pre>	
<p><b>host1 Example Config (Ubuntu)</b></p> <pre>auto eth1 iface eth1 inet static     address 172.16.1.2/30     up ip route add 0.0.0.0/0     nexthop via 172.16.1.1</pre>	
<p><b>host2 Example Config (Ubuntu)</b></p> <pre>auto eth1 iface eth1 inet static     address 172.16.2.2/30     up ip route add 0.0.0.0/0     nexthop via 172.16.2.1</pre>	
FHR (First Hop Redundancy)	More Information
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• No redundancy, uses single ToR as gateway.</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Big Data validated design guide uses single attached ToR</li></ul>

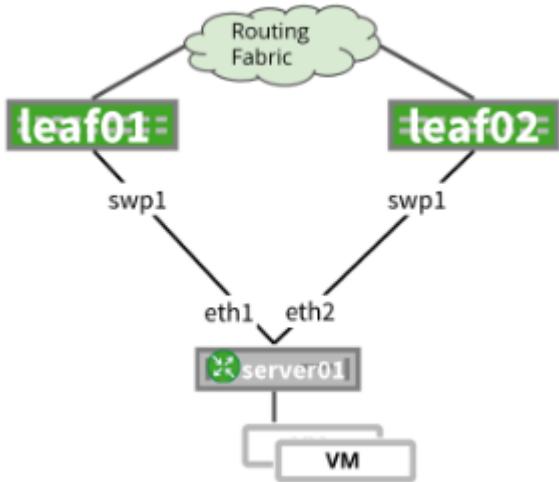
## Redistribute Neighbor



Summary	More Information
<p><a href="#">Redistribute neighbor</a> daemon grabs ARP entries dynamically, utilizes redistribute table for FRRouting to grab these dynamic entries and redistribute them into the fabric.</p>	<p><b>Benefits</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configuration in FRRouting is simple (route-map + redist table)</li> <li>Supported by Cumulus Networks</li> </ul> <p><b>Caveats</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Silent hosts don't receive traffic (depending on ARP).</li> <li>IPv4 only.</li> <li>If two VMs are on same L2 domain, they could learn about each other directly rather than utilizing gateway, which causes problems (VM migration for example, or getting their network routed). Put hosts on /32 (no other L2 adjacency).</li> <li>VM move does not trigger route withdrawal from original leaf (4 hour timeout).</li> <li>Clearing ARP impacts routing. May not be obvious.</li> <li>No L2 adjacency between servers without VXLAN.</li> </ul>
<p><b>FHR (First Hop Redundancy)</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Equal cost route installed on server/host /hypervisor to both ToRs to load balance evenly.</li> </ul>	<p><b>More Information</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><a href="#">Cumulus Networks blog post introducing redistribute neighbor</a></li> </ul>

Summary	More Information
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>For host/VM/container mobility, use the same default route on all hosts (such as x.x.x.1) but don't distribute or advertise the .1 on the ToR into the fabric. This allows the VM to use the same gateway no matter which pair of leafs it is cabled to.</li> </ul>	

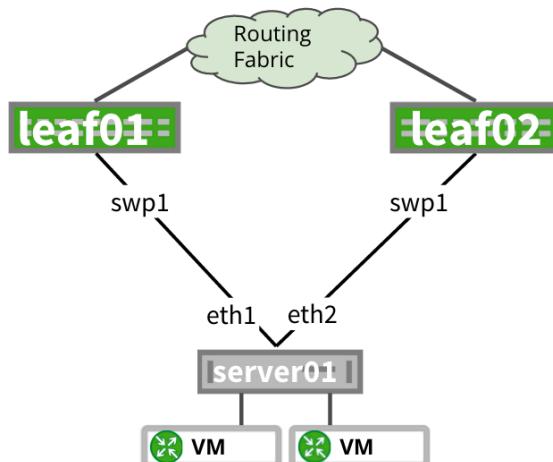
## Routing on the Host



Summary	More Information
<p>Routing on the host means there is a routing application (such as FRRouting (see page 603)) either on the bare metal host (no VMs /containers) or the hypervisor (for example, Ubuntu with KVM). This is highly recommended by the Cumulus Networks Professional Services team.</p>	<p><b>Benefits</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No requirement for MLAG</li> <li>No spanning-tree or layer 2 domain</li> <li>No loops</li> <li>3 or more ToRs can be used instead of usual 2</li> <li>Host and VM mobility</li> <li>Traffic engineering can be used to migrate traffic from one ToR to another for upgrading both hardware and software</li> </ul> <p><b>Caveats</b></p>

Summary	More Information
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Certain hypervisors or host OSes might not support a routing application like FRRouting and will require a virtual router on the hypervisor</li> <li>• No L2 adjacency between servers without VXLAN</li> </ul>
<b>FHR (First Hop Redundancy)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The first hop is still the ToR, just like redistribute neighbor</li> <li>• A default route can be advertised by all leaf/ToRs for dynamic ECMP paths</li> </ul>	<b>More Information</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Routing on the Host: An Introduction</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Installing the Cumulus Linux FRRouting Package on an Ubuntu Server</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Configuring FRRouting (see page 609)</a></li> </ul>

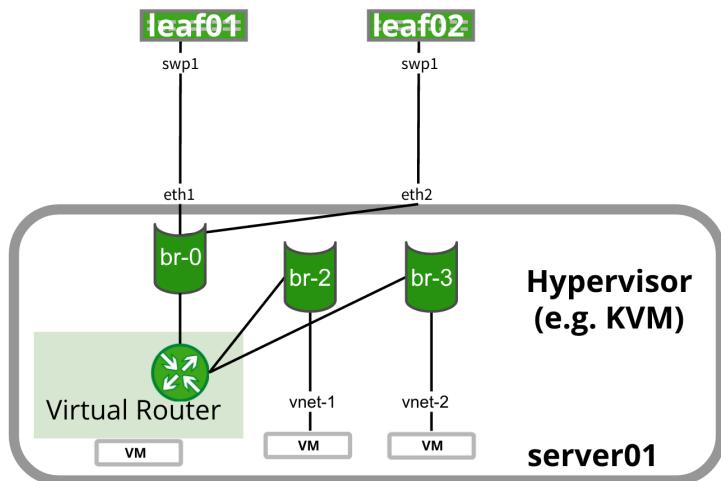
## Routing on the VM



Summary	More Information
<p>Instead of routing on the hypervisor, each virtual machine utilizes its own routing stack.</p>	<p><b>Benefits</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• In addition to routing on host:           <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Hypervisor/base OS does not need to be able to do routing</li> <li>• VMs can be authenticated into routing fabric</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Summary	More Information
	<p><b>Caveats</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All VMs must be capable of routing</li> <li>• Scale considerations might need to be taken into account — instead of one routing process, there are as many as there are VMs</li> <li>• No L2 adjacency between servers without VXLAN</li> </ul>
<b>FHR (First Hop Redundancy)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The first hop is still the ToR, just like redistribute neighbor</li> <li>• Multiple ToRs (2+) can be used</li> </ul>	<p><b>More Information</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <a href="#">Routing on the host: An Introduction</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Installing the Cumulus Linux FRRouting Package on an Ubuntu Server</a></li> <li>• <a href="#">Configuring FRRouting (see page 609)</a></li> </ul>

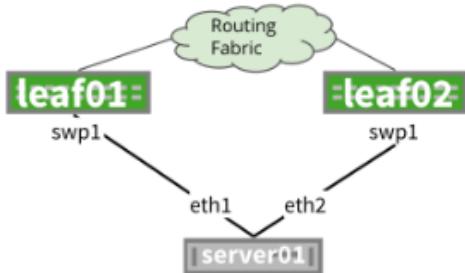
## Virtual Router



Summary	More Information
<p>Virtual router (vRouter) runs as a VM on the hypervisor/host, sends routes to the ToR using <a href="#">BGP (see page 900)</a> or <a href="#">OSPF (see page 620)</a>.</p>	<p><b>Benefits</b> In addition to routing on a host:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Multi-tenancy can work (multiple customers sharing same racks)</li> <li>• Base OS does not need to be routing capable</li> </ul> <p><b>Caveats</b></p>

Summary	More Information
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ECMP (see page 679) might not work correctly (load balancing to multiple ToRs); Linux kernel in older versions is not capable of ECMP per flow (does it per packet)</li> <li>• No L2 adjacency between servers without VXLAN</li> </ul>
FHR (First Hop Redundancy)	More Information
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The gateway would be the vRouter, which has two routes out (two ToRs)</li> <li>• Multiple vRouters could be used</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Routing on the Host: An Introduction</li> <li>• Installing the Cumulus Linux FRRouting Package on an Ubuntu Server</li> <li>• Configuring FRRouting (see page 609)</li> </ul>

## Anycast with Manual Redistribution



Summary	More Information
<p>In contrast to routing on the host (preferred), this method allows a user to route <b>to</b> the host. The ToRs are the gateway, as with redistribute neighbor, except because there is no daemon running, the networks must be manually configured under the routing process. There is a potential to black hole unless a script is run to remove the routes when the host no longer responds.</p> <p><b>Configurations</b></p> <p><b>leaf01 Config</b></p> <pre>/etc/network/interfaces</pre> <pre> auto swp1 iface swp1   address 172.16.1.1/30   </pre> <pre>/etc/frr/frr.conf</pre>	<p><b>Benefits</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Most benefits of routing <b>on</b> the host</li> <li>• No requirement for host to run routing</li> <li>• No requirement for redistribute neighbor</li> </ul> <p><b>Caveats</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Removing a subnet from one ToR and re-adding it to another (hence, network statements from your router process) is a manual process</li> </ul>

## Summary

```
router ospf
  router-id 10.0.0.11
  interface swp1
    ip ospf area 0
```

## leaf02 Config

/etc/network/interfaces

```
auto swp2
iface swp2
  address 172.16.1.1/30
```

/etc/frr/frr.conf

```
router ospf
  router-id 10.0.0.12
  interface swp1
    ip ospf area 0
```

## Example Host Config (Ubuntu)

```
auto lo
iface lo inet loopback

auto lo:1
iface lo:1 inet static
  address 172.16.1.2/32
  up ip route add 0.0.0.0/0 nexthop via 172.16
  .1.1 dev eth0 onlink nexthop via 172.16.1.1
  dev eth1 onlink

auto eth1
iface eth2 inet static
  address 172.16.1.2/32

auto eth2
iface eth2 inet static
  address 172.16.1.2/32
```

## More Information

- Network team and server team would have to be in sync, or server team controls the ToR, or automation is being used whenever VM migration happens
- When using VMs /containers it is very easy to black hole traffic, as the leafs continue to advertise prefixes even when VM is down
- No L2 adjacency between servers without VXLAN

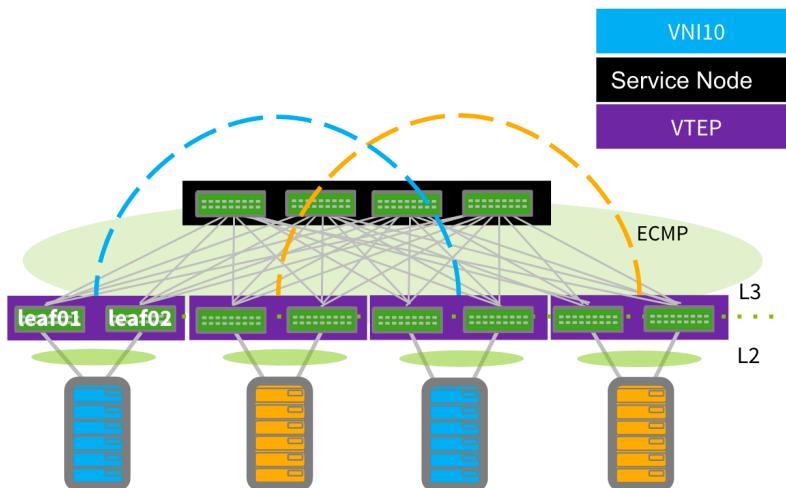
## FHR (First Hop Redundancy)

## More Information

- The gateways would be the ToRs, exactly like redistribute neighbor with an equal cost route installed

## Network Virtualization

### *LNV with MLAG*



Summary	More Information
<p>The host runs LACP (Etherchannel/bond) to the pair of ToRs. <a href="#">LNV (see page 410)</a> (Lightweight Network Virtualization) then transports the L2 bridges across an L3 fabric.</p> <p><b>Configurations</b></p> <p><b>leaf01 Config</b></p> <pre>/etc/network/interfaces</pre> <pre> auto lo iface lo inet loopback   address 10.0.0.11/32   vxrd-src-ip 10.0.0.11   vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10   clagd-vxlan-anycast-ip 36.0.0.11  auto vni-10 iface vni-10   vxlan-id 10   vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.0.0.11  auto br-10 iface br-10   bridge-ports swp1 vni-10 </pre>	<p><b>Benefits</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Layer 2 domain is reduced to the pair of ToRs</li> <li>• Aggregation layer is all L3 (VLANs do not have to exist on spine switches)</li> <li>• Greater route scaling and flexibility</li> <li>• High availability</li> </ul> <p><b>Caveats</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Needs MLAG (with the same caveats from the <a href="#">MLAG section (see page 902)</a> above) and spanning tree (<a href="#">see page 284</a>)</li> </ul>

Summary	More Information
<b>leaf02 Config</b> <pre>/etc/network/interfaces</pre> <pre> auto lo iface lo inet loopback     address 10.0.0.12/32     Vxrd-src-ip 10.0.0.12     vxrd-svcnode-ip 10.10.10.10     clagd-vxlan-anycast-ip 36.0.0.11  auto vni-10 iface vni-10     vxlan-id 10     vxlan-local-tunnelip 10.0.0.12  auto br-10 iface br-10     bridge-ports swp1 vni-10 </pre>	

Active-Active Mode	Active-Passive Mode	Demarcation	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• VRR (see page 386)</li> </ul>	None	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• ToR layer or exit leafs</li> </ul>	
		<b>More Information</b>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cumulus Linux Lightweight Network Virtualization (LNV) documentation (see page 410)</li> </ul>	

## Cumulus Networks Services Demos

The Cumulus Networks Services team demos provide a virtual environment built using either VirtualBox or `libvirt` using Vagrant to manage the VMs. This environment utilizes the reference topology shown below. Vagrant and Cumulus VX can be used together to build virtual simulations of production networks to validate configurations, develop automation code and simulate failure scenarios.

### Contents

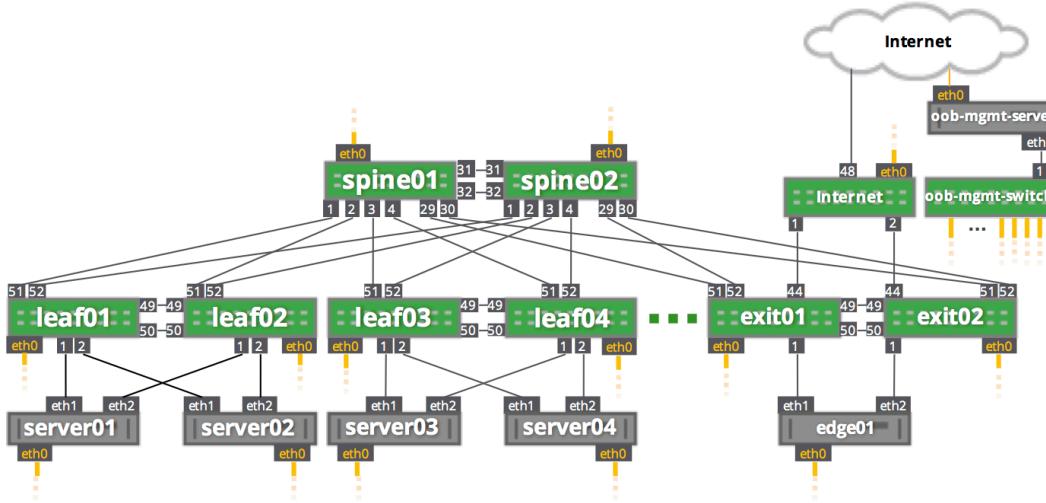
This chapter covers ...

- Reference Topology (see page 914)
- IP and MAC Addressing (see page 914)

- Building the Topology (see page 915)
  - Virtual Appliance (see page 915)
  - Hardware (see page 915)
- Demos (see page 916)

## Reference Topology

The Cumulus Networks *reference topology* includes cabling (in DOT format for dual use with PTM (see page 304)), MAC addressing, IP addressing, switches and servers. This topology is blessed by the Professional Services Team at Cumulus Networks to fit a majority of designs seen in the field.



## IP and MAC Addressing

Hostname	eth0 IP	eth0 MAC	Interface Count
oob-mgmt-server	192.168.0.254	any	
oob-mgmt-switch	192.168.0.1	any	Cumulus RMP
leaf01	192.168.0.11	A0:00:00:00:00:11	48x10g w/ 6x40g uplink
leaf02	192.168.0.12	A0:00:00:00:00:12	48x10g w/ 6x40g uplink
leaf03	192.168.0.13	A0:00:00:00:00:13	48x10g w/ 6x40g uplink
leaf04	192.168.0.14	A0:00:00:00:00:14	48x10g w/ 6x40g uplink



Hostname	eth0 IP	eth0 MAC	Interface Count
spine01	192.168.0.21	A0:00:00:00:00:21	32x40g
spine02	192.168.0.22	A0:00:00:00:00:22	32x40g
server01	192.168.0.31	A0:00:00:00:00:31	10g NICs
server02	192.168.0.32	A0:00:00:00:00:32	10g NICs
server03	192.168.0.33	A0:00:00:00:00:33	10g NICs
server04	192.168.0.34	A0:00:00:00:00:34	10g NICs
exit01	192.168.0.41	A0:00:00:00:00:41	48x10g w/ 6x40g uplink (exit leaf)
exit02	192.168.0.42	A0:00:00:00:00:42	48x10g w/ 6x40g uplink (exit leaf)
edge01	192.168.0.51	A0:00:00:00:00:51	10g NICs (customer edge device, firewall, load balancer, etc.)
internet	192.168.0.253	any	(represents internet provider edge device)

## Building the Topology

### Virtual Appliance

You can build out the reference topology in hardware or using Cumulus VX (the free Cumulus Networks virtual appliance). The [Cumulus Reference Topology using Vagrant](#) is essentially the reference topology built out inside Vagrant with VirtualBox or KVM. The installation and setup instructions for bringing up the entire reference topology on a laptop or server are on the [cldemo-vagrant GitHub repo](#).

### Hardware

Any switch from the [hardware compatibility list](#) is compatible with the topology as long as you follow the interface count from the table above. Of course, in your own production environment, you don't have to use exactly the same devices and cabling as outlined above.



## Demos

You can find an up to date list of all the demos in the [cldemo-vagrant GitHub repository](#), which is available to anyone free of charge.

## Docker on Cumulus Linux

Cumulus Linux 3.4 is based on Linux kernel 4.1, which supports the [Docker](#) engine. Docker can be installed directly on a Cumulus Linux switch, and Docker containers can be run natively on the switch. This section covers the installation and set up instructions for Docker.

### Setting up Docker on Cumulus Linux

#### Configure the Repositories

1. Add the following line to the end of `/etc/apt/sources.list.d/jessie.list` in a text editor, and save the file:

```
cumulus@switch:$ sudo nano /etc/apt/sources.list.d/jessie.list
...
deb http://httpredir.debian.org/debian jessie main contrib non-free
deb-src http://httpredir.debian.org/debian jessie main contrib
non-free
```

2. Create the `/etc/apt/sources.list.d/docker.list` file, add the following line in a text editor, and save the file:

```
cumulus@switch:$ sudo nano /etc/apt/sources.list.d/docker.list
deb https://apt.dockerproject.org/repo debian-jessie main
```

#### Install the Authentication Key

1. Install the authentication key for Docker:

```
cumulus@switch:$ sudo apt-key adv --keyserver hkp://p80.pool.sks-
keyservers.net:80 --recv-keys
58118E89F3A912897C070ADBF76221572C52609D
```



## Install the docker-engine Package

1. Install Docker:

```
cumulus@switch:$ sudo -E apt-get update -y  
cumulus@switch:$ sudo -E apt-get install docker-engine -qy
```

## Configure systemd for Docker

1. Add docker as a new line at the bottom of /etc/vrf/systemd.conf, and save the file.

```
cumulus@switch:$ sudo nano /etc/vrf/systemd.conf  
  
...  
  
docker
```

2. Create a directory for the systemd configuration file for Docker:

```
cumulus@switch:$ sudo mkdir -p /etc/systemd/system/docker.  
service.d/
```

3. In a text editor, create a file called /etc/systemd/system/docker.service.d/noiptables-mgmt-vrf.conf, add the following lines to it, then save the file:

```
cumulus@switch:$ sudo nano /etc/systemd/system/docker.service.d/  
noiptables-mgmt-vrf.conf  
  
[Service]  
ExecStart=  
ExecStart=/usr/bin/docker daemon --iptables=false --ip-  
masq=false --ip-forward=false
```

## Stop/Disable the Docker Services

1. Stop the various Docker services:

```
cumulus@switch:$ sudo systemctl daemon-reload  
cumulus@switch:$ sudo systemctl stop docker.socket  
cumulus@switch:$ sudo systemctl disable docker.socket  
cumulus@switch:$ sudo systemctl stop docker.service  
cumulus@switch:$ sudo systemctl disable docker.service
```



## *Launch Docker and the Ubuntu Container*

1. Enable the Docker management daemon so it starts when the switch boots:

```
cumulus@switch:$ sudo systemctl enable docker@mgmt
```

2. Start the Docker management daemon:

```
cumulus@switch:$ sudo systemctl start docker@mgmt
```

3. Run the Ubuntu container and launch the terminal instance:

```
cumulus@switch:$ docker run -i -t ubuntu /bin/bash
```

## Performance Notes

Keep in mind switches are not servers, in terms of the hardware that drives them. As such, you should be mindful of the types of applications you want to run in containers on a Cumulus Linux switch. In general, depending upon the configuration of the container, you can expect DHCP servers, custom scripts and other lightweight services to run well. However, VPN, NAT and encryption-type services are CPU-intensive and could lead to undesirable effects on critical applications. Use of any resource-intensive services should be avoided and is not supported.

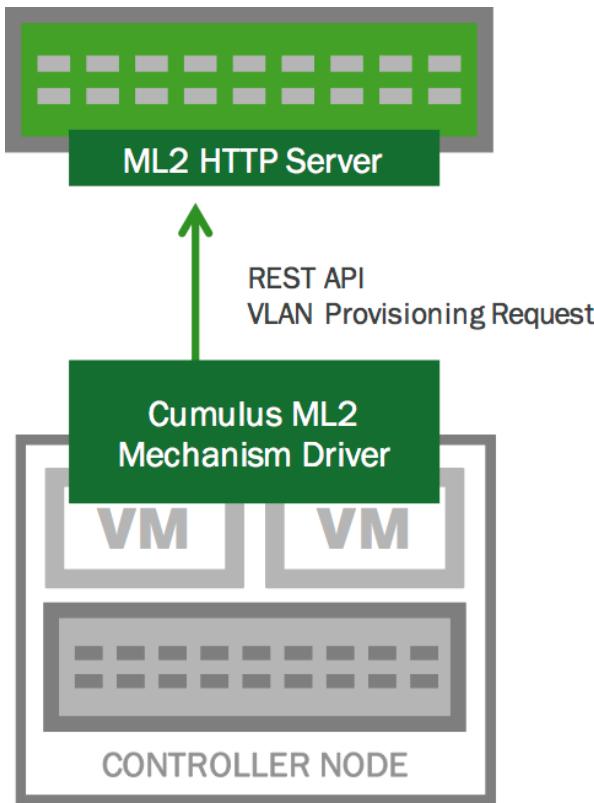
## OpenStack Neutron ML2 and Cumulus Linux

The Modular Layer 2 (ML2) plugin is a framework that allows OpenStack Networking to utilize a variety of non-vendor-specific layer 2 networking technologies. The ML2 framework simplifies adding support for new layer 2 networking technologies, requiring much less initial and ongoing effort — specifically, it enables dynamic provisioning of VLAN/VXLAN on switches in OpenStack environment instead of manually provisioning L2 connectivity for each VM.

The plugin supports configuration caching. The cached configuration is replayed back to the Cumulus Linux switch from Cumulus ML2 mechanism driver when a switch or process restart is detected.

In order to deploy [OpenStack ML2](#) in a network with Cumulus Linux switches, you need the following:

- A REST API, which is installed in Cumulus Linux.
- The Cumulus Networks Modular Layer 2 (ML2) mechanism driver for OpenStack, which you install on the OpenStack Neutron controller node. It's available as a Python package from upstream.



## Contents

- Configuring the REST API (see page 919)
- Installing and Configuring the Cumulus Networks Modular Layer 2 Mechanism Driver (see page 920)
- Demo (see page 920)

## Configuring the REST API

1. Configure the relevant settings in `/etc/restapi.conf`:

```
[ML2]
#local_bind = 10.40.10.122
#service_node = 10.40.10.1

# Add the list of inter switch links that
# need to have the vlan included on it by default
# Not needed if doing Hierarchical port binding
#trunk_interfaces = uplink
```

2. Restart the REST API service for the configuration changes to take effect:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo systemctl restart restserver
```



Additional REST API calls have been added to support the configuration of bridge using the bridge name instead of network ID.

## Installing and Configuring the Cumulus Networks Modular Layer 2 Mechanism Driver

You need to install the Cumulus Networks ML2 mechanism driver on your Neutron host, which is available upstream:

```
root@neutron:~# git clone https://github.com/openstack/networking-cumulus.git
root@neutron:~# cd networking-cumulus
root@neutron:~# python setup.py install
root@neutron:~# neutron-db-manage upgrade head
```

Then configure the host to use the ML2 driver:

```
root@neutron:~# openstack-config --set /etc/neutron/plugins/ml2/ml2_conf.ini mechanism_drivers linuxbridge,cumulus
```

Finally, list the Cumulus Linux switches to configure. Edit `/etc/neutron/plugins/ml2/ml2_conf.ini` in a text editor and add the IP addresses of the Cumulus Linux switches to the `switches` line. For example:

```
[ml2_cumulus]
switches="192.168.10.10,192.168.20.20"
```

The ML2 mechanism driver contains the following configurable parameters. You configure them in the `/etc/neutron/plugins/ml2/ml2_conf.ini` file.

- `switches` — The list of Cumulus Linux switches connected to the Neutron host. Specify a list of IP addresses.
- `scheme` — The scheme (for example, HTTP) for the base URL for the ML2 API.
- `protocol_port` — The protocol port for the base URL for the ML2 API. The default value is `8000`.
- `sync_time` — A periodic time interval for polling the Cumulus Linux switch. The default value is `30` seconds.
- `spf_enable` — Enables/disables SPF for the bridge. The default value is `False`.
- `new_bridge` — Enables/disables [VLAN-aware bridge mode \(see page 328\)](#) for the bridge configuration. The default value is `False`, so a traditional mode bridge is created.

## Demo

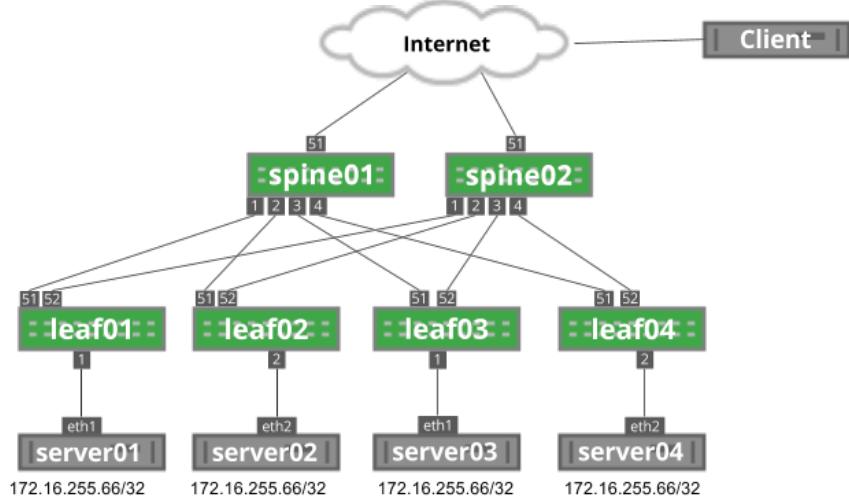
A demo involving OpenStack with Cumulus Linux is available in the [Cumulus Networks knowledge base](#). It demonstrates dynamic provisioning of VLANs using a virtual simulation of two Cumulus VX leaf switches and two CentOS 7 (RDO Project) servers; collectively they comprise an OpenStack environment.

## Anycast Design Guide

Cumulus Networks' [Routing on the Host](#) provides the ability to run [OSPF](#) (see page 620) or [BGP](#) (see page 636) directly on server hosts. This can enable a network architecture known as *anycast*, where many servers can provide the same service without needing layer 2 extensions or load balancer appliances.

Anycast is not a new protocol or protocol implementation and does not require any additional network configuration. Anycast leverages the [equal cost multipath](#) (see page 679) (ECMP) capabilities inherent in layer 3 networks to provide stateless load sharing services.

The following image depicts an example anycast network. Each server is advertising the 172.16.255.66/32 anycast IP address.

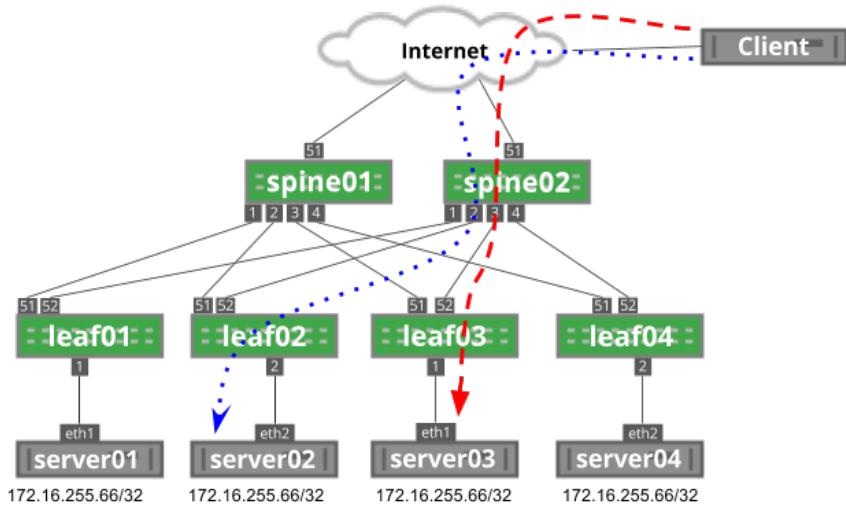


## Anycast Architecture

Anycast relies on layer 3 equal cost multipath functionality to provide load sharing throughout the network. Each server announces a route for a service. As the route is propagated through the network, each network device sees the route as originating from multiple places. As an end user connects to the anycast IP, each network device performs a hardware hash of the layer 3 and layer 4 headers to determine which path to use.

Every packet in a flow from an end user has the same source and destination IP address as well as source and destination port numbers. The hash performed by the network devices results in the same answer for every packet, ensuring all packets in a flow are sent to the same destination.

In the following image, the client initiates two flows: the blue, dotted flow and the red dashed flow. Each flow has the same source IP address (the client's IP address), destination IP address (172.16.255.66) and same destination port (depending on the service; for example, DNS is port 53). Each flow has a unique source port generated by the client.



In this example, each flow hashes to different servers based on this source port, which you can see when you run `ip route show` to the destination IP address:

```
cumulus@spine02$ ip route show 172.16.255.66
172.16.255.66 proto zebra metric 20
    nexthop via 169.254.64.0 dev swp1 weight 1
    nexthop via 169.254.64.2 dev swp2 weight 1
    nexthop via 169.254.64.2 dev swp3 weight 1
    nexthop via 169.254.64.0 dev swp4 weight 1
```

On a Cumulus Linux switch, you can see the hardware hash with the `cl-ecmpcalc` command. In Figure 2, two flows originate from a remote user destined to the anycast IP address. Each session has a different source port. Using the `cl-ecmpcalc` command, you can see that the sessions were hashed to different egress ports.

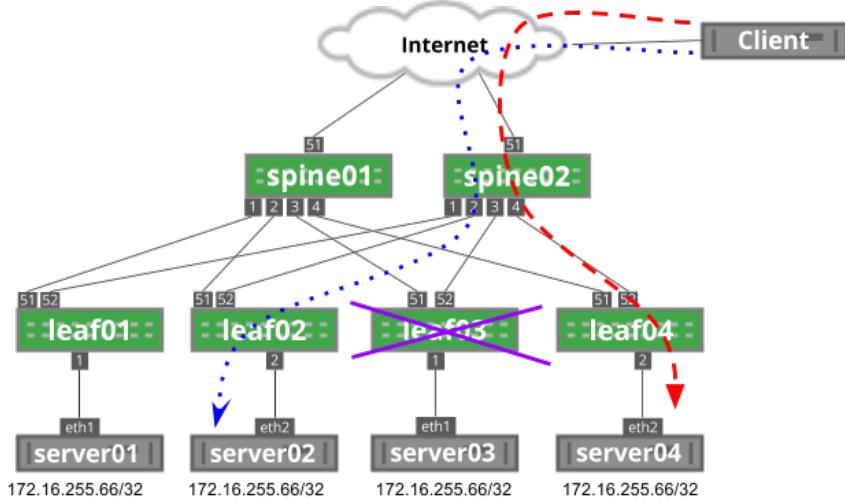
```
cumulus@spine02$ sudo cl-ecmpcalc -p udp -s 10.2.0.100 --sport 32700 -d 172.31.255.66 --dport 53 -i swp51
ecmpcalc: will query hardware
swp2

cumulus@spine02$ sudo cl-ecmpcalc -p udp -s 10.2.0.100 --sport 31884 -d 172.31.255.66 --dport 53 -i swp51
ecmpcalc: will query hardware
swp3
```

## Anycast with TCP and UDP

A key component to the functionality and cost effective nature of anycast is that the network does not maintain state for flows. Every packet is handled individually through the routing table, saving memory and resources that would be required to track individual flows, similar to the functionality of a load balancing appliance.

As previously described, every packet in a flow hashes to the same next hop. However, if that next hop is no longer valid, the traffic flows to another anycast next hop instead. For example, in the image below, if leaf03 fails, traffic flows to a different anycast address; in this case, server04:



For stateless applications that rely on UDP, like DNS, this does not present a problem. However, for stateful applications that rely on TCP, like HTTP, this breaks any existing traffic flows, such as a file download. If the TCP three-way handshake was established on server03, after the failure, server04 would have no connection built and would send a TCP reset message back to the client, restarting the session.

This is not to say that it is not possible to use TCP-based applications for anycast. However, TCP applications in an anycast environment should have short-lived flows (measured in seconds or less) to reduce the impact of network changes or failures.

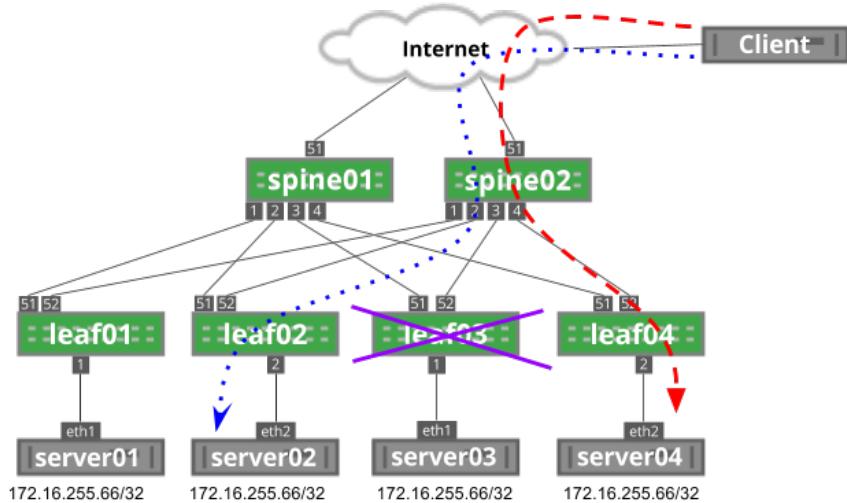
## Resilient Hashing

Resilient hashing (see page 683) provides a method to prevent failures from impacting the hash result of unrelated flows. However, resilient hashing does not prevent rehashing when new next hops are added.

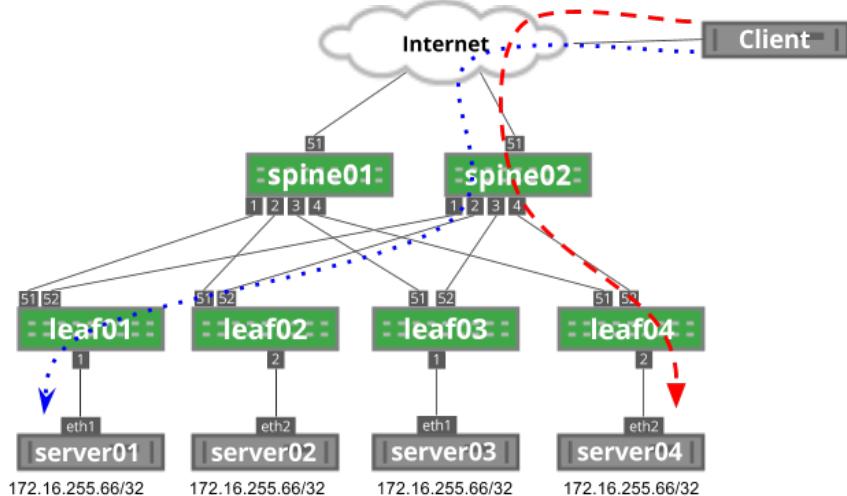
As previously mentioned, the hardware hashing function determines which path gets used for a given flow. The simplified version of that hash is the combination of protocol, source IP address, destination IP address, source layer 4 port and destination layer 4 port. The full hashing function includes not only these fields but also the list of possible layer 3 next hop addresses. The hash result is passed through a *modulo* of the number of next hop addresses. If the number of next hop addresses changes, through either addition or subtraction of the next hops, this changes the hash result for all traffic, including flows that have already established.

Continuing with the example in Figure 3, leaf03 is in a failed state, so traffic is hashing to server04. This is a result of the hash considering three possible next hop IPs (leaf01, leaf02, leaf04). When leaf03 is brought back online, the number of possible next hop IPs grows to four. This changes the modulo value that is part of the hashing function, which may result in traffic being sent to a different server, even if previously unaffected by the change.

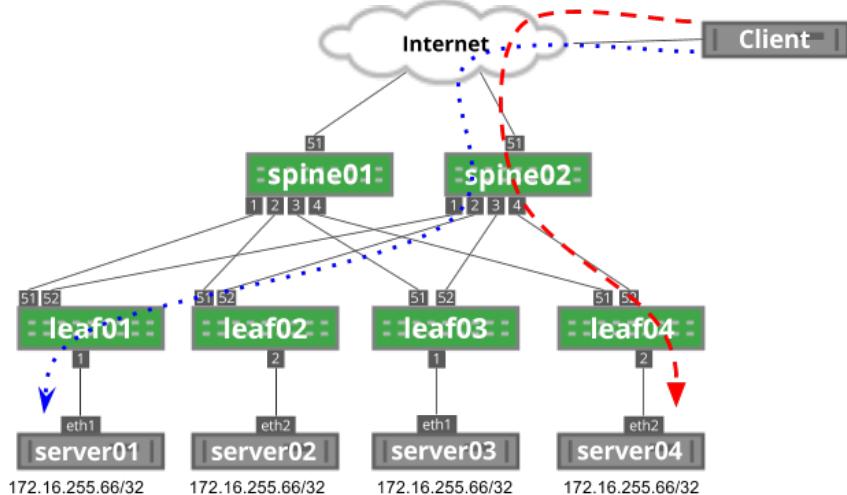
As you can see below, leaf03 is in a failed state. The blue dotted flow uses leaf02 to reach server02.



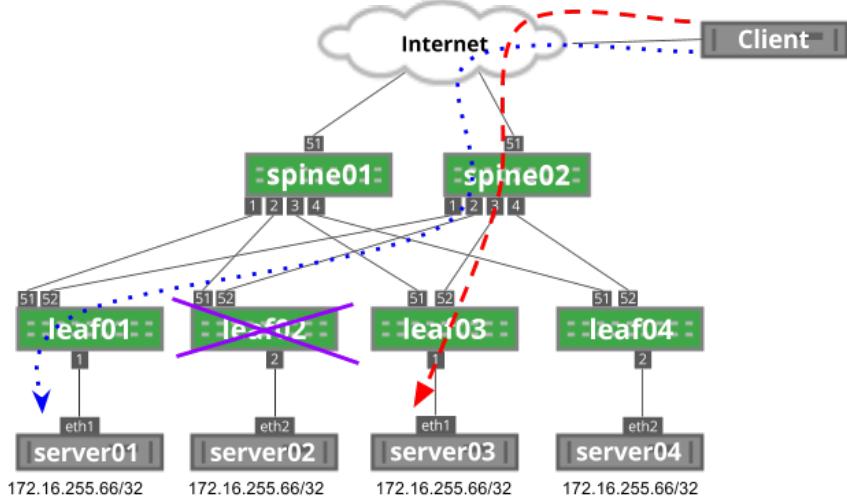
As leaf03 is brought back into service, the hashing function on spine02 changes, impacting the blue dotted flow:



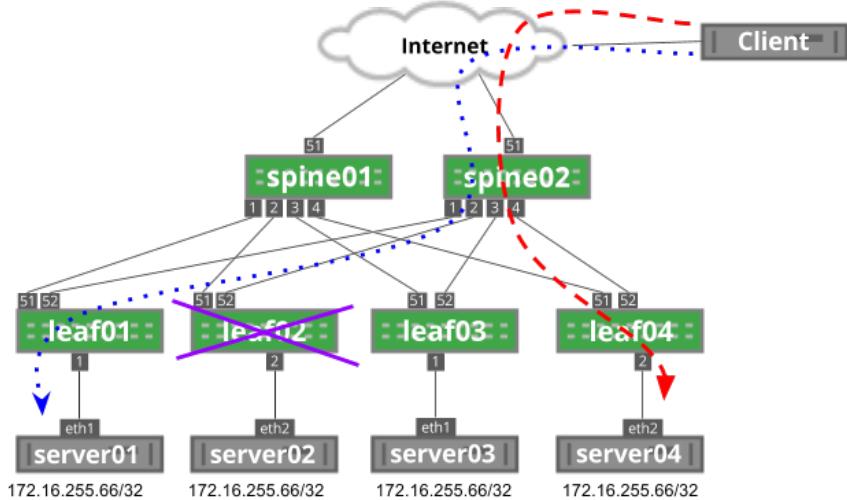
Just as the addition of a device can impact unrelated traffic, the removal of a device can also impact unrelated traffic, since again, the modulo of the hash function is changed. You can see this below, where the blue dotted flow goes through leaf01 and the red dashed line goes through leaf04.



Now, leaf02 has failed. As a result, the modulo on spine02 has changed from four possible next hops to only three next hops. In this example, the red dashed line has rehashed to leaf03:



To help solve this issue, resilient hashing can prevent traffic flows from shifting on unrelated failure scenarios. With resilient hashing enabled, the failure of leaf02 does not impact both existing flows, since they do not currently flow through leaf02:



Although resilient hashing can prevent rehashing on next hop failure, it cannot prevent rehashing on next hop addition.

You can read more information on resilient hashing in the [ECMP chapter \(see page 679\)](#).

## Applications for Anycast

As previously mentioned, UDP-based applications are great candidates for anycast architectures, such as NTP or DNS.

When considering applications to be deployed in an anycast scenario, the first two questions to answer are:

- Whether the application relies on TCP for proper sequencing of data.
- Whether the application relies on more than one session as part of the application.



## *Applications with Multiple Connections*

The network has no knowledge of any sessions or relationships between different sessions for the same application. This affects protocols that rely on more than one TCP or UDP connection to function properly — one example being FTP.

FTP data transfers require two connections: one for control and one for the file transfer. These two connections are independent, with their own TCP ports. Consider the scenario where an FTP server was deployed in an anycast architecture. When the secondary data connection is initiated, the traffic is destined initially to the same FTP server IP address, but the network hashes this traffic as a new, unique flow because the ports are different. This may result in the new session ending up on a new server. The new server would only accept that data connection if the FTP server application was capable of robust information sharing, as it has no history of the original request in the control session.

## *Initiating Traffic vs. Receiving Traffic*

It is also important to understand that an outbound TCP session should never be initiated over an anycast IP address, as traffic that originates from an anycast IP address may not return to the same anycast server after the network hash. Contrast this with inbound sessions, where the network hash is the same for all packets in a flow, so the inbound traffic will hash to the same anycast server.

## *TCP and Anycast*

TCP-based applications can be used with anycast, with the following recommendations:

- TCP sessions are short lived.
- The impact of a failed session or TCP reset does not impact the application. For example, a web page refresh is acceptable.
- There is application-level session management that is completely independent of the TCP session.
- A redirection middleware layer handles incorrectly hashed flows.

TCP applications that have longer-lived flows should not be used as anycast services. For example:

- FTP or other large file transfers.
- Transactions that must be completed and journaled. For example, financial transactions.
- Streaming media without application-level automated recovery.

It should be noted that anycast TCP is possible and has been implemented by a number of organizations, one notable example being LinkedIn.

## **Conclusion**

Anycast can provide a low cost, highly scalable implementation for services. However, the limitations inherent in network-based ECMP makes anycast challenging to integrate with some applications. An anycast architecture is best suited for stateless applications or applications that are able to share session state at the application layer.



## RDMA over Converged Ethernet - RoCE

*RDMA over Converged Ethernet (RoCE)* provides the ability to write to compute or storage elements using remote direct memory access (RDMA) over an Ethernet network instead of using host CPUs. RoCE relies on congestion control and lossless Ethernet to operate. Cumulus Linux supports features that can enable lossless Ethernet for RoCE environments. Note that while Cumulus Linux can support RoCE environments, the hosts send and receive the RoCE packets.

RoCE helps you obtain a *converged network*, where all services run over the Ethernet infrastructure, including Infiniband apps.

There are two versions of RoCE, which run at separate layers of the stack:

- RoCEv1, which runs at the link layer and cannot be run over a routed network. Therefore, it requires the link layer [priority flow control \(see page 256\)](#) (PFC) to be enabled.
- RoCEv2, which runs over layer 3. Since it's a routed solution, Cumulus Networks recommends you use [explicit congestion notification \(see page 261\)](#) (ECN) with RoCEv2 since ECN bits are communicated end-to-end across a routed network.

## Contents

This chapter covers ...

- [Enabling RDMA over Converged Ethernet with PFC \(see page 927\)](#)
- [Enabling RDMA over Converged Ethernet with ECN \(see page 928\)](#)
- [Related Information \(see page 929\)](#)

## Enabling RDMA over Converged Ethernet with PFC

RoCEv1 uses the Infiniband (IB) Protocol over converged Ethernet. The IB global route header rides directly on top of the Ethernet header. The lossless Ethernet layer handles congestion hop by hop.

To learn the Cumulus Linux settings you need to configure to support RoCEv1, see the example configuration in the [PFC \(see page 256\)](#) section of the [Buffer and Queue Management \(see page 250\)](#) chapter.



On Mellanox switches, you can alternately use NCLU to configure RoCE with PFC:

```
cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 storage-optimized pfc  
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending  
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit
```

These commands create the following configuration in the `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf` file. They configure PFC on cos 1, ECN on cos 0 and 1 in `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf` file. They also add a flow control buffer pool for lossless traffic and change the buffer limits in the `/usr/lib/python2.7/dist-packages/cumulus/__chip_config/mlx/datapath.conf` file.

```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cat /etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf
```

```

...
ecn_red.port_group_list = [ROCE_ECN]
pfc.ROCE_PFC.port_set = swp1
pfc.ROCE_PFC.cos_list = [1]
pfc.ROCE_PFC.xoff_size = 18000
pfc.ROCE_PFC.xon_delta = 18000
pfc.ROCE_PFC.tx_enable = true
pfc.ROCE_PFC.rx_enable = true
pfc.ROCE_PFC.port_buffer_bytes = 70000
ecn_red.ROCE_ECN.port_set = swp1
ecn_red.ROCE_ECN.cos_list = [0,1]
ecn_red.ROCE_ECN.min_threshold_bytes = 150000
ecn_red.ROCE_ECN.max_threshold_bytes = 1500000
ecn_red.ROCE_ECN.ecn_enable = true
ecn_red.ROCE_ECN.red_enable = true
ecn_red.ROCE_ECN.probability = 100
...

```



While [link pause \(see page 259\)](#) is another way to provide lossless ethernet, PFC is the preferred method. PFC allows more granular control by pausing the traffic flow for a given CoS group, rather than the entire link.

## Enabling RDMA over Converged Ethernet with ECN

RoCEv2 requires flow control for lossless Ethernet. RoCEv2 uses the Infiniband (IB) Transport Protocol over UDP. The IB transport protocol includes an end-to-end reliable delivery mechanism, and has its own sender notification mechanism.

RoCEv2 congestion management uses RFC 3168 to signal congestion experienced to the receiver. The receiver generates an RoCEv2 congestion notification packet directed to the source of the packet.

To learn the Cumulus Linux settings you need to configure to support RoCEv2, see the example configuration in the [ECN \(see page 261\)](#) section of the [Buffer and Queue Management \(see page 250\)](#) chapter.



On Mellanox switches, you can alternately use NCLU to configure RoCE with ECN:

```

cumulus@switch:~$ net add interface swp1 storage-optimized
cumulus@switch:~$ net pending
cumulus@switch:~$ net commit

```

These commands create the following configuration in the `/etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf` file:



```
cumulus@switch:~$ sudo cat /etc/cumulus/datapath/traffic.conf
...
ecn_red.port_group_list = [ROCE_ECN]
ecn_red.ROCE_ECN.port_set = swp1
ecn_red.ROCE_ECN.cos_list = [0,1]
ecn_red.ROCE_ECN.min_threshold_bytes = 150000
ecn_red.ROCE_ECN.max_threshold_bytes = 1500000
ecn_red.ROCE_ECN.ecn_enable = true
ecn_red.ROCE_ECN.red_enable = true
ecn_red.ROCE_ECN.probability = 100
...
...
```

The `storage-optimized` command changes the buffer limits in the `/usr/lib/python2.7/dist-packages/cumulus/__chip_config/mlx/datapath.conf` file.

It also enables drop behaviors and Random Early Detection (RED). RED identifies packets that have been added to a long egress queue. The ECN action marks the packet and forwards it, requiring the packet to be ECT-capable. However, the drop action drops the packet, requiring the packet to **not** be ECT-capable.

## Related Information

- RoCE introduction — [roceinitiative.org](http://roceinitiative.org)
- RoCEv2 congestion management — [community.mellanox.com](http://community.mellanox.com)
- Configuring RoCE over a DSCP-based lossless network with a Mellanox Spectrum switch



# Index

4

40G ports [246](#)  
logical limitations [246](#)

8

802.1p [250](#)  
    class of service [250](#)  
802.3ad link aggregation [383](#)

A

ABRs [622](#)  
    area border routers [622](#)  
access control lists [137](#)  
access ports [346](#)  
ACL policy files [152](#)  
ACL rules [255](#)  
ACLs [137, 140, 159](#)  
    chains [140](#)  
    QoS [159](#)  
active-active mode [389, 438](#)  
    VRR [389](#)  
    VXLAN [438](#)  
active listener ports [185](#)  
Algorithm Longest Prefix Match [595](#)  
    routing [595](#)  
ALPM mode [595](#)  
    routing [595](#)  
AOC cables [23](#)  
apt-get [68](#)  
area border routers [622](#)  
    ABRs [622](#)  
arp cache [818](#)  
ASN [638](#)  
    autonomous system number [638](#)  
auto-negotiation [227](#)  
autonomous system number [638](#)  
    BGP [638](#)



autoprovisioning 74

## B

BFD 309, 677

  Bidirectional Forwarding Detection 309

  echo function 677

BGP 636, 640, 696

  Border Gateway Protocol 636

  ECMP 640

  virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) 696

BGP peering relationships 652, 652

  external 652

  internal 652

bonds 316, 383

  LACP Bypass 383

boot recovery 770

bpdufilter 294

  and STP 294

BPDU guard 291

  and STP 291

brctl 25

bridge assurance 294

  and STP 294

bridges 322, 323, 323, 324, 328, 342, 346, 346

  access ports 346

  adding IP addresses 324

  MAC addresses 323

  MTU 322

  trunk ports 346

  untagged frames 342

  VLAN-aware 323, 328

## C

cable connectivity 23

cabling 304

  Prescriptive Topology Manager 304

chain 140

cl-acltool 137, 256, 819

clagctl 370

class of service 250

cl-cfg 193, 783



cl-ecmpcalc 680  
cl-license 23  
cl-netstat 813  
cl-ospf6 635  
Clos topology 602  
cl-resource-query 193, 771  
cl-support 762  
convergence 601  
    routing 601  
Cumulus Linux 19, 20, 30, 30, 34, 406  
    installing 19, 34  
    reprovisioning 30  
    uninstalling 30  
    upgrading 20  
    VXLAN 406  
cumulus user 103

## D

DAC cables 23  
daemons 183  
datapath 250, 257, 259  
    link pause 259  
    priority flow control 257  
datapath.conf 250  
date 97  
    setting 97  
deb 73  
debugging 760  
decode-syseeprom 773  
differentiated services code point 250  
dmidecode 774  
dpkg 71  
dpkg-reconfigure 96  
DSCP 250  
    differentiated services code point 250  
DSCP marking 256  
dual-connected hosts 354  
duplex interfaces 237  
dynamic routing 311  
    and PTM 311



## E

eBGP 638  
    external BGP 638  
ebtables 137, 144  
    memory spaces 144  
echo function 677, 677  
    BFD 677  
    PTM 677  
ECMP 603, 632, 640, 686, 1  
    BGP 640  
    equal cost multi-pathing 603  
    monitoring 1  
    OSPF 632  
    resilient hashing 686  
ECMP hashing 680, 683  
    resilient hashing 683  
EGP 604  
    Exterior Gateway Protocol 604  
equal cost multipath 680  
    ECMP hashing 680  
equal cost multi-pathing 603  
    ECMP 603  
ERSPAN 820  
    network troubleshooting 820  
Ethernet management port 20  
ethtool 248, 812  
    switch ports 248  
external BGP 638  
    eBGP 638

## F

fast convergence 650  
    BGP 650  
First Hop Redundancy Protocol 389  
    VRR 389  
FRRouting 311, 311, 603  
    and PTM 311, 311  
    dynamic routing 603

## G



glob 221

Graphviz 304

## H

hardware 773

    monitoring 773

hardware compatibility list 17

hash distribution 316

HCL 17

head end replication 412

    LNV 412

high availability 603

host entries 771

    monitoring 771

hostname 21

hsflowd 833

hwclock 97

## I

iBGP 638

    internal BGP 638

ifdown 210

ifquery 214, 808

ifup 209

ifupdown 209

ifupdown2 219, 344, 807, 807, 807

    excluding interfaces 807

    logging 807

    purging IP addresses 219

    troubleshooting 807

    VLAN tagging 344

IGMP snooping 376, 394

    MLAG 376

IGP 604

    Interior Gateway Protocol 604

image contents 32

installing 19

    Cumulus Linux 19

interface counters 813

interface dependencies 213

interfaces 225, 247



statistics 247

internal BGP 638

iBGP 638

ip6tables 137

IP addresses 219

  purging 219

iproute2 811

  failures 811

iptables 137

IPv4 routes 640

  BGP 640

IPv6 routes 640

  BGP 640

## L

LACP 316, 352

  MLAG 352

LACP Bypass 383

layer 3 access ports 26

  configuring 26

LDAP 112

leaf-spine topology 602

license 22

  installing 22

lightweight network virtualization 410, 412, 413, 459

  head end replication 412

  service node replication 413

link aggregation 316

Link Layer Discovery Protocol 298

link-local IPv6 addresses 665

  BGP 665

link pause 259

  datapath 259

link-state advertisement 620

LLDP 298, 304

  SNMP 304

lldpcli 299

lldpd 298, 306

LNV 410, 410, 412, 413, 459, 459

  head end replication 412

  service node replication 413

  VXLAN 410, 459

load balancing 603



logging [764](#), [807](#), [807](#)  
    ifupdown2 [807](#)  
    networking service [807](#)  
logging neighbor state changes [665](#)  
    BGP [665](#)  
logical switch [352](#)  
longest prefix match [595](#)  
    routing [595](#)  
loopback interface [27](#)  
    configuring [27](#)  
LSA [620](#)  
    link-state advertisement [620](#)  
LSDB [620](#)  
    link-state database [620](#)  
lshw [774](#)

## M

MAC entries [771](#)  
    monitoring [771](#)  
Mako templates [222](#), [809](#)  
    debugging [809](#)  
mangle table [256](#)  
    ACL rules [256](#)  
memory spaces [144](#)  
    ebtables [144](#)  
MLAG [352](#), [371](#), [371](#), [371](#), [376](#), [377](#), [380](#)  
    backup link [371](#)  
    IGMP snooping [376](#)  
    MTU [377](#)  
    peer link states [371](#)  
    protodown state [371](#)  
    STP [380](#)  
MLD snooping [395](#)  
monitoring [95](#), [760](#), [771](#), [777](#), [781](#), [812](#), [832](#), [835](#)  
    hardware watchdog [777](#)  
    Net-SNMP [835](#)  
    network traffic [832](#)  
mstpcctl [288](#), [348](#)  
MTU [238](#), [322](#), [377](#), [811](#)  
    bridges [322](#)  
    failures [811](#)  
    MLAG [377](#)  
multi-Chassis Link Aggregation [352](#)



MLAG 352  
multiple bridges 341  
mz 818  
  traffic generator 818

## N

name switch service 111  
Netfilter 137  
Net-SNMP 835  
networking service 807  
  logging 807  
network interfaces 209, 225  
  ifupdown 209  
network traffic 832  
  monitoring 832  
network troubleshooting 828  
  tcpdump 828  
network virtualization 400, 406, 556, 569  
  VMware NSX 556, 569  
nonatomic updates 146  
  switchd 146  
non-blocking networks 603  
NSS 111  
  name switch service 111  
NTP 98  
  time 98  
ntpd 98

## O

ONIE 19, 31  
  rescue mode 31  
onie-select 30  
Open Network Install Environment 19  
Open Shortest Path First Protocol 620, 634  
  OSPFv2 620  
  OSPFv3 634  
open source contributions 17  
OSPF 625, 631, 632, 633  
  ECMP 632  
  reconvergence 633  
  summary LSA 625



unnumbered interfaces [631](#)

ospf6d.conf [635](#)

OSPFv2 [620](#)

OSPFv3 [634, 635](#)

    unnumbered interfaces [635](#)

over-subscribed networks [603](#)

## P

packages [68](#)

    managing [68](#)

packet buffering [250](#)

    datapath [250](#)

packet queueing [250](#)

    datapath [250](#)

packet scheduling [250](#)

    datapath [250](#)

PAM [111](#)

    pluggable authentication modules [111](#)

parent interfaces [216](#)

password [103](#)

    default [103](#)

passwords [20](#)

peer groups [651](#)

    BGP [651](#)

Per VLAN Spanning Tree [285](#)

    PVST [285](#)

ping [817](#)

pluggable authentication modules [111](#)

policy.conf [154](#)

port lists [221](#)

port speeds [237](#)

Prescriptive Topology Manager [304](#)

priority flow control [257](#)

    datapath [257](#)

priority groups [250](#)

    datapath [250](#)

privileged commands [106](#)

protocol tuning [601, 669](#)

    BGP [669](#)

    routing [601](#)

protodown state [371](#)

    MLAG [371](#)

PTM [304, 677](#)



echo function [677](#)  
Prescriptive Topology Manager [304](#)  
ptmctl [312](#)  
ptmd [304](#)  
PTM scripts [307](#)  
PVRST [285](#)  
    Rapid PVST [285](#)  
PVST [285](#)  
    Per VLAN Spanning Tree [285](#)

## Q

QoS [159](#)  
    ACLs [159](#)  
QSFP [814](#)  
Quagga [609](#)  
    configuring [609](#)  
quality of service [250](#)  
querier [395](#)  
    IGMP/MLD snooping [395](#)

## R

Rapid PVST [285](#)  
    PVRST [285](#)  
read-only mode [668](#)  
    BGP [668](#)  
recommended configuration [51](#)  
reconvergence [633](#)  
    OSPF [633](#)  
repositories [73](#)  
    other packages [73](#)  
rescue mode [31](#)  
resilient hashing [683, 686](#)  
    ECMP [686](#)  
restart [193](#)  
    switchd [193](#)  
root user [20, 103](#)  
route advertisements [638](#)  
    BGP [638](#)  
route maps [595, 632, 668](#)  
    BGP [595, 632, 668](#)  
route reflectors [638](#)



BGP 638  
routes 771  
    monitoring 771  
routing protocols 600  
RSTP 285

## S

sensors command 774  
serial console management 20  
service node replication 413  
    LNV 413  
services 183  
sFlow 832  
sFlow visualization tools 835  
SFP 248, 814  
    switch ports 248  
single user mode 770  
smonctl 776  
smond 776  
snmpd 835  
sources.list 73  
SPAN 820  
    network troubleshooting 820  
spanning tree parameters 295  
Spanning Tree Protocol 284, 328  
    STP 284  
        VLAN-aware bridges 328  
    static routing 594  
        with ip route 594  
    storm control 295  
        STP 295  
    STP 284, 294, 295, 380  
        and bridge assurance 294  
        MLAG 380  
        Spanning Tree Protocol 284  
        storm control 295  
    stub areas 626  
        OSPF 626  
    sudo 103, 105  
    sudoers 105, 106  
        examples 106  
    summary LSA 625  
        OSPF 625



SVI 324, 359  
bridges 324  
switched virtual interface 359  
switchd 146, 191, 191, 193, 783  
configuring 191  
counters 783  
file system 191  
nonatomic updates 146  
restarting 193  
switched virtual interface 359  
SVI 359  
switched VLAN interface 324  
bridges 324  
switch ports 24, 246  
configuring 24  
logical limitations 246  
syslog 763  
systemd 376  
system management 760

## T

tcpdump 828  
network troubleshooting 828  
templates 222  
time 97  
setting 97  
time zone 96  
topology 304, 601  
data center 304  
traceroute 817  
traffic.conf 250, 250  
traffic distribution 316  
traffic generator 818  
mz 818  
traffic marking 255  
datapath 255  
troubleshooting 760, 770, 828  
single user mode 770  
tcpdump 828  
trunk ports 342, 346  
tzdata 96



## U

U-Boot [19](#), [760](#)  
unnumbered interfaces [631](#), [635](#)  
    OSPF [631](#)  
    OSPFv3 [635](#)  
untagged frames [342](#)  
    bridges [342](#)  
upgrading [20](#)  
    Cumulus Linux [20](#)  
user accounts [103](#)  
    cumulus [103](#)  
    root [103](#)  
user authentication [111](#)  
user commands [220](#)  
    interfaces [220](#)

## V

virtual device counters [781](#), [784](#), [784](#)  
    monitoring [781](#)  
    poll interval [784](#)  
    VLAN statistics [784](#)  
virtual routing and forwarding (VRF) [696](#), [699](#)  
    BGP [696](#)  
    table ID [699](#)  
visudo [105](#)  
VLAN [359](#), [781](#)  
    statistics [781](#)  
    switched virtual interface [359](#)  
VLAN-aware bridges [323](#), [328](#), [328](#)  
    Spanning Tree Protocol [328](#)  
VLAN tagging [344](#), [344](#), [345](#)  
    advanced example [345](#)  
    basic example [344](#)  
VLAN translation [350](#)  
VTEP [400](#), [557](#), [570](#)  
vtysh [612](#)  
    FRRouting CLI [612](#)  
VXLAN [400](#), [406](#), [410](#), [438](#), [459](#), [557](#), [570](#), [781](#)  
    active-active mode [438](#)  
    LNV [410](#), [459](#)  
    no controller [406](#)  
    statistics [781](#)



VMware NSX [557](#), [570](#)

## W

watchdog [777](#)  
monitoring [777](#)

## Z

zebra [604](#)  
routing [604](#)  
zero touch provisioning [74](#), [76](#)  
USB [76](#)  
ZTP [74](#)